

# **User's Guide**

---

ArcSight Console

ArcSight ESM 6.8c  
with CORR-Engine

December 05, 2014



Copyright © 2015 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Confidential computer software. Valid license from HP required for possession, use or copying. Consistent with FAR 12.211 and 12.212, Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation, and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government under vendor's standard commercial license.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Follow this link to see a complete statement of copyrights and acknowledgements:

<http://www.hpenterprisesecurity.com/copyright>

## Contact Information

---

<b>Phone</b>	A list of phone numbers for HP ArcSight Technical Support is available on the HP Enterprise Security contacts page: <a href="https://softwaresupport.hp.com/documents/10180/14684/esp-support-contact-list">https://softwaresupport.hp.com/documents/10180/14684/esp-support-contact-list</a>
<b>Support Web Site</b>	<a href="http://softwaresupport.hp.com">http://softwaresupport.hp.com</a>
<b>Protect 724 Community</b>	<a href="https://protect724.hp.com">https://protect724.hp.com</a>

---

## Revision History

---

<b>Date</b>	<b>Product Version</b>	<b>Description</b>
12/05/2014	ArcSight ESM 6.8c	Updates for ArcSight ESM 6.8c
10/02/2013	ArcSight ESM 6.5c	Initial release of ArcSight Console for ArcSight ESM with CORR-Engine

---

# Contents

---

<b>Chapter 1: Getting Started .....</b>	<b>39</b>
Starting the ArcSight Console .....	39
Quick Start Tools and Content .....	39
Network Model Wizard .....	40
Configuration and Using Standard Content .....	40
ArcSight Web .....	40
ArcSight Command Center .....	40
<b>Chapter 2: Working in the ArcSight Console .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Navigating .....	41
Navigator Panel Resource Tree .....	43
Using SmartFolders .....	45
Creating a Case-Search SmartFolder .....	45
Creating a Reports SmartFolder .....	45
Editing Resource Groups .....	45
Editing a Resource Group .....	45
Categories Tab .....	46
Viewing Group Cases in a Grid View .....	46
Batch Editing .....	46
Batch-Editing Cases or Connectors .....	46
Cases Reminder .....	47
SmartConnector Reminders .....	47
Reconnecting to the Manager .....	47
Viewing .....	47
Viewer Panel .....	47
ArcSight Console Look-and-Feel .....	49
Inspecting and Editing .....	50
Overview of Inspect/Edit Features and Utilities .....	50
Searching for Fields in Event Inspector, Resource Editors, or CCE .....	52
Controlling the ArcSight Console .....	52
Error and Warning Messages .....	54
Using the Network Tools .....	54
Running a Tools Command .....	55
Network Tool Default Option .....	56

Adding a Tool .....	56
Configure (Edit) a Tool .....	56
Deleting a Tool .....	57
Staying Informed .....	57
Acknowledging Notifications .....	58
Acknowledging a Page .....	58
Acknowledge a Cell Phone Message .....	58
Acknowledge an E-mail Message .....	58
Acknowledge Notifications at the ArcSight Console .....	58
Using Notes .....	58
Adding a Note .....	58
Viewing a Note .....	59
Deleting a Note .....	59
License Tracking .....	59
License Tracking Notifications .....	60
Standard Reports for License Status Tracking .....	60
Using the Menus .....	61
File Menu .....	61
Edit Menu .....	62
View Menu .....	62
Window Menu .....	63
Tools Menu .....	64
System Menu .....	64
Help Menu .....	65
Using Right-Click Context Menus .....	65
Right-Click Menu Options on the Navigator Panel .....	65
Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot Keys) .....	67
Moving Copying, Linking, and Deleting Resources .....	68
Move, Copy, or Link a Resource .....	69
Delete a Resource .....	69
Printing from the Console .....	69
Printing Navigation Tree Views of Resources .....	70
Printing Resource Definitions .....	71
Saving as an HTML File .....	72
Printing Grid Views .....	72
Printing Conditions Tree Summary .....	73
Using Column Flip Limit to Format Grid View Printouts .....	74
<b>Chapter 3: Monitoring Events .....</b>	<b>77</b>
Monitoring Active Channels .....	77
Using Views .....	77
Selecting a View .....	77
Changing View Layouts .....	78



Floating a View .....	78
Closing One or All Views .....	78
Closing all Views Except the Current One .....	78
Viewing and Using Channels .....	78
Viewing an Active Channel .....	78
Sorting Events in an Active Channel .....	79
Creating an Active Channel .....	80
Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel .....	80
Adding a Column to the Channel .....	81
Using an Active Channel Header .....	81
Filtering an Active Channel .....	82
Saving Copies of Active Channels and Filters .....	83
Editing an Active Channel .....	83
Defining Grid Fields Options .....	85
Discovering Patterns in an Active Channel .....	85
Deleting an Active Channel .....	86
Adding a View Format .....	86
Changing View Layouts .....	86
Best Practices to Optimize Active Channel Performance .....	86
Investigating Views .....	88
Using an Event Attribute to Show a New Filtered View .....	89
Refining a Filter with an Event Attribute .....	89
Adding an Event Attribute to a Filtering Condition .....	90
Permanently Modifying an Active Channel .....	90
Showing an Exploited Vulnerability .....	91
Showing a Targeted Asset .....	91
Using Charts .....	91
Charting an Active Channel's Contents .....	91
Charting a Data Monitor's Contents .....	91
Exploring the Events Behind a Chart .....	92
Using Active Channels .....	93
Monitoring Events in the Active Channel .....	93
Sorting Columns in the Active Channel .....	93
Adding, Replacing, or Removing a Columns .....	93
Sizing a Column in the Active Channel .....	95
Showing or Hiding Column Text and Icons .....	95
Exporting Events to a File .....	95
Choosing Active Channel Menu Commands .....	96
Filtering Active Channels with Inline Filters .....	98
Customizing Columns .....	100
Creating a Custom Column .....	100
Showing a Custom Column .....	102
Advanced Example: Creating a Custom Column with Velocity Template .....	102

Using Dashboards .....	102
Monitoring Dashboards .....	103
Loading Dashboards .....	103
Inspecting Events in Dashboards .....	103
Drilling Down to Other Resources .....	104
Displaying Dashboards .....	105
Displaying Dashboards in a Slide Show Rotation .....	105
Rearranging Elements in Dashboard Layouts .....	105
Using Dashboard Menu Options .....	105
Zooming In or Out of Dashboards .....	105
Fitting all Dashboard Elements .....	105
Saving Dashboard Layouts .....	105
Closing a Dashboard .....	105
Editing Dashboard Elements .....	105
Changing a Dashboard's Layout .....	106
Managing Dashboards .....	106
Creating a Dashboard .....	106
Adding a Data Monitor to a Dashboard .....	106
Adding a Query Viewer to a Dashboard .....	107
Display Formats .....	107
Editing a Dashboard .....	108
Deleting a Dashboard .....	108
Managing Dashboard Groups .....	108
Creating a Dashboard Group .....	109
Renaming a Dashboard Group .....	109
Editing a Dashboard Group .....	109
Moving or Copying a Dashboard Group .....	109
Deleting a Dashboard Group .....	109
Using Data Monitors .....	109
Creating a Data Monitor .....	110
Editing a Data Monitor .....	111
Adding a Drilldown .....	111
Moving or Copying a Data Monitor .....	112
Deleting a Data Monitor .....	112
Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor .....	112
Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor from the Editor .....	113
Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor in the Navigator .....	114
Overriding a Data Monitor's Last State .....	114
Data Monitor Types .....	115
Managing Data Monitor Groups .....	116
Creating a Data Monitor Group .....	117
Renaming a Data Monitor Group .....	117
Editing a Data Monitor Group .....	117

---

Moving or Copying a Data Monitor Group .....	117
Deleting a Data Monitor Group .....	117
Enabling or Disabling Data Monitor Groups .....	117
Optimizing the Evaluation of Data Monitors' Event Filters .....	118
Requirement .....	118
Automating Condition Optimization .....	118
Tracing the Optimization .....	119
Disabling the Optimization Feature .....	120
Using Query Viewers .....	120
Using Custom View Dashboards .....	120
Browser Environments for Custom View Dashboards .....	121
Displaying Custom View Dashboards .....	121
To Launch the Custom View Dashboard in a Separate Browser Window .....	122
To Refresh the Custom View Dashboard Layout .....	122
Custom View Dashboard Context Menu Options .....	122
To Revert to the Regular Dashboard View .....	123
Working with Custom View Dashboards .....	123
To Select View Mode .....	124
To Show Events in an Active Channel View .....	124
Arranging Custom View Dashboards .....	124
To Select Arrange Mode .....	124
To Load a Background Image .....	124
To Select a Previously Uploaded Background Image .....	125
Using Resource Graphs to Verify that a Background Image is Attached .....	126
Removing a Background Image .....	126
To Relocate, Resize, and Reshape Data Monitors .....	126
To Select Which Data Monitors to Display and How .....	126
Monitoring Active Lists .....	127
Viewing Active List Contents .....	127
Refreshing Active List Views .....	127
Adding to or Subtracting from an Active List .....	127
Filtering Active Lists .....	127
Editing Active Lists .....	128
Clearing Active List Views .....	128
Customizing Active View Grid Columns .....	128
Active List Grid Context Menu Commands .....	128
Graphing Attacks .....	128
Creating Static Event Graphs .....	128
Creating Live Event Graphs .....	129
Event Graph Notes .....	130
<b>Chapter 4: Pattern Discovery .....</b>	<b>131</b>
Pattern Discovery Overview .....	131

What Pattern Detection Provides .....	131
Pattern Components .....	132
How Pattern Discovery Works .....	133
Pattern Discovery Life Cycle .....	133
Creating or Editing a Profile .....	134
Editing Profile Attributes .....	134
Specifying Actions .....	138
Creating Local Variables .....	140
Adding Notes .....	141
Deleting a Profile .....	141
Taking a Snapshot .....	141
Exploring a Snapshot .....	143
Arranging Elements in Graphic View .....	144
Scheduling a Snapshot .....	144
Re-opening a Snapshot .....	145
Deleting a Snapshot .....	145
Investigating Patterns .....	146
Investigating Patterns in the Snapshots View .....	146
Investigating Patterns in the Patterns View .....	148
Viewing Patterns with Filter .....	149
Inspecting Patterns .....	149
Creating Rules from Patterns .....	150
Annotating Patterns .....	152
Deleting a Pattern .....	153
Usage Guidelines .....	153
Establishing a Baseline of Normal Patterns .....	153
Using Pattern Discovery in Routine Operations .....	154
Performance Considerations .....	154
Adjusting Pattern Discovery Memory .....	154
<b>Chapter 5: Field Sets .....</b>	<b>155</b>
Creating and Using Field Sets .....	155
Creating a Field Set .....	156
Field Set Editor: Attributes Tab .....	156
Field Set Editor: Fields Tab .....	157
Field Set Editor: Local Variables Tab .....	158
Editing a Field Set .....	161
Sharing a Field Set .....	162
Deleting a Field Set .....	162
Where Field Sets can be Selected .....	162
About Global Variables .....	163

---

<b>Chapter 6: Selecting and Investigating Events .....</b>	<b>165</b>
Investigating Events in Active Channels .....	165
Selecting Events to Investigate .....	165
Inverting Event Selections .....	165
Selecting Events with Matching Cells .....	165
Exporting Data Fields to a CSV File .....	165
Showing Event Details and Rule Chains .....	166
Displaying Event Details .....	166
Displaying Simple Event Rule Chains .....	166
Displaying Detailed Event Rule Chains .....	166
Viewing Forwarded Correlation and Their Correlated Events .....	167
Displaying Correlation-Event Rules .....	167
Executing or Clearing Rule Actions .....	167
Launching Event Details in a Browser .....	167
Hiding Empty Rows in the Event Inspector .....	167
Investigating Session Events .....	168
Investigating a Session Event .....	168
Collaborating on Events .....	168
Viewing Annotations for an Event .....	169
Annotating an Event .....	169
Event Annotation Fields .....	170
Comments Field .....	170
Annotation Preservation .....	170
Mark Similar Events Fields .....	170
Creating New Stages .....	171
Stage Editor Fields .....	172
Editing Stages .....	172
Showing Event Payloads .....	173
Finding Payloads .....	173
Retrieving Payloads .....	173
Preserving Payloads .....	173
Discarding Payloads .....	173
Saving Payloads to Files .....	173
Viewing Payloads in Other Viewers .....	174
Getting Knowledge Base Articles .....	174
Displaying Articles from the Knowledge Base Window .....	174
Displaying Articles from an active channel .....	174
Displaying Articles from the Event Inspector .....	174
<b>Chapter 7: Filtering Events .....</b>	<b>175</b>
Creating Filters .....	175
Creating a New Filter .....	175
Changing or Editing a Filter .....	176

Creating an Inline Filter .....	177
Moving or Copying Filters .....	178
Deleting Filters .....	179
Debugging Filters to Match Events .....	179
Applying Filters .....	181
Adding Filters to Resources .....	181
Applying Resources as Filters to Active Channels .....	182
Removing a Filter Condition or Resource .....	182
Importing and Exporting filters .....	182
Using Filter Groups .....	182
Creating Filter Groups .....	183
Renaming Filter Groups .....	183
Editing Filter Groups .....	183
Moving or Copying Filter Groups .....	183
Deleting Filter Groups .....	183
Investigating Views .....	183
Using an Event Attribute to Show a New Filtered View .....	184
Refining a Filter with an Event Attribute .....	185
Filtering Out ArcSight Events or Other Customizations .....	185
Adding an Event Attribute to a Filtering Condition .....	186
Permanently Modifying an Active Channel .....	186
Showing an Exploited Vulnerability .....	186
Showing a Targeted Asset .....	187
Modifying Views .....	187
Modifying a View Inline .....	187
Undoing an Inline Filter .....	187
Permanently Modifying a View .....	187
<b>Chapter 8: Actors .....</b>	<b>189</b>
About Actors .....	189
How the Actors Feature Works .....	191
About the Actor Model Import Connectors .....	193
Troubleshooting Errors with Actor Model Imports .....	194
Navigating to Actors .....	195
Viewing Actors on the ArcSight Console .....	195
Viewing Actors in the Navigator Panel .....	196
Viewing Actors in the Actor Editor .....	196
Viewing Actor Base Attributes .....	197
Viewing Actor Account Attributes .....	199
Viewing Actor Role Attributes .....	199
Viewing Actors in an Actor Channel .....	199
About the Actor Channel UI .....	200
Sorting Fields in Actor Channels .....	201

Actor Channel Options .....	202
Right-Click Options from the Grid View .....	202
Filtering Actor Channels .....	202
Adding a Local Filter to the Actor Channel Resource .....	202
Creating an Inline Filter .....	204
Saving Actor Channels .....	204
Editing Saved Actor Channels .....	204
Viewing Saved Actor Channels .....	205
Investigating Actors .....	205
Running Context Reports from an Actor Channel .....	205
Investigating an Actor from an Event Channel .....	207
Actor Context Reports in Standard Content .....	208
Creating and Editing Actors for Testing Purposes .....	209
Important Points to Consider about Making Manual Changes to Actors .....	209
Creating Actors for Testing Purposes .....	210
Editing Actors for Testing Purposes .....	212
Deleting Actors .....	212
Leveraging Actor Data Using Variables .....	212
Creating an Actor Global Variable .....	212
Creating an Actor-Based Variable in Another Resource .....	213
Creating and Using Category Models .....	214
Memory Recommendations for Using Category Models .....	214
Creating Category Models .....	215
Creating Actor-to-Actor Category Models .....	215
Creating Actor Attribute Category Models .....	218
Creating User-Defined Category Models .....	220
Editing a Category Model .....	222
Moving or Copying a Category Model .....	222
Deleting a Category Model .....	222
Viewing Category Models in Graphs .....	222
Working with Category Model Graphs .....	223
Leveraging Category Model Data Using Variables .....	225
<b>Chapter 9: Query Viewers .....</b>	<b>227</b>
What are Query Viewers? .....	227
Navigating to Query Viewers .....	229
Pre-Built and Custom Query Viewers .....	229
Standard Content .....	230
Custom Query Viewers .....	230
Customizing Query Viewers as Needed .....	230
inActiveList Conditions for Queries .....	230
Query Viewers Need Base Queries .....	231
Running Queries and Viewing Results .....	231

Working with Query Viewer Results .....	234
Results in Table Format .....	235
Results in Chart Formats .....	239
Filtering Query Viewer Results .....	240
Adding a Filter .....	241
Viewing an Event or Resource Directly from the Query Viewer .....	241
Troubleshooting Query Viewers .....	242
Adding Query Viewers to Dashboards .....	242
Making Query Viewer Results Available to ArcSight Web .....	242
Adding Query Viewers as Startup Views .....	242
Generating Reports from Query Viewers .....	243
Defining and Using Baselines .....	245
Why Baselines are Useful .....	246
Planning for Baseline Comparisons .....	247
Adding a Baseline .....	248
Comparing Displayed Results to a Baseline .....	249
Show or Hide Baseline Columns .....	251
Sort Baseline Data .....	251
Filter Baseline Data .....	251
Removing a Baseline .....	252
Customizing Query Viewers .....	253
Creating a New Query Viewer .....	253
Defining Query Viewer Settings .....	254
Query Viewer Attributes .....	254
Query Viewer Fields .....	257
Query Viewer Variables .....	260
Query Viewer Drilldowns .....	261
Editing a Query Viewer .....	261
Deleting a Query Viewer .....	262
Managing Drilldowns .....	262
Adding a Drilldown .....	262
Changing the Default Drilldown .....	266
Editing a Drilldown .....	266
Changing the Order of Drilldowns .....	266
Removing a Drilldown .....	267
Example Queries for Common Scenarios .....	268
Basic Analysis High Level Summaries .....	268
Analyst's First View of Events .....	268
Drilldown Example .....	271
How the Console Builds Drilldowns .....	272
Non-Event Analysis Example .....	273
Baseline Analysis for Data Comparison .....	273
History Analysis Example .....	274



<b>Chapter 10: Building Reports</b>	<b>275</b>
Understanding the Reporting Workflow	275
Step 1 - Build a Query	276
Step 2 - Build a Trend Based on a Query	276
Step 3 - Build a Query Based on a Trend	277
Step 4 - Select or Design a Report Template	277
Step 5 - Create a Report	277
Step 7 - Run a Report	278
Step 8 - Archive and Maintain Reports	278
Managing Dependencies for Reports Resources	279
Using Report Templates	279
Navigating to Templates	279
Using Standard Templates	280
Applying a Template to an Existing Report	280
Creating a New Report Based on a Template	281
Copying a Template	281
Opening the Designer to Edit a Template	282
Designing Custom Templates	282
Opening the Template Designer to Edit Existing Templates	282
Creating a New Template	282
Template Designer User Interface	283
Setting Report Page Options	290
Designing Report Flow Layout	291
Designing Report Tabular Layout	293
Building Report Elements into a Template	294
Building Queries	299
How Queries Work	299
Using Queries and Trends Together for Reports	300
Using Queries in Query Viewers	300
Building a Query	300
Navigating to Queries	300
Creating a New Query	301
Defining Query Settings	301
General Query Attributes	301
Query Fields	305
SELECT Query Fields	306
GROUP BY Query Fields	308
ORDER BY Query Fields	311
Query Conditions	312
Creating Conditions on a Field	313
Tips on creating conditions	314
Creating Group Conditions	314
Query Variables	314

Editing a Query .....	315
Example: Creating Asset-Related Conditions for Queries on Lists .....	315
Building Trends .....	317
How Trends Work .....	317
Snapshot Trend .....	318
Interval Trend .....	318
Query-Trend Relationships in Reporting .....	318
Building a Trend .....	319
Navigating to Trends .....	319
Creating a New Trend .....	320
Defining Trend Settings .....	320
Trend Attributes .....	321
Trend Schedule .....	325
Trend Parameters .....	325
Trend Actions (Add to Active List) .....	326
Testing a Trend .....	331
Viewing Trend Data .....	331
Refreshing Trend Data .....	332
Editing or Viewing a Trend Definition .....	333
Using a Trend in a Query or Report .....	333
Disabling or Enabling a Trend .....	333
Deleting a Trend .....	334
Creating Reports .....	334
How Reports Work .....	334
Navigating to Reports .....	334
Creating a Report .....	335
Defining Report Settings .....	336
Report Attributes .....	336
Report Templates .....	337
Binding Data to the Report .....	340
Binding Data to Charts .....	341
Selecting Data for the X-Axis on a Chart .....	342
Selecting Data for the Y-Axis on a Chart .....	343
Selecting Data for the Z-Axis on a Chart (Optional) .....	345
Specifying Top/Bottom Filters Aggregation Filters for a Chart (Optional) .....	347
Setting Display Options and Scale Formats for Charts .....	349
Binding Data to Tables .....	350
Specifying Fields for a Table .....	351
Enabling the Aggregation Tab for a Table .....	354
Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom .....	355
Adding Custom Parameters for Report Data .....	358
Displaying a Custom Parameter Prompt at Report Runtime .....	359
Generating Reports with Asian Fonts .....	363

Editing a Report .....	363
End-to-End Reporting Examples .....	364
Example of Creating a Simple Report with the Wizard .....	364
Advanced Reporting Example Overview .....	367
Step 1 - Build the VPN Logins Outcome Query .....	368
Step 2 - Build the VPN Logins Outcome Hourly Trend .....	370
Step 3 - Filter the Trend Data (Login Attempts, Successes, Failures) .....	372
Step 4 - Create the VPN Logins Outcome Report on Trend Data .....	373
Step 5 - Run the Report .....	377
<b>Chapter 11: Running and Managing Reports .....</b>	<b>379</b>
Running Reports .....	379
Running a New or Archived Report .....	380
Running a Defined Report .....	380
Run-Report Options .....	381
Report Parameters .....	381
Displaying an Archived Report .....	381
Running a Delta Report .....	382
Running Reports from a Grid View .....	383
Running a Rule-Context Report from a Grid View .....	383
Running an Event Context Report from a Grid View .....	383
Running a Channel Report from a Grid View .....	383
Running Large or Complex Reports .....	383
Managing Reports .....	385
Editing a Report .....	385
Creating Focused Reports .....	385
Importing and Exporting Reports .....	386
Importing Reports .....	386
Exporting Reports .....	386
Moving or Copying a Report .....	386
Managing Report Groups .....	387
Creating a Report Group .....	387
Renaming a Report Group .....	387
Editing a Report Group .....	387
Moving or Copying a Report Group .....	387
Deleting a Report Group .....	388
Archiving and Scheduling Reports .....	388
Archiving a Report .....	388
Parameterized Report Entries .....	390
Viewing an Archived Report .....	391
Scheduling Report Tasks .....	391
Scheduling Individual-Report Archiving .....	391
Scheduling Report Archiving by Resource Group .....	393

Standard Time Transitions .....	394
Editing a Report Archiving Schedule .....	394
Editing Report Archiving Parameters .....	395
Deleting a Report Archiving Schedule .....	395
<b>Chapter 12: Rules Authoring .....</b>	<b>397</b>
Designing Rules .....	397
Rule Types .....	398
Managing Rules .....	399
Creating Rules .....	399
Editing Rules .....	400
Moving or Copying Rules .....	400
Converting Rule Types .....	401
Deleting Rules .....	401
Managing Rule Groups .....	401
Creating Rule Groups .....	402
Renaming Rule Groups .....	402
Editing Rule Groups .....	402
Moving or Copying Rule Groups .....	402
Deleting Rule Groups .....	403
Specifying Rule Conditions .....	403
Creating New Rule Conditions .....	403
Adding Filter Conditions .....	404
Adding Asset Conditions .....	404
Adding Vulnerability Conditions .....	405
Adding Active List (InActiveList) Conditions .....	406
Creating Matching or Join Conditions .....	407
Editing or Deleting Join Data Field Conditions .....	409
Negating Event Conditions .....	410
Optimizing the Evaluation of Event Conditions .....	411
Automating Condition Optimization .....	412
Tracing the Optimization .....	412
Disabling the Optimization Feature .....	413
Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation .....	414
Setting or Changing Rule Thresholds .....	414
Aggregation Time Criteria .....	416
Deleting Aggregation from a Rule .....	417
Creating Rule Actions .....	417
Adding a Rule Action .....	418
Editing a Rule Action .....	419
Removing a Rule Action .....	419
Activating or De-activating a Rule Trigger .....	419
Enabling or Disabling a Rule Action .....	419

---

Threshold Triggering Options .....	420
Rule Actions Reference .....	422
Applying Rule Actions on Cases .....	427
<b>Using a Rule to Create a New Case .....</b>	<b>427</b>
<b>Using a Rule to Add to an Existing Case .....</b>	<b>428</b>
Enabling and Disabling Rules .....	429
Enabling Rules .....	429
Disabling Rules .....	430
Automatically and Manually Disabled Rules .....	430
Disabling Rule Components .....	431
Importing and Exporting Rules .....	431
Scheduling Rules .....	431
Scenarios for Using Scheduled Rules .....	432
Scheduling a Rule Group .....	433
Example of a Scheduled Rule (Badge Swipes and Logins) .....	435
Testing Rules .....	437
Testing a Rule from the Rule Editor .....	438
Showing Rule Errors .....	439
Verifying Rule(s) with Events .....	439
Verify Rule(s) from the Resource Tree .....	440
Deploying Real-time Rules .....	442
Deploying a Rule .....	443
Removing or Un-deploying a Rule .....	443
Loading Rules .....	443
Automatic Disabling .....	444
<b>Chapter 13: Global Variables .....</b>	<b>445</b>
About Global Variables .....	445
Global Variable Dependencies .....	446
Remote Variables Processing .....	446
Creating a Global Variable .....	446
Global Variable Editor: Attributes Tab .....	447
Global Variable Editor: Parameters Tab .....	447
Global Variable Editor: Local Variables Tab .....	448
Promoting a Local Variable to a Global Variable .....	448
Editing a Global Variable .....	450
Moving or Linking a Global Variable .....	450
Deleting a Global Variable .....	450
Navigating to Global Variables .....	451
Adding a Global Variable to a Resource .....	451
Accessing a Global Variable Using the CCE .....	451
Adding a Global Variable to a Data Monitor .....	452
Adding a Global Variable to a Field Set .....	454

Adding Global Variables to an Active Channel .....	455
Chaining a Global Variable .....	455
<b>Chapter 14: Use Cases .....</b>	<b>457</b>
About Use Cases .....	457
Navigating to Use Cases .....	459
Master Use Cases .....	459
How Master Use Cases Work .....	460
Standard Use Cases .....	460
Installing Use Cases .....	461
Viewing and Using Use Cases .....	462
Accessing Resources from the Viewer Panel .....	463
Configuring Use Cases .....	464
Navigating the Use Case Configuration Wizard .....	464
Step 1 - Model Your Network .....	465
Step 2 - Install Use Case Package Bundles .....	465
Step 3 - Launch the <b>Use Case</b> Wizard .....	465
Step 4 - Introduction Panel .....	465
Step 5 - Prerequisites Panel .....	466
Step 6 - Confirm Event Sources Panel .....	467
Step 7 - Configuration Panels .....	468
Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel .....	469
Step 9 - Configuration Complete Panel .....	469
Configuration Panels .....	471
Categorize Assets/Zones Panels .....	471
Populate Active List .....	<b>473</b>
Specify the Notification E-mail Address Panel .....	475
Set the Inactivity Time Period Panel .....	476
Set the Notification Rate Panel .....	476
Schedule Daily Report Panels .....	477
Schedule Weekly Report Panels .....	<b>479</b>
Schedule Monthly Report Panels .....	<b>480</b>
Schedule Yearly Report Panels .....	482
Enable Rules Panel .....	484
Enable Rule Actions Panel .....	485
Set Session List Entry Expiry Panel .....	486
<b>Chapter 15: Identity Correlation .....</b>	<b>487</b>
Understanding Session Correlation .....	487
How Session Correlation Works .....	487
Creating a Session List Rule .....	488
Creating a Variable .....	490
Populating a Session List Manually .....	491

Managing Session Lists .....	491
Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins (Example) .....	491
Example Overview .....	492
Step 1 - Create a Session List to Store Windows Sessions .....	492
Step 2 - Create Rules to Populate the Session List with Windows Logins .....	493
Rule 1: Triggers on Windows Session Logins .....	494
Rule 2: Triggers on Termination of Windows Sessions .....	497
Step 3 - Verify Rules .....	498
Step 4 - Use the Session List in a Report .....	500
Using Active Lists to Correlate Users (Example) .....	502
Example Overview .....	502
Step 1 - Build and Populate the Active List with User IDs .....	503
Populating an Active List with User Data .....	504
Step 2 - Create a Rule that Uses Active List Values to Correlate User IDs .....	505
<b>Chapter 16: List Authoring .....</b>	<b>511</b>
Managing Active Lists .....	511
Creating an Active List .....	511
Case-Insensitive Lookup in Case-Sensitive Active Lists .....	517
Using Rules to Populate an Active List .....	518
Example .....	518
Editing an Active List .....	521
Editing Active List Entries .....	521
Move or Copy an Active List .....	522
Importing an Active List .....	522
Exporting an Active List .....	522
Deleting an Active List .....	522
Managing Active List Groups .....	523
Navigating to Active Lists .....	523
Creating an Active List Group .....	523
Renaming Active List Groups .....	523
Editing Active List Groups .....	523
Moving or Copying Active List Groups .....	523
Deleting Active List Groups .....	524
Managing Session Lists .....	524
Creating a Session List .....	524
Using Rules to Populate a Session List .....	527
Editing a Session List .....	527
Moving or Copying a Session List .....	527
Exporting a Session List .....	527
Deleting a Session List .....	528
Adding a Session List Entry .....	528
Adding a Session List Entry Based on an Existing Entry .....	528

Adding a New Session List Entry .....	528
Deleting a Session List Entry .....	528
Terminating a Session List Entry .....	529
Field Naming Restrictions .....	529
<b>Chapter 17: Case Management and Queries .....</b>	<b>531</b>
Using External Case Management Systems .....	531
HP Service Manager .....	531
BMC Remedy .....	532
Managing Cases .....	532
Creating a New Case .....	532
Case Properties .....	533
Editing a Case .....	533
Finding Cases .....	534
Attaching a File to a Case .....	535
Best Practices on Attaching Files to a Case .....	535
Viewing a Case Attachment .....	536
Tracking Modifications to a Case .....	536
Viewing the Case's Notes Tab .....	536
Creating an Event Viewer for Cases' Internal Audit Events .....	537
Exporting a Case to an External System .....	537
Moving or Copying a Case to a Group .....	537
Granting Permission to Delete Cases .....	538
Deleting a Case .....	539
Working with Events in Cases .....	539
Including Base Events through a Rule .....	539
Creating or Updating a Case from Displayed Events .....	540
Copying Event Details from Case to Case .....	541
Deleting Events from a Case .....	541
Managing Case Groups .....	541
Creating a Case Group .....	542
Renaming a Case Group .....	542
Editing a Case Group .....	542
Moving or Copying a Case Group .....	542
Deleting a Case Group .....	542
Running Case Queries .....	543
Setting Up an Automatic Case Query Group .....	543
Setting Up a Case Search Group .....	543
Creating a Report from a Case .....	543
Running Case Reports and Setting Default Parameters .....	544
Customizing the Case Report .....	545
Customize Selected Case Query .....	546
Customize Selected Case Report .....	547



---

Add a Server Property for the New Report URI .....	547
<b>Chapter 18: Integration Commands .....</b>	<b>549</b>
What are Integration Commands? .....	549
Supported Command Types .....	550
Out-of-the-Box Commands for ArcSight Logger and ArcSight NSP (ArcSight TRM Component) 550	
Local Scripts and Commands to Other Applications .....	551
How it Works .....	551
Planning Checklist and Workflow .....	552
Navigating to Integration Command Resources .....	553
Quick Examples .....	553
Defining Commands .....	556
Command Types and Attributes .....	557
Script Commands .....	557
URL Commands .....	559
Connector Commands .....	559
Adding and Editing Command Parameters .....	560
TRM Connector Command Example .....	562
Using Configurations to Group Commands .....	565
Configurations Attributes .....	566
Configurations Contexts .....	567
How to Set Up Command Contexts .....	568
Configurations Commands .....	569
Adding a Command to a Configuration .....	569
Editing Commands in a Configuration .....	570
Removing Commands from a Configuration .....	570
Configuration Targets .....	570
Adding a Target to a Configuration .....	570
Editing Targets in a Configuration .....	571
Removing Commands from a Configuration .....	571
Specifying Targets .....	571
Target Attributes .....	572
Target Integration Parameters .....	572
Authorization and Authentication Settings .....	573
Setting User Login Parameters .....	573
Setting Login Credentials .....	573
Setting Login Credentials on Target Servers .....	574
Setting Logins and Other Parameters to Prompt for Values at Runtime .....	574
Access Control Lists (ACLs) on Integration Commands .....	575
Running Integration Commands .....	576
Entering/Saving Command Parameters at Runtime .....	577
Creating New Configurations On-the-Fly .....	577
Ready-Made ArcSight Threat Response Manager (TRM) Commands .....	578

Prerequisites .....	578
Options for Up-Front or On-the-Fly Configuration .....	578
TRM Integration Commands .....	578
Enabling TRM Commands .....	580
Step 1 - Set up the Command Targets .....	580
Step 2 - Set up the Command Configuration .....	581
Step 3 - Set up Users for TRM Access .....	581
Understanding NSP Authentication .....	582
How to Get an NSP Authentication Token .....	582
Examples of Running TRM URL Commands .....	583
Attacker-Target Network Map .....	583
Investigate Node .....	584
Going Further with TRM Command Results .....	584
ArcSight Logger Search Commands .....	585
Logger Integration Commands .....	585
Enabling Integrated Logger Searches .....	585
1. Set up Logger Command Targets .....	586
2. Set up the Logger Command Configuration .....	586
3. Set up Users for Logger Access .....	587
Example of Running a Logger Quick Search .....	587
Network Tools as Integration Commands .....	589
<b>Chapter 19: Knowledge Base Authoring .....</b>	<b>591</b>
Managing Knowledge Base Articles .....	591
Creating Knowledge Base Articles .....	591
Showing a Knowledge Base Article .....	592
Editing a Knowledge Base Article .....	593
Moving or Copying a Knowledge Base Article .....	593
Deleting a Knowledge Base Article .....	593
Managing Knowledge Base Article Groups .....	593
Creating a Knowledge Base Article Group .....	593
Renaming a Knowledge Base Article Group .....	594
Editing a Knowledge Base Article Group .....	594
Moving or Copying a Knowledge Base Article Group .....	594
Deleting a Knowledge Base Article Group .....	594
Getting Knowledge Base Updates .....	594
Refreshing the Knowledge Base Tree .....	594
Associating Knowledge Base Articles .....	595
Associating Resources with Knowledge Base Groups or Articles .....	595
Associating Grid View Elements with Knowledge Base Articles .....	595
<b>Chapter 20: Managing Users and Permissions .....</b>	<b>597</b>
Managing Users .....	597

Creating a User .....	597
Editing a User .....	599
Resetting User Passwords .....	599
Moving or Linking a User .....	600
Deactivating and Reactivating a User .....	600
Deleting a User .....	601
Managing User Groups .....	602
Creating User Groups .....	602
Renaming User Groups .....	602
Editing User Groups .....	602
Moving or Linking User Groups .....	602
Deleting User Groups .....	603
Setting Startup Views .....	603
Managing Permissions and Resources .....	603
Editing Access Control Lists (ACLs) .....	603
Granting or Removing Resource Permissions .....	604
Granting or Removing Operations Permissions .....	606
Granting or Removing User Group Permissions .....	607
Granting or Removing Event Permissions .....	609
Permissions for Sortable Field Sets .....	611
Sharing Resources .....	612
Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors .....	612
How Upgrades Affect Data Monitor Deploy Permissions .....	614
Deployment Permissions on Imported Data Monitors .....	614
Managing Notifications .....	615
Managing Received Notifications .....	615
Deleting Informational Notifications .....	616
Managing Notification Groups and Levels .....	616
Creating Notification Groups .....	616
Renaming Notification Groups .....	617
Editing Notification Groups .....	617
Deleting Notification Groups .....	617
Adding Escalation Levels .....	617
Deleting Escalation Levels .....	617
Managing Notification Destinations .....	617
Creating Destinations .....	617
Editing Destinations .....	618
Moving or Copying Destinations .....	618
Deleting Destinations .....	618
Changing Notification and Acknowledgement Settings .....	619
Changing E-mail Settings .....	619
Adding New Pager Service Providers .....	620
Editing Pager Service Provider Settings .....	620

Deleting Pager Service Providers .....	620
Changing Wait Time Settings .....	620
Testing Notification Groups and Destinations .....	621
Testing Group Notifications .....	621
Testing Destination Notifications .....	621
<b>Chapter 21: Managing Resources .....</b>	<b>623</b>
Managing File Resources .....	623
Uploading Files and Creating a File Resource .....	624
Viewing Files .....	625
Downloading Files Locally .....	625
Editing File Resource Attributes .....	626
Replacing File Resource Contents .....	626
Deleting File Resources .....	626
Adding a File or Folder to a Package .....	626
Finding Files .....	627
Locking and Unlocking Resources .....	627
System Core Content .....	627
User Created Content .....	627
Unlocking a User-locked Resource .....	628
Selecting Resources .....	628
Finding Resources .....	629
Searching for System Resources .....	629
Search Field on Console Tool Bar .....	629
About Text Search Syntax .....	630
Result Columns .....	632
Locating Specific Resources .....	632
Visualizing Resources .....	632
Graphing Resources .....	632
Using Graphs .....	633
Configuring Resource Graphs .....	634
Viewing Resources in Grids .....	635
Validating Resources .....	635
Valid and Invalid Resources .....	636
Fixing and Validating Resources .....	636
Troubleshooting (Requirements for Valid Resources) .....	638
Automatic and Manual Validation .....	640
Resource Validation During Upgrade .....	641
Extending Audit Event Logging .....	641
Saving Copies of Read-Only Resources .....	642
Common Resource Attribute Fields .....	642
Common .....	643
Assign .....	644

Parent Groups .....	644
Creation Information .....	644
Last Update Information .....	644
Managing Packages .....	644
Creating Packages .....	645
Exporting Packages .....	648
Importing Packages .....	649
Backing Up and Restoring with Packages .....	650
ID Checking During Import .....	650
Package Modifications .....	650
List Data .....	651
Backup and Restore Summary .....	651
Installing Packages .....	651
Uninstalling Packages .....	652
Deleting Packages .....	653
Editing Packages .....	653
Adding Resources to Packages .....	654
Removing Resources from Packages .....	654
Resolving Package Conflicts .....	654
<b>Chapter 22: Managing SmartConnectors .....</b>	<b>657</b>
Selecting and Setting SmartConnector Parameters .....	657
Configuring the SmartConnector .....	657
Connector Editor Option Tabs .....	658
Connector Tab Configuration Fields .....	659
Default Content Tab Configuration Fields .....	660
SmartConnector Processing Categories .....	674
SmartConnector Time Interval Options .....	675
Managing SmartConnector Filter Conditions .....	675
Creating SmartConnector Filters .....	675
Adding SmartConnector Filter Conditions .....	676
Deleting SmartConnector Filter Conditions .....	676
Setting Special Severity Levels .....	676
Configuring a Conditional or Custom Severity Level .....	676
Sending Model Mappings to SmartConnectors .....	678
Sending Model Mappings to a Connector .....	678
Sending Control Commands to SmartConnectors .....	678
Getting Status Reports .....	678
Sending Flow-Control Commands .....	678
Managing SmartConnector Groups .....	685
Creating SmartConnector Groups .....	685
Renaming SmartConnector Groups .....	686
Editing SmartConnector Groups .....	686

Moving or Copying SmartConnector Groups .....	686
Deleting SmartConnector Groups .....	686
Managing SmartConnector Resources .....	686
Moving or Copying a SmartConnector Group .....	686
Deleting a SmartConnector Group .....	687
Importing and Exporting SmartConnector Configurations .....	687
Importing a SmartConnector Configuration .....	687
Exporting a SmartConnector Configuration .....	688
SmartConnector Filters .....	689
Using Additional Data Fields .....	689
Upgrading SmartConnectors .....	689
Overview of the Upgrade Process .....	690
Upgrading SmartConnectors .....	691
Rolling back to a Previous Version .....	692
Troubleshooting .....	692
Getting Status and Versions on Installed SmartConnectors .....	692
Getting Status on a SmartConnector .....	693
SmartConnector Dashboards .....	693
<b>Chapter 23: Modeling the Network .....</b>	<b>695</b>
About the Network Model .....	695
Network Model .....	696
Assets .....	697
Asset Ranges .....	700
Zones .....	700
Networks .....	701
Asset Model .....	702
Locations .....	702
Vulnerabilities .....	702
Asset Categories .....	702
Populating the Network Model with Assets .....	703
ArcSight Console-Based Methods .....	704
Individually Using Network Modeling Resources .....	704
In a Batch Using the Network Modeling Wizard .....	705
SmartConnector-Based Methods .....	705
Using the Asset Model Import FlexConnector .....	705
Automatically From a Vulnerability Scanner Report .....	705
ArcSight-Assisted Methods .....	706
As an Archive File From an Existing Configuration Database .....	706
Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard .....	707
Specifying CSV Column Types .....	707
Specify the Column Type Using a Header .....	708
Specifying Multiple Categories in one Category Column .....	708

Assign the Column Type in the Wizard .....	709
Zones CSV File Format .....	710
An Example of a Zones CSV File .....	711
Assets CSV File Format .....	711
An Example of an Assets CSV File .....	713
Static Addressing in a Dynamic Zone .....	713
Asset Ranges CSV File Format .....	713
An Example of an Asset Ranges CSV File .....	715
Increasing the Number of Rows Displayed .....	715
Summary of Data to Import .....	715
Network Data Imported into ArcSight Manager .....	716
Auto-Zoning of Imported Assets .....	716
Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories .....	717
Managing Assets .....	717
Creating an Asset .....	717
Editing an Asset .....	718
Moving or Copying an Asset .....	718
Deleting an Asset .....	719
Showing Assets in a Channel .....	719
Auto Zoning an Asset .....	719
Managing Asset Groups .....	720
Creating an Asset Group .....	720
Renaming an Asset Group .....	720
Editing an Asset Group .....	720
Moving or Copying an Asset Group .....	720
Deleting an Asset Group .....	720
Asset Scalability .....	721
Viewing Assets in Active Channels .....	721
Finding Assets .....	721
Selecting Assets in the Common Conditions Editor .....	721
Managing Vulnerabilities .....	722
Vulnerability Editor .....	723
Creating a Vulnerability .....	723
Editing a Vulnerability .....	723
Moving or Copying a Vulnerability .....	724
Retrieving Vulnerable Assets .....	724
Adding an Asset to a Vulnerability .....	724
Deleting an Asset From a Vulnerability .....	724
Deleting a Vulnerability .....	724
Managing Vulnerability Groups .....	725
Creating a Vulnerability Group .....	725
Renaming a Vulnerability Group .....	725
Editing a Vulnerability Group .....	725

Moving or Copying a Vulnerability Group .....	725
Deleting a Vulnerability Group .....	725
Selecting Vulnerabilities in the Common Conditions Editor .....	725
Reporting on Output from Vulnerability Scanners .....	726
Reporting on Asset Vulnerabilities .....	727
Managing Zones .....	727
Managing Networks .....	728
Managing Asset Categories .....	728
Managing Locations .....	729
Managing Customers .....	730
Creating Customers .....	730
Editing Customers .....	730
Deleting Customers .....	730
<b>Chapter 24: Personalizing the ArcSight Console .....</b>	<b>731</b>
Changing the Console Display .....	731
Resizing the Console .....	731
Showing or Hiding Menu Bars and Tools .....	731
Showing or Hiding the Status Bar .....	731
Showing or Hiding the Navigator Panel .....	731
Showing or Hiding the Viewer Panel .....	732
Showing or Hiding the Inspect/Edit Panel .....	732
Floating a Console Panel .....	732
Applying Translucency to a Console Panel .....	732
Docking a Console Panel .....	732
Closing a Console Panel .....	732
Changing User Preferences .....	732
Changing Your Password .....	733
Changing Other Users' Passwords .....	733
Setting Program Preferences .....	733
Changing Global Options Like Panel and Editor Characteristics .....	734
Setting Dialog Options .....	735
Setting Grid View Options .....	737
Setting Date and Time Formats .....	738
Configuring Event Graphs .....	739
Latitude and Longitude Options .....	739
Event Graph Options .....	740
Setting Notification Popups .....	741
Managing Hot Keys .....	741
Adding Shortcuts for Frequently Used Resources .....	741
Modifying a Custom Shortcut .....	744
Removing a Custom Shortcut .....	746
Activating a New Shortcut Schema .....	747



---

Sharing Custom Shortcut Schemas .....	747
Saving and Sending Settings .....	748
Saving a File .....	748
Saving a File to the ArcSight Manager .....	748
Loading a File From the ArcSight Manager .....	748
Sending a File by E-mail .....	748
<b>Chapter 25: Reference Guide .....</b>	<b>749</b>
Access Control Lists .....	749
Resource ACLs .....	749
Actions .....	751
Active Channels .....	751
Active Channel Views .....	751
Active Channel Headers .....	752
Comparisons .....	753
Active Channel Views for Assets and Cases .....	753
Active Lists .....	753
Uses of Active Lists .....	754
Active Lists for Long-Term State Retention .....	754
Optimize Data with Hash-Based Active Lists .....	754
Active List Audit Events .....	755
Active List Monitor Events .....	755
Active Lists with Values .....	756
Using Variables to Retrieve Data from Active Lists with Values .....	756
Example: Active List with Values to Store Directory Information .....	757
Working with Active Lists .....	759
Administrator .....	759
Advanced Editor .....	759
Aggregation .....	761
ArcSight Console .....	762
ArcSight Web .....	762
Assets .....	762
Assets Tab .....	763
Zones Tab .....	763
Networks Tab .....	763
Categories Tab .....	764
Vulnerabilities Tab .....	764
Locations Tab .....	764
Asset Auto-Creation .....	765
Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report .....	765
Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report for Static Zones .....	765
Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report for Dynamic Zones .....	766
Creating Assets for SmartConnectors .....	767

Creating Assets for SmartConnectors in Static Zones .....	767
Creating Assets for SmartConnectors in Dynamic Zones .....	768
Creating Assets for Network Devices .....	769
Creating Assets for Network Devices in Static Zones .....	770
Creating Assets for Network Devices in Dynamic Zones .....	771
Asset Names .....	771
Naming Assets from Scanner Events .....	772
Naming SmartConnector and Device Assets .....	772
Asset Auto-Creation Advanced Configuration Options .....	772
Asset Auto-Creation from Scanners in Dynamic Zones .....	772
Changing the Default Naming Scheme .....	775
Attack .....	775
Audit Events .....	775
Resources (Configuration Events Common to Most Resources) .....	776
Active Channel .....	778
Active List .....	778
Actor .....	778
Authentication .....	779
Archive .....	779
Authorization .....	780
Connectors .....	780
Connector Connection .....	780
Connector Exceptions .....	781
Connector Login .....	782
Connector Registration and Configuration .....	782
Content Management .....	782
Dashboard .....	783
Data Monitors .....	783
Last State Data Monitors .....	784
Moving Average Data Monitor .....	784
Reconciliation Data Monitor .....	784
Statistical Data Monitor .....	784
Top Value Counts Data Monitor .....	785
Global Variables .....	785
Group Management .....	785
License Audit .....	786
Logger Application .....	786
Manager External Event Flow Interruption .....	794
Notifications .....	794
Notification .....	794
Notification Acknowledgement, Escalation, and Resolution .....	794
Notification Testing .....	795
Pattern Discovery .....	795

Query Viewers .....	795
Reports .....	795
Resource Quota .....	796
Rules .....	796
Rule Actions .....	796
Rule Activations .....	797
Rules Scheduled .....	797
Rule Firings .....	797
Rule Warnings .....	797
Scheduler .....	797
Scheduler Execution .....	798
Scheduler Scheduling Tasks .....	798
Scheduler Skip .....	798
Session Lists .....	798
Stress .....	799
Trends .....	799
Trends .....	799
Trend Partitions .....	800
User Login .....	801
User Management .....	801
Batching .....	801
Case Editor Tab Fields .....	802
Case Editor Initial - Attributes Tab .....	803
Case Editor Initial - Description Tab .....	804
Case Editor Initial - Security Classification Tab .....	804
Case Editor Follow-Up Tab .....	805
Case Editor Final - Attack Mechanism Tab .....	805
Case Editor Final - Attack Agent Tab .....	805
Case Editor Final - Incident Information Tab .....	806
Case Editor Final - Vulnerability Tab .....	806
Case Editor Final - Other Tab .....	806
Case Editor Events Tab .....	807
Case Editor Attachments Tab .....	807
Case Editor Notes Tab .....	807
Cases .....	807
Case Groups .....	808
Categories .....	808
Event Categories .....	808
Asset Categories .....	809
Object Category .....	810
Behavior Category .....	812
Outcome Category .....	813
Device Group Category .....	814

Technique Category .....	814
Significance Category .....	817
Collaboration .....	817
Common Conditions Editor (CCE) .....	818
Editor Features .....	818
Condition Tree Command Buttons .....	820
Condition Tree Context Menu Commands .....	822
Adding Conditions .....	825
Search Box to Find Fields in the List .....	826
Field Comparisons with Variable or Static Values .....	827
Using Field Sets .....	828
Adding or Removing Global Variables Using the CCE .....	829
Testing for Zone Relevance .....	831
How to Create a Matching or Join Rule .....	832
Conditional Statements .....	832
Variables .....	833
Conditions .....	833
Parameterized Conditions .....	833
Content .....	834
Content Packages .....	834
Custom Content .....	835
SmartConnector Content .....	835
CORR-Engine .....	835
Correlation .....	835
Correlation Rule .....	835
Customers .....	836
Dashboards .....	836
Dashboard Context Menu Commands .....	836
Data Fields .....	837
Connector Group .....	838
Attacker Group .....	841
Category Group .....	844
Destination Group .....	845
Device Group .....	848
Device Custom Group .....	852
Event Group .....	854
Event Annotation Group .....	858
File Group .....	861
Final Device Group .....	862
Flex Group .....	864
Manager Group .....	865
Old File Group .....	865
Original Connector Group .....	866

Request Group .....	869
Source Group .....	870
Target Group .....	873
Threat Group .....	876
Resource Attributes .....	877
Geographical Attributes .....	878
Data Monitors .....	878
Asset Category Count Data Monitor .....	879
Event Correlation Data Monitor .....	880
Event Graph Data Monitor .....	881
Event Reconciliation Data Monitor .....	882
Correlation-Event-Generating Fields .....	884
Geographic Event Graph Data Monitor .....	886
Hierarchy Map Data Monitor .....	886
Feature Enhancements .....	886
Use Cases .....	887
Defining a Hierarchy Map Data Monitor .....	887
Adding Variables .....	889
Specifying the Source Node Identifiers .....	889
Specifying Group Attributes .....	891
Hierarchy Map Display and Visualization Controls .....	892
Hourly Counts Data Monitor .....	895
Last N Events Data Monitor .....	896
Last State Data Monitor .....	897
Options for Table and Tile Views .....	899
Moving Average Data Monitor .....	901
Rules Partial Match Data Monitor .....	904
Session Reconciliation Data Monitor .....	905
Statistics Data Monitor .....	906
System Monitor Data Monitor .....	909
System Monitor Attribute Data Monitor .....	909
Top Value Counts Data Monitor .....	910
Data Monitor Expressions .....	912
Supported Data Monitor Expression Operators .....	912
Supported Data Monitor Expression Functions .....	913
Device .....	913
Event Inspector .....	913
Field Sets .....	914
Events .....	914
Base Events .....	914
Event Categorization .....	915
Field Sets .....	916
Filters .....	917

Filtering Options .....	917
Global Variables .....	918
Grid View .....	918
iDefense .....	919
Inspect/Edit Panel .....	920
Job Scheduler .....	920
Knowledge Base .....	920
Logical Operators .....	920
Managed Security Service Providers (MSSPs) .....	923
Manager .....	923
Navigator Panel .....	923
Notifications .....	923
Notification Operation .....	923
Testing Notification Escalations .....	924
Notification Destinations .....	925
Notification Acknowledgements .....	925
Packages .....	925
Pattern Discovery .....	926
Pattern Concepts .....	926
Discovering Patterns .....	928
Pattern Analysis .....	928
Initial Phase .....	928
Routine Pattern Processing .....	928
Workflow Management .....	928
Pattern Analysis .....	929
Pattern Disposition .....	929
Pattern Expertise .....	929
Workflow .....	929
Visualization .....	930
Applications .....	930
Payload .....	930
Prioritization Fields .....	931
Priority Calculations and Ratings .....	932
Priority Elements .....	934
Priority Operators .....	935
MaxValue Attribute .....	935
Weight Attribute .....	935
Priority Rating .....	936
Queries .....	937
Queries and Trends .....	937
Building and Running Queries .....	937
Query Viewers .....	937
Reference Pages .....	938

Regex (Regular Expressions) .....	938
Perl Constructs not Supported in Java .....	938
Java Constructs not Supported in Perl .....	938
Notable Differences from Perl .....	939
Character Matches .....	939
Reports .....	940
Working with Report Templates, Queries, and Trends .....	940
Viewing and Managing Reports .....	940
Archived Reports .....	941
Report Groups .....	941
Delta Reports .....	941
Report Parameters .....	942
Running Reports .....	942
ArcSight-Provided Reports .....	942
Report Templates .....	943
Resources .....	943
Valid and Invalid Resources .....	944
Fixing and Validating Resources .....	944
Troubleshooting (Requirements for Valid Resources) .....	946
Automatic and Manual Validation .....	947
Resource Attributes .....	947
Rule Actions .....	949
Active List Rule Actions .....	949
Execute Connector Command Rule Actions .....	949
Rule Conditions .....	950
Rules .....	951
Rules Processing and Correlation .....	951
Rule Groups .....	953
Scheduled Rules .....	953
Rule-triggering Timing .....	954
Rule Chains .....	954
Variables .....	954
Rules Editor .....	954
Scheduling Jobs .....	954
To schedule a job .....	955
To view all scheduled jobs .....	956
Troubleshooting Tips .....	956
Schema .....	956
Avoiding Field Naming Collisions .....	956
Event Fields .....	957
Precise Event Categorization .....	957
Send Logs .....	958
Guidelines for Using the Send Logs Utility .....	959

Options for Running Diagnostics and Sending Logs .....	959
Starting the Send Logs Wizard on the ArcSight Console .....	959
Session Correlation .....	960
Why Session Correlation Matters .....	960
Session Lists .....	961
SmartConnectors .....	961
Operational Status .....	962
Configuration .....	962
Zones .....	963
Upgrading .....	963
Filtering .....	963
SMTP .....	964
Sortable Field Sets .....	964
Sorting Columns in Grid Views .....	964
Status Monitor Events .....	965
Active Channel Statistics .....	965
Active List Statistics .....	966
Asset Statistics .....	967
Data Monitor Statistics .....	968
Event Broker Statistics .....	968
Filter Engine Statistics .....	969
Main Flow Statistics .....	969
Notification Statistics .....	969
Pattern Discovery Statistics .....	970
Report Statistics .....	970
Resource Framework Statistics .....	970
Rules Engine Statistics .....	971
Session List Statistics .....	972
Session Management Statistics .....	973
SmartConnector Flow Statistics .....	973
Templates .....	974
Threat .....	975
Threat Evaluation .....	975
Evaluation Process .....	975
Evaluation Definitions .....	975
Maintaining Model Confidence .....	976
Using Threat Evaluation Information .....	976
Limitations and Workarounds .....	976
Thresholds .....	977
Time Error Correction .....	977
Timestamps .....	977
Security Events .....	978
Resources .....	978



General Information .....	978
Timestamp Variables .....	979
Inclusive Timestamps .....	979
Time Zone Correction .....	979
Trends .....	980
Understanding Trends and Queries .....	980
Building Trends .....	980
Upgrade SmartConnectors .....	980
User Groups .....	981
Users .....	981
User Types .....	982
Variables .....	982
About Functions .....	983
About Remote Variables .....	983
Local and Global Variables .....	984
Variable Definition Fields .....	985
Variable Functions .....	985
Alias Functions .....	986
Arithmetic Functions .....	986
Category Model Functions .....	988
Condition Functions .....	988
Group Functions .....	989
IP Address Functions .....	991
List Functions .....	991
String Functions .....	991
Timestamp Functions .....	992
Type Conversion Functions .....	995
Value List Functions .....	996
Variable Availability and Contexts .....	998
Variable Functions for In-Memory Operations .....	998
Velocity Templates .....	999
Velocity Application Points .....	999
Using Velocity Expressions to Retrieve Values from Event Fields or Variables .....	1000
Retrieving Values from Event Fields .....	1000
Using Variables in a Velocity Expression .....	1001
Using Velocity Expressions in Rule Actions .....	1001
Example of Rule Action that Uses Velocity Expressions to Retrieve Values .....	1001
Examples .....	1002
Usage Tips .....	1002
Velocity References for Reports .....	1003
Views .....	1007
View Types .....	1007
Other Views .....	1008

Dashboards ..... 1008

Vulnerabilities ..... 1008

    Vulnerability Groups ..... 1008

    Standardized Vulnerability Tracking ..... 1009

Web Browsers ..... 1009

    Browser Preferences for HTML Displays ..... 1009

    Browser Preference Overrides for Specific Features ..... 1009

    Browser Display Requirements ..... 1010

**Index..... 1012**

## Chapter 1

# Getting Started

---

ESM is a comprehensive software solution that combines traditional security event monitoring with network intelligence, context correlation, anomaly detection, historical analysis tools, and automated remediation. It consolidates and normalizes data from disparate devices across your enterprise network in a centralized view.

[“Starting the ArcSight Console” on page 39](#)

[“Quick Start Tools and Content” on page 39](#)

[“Network Model Wizard” on page 40](#)

[“Configuration and Using Standard Content” on page 40](#)

[“ArcSight Web” on page 40](#)

[“ArcSight Command Center” on page 40](#)

## Starting the ArcSight Console

Start the ArcSight Console as you would any other application. The login mechanism varies according to the type of authentication you have set up during installation. For example, you might have chosen shortcuts through desktop icons, system tray, or Start menu.

Alternatively, open a command window in the Console's `bin` directory and type

```
arcsight console
```

If you are using SSL authentication, set it up and import the certificate as described in the Administrator's Guide's "Configuration" chapter, in the section entitled "Understanding SSL Authentication." After the certificate is imported, you can start the console without entering a user ID or password.

If you are using password authentication, see the Administrator's Guide's "Configuration" chapter, in the section entitled "Managing Password Configuration." Log in with your user ID and password. Certificates are imported automatically.

If you have selected "Password or SSL Authentication," you choose which way to log in, each time.

## Quick Start Tools and Content

The ArcSight Console serves as the control point for administrators to configure content and resources, set up [ArcSight Web](#) access for Web users, and manage, monitor, and respond to network security issues across the enterprise.

A [Network Model Wizard](#) is provided to facilitate the process of describing network devices and assets.

Also, a set of coordinated *Resources* (filters, rules, dashboards, reports, and so on) is provided to address common security and management tasks. the set of standard content is designed to give you comprehensive correlation, monitoring, reporting, alerting, and case management out of the box, with minimal configuration required on the Console. See [“Configuration and Using Standard Content” on page 40](#).

## Network Model Wizard

The Network Model wizard enables you to quickly populate the network model by loading asset and zone information from Comma Separated Values (CSV) files. The following data can be imported into a Manager from CSV files:

- **Zones** define functional parts of a network, such as a wireless LAN, an engineering network, a VPN or a DMZ.
- **Assets** represent individual nodes on the network, such as servers and routers.
- **Asset ranges** represent sets of network nodes addressable as a contiguous block of IP addresses. Asset ranges are useful when you have many network nodes that would be impractical to track individually, or that may come and go from the network, such as laptops.

For more about the Network Model wizard and instructions how to use it, see [“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707](#).

## Configuration and Using Standard Content

For information about standard System or Administration content, refer to the Standard Content Guide — ArcSight Core Security, ArcSight Administration, and ArcSight System. For information about an optional ArcSight Foundation, refer to the Standard Content Guide for that Foundation. ESM documentation is available on Protect 724 at (<https://protect724.hp.com>).

## ArcSight Web

[ArcSight Web](#) provides full event monitoring and drill-down capabilities in a streamlined interface. The Web server comes with the ArcSight Manager installation.

The ArcSight Web interface can also be branded with your company logo.

Refer to the ArcSight Web User's Guide for more details.

## ArcSight Command Center

ArcSight Command Center is a Web-based interface for viewing dashboards, run reports, and execute event searches with ease. It is the only interface that allows you to synchronize your ESM content across multiple instances from a primary ESM source. Searches can range from simple key words to complex expressions, and can include searches across peer ESM installations. Searches and filters can be saved for reuse. Saved searches and filters appear as resources on ArcSight Console to leverage resource grouping and packaging features.

# Working in the ArcSight Console

---

In addition to the security analysis, historical analysis, response, and reporting capabilities built into the ArcSight Console, the Console itself is a tool with its own characteristics and specialized controls. The Help topics in this section describe the basics of using ArcSight Console tools and controls to make the most of its features.

[“Navigating” on page 41](#)

[“Viewing” on page 47](#)

[“Inspecting and Editing” on page 50](#)

[“Controlling the ArcSight Console” on page 52](#)

[“Using the Network Tools” on page 54](#)

[“Staying Informed” on page 57](#)

[“Using the Menus” on page 61](#)

[“Using Right-Click Context Menus” on page 65](#)

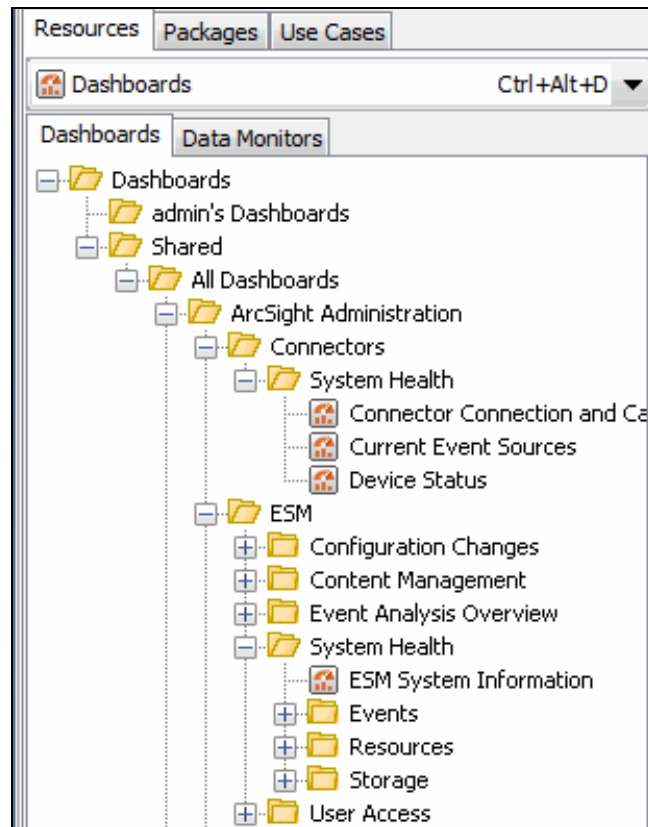
[“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#)

[“Moving Copying, Linking, and Deleting Resources” on page 68](#)

[“Printing from the Console” on page 69](#)

## Navigating

The primary principle of navigating in the ArcSight Console is to use the Navigator panel to locate and manage security resources, and the Viewer and Inspect/Edit panels to analyze resource data and view or adjust the attributes of the resources producing the data.



**Figure 2-1** The Navigator panel showing the Dashboards resource tree

Using the Navigator panel, you can:












- Choose a resource tree from the drop-down list.
- Expand (+) and collapse (-) resource groups to locate particular subgroups or individual resources. You can also use the keyboard **right arrow** key to expand and **left arrow** key to collapse the Navigator resource trees.
- Right-click groups or individual resources to choose from their context menus.

The resources available in the Navigator panel can be affected by permissions set for your user type.













Use the Viewer or Inspect/Edit panels to see or act on the results of the context menu commands.

## Navigator Panel Resource Tree

**Table 2-1** Resource Tree on the Console's Navigator Panel

Tree	Icon	Resource
Active Channels		Create, modify, and delete security-event views that actively and continuously evaluate the events they display, on the basis of time and other filter conditions. This view also includes the Field Sets resource tree for managing named field sets. See <a href="#">Chapter 3, Monitoring Events, on page 77</a> .
Actors		Map humans or agents to activity in applications and on the network, and identify actors behind events. Actors is a separately licensed feature available with the ArcSight Identity View solution. See <a href="#">Chapter 8, Actors, on page 189</a> .
Assets		Security-sensitive devices and device groups installed in your enterprise, and the known exposures to potential threats those devices may represent. Assets also includes the related network, zone, location, category, and vulnerability information you use to manage network devices. See <a href="#">"About the Network Model" on page 695</a> .
Cases		Enterprise security incident cases, by status and priority. See <a href="#">Chapter 17, Case Management and Queries, on page 531</a> .
Connectors		The SmartConnectors currently installed at your enterprise. See <a href="#">Chapter 22, Managing SmartConnectors, on page 657</a> .
Customers		Manage resources that represent the security concerns of particular MSSP (Managed Security Services Provider) clients. See <a href="#">"Managing Customers" on page 730</a> .
Dashboards		Various event data monitors and their containing dashboards. See <a href="#">"Using Dashboards" on page 102</a> .
Field Sets		Define subsets of available data fields so you can quickly focus a grid view, an Event Inspector, or other field arrays on a particular context. See <a href="#">Chapter 5, Field Sets, on page 155</a> .
Files		The Files resource tree, when populated, lists files saved as resources on the Manager. This makes them accessible to all users of the system who are authorized for such access. File resources include Case file attachments, templates, and general-purpose shared files. See <a href="#">"Managing File Resources" on page 623</a> .
Filters		Event filtering definitions, organized in groups. See <a href="#">Chapter 7, Filtering Events, on page 175</a> and <a href="#">"Using Filter Groups" on page 182</a> .
Integration Commands		Application integration resources used to configure and launch commands, tools, and views in custom and third party applications and other ArcSight products from within the ArcSight Console. Provides the ability to configure custom scripts, URLs, and Connector commands, and integrate them into the Console UI in various contexts. Leverages velocity expressions and the UI contexts for pulling the content of event data, for example, as command parameter values. Provides support for ArcSight Network Synergy Platform (NSP) and Threat Response Manager (TRM). See <a href="#">Chapter 18, Integration Commands, on page 549</a> .

**Table 2-1** Resource Tree on the Console's Navigator Panel (Continued)

Tree	Icon	Resource
Knowledge Base		A database of articles and groups of articles that aid problem-solving, analysis, and operation. See <a href="#">“Getting Knowledge Base Articles” on page 174</a> and <a href="#">Chapter 19, Knowledge Base Authoring, on page 591</a> .
Lists		<p>Active Lists are lists of active source and target IP addresses of interest, as defined by enterprise rules. See <a href="#">“Managing Active Lists” on page 511</a> for more information.</p> <p>Session Lists are similar to active lists, but are optimized for time-based queries and monitoring of rule-driven combinations of event attributes or custom fields. See <a href="#">Chapter 15, Identity Correlation, on page 487</a> for more information.</p>
Notifications		Destinations and settings for the automatic messages that alert you to pre-defined situations or events. See <a href="#">“Acknowledging Notifications” on page 58</a> and <a href="#">“Managing Notifications” on page 615</a> .
Pattern Discovery		Profiles to capture, and snapshots of, potentially threatening event patterns. See <a href="#">“Pattern Discovery” on page 131</a> .
Query Viewers		A resource for defining and running SQL queries on other ESM resources (independent of reports), including trends, assets, cases, connectors, events, and so forth. Each query viewer contains an SQL query along with other logic for establishing and comparing baseline results, analyzing historical data to find patterns in network activity, and performing drill-down investigation on a particular aspect of the results. Query viewers can use the same queries as reports do, but can be run independently of them. See <a href="#">Chapter 9, Query Viewers, on page 227</a> .
Reports		Definitions for, and archived output from, various activity reports. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379</a> and <a href="#">Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275</a> .
Rules		Rules and groups of rules created for isolating, analyzing, and responding to events. See <a href="#">Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397</a> .
Saved Searches, Search Filters	 	<p>Saved Searches and Search Filters are created on the ArcSight Command Center. Refer to the ArcSight Command Center User's Guide for information on how to create searches, then save them as searches or as filters.</p> <p>These resources are displayed on the ArcSight Console for packaging purposes. See <a href="#">Chapter 21, Managing Resources, on page 623</a> and the topic, <a href="#">“Managing Packages” on page 644</a>.</p>
Stages		Workflow and annotation features for real-time analyst collaboration on security events.
Use Cases		<p>Resource collections that address common security issues and business requirements.</p> <p>When use cases are installed, a Use Case tab is displayed in the Navigator panel. A wizard is available for configuration of the use case resources. See <a href="#">“Use Cases” on page 457</a>.</p>
Users		ArcSight users and user groups. See <a href="#">Chapter 20, Managing Users and Permissions, on page 597</a> .



## Using SmartFolders

ArcSight has special, automatically maintained folders to track the results of your case searches or to track your currently selected replay rules and currently running reports. When you create them, these folders appear just below the root of each resource type in the Navigator, prefixed with your ArcSight user name.

### Creating a Case-Search SmartFolder

#### To create a case-search SmartFolder:

- 1 Right-click a folder in the Cases tree and choose **New Search Group** in the context menu to open the Search Group Editor.
- 2 Use the Editor to define a search that updates dynamically each time a change occurs to one of your cases.

A given group contains the result of this search when it is applied to those cases.

### Creating a Reports SmartFolder

The Reports tree in the Navigator panel shows a folder for each user name and the suffix "Reports." These folders list the reports that user is applying, and the right-click context menu offers the commands available for those reports. These folders are maintained automatically and you cannot change them.

You can use this feature to control report runs. For example, if a report is running too long and you would like to end it, right-click it and choose **Stop Report**.



Reports you run using the **Run** button in the Report Editor are initiated outside the usual Console processes. These reports do not appear in, and are not controllable from, the Reports tree in the Navigator.

## Editing Resource Groups

You can group resource types in the Navigator panel to help you organize and manage them. Groups can also be hierarchical, resulting in "trees" of resources. Apart from the characteristics of the resources involved, such as assets or vulnerabilities, each group identity has certain properties you can edit in the Group Editor.

### Editing a Resource Group

#### To edit a resource group:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click a resource group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, click the **Value** fields for the group attributes you want to change.
- 3 Click **Apply** to put your changes into effect but leave the editor open. Click **OK** to apply your changes and also close the editor.

Fields containing system information (like Creation Time) are not editable.

See ["Reference Pages" on page 938](#) for more about using the **Group Page** and **Member's Page** fields.

See ["Scheduling Jobs" on page 954](#) for information about scheduling tasks or "jobs" for reports (individually or by group), rules, or Pattern Discovery snapshots.

## Categories Tab

The Group Editor for groups in the Assets tab of the Assets resource tree has an additional Categories tab. This tab has two sub panels: Local Asset Categories and Inherited Asset Categories. "Local" shows assets that are explicitly assigned to categories. "Inherited" shows assets whose category connections are presumptions based on a parent's group or a simple asset-range association.

## Viewing Group Cases in a Grid View

When you right-click a case group in the Cases resource tree in the Navigator panel, and choose **View in Grid**, you see that group's cases listed in a Case Details view in the Viewer panel. Click any case in the grid to work with it individually. You can also:

- Right-click any column heading to get a menu of column configuration options.
- Right-click any individual case's fields to get a menu of case handling options, described below.

Option	Description
New Case	Create a new case.
Edit Case	Open a case in the Inspect/Edit panel for editing.
Delete Case	Delete the selected case.
Case Detail Channel	Display the base events added to the case.
Export to external system	Export the case to an external tracking system.
Edit case by ID	Find a case by its Display ID value.
Select rows with matching cell	Select cases where all values in a particular column have the same value or entry.
Invert selection	Reverse selection and highlighting of a previous selected group of cases.
Close	Clear the Case Details view.
Refresh	Refresh the Case Details view to reflect new or deleted cases and information updated in existing cases.
Knowledge Base	Show Knowledge Base information associated with cases.

## Batch Editing

You can make common edits to multiple case or SmartConnector resources by selecting a set of either type in the Navigator panel and changing their common fields in the Case or Connector Editor.

### Batch-Editing Cases or Connectors

**To batch-edit cases or connectors:**

- 1 **Ctrl+click** or **Shift+click** to select a set of individual cases or SmartConnectors in their respective resource trees in the Navigator panel.
- 2 **Right-click** the selected items and choose **Edit**.

- 3 Make changes to the appropriate common fields, such as **Description** or **Owner**.
- 4 Click **Apply** to record your changes and leave the editor open, or click **OK** to save and close. Saving affects only the fields you have changed, in each of the selected resources.

## Cases Reminder

You can also lock and unlock cases in batches, using the **Lock Case** check box.

## SmartConnector Reminders

Batch changes affect only default configurations, not alternates. However, you can add new alternate configurations by batch editing.

Note that if you make changes under the **Filters** tab, the entire tab's contents are saved to the selected SmartConnectors.

Only connectors of the same version can be batch-edited.

## Reconnecting to the Manager

If your ArcSight Console loses its connection to the Manager, a dialog box enables you to **Retry** the connection, **Relogin**, or to **Cancel** the connection. Try these options in this order.

A connection to the Manager can't be re-established when the Manager has to be restarted or when a network problem prevents communication with the same Manager. In such cases click **Cancel** and start the Console again, using an appropriate Manager host name.

## Viewing

This section provides information on using the Console Viewer Panel and choosing look-and-feel options (skins) for the ArcSight Console.

### Viewer Panel

You see the products of security-event analyses in the Viewer panel, which can display several different types of views. (See also [“Using Views” on page 77](#).)

Although there are some views that display information about resources, most views are active channels, which are continuously evaluated collections of security-event data. (See also, [“Monitoring Active Channels” on page 77](#).)



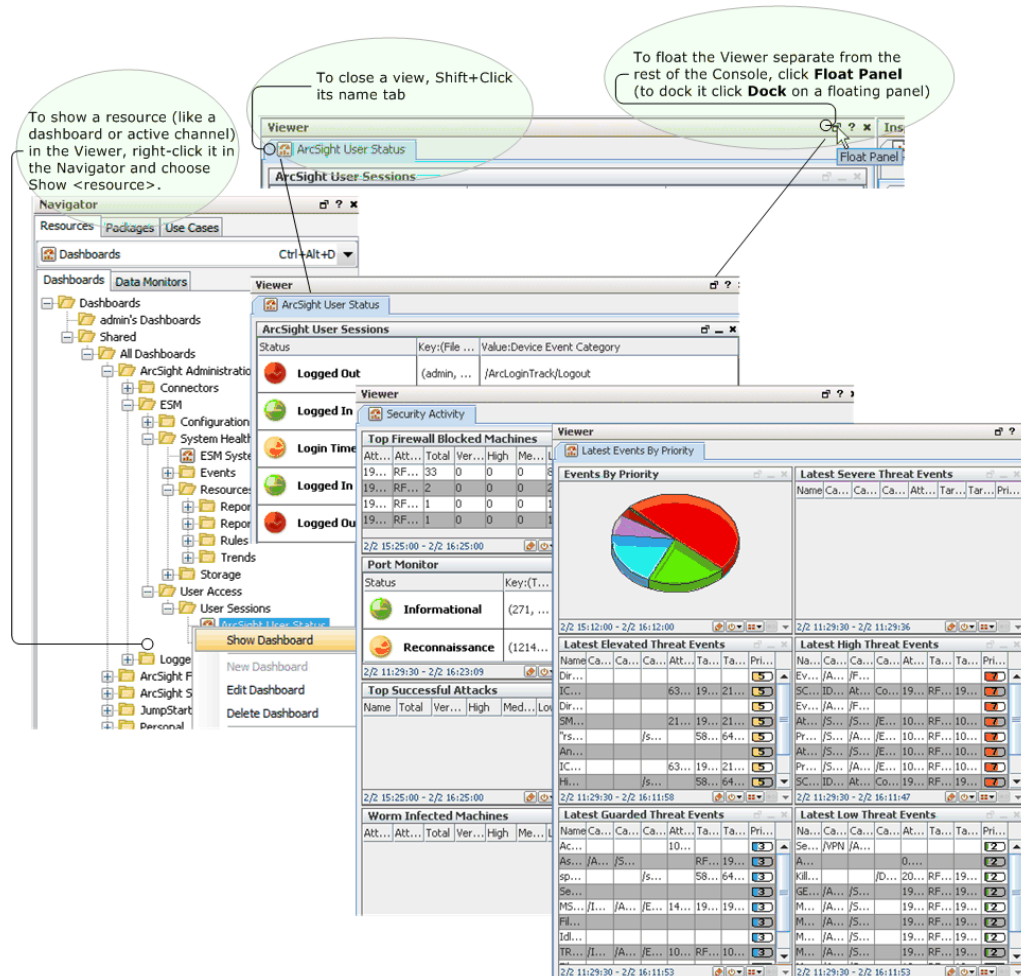
#### Tips:

- To show a resource (like a particular dashboard or active channel) in the viewer, right-click it in the Navigator tree and choose Show <resource>.
- To close individual views quickly, Shift+click their name tabs. (You can also right-click a view name tab and choose Close from the popup menu.)
- To float the Viewer panel, click the Float icon at the top left of the Viewer.

The Viewer panel can also internally render basic HTML, meaning that it automatically shows HTML-based reports, reference pages, results for the Web Search tool, and notification acknowledgements. More complex HTML that might include JavaScript, plug-ins, or other embedded objects is, for security reasons, still rendered in the external

browser you specify through the Preferences dialog box. The external browser is also used by PDF document files.

The **Viewer** tabs in the Viewer panel have a live link at the top. You can click these links to open the contents in an external, fully functional browser window.



If your Console is not already displaying a default set of pre-defined views, or you want to change the views displayed, you can use these options:

- Choose **Window > Viewer Panel** to open the panel if it isn't open.
- Choose the **Active Channels**, **Dashboards**, or **Pattern Discovery** resource trees in the Navigator panel to find analysis tools or results to view.
- Right-click a resource in a tree and choose **Show <resource>** to open it in the Viewer panel.
- When multiple tabbed views are open in the panel, click the tabs at the **top** of the panel to choose the active channel you want to see, and the tabs at the **bottom** of the panel to choose which view of that active channel should be foremost.

To close an individual view, **Shift+click** its name tab. (You can also right-click a view name tab and choose **Close** from the popup menu.)

Using active channels and the many types of views they offer is fully covered in the topics under these headings:

- Monitoring Events
- Selecting and Investigating Events
- Using Dashboards

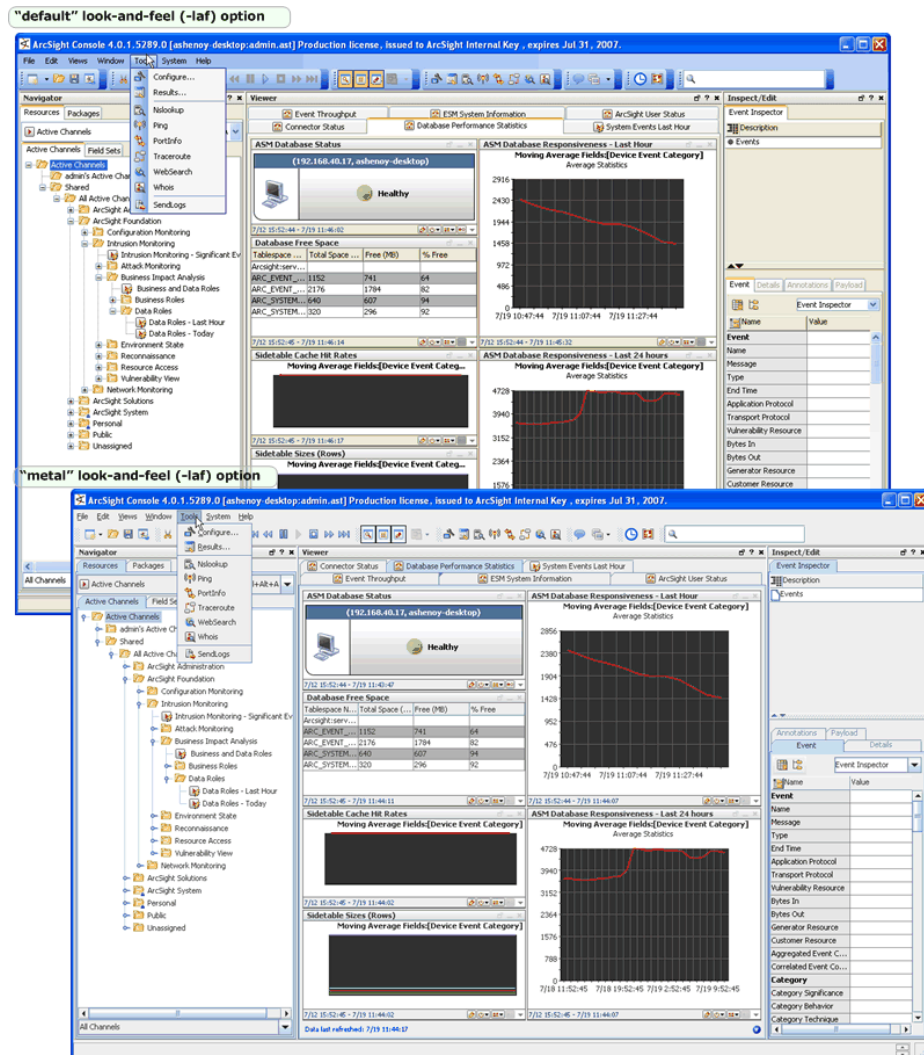
## ArcSight Console Look-and-Feel

If you start the ArcSight Console from the command line with the **arcsight console** command (in `ARCSIGHT_HOME/current/bin`), use the `-laf <style>` flag to specify a look-and-feel style. For example, the following command starts the Console with a "metal" look-and-feel:

```
arcsight console -laf metal
```

The other possible styles are `plastic`, the default for Unix, and `plastic3d`.

These styles modify the Console display and associated online help. The figure below shows what the ArcSight Console looks like when started with the default and metal styles.



The screen captures and illustrations used throughout the ArcSight Console online help show various look-and-feel styles.

## Inspecting and Editing

ArcSight Console provides the Inspect/Edit panel to examine the details of events that appear in active channels in the Viewer panel, or to modify the resource attributes in the Navigator panel. You can examine security events through the Inspect/Edit panel's Event Inspector, and edit resources using specialized editors, one for each specific resource type.



Press Enter to register edits made in editors and channel columns

To ensure that ESM registers a change you make to a field in editor and channel columns, press the Enter key before clicking **Apply** or **OK**.

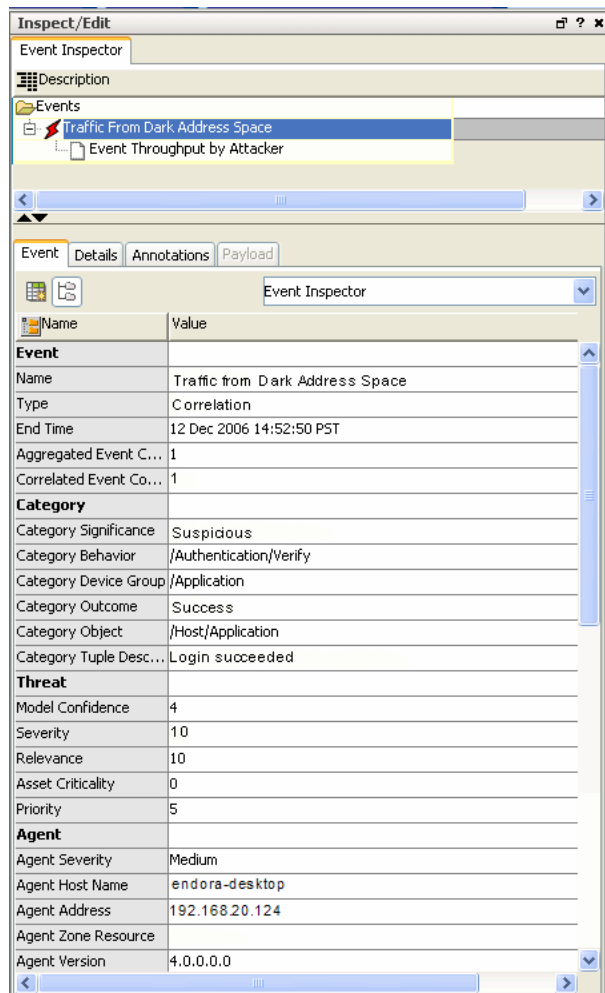
---

See also:




- [“Hiding Empty Rows in the Event Inspector” on page 167](#)
- [“Displaying Articles from the Event Inspector” on page 174](#)
- [“Retrieving Payloads” on page 173](#)
- [“Event Inspector” on page 913.](#)

## Overview of Inspect/Edit Features and Utilities

Each editor has its own controls and attributes, described in the Help for its resource.

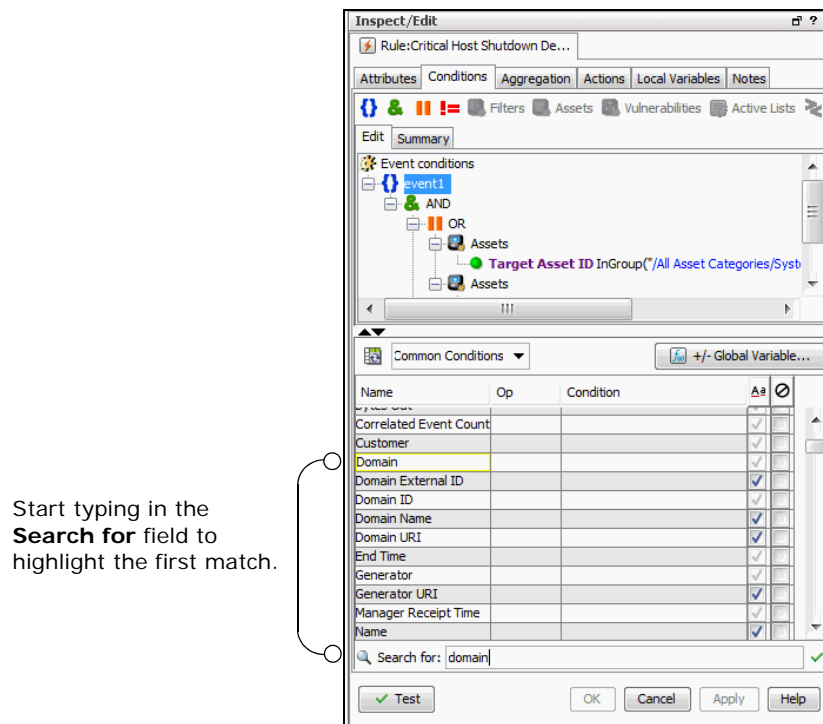


The Inspect/Edit panel opens automatically when you double-click an event in a grid view or choose to edit a resource in the Navigator panel. You can also right-click an event in a grid view and choose **Show Event Details**. To explore the Inspect/Edit panel, you can:

- Choose **Window > Inspect/Edit Panel** to open or restore the panel, if it already has inspectors or editors in it. If no inspectors or editors are open, the panel isn't available.
- When no editors or inspectors are open, or to work with different ones, double-click an event in a grid view or right-click an item in a Navigator panel resource tree and choose **Show <resource>**.
- To clear an editor from the Inspect/Edit panel, right-click its tab and choose **Close**.
- Click the **Hide Empty Rows** button (  ) beside the **Select a Field Set** menu to see only populated fields.
- Click the **New Field Set** button (  ) to create a new field set.
- Click the icon toggle button (  ) to show/hide icons next to each field entry.

## Searching for Fields in Event Inspector, Resource Editors, or CCE

To find an item in a list of fields on the Event Inspector, any Resource Editor, or the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#), start typing the search string in the Search for field at the bottom of the panel. The search is predictive in that it will navigate to and select matching fields as you type. The Search utility works essentially the same way in the Event Inspector and in resource editors that use field sets and filters (and, by association, the CCE).



If you start to type a term that is not in the field list, the search text turns red. If you backspace and start deleting text, the text will change from red to black when a matching field is found. Resume typing to find another matching term.

To exit the Search, press the **Enter** key.

### Getting More Help

The best way to learn more about the Event Inspector and each of the many resource editors is to click the question mark button ( ? ) in the upper-right corner of the Inspect/Edit panel or **Help** button ( Help ) in the lower right of a resource editor.

## Controlling the ArcSight Console








The ArcSight Console has certain common controls that you might use at any time to do basic tasks like copying and pasting, and showing or hiding panels or the status bar.

The controls you use the most are the toolbar buttons. There are four toolbars under the menus at the top of the Console. Each button has an identifying tool tip, but the full descriptions are as follows.



To show or hide toolbar components, right-click the toolbar and select or deselect the sections you want to change.

**Table 2-2** ArcSight Console's Toolbar Components

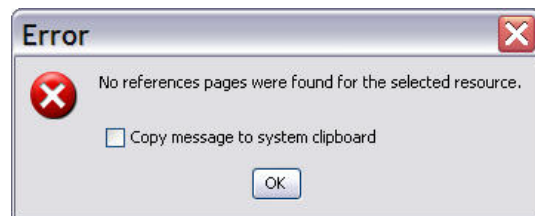
Command Group	Icons	Functions
File		<b>New resource</b> , <b>Open</b> , and <b>Save</b> . Saving and opening applies to ArcSight Console settings (.ast) files.
Edit		The <b>Cut</b> , <b>Copy</b> , <b>Paste</b> , <b>Delete</b> , and <b>Search</b> , buttons operate as they do in any application. Cutting, copying, and pasting applies to text and resources.
Channel controls		The Replay buttons have essentially the same functions in certain views in the Viewer panel as their counterparts do on VCRs or CD players. From left to right, the buttons are: <b>Rewind to Start</b> , <b>Rewind Incrementally</b> , <b>Pause</b> , <b>Play</b> , <b>Stop</b> , <b>Go Forward Incrementally</b> , and <b>Go Forward to End</b> . You use the Replay buttons when working with channels configured for this mode.
Window		Click the <b>Show/Hide</b> buttons to open/close the Navigator, Viewer, and Inspect/Edit panels and status or menu bars. Click the <b>Floating</b> button to bring floating windows forward.
Network Tools		These buttons run standard IP-based network analysis tools as described in <a href="#">"Using the Network Tools" on page 54</a> .
System		Open a <b>scheduled jobs</b> list and add user categorizations to selected <b>events</b> .
View		The red <b>Acknowledge Notifications</b> button in the toolbar line tells you when you have messages to acknowledge. Click the button to open the Notifications manager in the Viewer panel so you can acknowledge the notification and resolve the issue. If the button is blue, you have no notifications. The <b>Slide Show</b> button enables you to start an image dashboard slide show and set the interval.

**Table 2-2** ArcSight Console's Toolbar Components (Continued)

Command Group	Icons	Functions
Status Bar		<p>The status bar is across the bottom of the Console window. Use the <b>Window &gt; Status Bar</b> menu command to toggle it on or off. When the status bar is showing, it displays Console operation messages. Normal status messages appear in blue and error messages are red.</p> <p>To view details on a message, click the message in the status bar. The ArcSight Messages dialog is displayed with the current message highlighted. From this dialog, you can access console messages, system messages and user notifications.</p> <p>To copy any message from the Messages dialog, highlight it and click <b>Copy</b>. The message is copied to the clipboard along with associated date and time. You can then paste the message into any other window, mail program, or editor that accepts ASCII text.</p>
Menu Bar		You use the menus in the menu bar as described in <a href="#">"Using the Menus" on page 61</a> .

## Error and Warning Messages

Certain error messages, warnings, and notifications appear in a small dialog. To capture the error message and supporting data, click the Copy button or check **Copy message to system clipboard** to copy the entire message to the Clipboard. You can then paste the error message in text fields in the ArcSight Console, into the body of an e-mail message, or other applications.



## Using the Network Tools

The network tools, shown here, are also available from the Tools menu.



ArcSight provides **Network Model**, **Use Case**, **Name Server Lookup**, **Ping**, **Port Usage**, **Trace**, **WebSearch**, and **Who is** as default utilities. Most of these tools are utilities you use to investigate events in grid views. In a grid view, you right-click an event to access these tools from a context menu. A wizard-based utility called **Send Logs** gathers logs and diagnostic information for review or which you can email to customer support.

You can add, copy, edit, or delete network tools using the Tools menu in the menu bar. The toolbar buttons and menu commands adjust automatically to such changes.



The Network Tools are also available as *integration commands* (see [“Network Tools as Integration Commands” on page 589](#) in [Integration Commands](#)).

These tools are available in both places on the Console UI, but for future releases the legacy “network tools” feature described here will be phased out in favor of the integrations commands. The same, customizable tools and commands will be available (**ping**, **whois**, and so on), along with other new commands and a full set of application integration features.










To configure these tools, choose menu option **Tools > Local Commands > Configure**, as described in the following topics.

## Running a Tools Command

### To run a tools command:

- 1 In a grid view, select an IP address.
- 2 Right-click and select **Tools**, then one of the tool options described in [“Network Tool Default Option” on page 56](#).
- 3 Based on the tool selected, a window appears with the information.
- 4 In the window, click **Close**.

## Network Tool Default Option

Tree	Icon	Resource
Network Model		Configure the network model. This button launches the Network Model wizard.
Use Case		Configure a use case.
Local Commands		
Nslookup		Resolve an IP address to a host or domain name or vice versa.
Ping		Determine whether an IP address in the selected cell is online. Test and debug a network by sending a packet and waiting for a response.
PortInfo		List standard usage, for example, WWW, FTP, and so on for a specified port number.
Traceroute		Show the path from the ArcSight Console to the IP address selected in the grid view, reporting the IP addresses of all routers in between.
WebSearch		Search the Web through Google to find links to the keywords present in currently selected active channel grid view cells.
Whois		Look up who is behind a given domain name; information might include addresses and telephone numbers.
Send Logs		Access this from the <b>Tools &gt; Send Logs</b> menu. Start the Send Logs wizard to gather logs and diagnostic information. Logs and diagnostics can be collected for all or a selected set of ArcSight components. (See <a href="#">“Send Logs” on page 958.</a> )

## Adding a Tool

### To add a tool:


- 1 Choose **Tools > Local Commands > Configure**.
- 2 In the Configure Tools window, click **New**.
- 3 In the Tool window, edit the Name, Program, Working Directory, Icon, and Program Parameters (command line parameters to be used for the program) text fields.
- 4 Click **OK**, then **Done**.

## Configure (Edit) a Tool

To configure (edit) a tool:

- 1 Choose menu command **Tools > Local Commands > Configure**.
- 2 In the Configure Tools window, select an existing tool and click **Edit**.

- 3 In the Tool window, set these parameters and options:

Option	Description
Name	User-friendly name for this tool.
Program	Path to the executable file.
Working Directory	Default location assumed for arguments to the command. For example, to create a command (for example, <b>delete &lt;file&gt;.ast</b> ) that acts on a file type that always resides in the same directory, specify the location here to save users from having to provide the full path to the file each time they use the command.
Icon	Path to the icon image file used to represent the tool.
Program Parameters	Provide any parameters needed for the command. You can type parameters in the field, or click the  button to get a pull-out menu where you can select Event Attributes to use as parameters, or add the <code>selected cell</code> or <code>selected row</code> as parameters to the command.
Show in toolbar	When <code>Show in toolbar</code> is on, the tool icon is shown in the Console toolbar. By default, this option is selected.
Use with data export	The purpose of this option is to separate tools that are run against events in channels and tools used as a destinations for event export. By default, this option is not selected (off). If this tool is to be used as a destination for event export, select <code>Use with data export</code> . If this tool contains a command that will run against events in a channel, leave <code>Use with data export</code> off.

- 4 **Name, Program, Working Directory, Icon, and Program Parameters** (command line parameters to be used for the program) text fields. Also select whether you an the tool to show in the toolbar
- 5 Click **OK**, then **Done**.

## Deleting a Tool

### To delete a tool:


- 1 Choose menu command **Tools >Local Commands > Configure**.
- 2 In the Configure Tools window, select an existing tool and click **Delete**.
- 3 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.
- 4 Click **Done**.

## Staying Informed

This topic discusses ways by which the Console helps you stay informed about developing situations involving events, and critical system status.

In addition to the security-event information ArcSight collects and analyzes, you can get, record, and pass other types of working information. This additional information falls into categories described in this topic.

## Acknowledging Notifications

To be informed when certain defined events or circumstances occur. You might receive notifications by pager, e-mail, or similar means, but you can be sure to see an indicator in the  **Notifications** button in the toolbar line of the Console.

Notifications can be sent as a result of a rule action, or by another user monitoring events in a grid. Clearing a notification requires that you acknowledge it. Whether or not you need to take other action depends on the circumstances. Acknowledgements are described briefly here, but for full detail, see [“Managing Notifications” on page 615](#).

### Acknowledging a Page

Acknowledge a page by replying to it through your pager. All pagers must be configured to send replies. Your reply is sent to the pager service provider and then to ArcSight.

### Acknowledge a Cell Phone Message

Acknowledge a call by replying to the e-mail sent through your cell phone. An e-mail enabled cell phone is required for receiving notifications and replying to them.

### Acknowledge an E-mail Message

Acknowledge an e-mail by replying to the message. Reply to the e-mail address from which the notification was sent.

### Acknowledge Notifications at the ArcSight Console

The ArcSight Console automatically alerts you of pending acknowledgements. The **Acknowledge Notifications** button is automatically enabled when you have one or more notification messages to be acknowledged. When you click the **Acknowledge Notifications** button, the Notifications manager opens in the Viewer panel so you can acknowledge and resolve the notification.

## Using Notes

Each resource and resource group in the Navigator panel has an editor, and each editor has a Notes tab. The Notes tab retains all the text that you and others add to the resource.

Notes tabs have Table and List sub-tabs to show you tabular or text layouts of the notes accumulated for a resource. Notes are stored chronologically and you can sort them by clicking the **Date**, **Owner**, and **Text** headers.

### Adding a Note

#### To add a note:

- 1 Choose a resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Select a resource group or individual resource.
- 3 Right-click an item in the tree. If it is a group, choose **Edit Group**. If it is a resource, choose **Edit <resource>**.

- 4 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the editor's **Notes** tab.
- 5 In the Notes space, type a note.
- 6 Click **Save** and then **OK**.

## Viewing a Note

### To view a note:

- 1 Choose a resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Select a resource group or individual resource.
- 3 Right-click an item in the tree. If it is a group, choose **Edit Group**. If it is a resource, choose **Edit <resource>**.
- 4 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the editor's **Notes** tab.
- 5 Right-click a note and choose **View**.

## Deleting a Note

### To delete a note:

- 1 Choose a resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Select a resource group or individual resource.
- 3 Right-click an item in the tree. If it is a group, choose **Edit Group**. If it is a resource, choose **Edit <resource>**.
- 4 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the editor's **Notes** tab.
- 5 Right-click a note and choose **Delete**.

## License Tracking

The product tracks the status of licenses for features you use, including actors, ArcSight Console user limits, ArcSight Web user limits, device number limit, actor and asset number limit, and events-per-second limit.

Licenses for the features available to you are installed and configured at setup time. For details about setting up licenses during the installation and configuration process, see the ESM Installation and Configuration Guide.



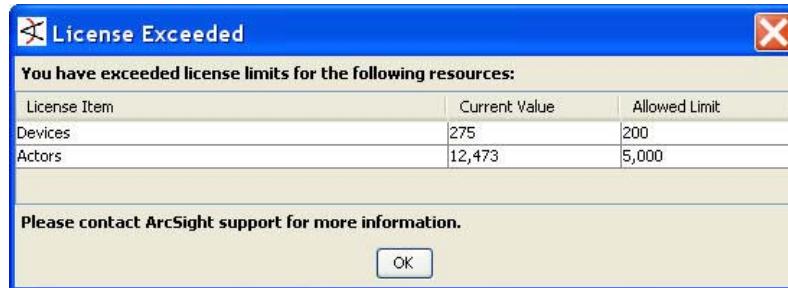
License tracking includes disabled and deleted actors

The ESM license tracking feature includes actors that are still in the ESM actor model with the status `Disabled` or `Deleted` in IDM. ESM's identity management feature preserves disabled and deleted actors in the actor model to track any unauthorized activity related to disabled or deleted actors.

If you do not want the ESM license tracking feature to evaluate actors with the status `Disabled` or `Deleted` in IDM, you can manually remove them from the ESM actor model. However, manually removing disabled or deleted actors also removes the ability for ESM to track unauthorized activity related to these accounts. For details, see ["Deleting Actors" on page 212](#).

## License Tracking Notifications

If your feature usage is close to or has exceeded the license agreements for your organization, you see a notification dialog when starting up the ArcSight Console, for example:









Your access to these features remains in place, even if the license limit has been exceeded.

## Standard Reports for License Status Tracking



You can check on the status of your ESM feature licenses using the following reports and focused reports (All Reports/ArcSight Administration/ESM/Licensing):

**Table 2-3** Reports Related to License Status

Report	Type	Description
Licensing Report		This report shows the licensing history for one of the license types, and is the source report for the individual license focused reports. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.
Licensing Report (All)		This report shows the licensing history for all the license types. The 6 charts show the current count and the count limit for each of the license types. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.
Actors Licensing Report		This focused report shows the licensing history for actors. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.
Assets Licensing Report		This focused report shows the licensing history for assets. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.
Console Users Licensing Report		This focused report shows the licensing history for console users. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.
Devices Licensing Report		This focused report shows the licensing history for devices. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.



**Table 2-3** Reports Related to License Status (Continued)

Report	Type	Description
EPS Licensing Report		This focused report shows the licensing history for EPS. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.
Web Users Licensing Report		This focused report shows the licensing history for web users. The chart shows the current count and the count limit in a chart. The licensing history is over the last 7 days, by default.

For details about running reports, see [“Running Reports” on page 379](#).







## Using the Menus

This section briefly describes the Console's menus and sub-menus.

### File Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+F** opens the **File** menu. Keyboard shortcuts for File menu options are included below. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).








**Table 2-4** Options on the File Menu

Option	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
New		Create a new resource from the available submenu.	
Open		Open an existing Console settings file to use that configuration.	Ctrl-O
Save		Save your latest Console settings in the current configuration file.	Ctrl-S
Save As	None	Save your current Console settings in a different configuration file.	
Save to Manager		Save your current Console settings at the ArcSight Manager rather than locally, so you can get these settings at a different Console.	
Load From Manager		Load a preferred Console configuration file from the ArcSight Manager, so you can use it with this Console.	
Send To		Send a local Console configuration (.ast) file to an e-mail address so another user can save and use it with their Console.	
Log Out	None	Log out of the Console with your current user ID, without exiting, so someone else can log in.	
Exit	None	Log out of the Console and exit.	Alt-F4

## Edit Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+E** opens the **Edit** menu. Keyboard shortcuts for Edit menu options are included below. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).





**Table 2-5 Options on the Edit Menu**

Option	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
Cut		Cut selected text.	Ctrl-X
Copy		Copy selected text or resources.	Ctrl-C
Paste		Paste text or resources from the clipboard.	Ctrl-V
Delete		Delete selected text or resources.	Delete
Select All		Select all text.	Ctrl-A
Preferences		Open the Preferences dialog box to make personal configuration changes.	
Find Resource		Use the Find Resource query editor to search for resources and review their details.	Ctrl-F





## View Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+V** opens the **View** menu. Keyboard shortcuts for View menu options are included below. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).

**Table 2-6 Options on the View Menu**

Option	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
New Active Channel		Open the New Active Channel dialog box so you can set up and start a new active channel in the Viewer panel.	Ctrl+Shift-D
Show Active Channel		Open the Active Channel Selector dialog box so you can choose an active channel to display in the Viewer panel.	Ctrl+Shift-S
Recent Active Channels		Choose a recently opened active channel to display in the Viewer panel again, if available.	
Resource Hotkeys		Shows currently programmed keyboard shortcuts for actions on the Console. These keyboard shortcuts are defined in the Console Preferences dialog (Edit > Preferences > Manage Hotkeys). For more information, see <a href="#">“Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot Keys)” on page 67</a> .	
New Dashboard		Create a new, untitled and empty dashboard to populate with data monitors.	Ctrl+Shift-B






**Table 2-6 Options on the View Menu (Continued)**

Option	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
Show Dashboard		Open the Load Dashboards dialog box so you can select dashboards to open in the Viewer panel.	Ctrl+Shift-W
Recent Dashboards		Choose a recently opened dashboard to display in the Viewer panel again, if available.	
Notification Acknowledgement		Show all Notifications for the current user (pending, undeliverable, not acknowledged, acknowledged, and resolved)	Ctrl-N
Show Messages		Show all console messages, system messages, and user notifications in the ArcSight Messages dialog.	Ctrl-M
Next View		Take you to the next open view or tab in the Viewer.	Ctrl+Shift-N
Previous View		Take you to the previous open view in the Viewer.	Ctrl+Shift-P
Close All Views		Close all views that are open in the Viewer panel.	
Slide Show		Show a continuous slide show of all open channels and dashboards.	F11 (Toggle to start or stop)

## Window Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+W** opens the **Window** menu. Keyboard shortcuts for Window menu options are included below. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).









**Table 2-7 Options on the Window Menu**

Option	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
Navigator Panel		Show or hide the Navigator panel.	Ctrl-1
Viewer Panel		Show or hide the Viewer panel.	Ctrl-2
Inspect/Edit Panel		Show or hide the Inspect/Edit panel.	Ctrl-3
Status Bar		Show or hide the status bar.	Ctrl-4
Floating		Bring to the front one of the listed floating (undocked) windows, if available.	

## Tools Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+T** opens the **Tools** menu. Keyboard shortcuts for Tools menu options are included below. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).



**Table 2-8 Options on the Tools Menu**

Option	Sub-menu	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
Local Commands	Configure		Add, copy, edit, or delete Network Tools.	Alt-C
	Results		Display the Tool Results dialog box.	Ctrl+Shift-R
	Nslookup		Resolve an IP address to a host name.	
	Ping		Determine whether an IP address is online.	
	PortInfo		List the default protocol usage for a specified port number (e.g., WWW, FTP, SMTP).	
	Traceroute		Show the path to an IP address.	
	WebSearch		Use Google to search the web for event-related keywords.	
	Whois		Find the registered owner of a given domain name.	
Network Model			Launch the Network Model wizard. See <a href="#">“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707</a> .	
Use Case			Launch the Use Case wizard. See <a href="#">“Configuring Use Cases” on page 464</a> .	
Send Logs			Launch the Send Logs wizard. See <a href="#">“Send Logs” on page 958</a> .	

## System Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+S** opens the **System** menu. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).






**Table 2-9 Options on the System Menu**

Option	Icon	Resource
Scheduled Jobs		Open the Job Scheduler. For more information, see <a href="#">“Scheduling Jobs” on page 954</a> .
Categorize Event		Select a non ArcSight event in the grid, then select <b>System &gt; Categorize Event</b> menu option to apply a category.

## Help Menu

Keyboard shortcut **Alt+H** opens the **Help** menu. Keyboard shortcuts for Help menu options are included below. See also [“Keyboard Shortcuts \(Hot Keys\)” on page 67](#).

**Table 2-10 Options on the Help Menu**

Option	Icon	Resource	Shortcut
Browse ArcSight Documentation		Open an index page that offers pointers and links to other PDF-formatted documents concerning subjects such as SmartConnectors or upgrading.	F1
What's New		Open the ArcSight Console Online Help's "What's New" topic. See also <a href="#">Chapter 1, What's New, on page 41</a> .	
Console Guide		Open the ArcSight Console Online Help's landing page with links to major topics.	
HP Software Support Online		Open a browser window that displays the HP SSO login page, so you can sign in and access the case manager, downloads, communities, and other features.	
About		Show your ArcSight installation's legal notices and version information.	

## Using Right-Click Context Menus

Right-click context menus appear throughout the Console. This section describes common options available from right-click menus in different contexts. Context menus in different resources can offer other options specific to that resource. To understand all the options available for a particular resource, see the topic related to that resource.

### Right-Click Menu Options on the Navigator Panel

The Navigator panel presents individual resources and groups that help organize them. Here are the common options available from the right-click context menus in the Navigator panel. Not all options are available in all contexts; those that are not available will appear in grey text. The details of many of these options, such as creating a new resource, are described in the topics dedicated to that resource.

**Table 2-11 Common Right-Click Menu Options on the Navigator Panel**

Option	Applies to	Description
New <Resource>	Resources	Open the editor for the selected resource to allow you to create a new one.
Edit <Resource>	Resources	Open the editor for the selected resource to allow you to edit an existing one.
Delete <Resource>	Resources	Initiate a delete sequence for the selected resource. A confirmation step is required before the resource is permanently deleted.

**Table 2-11** Common Right-Click Menu Options on the Navigator Panel (Continued)

Option	Applies to	Description
Integration Commands	Resources and Channels	From Console, link to other ArcSight applications and tools. For more information, see <a href="#">“Integration Commands” on page 549</a> .
Add to Package	Resources	Add the selected resource to an existing package. For more about packages, see <a href="#">“Managing Packages” on page 644</a> .
Show <Resource>	Resources	Display results gathered by the resource in the Viewer panel.
Debug Event Priority	Event Channel	Display an event’s priority information, which includes scores for severity, relevance, model confidence, and asset criticality. For more information, see <a href="#">“Priority Calculations and Ratings” on page 932</a> .
Graph View	Resources	Display a graphical view of the resource in relation to other associated resources. For more about resource graphs, see <a href="#">“Visualizing Resources” on page 632</a> .
New Group	Groups and Resources	Add a new group. The group’s attributes are defined in the Inspect/Edit panel.
Edit Group	Groups and Resources	Edit an existing group through the Inspect/Edit panel. You can edit a variety of group attributes such as the name, description, owner, and so on. Available in all resources.
Delete Group	Groups and Resources	Delete a group.
Rename	Groups and Resources	Change a group’s or single resource’s name directly on the Navigator pane without going through the group’s Inspect/Edit panel.  <b>Caution:</b> Be careful about renaming a resource which has, or which will eventually have, dependent resources. Once you change the name, don’t re-use the old name for a new resource of the same type because the dependent resources may continue to refer to the new resource with the old name. An example of a dependent relationship is of a trend with queries that depend on that trend.
Edit Access Control	Groups and Resources	Launch the Access Control Editor. For more about the Access Control Editor, see <a href="#">“Editing Access Control Lists (ACLs)” on page 603</a> .
Show Invalid Reason	Groups and Resources	For a group or resource shown as invalid (improperly constructed), display the explanation for the invalidity.
Validate <group or resource>	Groups and Resources	Validate the group or resource that is shown to be invalid because the group or resource was not constructed properly. For more information, see <a href="#">“Validating Resources” on page 635</a> .
Lock <group or resource>	Groups and Resources	Prevent a group or resource from being edited by users other than the creator of the information.
Unlock <group or resource>	Groups and Resources	Allow edits to the group or resource.

**Table 2-11** Common Right-Click Menu Options on the Navigator Panel (Continued)

Option	Applies to	Description
Set deprecated flag	Groups and Resources	Set the Deprecated check box on the group or resource's Attributes tab as seen in the Inspect/Edit panel.
Remove deprecated flag	Groups and Resources	Remove flag (clear the Deprecated check box) from a previously-deprecated group or resource.
Refresh	All	Updates the Console with the latest changes.
Knowledge Base	Groups and Resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Show Article</b>—Display the associated Knowledge Base article for the resource or group. The associated article is displayed in the Viewer panel.</li> <li>• <b>Associate With</b>—Select a Knowledge Base article from the Knowledge Base Article Selector to be associated with the resource or group.</li> <li>• <b>Association Help</b>—Display the Help window for associating a resource with a knowledge base article.</li> </ul> <p>For more information about knowledge bases, see <a href="#">“Knowledge Base Authoring” on page 591</a>.</p>
Reference Pages	Groups and Resources; certain events	Display pointers to additional reference information, if such information is available for the group or resource. For more information, see <a href="#">“Reference Pages” on page 938</a> .
Print <resource> Tree		Print a selected resource's tree view. For more about using this printing feature, see <a href="#">“Printing Navigation Tree Views of Resources” on page 70</a> .
Help	Groups and Resources	Launch Console Help topic for the selected resource.

## Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot Keys)

You can accomplish many actions in the ArcSight Console by using the default keyboard shortcuts or *hot keys*, instead of menus and mouse navigation. The standard keyboard shortcuts and their associated actions is listed in the table below. Keyboard shortcuts associated with menu options are included here and also shown in [“Using the Menus” on page 61](#).



**Tip**

You can view the default keyboard shortcut schemas and set up custom shortcuts on the Hot Key tab in the Console Preferences dialog (Console menu option **Edit > Preferences**, click **Manage Hot Keys**). For information on how to view or configure Console keyboard shortcuts, see [“Managing Hot Keys” on page 741 in Chapter 24, Personalizing the ArcSight Console, on page 731](#).

**Table 2-12** Keyboard Shortcuts

Task	Keyboard Shortcut	Description
Annotate event s	Ctrl-T	Select one or more events in any grid view, and use <b>Ctrl-T</b> keyboard command (as an alternative to the right-click <b>Annotate Events</b> menu option). See <a href="#">"Annotating an Event" on page 169</a> .
Mark events reviewed	Ctrl-R	Select one or more events in any grid view, and use <b>Ctrl-R</b> keyboard command (as an alternative to right-click <b>Mark as reviewed</b> menu option). See <a href="#">"Collaborating on Events" on page 168</a> .
Copy	Ctrl-C	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Cut	Ctrl-X	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Delete	Delete key	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Find	Ctrl-F	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Open the Edit menu	Alt-E	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Paste	Ctrl-V	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Redo	Ctrl-Y	Re-do any text edit operation.
Select All	Ctrl-A	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Undo	Ctrl-Z	Undo any text edit operation.
Exit/shut down the Console	Alt-F4	See <a href="#">"File Menu" on page 61</a>
Open the File menu	Alt-F	See <a href="#">"File Menu" on page 61</a>
Open the Edit menu	Alt-E	See <a href="#">"Edit Menu" on page 62</a>
Open the View menu	Alt-V	See <a href="#">"View Menu" on page 62</a>
Open the Window menu	Alt-W	See <a href="#">"Window Menu" on page 63</a>
Open the Tools menu	Alt-T	See <a href="#">"Tools Menu" on page 64</a>
Open the System menu	Alt-S	See <a href="#">"System Menu" on page 64</a>
Open the Help menu	Alt-H	See <a href="#">"Help Menu" on page 65</a> a
Open the Help directly	F1	See <a href="#">"Help Menu" on page 65</a>

## Moving Copying, Linking, and Deleting Resources

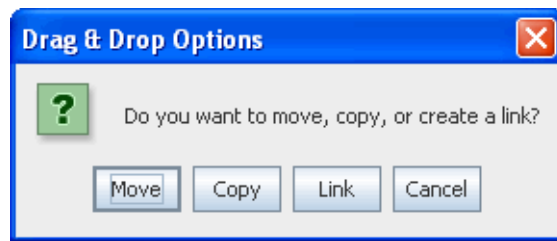
You may need to move or duplicate a resource to better organize your work or to make editable copies. You may also need to delete resource definitions you no longer need. These tasks are described here. For more information, see all topics in [Chapter 2, Working in the ArcSight Console, on page 41](#).



## Move, Copy, or Link a Resource

### To move, copy, or link a resource:

- 1 Choose the resource type you want to work with in the Navigator (Active Channels, Filters, Rules, and so on).
- 2 Navigate to and select a resource instance in the tree, and drag and drop it into another group of the same resource type. The system displays a dialog that provides options to move, copy, or link the resource.



Select **Move** to move the resource, **Copy** to make a separate copy of it, or **Link** to create a copy of the resource that is linked to the original.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the resource definition that will not be affected when the original is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the resource definition that is linked to the original. Therefore, if you edit a linked resource definition, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked resource definitions, you can either delete only the selected one or the selected one and all linked copies.

## Delete a Resource

### To delete a resource:

- 1 Navigate to the resource type you want to work with.
- 2 Select a resource instance in the tree, right-click and choose **Delete <Resource>** from the context menu.

## Printing from the Console

You can print Navigator trees for all resources. You can print resource definitions for rules, filters, and cases, as well as conditions from the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) (for all resources with filters). You can print from all grid or channel views.



You have the option to display a Print Preview dialog before you send your job to the printer. Enable the Print Preview dialog through the Console's Preferences > Global Options menu. See ["Changing Global Options Like Panel and Editor Characteristics" on page 734](#) for details.

## Printing Navigation Tree Views of Resources

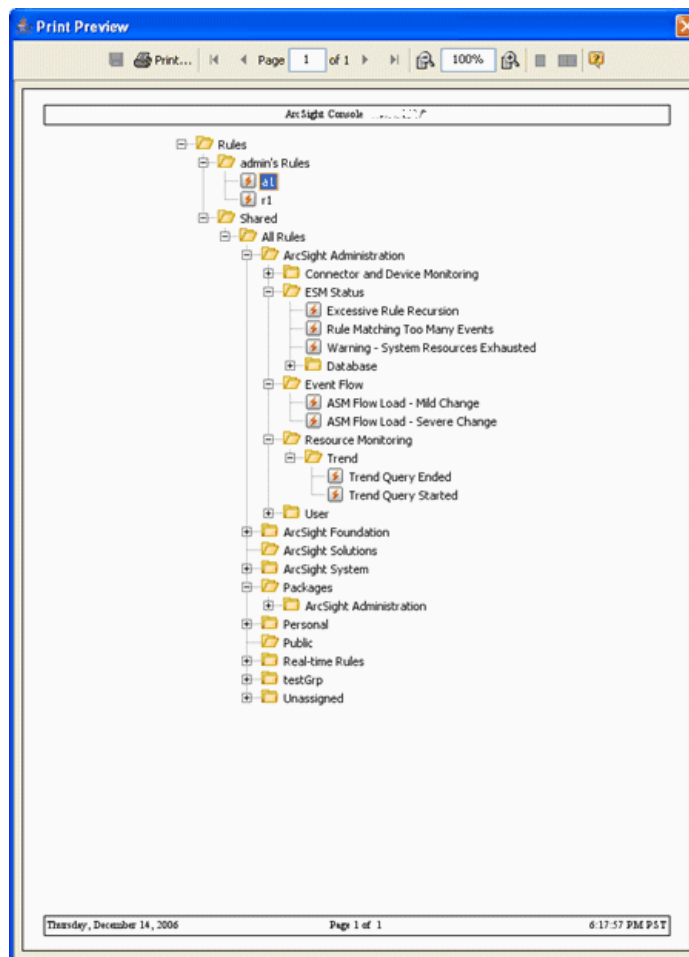
### To print the Navigation tree for a resource:

- 1 In the Navigator, choose the resource you want to print.
- 2 Click items in the tree to expand or collapse folders in the tree depending on what you want to see in the printout.



A printout of the Navigation tree for a resource will show the tree exactly as it is displayed on the Console. Folders that are expanded or collapsed on the Console will show the same way in the printout. To print the tree showing the items contained in a particular folder, expand the folder in the Navigation tree before selecting the Print option.

- 3 Right-click any element in the Navigation tree for that resource and choose **Print <ResourceName> Tree**. (For example, Print Rule Tree.) Regardless of which item you select to access the right-click menu, the whole tree prints.
- 4 The system displays a print preview such as the preview of a Rules tree, as shown.



- 5 Click **Print** to bring up a standard Print dialog, and set these properties (destination printer, page layout to use, and so on).
- 6 Click **OK** to print.

## Printing Resource Definitions

You can print resource definitions for rules, filters, and cases. You can print a resource definition from the Navigator tree or from within the resource editor.

### To print a resource definition:

- 1 In the Navigator, choose the type of resource you want to print.
- 2 Right-click an instance of that resource (a rule, filter, or case), and choose **Print <ResourceName> Definition** (for example, Print Rule Definition).

Or

Double-click a resource to open its editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, then right-click the topmost tab in the editor and choose **Print <ResourceName> Definition**.

The system displays a print preview such as the preview of a Rules definition.




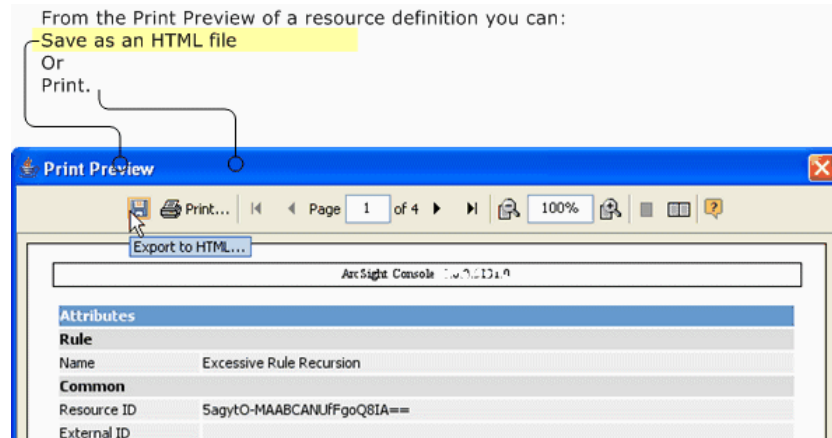
- 3 Click **Print** to bring up a standard Print dialog, and set these properties (which printer, page layout, and so on).

- 4 Click **OK** to print.

## Saving as an HTML File

From the Print Preview dialog for a Resource Definition, you can save the definition as an HTML file.

- 1 On the Print Preview dialog, click the **Save** (  ) tool button.



- 2 In the file browser, navigate to the location where you want to save the HTML file.
- 3 Enter a name for the file in the File Name field. The File Type is Web Page (\*.html) by default.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Printing Grid Views

**To print items from a grid view, (such as an active channel or active list):**

- 1 Select one or more items in the grid. To select multiple, adjacent items, use the **Shift** key and mouse click, or click and drag. To select non-adjacent items, use the **Alt** key in combination with mouse clicks.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Print Selected Rows**.  
The system displays a preview of the printout. (For examples, see ["Using Column Flip Limit to Format Grid View Printouts" on page 74.](#))
- 3 Click **Print** to open the Print dialog, and set these properties (which printer, page layout, and so on).
- 4 Click **OK** to print.



Note

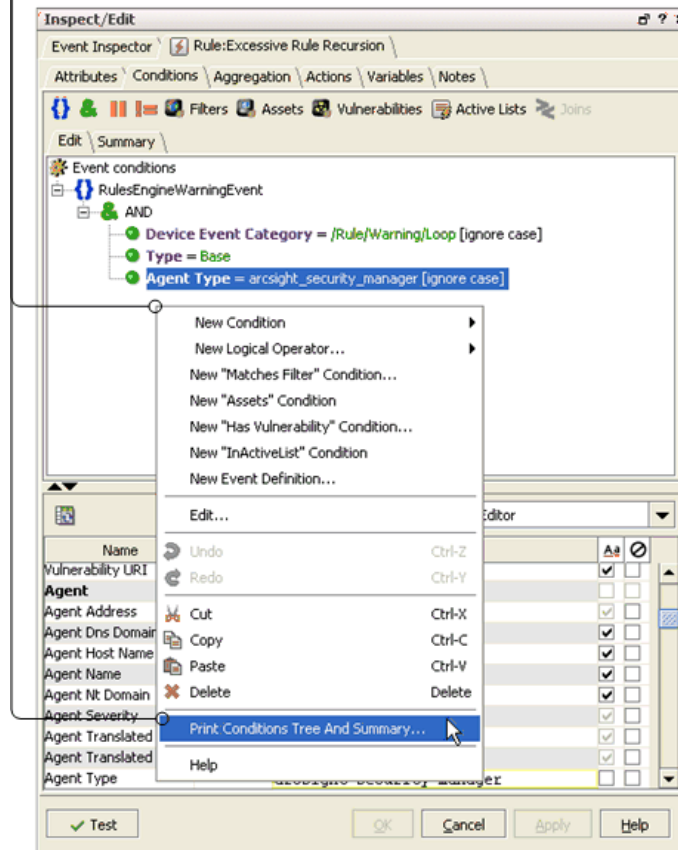
The format of a grid view printout is determined by the number of columns in the table and the configuration of the Column Flip Limit, which is set in the Console Preferences dialog. For more information, see ["Using Column Flip Limit to Format Grid View Printouts" on page 74.](#)

## Printing Conditions Tree Summary

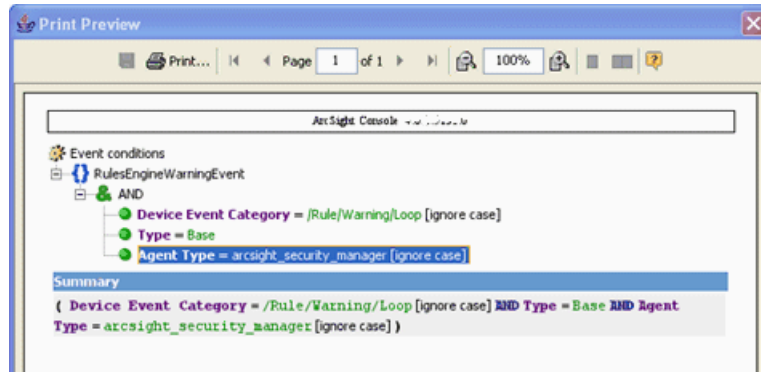
You can print Conditions for any resource with filters.

- 1 Open the resource in the Editor.
- 2 Click the **Conditions** tab.
- 3 Right-click anywhere on the Edit tab in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#).
- 4 Choose **Print Conditions Tree and Summary** from the context menu.

To print Conditions for any resource with filters, open the resource in the Editor, click the **Conditions** tab, and right-click anywhere on the **Edit** tab of the **Common Conditions Editor**. From the context menu, choose **Print Conditions Tree and Summary**.



The system displays a preview of the printout. For example, here is a Print Preview of the filter for a stock rule called Excessive Rule Recursion.



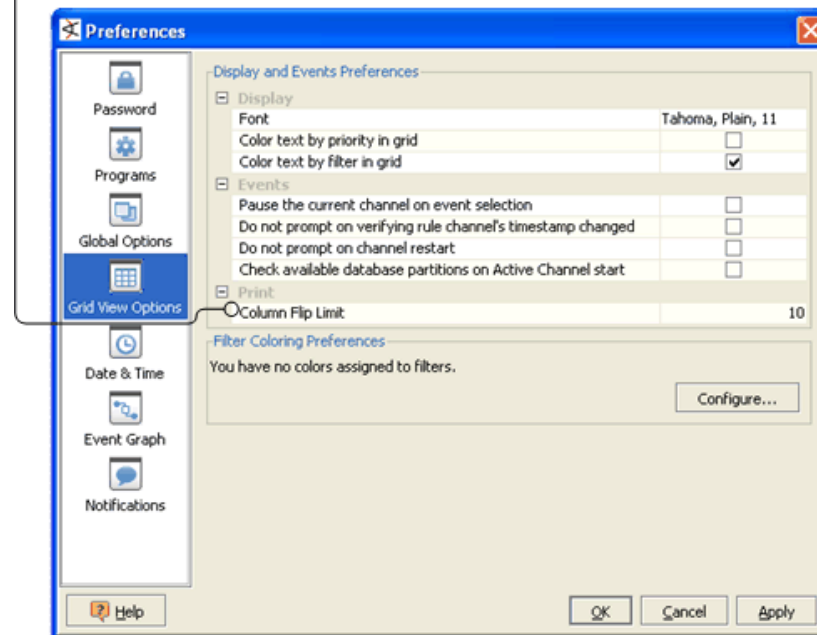
- 5 Click **Print** to bring up a standard Print dialog, and set these properties (destination printer, page layout to use, and so on).
- 6 Click **OK** to print.

## Using Column Flip Limit to Format Grid View Printouts

For printing tables from Grid Views (channels, lists, and so forth), you can configure the **Column Flip Limit** in the Console Preferences.

Choose **Edit > Preferences**, and click **Grid View Options**. The default is 10 columns.

For printing tables from Grid Views (channels, lists, and so forth), you can configure the **Column Flip Limit**. (Choose **Edit > Preferences** and click **Grid View Options**.) A grid view will print as a table or with details per row, depending on the number of columns it has and how the Column Flip Limit is configured.



Grid views with the same or fewer columns than the Column Flip Limit print as a table, the same as that shown in the UI on the Console grid view.

Grid views with the same or fewer columns than the Column Flip Limit print as tables, in the same format shown in the UI on the Console grid views.

The screenshot shows a 'Print Preview' window from the ArcSight Console. The window title is 'Print Preview'. The toolbar includes a 'Print...' button, navigation arrows, 'Page 1 of 2', a magnifying glass, '100%', and a help icon. The main content area displays a table titled 'ArcSight Console'. The table has the following columns: End Time, Name, Device Receipt Time, Event ID, Type, Target Address, Priority, Device Vendor, Device Severity, and Aggregated Event Count. The table contains 10 rows of data, all showing 'Warning' severity events from 'ArcSight' on '14 Dec 2006' at '15:35:00 PST'. The footer of the window shows 'Thursday, December 14, 2006', 'Page 1 of 2', and '4:53:19 PM PST'.

End Time	Name	Device Receipt Time	Event ID	Type	Target Address	Priority	Device Vendor	Device Severity	Aggregated Event Count
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280345	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280346	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280347	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280348	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280349	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280350	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280351	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280352	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280353	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1
14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	Monitor Event	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST	50000280354	Base	192.168.40.235	3	ArcSight	Warning	1

Thursday, December 14, 2006 Page 1 of 2 4:53:19 PM PST

Grid views with more columns than the Column Flip Limit print details per-row rather in a normal table like that shown on the Console grid view.

Grid views with more columns than the Column Flip Limit print as detail per row. The bracketed section shown here represents the first row of this table.

1	
End Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Name	Monitor Event
Device Receipt Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Event ID	50000280346
Type	Base
Target Address	192.168.40.235
Priority	3
Device Vendor	ArcSight
Device Severity	Warning
Aggregated Event Count	1
Device Product	ArcSight
2	
End Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Name	Monitor Event
Device Receipt Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Event ID	50000280347
Type	Base
Target Address	192.168.40.235
Priority	3
Device Vendor	ArcSight
Device Severity	Warning
Aggregated Event Count	1
Device Product	ArcSight
3	
End Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Name	Monitor Event
Device Receipt Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Event ID	50000280348
Type	Base
Target Address	192.168.40.235
Priority	3
Device Vendor	ArcSight
Device Severity	Warning
Aggregated Event Count	1
Device Product	ArcSight
4	
End Time	14 Dec 2006 15:35:00 PST
Name	Monitor Event

Thursday, December 14, 2006 Page 1 of 4 3:58:25 PM PST

Instructions for setting the Column Flip Limit for grid views is also summarized in Setting Grid View Options in the [“Changing User Preferences”](#) on page 732, along with information about how to set other Console preferences.



## Chapter 3

# Monitoring Events

---

This topic describes how to monitor events coming from SmartConnectors using tools that are displayed in the Viewer panel. You can monitor events through a rich set of views, including active channel and grids, dashboard graphics and tables, and active lists, as described in the following topics:

[“Monitoring Active Channels” on page 77](#)

[“Using Dashboards” on page 102](#)

[“Using Data Monitors” on page 109](#)

[“Using Query Viewers” on page 120](#)

[“Using Custom View Dashboards” on page 120](#)

[“Monitoring Active Lists” on page 127](#)

[“Graphing Attacks” on page 128](#)

## Monitoring Active Channels

Active channels provide a streaming view of events coming into your system that can be viewed numerous ways using numerous types of filters and field sets.

### Using Views

Views can vary in scope and scale, from broad to narrow, and from graphic to detailed, depending on how your enterprise is organized and monitored.

### Selecting a View

In the Viewer panel, click a tab at the **top** to choose an active channel by name. On a channel, you can select various instances of that channel (such as a grid view and bar chart of the same data) by clicking its tile or its tab at the **bottom** of the panel.

Alternately, to advance quickly through each of the tabs in the Viewer panel, press **Ctrl+Shift+N** (next) or **Ctrl+Shift+P** (previous) to jump forward or backward. These keystrokes apply to any type of view in the Viewer panel.

## Changing View Layouts

You change individual view layouts with the **Layout Selector** menu available from the blue icon at the lower-right corner of the Viewer panel. Click this icon to choose:

Layout Option	Result
Tab	Fill the active channel display with the current view and make other open views selectable by tabs at the lower border.
Tile Best Fit	Display all views in the active channel as variously shaped tiles, giving each a proportional amount of space.
Tile Horizontally	Display all views in the active channel horizontally, giving each a proportional amount of space.
Tile Vertically	Display all views in the active channel vertically, giving each a proportional amount of space.

## Floating a View

In the active channel's name tab, right-click and choose **Float**.

## Closing One or All Views

In the active channel's name tab, right-click and choose **Close** or **Close All**.

To close an individual view **Shift+click** its name tab. You can also right-click a view name tab and choose **Close** from the popup menu.

## Closing all Views Except the Current One

In the active channel's name tab, right-click and choose **Close All But Current**.

## Viewing and Using Channels

Viewing and using active channels include creating them, filtering them, customizing contents, changing presentation formats or layouts, and deleting them.

Also, an action from a triggered rule can create a new active channel.



**Note**

Press **Enter** to register edits made in editors and channel columns.

To ensure that ESM registers a change you make to a field in editor and channel columns, press **Enter** before clicking **Apply** or **OK**.

## Viewing an Active Channel

When viewing an active channel, keep the following in mind:

- If a channel is open when Daylight Savings Time goes into or out of effect, the live channel will not reflect the correct start and end times until the channel is closed and re-opened.
- If an active channel uses a filter that applies conditions to a list data type field, the active channel will include multiple rows for the same event or resource (for example, actors) channels. This behavior is expected.

**To view an active channel:**

- 1 Choose **Active Channels** in the Navigator.
- 2 Right-click a channel and choose **Show Active Channel**. The selected channel is displayed in the Viewer.


**To view resources in active channels:**



In addition to events, active channels can also be on certain resources such as actors, assets, vulnerabilities, asset categories, scanner reports, cases, and stages. In the Navigator, right-click a resource or group, and choose **Show** <ResourceName>. The resources are displayed in an active channel view.

Using slightly different menu options, you can view the results of triggered Rules in channels as well. (For information on creating active channels for Rules, see [“Verifying Rule\(s\) with Events” on page 439](#).)

You can also create active channels from filters. In the Filters resource tree, right-click a filter and choose **Create Channel with Filter**. Many resources that have filters also provide this option. For example, you can right-click Connectors in the Navigator, and choose **Create Channel with Filter** to create a channel with the filter used by that connector. You can do the same with Assets (Vulnerabilities, Zones, Categories, Assets), Cases, and Stages. (For Cases, choose Case Details Channel as described in [“Working with Events in Cases” on page 539](#). The case must include some events.)

## Sorting Events in an Active Channel

The names of sortable fields in column headers are indicated with a double-arrow icon .

If a field is already sorted, an up  or down  arrow indicates the direction of the sort.

**To sort events in an active channel:**

- ◆ To sort the list by a column, right-click over the column and select **Sort Column**.
- ◆ To reverse the sort order, select **Sort Column** again on an already-sorted column. This makes the column the primary sort column.
- ◆ To remove a sort, right-click over a sorted column and select **Remove Sort**.

For more information, see [“Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel” on page 80](#) and [“Sorting Columns in Grid Views” on page 964](#). For information about how to create field sets that use sortable field sets, see [“Creating and Using Field Sets” on page 155](#).



**Note**

You might experience performance problems when sorting columns in an active channel. Some columns are “expensive” to sort, such as string fields containing 1000 characters. Consider using query viewers instead, where you have the option to group and order fields. See [“Active Channels or Query Viewers?” on page 86](#).

**Primary and secondary sort columns**

When you select Sort Column, it becomes the primary sort column and the number 1 appears next to the sort arrow. The previous column by which the report was sorted becomes the secondary sort column and the number 2 appears next to the sort arrow.

This numbering applies to every column on which you sort, the newest sort is always 1 and the others change accordingly.

### Sorting by primary and secondary time columns

When your primary and secondary sort columns are both time columns (such as Create Time and Modification Time), milliseconds become a factor in sort order.

Milliseconds are not displayed. This can create a situation where a number of items with the same primary time appear to show the secondary sort as in the wrong order. In reality the primary times are off by milliseconds, so they are *not* the same, and these milliseconds affect sort order before the secondary time is taken into account.

## Creating an Active Channel

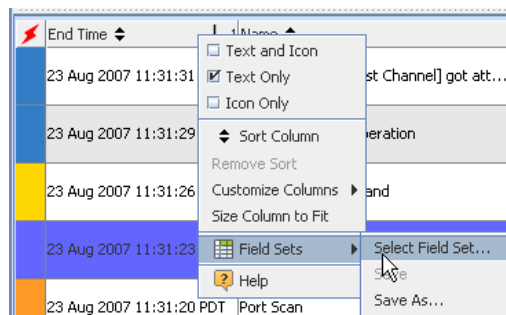
### To create an active channel:

- 1 Choose the **File>New>Active Channel** menu command to open the **New Active Channel** dialog box, or right-click a group in the Active Channel resource tree and choose New Active Channel.
- 2 In the dialog box, name the channel and choose from the options described in [“Editing an Active Channel” on page 83](#).
- 3 Click the **Examples** button to see how to specify commonly used channel values.
- 4 Click **OK** to save the new channel in your group in the Active Channels resource tree, and to open and run it in the Viewer panel.

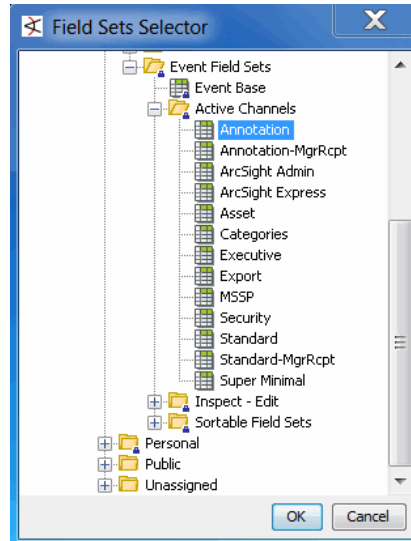
## Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel

### To apply a field set to an active channel:

- 1 Right-click over any field header and choose **Field Sets >Select Field Set** to open the Field Sets Selector dialog.



- 2 In the Field Sets Selector dialog, select a field set (or a domain field set you created) and click **OK**.



The active channel is displayed with the selected field set.



#### About ArcSight System Sortable Field Sets

The Sortable Field Sets under ArcSight System are not available for selecting in active channels. The ArcSight System sortable field sets are a special set marked for internal use to provide the sortable functionality and maintain consistency between the Console user interface, field sets, and database indexes.

For more information about sorting, see [“Sorting Events in an Active Channel”](#) on page 79.

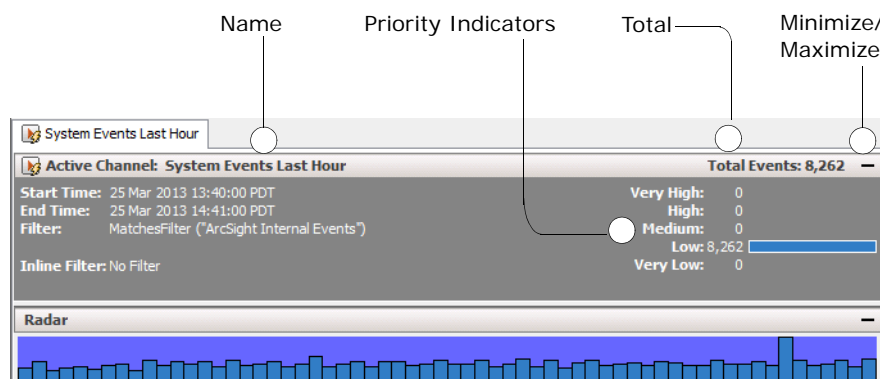
See [“Variable Availability and Contexts”](#) on page 998 for information about using variables in active channels.

## Adding a Column to the Channel

You can add another column to the channel display to show additional fields.

## Using an Active Channel Header

Each active channel has a header section with several features you can use to understand and manipulate what the channel displays.



---

**Active Channel Header Features**

Feature	Usage
Name and Total	<p>The top line of the header shows the channel's name and how many events it contains. You can also use the <b>Minimize</b> or <b>Maximize</b> button at the right end to close or open the header.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The event count function on Active Channels only reports live events, not replay events. If you prefer to see a count of all events coming through during a particular period, you should create a query viewer or report. If you want a count of only replay events, the event count in a replay channel will provide an accurate count of all replay events within a specific time window.</p>
Priority Indicators	On the right border of the header is a column of event-priority statistic indicators. The numbers beside the Priority categories are the number of events in those categories. Click these indicators to filter the channel to show only the selected priority.
Time Span	The Start Time and End Time show the chronological range of the channel.
Filter status	This describes the filter that limits what the channel shows. Click a filter status name, such as <b>&lt;No Filter&gt;</b> , to open the Active Channel Editor and its Filters tab, where you can add, edit, or delete contents as described in <a href="#">“Creating Filters” on page 175</a> . You can also right-click the current filter status and choose to edit, save, or remove it.
Radar display button	Close or open the display with the <b>Minimize</b> or <b>Maximize</b> button at the right end of the Filter line.
Radar display operation	<p><b>Click, Shift+click, Ctrl+click</b>, or drag to select bars in the display. You can also drag a selection's borders left or right. The grid then shows just the events the selection represents.</p> <p>The display shows “This channel is active but temporarily empty” at any time, no matter how briefly, if there are no qualifying events. This also might show when a channel first opens.</p>

---

## Filtering an Active Channel

You can filter active channels through the Filter tab of the Active Channel Editor or inline using the blank fields in the top row of each grid view. Right-click the filter name in the header and choose **Edit Filter** to open the editor and create a filter as described in [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#). To use inline filters, see [“Using Active Channels” on page 93](#).



Understanding how to use the Common Conditions Editor (CCE) is integral to creating and editing filters. Please [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#) for more information.

---

## Saving Copies of Active Channels and Filters

You can save copies of active channels or their filters to modify them later. This is useful to retain an original channel or filter as is, but use a copy of it for a new resource.

To save a copy of an active channel under a new name, right-click the filter name in the header, and choose **Save Active Channel As**. This brings up the Active Channels Selector dialog, which shows the Active Channels resource tree. Navigate to where you want to save the channel, enter a new name for it, and click **OK**.

You can use a copy of the filter for an active channel independently, or as a basis for other filters. Right-click the filter name in the header, and choose **Save Filter**. This opens the Filter Selector dialog, which shows the Filters resource tree. Navigate to where you want to save the filter, enter a new name for it, and click **OK**.

## Editing an Active Channel

- 1 Right-click a channel in the Navigator panel's Active Channel resource tree and choose **Edit Active Channel**.
- 2 To change an active channel's operating parameters, click the **Attributes** tab.

Active Channel Attributes	
Attribute	Usage
Start Time	<p>The relative or absolute time reference that begins the period to track events in the channel. Edit the time expression, choose a common expression from the drop-down menu, or click the <b>Selector</b> button to choose an absolute date and time value. See <a href="#">"Timestamp Variables" on page 979</a> for more options.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If a channel is open when Daylight Savings Time starts or ends, it does not show the correct start time until you restart it.</p> <p>You can change the default start time for new channels by editing the <code>console.properties</code> file in the <code>&lt;ArcSight_Console_HOME&gt;/current/config</code> directory. For example, add the this line...</p> <pre>console.channel.newChannel.defaultSubtractTime="\$Now - 2h"</pre> <p>... to change the start time to two hours ago. For a list of possible time values see the <b>Start Time:</b> field pull-down menu.</p>

## Active Channel Attributes (Continued)

Attribute	Usage
End Time	<p>The relative or absolute time that ends the period to actively track the events in the channel. Edit the time expression, choose a common expression from the drop-down menu, or click the <b>Selector</b> button to choose an absolute date/time value. See <a href="#">“Timestamp Variables” on page 979</a> for more options.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a channel is open when Daylight Savings Time starts/ends, the live channel does not show the correct start time until you restart it.</li> <li>If setting the End Time results in the message “Invalid end date for sliding channel,” the channel is set to <i>Continuously evaluate</i> instead of <i>Evaluate once at attach time</i>. Either re-set the End Time or change the Time Parameters option for the channel to <i>Continuously evaluate</i>.</li> <li>Avoid creating active channels that query more than once day. For active channels that query more than once day, use <i>Evaluate time parameters once at attach time</i> instead of <i>Continuously evaluate</i>. Better yet, use trends for these types of active channels. See also <a href="#">“Best Practices to Optimize Active Channel Performance” on page 86</a>.</li> </ul>
Use as Timestamp	<p>Choose the event-timing phase that best supports your analysis. <b>End Time</b> represents the time the event ended, as reported by the device. <b>Manager Receipt Time</b> is the event’s recorded arrival time at the ArcSight Manager.</p>
Time Parameters	<p>Choose whether the channel will <b>Continuously evaluate</b> to show events that are qualified by Start and End times which are re-evaluated constantly while the channel is running, or <b>Evaluate once at attach time</b> to show only the events that qualify when the channel is first run.</p> <p>A channel set to <i>Continuously evaluate</i> is also known as a <i>sliding channel</i>, and typically has its End Time option set to <b>\$Now</b>.</p>
Default Field Set	<p>Choose an existing event field set for the events processed through the channel. The default field set is for users who view a channel for the first time. If no default is specified, the ArcSight system default is used. When a user closes a channel, ArcSight saves the field set (and all other console settings) to the user’s .ast file.</p> <p>After a user has opened a channel once, the console does not use the default field set for that user again. Changing the default only affects other users who have never opened the channel before.</p>



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

- 3 Click the **Filter** tab to edit the channel’s filter condition as described in [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#).



- 4 Click the **Sort Fields** tab to explicitly set which fields to sort the channel on in grid views, the sort order for those fields, and whether sorting for each field is ascending (A to Z) or descending (Z to A).
- 5 Click the **Local Variables** tab to use ArcSight local variables with the channel's filters.



You can create local variables, which are only available to the resource you are creating (in this case, an active channel), or use global variables. For information on creating global variables, see [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#) and [Chapter 13, Global Variables, on page 445](#).

- 6 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the updated channel.

## Defining Grid Fields Options

In the New Active Channel dialog box you can choose from the **Select a Field Set** menu, or you can click the **Define** button to open the Define Grid Fields dialog box. See [“Creating and Using Field Sets” on page 155](#) for more information. To change these choices after creating a channel, use the steps described in [“Customizing Columns” on page 100](#).

### Grid Field Options

Option	Usage
Fields	A name for the set
Available Fields	Select the event fields (also called data fields or attributes) that you want the channel to process. As you make selections, they appear in the <b>Fields to Show</b> list at the right. Remember that not all fields are readily sortable.
Fields to Show	This list shows the selections you have made in the <b>Available Fields</b> list. The order you give to the fields in this list becomes their default presentation order in grid views. Once populated, you can select one or more fields ( <b>Shift+click</b> and <b>Ctrl+click</b> apply) to rearrange with the <b>Move Up</b> , <b>Move Down</b> , and <b>Remove</b> buttons.
Move Up, Move Down, Remove buttons	These buttons move or remove the fields you select in the <b>Fields to Show</b> list. The order you set becomes the presentation order in grid views.
Sort First By	After selecting and ordering fields, you establish their sorting order (also called their <i>group by</i> order). Use <b>Sort First By</b> to set the ascending ( <b>A to Z</b> ) or descending ( <b>Z to A</b> ) order of the first or most-significant column.
Then By	Use the first <b>Then By</b> sort-order field to set the second sorting order. Use the second <b>Then By</b> sort-order field to set the third sorting order.
More, Less buttons	Click <b>More</b> if you need an additional <b>Then By</b> field. Click <b>Less</b> to remove one.

## Discovering Patterns in an Active Channel

Right-click the channel in the Navigator panel's Active Channels resource tree and choose **Discover Patterns**. ArcSight takes a snapshot of the channel's current contents and examines it for patterns. You see the snapshot in the Viewer panel and the profile that

generated the pattern appears in your personal folder in the Navigator panel's Pattern Discovery resource tree. For more information, see [“Pattern Discovery” on page 131](#).

## Deleting an Active Channel

Right-click the channel in the Navigator panel's Active Channels resource tree and choose **Delete Active Channel**.

## Adding a View Format

To add another type of presentation (view) for the data in an active channel, click the **View Type** icon in the lower-right corner of the Viewer panel. Choose among grids and the various types of chart or graphic views.

## Changing View Layouts

To change the visual arrangement of individual channels within a view container, such as data monitors within a dashboard, click the **Layout** icon and choose to show or arrange the views by **Tab**, or **Tile Best Fit**, **Tile Horizontally**, or **Tile Vertically**.

## Best Practices to Optimize Active Channel Performance

The following topics compare active channels, reports, query viewers, and trends in terms of goals and optimal resources for various use cases.

### Active Channels or Reports?

Active channels are the better choice if you would rather see results streaming in as the queries proceed, rather than wait for the results to appear in one view in a report.

However, if speed of results is your goal, you might want to run a report instead. The total completion time of an equivalent report would be faster than the total time it takes for the channel to load 100%. This is because the active channel runs multiple smaller queries instead of one large query to display initial results quicker.

See also, [“Building Queries” on page 299](#), [“Building Trends” on page 317](#), and [“Understanding the Reporting Workflow” on page 275](#) in this guide, and “Query and Trend Performance Tuning” in the Administrator's Guide.

### Active Channels or Query Viewers?

[Query Viewers](#) behave more like reports (see [“Active Channels or Reports?” on page 86](#)) as they issue a single query and return all results in one go instead of the streaming progression of results from an active channel. Query viewers are most suitable if you have to slice and dice these query results further, for example, by changing the sort columns, changing types of charts/grid, and so on. These operations are performed on the client side with the results of the already-executed query. If you were using active channels instead, these types of changes would result in a re-run of the query.

See also [“Query Viewers” on page 227](#).

### Active Channel Query Time Ranges

Take note of the query time range in one of your active channels. The more hours you are querying, the slower the results are to load. An active channel shows results in minutes if you are querying a few hours of data. But the channel might start taking several hours to query larger time ranges that span more than 24 hours of data.

If you are querying over more than a day's worth of data, we recommend running a report (using queries and trends) or a query viewer instead of using an active channel.

### Active Channel Filters

The more filter conditions you define in an active channel, the more work the channel has to do in the database to evaluate the conditions. A channel that does not have any filter conditions loads data fastest. (This does not mean that the query will run on all events in the database. Only a subset of events are queried, based upon the page you are looking at in the channel.)

### Filtering on Indexed Fields

In the CORR-Engine, all fields are indexed. There may be search features that can only search a subset of fields, such as query viewer or active channel events, but there are no restrictions based on indexing, since all fields are indexed.

### Continuously Updating Time Parameters

A channel that is "live" (querying against a moving time window and continuously updating the query time ranges) has to do more work than a channel based against fixed time windows. Performance will be better and faster on a channel with a fixed time window than on a live channel. See also ["Use of the "Live" Channel from Standard Content" on page 87](#).

### End Time or Manager Receipt Time

Using "End Time" as the time field in your active channel is faster than using Manager Receipt Time.

Also, we recommend that you avoid creating channels that are based on one time field but sort on a different time field. A common cause of poor channel performance is user-created channels with this problem; that is, a channel based on End Time, but sorted on Manager Receipt Time (or vice versa).

### Sorting in Active Channels

By default, the channel has a sort order based upon the time field that was used for creating the channel (End Time or Manager Receipt Time). Note that the sorting operation is done in the database query, so every time you change sort by any column in your currently open active channel, effectively it has to re-create the complete channel. (You can use a query viewer instead, that does sorting on the client side with the data it has already queried.)

Also, the sorting operation can be very expensive, especially when millions of events match your filter conditions. Avoid sorting if your filter conditions are not restrictive. For example, the base channel with no filter conditions is normally fastest to load, but it would become the slowest to load if you change its default time based sort order.

### Use of the "Live" Channel from Standard Content

If you are using `/All Active Channels/ArcSight System/Core/Live` or any similar channel, be aware that the performance of that channel is slower because it has several complex joins (Joins with Annotations, Resource Reference, Device), and performs additional bit-wise operations to evaluate its filter conditions. Depending upon your specific use-case, you can simplify and create your own "Live" channel that is more efficient.

## Case Sensitive or Case-Insensitive Conditions?

Wherever possible, use case-sensitive conditions. That will save the extra computation needed for TOUPPER operation required for case-insensitive matches.

## I/O Subsystem Performance

Channel query performance is typically limited by the performance of the I/O subsystem on the database. The more events you are inserting, the more load it would cause on the I/O. SAN performance, RAID levels, I/O caches, and so on play a role in how much performance we can obtain.

## Database Parameters

Make sure that you are using the right-sized database template for your setup. You can ask Customer Support for help on adjusting the database to make use of more available RAM, and so on.

To diagnose channel performance issues, start with the most basic active channel to see whether it meets your performance needs, and then keep refining/expanding to come to a point where you can tell what change is affecting performance. We recommend starting with the most basic active channel that has the following characteristics:

- Based upon End Time
- No filter conditions (also, make sure to run as an administrator user so that there is no access control filter)
- Query time is two hours ago to Now
- No continuous updates of time parameters

With above basic active channel, you should see less than a minute wait in starting the channel and doing random scrolls in the channel.

## Investigating Views

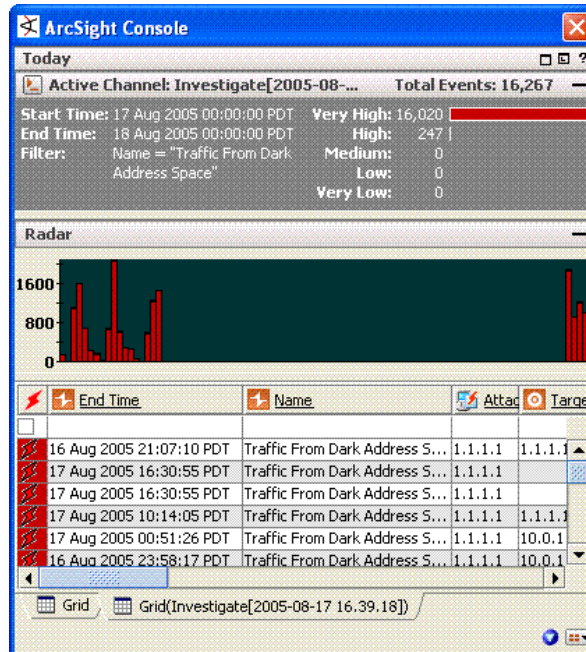
This topic explains how to use the Console's Investigate command to refine and explore channels contextually, using attributes of the events already being displayed in grid views. The Investigate command uses these attributes, and the values found in their events, to automatically formulate simple filters or conditions. When you create or refine a filter through Investigate, the Viewer panel automatically opens a new view of the channel with the filter applied. You explore the filter's effect in this view. You then have the option to keep the view by saving the channel under a new name, or discarding it by right-clicking in the grid and choosing **Close**.

When you use Investigate to add a condition to a resource editor such as Rules or Filters, the condition appears in the editor panel where you can modify it or click **Apply** to put it into effect.

The new or modified views you generate with the Investigate command can be grids, or you can choose to display them in applicable chart formats using the **Viewer Selector** icon in the lower-right corner of the Viewer panel.

To learn more about the event attributes these options use, please see ["Data Fields" on page 837](#).

Following is a temporary view created with the Investigate command:



## Using an Event Attribute to Show a New Filtered View

These options completely control the new view created, ignoring the filter in the original view. You most often use them to test and explore.

In a grid view, right-click an attribute (column) in an event listing and choose **Investigate**, followed by one of these options:

Option	Use
Create Filter [Attribute=Value]	Show only those events in which the selected attribute matches the value in the selected event.
Create Filter [Attribute!=Value]	Show only those events in which the selected attribute does not match the value in the selected event.
Create Filter [List of Related Attributes=Value, !=Value]	When the selected attribute is of a type that has related attributes, choose to show only those events that do (or do not) match one of the related attributes on the additional menu. Generally, attributes are considered related if they share a common focus such as IP addresses.

## Refining a Filter with an Event Attribute

These options open a new view that uses a version of the prior filter modified to include the new filter component just selected. You usually apply these as part of a filter-refinement process.

In a grid view, right-click an attribute (column) in an event listing and choose **Investigate**, followed by one of these options:

Option	Use
Add [Attribute=Value] to Filter	Show only those events that match both the prior and new filter elements.
Add [Attribute!=Value] to Filter	Show only those events that do not match both the prior and new filter elements.
Add to Filter [List of Related Attributes=Value, !=Value]	When the selected attribute type has related attributes, choose to show only those events that do (or do not) match one of the related attributes on the additional menu. This filtering element is applied in addition to any other already present. Generally, attributes are considered related if they share a common focus such as IP addresses.

## Adding an Event Attribute to a Filtering Condition

The **Add condition to editor** options apply to the editor in the Inspect/Edit panel that currently has focus. If no editor is open, the default target is the Filters Editor.

In a grid view, right-click an attribute (column) in an event listing and choose **Investigate**, followed by one of these options:

Option	Use
Add Condition [Attribute=Value] to Editor	In the current editor, insert a new condition in which the selected attribute matches the value in the selected event.
Add Condition [Attribute!=Value] to Editor	In the current editor, insert a new condition in which the selected attribute does not match the value in the selected event.
Add Condition to Editor [List of Related Attributes=Value, !=Value]	When the selected attribute is of a type that has related attributes, add a condition to the current editor using the available list of attribute-value pairs that do (or do not) equate. Generally, attributes are considered related if they share a common focus such as IP addresses.

To remove a condition from the editor, right-click it and choose **Delete**.

When you are using these options to affect a view that is subject to the editor in use, click **Apply** or **OK** in the editor to put the condition into effect.

Contextual filters (in contrast to conditions) are temporary unless you save the modified view as a named active channel. Condition statements are saved with their relevant editors.

## Permanently Modifying an Active Channel

- 1 Use the Navigator panel's Active Channel resource tree to open the view's channel in the Active Channel Editor.
- 2 Modify a view as described above.
- 3 In the editor, give the channel a new name and click **OK**.

## Showing an Exploited Vulnerability

The Investigate options include the ability to look for potentially exploitable vulnerabilities associated with an event.

- 1 Select an event in a grid view.
- 2 Right-click the event and choose **Investigate>Show Exploited Vulnerability**. Available information appears in the Vulnerabilities tab of the relevant Asset Editor.

## Showing a Targeted Asset

You can also find out more about an asset targeted by an event.

- 1 Select an event in a grid view.
- 2 Right-click the event and choose **Investigate>Show Targeted Asset**. Available information appears in the Asset Editor.

## Using Charts

The Console offers several chart view options for active channels and for data monitors. You can add chart views of the data in many active channels or data monitors simply by choosing a chart type from the **Format** pop-up menu in the view's lower-right corner.

ArcSight charts remain linked to the data they represent. You can immediately see a chart's events in a grid view that presents the data as charted, or filtered further using the options of the Investigate command. Charts use the same color for all values in a series. For example, if you are plotting successful and failed logins in a chart, successful logins as a series will have one color. Failed logins as another series will have a different color.

You can click and drag three-dimensional charts on their vertical or horizontal axes to tilt them for better viewing.

## Charting an Active Channel's Contents


- 1 In the Navigator panel's Active Channels resource tree, right-click a channel and choose **Show Active Channel**.
- 2 In the Viewer panel, in the lower-right corner of the newly opened active channel, click the **Viewer Selector** icon to open its menu.
- 3 In the menu's **Chart** branch, choose one of the chart types described below.
- 4 The data in the view opens in an additional chart presentation, in the chosen format, within the active channel.
- 5 Click the **Layout** icon in the channel's lower-right corner to change the visual arrangement (tabbed or tiled) of the views within the channel, if needed.

## Charting a Data Monitor's Contents

- 1 In the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, double-click a dashboard or right-click it and choose **Show Dashboard**.
- 2 In the Viewer panel, in the lower-right corner of an applicable data monitor, click the **Viewer Selector** icon to open its menu.
- 3 In the chart menu, choose one of the types described below.
- 4 The data in the monitor switches to a chart presentation.

For data monitors, the **Chart Showing Priorities** submenu offers many of these same charting options, but with graphic elements such as pie wedges or bar segments that distinguish their priority-level components.

Contents of charts are affected by the things that affect active channels or data monitors, such as changing time parameters or filters. Not all charts are applicable to, or available for, all views.

For more about the format tools available for dashboards (  ), see [“Monitoring Dashboards” on page 103](#).

For more about custom view dashboards, see [“Using Custom View Dashboards” on page 120](#).

For more about working with dashboards, see [“Using Dashboards” on page 102](#).

Chart Type	Description
Area	A horizontal chart in which bands occupy various amounts of the displayed area to indicate relevant values.
Area Radar	A circular chart that shows proportional values as solid graphic extensions from a central zero point, outward to a higher-value border, and occupying relative numbers of degrees of the available circle.
Horizontal Bar	A horizontal chart that shows changes in relative quantities, usually by time units seen as solid rectangles, over a span of time.
Line	A horizontal chart that shows changes in relative quantities, usually by time units plotted on a line, over a span of time.
Pie	A circular chart with proportional wedges for the relevant values.
Radar	A circular chart that shows proportional values as a line plot from a central zero point, outward to a higher-value border, and occupying relative numbers of degrees of the available circle.
Scatter Plot	A horizontal chart that shows changes in relative quantities, usually by time units plotted as separate points, over a span of time.
Stacking Area	A horizontal chart in which stacked bands occupy various amounts of the displayed area to indicate relevant values.
Stacking Bar	A horizontal chart that shows changes in relative quantities, usually by time units seen as stacked solid rectangles, over a span of time.
3D Bar	A corner-anchored graph with height, width, and depth dimensions that can show three axes of categorical and quantitative information.

## Exploring the Events Behind a Chart

To see a grid view of the events behind an active channel's chart, double-click the section of the graphic that represents those events. To filter those events further, right-click the relevant section of the chart and choose an Investigate command option. In charts that show color keys, such as Events by Priority, you can also double-click a color chip to open a grid view filtered by that key.

To see an active channel grid view of the events behind a data monitor's chart, double-click the section of the graphic that represents those events, or right-click and choose **Show**



**Details**, or choose **Show Detailed Channels** to see a view for each of the chart's components.


## Using Active Channels

The tasks in this topic explain how to monitor events in active channels. To better understand the details in grid views, please read more about event grid data fields.

### Monitoring Events in the Active Channel

Click an active channel's tab at the top of the Viewer panel and select the **Grid** view of that channel using the tab at the bottom. When new events occur, they are displayed at the top of an active channel as a new row. Events can appear in ArcSight Severity or filter colors. You can set the color-code for events by using the steps described in ["Changing User Preferences" on page 732](#).

### Sorting Columns in the Active Channel

Right-click on the column header and select **Sort Column**. Columns that support sorting have up/down triangles to the right of the column heading(  ). If the column contains numerals, it sorts from highest to lowest value (or vice versa). If the column contains words or alphabetic characters, it sorts alphabetically from A to Z (or vice versa).

You can also perform an advanced sort on one or more columns in the active channel. When selecting a secondary sort column, select the secondary column first, then the primary column. For example, to sort by Event Name then by Detect Time, sort **Detect Time** first, then **Event Name**.

After you sort a column it automatically pauses the current channel, stopping events from appearing in the active channel. Click the **Play** button in the Replay Controls to restart the channel and resume receiving events in the active channel.



When you sort on time and on priority, you might observe cases where events with the same apparent time are not in priority order. Because events are timestamped to milliseconds, they may in fact be in time order although the milliseconds are not showing. In this case, you can show milliseconds to validate time order. Choose **Edit > Preferences**, then in the Date and Time panel change the **Date & Time** Format to also show milliseconds by adding "SS" to the seconds parameter, for example, d MMM yyyy HH:mm:ss:SS z.

### Adding, Replacing, or Removing a Columns

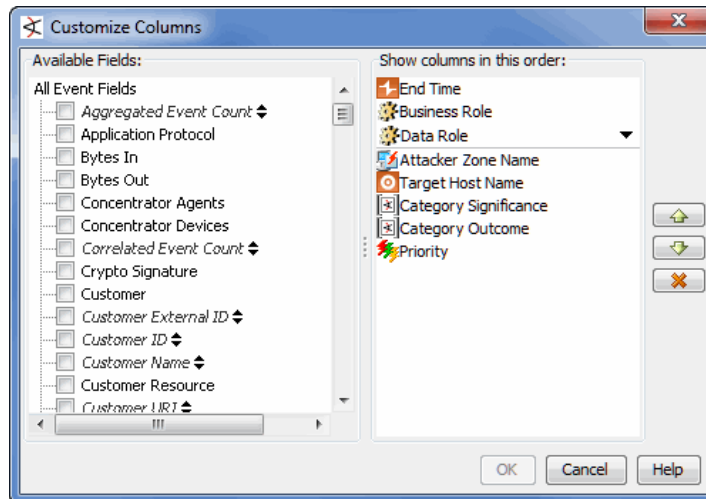
A quick way to add, replace or remove columns in a active channel (for example, active channel or list) is to right-click on the appropriate column header and select one of the following options:

- **Columns > Add/Remove Column > <Select a field from the menu>**
- **Columns > Replace This Column > <Select a field from the menu>**
- **Columns > Remove This Column**

These are context-dependent commands that apply to the column on which you launch the right-click menu. (To add a column, right-click on the header of the column you want to add the new column next to. Columns are added to the right of that header. To replace or remove a column, right-click on the header of the column you want to replace or remove.)

Alternatively, you can use the Customize Columns dialog to define the columns shown in the viewer as described here:


- 1 Right-click the column header and select **Columns > Customize Columns** to bring up the associated dialog. (Note that fields shown in italics are *derived* fields.)



The dialog is an example of what is displayed, based on the columns on the channel.





**Looking for information about custom columns?** If you want to add a custom column, you need to create (define) it first. Once it's created, it appears in the Available Fields list under *Custom Column*, and you can include it in active channels as with any other field. For information on creating custom columns, see ["Customizing Columns" on page 100](#).

- ◆ **To add a column:** Select data fields (column titles) to add from the Available Fields list on the left. Check marks indicate selected columns. The selected columns show up in the list on the right as you select them. Alternatively, when you deselect or uncheck a data field on the left, the column is removed from the right-hand list.
- ◆ **To remove a column:** Select a field from the right-hand list and click the Delete button . Also, deselecting a data field from the Available Fields list on the left removes it from the right-hand list. Removing a column from an active channel does not delete the column information from the database.



You also can remove a column directly from the active channel without opening the Add/Remove Columns dialog. To do this, right-click a column header and select **Remove Column**.

- ◆ **To re-order the columns:** Select a data field (column title) in the right-hand list and click the Up  and Down  buttons to move it. The top-to-bottom order shown in the Show columns in this order list on the right translates to a left-to-right order when applied in the active channel. A column title at the top of this list will show as the first column in the channel on the far left in the grid display. A column title at the bottom of this list will show as the last column on the far right of the grid.
- 2 Click **OK** to save changes you made on the Add/Remove Columns dialog. The active channel reflects added, replaced, removed, or re-sorted fields.

## Sizing a Column in the Active Channel

Right-click a column header and select **Size Column To Fit**.

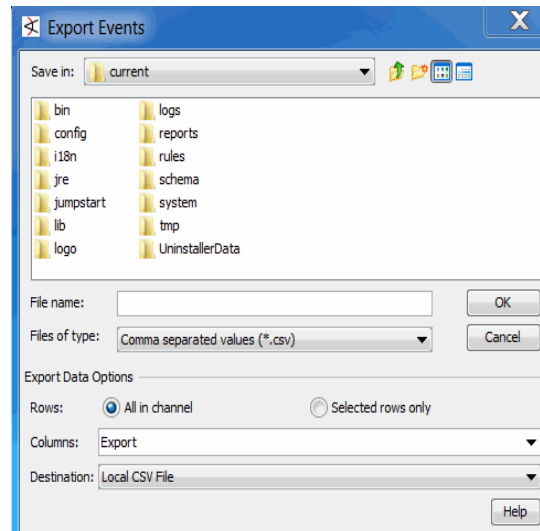
## Showing or Hiding Column Text and Icons

Right-click a column header and select one of the following options:

Option	Display Result
Text and Icon	Display the column heading and its icon.
Text Only	Display only the column heading.
Icon Only	Display only the icon.

## Exporting Events to a File

- 1 Right-click one or more events in the Viewer panel and choose **Export > Events in channel**. This brings up the Export Events dialog.



- 2 Use the file browser to navigate to the location where you want to save the file. You can use the buttons across the top right of the dialog to move up one directory level, go to your desktop, create a new folder, show files as a list or a list with details. Also, you can use the **Files of Type** drop-down menu to display only comma-separated values (CSV) format files or all files while you are browsing the directories.
- 3 In the **File Name** field, enter a name for the file to which you want to export the events.
- 4 Under **Export Data Options**:
  - ◆ Select **All in channel** to export all the events in the channel. The system will export all events in the channel to the specified file, regardless of which events you originally selected in the active channel. (This is option is selected by default.)
  - ◆ Select **Selected rows only** to export only the events you selected in the active channel.
  - ◆ From the **Columns** drop-down menu, choose a field set to use for the exported events. This limits the fields exposed in the exported events to the chosen field

set. The default for “Columns” is the Export field set. You can keep the default, or select other field sets from a list of All Field Sets.

If you want to limit the exported columns (field sets) to only those showing in the current channel, you have a few options for doing this. See the tips on [How to Limit Export to Fields Visible in Channel](#).

- ◆ Select a **Destination** for the file. Local CSV File is selected by default, and is typically the only option.

- 5 Click **OK** to export the events to a file with the specified settings.



#### How to Limit Export to Fields Visible in Channel

The default “Export” field includes a large number of columns. Unless you have a pressing need to export all these fields for channel events, you might want to modify the export. Exporting a large field set for a large event set could be time- and resource-consuming.

If you want the exported file to include only the fields shown in the current channel, do either of these:

- If the channel is unmodified from its default (i.e., you have not added or removed fields), you can select the channel's default field set on the file export option. To find the default field set name, edit the channel and look at “Default Field Set” name or right-click any column header in the channel and choose Field Set > Selected Field Set. The default field set will be selected. (For example, for /All Active Channels/ArcSight System/Core/**Live** active channel, the default field set is Standard-MgrRcpt. Selecting this field set on the export will give you that set of columns in the CSV file.)
- If you have modified the channel from its default (i.e., added or removed fields), you can save it as a custom field set and then choose your custom field set on the export dialog. To save a custom field set, right-click anywhere on the column headers in the active channel and choose Field Sets > Save As. On the Field Sets Selector, navigate to the group you want, name the new field set and click OK. Now it will be available to choose from on the export dialog.

The Export field set itself is also customizable. If you are sure you always want exported events to include a limited set of fields, you can edit the Export field set. (See [“Creating and Using Field Sets”](#) on page 155 and [“Editing a Field Set”](#) on page 161.)

## Choosing Active Channel Menu Commands

Right-click an event or event field in the active channel to open a context menu. The commands available are those that apply to the current combination of event type, view, filter, and so forth.

**Table 3-1 Active Channel Menu Commands**

Command	Description
Show Event Details	Use the Event Inspector to examine all the attribute details associated with the event.

**Table 3-1 Active Channel Menu Commands (Continued)**

Command	Description
Rule Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Simple chain:</b> Show this event's base and correlated event tree in the Event Inspector.</li> <li>• <b>Detailed chain:</b> Show this event's base and correlated events in detail in a new active channel.</li> <li>• <b>Show triggering resource:</b> Show the rule that triggered this event in the Rule Editor.</li> <li>• <b>Clear rule actions:</b> Clears the list (if one is showing) of rule actions pending on the database.</li> </ul>
Investigate	Create a temporary filter as required based on the field's highlighted event. The <b>Investigate</b> command uses the event's attribute type (its column heading), and the particular event's field value (for example, an exact IP address), to formulate simple filters based on these two factors. The filter's operators can include <b>Create Filter [X = Y]</b> and <b>Add Condition [X = Y] to Editor</b> . The <b>Investigate</b> submenu also offers the <b>Show Exploited Vulnerability</b> and <b>Show Targeted Asset</b> commands to open detailed views of assets or vulnerabilities, if present in the selected event.
Debug Event Priority	<p>Display information on how event priorities are determined for the selected event. The window lists which conditions match the event. Items under each category: Severity, Relevance, Model Confidence, and Asset Criticality, and the total scores. For each category, certain factors contribute their individual scores. The scores are added to calculate the total. However, if the sum exceeds the upper limit of 10, <b>10</b> is displayed for the category's total score. Lower limit is 0.</p> <p>Debug Event Priority is applicable to Threat Level Monitoring, described in <a href="#">"Threat Evaluation" on page 975</a> and also <a href="#">"Priority Calculations and Ratings" on page 932</a>.</p>
Active List	Add the selected event to, or remove it from an active list. This is explained further in <a href="#">"Active Lists" on page 753</a> and <a href="#">"Managing Active Lists" on page 511</a> .
Annotate Event	Open this event in the Annotate Events dialog box, where you can click the <b>Stage</b> field to set a collaboration workflow sequence for this event. When you select a stage you automatically place the event in the corresponding group in the Stages resource tree in the Navigator panel, where you and other analysts can collaborate on its investigation and resolution.
Move Timeline to Current Event	Reset the event timeline in the view to the time of the currently selected event.
Select Events with Matching Cell	Select any other events in the view that have values matching that in the currently selected cell.
Invert Selection	Select all events not currently selected, and deselect those that are currently selected.
Event Graph	Graph any logical relationships (i.e., source/target IP address connections) that exist among the currently selected events.
Rule Chain Graph	Graph the rule chains behind the currently selected triggered events.
Geographic View	Geographically map the source and destination IP addresses of the selected events.

**Table 3-1 Active Channel Menu Commands (Continued)**


Command	Description
Tools	Run your choice of the standard network lookup tools, using field values from the selected events.
Create Rule	Use the Rule Editor to create an ArcSight rule to apply to the selected events.
Export	Export the selected events to an external event-tracking system, such as comma-separated-value (CSV) data in a report or for a spreadsheet, or save it as an HTML or a JPEG file.
Add to Case	Add the selected events to a new case for tracking.
Payload	Keep or discard the payload associated with a selected event.
Show Context Report	Output a report concerning rules and events within a specified time window.
Close	Close the current individual view within the selected view type.
Knowledge Base	Show the Knowledge Base pages associated with the selected events, or associate new pages.
Vendor Page	If available, show vendor Web page of the event's sensing device.
Help	Open the online Help to this topic.

## Filtering Active Channels with Inline Filters

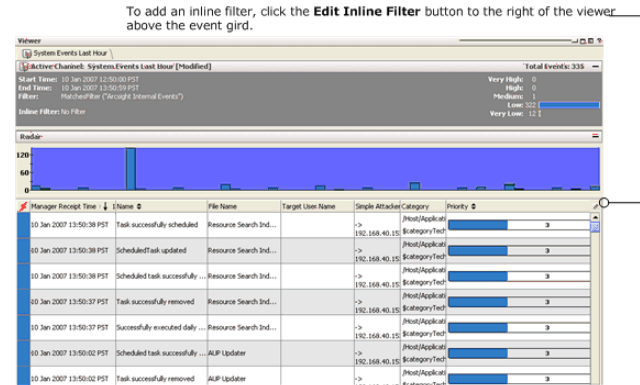
Active channels have a means for creating simple filters based on using a value found in one column, or creating **AND** conditions between values found in two or more columns.

These filters are called *inline filters*, a very rapid way to constrain detailed views. While inline filters are in use, they affect all views generated for the channel.

You can create, change, save, hide, and remove inline filters from the active channel. Also, you can create and manage multiple inline filters from this view.

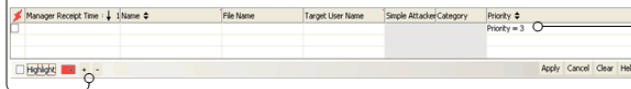
- To create an inline filter, click the Inline Filter link in the event header or click the Edit Inline Filter  button at the top right of the active channel to display the inline filtering fields. Type a value by which you want to filter for one or more fields relating to a column in the grid. Click **Apply** to apply the filter immediately to the view. The inline filter is displayed in the header under the standard filter.
- To change an inline filter, click the **Edit Inline Filter** button again, and choose new values, and apply. The **Clear** button clears the inline filter fields, and **Cancel** closes the inline filtering window without saving current changes.
- To remove an inline filter, right-click over the Inline Filter name in the header for the selected event and choose **Remove Inline Filter**.
- To save an inline filter, right-click over the Inline Filter name in the header for the selected event and choose **Save Inline Filter**. This opens a Filters Selector dialog that shows the Filters tree. Navigate to the folder where you want to save the current filter, and click **OK**.
- To highlight the filtered events, click the **Highlight** check box (**on** is check marked) and use the drop-down color selector to select a color from the palette.
- To create and manage multiple inline filters, click the **+** button next to the Highlight options under the inline filters to add filter definition rows. (Click the **-** button to remove filter rows.) The potential uses of multiple inline filters are extensive, but

essentially this provides a means of creating a filter with complex conditions, inline in an active channel. For example, in the Name column for an event, you could specify that the event name contains `ActiveList` on the first filter row and that the name does not contain `Successful`. You could extend this filter by specifying what you are looking for in some of the other fields or even add more qualifiers on the Name field. All fields can be narrowed down in this way, using multiple filter definition rows.



Clicking the **Edit Inline Filter** button opens an inline filtering window. Type a value in one or more fields to further filter the event stream. In this example, we add an inline filter on the Priority field to specify showing only events of Priority 3. Click **Apply** to apply the inline filter.

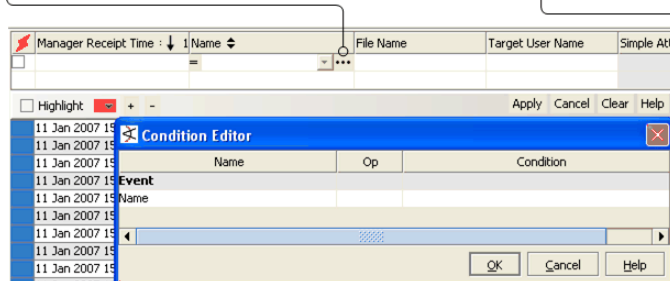
Also, you can click the + button to add filter definition rows and create multiple inline filters. Click the - button to remove rows.



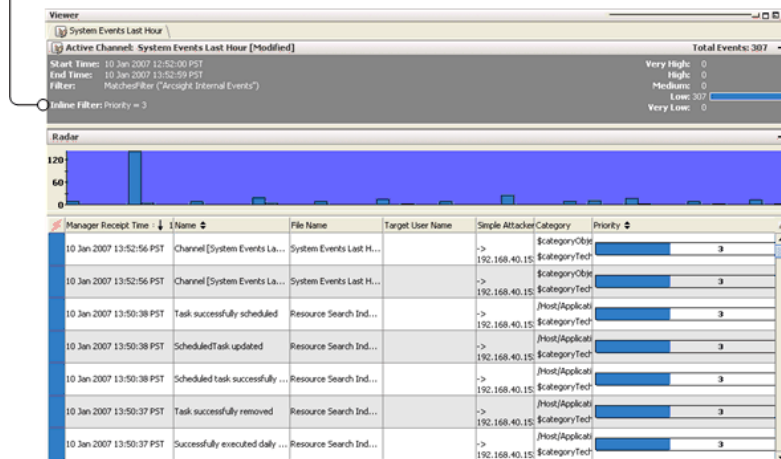
When you click into a field, you get an equals operator, a drop-down list of available values for that field based on the events currently displayed, and an ellipsis (...) indicating another dialog is available.

If these inline options are not enough to create the filter, click the ellipses (...)

to bring up a Conditions Editor dialog in which to create the filter for the selected field.



Once the inline filter is applied, only events that match current filter and the inline filter are shown. The inline filter used is displayed in the header under the original filter.



Custom columns are not available as arguments for inline filtering.

## Customizing Columns

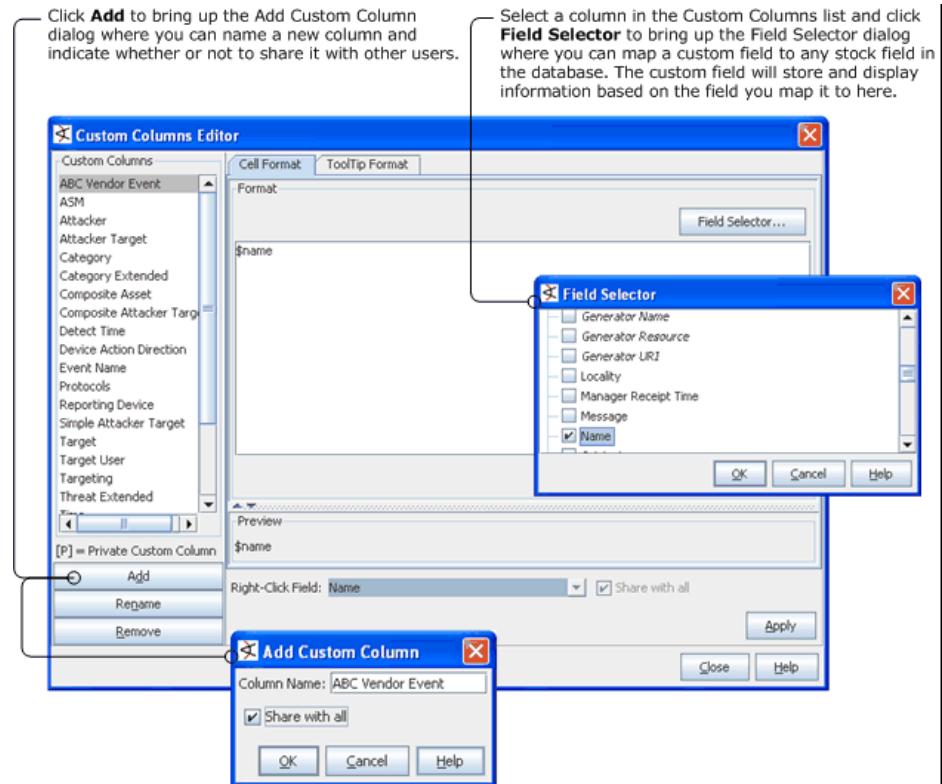
You can create active channel columns with customized cell content and presentation formats, tool tip contents, and right-click pop-up values.

You make these changes through the Custom Columns Editor. In the Editor you create new named columns. For each column you select event data fields to display, and if you wish, the HTML formatting to use in its cells. The tool tip option specifies the formatting and content of the tool tips you see when you hover the pointer over cells in that column. The right-click field option sets the event data field to use in columns where there are right-click commands that use field names as arguments such as "Investigate...."

## Creating a Custom Column

- 1 Right-click a column header in an active channel and choose **Customize Columns > Edit Custom Columns**. This brings up the Custom Columns Editor.





- 2 Click **Add** to name a new column. If you want everyone to see the new column (not just administrators), select the **Share with all** check box. (You can toggle this option on or off later too from the Cell Format tab.) When you click OK on the **Add Custom Column** dialog, the new column name is added to the Custom Columns list on the left side of editor.
- 3 Click **Field Selector** on the **Cell Format** tab to pick the event attributes you want to display in this column and click **OK**.
- 4 In the **Format** text box apply Java-compatible HTML formatting around the field strings, if appropriate. Remember to bracket such formatting with the HTML tag, such as `<HTML><B>$type</B></HTML>`.
- 5 Click **Preview** to see how the contents of the **Format** box will look in the active channel.
- 6 Click the **ToolTip Format** tab to define a tool tip.
- 7 Choose a target event attribute in the **Right-Click Field** menu to populate variable right-click commands, when applicable.
- 8 Click **Rename** or **Remove** to change or take away selected items in the **Custom Columns** list.
- 9 Click **Apply** to put your changes into effect and **Close** to close the Custom Columns Editor.

You can edit custom columns after they are created, including toggling on/off the “Share with all” settings for a column, renaming it, changing its Field Selector mappings, and so forth.



---

Custom columns are not available as arguments for inline filtering.

---

## Showing a Custom Column

Once a custom column is created, it is available for use in the Console. Right-click the column header in an active channel and choose **Customize Columns > Add Column** to add the new column to the active channel. Custom columns show up in the Available Fields list under **Custom Column**. If a column is configured as **Share with all**, it is available to all administrators. If not, it is available only to the user who created it. For more information, see [“Adding, Replacing, or Removing a Columns” on page 93](#).

## Advanced Example: Creating a Custom Column with Velocity Template

Custom columns can display different contents based on external conditions. Use the Velocity template language to specify these conditions.

To create a custom column that displays a particular image when an event's target is in a specific Zone, create the custom column as described previously, but specify Velocity template-language script in place of the HTML format.

The code in the **Format** text box might look like this:

```
<HTML>
#if (($targetZoneUri.length()>0) &&
    ($targetZoneUri.startsWith("/All Zones/
    System Zones/Public Address Space Zones/
    Ford Motor Company")))
    <IMG src="file:///c:/fordlogo.gif" />
#end
</HTML>
```

## Using Dashboards

Dashboards are a graphical display of data gathered from one or more [Data Monitors](#) and/or [Query Viewers](#). Dashboards can display data in a number of graphical formats, including pie and bar charts, tables, and custom layouts.

Administrators can control visibility of, or access to, dashboards, query viewers, and data monitors by changing access control lists (ACLs) as needed. For more information on general use of ACLs on any resource, see [“Managing Permissions and Resources” on page 603](#).

With ACLs, administrators can also control which users are allowed to *deploy* (enable) or *un-deploy* (disable) a data monitor.

## Monitoring Dashboards

You can organize and present events displayed by data monitors and query viewers on the dashboard. Basic tasks include loading and displaying dashboards; inspecting events; using zoom, slide show, or manipulating the views in various ways; working with dashboard layouts; saving dashboards, and so on.

### Loading Dashboards

- 1 Choose **Views > Show Dashboard** to open the Load Dashboard dialog box.
- 2 Expand the dashboard groups to locate the dashboards you want to include in your display.
- 3 Select the checkboxes next to the dashboards you want to include.
- 4 When you've finished your selections, click **OK**.

### Inspecting Events in Dashboards

You can investigate the events presented on the dashboard by selecting and right-clicking those events and choosing **Show Event Details** for Last N Events data monitors or **Show details** for other types of data monitors.

If you select events from a Last N Events, the details appear in the Event Inspector.

If you select events from any other data monitor or query viewer, a new view opens in the Viewer panel for you to investigate.

You can drill down on grid, graph, or chart views.

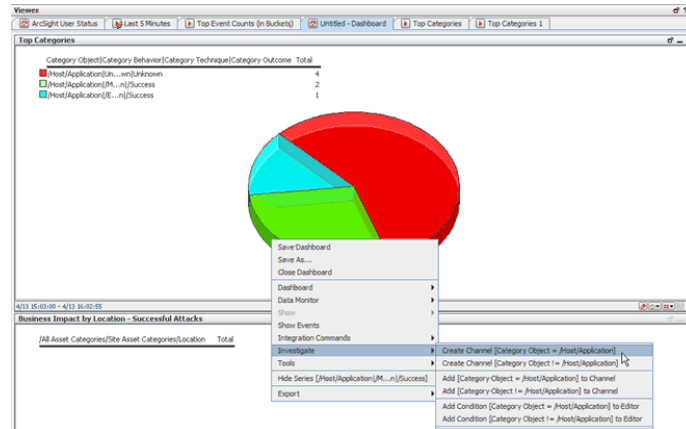


By default on a data monitor, the displayed channel uses the same columns as the default Standard Field Set (as defined in the `console.default.properties` file in the ArcSight Console installation).

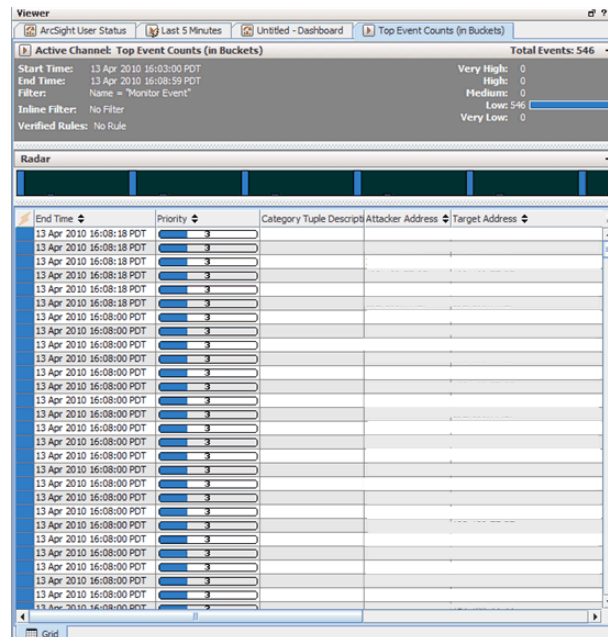
If a custom field set is defined for the data monitor `Select Field Set` option, the drill-down channel will use that field set. (See ["Data Monitors" on page 878](#) for information on creating data monitors and defining settings for them.)

You can add or remove columns in the active channel. To do so, right-click on the active channel column headers to get the `Customize Columns` option.

For example, to investigate a data monitor pie chart display, either double-click the chart, or right-click and select **Investigate > Create Channel** and choose a `create channel` option (the menu option for a pie chart display of a query viewer may slightly vary with an additional menu level).



An active channel is displayed showing more detail about the events or resources in the original data monitor or query viewer display. If the channel came from a data monitor, the channel uses the field set columns defined for use in the data monitor **Select Field Set** option. If no field set is defined, the data monitor uses standard field set columns.



## Drilling Down to Other Resources

If you have added one or more drilldowns to data monitors or query viewers, Console users can select one by right-clicking on the data monitor or query viewer result and selecting **Drilldown > [drilldown name]** from the context menu.

You can configure query viewers to drill down to one or a combination of the following resources:


- Active channels
- Dashboards
- Other query viewers
- Reports

The procedure for configuring drill downs from data monitors and query viewers is essentially the same. The procedure for Query Viewers is in the topic [“Managing Drilldowns” on page 262](#). For data monitors, see [“Adding a Drilldown” on page 111](#).

## Displaying Dashboards

In the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a dashboard and choose **Show Dashboard**.

## Displaying Dashboards in a Slide Show Rotation

To automatically sequentially display all the dashboards present in the Viewer panel, choose **Views > Slideshow > Interval** in the Console's menu. Use **Interval** to set the number of seconds to pause on each dashboard, then choose **Views > Slideshow > Start**, or use the toolbar button  , to begin the slide show. Slide shows appear full-window. Also, **Tile Best Fit** is the best display choice in slideshow dashboards so all data monitors are visible. Use **Views > Slideshow > Stop**, or the toolbar button, to end a slideshow and return to the previous view.

## Rearranging Elements in Dashboard Layouts

You can change a dashboard's layout by dragging and dropping the elements on the desired location in the dashboard. You can also click an element's header and drag it to another location.

## Using Dashboard Menu Options

Right-click an element in a dashboard to use the **Dashboard** subcommands on its context menu. The nature of the element determines which commands are applicable and enabled.

## Zooming In or Out of Dashboards

Right-click an element and choose **Dashboard>Zoom In** or **Dashboard>Zoom Out**.

## Fitting all Dashboard Elements

Right-click a dashboard element and choose **Dashboard>Fit in Dashboard**.

## Saving Dashboard Layouts

In a dashboard, right-click and select **Save Dashboard**.

## Closing a Dashboard

In a dashboard, right-click and select **Close Dashboard**.

## Editing Dashboard Elements

Right-click in the element and choose **<Dashboard element>Edit**.

See also:

- [Editing a Data Monitor](#) and [Moving or Copying a Data Monitor](#)
- [“Editing a Query Viewer” on page 261](#)

## Changing a Dashboard's Layout

Click the **Layout** button at the lower-right corner of the dashboard in the Viewer panel and choose a tab or tile option.

## Managing Dashboards

This topic describes how to create dashboards and adding elements to it. Elements include data monitors and query viewers.

### Creating a Dashboard

When you create a dashboard, the ability to add data monitors is automatically available.

- 1 On the Dashboards tab, right-click a dashboard group and choose **New Dashboard**. Alternatively, drag an existing dashboard to a different group, choose **Copy** to copy the dashboard, and then rename it.

If you chose New Dashboard, an untitled dashboard appears in the Viewer panel and the Data Monitors tab automatically comes forward so you can choose monitors to add.

- 2 If you want to add data monitors now:
  - a Select the **Data Monitors** tab and navigate through the groups of existing data monitors to find ones you want to add to the dashboard.
  - b Select a data monitor to add, right-click it and choose **Add to Dashboard As**, then choose an applicable display format (see [Display Formats](#)).
  - c Repeat the above step to add other data monitors, as needed. When you've finished, right-click the dashboard in the Viewer panel and choose **Save Dashboard**.
- 3 If you want to add query viewers, see ["Adding a Query Viewer to a Dashboard" on page 107](#).
- 4 In the Save As dialog box, navigate to a group and type in the **Name** text field.
- 5 Click **OK**.

### Adding a Data Monitor to a Dashboard

- 1 Right-click a dashboard and choose **Show Dashboard**.
- 2 On the Data Monitors tab, navigate through the groups of existing data monitors to find ones you want to add to the dashboard.
- 3 Right-click a data monitor and choose **Add to Dashboard As**, then choose an applicable display format (see [Display Formats](#)).
- 4 To save the dashboard, right-click it and choose **Save Dashboard**. If this is a new dashboard, navigate to the group where you want to save the dashboard, enter a name for the new dashboard, and click **OK**.

## Adding a Query Viewer to a Dashboard

You can add a query viewer result to a dashboard as follows:

- 1 If you have identified an existing dashboard to which you want to add the query viewer, open the dashboard in the viewer and make sure it is the focus. If you want to add the query viewer to a new dashboard, continue to the next step.
- 2 Choose **Query Viewers** in the Navigator.
- 3 Select a query viewer, right-click and choose **Add to Dashboard As >**, then choose an applicable display format (see [Display Formats](#)).

The query viewer result is displayed on the open dashboard. If a dashboard is not displayed, a new untitled dashboard is created for the query viewer result.

- 4 Save the existing dashboard.

Or if this is a new dashboard:

- a Right-click the title bar of the dashboard and choose **Save Dashboard As**.
- b In the popup dialog, navigate to the group where you want to save the dashboard, enter a name for the dashboard, and click **OK**.

By default, this new dashboard is a regular dashboard. If you want to change it to a custom view dashboard, see [“Using Custom View Dashboards” on page 120](#).

You can add multiple query viewer results sets along with other resources to a single dashboard.



Query viewer results on dashboards are accessible from ArcSight Web. For more information, see [“ArcSight Web” on page 762](#).

## Display Formats

The display options available depend on the nature of the dashboard element.

**Table 3-2** Display Options for Dashboards

Display Format	Description
Bar Chart	Shows data as a series of proportional bar elements and may include bar segmentation to subdivide the data. Applies to data monitors and query viewers.
Bar Chart Table	A grid of proportional bar elements. Applies to data monitors.
Horizontal Bar Chart	Shows data as a series of proportional bar elements and may include bar segmentation to subdivide the data. This format forces the bars to run left-to-right rather than up-and-down. Applies to data monitors and query viewers.
Pie Chart	Shows data as a circle with proportional wedges for elements. Applies to data monitors and query viewers.

**Table 3-2 Display Options for Dashboards (Continued)**

Display Format	Description
Statistics Chart	Displays Moving Average data monitors, especially those that contain and need to arrange (overlay) multiple graphs in one monitor space. Compare Statistics Chart to Tile, which arranges individual-graph monitors into fixed arrays. Applies to data monitors.
Table	Displays data as a grid. Applies to data monitors and query viewers.
3D Bar Chart	Shows data as a series of proportional bar elements and may include bar segmentation to subdivide the data. The graph also has a third axis (depth) to display more data and can be rotated by dragging. Applies to data monitors.
Stacked Bar Chart	Shows data as a series of proportional bar elements and may include bar segmentation to subdivide the data. Applies to query viewers.
Tile	Arranges individual Moving Average data graphs into separate, fixed positions on a data monitor, when multiple graphs are present. Compare Tile to Statistics Chart, which displays multiple graphs (overlaid) in the same monitor space. Applies to data monitors.

## Editing a Dashboard

You edit dashboards by editing the data monitors within them as described in [“Using Custom View Dashboards” on page 120](#).

## Deleting a Dashboard

- 1 In the Dashboards tab of the Dashboards resource tree, right-click the dashboard's name and choose **Delete Dashboard**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Managing Dashboard Groups

The groups in the Dashboard tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboard resource tree store individual dashboards or other dashboard groups. You use groups within groups to help organize larger numbers of resources.

You can manage groups by drag-and-drop. You can move or copy dashboards or groups within the Dashboards resource tree. And deleting a group also deletes the resources it contained.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.



## Creating a Dashboard Group

- 1 In the Dashboards tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.
- 2 Type a name in the group's text field.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming a Dashboard Group

- 1 In the Dashboards tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 Type a name in the group's text field.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Editing a Dashboard Group

- 1 In the Dashboards tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying a Dashboard Group

- 1 In the Dashboards tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, navigate to a group and drag it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that will not be affected when the original group is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting a Dashboard Group

- 1 In the Dashboards tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Using Data Monitors

You populate dashboards with *data monitors*, which you most often select from the Data Monitors resource tree in the Navigator panel (under Dashboards). However, when you need to use data monitors that aren't pre-defined, you need to be able to create, edit, and delete them.

Administrators can limit visibility of, or control access to, data monitors by changing access control lists (ACLs) as needed. For more information on general use of ACLs on any resource, see ["Managing Permissions and Resources" on page 603](#).

With ACLs, administrators can also control which users are allowed to *deploy* (enable) or *un-deploy* (disable) a data monitor.

## Creating a Data Monitor

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a data monitor group and choose **New Data Monitor**.
- 2 In the Data Monitor Editor, select a **Data Monitor Type** from the drop-down menu. See ["Data Monitor Types" on page 115](#) for descriptions of each type. (See also ["Data Monitors" on page 878](#) in the reference section of this guide.)
- 3 Based on the [Data Monitor Types](#) you've selected, specify values and options in the applicable fields to define the data monitor's data collection. Details on fields and appropriate values are given in the information about each data monitor type.



Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to **Enable** (*deploy*) or disable (*un-deploy*) the data monitor. For more information, see ["Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112](#).

- 4 If the data monitor uses data fields for evaluation, use the **Variables** tab to create a new specialized field, if necessary.

The following data monitors support variables:

- ◆ Event graph
- ◆ Hierarchy Map
- ◆ Last N Events
- ◆ Last State
- ◆ Moving Average
- ◆ Statistics
- ◆ Top Value Counts (bucketized)

If you select a data monitor that does not support variables, the Variables tab is disabled.

You can also add a global variable anywhere fields can be added. For instructions about how to add a global variable to a data monitor, see ["Adding a Global Variable to a Data Monitor" on page 452](#).

- 5 If the Data Monitor type supports drill downs, you can use the Drilldown tab to configure it. The following types of Data Monitors support drilldowns: Event Graph, Hierarchy Map, Last N Events, Last State, Moving Average, Statistics, and Top Value Counts (Bucketized).

In the ArcSight Console you can create drill downs to Dashboards, Active Channels, Reports, and Query Viewers.

In a Custom View Dashboard and on the ArcSight Command Center, only drill downs to dashboards are supported.

- 6 Click **OK**.

To add the new monitor to the current dashboard, right-click it and choose **Add to Dashboard As**.

## Editing a Data Monitor

- 1 Do either of the following to bring up the Data Monitor editor:
  - ◆ In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a data monitor and choose **Edit Data Monitor**.
  - ◆ If a Dashboard containing a given Data Monitor is already displayed, hover the cursor over that Data Monitor in the Viewer panel, right-click, and choose **Data Monitor > Edit**.
- 2 In the Data Monitor Editor, edit the applicable fields.
- 3 Click **OK** to save your changes and close the Data Monitor Editor. Or click **Apply** to save the changes and leave the editor open.

See [“Data Monitor Types” on page 115](#) and [“Data Monitors” on page 878](#) for field details on all data monitors.

For customize view options on Last State data monitors, see [Table View \(Color Chooser and Remove Entry\)](#) and [“Tile View \(Customize View\)” on page 899](#) in the [Last State Data Monitor](#) topic.

## Adding a Drilldown

You can configure data monitors to drill down to one or a combination of the following resources:

- Active channels
- Dashboards
- Query Viewers
- Reports

Each drilldown has its own options. After you have added one or more drilldowns, Console users can select one by right-clicking on the data monitor result and selecting **Drilldown > [drilldown name]** from the context menu.

The procedure for setting this up is identical to the procedure for adding drilldowns to Query Viewers and is covered in detail in [“Query Viewer Drilldowns” on page 261](#).

Creating a drilldown definition to a resource is not supported on all types of data monitors. You can create drilldowns from these types of data monitors:

- Event graph
- Hierarchy map
- Last N Events
- Last State
- Moving Average
- Statistics
- Top Value Counts

You *cannot* drill down to resources from the following data monitors:

- Asset Category Count
- Event reconciliation
- Event Correlation

- Geographic Event Graph
- Hourly Counts
- Rules Partial Match
- Session Reconciliation
- System Monitor
- System Monitor Attribute

## Moving or Copying a Data Monitor

You can move or copy a data monitor as you would any other resource (as described in [“Moving Copying, Linking, and Deleting Resources” on page 68](#)).



- Users who do not have data monitor deployment permissions can still copy enabled data monitors, but the copies are disabled. Users need both write and deploy permissions to enable or disable a data monitor.
- Users who do not have data monitor deployment permissions can still move data monitors from one group to another if they have write permissions on the data monitors they want to move and the destination group for the move operation.

For more about data monitor deployment permissions, see [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).

---

## Deleting a Data Monitor

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a data monitor and choose **Delete Data Monitor**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor

When a data monitor is enabled (*deployed*) it is actively processing events and updating its display.

When you disable (un-deploy) a data monitor, it stops processing events and updating its display. You might choose to disable a data monitor because it is not needed or should not be considered under certain circumstances.

Data monitors can be enabled at time of creation (see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#)) or edited later to enable deployment.



Note

Data monitor deployment is controlled through User Access Control Lists (ACLs). Administrators can allow or block users for data monitor deployment permissions.

Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to **Enable** (*deploy*) or **Disable** (*un-deploy*) the data monitor.

- Administrators (all users belonging to the `admin` group) have permissions to deploy/un-deploy data monitors.
- To deploy a data monitor, a user needs *both* general data monitor deployment permissions and write permissions to the specific data monitor he or she wants to deploy. Users with permissions to deploy data monitors can deploy only those data monitors for which they have write permissions.
- Administrators can grant permissions to deploy or restrict data monitors to other non-Administrator users through the Access Control Lists (ACLs) editor. For more information, see [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#) and [“Granting or Removing Resource Permissions” on page 604](#).

## Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor from the Editor



Tip

You can set *operations* permissions on data monitor deployment by editing Access Control Lists (ACLs) on user groups. Administrators can allow or block user groups for data monitor deployment permissions. (This is different than controlling permissions on who has access to the data monitors *resource*.)

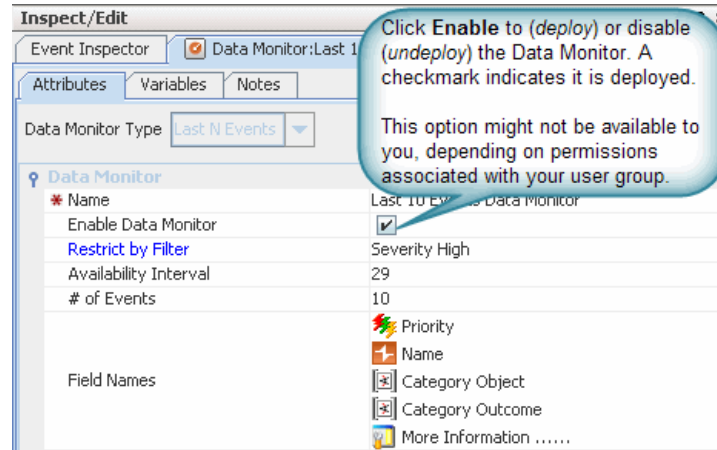
To set permissions for *deploying* data monitors, click the **Operations** tab, then click the **Add** button to get the Permissions Selector dialog for operations, select **Deploy** and click **OK**. For more information, see [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).

By default, only Administrators have permissions to enable and disable data monitors. Administrators can grant permissions to enable and disable data monitors to other non-Administrator users through the Access Control Lists (ACLs) editor. For more information, see [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).

If you have appropriate permissions, you can enable and disable data monitors in the Data Monitor Editor. (See [“Editing a Data Monitor” on page 111](#) for information on displaying the editor.)

In the Data Monitor Editor, click the check box for **Enable** to toggle the data monitor on or off. (Be sure to click **Apply** or **OK** on the editor to save your changes.)

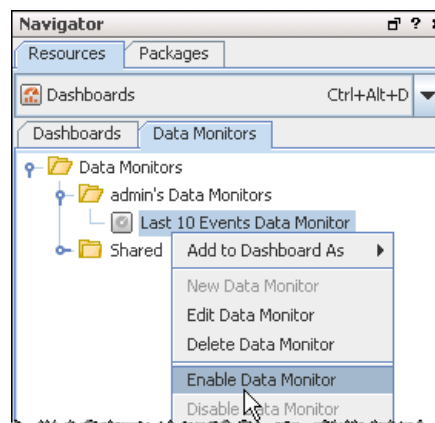
- ◆ A checkmark indicates the data monitor is enabled/deployed.
- ◆ If the box is unchecked, the data monitor is disabled/un-deployed.



## Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor in the Navigator

You can also enable and disable data monitors in the Navigator by right-clicking data monitors or a data monitor group.

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Dashboards resource tree, right-click a data monitor or a data monitor group.
- 2 Choose **Enable Data Monitor** to *deploy* or activate the monitors (if disabled) or **Disable Data Monitor** to *un-deploy* or deactivate (if enabled).



For information about granting permissions to user groups to enable or disable data monitors, see [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).

## Overriding a Data Monitor's Last State

Last State data monitors can sometimes display a status that has served its purpose as soon as you have seen it. Once seen, you may want to directly reset or change the status so you can watch for a new status change, without waiting for an automatic system update.

When you see a status in a Last State data monitor that you want to reset, de-escalate, or otherwise override, right-click a cell in the monitor and choose **Override Status**. In the Select dialog box, select the new status and click **OK**.

## Data Monitor Types

The ArcSight Console offers these predefined types to choose from when creating a new data monitor. Data monitor types are listed here with a quick-glance description for each. For full detail on each type of data monitor, follow the links or cross-references to the associated topic in [“Data Monitors” on page 878](#) in the reference section of this guide.

**Table 3-3** Data Monitor Types

Data Monitor Type	Description
<a href="#">“Asset Category Count Data Monitor” on page 879</a>	Enumerate the number of real-time hits (events) that occur per asset category, by priority, within a time interval.
<a href="#">“Event Correlation Data Monitor” on page 880</a>	Provide flow-volume level correlation between two different event streams (based on two different specified filters).
<a href="#">“Event Graph Data Monitor” on page 881</a>	Draw real-time diagrams of selected event activity. Automates the graphing of attacks in real-time. The <i>manual</i> operations are described in <a href="#">“Graphing Attacks” on page 128</a> .
<a href="#">“Event Reconciliation Data Monitor” on page 882</a>	Correlate events arriving from one sensor with events arriving from another sensor. When qualifying events occur on either or both sensors, this data monitor issues a new event to signal it. Useful in helping to determine the effectiveness of a firewall or IDS deployed in your environment.
<a href="#">“Geographic Event Graph Data Monitor” on page 886</a>	Draw a real-time geographic map of selected events. In effect, it does automatically and in real-time what you can do manually, as described in <a href="#">“Graphing Attacks” on page 128</a> .
<a href="#">“Hierarchy Map Data Monitor” on page 886</a>	Draw an image made up of proportionally sized panels where each panel represents a group of events selected by group fields selected in the source node identifier. A source-node criteria could be a combination of fields.  The Hierarchy Map data monitor includes several enhancements, as described in <a href="#">“Feature Enhancements” on page 886</a> in <a href="#">Hierarchy Map Data Monitor</a> .
<a href="#">“Hourly Counts Data Monitor” on page 895</a>	Display the total count of events on an hourly basis along with their Priority.
<a href="#">“Last N Events Data Monitor” on page 896</a>	Order events based on a specified configuration. In the Table Viewer, the monitor displays the most recent events by Priority, Event Name, Protocol, and Category. With the BarChartTable configuration, the order is by Priority and Event Name. The PieChart configuration is ordered by Priority.
<a href="#">“Last State Data Monitor” on page 897</a>	Provide an extra level of abstraction that you can use to simplify the information presented to operators. Sometimes called <i>indicator lights</i> or <i>heads-up displays</i> , these monitors show graphics that translate more complex values into simple, rapidly observable results such as green/amber/red signal lights or checkmark/asterisk/exclamation point symbols. <i>Last State</i> data monitors could also be called <i>most recently known state</i> monitors.

**Table 3-3 Data Monitor Types (Continued)**

Data Monitor Type	Description
<a href="#">"Moving Average Data Monitor" on page 901</a>	Display the moving average of events by a selected data field. The display provides a running count of events within a specified time frame and generates an event when the moving average changes significantly.
<a href="#">"Rules Partial Match Data Monitor" on page 904</a>	Display rules that have partial matches and the total number of partial match events within a specified time frame. For more information on partial matches, see <a href="#">"Creating Rule Actions" on page 417</a> .
<a href="#">"Session Reconciliation Data Monitor" on page 905</a>	Correlate events on the basis of their occurrence within a relevant time period, as established by a session event.
<a href="#">"Statistics Data Monitor" on page 906</a>	Provide a broader generalization of Moving Average data monitor functionality, except that it allows selection of other statistical methods in addition to Moving Average. Statistical methods include Average, Moving Average, Standard Deviation, Skew and Kurtosis, as well as Moving Average. These added capabilities could be used to detect anomalous behavior that could not be detected using moving average alone.
<a href="#">"System Monitor Data Monitor" on page 909</a>	Provide measurements based on ArcSight Manager internal monitoring system Java classes and attributes.  A number of system monitors that might be particularly useful to ArcSight administrators are provided as predefined System Data Monitors that you can include in your dashboard displays to monitor system performance.
<a href="#">"System Monitor Attribute Data Monitor" on page 909</a>	Similar to System Monitor, except that, rather than provide measurements for all attributes of a specified Java class, focus on a single specific attribute of a given ArcSight Java class. Used primarily for measurements on attributes that provide complex data structures.
<a href="#">"Top Value Counts Data Monitor" on page 910</a>	Display top events by selected data field, the total number of events, and the event Severity within the total number of events with the Table and BarChartTable viewer configurations.

## Managing Data Monitor Groups

Data monitor groups store similar data monitors in a single location. You can create groups within groups to meet enterprise needs.

You can manage groups by drag-and-drop. You can move or copy dashboards or groups within the Dashboards resource tree. Deleting a group deletes the resources it contained.



**Note**

To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.



## Creating a Data Monitor Group

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.
- 2 Type a name in the text field.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming a Data Monitor Group

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and select **Rename**.
- 2 Type a new name in the group's text field.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Editing a Data Monitor Group

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying a Data Monitor Group

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, navigate to a group and drag it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that will not be affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting a Data Monitor Group

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Enabling or Disabling Data Monitor Groups

Data monitors are enabled by default. When you disable data monitors they stop processing events and updating their displays. You might choose to disable a data monitor group because it is not needed or should not be considered under certain circumstances.

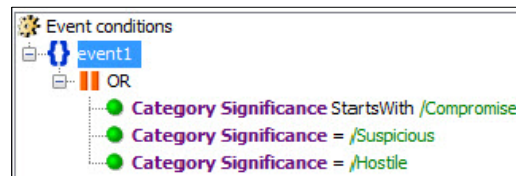
You can also enable and disable data monitors individually in the Data Monitor resource tree or Data Monitor Editor.

- 1 In the Data Monitors tab of the Dashboards resource tree, right-click a data monitor group.
- 2 Choose **Enable Data Monitor** to activate all the monitors in the group (if they are disabled) or **Disable Data Monitor** to deactivate them (if they are enabled).

## Optimizing the Evaluation of Data Monitors' Event Filters

This information is written for advanced content authors. It describes how to automate the optimization of event conditions to reduce impact on CPU usage. The procedures apply to event and correlation data monitors that use event filters. (The settings describe here also impact event rule conditions. See [“Optimizing the Evaluation of Event Conditions” on page 411](#) for information.)

Evaluating event conditions is one of the most resource-intensive operation in event processing. ESM evaluates event conditions in the sequence they appear on the filter's Filter tab. There are general guidelines on how to order these conditions from the most economical to the most expensive, as far as resource usage is concerned. The following example shows event conditions:



As far as resource usage is concerned, there are general guidelines on how to order these conditions from the most economical to the most expensive, and that is, put the least costly condition on top. However, this may not be enough; you must also consider the TRUE/FALSE rate and whether you are using OR or AND operators.

### Requirement

To optimize the evaluation of event conditions, data monitors must be of the event or correlation type and must be using a filter, because event conditions are defined in the filter. Filters are used not only in data monitors but also in other resources, for example, active channels and query viewers. However, event conditions in filters are only evaluated and optimized in the context of the data monitors that use these filters. The filters themselves are not altered by the evaluation. Refer to [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#) for more information.



Note

A data monitor can use one or more filters. In this case, all filters being used by the data monitor will be optimized in memory.

### Automating Condition Optimization

ESM provides the ability to enable the evaluation of event conditions and if necessary, re-sequence the conditions to be evaluated by adding this property setting in the `server.properties` file:

```
rule.dm.optimize.evaluation=true
```

This setting automates the process of optimizing all of your deployed data monitors. The optimization process occurs in memory and will leave your resources intact. If there are changes, for example, data monitors are updated or added, optimization runs again.

The following line in `server.log` denotes the completion of the optimization process:

End of conditions optimization in <n> events



Refer to the following documents for more information:

- For detailed instructions on how to add the new setting to the `server.properties` file, go to the ESM Administrator's Guide's Configuration section. Refer to the topic, "Managing and Changing Properties File Settings."
- For information about the `server.log` file, see the ESM Administrator's Guide, Configuration chapter. Refer to the topic, "Configuring Manager Logging."

## Tracing the Optimization

The tracing feature described here is optional; however, if you want to use this feature, the condition optimization setting must be turned on first. The tracing feature enables you to capture information about how your data monitors were optimized. The information is stored in `server.log`.

To use this feature, add this property setting in the `server.properties` file:

```
rule.dm.trace.optimize.evaluation=true
```

This setting records in the `server.log` file the original sequence of conditions and how these conditions are re-ordered (optimized).

To locate the information in the log file, search for the the data monitor's name. The following example shows the log statements that include the evaluated data monitor's URI and a sampling of the profiled values. The profile describes the average time in nanoseconds a specific condition took to process. The condition's position is indicated by an index starting with position 0. The profile in the log indicates that the costliest condition at Index 0 took an average of 1,227 nanoseconds over a sampling of 22:

```
[2014-08-01 12:22:19,416] [INFO
] [default.com.arcsight.common.simplerulesengine.engine.b]
Optimizing /All Data Monitors/ArcSight Foundation/Intrusion Monitoring/Detail/Attack
Monitoring/Attack Rates/Attack Rates by Service and Zones/Attacker Zones by Service
Profiled values are
[ Index=1, avgTime=1185 ,numSamples=22,  Index=2, avgTime=1189 ,numSamples=23,
Index=0, avgTime=1227 ,numSamples=22]
```

The following lines indicate the order of conditions (denoted as nodes) as originally defined. Red numbers correspond to the index:

```
Original nodes are
Node : categorySignificance StartsWith "/Compromise" ①
Node : categorySignificance EQ "/Suspicious" ②
Node : categorySignificance EQ "/Hostile" ③
```

The following lines indicate the optimized order of conditions (denoted as nodes):

Optimized nodes are

```
Node : categorySignificance EQ "/Suspicious" Moved from position 1
Node : categorySignificance EQ "/Hostile" Moved from position 2
Node : categorySignificance StartsWith "/Compromise" Moved from position 0
```

Observe how nodes were moved up and down to indicate which conditions are evaluated first. Index 0, originally profiled as the costliest, is now evaluated last.



Filter conditions can have nested filters. In this case, conditions in those nested filters are also evaluated and optimized, but the node listing in the log will not distinguish in which filters the conditions are defined.

#### To save a filter in its optimized state:

If you are a content author, you can leverage the log information to modify your filter conditions permanently. This procedure is optional.

- 1 Refer to the log and re-order the filter conditions accordingly.
- 2 Save the filter in this optimized state. Repeat for nested filters as required.

Filters may be shared with other resources, for example, active channels and query viewers. In this case, if you manually optimize filters used by data monitors, other resources using the same filters will benefit from the change. Once filter conditions have been optimized for a data monitor and even if you don't manually change the filters, you may disable the optimization tool, described in [Disabling the Optimization Feature](#).

## Disabling the Optimization Feature

Optimization runs only once on event filters used by data monitors and the profiles for the evaluated conditions are stored in the log file. Each time you disable and re-enable event data monitors, evaluation and optimization runs again. When the feature is no longer needed, for example, you have modified the event filters, you can change the optimization setting to `false` in `server.properties`. While the tool is disabled, any newly-deployed data monitor will not be optimized.

## Using Query Viewers

Query viewers are a type of resource used for defining and running SQL queries. Query viewers can be added to the dashboard. For more information about defining query viewers and adding them to the dashboard, see ["Query Viewers" on page 227](#).

## Using Custom View Dashboards

You can create custom layouts of dashboard data. Also known as *image dashboards*, custom view dashboards enable you to create custom views of dashboard data from query viewers and from data monitors over an imported image, such as a geographical map.

- Viewing custom view dashboards requires the Adobe Flash 10 plug-in available with the 32-bit Firefox 3 browser.
- You can use custom view dashboards on Linux, Mac OS, and Windows operating systems using an external browser.

- Additional configurations may be required to display content using Adobe Flash depending on the operating system you are running.

For details about what platforms support custom view dashboards, see [“Browser Environments for Custom View Dashboards” on page 121](#).

For details about supported browsers and operating systems, see [“Web Browsers” on page 1009](#).

In custom view dashboards, only drill-downs to other dashboards are supported. Custom view dashboards refresh event data at the same rate as regular dashboards.

## Browser Environments for Custom View Dashboards

Follow the guidelines and configuration instructions provided in the section [“Web Browsers” on page 1009](#). The table below describes additional details about the operating environments that support the display of custom view dashboards in both the internal and external browsers.

**Table 3-4 Custom View Dashboards and Browser Environments**

Operating system	32- or 64-bit Linux, Windows, Mac OS
Browser	Any 32-bit browser with the Adobe Flash 10 plug-in

## Displaying Custom View Dashboards

There are several ways to switch from the regular dashboard view to the custom view dashboard view. Each of these methods loads the custom view dashboard editor in the Viewer Panel in the custom view dashboard's *View* mode with the last configuration you saved.

- **From the regular dashboard view in the Viewer panel.** Open the dashboard in the viewer panel: in the Navigator panel, go to Dashboards; double-click the dashboard you want to open, or right-click it and select **Show Dashboard**.
  - ◆ Click the Layout Selector button at the bottom of the display (🔗) and select **Custom Layout**.
  - ◆ Right-click the dashboard tab and select **Custom Layout**.
  - ◆ Right-click any data monitor in the dashboard and select **Dashboard > Custom Layout**.
- **From the dashboard editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.** Open the dashboard for edit in the Inspect/Edit panel: in the Navigator panel, go to Dashboards; right-click the dashboard you want to edit and select **Edit Dashboard**.
  - ◆ In the Layout field drop-down menu, select **Custom Layout**.

- ◆ Click **Apply** to apply the changes and leave the editor open; click **OK** to apply the changes and close the editor.



Note

- **A new or edited dashboard must be saved before the custom view dashboard is accessible.**

If you are creating a new dashboard or have edited an existing one to use the Custom Layout, you must first save the dashboard to establish the custom layout for this dashboard on the Manager.

- **Custom view dashboards are displayed with the default chart and color settings.**

User customizations to chart settings and color selections applied to dashboards in the regular viewer are not applied to the custom view dashboard view.

- **Custom view dashboard backgrounds scale to fit the available Viewer panel space.**

The background image scales to fit the available space in the Viewer panel. You may need to adjust the shape of your viewer panel or browser window to preserve the proportions of the background image.

For more about selecting and working with background images for custom view dashboards, see [“To Load a Background Image” on page 124](#).

To see a change made from another Console, refresh the dashboard manually. Custom view dashboards provide two modes: *View* mode for monitoring and investigating events, and *Arrange* mode, for customizing the layout and background elements.



Tip

Access context menus using Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click.

## To Launch the Custom View Dashboard in a Separate Browser Window

Click **Launch Browser** in the custom view dashboard top menu bar. The custom view dashboard is accessible from any external browser that supports Flash and Java script at the following URL:

```
https://<hostname>:<port>/www/manager-
ui/com.arcsight.product.manager.kahuna.dashboard.DashboardLauncher
/index.html?resourceid=<resourceid>&auth=<auth>
```

## To Refresh the Custom View Dashboard Layout

Click the Layout Selector button at the bottom of the display (🔍) and select **Custom Layout**, or use any of the other methods described in [“Displaying Custom View Dashboards” on page 121](#).

## Custom View Dashboard Context Menu Options

Both the View and Arrange modes offer the following context menu options (Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click):

**Table 3-5** Context Menu Options for Custom View Dashboards

Option	Description
Save Dashboard	Save the current dashboard layout. This option becomes available when you have selected a different layout using the <b>View As</b> context menu option.
Close Dashboard	Close the dashboard in the Viewer panel.
Data Monitor: Edit	Open the data monitor editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.
Data Monitor: Enable/Disable Data Monitor	Enable or disable the data monitor. For more about enabling and disabling data monitors, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a> .
Data Monitor: Minimize	Hide the data monitor from view. To restore a minimized data monitor in a custom layout view, switch to Arrange mode ( <a href="#">“Arranging Custom View Dashboards” on page 124</a> ), then select and check the data monitor from the Data Monitors drop down menu.
Data Monitor: Close	Remove the selected data monitor from the dashboard.
View As	Change the data monitor view to a graphical format supported for the data monitor type. For more about data monitor views, see <a href="#">“Display Formats” on page 107</a> .
Show Events	Show the events displayed in the data monitor in an active channel in a separate Viewer panel tab. This enables you to see the event details and perform all the tasks described in <a href="#">“Monitoring Active Channels” on page 77</a> .
Export	Export the events shown in the data monitor or dashboard as a JPG, CSV, or HTML file, or export the dashboard or data monitor as a report archive in JPG or CSV format.

## To Revert to the Regular Dashboard View

- 1 Close the custom view viewer version of the dashboard in the Viewer panel (right-click the dashboard's tab in the Viewer panel and select **Close**).
- 2 Re-open the dashboard from the Navigator panel (double-click the dashboard in the Navigator panel, or right-click it and select **Show Dashboard**).

## Working with Custom View Dashboards

Custom view dashboards open in the *View* mode. In *View* mode, you can interact with the dashboard elements much the same way you do in the normal dashboard mode, such as drill down on the events displayed in a dashboard element such as data monitor or query viewer, and take context-menu actions.


The first time you switch to custom view dashboard mode, if there is no background associated with a dashboard from when it was created using the Dashboard editor, the dashboard will be displayed with a white background; otherwise you will see the last background that was added. The dashboard elements will be rendered in evenly distributed rows.

## To Select View Mode

In the custom view dashboard top menu bar, select **View** from the Mode drop-down menu.

## To Show Events in an Active Channel View

As with regular dashboards, you can view the events displayed in many types of event-based data monitors or query viewers in an active channel, which enables you to see the event details and perform all the tasks described in [“Monitoring Active Channels” on page 77](#). There are two ways to view eligible elements displayed in a custom view dashboard in an active channel:

- Double-click the dashboard where the pointing hand cursor () is activated.
- Activate the context menu (Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click) and select **Show Events**.

## Arranging Custom View Dashboards

In *Arrange* mode, you can customize the dashboard layout, toggle data monitors on and off, and upload a background image.

When you switch to Arrange mode, chart-type data monitors appear with a yellow background. You can relocate, resize, and reshape all types of data monitors anywhere in the custom view dashboard view.



---

Changes saved to a custom view dashboard refreshes the dashboard on all ArcSight Consoles attached to the Manager.

If the ArcSight Manager supports more than one ArcSight Console, any custom view dashboard changes saved on one Console will refresh that dashboard on the other Consoles attached to the Manager.

---

## To Select Arrange Mode

In the custom view dashboard top menu bar, select **View** from the Mode drop-down menu.

## To Load a Background Image

You can upload a background image to the custom view dashboard. The image you select will be stretched to fit the available display space in the Viewer panel, so for best results, select an image with adequate size and proportion to fill the space.

- 1 Launch the file upload process. There are several ways to load a background image in a custom view dashboard:
  - ◆ **Using the File resource.** In the Navigator panel, go to File.
    - In the Navigator panel, first open the dashboard to which you want to add the background image. It can either be in the regular dashboard view or already in the custom view dashboard view.

In the Navigator panel, go to **Dashboards**. Double-click the dashboard you want to open in the Viewer panel, or right-click it and select **Show Dashboard**.
    - In the Navigator panel, go to **Files**. Create a new file (right-click your personal folder, for example, *Admin's Files*, and select **New File**). In the File editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, give the file a name, and click **Upload**.
    - Right-click the file you uploaded and select **Set as Background**.



- ◆ **From the image viewer Background menu.** In the image viewer Arrange mode, click the **Background** drop-down menu and select **Set Background**.
  - ◆ **From the regular dashboard viewer in the Viewer panel.** You can add a background from the dashboard's Viewer tab context menu (right-click the dashboard's tab in the Viewer panel and select **Set Background**), or from a data monitor (right-click the data monitor and go to **Dashboard > Set Background**).
  - ◆ **In the regular dashboard editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.** Open the dashboard for edit in the Inspect/Edit panel: in the Navigator panel, go to Dashboards; right-click the dashboard you want to edit and select **Edit Dashboard**. In the Background field, select **Set Background**.
- 2 In the Upload File Content dialog, navigate to the location on your system where the background image is stored and click **OK**. This loads the image file as a File resource.



**If the background image does not display right away, refresh the custom view dashboard.**

**Tip**

To refresh the Custom Layout view, click the Layout Selector button at the bottom of the display (🔍) and select **Custom Layout**.

- 3 To enable others to see the custom view dashboard with the image you uploaded, copy the image from your personal Files folder into one of the Shared folders, such as Public.

## To Select a Previously Uploaded Background Image

If you have previously uploaded a background image that you want to load as the custom view dashboard background, or you want to use an image, use the File menu resource.



Open the destination dashboard in the Viewer panel first

The File resource **Set as Background** option is only available if the destination dashboard is open in the Viewer panel.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, first open the dashboard to which you want to add the background image. It can either be in the regular dashboard view or already in the custom view dashboard view.
  - a In the Navigator panel, go to Dashboards.
  - b Double-click the dashboard you want to open in the Viewer panel, or right-click it and select **Show Dashboard**.
- 2 In the Navigator panel, go to Files. Right-click the image file you want to add as the background and select **Set as Background**.



Other ways to load previously loaded background images

The File menu is the easiest way to see the available images you have already uploaded, but you can use the methods described in ["To Load a Background Image" on page 124](#) to load a previously uploaded image.

Just go through the process to upload the image from your file system. ESM will notify you that a file of that name already exists and ask if you want to overwrite, use the old file, or cancel to stop.

## Using Resource Graphs to Verify that a Background Image is Attached

You can verify that a background image has been attached to a custom view dashboard by viewing a resource graph from Files or Dashboards in the Navigator panel.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click the File or Dashboard resource and select **Graph View**.
- 2 In the Viewer panel, verify that the image file is associated with the dashboard.

## Removing a Background Image

**To remove a background image from a custom view dashboard using the File resource:**

- 1 In the Navigator panel, open the dashboard from which to remove the background image. It can be in the regular dashboard or custom view.
  - a In the Navigator panel, go to Dashboards.
  - b Double-click the dashboard you want to open in the Viewer panel, or right-click it and select **Show Dashboard**.
- 2 In the Navigator panel, go to Files. Right-click the image file you want to remove as the background image on the dashboard and select **Remove as Background**.

To remove a background image from a custom view dashboard using the Dashboard editor:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to Dashboards. Open the dashboard from which you want to remove the background image for edit in the Inspect/Edit panel (right-click the dashboard and select **Edit Dashboard**).
- 2 In the Dashboard editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, click the Background field and select **Remove Background**.

## To Relocate, Resize, and Reshape Data Monitors

Relocate a data monitor by dragging and dropping it in the desired location. Use the sizing handles at the sides and corners to stretch it to the size and shape you want.

To save the layout, use Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click and select **Save Dashboard**.

## To Select Which Data Monitors to Display and How

There are two ways to select which data monitors you want to display in this dashboard using what display format. The data monitors available to this dashboard must be set in the regular dashboard view in the Console.

- **In a single operation from the custom view dashboard Data Monitors menu.** The custom view dashboard Data Monitors menu lists all data monitors available for this dashboard.
  - ◆ To add or remove the data monitor from the dashboard, check or uncheck its check box.
  - ◆ To change the data monitor display format, select a display format from the available formats for this data monitor. For more about display formats, see ["Display Formats" on page 107](#).

- **For each individual data monitor from the custom view dashboard context menu.** Use Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click to access the context menu.
  - ◆ To add or remove the data monitor from the dashboard, use Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click and select **Data Monitor > Minimize**.
  - ◆ To change the data monitor display format, use Ctrl, Alt, or Shift + left click and select **View As**. For more about display formats, see [“Display Formats” on page 107](#).

You also have the same context menu options described in [“Working with Custom View Dashboards” on page 123](#).

## Monitoring Active Lists

You can directly examine and modify the active lists available in the Navigator panel's Active Lists resource tree.

### Viewing Active List Contents

- 1 Choose the Active List resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click an active list and choose **Show Entries**.

### Refreshing Active List Views

Active lists show results as of the time they opened for viewing, or the last time they were refreshed.

Click the **Refresh** button in the view header to update the contents.

### Adding to or Subtracting from an Active List

You can conveniently add or remove event-attribute-based active list entries using selected events in active channel grid views. This feature automatically offers the name of the active list that is appropriate for the selected event.

- 1 In an active channel grid view, select an event that is relevant to an active list of interest.
- 2 Right-click the event and choose **Active List > Add to > [active list]** or **Active List > Remove from > [active list]**.



Note

If an active list uses the Old File Size event attribute, the value required when adding an entry is in bytes, not kilobytes or megabytes.

### Filtering Active Lists

In addition to the constraints of an active list itself, you can place a temporary filter on an active list view to aid your analysis. Such filters are not saved with the active list.

- 1 Open an active list in the Viewer panel as described above.
- 2 Click the **Filter** status description in the view header to open the Common Condition Editor. For example, the status **No Filter Defined**.
- 3 Use the Common Condition Editor as described in [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#).

## Editing Active Lists

You can change an active list's definition or simply add a new entry to its parameters.

- Right-click an active list in the Navigator panel and choose **Edit Active List** to open it in the Active List Editor. See [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#) to use the editor.
- Click the **Add Entry (+)** button in the active list view header to open the Add Entry editor.

## Clearing Active List Views

While monitoring a particular active list grid view, you may want to see only traffic that happens after a certain point in time. You can accomplish this by clearing the view.

- 1 In the Navigator panel's Active List resource tree, select the active list to clear.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Clear Entries**.

## Customizing Active View Grid Columns

You can modify active list grid views just like other grid views, as described in [“Customizing Columns” on page 100](#).

## Active List Grid Context Menu Commands

You can also use a set of right-click context commands available in active list grid views.

Menu Command	Description
New	Add an entry to the active list using the Active List Entry Editor.
Edit	Edit the selected entry using the Active List Entry Editor.
Delete	Remove the selected entry from the active list.

## Graphing Attacks

You use graphic analytics to quickly identify high-volume attackers or targets at a glance. You can immediately locate and typify cascading attacks (for example, worms and viruses), and rapidly isolate and analyze events involving interactions between two or more devices (for example, threat discovery).

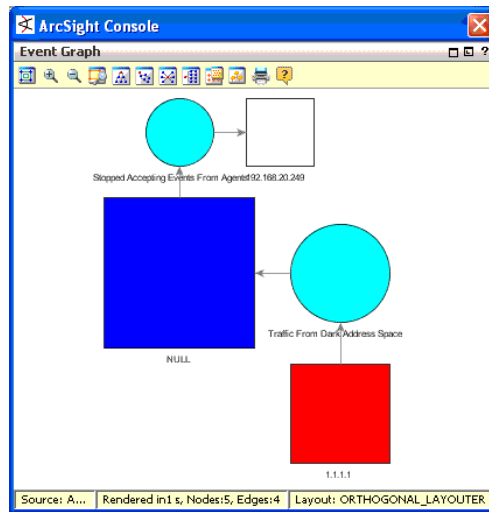
The event data you visualize can be **static** (a snapshot of the selected events) or **live** (continuously updated with specified real-time event data). You create static graphs by selecting certain event data out of a source and casting it as a graphic. You create live graphs using a graphic data monitor type.

See [“Changing User Preferences” on page 732](#) to set or change your event graph preferences.

## Creating Static Event Graphs

- 1 Select an array of events in a grid, data monitor, or event inspector.
- 2 Right-click the selected set and choose **Event Graph** or **Geographic View**.

The Viewer panel displays the selected events in a new view, using the graphic or geographic styles described below.



## Creating Live Event Graphs

- Select an Event Graph or Geographic Event Graph data monitor in the Dashboards tab of the Navigator panel's Dashboards resource tree. Right-click it and choose **Add to Dashboard As>Geographic Graph** or **Graph**.
- Alternatively, right-click your personal Data Monitors folder in the Navigator and choose **New Data Monitor**. In the Data Monitor Editor, in the Data Monitor Type drop-down list, choose **Event Graph** or **Geographic Event Graph**. Define the graphic data monitor in the usual way.

The Data Monitor Editor has certain attributes for these types:

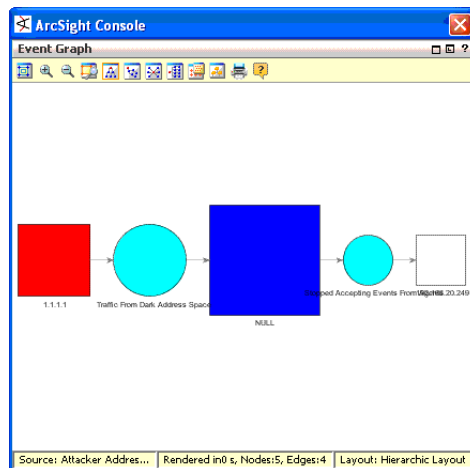
Attribute	Usage
Max Event Count	The number of most-recent events to show. Events older than this are discarded.
Event Node Identifier	The fields that are available to use to uniquely identify the event type in a transaction.
Availability Interval	The number of seconds for the interval between updates to the graphic.
Show Source-Target Nodes as	See <a href="#">"Changing User Preferences" on page 732</a> .
Source Node Identifier	See <a href="#">"Changing User Preferences" on page 732</a> .
Target Node Identifier	See <a href="#">"Changing User Preferences" on page 732</a> .
Show Event Nodes	See <a href="#">"Changing User Preferences" on page 732</a> .

Geographic Event Graph Attributes:

Attribute	Usage
Max Event Count	The number of most-recent events to show. Events older than this are discarded.
Availability Interval	The number of seconds for the interval between updates to the graphic.

## Event Graph Notes

Link-analysis visualizations are chart-like or logically oriented. Geo-spatial visualizations are map-based or physically oriented. Node size indicates increasing event volume.



Each event is composed of the event node itself (a turquoise circle) and its connected source node (red square) and target node (white square) device assets. The source and the target may be the same asset.

Blue squares indicate a combined source and target node (a “point event”). Pink nodes indicate IP addresses that are worm or virus infection sources for other nodes.

Point events occur on a single host; for example, a syslog entry for a running process. They graph as IP address nodes that loop to an event node and back.

In geo-spatial displays, source and target location plotting is based on the physical addresses registered for IP addresses. ArcSight includes standard plotting information for this purpose. The addresses are plotted against a world map that you can zoom in or out. All the specific location data that supports this feature also appears as attributes in the Event Inspector.

You can modify the way graphs plot events, choosing to keep the source-event-target visual relationships compact, or to emphasize unique sources, targets, or both in order to more easily clarify the nature of attacks or situations.

## Chapter 4

# Pattern Discovery

---

The Pattern Discovery feature of the ArcSight Console is activated when you get a license for the Threat Detector solution package. Pattern Discovery enables you to discover previously unknown patterns, which might pose a threat, and view them for analysis.

This chapter contains the following sections:

["Pattern Discovery Overview" on page 131](#)  
["Pattern Discovery Life Cycle" on page 133](#)  
["Creating or Editing a Profile" on page 134](#)  
["Taking a Snapshot" on page 141](#)  
["Investigating Patterns" on page 146](#)  
["Usage Guidelines" on page 153](#)

## Pattern Discovery Overview

When finding threats by matching events against rules, you have to know the threat characteristics and create a rule that matches them. ArcSight Pattern Discovery enables you to search for threat patterns with known characteristics as well, but you can also find unknown patterns, where the only characteristic you specify is that the transactions are related and repeat.

The purpose of Pattern Discovery is to:

- Effectively search streams of potentially millions of events for patterns, which are simply repeating sequences of related events.
- Establish a baseline of patterns that represent normal event traffic and filter them out.
- Analyze what remains for threats.

In this way you can discover and investigate patterns that might represent new threats or threats whose characteristics are not known to you.

## What Pattern Detection Provides

Pattern Discovery can automatically detect subtle, specialized, or long-term patterns that might otherwise go undiscovered in the flow of events. You can use Pattern Discovery to:

- **Detect day-zero attacks:** Pattern Discovery profiles are general enough that they can discover patterns that have never been seen before.

- **Detect low-and-slow attacks:** Low-and-slow attacks involve fewer events over a longer period. Profiles with longer time periods can capture these patterns.
- **Automatically create rules:** You can transform patterns into a rule set that is unique to your environment and more accurate than generic predefined rules.
- **Discover normal patterns:** New patterns discovered from current network traffic are like signatures for a particular subset of network traffic. You can specify which patterns are normal so that matching patterns can be eliminated as a threat.
- **Save a history of threat patterns:** Pattern Discovery can use event patterns that originate from or target an asset to categorize those assets. For example, a pattern of events from a machine that has an unauthorized program initiating a connection to an attacker (a back door) can be shown as a cluster. If you see this pattern originating from a new asset, it is a strong indication that the new asset also has a back door installed.

Use Pattern Discovery for preventive maintenance and early detection in your security management operations. Using periodic, scheduled analysis, you can continuously scan for new patterns over varying time intervals to stay ahead of new exploits.

## Pattern Components

Events in a pattern share one or more common field values. For example, they could share the same source and target IP addresses, ports, host names, or other data.

The Pattern Discovery algorithm examines event components and identifies groups of related components as transactions. Discovered patterns list the components involved and the transactions containing common components. This data is output as a pattern resource. Components can relate to one another in several ways:

- **Related by session:** Session refers to a unique pair of source and target addresses. The events for which this pair are the same are in the same session.
- **Together in a sub-stream:** The event stream can be divided into sub-streams using a “group by” operation on a subset of event fields. This step can also take time of occurrence into account.
- **Together in time:** All the components occur together in a small time window.

Event components with some kind of relationship are grouped together as transactions, which then become potential candidates for patterns. The Pattern Discovery algorithm processes all the transactions it finds and produces patterns, depending on whether they satisfy one or more conditions that make them discernible as patterns.

Event components are subdivided into transactions in two major ways: time-based division, and event field-based division. These two methods can be combined.

**Time-based division** is based on timing constraints, and is very similar to the constraints used in defining rules. For example, the system creates a transaction at every division of an event stream. The event stream can be divided depending on the rate of occurrence of events and changes in those rates. This works well for dividing event streams that display events in bursts of activity.

**Event field-based division** is very similar to doing a “group by” operation on event fields. Every related group of events is a sub-stream of the original stream of events. For example:

- **Based on source, target address, and port:** Suppose there are three distinct source addresses in the event stream. After doing a “group by,” three sub-streams are generated, each one originating from and corresponding to a unique source address.

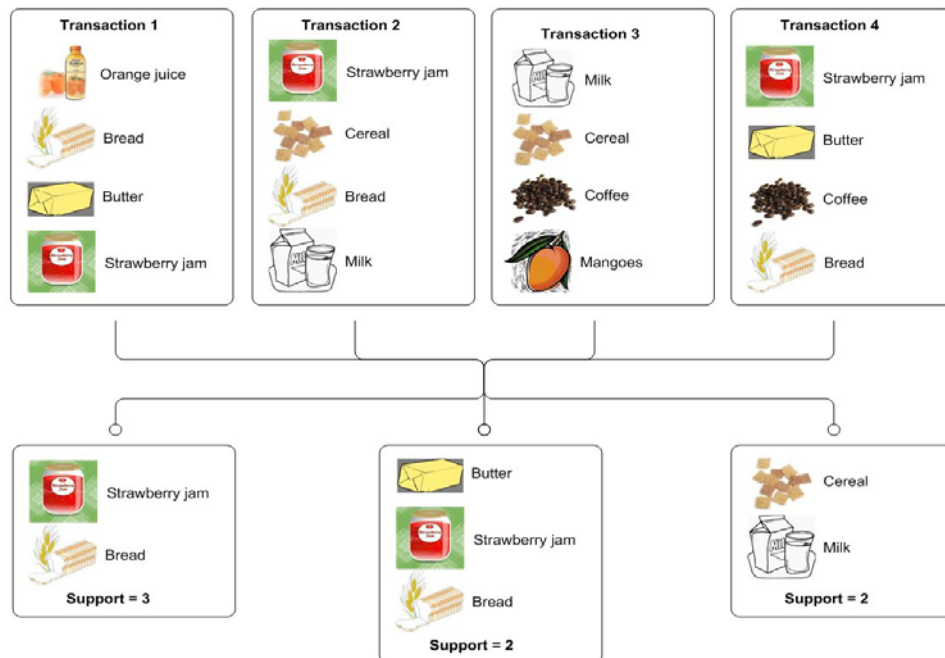


- **Based on source and target address:** In this case, all the events that have the same source and target address belong to the same sub-stream.

## How Pattern Discovery Works

Once the event stream is divided into transactions, Pattern Discovery identifies and groups events that occur together in multiple transactions. These events are sub-grouped by support level, which is the number of times that event occurred with its related events. A higher support number means that a pattern has occurred more frequently than others.

For example, consider the separate grocery purchase transactions, below. Several patterns emerge: Bread, butter, and jam were purchased together, as were milk and cereal. An analyst can draw conclusions from those patterns: these shoppers intend to make toast, or have cereal. Bread and strawberry jam also appear in two patterns and are a sub-pattern.



You can mask patterns you consider normal traffic so the system recognizes them and does not reevaluate them. For potential threat patterns that you want to watch for, you can build a rule based on the pattern characteristics. When the pattern occurs, the rule triggers an action, such as notifying a group of users or running a command script.

## Pattern Discovery Life Cycle

The creation and use of Pattern Discovery consists of three phases:

- Create a profile (see [“Creating or Editing a Profile”](#) on page 134)
- Generate snapshots (see [“Taking a Snapshot”](#) on page 141)
- Investigate patterns (see [“Investigating Patterns”](#) on page 146).

Use these options to analyze and respond to the patterns you discover in snapshots.

Option	Usage
Create Rule	Use the Rules Editor to create a rule from a detected pattern of events or a selected event-level in the pattern hierarchy.
Show Related Events	Open a new channel filtered with a <code>matchesPattern</code> operator that uses the whole pattern, or event-levels, as its argument.
Show Event Graph	Graph the complete pattern or a selected event-level in the pattern hierarchy, to analyze using the ArcSight Console's visualization tools.
Inspect Pattern	The Pattern Inspector shows details, and you can click the <b>Actions</b> button to apply the options described in this table.
Investigate	You can create an active channel, or add a filter to the editor, using (or not using) the name of the selected event item in the pattern.
Tools	Choose one of the network tools ArcSight provides to explore the origin of the selected event item.
Annotate Pattern	You can mark the pattern with a workflow collaboration <b>Stage</b> and <b>Assign</b> it to a user for filtering by Stages and Users resources.

## Creating or Editing a Profile

A profile is a set of filters that define what fields to include in your pattern search, and the scope and properties of a pattern. It also specifies the time period to search. Profiles can be general or specific. Typically you would use several different profiles to define the parameters of snapshots, which collect all the events in the specified time frame and evaluates them according to the filters set in the profile.

Use the following procedure to create a new profile:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Profiles** tab.
- 2 Expand the **Profiles** resource tree. Right-click a group in the resource tree and select **New Profile**.
- 3 In the Inspect/Edit panel on the Profile Editor **Attributes** tab, you can modify most of the values. See [Editing Profile Attributes](#) for descriptions about each attribute.

To use one of these profiles, see ["Taking a Snapshot" on page 141](#).



You can delete or modify a profile if it has patterns and snapshots derived from it. However if you delete it, the patterns and snapshots that are derived from it no longer work and are not removed. If you modify it, they may not work as expected. Delete such patterns and snapshots when deleting their profile.

To copy and paste a profile to another folder, select the profile to copy. Go to **Edit | Copy (Paste)** or use Ctrl + C (V).

## Editing Profile Attributes

Use the following procedure to edit a profile:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Profiles** tab.

- 2 Expand the Profiles resource tree and navigate to the profile you want to modify.
- 3 In the Inspect/Edit panel on the **Attributes** tab, you can change most values and click **Apply**. Some values, such as version ID, are set by ArcSight and are not editable.

---

#### Pattern Discovery Profile Attributes

Property	Usage
Summary	A profile summary appears below the Attributes tab. The underlined items are values entered in the fields below.
<b>Profile</b>	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for your profile
Minimum Pattern Length	Type or use the up/down arrows to select the minimum number of unique associated events necessary to qualify the events as a pattern. The default value is <b>2</b> events.
Minimum Pattern Occurrences	Type or use the up/down arrows to select the minimum number of times for an event-association of the specified length to reoccur in order to qualify as a pattern. The default value is <b>2</b> occurrences.
Start Time	<p>Select a time stamp expression for the snapshot start time. Expressions are described below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>\$Now</b> The current time in the format hh:mm:ss.</li> <li>• <b>\$Now - 1h</b> The current time minus 60 minutes.</li> <li>• <b>\$Now - 1d</b> The current time minus 24 hours.</li> <li>• <b>\$Now - 1w</b> The current time minus 7 days.</li> <li>• <b>\$Today</b> The start of the current day (12:00:00).</li> <li>• <b>\$Today - 1d</b> The start of the current day at midnight (12:00:00) minus 24 hours. In other words, the start of yesterday.</li> <li>• <b>\$CurrentWeek</b> The start of the current week (Sunday 12:00:00).</li> <li>• <b>\$CurrentMonth</b> The start of the current month (the 1st 12:00:00).</li> </ul> <p>The format of start time is \$Now-&lt;time&gt;. The time is in increments of hours, days, weeks, or months.</p>
End Time	Use the \$Now drop-down menu to select a timestamp expression for the snapshot end time. The formats are the same as for Start Time, above.

---

---

**Pattern Discovery Profile Attributes (Continued)**

Property	Usage
<b>Events</b>	
Event Fields	<p>You can select one or more of these (event field, source, and target) for the pattern portion snapshot to display. Click in the data entry area and then click drop-down menu to see the field's chooser.</p> <p>In the Available Fields area, click the tab from which you want to choose. you can select one or more:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Field Sets.</li> <li>Local variables you created for this profile (see <a href="#">"Creating Local Variables" on page 140</a>).</li> <li>Fields and global variables that are relevant to a Pattern Discovery profile.</li> </ul> <p>In the Selected Fields section:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the up and down arrows to specify the order in which they appear.</li> <li>Use the green alias icon to create an alias version.</li> <li>Use the red X icon to remove one from the list.</li> <li>You cannot specify date/time fields.</li> <li>If you are going to add fields to a list, those fields must appear in this section (except the End Time field, which does not have to be here).</li> </ul>
Source	
Target	
Restrict by Filter	Click the All Events drop-down menu to choose a filter from the Filters resource tree. The filter restricts the pool of events from which the snapshot is constructed.
<b>Advanced</b>	
	<p>The check boxes in this section instruct the snapshot to capture elements pertaining to time, which can lend vital insight to a pattern.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> If you want to improve query performance and you don't need these options, leave them unchecked.</p>
Record Time Order	<p>This includes the time sequence of the events contained in patterns. For example, for a three-event pattern, it could record that A-B-C occurred 40 percent of the time, B-A-C 35 percent, and A-C-B 25 percent.</p> <p>Because event sequences can reveal intent, you can detect and act upon certain kinds of activity even sooner.</p>
Split on Inactivity	<p>This detects potentially meaningful decreases in activity between duplicate source/target pairs.</p> <p>It creates a break if there is a pause or significant drop in the number of times a particular pattern occurs. This treats occurrences of the pattern on either side of the break as separate instances.</p> <p>On analysis, a split on occurrences of the same source/target pairs means that there was a slow-down or break in occurrences. This enables you to discover patterns that happen repeatedly for one source/target pair.</p>

---

---

**Pattern Discovery Profile Attributes (Continued)**

Property	Usage
<b>Discovery Results</b>	
Snapshot Retention Time	Click the drop-down menu to select how long you want the system to save a snapshot and its series of events. Snapshots retain all the needed components of the events and make them available during analysis. For example, when you drill down in an event and select "Show related events," the events saved within the time frame set here will be searched for matches.  The default retention time is 7 days.
Snapshot Group	Choose a group in the Snapshot resource tree in which to store the resulting snapshots. By default, the system adds the snapshot to the same folder you right clicked to add the profile.
Pattern Group	Choose a group in the Patterns resource tree in which to store the resulting patterns. By default, the system adds the pattern to the same folder you right clicked to add the profile.
<b>Common</b>	
External ID	An identification string suitable for, and which can be referenced by, systems outside ArcSight. Common applications of External IDs include appropriate naming for Case and Asset resources that are tracked in common with defect reporting or vulnerability-management systems. Your ArcSight administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.
Alias	An identification string suitable for referencing resources within ArcSight. A given alias appear in place of the resource's name everywhere it may be seen. Your ArcSight administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.
Version ID	If this profile came in a package or if you have exported it to a package, this is the package's version ID.
Description	A text description of the profile.
<b>Assign</b>	
Owner	The user with responsibility for the profile.
Notification Groups	The user groups to notify concerning changes to a profile.

---

- 4** Click **OK** to apply the changes and close the editor.

## Specifying Actions

The **Actions** tab enables you to select a trigger, then specify the action to take when that trigger occurs.

To specify an action:

- 1 Open the profile in the profile editor (double click the profile in the Navigator panel).
- 2 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the **Actions** tab.
- 3 Before you add an action, specify when to take the action (the trigger). Select one of the following trigger options:

Trigger Option	Description
On Pattern Discovered	This specifies that the action be taken the first time a new pattern appears. Choose this option for assigning new patterns to an analyst to investigate.
On Pattern Re-discovered	This specifies that the action will be taken if a new pattern is repeated. Choose this option for ongoing operations.

- 4 Click **Add** and select one of the following options:

### Pattern Discovery Actions

Action Option	Description
Annotate Pattern	In the dialog box, enter the following values and click <b>OK</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a Stage from the drop-down menu.</li> <li>Assign a user from the drop-down menu.</li> </ul>
Set Event Field	In the dialog box, enter the following values and click <b>OK</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a Field Set (or domain field set you created) from the drop-down menu.</li> <li>In the event fields grid, set values for the event fields you are interested in.</li> </ul>
Send Notification	Specify a notification group in the Notification Group drop-down menu. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Ack Required</b> if those notified should acknowledge that they received notification.</li> <li>Write the message to send in the Message field.</li> </ul>

---

**Pattern Discovery Actions (Continued)**

Action Option	Description
Execute Command	<p>In the dialog box, enter the following values and click <b>OK</b>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select an operating system platform from the drop-down menu.</li> <li>• Enter the command string. Use correct syntax; the system does not validate command strings.</li> <li>• Enter required parameters. For example, the archive tool needs the manager name, admin name, and password. Specifying them lets the system execute the command without user intervention.</li> <li>• In the Action Type drop-down menu, select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Automatically run on manager:</b> Initiates the command with no user intervention.</li> <li><b>Run on Manager with Console confirmation:</b> Displays a confirmation dialog box in the ArcSight Console for the designated user before the command is initiated.</li> <li><b>Run on connector(s):</b> Sends the command to the connectors that report the events.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Execute Connector Command	<p>Specify a command to be executed at the SmartConnector reporting the events, such as pause or stop/start event flow. Enter the following values and click <b>OK</b>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the Connector drop-down menu, select the SmartConnector to execute the command. When you select an connector, the command field is populated with the commands available for that connector.</li> <li>• In the Command field, select the command for the connector to execute. The command may contain required parameters.</li> </ul>
Export to External System	<p>You can export the pattern to an external tracking system, such as BMC Remedy, if you configured it to operate with ESM. Click <b>OK</b>.</p>
Active List	<p>You can add (or remove) a pattern to an active list, where its event details are available to other correlation tools for reference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add a pattern to an active list, select <b>Add to Active List</b>. In the dialog box, select an active list from the drop-down menu and click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>• To remove a pattern from an active list, select <b>Remove from Active List</b>. In the dialog box, select an active list from the drop-down menu and click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>• You cannot add fields to an Active List if they are not present in the Events section of the Profile.</li> <li>• You cannot add any date/time-based fields to an Active List since data/time fields cannot be included in the Events section of the profile.</li> </ul>

---

---

**Pattern Discovery Actions (Continued)**

Action Option	Description
Session List	<p>You can add a pattern to a session list, or terminate a session list based on a pattern, where its event details are available to other correlation tools for reference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add a pattern to a session list, select <b>Add to Session List</b>. In the dialog box, select a session list from the drop-down menu and click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>To terminate a session list, select <b>Terminate Session List</b>. In the dialog box, select a session list from the drop-down menu and click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>You cannot add fields to an Session List if they are not present in the Events section of the Profile.</li> <li>You cannot add any date/time-based fields to an Session List (except EndTime) since data/time fields cannot be included in the Events section of the profile. The End time displayed in the Add to Session List action is the time the entries are added to the session list.</li> </ul>

---

- 5 The action summary will be displayed in the Actions tab. To remove lines that are not used, click **Hide Empty Triggers**.

## Creating Local Variables

Click the **Local Variables** tab to manage local variables for this profile. These are available to select from the drop-down menu on the **Attributes** tab for Event Fields, Source, and Target attributes associated with the pattern.

From this tab you can:

- Add a new variable, which enables you to
  - ◆ Name the variable
  - ◆ Specify a function (expression).
  - ◆ Specify the arguments. Available arguments depend on the function.
- Edit an existing variable
- Remove a selected variable
- Make a variable global, which means it is available to resources outside this profile. If you make a local variable global, it moves it from the **Local Variables** tab to the **Fields and Global Variables** tab in the chooser for Event Fields, Sources and Targets, on the **Attributes** tab.

For more information on using local and global variables, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

Pattern Discovery supports the following variable return data types:

---

• Byte	• Long
• Double	• Resource ID
• Enumeration	• String
• Integer	• Address

---



Therefore, function variables that return an unsupported data type are not supported. For example, the following functions or function categories are not supported:

- Non-SQL-mode variables.
- Variables that return a list, such as ActorByAccountID.AccountID and variables that operate on multi-mapped active lists or overlapping session lists.
- Variables that return a boolean value, such as the Category Model function *hasRelationship*.

## Adding Notes

You can keep track of changes made to a profile using the Notes feature. To add a note:

- 1 In the Profile Editor, click the **Notes** tab.
- 2 In the Notes field, enter a note and click **Save** to log it in the Table/List tabs.
- 3 You can view notes as a table or as a list by toggling between the Table and List tabs. You can re-order the table view by clicking the column header.

## Deleting a Profile

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Profiles** tab.
- 2 Right-click a profile in the resource tree and choose **Delete Profile**.



**Caution**

You can delete or modify a profile if it has patterns and snapshots derived from it. However if you delete it, the patterns and snapshots that are derived from it no longer work and are not removed. If you modify it, they may not work as expected. Delete such patterns and snapshots when deleting their profile.

- 3 Click **Delete** in the confirmation dialog box.

## Taking a Snapshot

A snapshot is a record of qualifying events that occurred over a specified period of time and evaluated according to the snapshot profile. When the Pattern Discovery algorithm runs on the specified data set, it displays the result as a graphic, which you can use for investigation and analysis.

You can generate snapshots manually, or run them on a schedule. You are likely to generate snapshots more frequently during the early stage of implementation, when you are establishing a baseline of normal patterns. Each snapshot is stored in the Navigator panel in **Pattern Discovery** on the **Snapshots** tab.

You can also discover patterns directly from active channels. Right-click a channel in the Navigator panel and choose **Discover Patterns**.

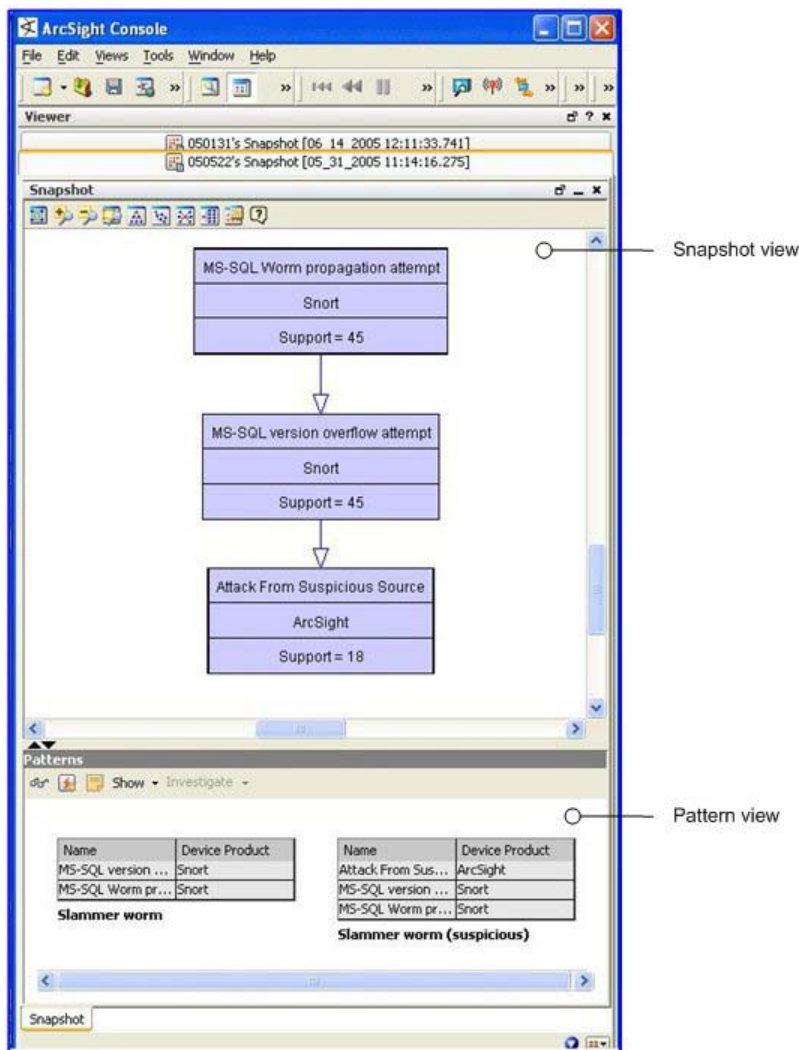
To take snapshots:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Profiles** tab.
- 2 Right-click a profile in the resource tree and select **Take Snapshot**.

- 3 In the Viewer panel, the system processes the snapshot request and shows each process as the Pattern Discovery engine runs:

	<b>Pattern discovery run scheduled.</b> Done!
	<b>Building snapshot from events.</b> Done!
	<b>Saving snapshot.</b> Done!
	<b>Extracting patterns from snapshot.</b> Extracting patterns from snapshot.

- 4 When the process finishes, the system displays the snapshot in the Viewer panel. The views are linked; click a node in the snapshot view to see its details in the patterns view.



If the pattern is empty, no events passed the profile's filter restrictions during the specified period. Adjust these profile specifications and generate the snapshot again.

## Exploring a Snapshot

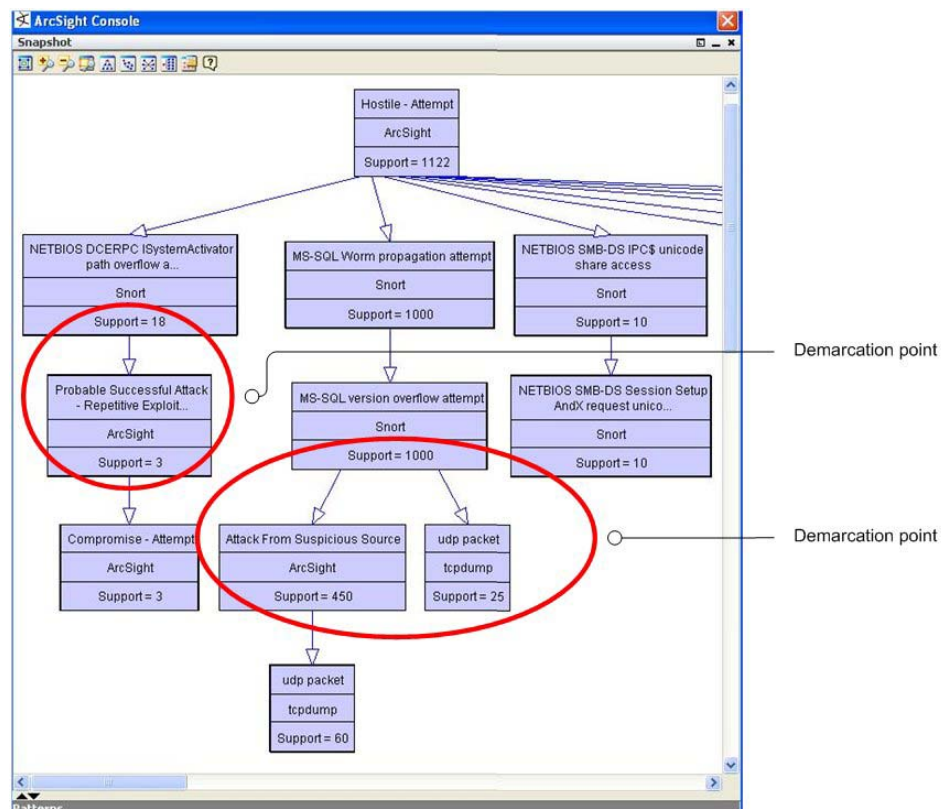
The upper part of the Viewer panel presents the snapshot view, which shows a hierarchy of related event nodes.

The lower part of the Viewer panel is the patterns view, which shows blocks of events from the hierarchy that are most closely related. Each block of events represents one specific path through the pattern hierarchy.

[Step 4 on page 142](#) shows two patterns and a demarcation point (between support = 45 and support = 18). The top two events are the SQL worm. The last event is generated by the system. Pattern Discovery classified 18 of 45 sources as suspicious. There are 27 sources that ran the slammer worm in the network, but they were not added to the suspicious list. This discovery enables you to investigate why all 27 systems were not caught by the other surveillance mechanisms in place on your network. Determining that will help you to tighten your network security.

The “support” value for each node is the number of times that event occurred with its related events. The higher the number, the higher the item appears in the hierarchy. For example, in the diagram below, there are two points at which there are sharp differences in support from one item to the next. This shift is called a demarcation point, and indicates a sub-pattern in a longer sequence.









The demarcation points indicate attack stages, and sometimes variations of the same type of attack on different network systems. For example, the SQL worm propagation attempt makes up 1000 of the 1122 hostile attempts. The demarcation point in the center of the graphic shows that there are two variations: attack from suspicious source, and UDP Packet tcpdump. This can indicate how different systems process the same type of SQL worm attack. Demarcation points are circled, below:



## Arranging Elements in Graphic View

Use the buttons across the top allow you to zoom in, zoom out, and arrange the elements in different formations to give you better visibility of the overall pattern.

### Tools for Rearranging Graphic Elements

Button	Control	Description
	Fit Content	Sizes the graphic to the available display space.
	Zoom in/ Zoom Out	Increases or decreases the size of the displayed graphic.
	Zoom Selected	Zooms in on a selected portion of a graphic.
	Hierarchic Layout	Presents nodes in a vertically descending cascade, similar to a family tree. Hierarchic layouts are appropriate when viewing relationships with a common root.
	Organic Layout	Arranges nodes based on minimum edge length, which tends to cluster items with a common relation. Clusters with items in common also tend to group together.
	Circular Layout	Hub-and-spoke arrangements with each node radiating edges to, or receiving edges from, the items with which it interacts.  Circular layouts are most useful when multiple roots are present or there are a number of source-target relationships to clarify. If an organic layout is difficult to read because the edges are too dense, try a circular layout.
	Orthogonal Layout	Arranges items on the basis of logical connections, using electrical schematic-style right-angle layouts. These layouts are useful for clearly tracing connections and identifying node clusters.
	Overview	Opens a reduced rendering of the entire graph. You can drag the highlighted section in the reduction to move the displayed area in the main view.

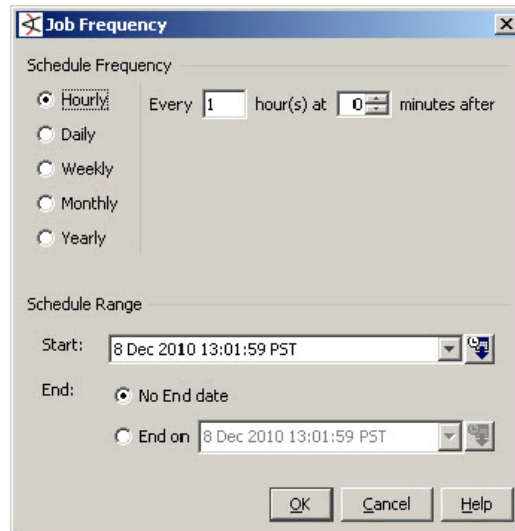
In addition to the control buttons, you can drag items around in the Viewer panel while maintaining the connections. This can make the view clearer for overlapped items.

## Scheduling a Snapshot

You can schedule a snapshot to be taken at intervals. The schedule frequency can be part of your daily analysis and operations. For example, as a best practice, you can run Pattern Discovery once a day to capture event patterns that happened over the last 24 hours. You can specify a longer period to find patterns with a longer term. To fully automate daily Pattern Discovery, add actions to a schedule, such as sending notifications, opening cases, or adding systems to an active list, if certain conditions are met.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Profiles** tab.
- 2 Right-click a profile in the resource tree and select **Schedule Snapshots**.
- 3 On the Jobs tab, click **Add**.

- 4 In the Summary field at the bottom, select **Click here to set up schedule frequency**. This activates the Job Frequency dialog.



- 5 Click **OK** when you have set the frequency and time range.
- 6 Repeat [Step 3](#) to add more schedules for the same snapshot.
- 7 When you have added all the schedules for this snapshot, click **OK** at the bottom of the Jobs tab.
- 8 To add an action to be taken every time the profile is run, specify an action in the Actions tab of the profile editor, as described in [“Specifying Actions” on page 138](#).

## Re-opening a Snapshot

If you have closed a snapshot in the Viewer panel, you can re-open it.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Snapshots** tab.
- 2 Navigate to the snapshot graph. Right-click the snapshot and select **Show Snapshot**.

When the snapshot's graphic has formed in the Viewer panel, you can click the icons at the top of the view to change its layout as described in [“Visualizing Resources” on page 632](#).

## Deleting a Snapshot

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Snapshots** tab.
- 2 Right-click a snapshot in the resource tree and choose **Delete Snapshot**.
- 3 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Investigating Patterns

When you take a snapshot, the Pattern view shown in the snapshot is also saved in the Patterns tab of the Pattern Discovery resource tree. You can use the Patterns tab to access more event investigation tools.

### Investigating Patterns in the Snapshots View

Pattern Discovery gives you access to investigative tools from a series of buttons. These same tools are available from the right-click menu. The snapshot view and the patterns view offer most of the same investigative tools with a few specific differences. Right-click on any item in the graphical Snapshots view to open a new window within the snapshot view that contains details about the related events:

---

#### Right-Click Options for Pattern Investigation

Right-Click Option	Description
Show related events	Opens a new active channel in the Snapshots tab, filtered with a matchesPattern operator. This channel uses the pattern, or selected event-level in the pattern hierarchy, as its argument.  To toggle back to the graphic view, click the Snapshot tab at the bottom of the snapshot Viewer panel.
Investigate	Creates a channel in a grid view that contains the associated events sorted according to Attacker Address, Name, and Target Address.
Tools	<p><b>Configure...</b> includes the following options, and can be accessed directly through the larger Tools menu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Nslookup</b> - Resolves an IP address to a host name (domain name) and vice versa.</li> <li>• <b>Ping</b> - Determines whether a particular IP address is online and/or it tests and debugs a network by sending a packet and waiting for a response.</li> <li>• <b>PortInfo</b> - Lists standard usage such as WWW or FTP for a specified port number.</li> <li>• <b>Traceroute</b> - Shows the path from the ArcSight Console to the IP address selected in the grid view, reporting the IP addresses of all routers in between.</li> <li>• <b>WebSearch</b> - Search the Web through Google to find links to the keywords present in currently selected active channel grid view cells.</li> <li>• <b>Whois</b> - Looks up who is behind a given domain name; information might include addresses and telephone numbers.</li> <li>• <b>Results...</b> - provides the results of running a network tool using the attributes of the selected pattern block</li> </ul> <p>For more information about network tools, see the online Help.</p>
Create Rule...	<p>Launches a Rules Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel. The rule you create here is stored in the Rules resource tree under the personal rules of the user who created it.</p> <p>For instructions about how to construct a rule, see <a href="#">“Creating Rules from Patterns” on page 150</a>.</p>

---

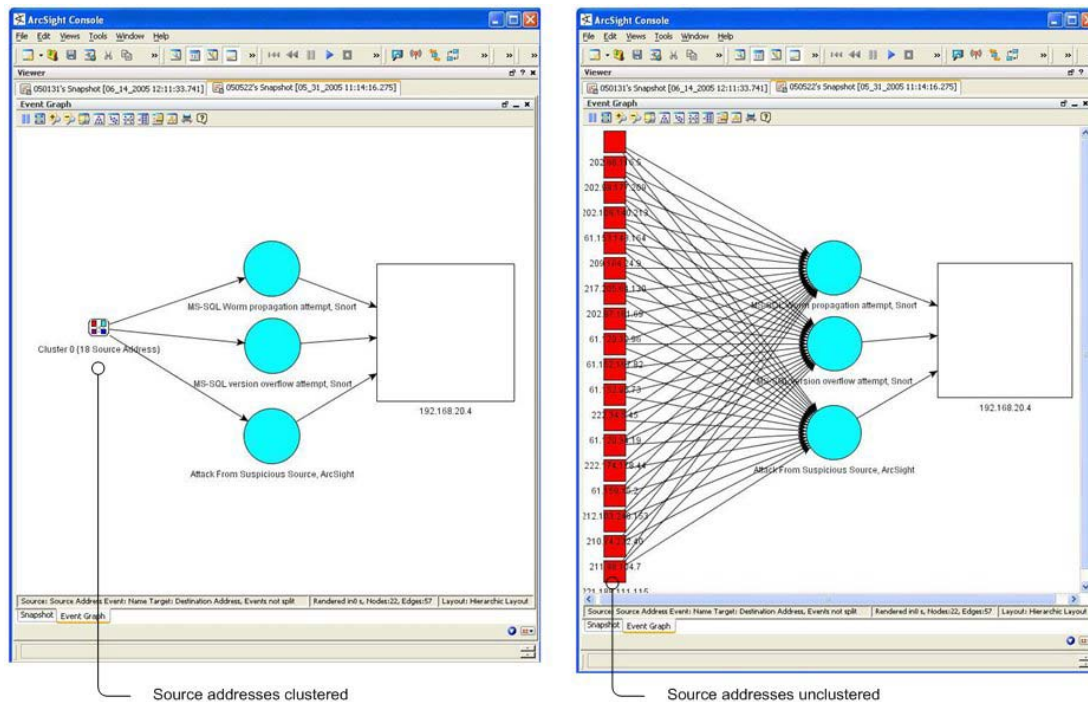
## Right-Click Options for Pattern Investigation (Continued)

Right-Click Option	Description
--------------------	-------------

Show Event Graph	Displays the pattern as an event graph, which shows pattern components and their relationships in graphic form. For more information about ESM event graphs, see the online Help.
Show	Allows you to reset the graphic view with the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Show all nodes</b> - Displays the entire snapshot graphic. This is helpful if you have drilled down and wish to re-display the original snapshot.</li> <li>• <b>Show all nodes containing selected items</b> - Displays only the event hierarchy that contains the selected item.</li> <li>• <b>Hide all nodes containing selected items</b> - Displays all the event hierarchies that do not contain the selected item.</li> </ul>

The example in shows our sample pattern displayed as an event graph. To save space, the event graph consolidates items that have many members. In this case, the sample on the left shows the source address nodes consolidated into a single cluster with a single line representing the connections to each of the event name nodes.

To see the details and number of these connections, as shown on the right, uncluster the node by right-clicking the node and selecting **Uncluster** selected nodes.





Toggle between multiple views in the Snapshot window using tabs. Unclustering the source address nodes allows you to see the details of those nodes.

When you use the right-click menu to open a new view, it displays in a new tab within the snapshot pane. Use the tabs at the bottom of the pane to toggle between the views.

To close tabs in the snapshot view, right-click the tab at the bottom and select Close.



**To rearrange open tabs in snapshot view:**








- 1 Use the down arrow () to tile the open tabs horizontally, vertically, or to fit.
- 2 To select different views on an event graph, use the  button. For details about viewing event graphs, see the online Help.

## Investigating Patterns in the Patterns View

You can re-open just the patterns view part of the snapshot in the Viewer panel.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the Patterns tab.
- 2 Select one or more patterns in the resource tree, right-click the selections and choose View Pattern. This opens the Pattern pane in the Viewer panel.
- 3 You can take the same actions on the Pattern view as described in [“Investigating Patterns in the Patterns View” on page 148](#).

In the Patterns view, you can click the Actions button or right-click a pattern, where you have the following options:

Button	Right-Click Option	Description
	Inspect Pattern	Opens the Pattern Inspector in the Inspect/Edit panel. For more about how to inspect patterns, see <a href="#">“Investigating Patterns” on page 146</a> .
	Create rule from Pattern	Launches a Rules Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel. The rule you create here is stored in the Rules resource tree under the personal rules of the creating user.  For instructions about how to construct a rule, see <a href="#">“Creating Rules from Patterns” on page 150</a> .
	Annotate Pattern	Click this to open the Annotations dialog box. This allows you to escalate a pattern to another user for further investigation. For more information about how to annotate a pattern, see <a href="#">“Annotating Patterns” on page 152</a> .
	Event Graph	Displays the events as an event graph, which shows interactions between two or more devices.  For more information about how to use ESM event graphs, see the online Help.
	Related Events	Click this to open a grid view of the events contained in the Pattern Discovery snapshot.
	Create Channel	Creates a channel based on the selected pattern block.
	Add Condition to Editor	Enables you to edit the condition statements associated with this pattern block.



## Viewing Patterns with Filter

You can view patterns assigned to a particular user or stage using Annotations.

- 1 In the Navigator panel in **Pattern Discovery**, click the **Patterns** tab.
- 2 Navigate to the pattern.
- 3 Right click that pattern and select **View Patterns with Filter**.
- 4 To filter for patterns assigned to a user, use the Select a User drop-down menu.
- 5 To filter for patterns assigned to a workflow stage, use the Select a Stage drop-down menu.
- 6 You can use one or both parameters for your search.

## Inspecting Patterns

The Pattern Inspector provides you one more level of investigative control. If you decide that a pattern requires more investigation, you can use the Pattern Inspector to edit its details to be more descriptive for other users.

For example, you can rename the pattern from the default date and time of the snapshot to something more specific, such as "Potential worm attack." Then you can add a description of the pattern so that another user can verify your findings.

To launch the Pattern Inspector:

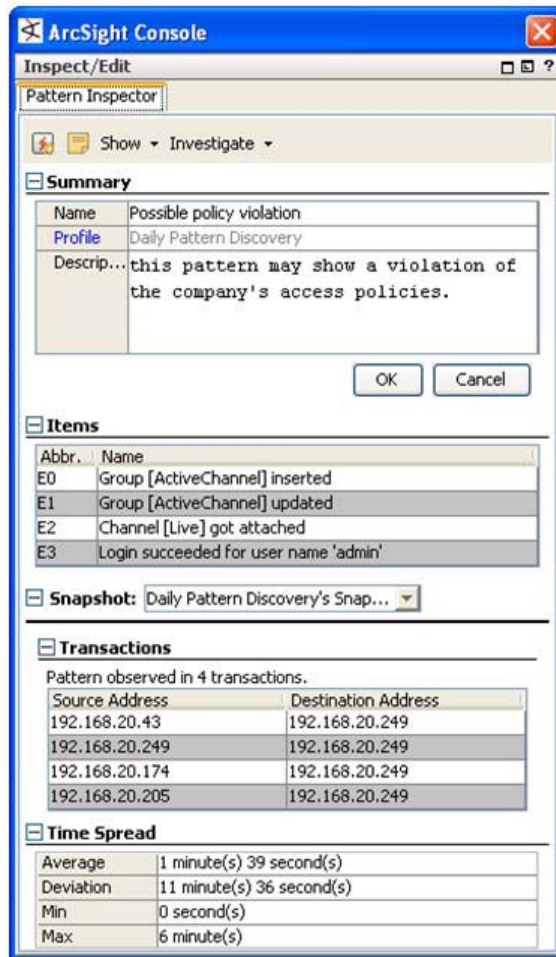
- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the Patterns tab.
- 2 Right-click a pattern in the resource tree and choose **Inspect Pattern...**

Details of the pattern are displayed in the Inspect/Edit panel. Use the following sections as described below to tailor the pattern for further investigation:

Section	Description
Summary	Use this section to modify the name of the pattern from the default date-and-time name to a more descriptive name. You can also add a description of the pattern to aid other analysts. The Profile field is not editable.
Items	Use the Investigate drop-down button or right-click an item name to display the associated event details in a channel in the Viewer panel.
Snapshot	Use this drop-down menu to open patterns generated from the same profile definition so you can compare them.
Transactions	This table shows the source and destination data defined in the profile (address, port, host name, and so on) for the events involved in the pattern.

Section	Description
Time Spread	<p>This table is only present if you selected Record Time Order in the profile. This table shows the details about the time spans involved between pattern occurrences.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Average</b> - the average time between events in this pattern</li> <li>• <b>Deviation</b> - the difference in time spread between multiple occurrences of this pattern</li> <li>• <b>Min</b> - the minimum time between events in this pattern</li> <li>• <b>Max</b> - the maximum time between events in this pattern</li> </ul>

The Pattern Inspector (below) shows item details and source/target transactions. You can rename a pattern to something more specific than the default date and time, and you can include a description.



## Creating Rules from Patterns

You can create rules based on discovered patterns. Going back to our example, if Pattern Discovery finds a pattern between an MS-SQL worm propagation attempt reported by Snort, an MS SQL version overflow attempt, and an attack from a suspicious source, this indicates dangerous worm activity, and can create a rule to notify users or quarantine a

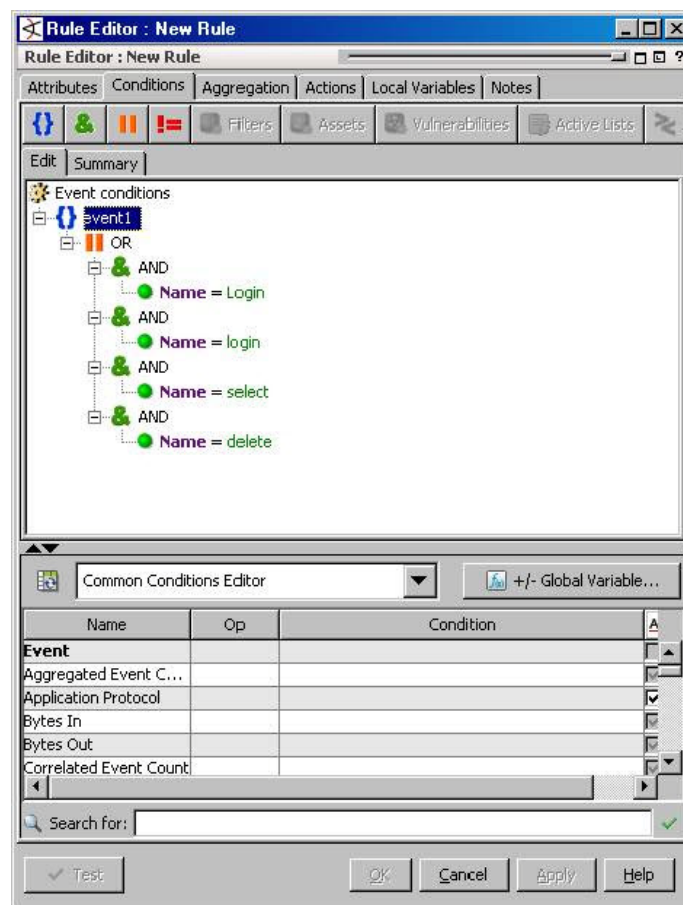
server whenever the system detects traffic that matches this pattern. For additional information on creating and managing rules, see [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#).

You can create rules from patterns in the Snapshot view in the Viewer panel, or in the Pattern Inspector in the Inspect/Edit panel.

- To access the Rules Editor from the Snapshot view:  
Right click on any item in the hierarchy graphic and select Create Rule...
- To access the Rules Editor from the Snapshot Patterns view:  
Right click on any item in the pattern block and select Create Rule.... You can also click the create rule button (🔥) in the button menu.
- To access the Rules Editor from the Pattern Inspector:  
In the button menu, click the create rule button.

The Rules Editor opens in the Inspect/Edit panel showing the Attributes tab. Once the Rules Editor is open, do the following:

- 1 Enter a name for the rule. You can also assign an external ID, alias, description, Version ID, owner, notification groups for the filter, and mark a resource as deprecated. Click **Apply**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor on the **Conditions** tab, the pattern's elements already appear in the common conditions editor. Modify the logic to express additional conditions for the rule to evaluate. For information, see [“Specifying Rule Conditions” on page 403](#).





The OR conditions are intentional. OR is a more memory-efficient way to process rules than AND because it also applies a threshold value (the number of items involved) and distinct item names to track the components of the rule, rather than a blanket (join) approach.


- 3 At the **Aggregation** tab, set the number of matches and time frame for the rule.
- 4 At the **Actions** tab, set the actions for the rule to trigger when the thresholds are met.
  - a Click **Hide Empty Triggers** in the top row. This reduces the list of available thresholds to those that are active (applicable to the conditions set in the rule).
  - b Select a threshold from the list and click **Add**. Choose an action from the list that appears. See [“Rule Actions Reference” on page 422](#).
- 5 At the **Variables** tab, enter variables. Variables break down compound data fields into smaller parts so they can be sorted and acted upon. For example, you can break the 7-part timestamp field or a multi-value URI into component parts, which can be re-assembled in a more human-readable order, or sorted by component. For more about dependent variables, see the online Help and search for Dependent Variables.
- 6 You can keep track of changes made to a profile using the Notes feature:
  - a In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the Notes tab.
  - b In the Notes field, enter a note and click Save. The entry is logged in the Table/List tabs.
  - c You can view notes as a table or as a list by toggling between the Table and List tabs. You can re-order the table view by clicking the column header.

## Annotating Patterns

Annotation is a light-weight way to escalate a pattern to other users through your workflow system for analysis or investigation. You can use annotations instead of cases to escalate only one pattern. Use cases to escalate multiple patterns or if you use a third-party incident management system.

You can annotate patterns from the snapshot and Pattern views in the Viewer panel, or within the Pattern Inspector in the Inspect/Edit panel.

To access the Annotation Editor from the Snapshot Patterns view:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Snapshots** tab.
- 2 Double-click the snapshot to display it in the Viewer panel.
- 3 Expand the pane so you can see the Patterns view at the bottom.
- 4 Right click any item in the pattern block and select **Annotate Pattern....** You can also click the Annotate Pattern button () in the button menu.

To access the Annotation Editor from the Pattern Inspector:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Patterns** tab.
- 2 Navigate to the pattern and double-click it.

- 3 In the Inspect/Edit pane on the Pattern Inspector tab button menu, click the Annotate Pattern button.

Once the Annotation Editor is open, enter the following values and click **OK**.

Field	Value
Stage	Select a stage from the drop-down menu. The default is Queued.
Assign to	Select a user from the drop-down menu.
Comments	Enter any comments to communicate to other ArcSight users.

## Deleting a Pattern

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Pattern Discovery** and click the **Patterns** tab.
- 2 Select one or more patterns.
- 3 Right-click the selected patterns in the resource tree and choose **Delete Pattern**.
- 4 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Usage Guidelines

### Establishing a Baseline of Normal Patterns

Use broader profiles and more frequent snapshots in order to capture an example of all the patterns that occur as part of normal business practices. Identifying normal patterns takes time and investigation, and requires that you be familiar with traffic in your enterprise.

Once you have identified normal patterns, use annotation for moving them out of the analysis workflow. You can also use filters, but it is more reliable to move patterns by annotating them to a stage, such as Closed, because it assures that the pattern has been inspected and classified. For instructions about how to use event annotation to manage Pattern Discovery workflow, see [“Annotating Patterns” on page 152](#).

## Using Pattern Discovery in Routine Operations

Once normal patterns are identified and annotated so they are removed from the routine traffic flow, you can focus on the new patterns that are not yet classified. Routine operations consist of the following tasks:

- **Workflow.** As Pattern Discovery turns up new or unclassified patterns, a designated user needs to review them and start them through the workflow using the ESM annotations feature. You can also schedule Pattern Discovery to run at intervals.
- **Investigation and analysis.** Once assigned to an analyst, the analyst can use the full array of ArcSight's investigation and analysis tools, including snapshot and pattern graphics, event graphs, filters, and rules, to determine the level of threat represented by the pattern.

During this investigation, it may be useful to drill down to the native device information to help identify the significance of a pattern. For example, if an event in a pattern was generated by Snort, you can retrieve the Snort rule number and look for its detailed explanation to obtain important event details.

- **Take action.** When a threat level is determined, the analyst can take a number of actions, such as use the ArcSight rule builder to take a prescribed action on this pattern and others that match it that may occur in the future; assign it to another user for follow-up; or close the pattern if it is deemed benign.

## Performance Considerations

Pattern Discovery jobs can be resource intensive. Under high EPS (for example, greater than 15K), Pattern Discovery jobs can cause a degradation in performance, and may fail to return a matching result set. ArcSight recommends that you reduce the scope and/or frequency of Pattern Discovery jobs when running a system with high EPS.

## Adjusting Pattern Discovery Memory

By default, Pattern Discovery limits its memory usage to about 4 GB of memory. However, if the search for patterns involves too many transactions and events, the task can run out of memory and abort. If the Pattern Discovery task aborts, a message to that effect appears in the ArcSight Console. Run the Pattern Discovery task again after increasing the Pattern Discovery memory usage limit. You can control the memory usage limit indirectly by changing the maximum number of transactions and events that can be held in memory.

For information, see "Adjusting Pattern Discovery Memory" in the Configuration chapter of the Administrator's Guide.

## Chapter 5

# Field Sets

The field sets panel provides access to resources that are used to group and extend the fields of the event and resource schema. The Field Sets tree presents tools for the following tasks:

	Who	What	Why	Where	How
<b>Creating Field Sets</b>	SOC operators, authors, and analysts concerned with traditional security-related use cases.	A named subset of available data fields in the standard schema and the user-defined dynamic schema.	To narrow the fields available in the standard 400+ field event schema and the user-defined dynamic schema to make it easier to select and view fields.	Active channels, CCE	See <a href="#">“Creating and Using Field Sets” on page 155</a> .
<b>Creating Global Variables</b>	SOC operators, authors, and analysts concerned with any type of use case.	A way to derive a unique value from existing values in a data field, and the derived value itself, stored in a global variable field.	To make correlation, monitoring, and investigation more precise.	Active channels, CCE, regular field sets, other global variables	See <a href="#">“Global Variables” on page 445</a> .

[“Creating and Using Field Sets” on page 155](#)

[“Where Field Sets can be Selected” on page 162](#)

[“About Global Variables” on page 163](#)

## Creating and Using Field Sets

Field sets are named subsets of available *data fields*. Field sets can help you quickly focus a grid view, Event Inspector, or other field array on a particular context, such as customer accounts or vulnerability.

Field sets are a shareable resource that you can manage and apply through the Field Sets resource tree in the Field Sets section of the Navigator panel. (In the Navigator, choose **Field Sets**, and click the **Field Sets** tab.) Field sets also support local and global variable data fields.

In addition to field sets based on the Security Event schema, you can create field sets based on certain resources. ArcSight supports the following types of field sets:

- **Actor field set.** An actor field set contains fields that make up the Actors resource. Actor fields are attributes to identify users and track their activity. ArcSight provides a base set of Actors fields from which you can make user-defined subsets.
- **Asset field set.** An asset field set contains fields that make up the Assets resource. Asset fields are attributes used to identify monitored assets. ArcSight provides a base set of Asset fields from which you can make user-defined subsets.
- **Case field set.** A case field set contains fields that make up the Cases resource. Case fields are attributes used to track events that have been added to cases. ArcSight provides a base set of Case fields from which you can make user-defined subsets.
- **Event field set.** An event field set is a named subset of available data fields from the ArcSight security event schema.



A base or root field set is provided for each schema type (Event, Actor, Asset, and so on) from which you can create user-defined subsets. A derived field set may inherit all or a subset of its parent's base fields, and additionally may include local or global variables not present in the parent. All field sets will have a parent (field sets created in previous versions of ArcSight will by default use the Event base field set as its parent).



The ArcSight Command Center includes a search feature, **fieldset**, that is different from the field set resource on the ArcSight Console.

## Creating a Field Set

### To create a field set:

- 1 On the Console's Navigator panel, select **Field Sets** from the Resources drop-down menu.
- 2 Choose File>New on the Console's menu, or the New Resource button () and the Field Set () command. You can also right-click a folder in the Field Sets resource tree and choose New Field Set.
- 3 In the Field Set Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, enter attributes for the field set and assign it one or more existing fields.
- 4 Click **Apply** to save the field set in the resource tree and continue editing. Click **OK** to save the set in the resource tree and close the editor.

For details about what to enter in each field of the Field Set Editor, see [“Field Set Editor: Attributes Tab” on page 156](#).

## Field Set Editor: Attributes Tab

The attributes tab is where you name the field set and specify what type of field set it is.

Field	Description
Name	Enter a name for the field set that identifies what it represents.



Field	Description
Type	<p>From the drop-down menu, select what type of field set it is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Actor Field Set.</b> Select this if the field set will contain only actor fields for use cases relating to tracking actors.</li><li>• <b>Asset Field Set.</b> Select this if the field set will contain only asset fields for use cases relating to tracking assets.</li><li>• <b>Case Field Set.</b> Select this if the field set will contain only case fields for use cases relating to tracking cases.</li><li>• <b>Event Field Set.</b> Select this if the field set will contain fields from the ArcSight security event schema for event-based use cases.</li></ul>

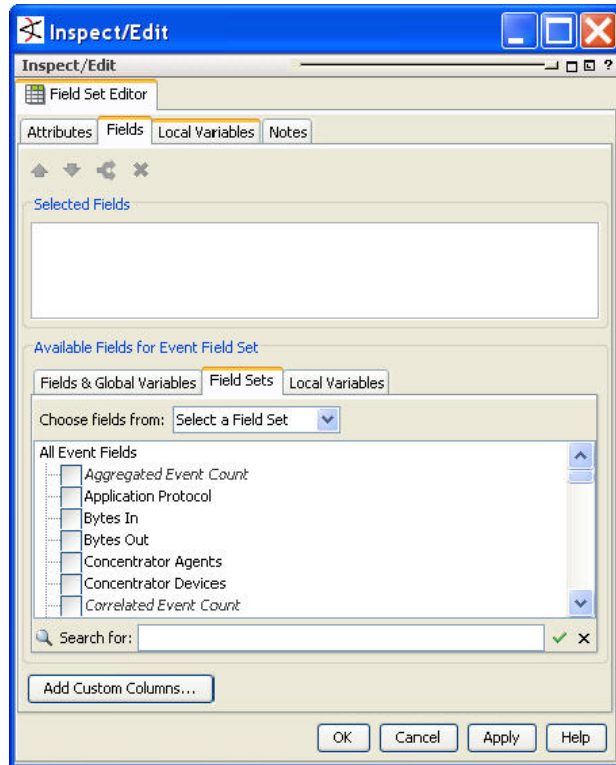
For a description of what to enter in the Common fields, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

## Field Set Editor: Fields Tab

The Fields tab is where you add the data fields to the field set.

The Field Set editor's Fields tab provides several sources from which you can select different types of fields:

- **Fields & Global Variables tab.** Use this tab to add existing user-defined fields and global variables.
- **Field Sets tab.** Use this tab to add standard event and resource schema fields. This field selector is similar to those available in the CCE and active channel editors.
- **Local Variables tab.** Use this tab to add one or more local variables defined on this field set's top level Local Variables tab. Once added, the fields on this tab are available only to this particular field set.



Once fields are added to the field set, you can re-order and delete them, and create aliases for event-based fields. For instructions, see [“Editing a Field Set” on page 161](#).



**Tip**

#### Looking for information about custom columns?

If you want to add a custom column, you need to create or define it first. For information about creating custom columns, see [“Customizing Columns” on page 100](#). For information about working with grid views, see [“Using Active Channels” on page 93](#).

Once a custom column is created, you can add it to your field set using the **Add Custom Columns** button at the bottom of the Fields tab editor. For details, see [“Adding Custom Columns” on page 161](#).

## Field Set Editor: Local Variables Tab

Use this top-level local variables tab to define one or more local variables that you can then add to this field set in the Local Variables tab of the Fields tab. You can create multiple chained variables and add one or more of them to the field set itself.

- 1 In the Local Variables tab, click add (+ Add) to launch the Add Local Variable editor.
- 2 In the Name field, give the local variable a name. In the Function drop-down, select a function category, then select a function and click **OK**.
- 3 In the Arguments section, enter appropriate arguments for the function you selected in the previous step.
- 4 In the Preview section, select or enter parameters and click **Calculate** to test the results of the function.
- 5 When you are finished editing the field set, click **OK** to close the editor.

For complete instructions about constructing a variable, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

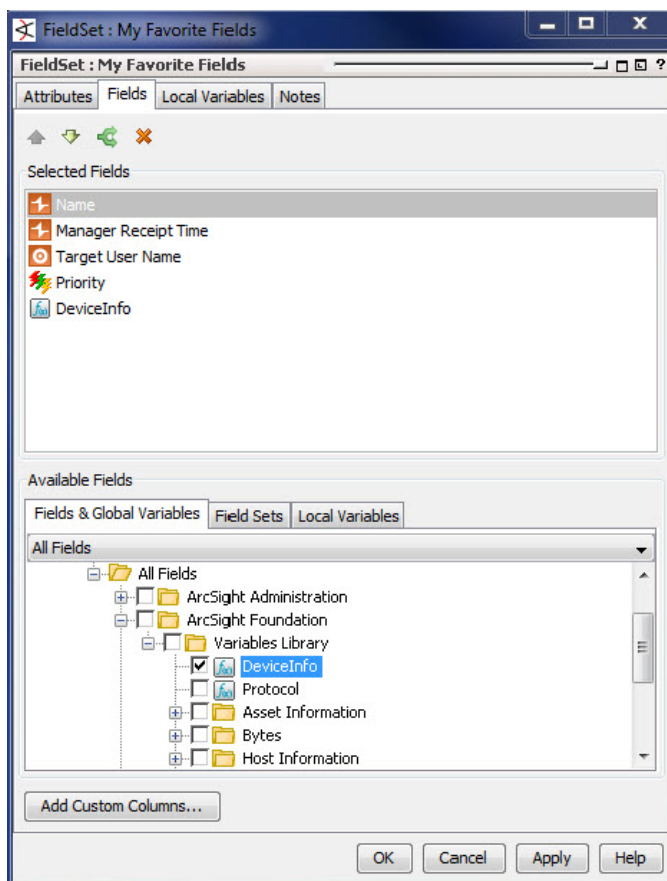
## Derived Fields

Fields shown in italics are *derived* from data in other fields. Derived fields appear in various places on the Console UI including on the Field Set editor, and the Common Conditions Editor (CCE) aggregation tabs (for example, Rules, Filters, and so forth). See also [“Using Field Sets” on page 828](#) in the [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#) reference topic.

Derived fields can not be added to the field set. If you want to add a derived field to a field set, add the parent field instead.

## Selecting Fields from the Fields & Global Variables Tab

The Fields & Global Variables tab enables you to select fields from a resource tree like the one presented in the Fields & Global Variables Navigator panel. Use this tab to add user-defined fields and global variables to your regular field set.



**Note**

Fields & Global Variables tab also presents regular event fields.

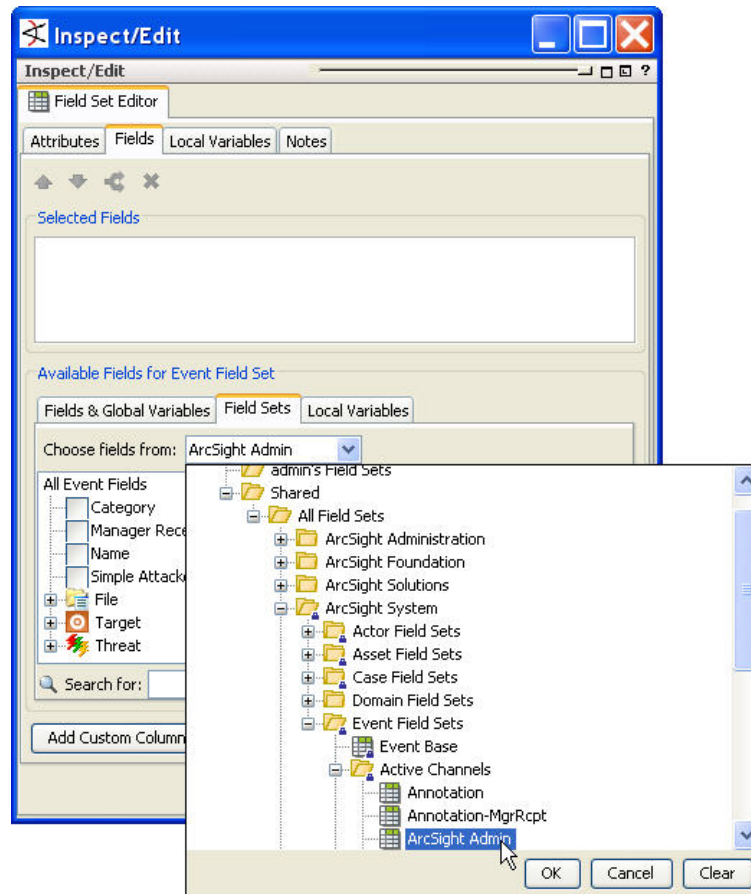
The Fields & Global Variables selector also provides a tree-level view of the standard event and resource schema fields. You can use this view to add event fields, or add them from the Field Sets tab described in [“Selecting Fields from the Field Sets Tab” on page 160](#).

In the Fields and Global Variables tab, select any existing fields or global variables you want to add to the field set. The selected field will appear in the Selected Fields panel.

For more about global variables, see [“Global Variables” on page 445](#).

## Selecting Fields from the Field Sets Tab

The Field Sets tab enables you to select regular event fields that are part of a field set using a functionally organized field selector similar to that in the CCE and active channel editor. You can also use field sets in the Field Sets tab to narrow the list of fields down to those you are interested in.






You can navigate the entire event and resource schema for the fields you are interested in, or select a field set from which you want to select fields in the *Choose fields from* drop-down menu.

## Selecting Local Variables from the Local Variables Tab

If you want to add a local variable to this field set, but the local variables tab in the Field tab contains no items to select, first define the local variable in [“Field Set Editor: Local Variables Tab” on page 158](#).

- 1 In the Available Fields for *<type of>* Field Set section at the Local Variables tab, select a local variable that you define in [“Field Set Editor: Local Variables Tab” on page 158](#).
- 2 Select the check box for the local variable you want to add to the field set.

- ◆ To re-order the local variables in the list, select a field and use the up /down  arrows to place it in the desired order. The variables will be evaluated in the order shown here.
- ◆ To remove the local variable from the list, select the field and click the delete button (.

## Adding Custom Columns




The bottom of the Fields tab provides a button that enables you to add an existing custom column to the field set. To add a custom column:

- 1 Click **Add Custom Columns**.
- 2 In the Add Custom Columns dialog, select an existing custom column and click **OK**.



For more about custom columns and how to create them, see [“Customizing Columns” on page 100](#).

## Editing a Field Set

- 1 In the Field Sets tab of the Active Channels resource tree, right-click a field set and select **Edit Field Set**.
- 2 In the Field Set Editor, use the **Attributes** tab to change the field set's name.
- 3 Click the **Fields** tab and use its Available Fields list to select fields to add to the list.
  - ◆ **To reorder fields:** To re-order the fields in the list, select a field and use the up /down  arrows to place it in the desired order. Fields and variables will be displayed and evaluated in the order specified in this list.
  - ◆ **To create an alias for event-based fields:** To create an alias for a field, select the field, then click the alias button (). In the Create Alias dialog box, enter an alternate name for the field. This alias will be used to identify this field in this field

set anywhere this field set is used to select or display fields, such as an active channel column heading or a CCE field selector.



**Note**

You can create an alias for event-based fields only.

You cannot create an alias for resource-based fields, such as assets or cases. You also cannot create an alias for a field set or a global variable.

- ◆ **To delete a field from the field set:** To remove the field from the list, select the field and click the delete button (✕).
- 4 Use the **Local Variables** tab to define variables you can add to the field set using the Local Variables tab in the Fields tab. See [“Selecting Local Variables from the Local Variables Tab” on page 160](#).
- 5 Rearrange or remove fields in the Fields to Show list.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save the set in the resource tree and continue editing. Click **OK** to save the set in the resource tree and close the editor.

## Sharing a Field Set

When you create a field set in the Shared folder in the Field Sets resource tree, it is available to other users who have permission for those folders. If you create one in your own folder, it is not available to other users unless you move, copy, or link it into a Shared folder.

- 1 Click the field set in your folder and drag it to the appropriate Shared folder.
- 2 In the Drag and Drop dialog box, choose to **Move**, **Copy**, or **Link** the resource in its new location.
  - ◆ **Moving** relocates the resource, leaving a single instance of it in the tree.
  - ◆ **Copying** makes a duplicate, leaving two independent instances of the resource.
  - ◆ **Linking** leaves the original in place, and creates a connected copy in the new location that will change whenever the master instance changes.

You create sortable field sets in the same way, but without the option to add variables to the sets.

You control access to field set folders like any other resource.

See also [“Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel” on page 80](#) and [Sorting Events in a Channel](#).

## Deleting a Field Set

- 1 In the Navigator panel at the Field Sets tab, right-click the field set you want to delete and select **Delete Field Set**.
- 2 In the confirmation dialog box, click **Delete** to delete the field set.

## Where Field Sets can be Selected

Field sets can be applied in the following resources:

- **To sort active channels.** For more about how to use field sets in active channels, see [“Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel” on page 80](#).

- **To narrow the list of fields available for selecting in the CCE.** For more about how to use field sets when authoring resources in the CCE, see [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#).
- To define fields for a query. For more about creating queries, see [“Building Queries” on page 299](#).

## About Global Variables

Global variables are created from the Fields & Global Variables tab in the Field Sets Navigator panel.

For more information about global variables, see [“Global Variables” on page 445](#).





# Selecting and Investigating Events

---

This chapter describes how you use ArcSight to monitor enterprise security.

[“Investigating Events in Active Channels” on page 165](#)

[“Showing Event Details and Rule Chains” on page 166](#)

[“Investigating Session Events” on page 168](#)

[“Collaborating on Events” on page 168](#)

[“Showing Event Payloads” on page 173](#)

[“Getting Knowledge Base Articles” on page 174](#)

## Investigating Events in Active Channels

An active channel is a grid view in which there is a row for each event. In an active channel you can select which events you want to investigate. After selecting one or more events in the channel, you can perform several analysis and authoring tasks.

### Selecting Events to Investigate

To select an event in the channel, click an event or **Ctrl+click** a set of events. To select a range of events, click one event and **Shift+click** the event at the end of the range.

### Inverting Event Selections

Select one or more events in the channel, right-click and choose **Invert selection**.

### Selecting Events with Matching Cells

Select a cell in an event, right-click and choose **Select events with matching cell** to see if other events in the channel have matching cell values.

### Exporting Data Fields to a CSV File

You can export a set of channel events into a comma separated values (CSV) file. The procedure for doing this is described here and also in [“Exporting Events to a File” on page 95](#).

- 1 In the channel, select one or more events.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Export > Events in Channel**.

- 3 On the Export Events file browser, navigate to the location where you want to save the CSV file, then enter or select options for these fields:

File Name	Type a file name for the CSV file. <b>Note:</b> The file name extension is not required; the <code>csv</code> extension is added automatically when the file is created.
Files of Type	Select Comma separated values (*.csv).
Export Data Options	For "Rows", you have two options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you choose <b>All in channel</b>, all events in the channel will be exported to the CSV file.</li> <li>If you choose <b>Selected rows only</b>, only those rows highlighted for the right-click operation will be exported to the CSV file.</li> </ul> <p>The default for "Columns" is the Export field set. You can keep the default, or select other field sets from a list of All Field Sets.</p> <p>The exported CSV file will include the fields in the selected field set. If you want to limit the exported columns (field sets) to only those showing in the current channel, see <a href="#">"How to Limit Export to Fields Visible in Channel"</a> on page 96.</p> <p>(For more information on creating, editing, and applying field sets, see <a href="#">"Creating and Using Field Sets"</a> on page 155.)</p> <p>For "Destination", choose <b>Local CSV File</b></p>

- 4 Click **OK** to save the file.

## Showing Event Details and Rule Chains

### Displaying Event Details


In an active channel, select an event. Right-click and choose **Show event details**. The event's details appear in the Event Inspector.

When you apply an actor field set to an event being displayed in the event inspector, you may experience an extended load time.

### Displaying Simple Event Rule Chains

In an active channel, select a correlation event. Right-click and choose **Rule options**, then **Simple chain**.

### Displaying Detailed Event Rule Chains

Rule-based correlation events are those generated by a triggered ArcSight rule as a reaction to an original sensor-generated event. In other words, an event concerning an event. You recognize correlation events in active channels by their red **Flash** icon . To mask active channels so they show **only** correlation events, select the check box at the top of the channel's left-most column.

In an active channel, select a correlation event. Right-click and choose **Rule options**, then **Detailed chain**.

The events leading up to the correlation event appear in the Description panel at the top of the Inspector. Click any event in the chain to see its details below.

## Viewing Forwarded Correlation and Their Correlated Events

Based on your configuration, the Forwarding Connector can automatically forward correlation events and their associated base events from a source ESM to a destination ESM. Once the correlation and correlated events are forwarded, you can view them on the destination through the Event Inspector. Make sure the source is configured correctly according to the instructions in the Forwarding Connector Configuration Guide. The required configurations include the following:

- Creating a Forwarding Connector user at the source ESM
- Adding a system filter for correlation events to that user's Events access control list (ACL) permission
- Installing the Forwarding Connector and configuring it to send events to this specific destination ESM

Refer to the Forwarding Connector User's Guide for specific procedures.

## Displaying Correlation-Event Rules

In an active channel, select a correlation event. Right-click and choose **Rule options**, then **Show triggering resource**.

The rule or resource that triggered the correlation event is selected in the Navigator panel's Rules resource tree and that rule appears in the Rules Editor.

## Executing or Clearing Rule Actions

In an active channel, select a correlation event. Right-click and choose **Rule options**, then **Clear Rule Actions** to clear all actions associated with this rule. For more information, see ["Creating Rule Actions" on page 417](#).

## Launching Event Details in a Browser

- 1 In an active channel, right-click an event and choose **Show event details**.
- 2 In the condition table of the Event Inspector, right-click and choose **Launch Event Details in Browser**.

A Web browser opens with the selected event's details.

## Hiding Empty Rows in the Event Inspector

- 1 In an active channel, right-click an event and choose **Show event details**.
- 2 In the condition table of the Event Inspector, right-click and choose **Hide Empty Rows**.

## Investigating Session Events

This topic explains how to use the ArcSight Console's **Investigate > Session Events** command to easily refine and explore channels contextually, using attributes of the events already being displayed in active channels.

Session List entries can be investigated two ways: you can filter the set of entries based on the attributes of a particular entry, or you can create an Investigation Channel that contains only the entries that match one or more attributes of the initial Session List entry.

### Investigating a Session Event

- 1 Right-click a Session List in the Navigator and choose **Show Entries**.
- 2 In the Viewer panel, select an entry that bears investigation by clicking it.
- 3 Right-click the selected entry. The menu includes commands to **Create Channel** and **Add Condition to Channel Editor**. The details of each command will vary based on which column you right-click.

For example, if you right-click a Source IP column containing the value 192.0.2.0, the choices will be:

- ◆ Create Channel (Source IP = 192.0.2.0)
- ◆ Create Channel (Source IP != 192.0.2.0)
- ◆ Create Channel >
- ◆ Add Condition to Channel Editor (Source IP = 192.0.2.0)
- ◆ Add Condition to Channel Editor (Source IP != 192.0.2.0)
- ◆ Add Condition to Channel Editor >

The sub-menus (indicated by the >) will offer similar choices for all the other columns of the Session List entry.

If you Create Channel, it is added to the Viewer panel. If you Add Condition to Channel Editor, a channel editor will open in the Inspect/Edit panel.

For more information about creating and using views for investigation, see ["Investigating Views" on page 88](#).

## Collaborating on Events

You can use workflow-style annotation to collaborate with other users in analyzing or reviewing selected events. (See also ["Case Management and Queries" on page 531](#).)

When you are annotating, you can make collaboration-stage changes to just the event you originally selected, or have that change also affect a larger set of similar events that should also be carried forward in the review process.

The central tasks in annotating events for collaborative analysis are assigning them to yourself or another user, then assigning them to one of the available sequential workflow stages (dispositions). While ArcSight comes with a default set of stages, your enterprise will very likely have customized these stages and created new ones.

Compare collaborative annotation to cases, which are a more formal way to track sets of events that are under investigation.

## Viewing Annotations for an Event

Annotations on an event are displayed in the **Annotations** tab of the Event Inspector when that event is selected.

To view the annotations for an event:

- 1 Right-click an event in an active channel (such as an active channel or active list) and choose Show Event Details to bring up the Event Inspector.
- 2 In the Event Inspector, click the **Annotations** tab.

## Annotating an Event

- 1 Select one or more events in any active channel. If not already annotated, you can start a collaboration cycle.
- 2 Right-click the events and choose **Annotate Events** (or **Ctrl+T** keyboard command).
- 3 In the Annotate Events dialog box, set or change the events' Annotations fields, as described below.
- 4 To have this change also affect related events, use the **Mark Similar Events** fields, as described below.
- 5 Click **OK** to update the event.

## Event Annotation Fields

Event Annotation Field	Usage
Stage	Click this field to choose a different disposition state for the events' collaboration cycle. The default stages run from <b>Initial</b> to <b>Closed</b> ; other stages may be available.
Assign to	Click this field to choose an ArcSight user to take the next step.
Is Reviewed	This read-only field tells you whether this event has been reviewed.
In Case	This read-only field tells you whether these events are already part of an ArcSight case. If they are, you have more ways to track their disposition.
Correlated	<p>This read-only field tells you whether these events are part of a correlated event chain. If so, you can learn more through the rules authored to control that chain of correlation.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The ArcSight Forwarding Connector can be configured to send correlation events along with the correlated base events from a source Manager to a destination Manager. However, the forwarded base events display the <code>Correlated</code> flag only in memory, which you can view on an active channel. If you want the forwarded base event's <code>Correlated</code> flag to persist in the database, set this property in <code>server.properties</code> on the source Manager:</p> <pre>logger.base-event-annotation.enabled = true</pre> <p>For instructions on how to edit the <code>server.properties</code> file, refer to the ESM Administrator's Guide's topic on "Managing and Changing Properties File Settings."</p>
Hidden	This read-only field tells you whether these events are hidden from all but the assigned users of this stage.
Closed	This read-only field tells you whether the investigation of these events has been marked as closed. Closed events may no longer be visible to interested parties through active channels, etc.

## Comments Field

The **Comments** field is for text comments you can add as needed to clarify the collaborative process.

## Annotation Preservation

With the CORR-Engine, when the day's events are archived at the end of the day, the archive is immutable. If, while the archive is still online, you make changes or additions to event annotations, they are preserved as a supplemental archive when the archive goes offline at the end of the retention period. If you reactivate an offline archive and make more annotation changes, they are only preserved until you deactivate the archive, at which time these annotation changes are deleted. Refer to the ArcSight Command Center User's Guide for information on retention periods and archives.

## Mark Similar Events Fields

Event "similarity," for collaboration purposes, is defined as a combination of time constraints and having certain key event attributes in common. For example, you could

apply a collaboration change to additional events received in the future on the basis of those events having the same Attacker value and having occurred within the last two days.

Similarity Field	Usage
Time Constraints	Choose a bracketing combination of Start Time and End Time or Duration.
Start Time	Date and time values to set the beginning of a time-constraint window. Choose from the drop-down menu of expressions or click the <b>ellipsis</b> button to set exact times.
End Time	Date and time values to set the end of a time-constraint window. Choose from the drop-down menu of expressions or click the <b>ellipsis</b> button to set exact times.
Duration	The length of the time window, relative to a Start Time or End Time, when using <b>Duration</b> as a time constraint.
Criteria	A menu of key event-attribute characteristics you can use to define similarity. The text box below specifies the criteria being set.

## Creating New Stages

- 1 Choose the **Stages** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click the **All Stages** group and choose **New Stage**.
- 3 In the Stage Editor, enter a name for the stage.
- 4 Make other appropriate choices, as described in the following table showing [Stage Editor Fields](#).
- 5 Click **Apply** to save your changes and keep the editor open, or click **OK** to save and close.



Keep stages provided as standard content in the given folders and do not move them into another folder. Standard content stages are Closed, Final, Flagged as Similar, Follow-up, Initial, Monitoring, Queued, and Rule Created.

## Stage Editor Fields

Stage Editor Field	Usage
Subsequent stages	Select one or more stages to set as follow-on stages to this one. Events in this stage will show these other stages as options in the <b>Stage</b> field of the Annotate Fields dialog box.
User required	Select whether you want to prompt for a user assignment when assigning this stage. If you don't prompt for a different user, or no change is made, the current user remains in effect.
Comment required	Select whether you want to require users to add a comment when assigning this stage.
Can be skipped	Select whether this stage can be bypassed when assigning from one stage to the next.
Mark similar required	Choose whether you want events that are similar to the selected events to be automatically assigned to this stage. Similarity is scoped at assignment time through the <b>Mark Similar Events</b> fields of the Annotate Events dialog box you see when you choose <b>Annotate</b> in an active channel. Note that similarity marking applies only to subsequent events received in the future. Events already processed are not affected.
Mark similar stage	Select whether you want to use this stage as a routing mechanism for other stages in a workflow. When selected, assigning one or more events to this stage causes all <b>following</b> (subsequent) similar events to be automatically redirected to the chosen stage. Events already processed are not affected. Similarity is scoped at assignment time through the <b>Mark Similar Events</b> fields of the Annotate Events dialog box you see when you choose <b>Annotate</b> in an active channel.
Hidden	Select whether you want events assigned to this stage to be hidden from all but the assigned users ( <b>True</b> ), left visible to everyone ( <b>False</b> ), or to leave the current visibility unchanged ( <b>Ignore</b> ).
Closed	Select whether you want events assigned to this stage to be marked as closed to investigation ( <b>True</b> ), not marked as closed ( <b>False</b> ), or left in their previous state ( <b>Ignore</b> ).



With the assistance of HP Professional Services, you can customize the similarity criteria selector for Mark Similar events. In this way you can have conditions that are different from the defaults. This is done with the Velocity scripting language, by modifying certain Velocity templates present on the ArcSight Console, in the `config/similarity` directory. Ask your ArcSight administrator for more information or make a request of HP Professional Services.

## Editing Stages

- 1 Choose the **Stages** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a stage under the **All Stages** group and choose **Edit Stage**.
- 3 In the Stage Editor, make any necessary changes to the fields as previously described in [Stage Editor Fields](#).



- 4 Click **Apply** to save your changes and keep the editor open, or click **OK** to save and close.




Keep stages provided as standard content in the given folders and do not move them into another folder. Standard content stages are Closed, Final, Flagged as Similar, Follow-up, Initial, Monitoring, Queued, and Rule Created.

## Showing Event Payloads

An event “payload” is the information carried in the body of the event's network packet, as distinct from the packet's header data. From the ArcSight Console, you can search, retrieve, view, save to a file, or discard event payloads.

### Finding Payloads

The first step in handling event payloads is to be able to locate payload-bearing events among the general flow of events in an active channel.

- 1 In an active channel, right-click a column header and choose **Add Column>Device>Payload ID**.
- 2 Look for events showing a Payload ID  in that column.

### Retrieving Payloads

- 1 In an active channel, double-click an event with an associated payload.
- 2 In the Event Inspector, click the **Payload** tab.
- 3 Click **Retrieve Payload**.

### Preserving Payloads

You can select to preserve the payload for an event in either of two ways:

- In an active channel, right-click an event with an associated payload, choose **Payload**, then **Preserve**.
- Or
- In the Event Inspector, click the **Payload** tab, then **Preserve Payload**.

### Discarding Payloads

In an active channel, right-click an event with an associated payload and choose **Payload**, then **Discard Preserved**.

You can also use the Event Inspector.

- 1 In an active channel, double-click an event with an associated payload.
- 2 In the Event Inspector, click the **Payload** tab.
- 3 Click **Discard Preserved Payload**.

### Saving Payloads to Files

- 1 In an active channel, double-click an event with an associated payload.

- 2 In the Event Inspector, click the **Payload** tab.
- 3 Click **Save Payload**.
- 4 In the Save dialog box, navigate to a directory and enter a name in the **File name** text field.
- 5 Click **Save**.

## Viewing Payloads in Other Viewers

- 1 In an active channel, double-click an event with an associated payload.
- 2 In the Event Inspector, click the **Payload** tab.
- 3 Click **Launch External Payload Viewer**.
- 4 View the payload using the **Preferred Payload Viewer** and **Text to PCAP Converter**, specified in the ArcSight Console's **Edit > Preferences > Programs** panel.

## Getting Knowledge Base Articles

Knowledge Base articles can be associated with events, rules, or any resource. Knowledge Base articles can have links or notes to help you respond to events.

### Displaying Articles from the Knowledge Base Window

In the Navigator panel drop-down menu, select **Knowledge Base**. Navigate to and right-click an article, and choose **Show Article**.

You can also choose **Knowledge Base** from the **Help** menu.

### Displaying Articles from an active channel

In an active channel, right-click an event and choose **Knowledge Base**, then **Show**. Choose **KB entry for cell**, **KB entry for row**, or **KB entry for column**, then the article name.

The Knowledge Base article opens in an [ArcSight Web](#) client. For more information about active channels, see ["Using Active Channels" on page 93](#).

### Displaying Articles from the Event Inspector

In the Event Inspector, right-click an event and choose **Knowledge Base**, then **Show Article**.

The Knowledge Base article opens in an ArcSight Web client.

## Chapter 7

# Filtering Events

---

The Filters resource tree in the Navigator panel is pre-populated with some typical event filters you can use directly, or as templates for more specific purposes. You can create and edit your own filters and inline filters for use in active channels.

[“Creating Filters” on page 175](#)  
[“Moving or Copying Filters” on page 178](#)  
[“Deleting Filters” on page 179](#)  
[“Debugging Filters to Match Events” on page 179](#)  
[“Applying Filters” on page 181](#)  
[“Importing and Exporting filters” on page 182](#)  
[“Using Filter Groups” on page 182](#)  
[“Investigating Views” on page 183](#)  
[“Modifying Views” on page 187](#)

## Creating Filters

This topic discusses creating and editing filter resources through the Filter Editor. As a matter of efficient authoring and enterprise-wide analysis consistency you should always seek to use the established filter resources you find in the Navigator panel's Filters resource tree. These filters should have been designed and tested to appropriately accomplish your organization's analytical goals.

Inline filters offer you a user-friendly visual representation of Boolean logic, typically found in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#). The inline filters feature allows you to preview matching events through highlighting, thereby verifying the accuracy of your filter prior to applying it, and the ability to create AND/OR conditions effortlessly. Inline filters are defined within another resource, such as an active channel, and therefore work only for that channel.

## Creating a New Filter

If you want to make a filter available to multiple resources, follow these instructions to define a filter resource.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose **Filters**.
- 2 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Filter**.
- 3 In the Filters Editor, type in the **Name** text field.

- 4 In the table, scroll to a relevant event field and choose a logical operator (**Op**), enter a conditional statement (**Condition**), select case-sensitivity (**Aa**), and select inequality or negate (**Not**), if appropriate.
- 5 Customize the filter, if appropriate, using the features described in [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#).
- 6 Repeat the above step for each condition you want to add to the filter.
- 7 Click **Apply** below the Inspect/Edit panel to update the filter or click **OK** to add the filter to the resource tree.

**Caution**

Filter definitions (meaning the total text used in a filter's condition statements) cannot exceed 10,000 characters. If your filter uses more than 10,000 characters, create a second filter by splitting the definition, and use the **matchesFilter** operator to combine the two.

**Tip**

Because you can reference filters in other filters you can create hierarchies similar to style sheets. It is wise to plan your filtering needs in advance so you can create filters, filter groups, and filter hierarchies that will promote the most efficient and consistent analysis results.

## Changing or Editing a Filter

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose **Filters**.
- 2 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a filter and choose **Edit Filter**.
- 3 In the Filters Editor, you can edit the filter name, if needed.
- 4 You can make changes to the filter conditions as described in [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#). You can edit logical operators and condition statements in the filter using the CCE as follows:
  - ◆ To edit a logical operator, right-click the logical operator and choose **Edit**, then choose a logical operator and click **OK**. (For more information, see [“Logical Operators” on page 920](#).)
  - ◆ To edit a condition statement, right-click the condition statement and choose an operator, condition editor, or selection operation. For more information, see [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#) and [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#) (CCE). (Search fields and undo/redo features are now available, as described in [“Editor Features” on page 818](#) in the CCE topic.)
  - ◆ To delete a logical operator, right-click the operator and choose **Delete**. In the confirmation dialog box, click **Yes**. The logical operator and all its condition statements are removed.
  - ◆ To delete a condition statement, right-click it and choose **Delete**. In the confirmation dialog box, click **Yes**.
  - ◆ To edit or delete a filter, right-click the filter and choose **Edit** or **Delete**.
- 5 Click **Apply** in the Inspect/Edit panel to put the modified filter into effect or **OK** to save the filter as a resource.

**Tip**

- Be cautious when making changes to filters used in hierarchies.
- Understanding how to use the Common Conditions Editor (CCE) is integral to creating and editing filters. Please refer to [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#), [“Conditional Statements” on page 832](#), and [“Conditions” on page 833](#) for more information.

## Creating an Inline Filter



Steps to create an inline filter are summarized here. For more details and examples, see also [“Filtering Active Channels with Inline Filters” on page 98](#).

In any active channel grid view you can use the fields of the grid's top line to select filtering event-attribute values for certain columns, which will be used with implied AND operators to impose *ad hoc* filters and use the grid's bottom line to select filtering event-attributes values which will use OR operators.

These filters are **not** retained with the prior active channel, but you can give the revised channel a name and save it through the Active Channel Editor.



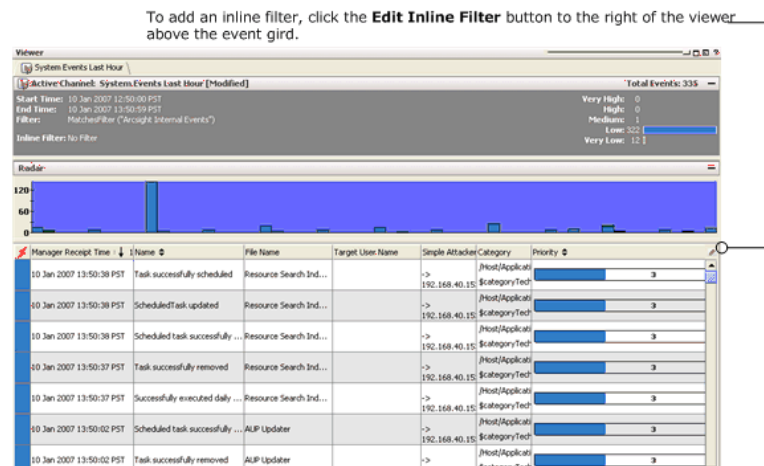
You cannot select a grayed-out column to include in your filter. Grayed-out columns have either variables or they are a custom column.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose **Active Channels**.
- 2 In the Active Channels resource tree, select a channel you want to add an inline filter.
- 3 In the Viewer panel, go to **Inline Filter** and click **No Filter**. This opens the inline filter pane.
- 4 Select the parameters for your inline filter: Manager Receipt, Name, Attacker, Target Address, Target Port, Priority, Device Vendor, and Device Product. Click **Apply**.
- 5 To highlight all matching events for your filter, select the **Highlight** check box. Highlighting allows you to preview the events that match your filter prior to saving the filter. Click **Apply** to activate the inline filter.

You can specify the highlight color by clicking the drop-down picker and select your color.

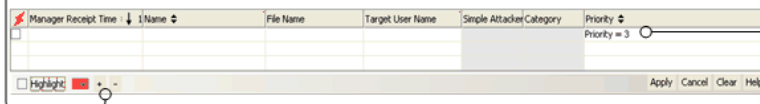
- 6 To add or delete rows to the inline filter table, click + (plus) or click - (minus).  
  
To create and manage multiple inline filters, click the + button next to the Highlight options under the inline filters to add filter definition rows. (Click the - button to remove filter rows.) The potential uses of multiple inline filters are extensive, but essentially this provides a means of creating a filter with complex conditions, inline in an active channel. For example, in the Name column for an event, you could specify that the event name contains “ActiveList” on the first filter row and that the name does not contain “Successful”. You could extend this filter by specifying what you are

looking for in some of the other fields or even add more qualifiers on the Name field. All fields can be narrowed down in this way, using multiple filter definition rows.



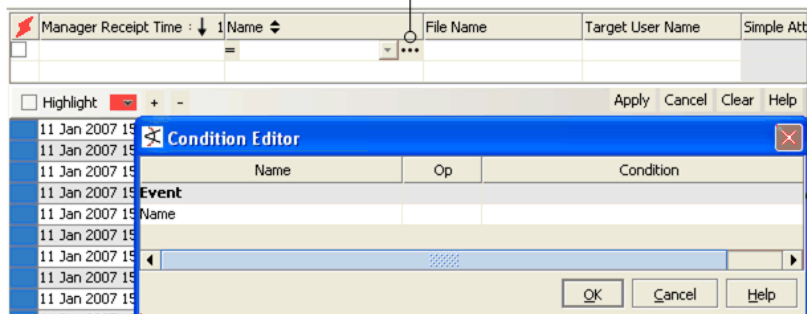
Clicking the **Edit Inline Filter** button opens an inline filtering window. Type a value in one or more fields to further filter the event stream. In this example, we add an inline filter on the Priority field to specify showing only events of Priority 3. Click **Apply** to apply the inline filter.

Also, you can click the + button to add filter definition rows and create multiple inline filters. Click the - button to remove rows.



When you click into a field, you get an equals operator, a drop-down list of available values for that field based on the events currently displayed, and an ellipsis (...) indicating another dialog is available.

If these inline options are not enough to create the filter, click the ellipses (...) to bring up a Conditions Editor dialog in which to create the filter for the selected field.



## Moving or Copying Filters

- 1 In the Filters resource tree, navigate to a filter and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the filter, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the filter, or **Link** to create a copy of the filter that is linked to the original filter.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the filter that will not be affected when the original filter is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the filter that is linked to the original filter. Therefore, if you edit a linked filter, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked filters, you can either delete the selected filter or all linked filter copies.

## Deleting Filters

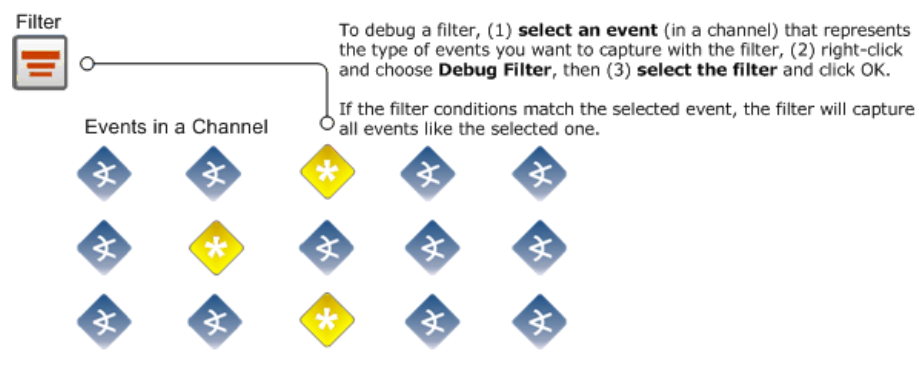
To delete a filter resource:

- 1 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a filter and choose **Delete filter**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

For information on how to delete inline filters, see [“Creating an Inline Filter” on page 177](#).

## Debugging Filters to Match Events

You can use a filter debugger to test whether a selected filter matches a certain type of event and, if there are mismatches, to determine which filter conditions are not matching the event details.



On an Active Channel, select the kind of event you want to capture and test (debug) your filter against it.

The new debug filter utility is available as a right-click option on an event in an active channel. The filter debugger compares the conditions in a selected filter with the metadata that describes the selected event to determine whether the filter would capture such events. The filter definition is displayed to show the results of this comparison.

- If the selected filter matches the event, the filter definition shows no errors or mismatches.
- If the filter does not match the event, the filter definition highlights the mismatches between the filter conditions and the selected event with red-highlighted **X**'s.

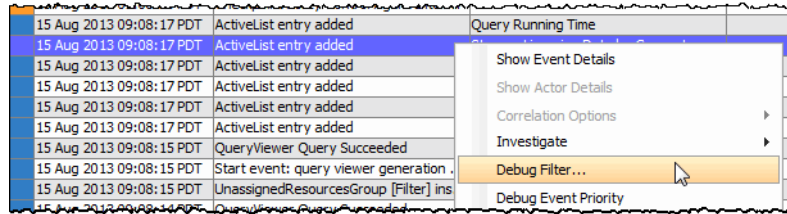


**Note**

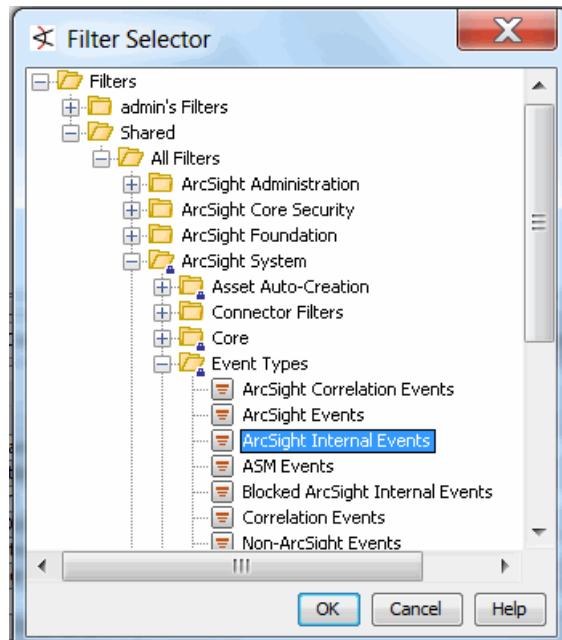
The display of red highlighted **X**'s in a filter as a result of filter debugging on an event *do not necessarily indicate* that the filter is *invalid*. Red highlights are shown here only to highlight where the selected filter does not match the selected event.

### To debug a filter against an event:

- 1 Select an event in the viewer in an active channel against which you want to test a filter.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Debug Filter** from the context menu.



- 3 In the filter selector dialog, navigate to and select the filter you want to test, as in the following example:



In a few moments, the Debug Filter dialog displays the filter's event conditions with applicable indicators, as follows:

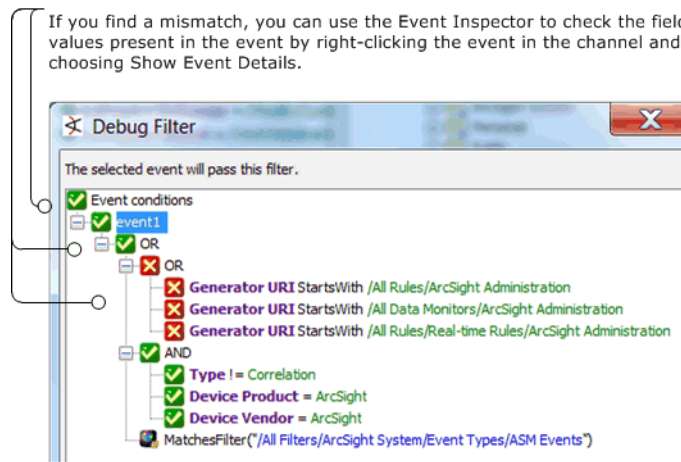
- ◆ If the selected filter matches the event, the Debug Filter dialog displays the selected event with green checkmarks.
- ◆ If the filter does not match the event, the Debug Filter dialog displays the selected event with red Xs.

The following example shows the debug filter results that found a combination of matches and mismatches:



The filter definition highlights the mismatches between the filter conditions and the selected event with red highlighted X's.

If you find a mismatch, you can use the Event Inspector to check the field values present in the event by right-clicking the event in the channel and choosing Show Event Details.



In the example, you see an OR condition comparing two events. The evaluation process found no match in the first set of conditions and found matches in the second set of conditions. The particular filter we selected, ArcSight Internal Events, happens to have a third condition to match another filter, ASM Events. However, this third condition was skipped since evaluation stopped once matches were found.



Note

The presence of red Xs in a filter as a result of filter debugging on an event *does not necessarily indicate* that the filter is *invalid*. Red Xs are shown here only to indicate where the selected filter does not match the selected event. Each event can yield different debug results.

For more information about using the Event Inspector to investigate events, see [“Inspecting and Editing” on page 50](#) and [“Event Inspector” on page 913](#).

See also [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#) and [“Applying Filters” on page 181](#).

## Applying Filters

This topic discusses how to apply the filtering resources in the Navigator panel to other filterable analysis resources: active channels, SmartConnectors, filters, reports, and rules.

### Adding Filters to Resources

You apply existing filters to other resources by referencing them in those resource editors.

- 1 Right-click a resource in the Navigator panel such as a filter or rule and choose **Edit <resource>**.
- 2 Click the editor's **Conditions** tab if it isn't already at the front.
- 3 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the **Filters** button and select a filter in the Filter Selector dialog box. The selected filter becomes a new condition line in this resource's filter.

- 4 Click **OK** or **Apply** to save the resource's definition including its new filter reference.



Note

You can use hierarchies of filter references (including filters within filters) to better manage them, similar to style sheets.

## Applying Resources as Filters to Active Channels

You can quickly apply or test the effects of using particular SmartConnectors, assets, categories, zones, vulnerabilities, customers, stages, or filter resources as conditions to filter active channels. These filters make the referenced resource a condition for the channel in use. You can choose to make the condition exclusive or additive.

- 1 Open the channel to filter in the Viewer panel or select it to bring it forward.
- 2 In an applicable resource tree in the Navigator panel, right-click an item and choose **Set as current filter** or **Add to current filter**. The filter change takes effect automatically and the channel's header immediately shows the new filter condition exclusively (set as) or as an addition (add to).
- 3 You can click the filter description in the channel's header to open the filter in the Active Channel Editor.

## Removing a Filter Condition or Resource

You use the Filters tab of a resource's editor to change or remove any filters that affect it.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click the filtered resource and choose **Edit <resource>**.
- 2 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the **Filter** tab of the resource's editor.
- 3 In the Conditions editor, right-click the statement that imposes the condition you want to remove and choose **Delete**.
- 4 Confirm the deletion and click **Apply** to restart the channel.

## Importing and Exporting filters

To import and export filters, use the packages feature. Packages supersedes the import/export facility provided in previous releases and offers enhanced functionality, including version support, dependency management, and import/export capabilities. Portable ArcSight packages can automatically manage dependencies across resources and other packages. For more information on packages, see [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#).

For information on how to import and export filters on SmartConnectors, see [“Importing and Exporting SmartConnector Configurations” on page 687](#) (especially the topics on [“Creating SmartConnector Filters” on page 675](#) and [“Adding SmartConnector Filter Conditions” on page 676](#)).

## Using Filter Groups

Filter groups are created to store similar groups or filters in a single location. Groups can be created within groups to meet enterprise needs. When a group is created within a group, the new group inherits the existing group's access control list (ACL).

Groups and filters can be managed with drag and drop functionality. You can move or copy groups and filters into other groups. If a group is deleted, the filters within that group are also deleted.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

## Creating Filter Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose **Filters**.
- 2 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.
- 3 In the Name text field, type in a name.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming Filter Groups

- 1 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Name text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter** and click **OK**.

## Editing Filter Groups

- 1 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields, and press **Enter** after each.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying Filter Groups

- 1 In the Filters resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Select **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that will not be affected when the original group is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting Filter Groups

- 1 In the Filters resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

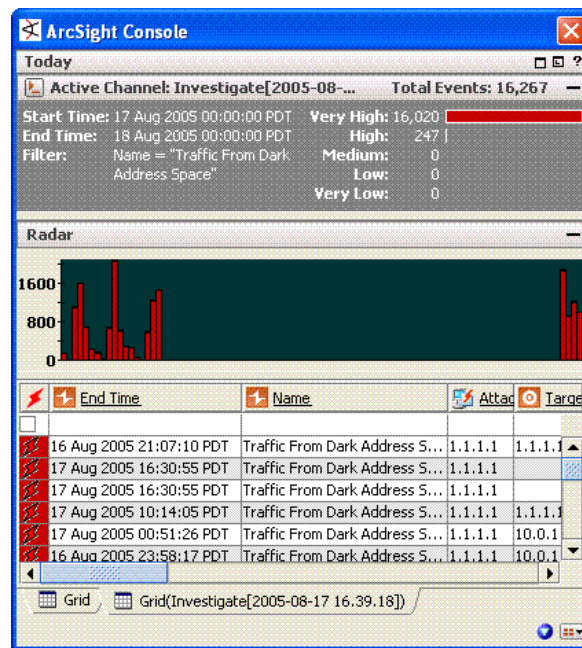
## Investigating Views

This topic explains how to use the Console's Investigate command to refine and explore channels contextually, using attributes of the events already being displayed in grid views.

The Investigate command uses these attributes, and the values found in their events, to automatically formulate simple filters or conditions.

When you create or refine a filter through Investigate, the Viewer panel automatically opens a new view of the channel with the filter applied. You explore the filter's effect in this view. You can keep the view by saving the channel under a new name, or discarding it by right-clicking in the grid and choosing **Close**.

Following is a temporary view created with the Investigate command:



When you use Investigate to add a condition to a resource editor such as Rules or Filters, the condition appears in the editor panel where you can modify it or click **Apply** to put it into effect.

The new or modified views you generate with the Investigate command can be grids, or you can choose to display them in applicable chart formats using the **Viewer Selector** icon in the lower-right corner of the Viewer panel.

To learn more about the event attributes these options use, please see ["Data Fields" on page 837](#).

## Using an Event Attribute to Show a New Filtered View

These options completely control the new view created, ignoring the filter in the original view. You most often use them to test and explore.

In a grid view, right-click an attribute (column) in an event listing and choose **Investigate**, followed by one of these options:

Option	Use
Create Filter [Attribute=Value]	Show only those events in which the selected attribute matches the value in the selected event.

Option	Use
Create Filter [Attribute!=Value]	Show only those events in which the selected attribute does not match the value in the selected event.
Create Filter [List of Related Attributes=Value, !=Value]	When the selected attribute is of a type that has related attributes, choose to show only those events that do (or do not) match one of the related attributes on the additional menu. Generally, attributes are considered related if they share a common focus such as IP addresses.

## Refining a Filter with an Event Attribute

These options open a new view that uses a version of the prior filter modified to include the new filter component just selected. You usually apply these as part of a filter-refinement process.

In a grid view, right-click an attribute (column) in an event listing and choose **Investigate**, followed by one of these options:

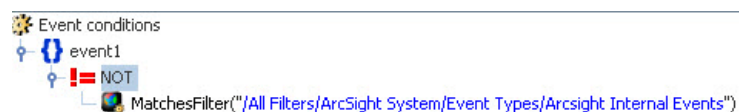
Option	Use
Add [Attribute=Value] to Filter	Show only those events that match both the prior and new filter elements.
Add [Attribute!=Value] to Filter	Show only those events that do not match both the prior and new filter elements.
Add to Filter [List of Related Attributes=Value, !=Value]	When the selected attribute is of a type that has related attributes, choose to show only those events that do (or do not) match one of the related attributes on the additional menu. This filtering element is applied in addition to any other already present. Generally, attributes are considered related if they share a common focus such as IP addresses.

## Filtering Out ArcSight Events or Other Customizations

You can modify existing filters to refine your view to show only the events you want to see. Suppose you have an active channel that includes both system events and non-system events, but you want to see only the non-system events. You can modify the filter on the channel (or copy it and modify the copy) as follows:

- 1 Double-click the filter in the channel header to get the channel editor.
- 2 Click the **Filter** tab in the channel editor.
- 3 Add this condition to the filter (with an AND):

```
!=NOT MatchesFilter("/All Filters/ArcSight System/Event Types/ArcSight Internal Events")
```



To create or customize active channels in other ways, follow this same approach. Find a filter that does what you want and add condition statements to filters for a channel. Or, as in the example above, find a filter that does the opposite of what you want, add it to a channel, and negate the condition statement as shown above. Since we wanted to limit the channel to show only non-ArcSight events, we found the ArcSight Events filter, added the ArcSight Events condition to a channel, and negated it to get the effect of filtering out all ArcSight events

## Adding an Event Attribute to a Filtering Condition

The **Add condition to editor** options apply to the editor in the Inspect/Edit panel that currently has focus. If no editor is open, the default target is the Filters Editor.

In a grid view, right-click an attribute (column) in an event listing and choose **Investigate**, followed by one of these options:

Option	Use
Add Condition [Attribute=Value] to Editor	In the current editor, insert a new condition in which the selected attribute matches the value in the selected event.
Add Condition [Attribute!=Value] to Editor	In the current editor, insert a new condition in which the selected attribute does not match the value in the selected event.
Add Condition to Editor [List of Related Attributes=Value, !=Value]	When the selected attribute is of a type that has related attributes, add a condition to the current editor using the available list of attribute-value pairs that do (or do not) equate. Generally, attributes are considered related if they share a common focus such as IP addresses.

To remove a condition from the editor, right-click it and choose **Delete**.

When you are using these options to affect a view that is subject to the editor in use, click **Apply** or **OK** in the editor to put the condition into effect.

Contextual filters (in contrast to conditions) are temporary unless you save the modified view as a named active channel. Condition statements are saved with their relevant editors.

## Permanently Modifying an Active Channel

- 1 Use the Navigator panel's Active Channel resource tree to open the view's channel in the Active Channel Editor.
- 2 Modify a view as described above.
- 3 In the editor, give the channel a new name and click **OK**.

## Showing an Exploited Vulnerability

The Investigate options include the ability to look for potentially exploitable vulnerabilities associated with an event.

- 1 Select an event in a grid view.

- 2 Right-click the event and choose **Investigate>Show Exploited Vulnerabilities**. Available information appears in the Vulnerabilities tab of the relevant Asset Editor.

## Showing a Targeted Asset

You can also find out more about an asset targeted by an event.

- 1 Select an event in a grid view.
- 2 Right-click the event and choose **Investigate>Show Targeted Asset**. Available information appears in the Asset Editor.

## Modifying Views

This topic covers the use of “inline” (in the grid itself) grid view filtering options. The inline filter is the row of blank event values you see at the top of any grid in the Viewer panel.

Inline filtering directly affects the current view. Changes you make to a grid view by inline filtering also apply to any other versions of the view you open such as its applicable chart types.

### Modifying a View Inline

Use inline filters by clicking the inline fields at the top of view columns and choosing an event-attribute value to use as a constraint. When you choose multiple fields they automatically form AND conditions. Click the **Checkmark** icon to apply your filter selections.

Inline filters are temporary unless you save the modified view as part of a named active channel.

### Undoing an Inline Filter

- 1 Click any of the filter fields in the top line of the grid view to show the inline filter control buttons.
- 2 Click the **X** (clear) button to remove the current filter elements and restart the view.

For details on working with filters and inline filters, see [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#) and [“Filtering Active Channels with Inline Filters” on page 98](#).

### Permanently Modifying a View

- 1 Use the Navigator panel's Active Channel resource tree to open the view's channel in the Active Channel Editor.
- 2 Modify a view as described above.
- 3 In the editor, give the channel a new name and click **OK**.





The actors feature creates a real-time user model that maps humans or agents to activity in applications and on the network, making it possible to identify the actors behind events.

Once the actor model is in place, you can construct category models to visualize relationships among actors and use those relationships for correlation. Actors is a separately licensed feature that is available with an ArcSight IdentityView license. Refer to the Solution Guide for ArcSight IdentityView.

Information on configuring actors is in the “Configuration” chapter of the Administrator’s Guide.

This topic describes how to use the *actors* resources to model users and associate them with events. It also describes how to construct *category models* to depict relationships among actors.

[“About Actors” on page 189](#)

[“Navigating to Actors” on page 195](#)

[“Viewing Actors on the ArcSight Console” on page 195](#)

[“Investigating Actors” on page 205](#)

[“Creating and Editing Actors for Testing Purposes” on page 209](#)

[“Creating and Using Category Models” on page 214](#)

## About Actors

A critical factor in having situational awareness is knowing who is doing what with resources on your network, when they’re doing it, and how. This awareness is critical for maintaining network security and demonstrating compliance with the increasing requirements of regulatory standards.

Identity management systems (IDMs) enable IT security professionals to protect their assets while granting different levels of access to a range of users, such as full-time employees, part-time employees, employees with certain security clearances, partners, contractors and customers.

However, following exactly what a specific person is doing across all the resources on your network can be difficult, because each user will have different account IDs and roles on different systems and applications. Examples of different information used to identify a given user include badge IDs (physical access devices), MAC addresses (for devices

assigned to a specific person), email addresses, user names, Distinguished Names (particularly for Active Directory-related events), and so on.

The Actors feature maps humans and their activity to events from applications and network assets by leveraging user attributes defined within identity management systems and correlating them with user account information from the user authentication systems on your network. Correlating user identifiers from the event traffic that reflects their activity throughout the day makes it possible to ensure that users are doing role-appropriate activity across the assets in your organization, and to detect and track inappropriate access and suspicious activity.

The actors feature works in conjunction with ArcSight's Actor Model Import connectors, which regularly poll your Identity Management System (such as the SmartConnector for Active Directory Actor Model Import). This system automatically maintains an up-to-date actor model you can use to correlate users and their roles with their activity on the network.



#### **ArcSight supports actor models with up to 500,000 actors**

ArcSight supports actor models with up to 500,000 members. Supporting a large actor model can require special configuration. For details, see "Tuning Guide for Supporting Large Actor Models" in the "Configuration" chapter of the Administrator's Guide.

---

Also, see the `searchindex` command in the "ArcSight Commands" chapter of the Administrator's Guide. The `searchindex` command is a utility that creates or updates the search index for resources in the database.

Once the actor model is in place, use the modeling and visualization tools (*category models*) to show direct and indirect relationships among actors in the Actor model. You can use this model to group and visualize users in your organization in numerous ways, such as reporting structures, organizational units, or role-based functions, then use these relationships as parameters in user-defined monitoring, analysis, and correlation.

For testing purposes, you can also manually add actors. You can also import or redefine views of user groups and relationships with category models.

#### **Actor channels and navigating thousands of actors**

Actor channels present all the actors in your actor model in a single, scrollable view. Like active channels, apply local filters to actor channels to find actors with certain attributes.

Actor channels are the only way to see actor models that contain 1,000 or more members because display space in the Navigator panel is limited. You can also use actor channels for viewing actor models with fewer than 1,000 members.

For more about viewing actors in channels, see ["Viewing Actors in an Actor Channel" on page 199](#).

#### **Viewing relationships among actors using category models**

Once you have actor information created, you can make logical groupings to represent relationships among actors and actor attributes using category models.

Category models can reflect direct actor relationships, such as reporting hierarchies, or relationships between actors who share common attributes, such as actors in a particular location. Category models can also reflect relationships between actors using custom attributes defined by the user.

You can use category models to visualize these relationships, then leverage the data gathered in them using the `HasRelationship` function in local and global variables.

For more about category models, see [“Creating and Using Category Models” on page 214](#).

For more about how to view actors using resource graphs, see [“Viewing Category Models in Graphs” on page 222](#).

For more about using category model relationship data in monitoring, investigation, and correlation, see [“Leveraging Category Model Data Using Variables” on page 225](#).

### **Using actor global variables to identify actors from events**

The actor data stored in the Actor Resource Framework coupled with actor global variables make it possible to identify an actor from any given event, then correlate that activity with other activity or attributes of that actor. The ability to identify an actor from a given event and correlate that activity with other events involving that actor and attributes of that actor, such as location and role, make it possible to verify that an actor's activity across the network is appropriate.

Standard content provides a series of actor global variables that are part of the Actor Resource Framework, which identifies and stores actor-related data from events in the look-up tables of the Actor Resource Framework. You can also use these global variables in your own correlation content. For more about using the Actor Resource Framework global variables, see the ArcSight Standard Content Guide that comes with this ESM release.

You can construct your own actor global variables. For an outline of this process, see [“Leveraging Actor Data Using Variables” on page 212](#).

### **Using Standard Content to Track Actor Configuration Changes**

Standard content also provides a set of coordinated resources that track actor configuration changes, such as when actors are created, updated, and deleted.

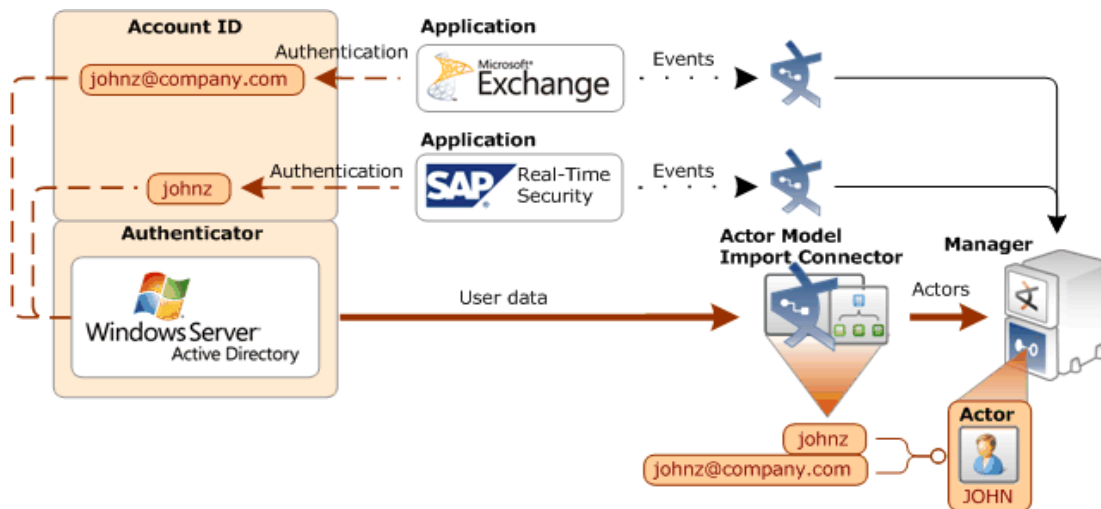
For more about this standard content, see the ArcSight Standard Content Guide that comes with this ESM release.

## **How the Actors Feature Works**

ArcSight SmartConnectors normalize event data from hundreds of different devices on a network into a common data schema. The Actors feature normalizes user identity information stored in different formats in different authentication data stores to create a complete profile of data used to identify each user on your network in various contexts.

As shown in the following example, a model import connector imports data from an identity management system, such as Microsoft Active Directory. For a complete list of supported identity management systems, contact Customer Support.

In the following example, the actor data comes in from the Microsoft Active Directory system using a model import connector. Events arrive from applications that all use different data stores to authenticate user activity, which all use different account IDs to identify the user John Zed. The activity is identified as belonging to the same actor. That actor is represented as JOHN.



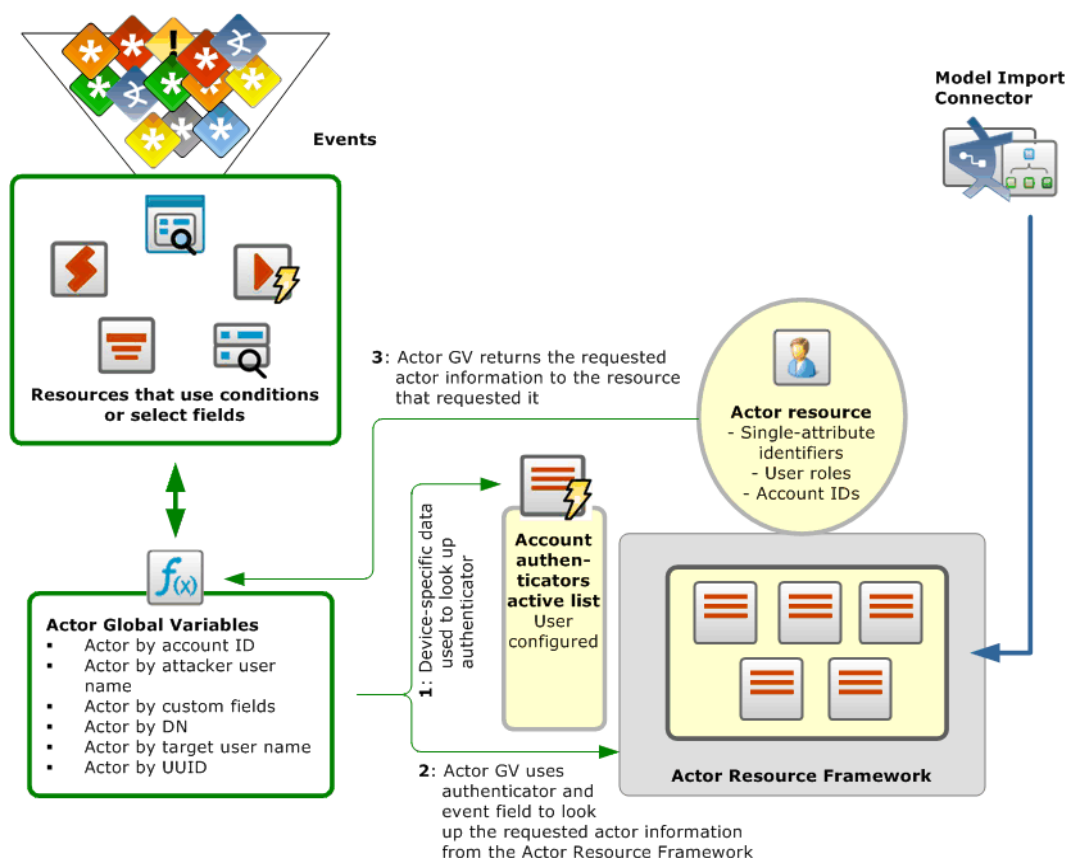
The actors feature works in conjunction with an Actor Model Import connector to import user data from an identity management system and to normalize user data in event traffic.

The actors feature is supported internally using the Actor Resource Framework, a series of internal look-up tables maintained by regular updates from the Actor Model Import connector.

As part of setting up the actors feature, you also configure an applications and *authenticators active list* to identify the mapping between the applications in your network environment and the data stores they use to authenticate users. In the example shown above, Windows Server Active Directory is the authentication data source for Microsoft Exchange and SAP Real-Time Security.

The following diagram shows a detailed look at how the Actors feature works. When events arrive at the Manager, resources that use conditions or select fields invoke one or more of the actor global variables provided in standard content. These global variables and the actor data maintained in the Actor Resource Framework provide several ways to identify actors using whatever user identity attributes are available in events arriving from different applications from across the network.

The global variables first look up the authenticator using the device-specific data, such as vendor and product information in the event, then look up the relevant user information from the Actor Resource Framework tables to positively identify the actor. For details about the Actor Global Variables in standard content, see the ArcSight Standard Content Guide that comes with this ESM release.



Resources leverage system-provided actor global variables to look up actor identity attributes maintained in the Account Authenticators table and the Actor Resource Framework.

## About the Actor Model Import Connectors

The ArcSight Actor Model Import connectors support bulk import of user accounts from multiple identity management systems, such as Microsoft Active Directory. (For a complete list of supported identity management systems, see the ArcSight connector documentation.)

The Actor Model Import connector supports the Identity View solution. The Actor Model Import connector imports the user data into the actors resource, where it is leveraged by the infrastructure that identifies and tracks user activity. Correlated and normalized data about user activity is then available for monitoring and investigation, further correlation, and reporting.

The actor model used to describe users is automatically populated with the attributes configured for it by the Actor Model Import connector when connecting to the connector.


**Caution**

**Actor Model Import connector should be configured with all attributes you are interested in tracking before initial connection.**

During Actor Model Import connector configuration, make sure that all the attributes you are interested in tracking are configured. Once actor information is imported, the list of attributes the Actor Model Import connector sends for existing actors is not updated.

If you add or remove attributes to be sent from the Actor Model Import connector after an actor model has already been imported, you must first delete the actor group, then re-import the actor data.

For details about how to delete an existing actor group, see [“Deleting Actors” on page 212](#).

The following table lists the attributes that the actor model supports. The Actor Model Import connector administrator configures the Actor Model Import connector with the attributes from this list that it will send to populate the actor model. Not all IDM systems support all these attributes. An actor resource is only populated with the attributes configured by the Actor Model Import connector administrator.

Single-value attributes		Multi-value attributes
UUID	Business Phone	Account
First Name	Mobile Phone	• Account ID
Middle Initial	Fax	• Authenticator
Last Name	Pager	Role
Full Name	Address	• Role Name
IDM Identifier	City	• Resource Name
DN	State	• Role Type
Employee Type	Zip Code	
Status	Country Or Region	
Title		
Company		
Organization		
Department		
Manager		
Assistant		
Email Address		
Location		
Office		

In addition to the basic single-value attributes, each actor will likely have multi-value attributes, specifically multiple account IDs, and multiple roles, which are tracked using your IDM system. These multi-value attributes can appear differently in events coming from different devices. In some cases, such as a non-IT-related role, the information is not included in event data at all, but is still valuable information to help identify users and correlate their activity to help ensure appropriate behavior and access to resources hosted on the network.

## Troubleshooting Errors with Actor Model Imports

It is possible that during the actor import process from the Actor Model Import connector, one or more actor import files containing data for multiple actors may not have imported successfully into the Manager. This might happen because of network connection

problems, an out-of-memory error, or some other problem that caused the import of that file to fail.

In such cases, there is an archive file in `$ARCSIGHT_HOME/archive/webservices` for each actor import file that failed to import successfully. Each such archive file is created with the file extension `.bad`.

If an actor file did not import as expected, or during routine maintenance, check the `$ARCSIGHT_HOME/archive/webservices` directory for actor files that failed to import.

The `.bad` archive file contains all the missing actor information, and you can use the ArcSight Archive utility to import that file individually from a command line on the Manager system. For instructions about how to run the Archive utility to import an archive file, see the topic “The Archive Command Tool” in the Administrator’s Guide.



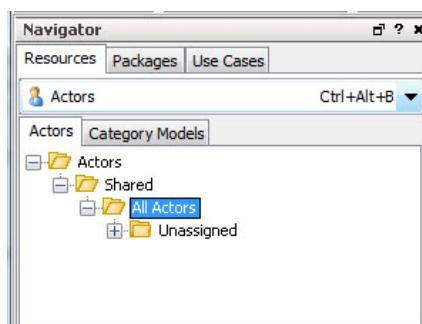
#### Tips for using the Archive utility:

- To see a list of commands available with the Archive utility, include `-h` (for “help”) in the archive utility command script.
- If the archive file name starts with a dash (`-`), rename the file before running the Archive utility to ensure that the command works.

For details about the Actor Model Import connector and how to configure it, see the Actor Model Import connector documentation for your IDM system, for example, the SmartConnector Configuration Guide for Microsoft Active Directory Actor Model.

## Navigating to Actors

In the Navigator panel, select **Actors**. Here you will find the actors resource and the category models you can use to organize and visualize them.



## Viewing Actors on the ArcSight Console

In a typical workflow, actors are created automatically by installing the ArcSight Actor Model Import connector and configuring it to your IDM system. New actors added to the IDM are automatically created and existing ones updated with changes made on the IDM with every connection made between the Manager and the Actor Model Import connector as described in [“About the Actor Model Import Connectors” on page 193](#).

For testing purposes, you can also create an actor individually using ArcSight Console resources, or edit an existing one. For more about creating actors individually for testing purposes, see [“Creating and Editing Actors for Testing Purposes” on page 209](#).

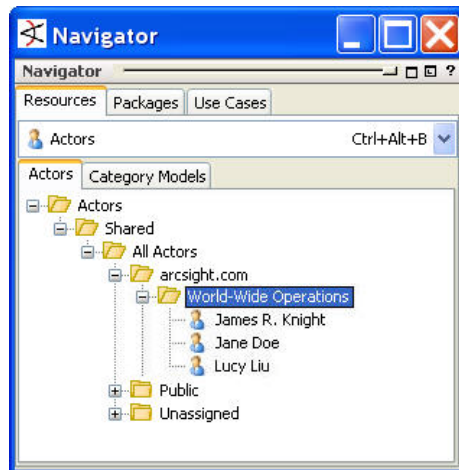


**Console-created actors or those edited individually using Console resources do not update the user information stored in the IDM.**

Communication from your IDM to the Manager is one way. Any actors that you add from scratch or existing ones that you update using ArcSight Console tools are not added to the IDM system. Any changes you want to persist to the IDM should be made at the IDM, and the new actor information will be automatically imported into the actor model at the next Actor Model Import connector connection.

## Viewing Actors in the Navigator Panel

Actor models with fewer than 1,000 members can be viewed from the Navigator panel. Upon connection, the Actor Model Import connector creates the destination group in which the actors are placed based on the value set at the Actor Model Import connector. The example below shows three actors in a group called World-Wide Operations.



## Viewing Actors in the Actor Editor

To view the details of a particular actor in the Actor editor, double-click the actor, or right-click the actor and select **Edit**. Use the scroll bar to see all the actor attributes.



**Inspect/Edit**

Actor: 00082A1B-ABCD-8BD6-F1886...

Attributes Notes

**Actor**

* UUID	00082A1B-ABCD-8BD6-F18864D6B703
* Full Name	John Doe
First Name	John
Last Name	Doe
Middle Initial	
IDM Identifier	Active Directory
D N	CN=John Doe, OU=Sales, DC=companyname...
Employee Type	full time exempt
Status	active
Title	Manager
Company	My Company
Org	SSD
Department	Sales
Manager	Jane Lane
Assistant	
Email Address	jdoe@companyname.com
Location	Dallas Fort Worth
Office	US/CA/Bldg 5
Business Phone	888-555-1212
Mobile Phone	888-555-1234

**(Name)**  
(Description)

**Account\_Attributes** + x

Authenticator	Account ID
Active Directory: companyname.com	CN=John Doe, OU=Sales, DC=companyname...
Active Directory: companyname.com	john_doe
Active Directory: companyname.com	jdoe@companyname.com

**Role\_Attributes** + x

Role Name	Resource Name	Role Type
Manager	companyname.com	Business
Administrator	Security Software	

OK Cancel Apply Help

## Viewing Actor Base Attributes

The attributes in the Actor section of the Actor editor is also referred to as the Actor Base attributes. These are the basic standard attributes that describe an actor. These base attributes are part of the Actor Base field set. (For more about actor field sets and usage, see [“Creating and Using Field Sets”](#) on page 155.)

**Table 8-1 Actor Base Attributes**

Attribute	Description
UUID	The Universally Unique Identifier for the actor
Full Name	The actor's full name
First Name	The actor's first name
Last Name	The actor's last name
Middle Initial	The actor's middle initial
IDM Identifier	The friendly name for the IDM. The IDM is selected by the Actor Model Import connector administrator during Actor Model Import connector setup.

**Table 8-1 Actor Base Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute	Description
DN	The distinguished name for the actor, for example, CN=JohnDoe, OU=Sales, DC=companyname, DC=com
Employee Type	The type of employee this actor is in your company, for example, full-time, exempt, or contractor.
Status	<p>The employment status of the actor's account, for example, Active, Deleted in IDM, or Disabled.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When an actor is deleted from the IDM, the actor will remain in the actor model with the status Deleted in IDM.</li> <li>The actor license tracking feature includes actors that are still in the actor model with the status Disabled or Deleted in IDM. The identity management feature preserves disabled and deleted actors in the actor model to track any unauthorized activity related to disabled or deleted actors. If you do not want the license tracking feature to evaluate actors with the status Disabled or Deleted in IDM, you can manually remove them from the ESM actor model. Manually removing disabled or deleted actors also removes the ability to track unauthorized activity related to these accounts.</li> </ul> <p>For more about the license tracking feature, see <a href="#">"License Tracking" on page 59</a>.</p>
Title	The actor's job title
Company	The company by whom the actor is employed.
Org	The organization within your company of which the actor is a member
Department	The department within your company of which the actor is a member
Manager	The distinguished name of the actor's manager
Assistant	The name of the actor's assistant as it appears in the IDM
Email Address	The actor's company email address
Location	The actor's location name
Office	The actor's office name
Business Phone	The actor's business phone
Mobile Phone	The actor's mobile phone
Fax	The actor's fax number
Pager	The actor's pager number
Address	The actor's business address
City	The city of the actor's business address
State	The state of the actor's business address
Zip Code	The zip code of the actor's business address
Country Or Region	The country of the actor's business address

## Viewing Actor Account Attributes

The Account\_Attributes table displays the unique account IDs attributed to this user by the various user authentication data stores relevant to this user. Like the base actor attributes, the values in this table are populated by values from the Actor Model Import connector for your IDM system.

Field	Description
Authenticator	The friendly name for the user authentication data store containing the actor's account ID
Account ID	The account ID for the actor

## Viewing Actor Role Attributes

The Role\_Attributes table displays role name, resource type, and role type for each role represented by the actor. The values in this table are also populated by values from the Actor Model Import connector for your IDM system.

Field	Description
Role Name	The name of the role or group, such as Administrators or Software Developer
Resource Name	The name of the resource in which the role is assigned, such as the active directory domain, identity management system, or application
Role Type	The role's category, such as Global Security Group, Business Role, or IT Role



Because an actor can have multiple roles, a query viewer will display each role in separate entries. For example, if an actor has 4 accounts and 10 roles, running a query on this actor's accounts and roles will result in the Cartesian product of the accounts and roles: a total of 40 entries.

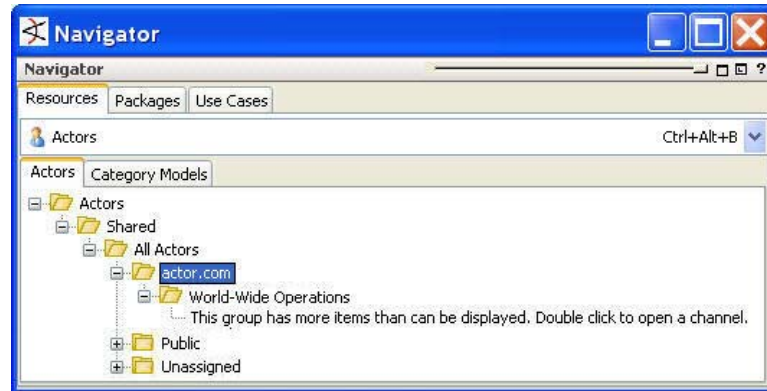
For information about queries, see ["Building Queries" on page 299](#). For information about query viewers, see ["Query Viewers" on page 227](#).

## Viewing Actors in an Actor Channel

For actor models that contain thousands of members, actor channels present all the actors in your actor model in a single, scrollable view. You can apply local filters to actor channels to find actors with certain attributes.

If a group in your actor model contains more than 1,000 members, the actor tree in Navigator panel displays the message:

**"This group has more items than can be displayed. Double click to open a channel."**



You can also view actor models with fewer than 1,000 members in an actors channel.

#### To view an actor model in an actors channel:

- 1 In the Actors navigation panel, right-click an actors group and select **Show Actors**. If your actor model contains more than 1,000 members, you can also double-click the message “**This group has more items than can be displayed. Double click to open a channel.**”



When you select **Show Actors** on a group, the actor channel will only display the members of that immediate group. If the group has a sub-group, the actors in that sub-group will not be displayed in the actor channel.

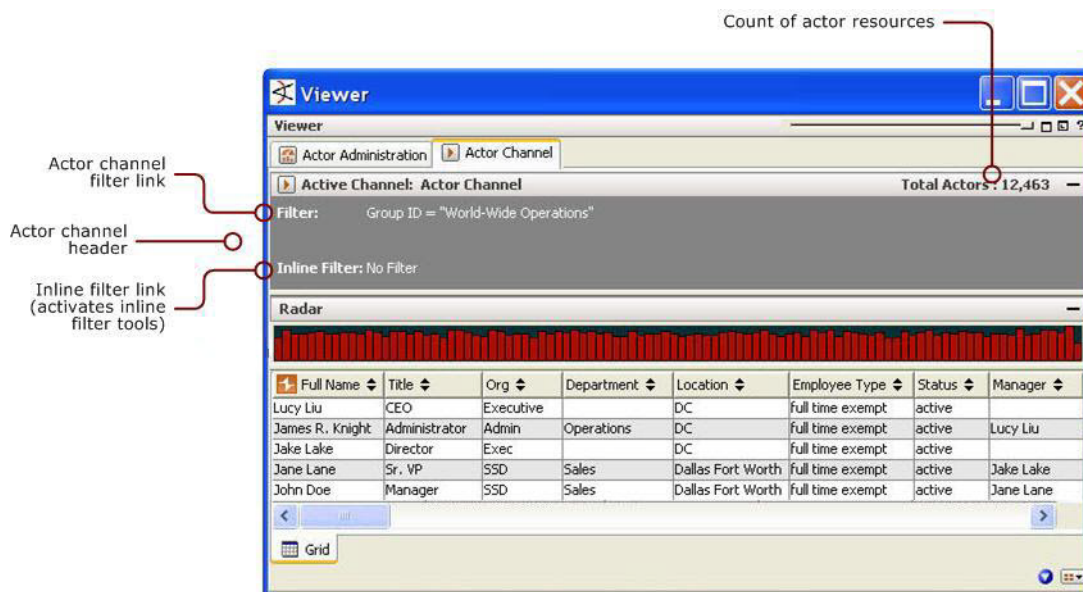
To view the actors in a sub-group, right-click that group and select **Show Actors**.

- 2 In the Viewer panel, navigate to the actor channel.

The following sections describe the attributes of an actor channel, and how to interact with them.

## About the Actor Channel UI

The actor channel is an active channel with a simplified header that displays the actor resources in your actor model.



The radar on an actor channel has no relevance, unlike on an event channel.

## Sorting Fields in Actor Channels



The fields shown are from the Actor Information Field Set (/All Field Sets/ArcSight System/Actor Field Sets/Actor Information).

Sort fields in actor channels the same way you sort fields for event-based channels.



You cannot sort multi-value columns, such as Account ID, cannot be sorted.

The names of sortable fields in column headers are indicated with a double-arrow icon .

If a field is already sorted, an up  or down  arrow indicates the direction of the sort.

- To sort the list by a column, right-click over the column and select **Sort Column**.
- To reverse the sort order, select **Sort Column** again on an already-sorted column.
- To remove a sort, right-click over a sorted column and select **Remove Sort**.

For more about sorting columns in channels, see [“Sorting Events in an Active Channel” on page 79](#).

## Actor Channel Options

There are several options available to take on actors from the tree view in the Navigator panel and from the grid view in the Viewer panel.

### Right-Click Options from the Grid View

Option	Description
Export	Save the actor data in this actor channel as a CSV list.
Edit Actor	Open the selected actor to view its details in the event inspector.
Delete Actor	Delete the selected actor from the actor model. <b>Caution:</b> Make sure the actor is also deleted from the source IDM. Subsequent updates from the IDM that still contains this actor data can result in an unstable actor data set for this actor.
Add Actors to Category Model	Add the selected actors to an existing category model.
Add to Package	Add the selected actors to a new or existing package.
Report	Run a custom actor context report, or one using default values. For more information about actor context reports, see <a href="#">"Running Context Reports from an Actor Channel" on page 205</a> .
Find Actor in Navigator	Expand the containing group and highlights the selected actor in the Navigator panel.
Graph View	Display the actor in a resource graph in the Viewer panel.
Lock Actor	Locking is a common feature for all resources.

## Filtering Actor Channels

There are two ways to filter the contents of an actor channel: adding a local filter to the resource itself, or applying an inline filter to one or more columns.

### Adding a Local Filter to the Actor Channel Resource

You can add a local filter to the actor channel using the Active Channel: Actor Channel editor. This enables you to use the CCE to apply a filter locally to the selected actor channel. You cannot save a local filter added to an actor channel.



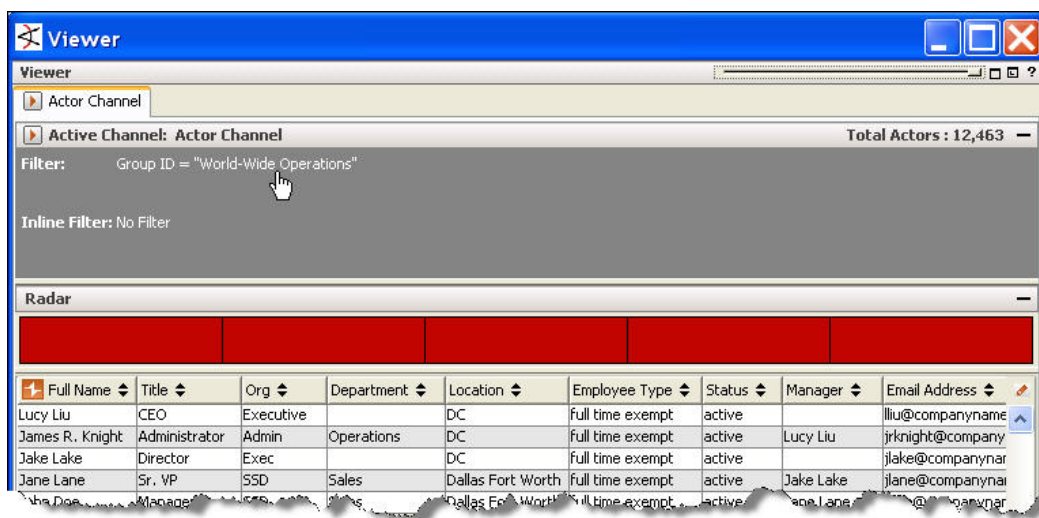
Note

If your filter uses a conditional variable function to display an actor list on a channel, the channel does not display any actor values. This is because conditional variable functions work for in-memory resources only. You can therefore use conditional variables for rules and data monitors, but not for queries and active channels.

For information about conditional variable functions, see ["Condition Functions" on page 988](#).

### To add a local filter to the resource:

- 1 Click the **Filter** link in the channel header:



This opens the Active Channel: Actor Channel editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.

- 2 In the **Attributes** tab, set the name and select the Actor field set you want to use.
  - Name.** Replace the default name Actor Channel with a name that describes the channel, and maybe the filter you want to apply to it, such as *Managers in World-Wide Operations*.
  - Default Field Set.** By default, no field set is used. You can select a field set if you want to select a specific actor field in a particular field set. If you choose to specify a field set, only the actor field sets are displayed, such as the Actor Base field set (Field Sets/Shared/All Field Sets/ArcSight System/Actor Field Sets/Actor Base). You can select this field set, or another actor field set created in your environment.
  - Common Attributes.** Set any other common attributes you want for the actor channel. For a description of the data that goes in the Common section, see ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642](#).
- 3 In the **Filter** tab, construct the filter you want to apply. You can select any existing Actor field set, or apply a global variable.
 

For instructions about constructing a condition using the Common Conditions Editor (CCE), see ["Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)" on page 818](#).
- 4 In the **Sort Fields** tab, select the columns by which you want the actor channel to sort. Fields that contain lists and multi-values cannot be sorted. For instructions about using the Sort Fields tab, see [Step 4 on page 85](#).
- 5 On the **Local Variables** tab, define any local variables you want to use to extract a particular value from a particular field. For instructions about how to use the Local Variables editor, see ["Variables" on page 982](#).

- 6 Click **Apply** to apply changes to the actor channel displayed in the Viewer panel. Click **OK** to save the filtered actor channel.



---

**Where to find saved actor channels**

Once you have modified and saved an actor channel, you can find it in the Active Channel area of the Navigator panel. Actor channels are saved with the suffix [Actor] behind the active channel name, for example, *Managers in World-Wide Operations [Actor]*.

---

## Creating an Inline Filter

Like event-based active channels, you can create an inline filter to operate on one or more columns to find actors with particular attributes in common.

For instructions about how to construct inline filters, see [“Filtering Active Channels with Inline Filters” on page 98](#).

In an actor channel, if you apply an inline filter to a specific column, the inline filter automatically becomes part of the actor channel's filter condition, as if you manually edited the actor channel and entered settings on the Filter tab. You have the option to save the actor channel with the new filter, or close the channel without saving the filter.

To save the filtered version of the channel, see [“Saving Actor Channels” on page 204](#).

## Saving Actor Channels

### To save an actor channel from the Viewer panel:

- 1 Right-click the active channel header and select **Save Active Channel As**.
- 2 In the Active Channels Selector, navigate to where in the Active Channels branch you want to save the actor channel and click **OK**.

You can also save an actor channel by opening the actor channel editor in the Inspect/Edit panel as described in [“Filtering Actor Channels” on page 202](#).

## Editing Saved Actor Channels

You can find saved actor channels in the Active Channel area of the Navigator panel. Actor channels are saved with the suffix [Actor] behind the active channel name.

### To edit a saved actor channel:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to Active Channels.
- 2 Right-click the actor channel you want to edit and select **Edit Active Channel**.
- 3 Make modifications to the actor channel in the Active Channel: Actor Channel editor in the Inspect/Edit panel and click **OK**. For details about what to enter in the active channel editor, see [“Filtering Actor Channels” on page 202](#).



## Viewing Saved Actor Channels



### Where to find saved actor channels

Once you have modified and saved an actor channel, you can find it in the Active Channel area of the Navigator panel. Actor channels are saved with the suffix [Actor] behind the active channel name, for example, *Managers in World-Wide Operations [Actor]*.

### To view a saved actor channel:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to Active Channels.
- 2 Double-click the actor channel you want to view, or right-click it and select **View Active Channel**.

For details about viewing actors and navigating actor channels, see [“Viewing Actors on the ArcSight Console” on page 195](#).

## Investigating Actors

You can investigate events to identify the actor behind the activity represented in an event by running a context report from an event or actor channel. The actor context report looks at which actor is bound to the event you are investigating, and then run a report that will show activity for that actor.

## Running Context Reports from an Actor Channel

From an actor channel, you can choose to run the report based on the following actor global variables:

- ActorByAccountID
- ActorByAttackerUsername
- ActorByCustomFields
- ActorByTargetUsername

The report will be populated if the actor global variable finds the values for the supported attributes, for example, account ID, custom field, attacker user name, and so forth. When the report is launched, it will use the actor global variable specified in the field set. If there is more than one actor global variable in the field set, the report will default to ActorByAccountID.



Actor context reports will not show data if you are looking up actors using the ActorByUUID or ActorByDN global variable. These global variables are used for internal actor lookups.

For context reports out of the actor channel, you have the following choices for running actor context reports:

- With default parameters:
  - ◆ Default time range: last hour
  - ◆ Default filter: correlation events only
- With custom parameters (you set these explicitly)
  - ◆ Start time

- ◆ End time
- ◆ Filter by

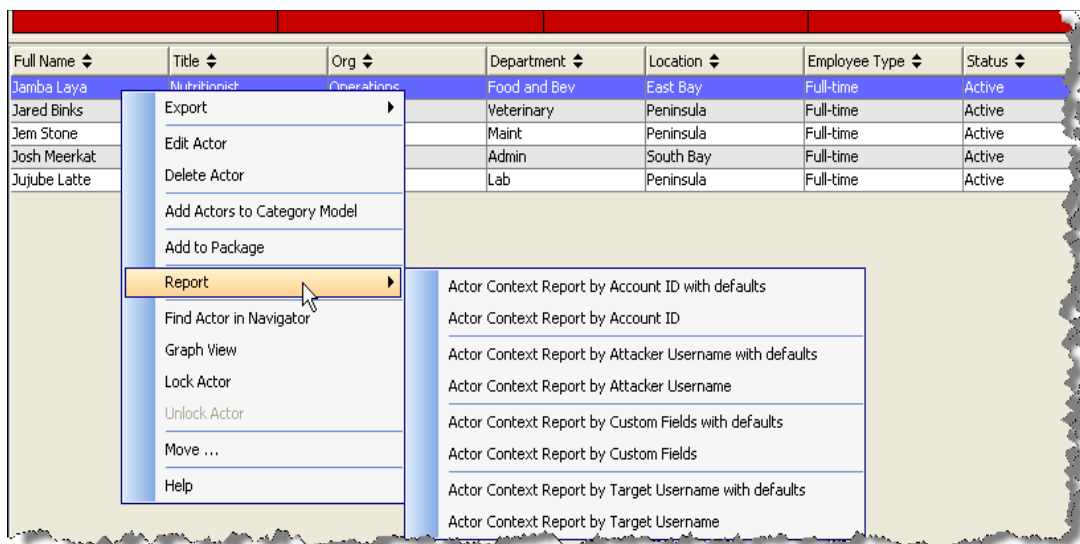
The following procedure shows the available options for running actor context reports from an actor channel.

### To run an actor context report from an actor channel:

- 1 Display an actor channel and right-click an actor.
- 2 Select **Report** and then select one of the displayed report types.



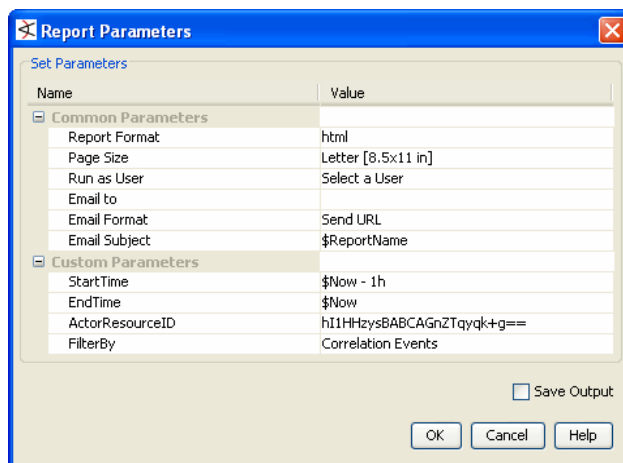
If you have the ArcSight IdentityView solution, you can also run context reports on global variables that come with the IdentityView. Refer to the IdentityView Solution Guide for a list of actor global variables provided by the solution.



If you choose a report type that ends in *with defaults*, for example, **Actor Context Report by Attacker Username with defaults**, the report is displayed with the following parameters:

- ◆ Default time range: last hour
- ◆ Default filter: correlation events only

If you choose a report type that does not end in *with defaults*, for example, **Actor Context Report by Attacker Username**, the following screen appears:



- 3 Set your custom parameters. For example, set StartTime, EndTime, and FilterBy. Keep the ActorResourceID parameter value; this is the value used to identify the actor of interest.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Investigating an Actor from an Event Channel

You can investigate an actor from an event channel in one of the following ways:

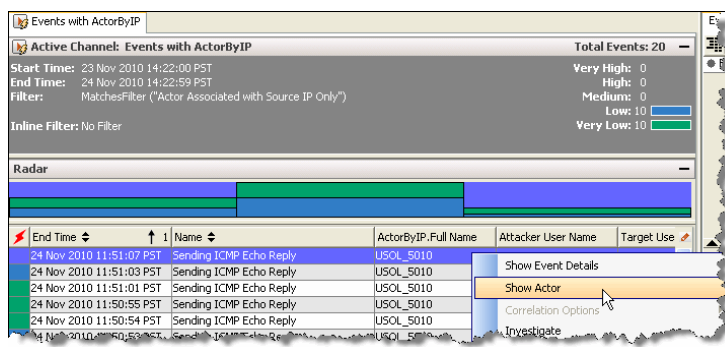
- By using the Show Actor option on an event that is related to an actor  
This option is enabled if the channel contains ActorResourceID values, for example, ActorByAccountID.ID. Actor data is displayed on the Inspect/Edit panel.
- By running an actor context report on any active channel that has ActorResourceID values, for example, ActorByAccountID.ID.

Running an actor context report provides additional options:

- ◆ Report with default parameters (see [related information on page 205](#))
- ◆ Report with custom parameters which you set explicitly (see [related information on page 205](#))

### To show an actor related to an event:

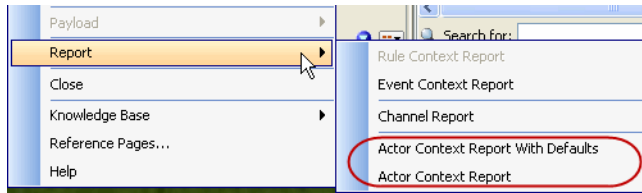
- 1 Display an event channel.
- 2 Right-click an event and select **Show Actor**. If the channel does not use a field set containing an actor global variable, then the Show Actor option is disabled.



The edit panel displays details about the actor. See [“Viewing Actors in the Actor Editor” on page 196](#) for an example of an actor edit panel.

**To run an actor context report from an event channel:**

- 1 Display an event channel.
- 2 Right-click an event and select **Report**.



- 3 Select the report with defaults or the report that provides options to set report parameters.

The report is displayed on the ArcSight Console's Viewer panel.

## Actor Context Reports in Standard Content

If needed, you can modify the resources upon which these context reports are based.

### Reports

/All Reports/ArcSight System/Core/

Report	Description
Actor Context Report by Account ID	This report is used by the system to show activity related to an actor based on the ActorByAccountID global variable.
Actor Context Report by Attacker Username	This report is used by the system to show activity related to an actor based on the ActorByAttackerUserName global variable.
Actor Context Report by Custom Fields	This report is used by the system to show activity related to an actor based on the ActorByCustomFields global variable.
Actor Context Report by Target Username	This report is used by the system to show activity related to an actor based on the ActorByTargetUserName global variable.

For details about modifying reports, see [“Defining Report Settings” on page 336](#).

### Queries

/All Queries/ArcSight System/Core/Actor Context Report/

Query	Description
Actor Event Count by Account ID	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the ActorByAccountID global variable.
Actor Event Count by Attacker Username	This query shows activity related to an actor based on ActorByAttackerUserName global variable.
Actor Event Count by Custom Fields	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the AccountByCustomFields global variable.

Query	Description
Actor Event Count by Target Username	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the AccountByTargetUserName global variable.
Actor Events by Account ID	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the ActorByAccountID global variable.
Actor Events by Attacker Username	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the ActorByAttackerUserName global variable.
Actor Events by Custom Fields	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the ActorByCustomFields global variable.
Actor Events by Target Username	This query shows activity related to an actor based on the ActorByTargetUsername global variable.
Actor Information	This query shows activity related to an actor.

For details about working with queries, see [“Defining Query Settings” on page 301](#).

### Report Template

/All Report Templates/ArcSight System/

Report	Description
Actor Context Report	This report template is used by the “Actor Context Report”.

For details about working with report templates, see [“Designing Custom Templates” on page 282](#).

## Creating and Editing Actors for Testing Purposes

For testing purposes, you can create an actor from scratch using ArcSight Console resources, or edit an existing actor resource. If you are manually creating actors, manually enter data in the fields you are interested in tracking.

In a production environment, the Actor Model Import connector automatically populates the actor attributes the connector has been configured to send, based on values set at the source IDM. The IDM may not use or store data for every field. To learn more about the values the Actor Model Import connector can be configured to send, see the Actor Model Import connector documentation for your IDM system, for example, the SmartConnector Configuration Guide for Microsoft Active Directory Actor Model.

## Important Points to Consider about Making Manual Changes to Actors

If you are creating, editing, or deleting an existing actor that IDM sent through the Actor Model Import Connector, you should first consider the following points:

- Actors you create using the ArcSight Console are not sent back to the IDM. The flow of data is one way from the IDM through the connector.
- Any changes you want to persist to the IDM should be made at the IDM. Any new actor information will be automatically imported at the next scheduled Actor Model Import connector connection.


- If you made manual changes in the ArcSight Console to actors imported from the IDM, these changes will be overwritten the next time the Actor Model Import connector sends updated data for the same actors.
- If you manually deleted an actor attribute, that attribute will not be updated by a subsequent update from the Actor Model Import connector, unless the connector report includes an updated value for the very attribute that was deleted.
- You should be careful about using the ArcSight Console to delete actors sent by the IDM, especially if the actors still exist in the IDM, because it is possible that the actor will not be updated during a subsequent import.

## Creating Actors for Testing Purposes

Before proceeding, review the information in [“Important Points to Consider about Making Manual Changes to Actors” on page 209](#).

### To test the process of creating an actor using ArcSight Console tools:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Actors**. Right-click the **All Actors** group (or any group under **All Actors**) and select **New Actor** to launch the Actors editor.


You can also launch the Actors editor by going to **File > New > Actor**, or by clicking the New Resource icon () and selecting **Actor**. If you used the **File > New > Actor** menu option, the actor will appear in the Unassigned folder. Later, you can move the unassigned actor to an existing group.

- 2 In the Actor Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, enter the following values and click **OK** to save the actor and close the editor (click **Apply** to save the actor and keep the editor open).
  - a In the Actor section of the Attributes tab, enter values for the required fields, UUID and Full Name. Enter any other relevant attributes. All attributes are treated as data type `string`. Use the scroll bar to see all the Actor attributes.
  - b In the *Account\_Attributes* table, add all the unique account IDs attributed to this user by the various user authentication data stores relevant to this user.



#### Completing the Account\_Attributes table

- In a production environment where the IDM sends data through an Actor Model Import connector, this table is automatically populated with the user account ID and authenticator values the Actor Model Import connector is configured to send.
- For tips about tools to use to find user account IDs and authenticator information, see “Configuring Actors” in the “Configuration” chapter of the Administrator’s Guide.
- In a test situation, or any situation where an actor has been added manually using ArcSight Console tools, you manually populate the account attributes you are interested in tracking.

- Click the Add icon () to make the fields editable.

In the *Authenticator* column, enter an identifier for the user authentication data store, for example, `Active Directory: mycompany.com`. This is a friendly name that will help admins and other users identify which data store is the authentication source.

In the *Account ID* column, enter the user’s account ID used in that authentication data store, for example, `john_doe`, `jdoe`, or `john.d`.

With each entry, the next set of fields becomes editable. Add as many data store authenticators and account IDs as are relevant. For example, an entry for an Active Directory authenticator could be `Active Directory: companyname.com`. Following is an example of a completed `Account_Attributes` table:

(Description)

Account Attributes + ✕	
Authenticator	Account ID
Oracle	meerkat
MS Windows	jmeerkat
MS Exchange Server	jmeerkat@jaygroup.com

- To remove an entry, click anywhere on the row you want to delete and click the Delete icon (✕).
- c In the *Role\_Attributes* table, add all the unique roles attributed to this user and their type.



Note

#### Completing the *Role\_Attributes* table

- In a production environment where the IDM sends data through an Actor Model Import connector, this table is automatically populated with the user role values the Actor Model Import connector is configured to send.
- In a test situation, or any situation where an actor has been added manually using ArcSight Console tools, you manually populate the role attributes you are interested in tracking.

- Click the Add icon (+) to make the fields editable.

In the *Role Name* column, enter a role name, such as Administrator, User, Approver, or Manager.

In the *Resource Name* column, enter the application to which this role applies, for example, SAP, or Microsoft Exchange.

In the *Role Type* column, enter what type of role it is, such as whether it's an IT role or a business role.

With each entry, the next set of fields becomes editable. Add as many user roles as are relevant. Following is an example of a completed *Role\_Attributes* table:

Role Attributes + ✕		
Role Name	Resource Name	Role Type
DBA	Oracle database	IT
Administrator	MS Exchange Server	IT

- To remove an entry, click anywhere on the row you want to delete and click the Delete icon (✕).

## Editing Actors for Testing Purposes

This section contains instructions for how to edit the actors you've created manually for testing purposes. In a production environment, actor changes should be managed automatically through the Actor Model Import connector.

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to Actors.
- 2 Double-click an actor (or right-click an actor and select **Edit Actor**) to open the Actor Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.



### How to find an actor among thousands of actors

If a group in your actor model contains more than 1,000 members, view the actors using an actors channel. In the Actors navigation panel, right-click the group and select **Show Actors**.

For more about creating and viewing actors in an actors channel, see ["Viewing Actors in an Actor Channel" on page 199](#).

- 3 Refer to the topic ["Viewing Actors in the Actor Editor" on page 196](#) for details about what to enter in the editor's fields.

## Deleting Actors

The actors feature is designed to reflect the latest state of your IDM data as sent through regular updates from the Actor Model Import connector. As such, changes made to actor data in your environment should be made first at the IDM, which is then sent through an update from the Actor Model Import connector.

If you delete a user at the IDM, the actor remains in the actor model, and its status is updated to "Deleted in IDM."

- To delete an actor from the actor model permanently, right-click the actor and select **Delete**.
- To delete a group of actors permanently, right-click the actor group and select **Delete**.

## Leveraging Actor Data Using Variables

You can create a local or global variable that focuses just on actor base and list fields. This enables you to make a specific value derived from actor data available for use in actor-related resources: actor field sets, actor queries (used both in reports, query viewers, and trends), and actor channels.



Use of velocity expressions is not supported in actor fields and for actor fields in local or global variables.

## Creating an Actor Global Variable

Variables derive particular values from existing data fields. The global variables feature enables you to define your variables only once, and then re-use it in multiple places wherever conditions can be expressed. Global variables work with the actors feature so you can build user correlations.



**To create an actor global variable:**

- 1 Launch the global variable editor: In the Navigator panel, go to **Field Sets**. On the Fields & Global Variables tab, right-click a group and select **New Global Variable**.
- 2 In the Attributes tab, give the global variable a name, and specify **Actor Global Variable** as the variable type.  
  
For details about the fields in the Global Variable Editor Attributes tab, see [“Global Variable Editor: Attributes Tab” on page 447](#).
- 3 In the Parameters tab, specify the parameters you want to set for the actor global variable.
  - a In the Function field, select a category, then a function appropriate for the data you want to extract from the actor fields.
  - b In the Arguments section, select the fields or resources to which you want to apply the function. Enter the other relevant arguments for that function.
  - c To test the result returned by the parameters you selected, enter test values and click **Calculate** to test the results of the actor global variable.
- 4 In the Local Variables tab, you can optionally add a local variable to the actor global variable, which will extract a value from a field that you want to use in the overall actor global variable.

For details about how to create a global variable using the global variable editor, see [“Creating a Global Variable” on page 446](#).

For details about the functions available to local and global variables, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

## Creating an Actor-Based Variable in Another Resource

Actor-based variables are only applicable to Actor-based resources. You can add a local variable based on an actor field to the following resources:

- Active channels
- Field sets
- Global variables
- Queries (available to reports, trends, and query viewers)

**To create actor-based local variables:**

- 1 In the resource editor Local Variables tab, click **Add**.
- 2 In the Add Local Variable dialog:
  - a Enter a name for the local variable
  - b Select a function that is compatible with the actor field whose values you want to leverage in the variable
  - c In the Arguments section, select fields and add values relevant to the actor data you want to leverage
  - d In the Preview section, enter test values and click **Calculate** to test the results of the actor global variable.
  - e Click **OK**.

## Creating and Using Category Models

Once you have actor information created, you can make logical groupings to represent relationships among actors and actor attributes using category models.

Category models can reflect direct actor relationships, such as reporting hierarchies, or relationships between actors who share common attributes, such as actors in a particular location. For reporting hierarchies, your model can consist of a top-to-bottom structure (by Manager), or its reverse (by Assistant). Category models can also reflect relationships between actors using custom attributes defined by the user.

You can use category models to visualize these relationships, then leverage the data gathered in them using the `HasRelationship` function in local and global variables.

## Memory Recommendations for Using Category Models

Category models can be resource intensive on run-time processing memory, depending on the size of your actor model and the nature of the relationships you are modeling. For best results, adjust Java Heap Memory Size in the ArcSight Console setup script to at least 1 GB.

### To adjust the Java Heap Memory Size on the ArcSight Console:

- 1 If running, close the ArcSight Console.
- 2 In the directory `<ARCSIGHT_HOME>/bin/scripts/`, make a backup of the ArcSight Console startup script file:
  - ◆ Windows: `console.bat`
  - ◆ Unix: `console.sh`
- 3 Open the Console startup file (`console.bat` or `console.sh`) in a text editor, and change the default maximum heap size value from `-Xmx512m` to `-Xms1024m`.

For example (value to change is highlighted):

#### For Windows:

Change the line

```
set ARCSIGHT_JVM_OPTIONS=-Xms64m -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=84m -
```

to

```
set ARCSIGHT_JVM_OPTIONS=-Xms64m -Xmx1024m -XX:MaxPermSize=84m -
```

#### For Unix:

Change the line

```
ARCSIGHT_JVM_OPTIONS="-Xms32m -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=84m "
```

to

```
ARCSIGHT_JVM_OPTIONS="-Xms32m -Xmx1024m -XX:MaxPermSize=84m "
```

- 4 Save the updated Console startup file.
- 5 Restart the ArcSight Console.

## Creating Category Models

You can create three types of category models depending on the type of relationships you want to represent:

- **Actor-to-actor.** Actor-to actor category models establish direct or indirect relationships between actors themselves, such as reporting hierarchies. This category model is also called a dual-field category model.
- **Model by actor attributes.** Actor attribute category models are a way to group actors who share one base actor attribute in common, such as location, department, or country. This category model is also called a single-field category model.
- **Model by user-defined attributes.** User-defined category models are a way to group actors who share one or more attributes that are outside of the schema, for example, users who come in on Saturdays, users who play racquetball, or users who take public transportation. This category model is also called a manually-created category model.



Manually-created category models will not be included in an export of the actor resource. For more information about exporting resources, see [“Creating Packages” on page 645](#).

### To create a category model:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to Actors and click the **Category Models** tab.
- 2 Right-click an existing group and select **New Category Model**.
- 3 In the Category Model Editor’s Inspect/Edit panel, name the category model, select its type, and select the fields by which you want it to model. For details about what fields to populate for the type of category model, see the following topics:
  - ◆ [“Creating Actor-to-Actor Category Models” on page 215](#)
  - ◆ [“Creating Actor Attribute Category Models” on page 218](#)
  - ◆ [“Creating User-Defined Category Models” on page 220](#)
- 4 Depending on the type of category model you create, use the Data tab to view the members of the category model, or use the Attributes tab to define the attributes by which you want to model users.
- 5 Click **OK** to save the category model and close the editor, or click **Apply** to save the category model and leave the editor open.

## Creating Actor-to-Actor Category Models

Actor-to-actor category models establish direct or indirect relationships between actors themselves, such as reporting hierarchies. The categorization is based on what data you want to track using the Parent Field, and how to look up the actors for populating the model through the Child Field.

When creating actor-to-actor category models, enter the following values in the Attributes tab of the Category Model editor:

**Table 8-2 Actor-to-Actor Category Model Attributes**

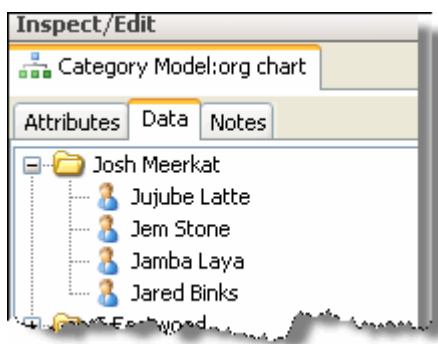
Attribute Field	Description
Name	Enter a name for the category model. This name will appear in pick lists and wherever category models can be referenced in conditions. Spaces, underscores, and hyphens are allowed.
Create From	Use the Create From field to select the type of category model. For an actor-to-actor category model, select <b>Actor Fields</b> . After the category model is saved, this field becomes read-only.
Field Set	By default, the system uses the Actor Base field set, because only actor-based fields are relevant for category models. You can also select a user-defined actor field set.  The field set selected here defines the fields available for the parent and child field choices and defines the columns available for the table below the graph view (for more about the graph view, see <a href="#">"Viewing Category Models in Graphs" on page 222</a> ). After the category model is saved, this field becomes read-only.
Relationship Name	Use this optional field to describe the relationship you want the category model to show.  For example, if you want the category model to show managers and their direct reports, you could enter <code>Direct Report</code> to identify the relationship between the manager and the direct report.  The value you enter here appears as a mouse-over tool tip on the relationship lines that connect the parent and child fields in the category model graph view.
Parent Field	This field enables you to establish which Actor data field to use to build a hierarchy of relationships.  From the drop-down menu, select <b>Manager</b> or <b>Assistant</b> as the parent field.  For example, if you are building an actor-to-actor category model that shows top-down reporting relationships, select <b>Manager</b> to produce a category model of every manager identified in your IDM data. The resulting model will display managers at the top.  A Parent Field of <b>Assistant</b> will display an inverted hierarchy with lower-level actors appearing at the top.  <b>Note:</b> Only the Manager and Assistant fields are supported for the Parent Field when building actor-to-actor category models.

**Table 8-2 Actor-to-Actor Category Model Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute Field	Description
Child Field	<p>In Child Field, the <b>UUID</b> (or <b>DN</b>, if used) is the unique identifier the system uses to look up the actors and populate members who are related to Parent Field.</p> <p>From the drop-down menu, select <b>UUID</b> or <b>DN</b> as the unique identifier to correctly determine who the members are in a particular structure. (DN is specific to the Active Directory IDM.)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only the UUID and DN fields are supported in the Child Field when building actor-to-actor category models.</p> <p>For example, if you selected <b>Manager</b> in the Parent field, and the actor's Manager field is populated by a UUID value, then select <b>UUID</b> as the Child Field here. Likewise, if the actor's Manager field is populated by the DN value, then select <b>DN</b> here. The following example scenario explains how the category model is created based on the Parent Field and Child Field values.</p> <p><b>Example scenario:</b></p> <p>Let's say you are building an organizational chart with managers at the top node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Actor A</b> has a <b>UUID = 1234</b>. Actor A is the manager of Actor B and Actor C.</li> <li>• Actor B and Actor C's values for <b>Manager = 1234</b>, which corresponds to Actor A's UUID.</li> <li>• In building this category model, use <b>Parent Field = Manager</b> and <b>Child Field = UUID</b>. The Manager looks up Actor B and Actor C's Manager field, which has Actor A's UUID. It then creates Actor B and Actor C under Actor A in the resulting category model.</li> </ul>
Delimiter	The delimiter field does not apply to the actor-to-actor category model.

For a description of the data that goes in the Common section, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

Use the Data tab to view the members of the group in tree form.



You can also view the group hierarchy in a resource graph. Right-click the category model and select **View Category Model**. For details, see [“Viewing Category Models in Graphs” on page 222](#).

## Creating Actor Attribute Category Models

Actor attribute category models are a way to group actors who share one base actor attribute in common, such as location, country, or any actor attribute that can possibly have a hierarchical groupings.

When creating actor attribute category models, enter the following values in the Attributes tab of the Category Model editor:

**Table 8-3 Actor Category Model Attributes**

Attribute Field	Description
Name	Enter a name for the category model. This name appears in pick lists and wherever category models can be referenced in conditions. Spaces, underscores, and hyphens are allowed.
Create From	Use the Create From field to select the type of category model. For an actor attribute category model, select <b>Single Actor Field</b> . After the category model is saved, this field becomes read-only.
Field Set	By default, the system uses the Actor Base field set, since only actor-based fields are relevant for category models. You can also select a user-defined actor field set.  The field set selected here defines the fields available for the parent and child field choices, and also defines the columns available for the table below the graph view (for more about the graph view, see <a href="#">“Viewing Category Models in Graphs” on page 222</a> ). After the category model is saved, this field becomes read-only.
Relationship Name	Use this optional field to describe the relationship you want the category model to show.  For example, if you want the category model to show employees by location, you could enter <code>Location</code> to identify the relationship between the actor and the group he is associated with.  The value you enter here appears as a mouse-over tool tip on the relationship lines that connect the actor and the attribute they're being modeled by in the category model graph view.
Parent Field	From the drop-down menu, select the attribute that you want to model the users by.  For example, if you are building an actor attribute category model that categorizes all the actors by their location, select <b>Location</b> .
Child Field	The child field does not apply to single-actor field category models.

**Table 8-3 Actor Category Model Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute Field	Description
Delimiter	<p>Enter the delimiter you used in the actors' Delimiter attribute. The default is the forward slash (/).</p> <p>The Delimiter is used to denote the hierarchy of values, from top to bottom, in the attribute you are tracking in Parent Field.</p> <p><b>Example scenario:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Actor A has <b>Location</b> = /USA</li> <li>Actor B has <b>Location</b> = /USA/California/Mountain View</li> <li>Actor C has <b>Location</b> = /USA/California/Mountain View</li> </ul> <p>The delimiter used to denote a hierarchy is /, therefore, in the category model editor, set <b>Delimiter</b> = /.</p> <p>The resulting resource graph produced by these values has three levels: USA, California, and Mountain View.</p>



#### A combination of delimiters builds a hierarchy if one is found

If the attribute from which you are creating the category model contains multiple values with more than one type of delimiter, for example, a URL, such as

```
http://www.greatcompany.com
```

include all the delimiter characters in the Delimiter field. For example:

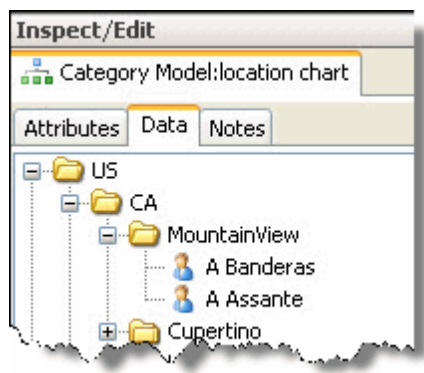
```
://.
```

This indicates that the dot (.) is the delimiter used to separate all the elements of the URL into the following hierarchy:

```
http
www
greatcompany
com
```

For a description of the data that goes in the Common section, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

Use the Data tab to view the members of the group in tree form.



Based on the hierarchical relationship in the example above, the value for the two actors' Location field is entered as /US/CA/MountainView.

You can also view the group hierarchy in a resource graph. Right-click the category model and select **View Category Model**. For details, see ["Viewing Category Models in Graphs" on page 222](#).

## Creating User-Defined Category Models

User-defined (or manually-created) category models are a way to group actors who share one or more attributes that are outside of the actor schema, for example, users who come in on Saturdays, users who play racquetball, or users who take public transportation.

The user-defined groupings can be created in hierarchical fashion. For example, users to who take public transportation can be further classified into those who take the train, those who take the bus, and those who take a ferry. For user-defined category models, the hierarchy evaluation is based on the actor's UUID value.

- 1 When creating category models based on user-defined attributes, enter the following values in the Attributes tab of the Category Model editor:

Attribute Field	Description
Name	Enter a name for the category model. This name will appear in pick lists and wherever category models can be referenced in conditions. Spaces, underscores, and hyphens are allowed.
Create From	Select the type of category model from this field. For a user-defined attribute category model, select <b>Manually</b> . After the category model is saved, this field becomes read-only.
Field Set	By default, the system uses the Actor Base field set, since only actor-based fields are relevant for category models. You can also select a user-defined actor field set.  The field set you select here defines the columns available for the table that appears below the graph view (for more about the graph view, see <a href="#">"Viewing Category Models in Graphs" on page 222</a> ). After the category model is saved, this field becomes read-only.
Relationship Name	Use this optional field to describe the relationship you want the category model to show.  For example, if you want the category model to show actors who take different types of public transportation, you could enter <i>Commutes By</i> to identify the relationship between the actor and the group he is associated with.  The value you enter here appears as a mouse-over tool tip on the relationship lines that connect the actor and the attribute they're being modeled by in the category model graph view.

Parent Field, Child Field, and Delimiter don't apply to this category model.

- 2 For a description of what to enter in the Common fields, see ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642](#).



- 3 Use the Data tab to define the attributes by which you want to group users, and to add actors to the category model.

For example, if you want to create a hierarchy of users that take different types of public transportation, do the following:

- a In the Category Model editor at the Data tab, click **New Group**.

The name of the new group is automatically highlighted so you can give it a relevant name, for example, `Public Transportation Commuters`. Press the Enter key to save the new name.

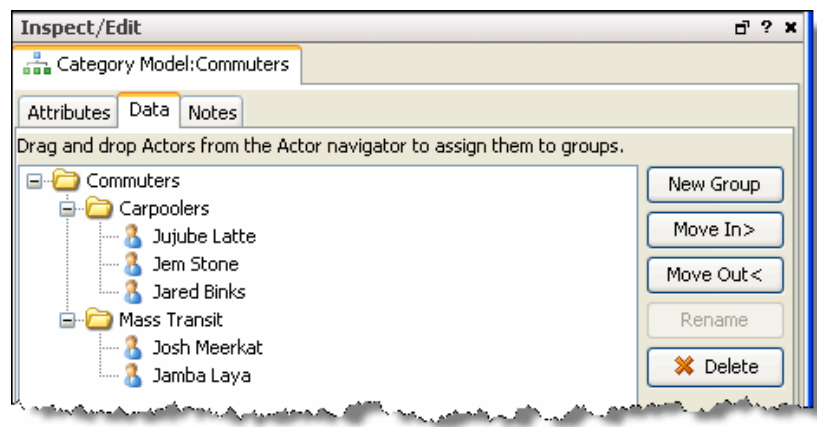
To rename a group at any time, right-click the group and select **Rename**; or click the **Rename** button. After entering the new name, press Enter.

- b Add actors to the category model group. You can add actors from the Navigator panel and from an actors channel in the Viewer panel.

**From the Navigator panel:** Drag and drop actors from the navigator panel into the category model group. You can drag and drop multiple actors at a time.

**From an Actors channel in the Viewer panel:** You can view any group of actors in an actors channel in the Viewer panel. An actors channel is the only way to view groups with 1,000 or more members. Select the actors you want to add to the category model group, right-click, and select **Add to Category Model**.

- To select multiple actors in a row, use **shift + click**.
  - To select multiple actors out of sequence, use **ctrl + click**.
- c To create a sub-group of the first group, such as Train Commuters and Bus Commuters, click **New Group** again. You can also right-click the existing group (or right-click anywhere in the editor panel and select **New Group**).
    - By default, the new group is made a child of the first group.
    - You can make the new group a parent group by dragging and dropping it to the desired location, or click **Move Out** (or right-click the group and select **Move Out**).
    - You can make a parent group the child of another by dragging and dropping the group to the desired location, or click **Move In** (or right-click the group and select **Move In**).



- You can have unlimited parent and child nodes.

- 4 View the category model in a resource graph. Right-click the category model and select **View Category Model**. For more about viewing category models as graphs, see [“Viewing Category Models in Graphs” on page 222](#).

## Editing a Category Model

### To edit an existing category model:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, double-click the category model to open the Category Model editor. Or right-click the category model and select **Edit Category Model**.
- 2 Make edits to the category model attributes.
- 3 Click **OK** to save the category model and close the editor; or click **Apply** to save but leave the editor open.

For details about the category model fields for the different types of category models, see [“Creating and Using Category Models” on page 214](#).

## Moving or Copying a Category Model

You can move or copy a category model the same way you move or copy any resource.

### To move or copy a category model:

- 1 In the category model resource tree, navigate to an asset and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the category model, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the category model, or **Link** to create a copy of the category model that is linked to the original category model.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the category model that will not be affected when the original category model is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the category model that is linked to the original asset. Therefore, if you edit a linked category model, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked category models, you can either delete the selected category model or all linked category model copies.

## Deleting a Category Model

### To delete a category model:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click the category model and select **Delete Category Model**.
- 2 At the confirmation dialog box, click **Delete**.

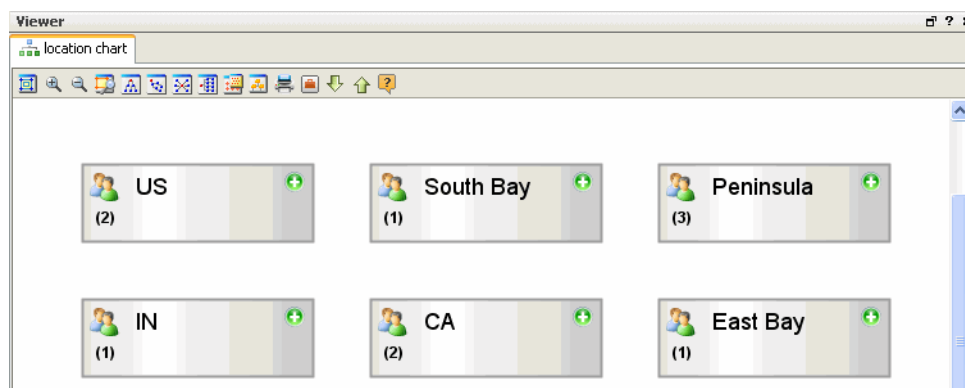
## Viewing Category Models in Graphs

To fully visualize a category model, view it as a graph. Category model graphs are very similar to resource graphs, only instead of modeling relationships among all resources, category model graphs render relationships among attributes of actor resources.

### To view category model graph:

In the Navigator panel, right-click a category model and select **View Category Model**.

The Viewer panel displays the graph. By default, all top-level nodes are displayed in collapsed form. To expand the nodes, click the plus (+) sign.










## Working with Category Model Graphs











The category model graphs are displayed on the Viewer panel. As with all resource graphs, There is a set of command buttons at the top of the view and a parallel set of commands available by right-clicking the graph itself.

The table below shows the Category Model Toolbar Buttons and Right-click Commands.

**Table 8-4** Category Model Graph Options

Command	Button	Description
Fit Content		Size the model to the available display space.
Zoom In / Zoom Out	 	Increase or decrease the size of the displayed model.  The system is optimized to show the entire category model graph in the available space of the viewer panel. If a category model has many nodes and members, its elements can appear very small. To zoom in, click the zoom in icon (+ magnifying glass). To zoom out, click the zoom out icon (- magnifying glass).
Zoom Selected		Zoom in on a selected portion of the model.
Hierarchic Layout		Present nodes in a vertically descending cascade, similar to a family tree. Hierarchic layouts are appropriate when viewing event relationships that have a common root.
Organic Layout		Display nodes in an arrangement based on minimum edge length, which tends to cluster nodes that relate to a common node. Likewise, node clusters with nodes in common will also tend to group together.
Circular Layout		Position nodes in hub-and-spoke arrangements with each node radiating edges to, or receiving edges from, the nodes with which it interacts. Circular layouts are most useful when multiple roots are present or there are a number of source-target relationships to clarify. If an organic layout is difficult to read because the edges are too dense, try a circular layout instead.

**Table 8-4** Category Model Graph Options (Continued)

Command	Button	Description
Orthogonal Layout		Arrange nodes on the basis of logical connections, using electrical schematic-style right-angle layouts. These layouts are very useful for clearly tracing connections and identifying node clusters.
Overview		Open a reduced rendering of the entire graph. You can drag the highlighted section in the reduction to move the displayed area in the main view.
Hierarchy Tree		Open a complete list of the nodes as seen on the category model editor's Data tab. Click a node in the list to scroll to that node in the main view.
Print		Print the displayed model.
Export to JPEG		Create and save a JPEG-format copy of the current image.
Add Graph View to Case		Add the current graph view to a case you select. Choosing this option opens the Case Selector dialog, where you can browse cases. Select a case to which to add the current graph view and click <b>OK</b> on the Case Selector dialog. The graph view is added to the selected case as an attachment, accessible on the Attachments tab in the case editor for that case.
Help		Display the relevant ArcSight Console online Help topic.
Expand One Level/ Collapse One level		Expand <i>all</i> collapsed nodes to display nodes one level below. Collapse one level of all expanded nodes.  This feature works only if any node was not manually expanded or collapsed previously.
Plus (+)/Minus (-)		Expand or collapse a single node on the graph.
Increase/ Decrease Node to Node Distance		Increase or decrease distances between nodes by small increments.  This feature works on expanded nodes.
Single-person icon		Denotes an individual actor.
Two-person icon		Denotes a group of actors.

Every time a node is expanded or collapsed, the entire category model graph re-sizes to fit into the available space of the viewer panel



#### Actors with no value for the field used to define the category model do not appear in the model

If an actor does not have a value for the field that was used to build the category model, that actor will not appear in the model.

For example, if you build the category model on the Office attribute, and if an actor does not have a value in the Office field, that actor is not represented on the category model view.

For more about resource graphs, see [“Visualizing Resources” on page 632](#).

## Leveraging Category Model Data Using Variables

You can use the `HasRelationship` function in local and global variables to leverage data represented in a category model.

Local and global variables are available in resources that use conditions: active channels, filters, rules, data monitors, and queries. Local variables are available for use only in the resource for which the variables are defined; global variables can be re-used in multiple condition-based resources.

### To leverage data represented by a category model in a variable:

- Launch the variable editor.
  - ◆ **Local variable:** From the channel, filter, rule, query, or data monitor editor, click the Local Variable tab. Click **Add** to launch the *Add Local Variable* dialog box.
  - ◆ **Global variable:** In the Navigator panel, go to Field Sets. On the Fields & Global Variables tab, right-click a group and select **New Global Variable**.  
In the Attributes tab, specify **Event** as the variable type.  
For details about the fields in the Global Variable Editor Attributes tab, see [“Global Variable Editor: Attributes Tab” on page 447](#).
- Select the function category **Category Model** and the `HasRelationship` function. In the Arguments section, select the category model whose data you want to leverage and specify the parent and child field or group.

#### Arguments for HasRelationship Function

Field	Description
Name	When creating local variable based on category model data, provide a friendly name for the variable. This name is used anywhere the variable is applied (CCE, resource field selectors).
Function	From the Function drop-down menu: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the category <b>Category Model</b>.</li> <li>Select the function <code>HasRelationship</code>.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Category Model	Browse to and select the category model from which you want to leverage data.

---

**Arguments for HasRelationship Function (Continued)**

Field	Description
Parent Field or Group	Navigate to the field or single-value variable you want to use as the parent. Use the Field/Group drop-down to indicate whether the parent is a field (single attribute) or a group.
Child Field or Group	Navigate to the field or single-value variable you want to use as the child.
Inherit All Related Actors	Select <b>true</b> for the variable to consider all the actors in a related hierarchy. For example, VP > Director > Manager > direct report.  Select <b>false</b> for the variable to consider only direct relationships between actors. For example, Manager > direct report.

---

For details about working with the Global Variable editor, see [“Creating a Global Variable” on page 446](#).

For details about local variables and the functions available to both local and global variables, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

## Chapter 9

# Query Viewers

---

This topic describes how to define and use query viewers to get high-level summaries about trends, events, other resources, and system health along with drill-down capability in a dynamic viewer.

- [“What are Query Viewers?” on page 227](#)
- [“Navigating to Query Viewers” on page 229](#)
- [“Pre-Built and Custom Query Viewers” on page 229](#)
- [“Running Queries and Viewing Results” on page 231](#)
- [“Adding Query Viewers to Dashboards” on page 242](#)
- [“Making Query Viewer Results Available to ArcSight Web” on page 242](#)
- [“Adding Query Viewers as Startup Views” on page 242](#)
- [“Generating Reports from Query Viewers” on page 243](#)
- [“Defining and Using Baselines” on page 245](#)
- [“Customizing Query Viewers” on page 253](#)
- [“Editing a Query Viewer” on page 261](#)
- [“Deleting a Query Viewer” on page 262](#)
- [“Managing Drilldowns” on page 262](#)
- [“Example Queries for Common Scenarios” on page 268](#)

## What are Query Viewers?

**Query viewers** are a type of resource for defining and running SQL queries on other resources, including trends, assets, cases, connectors, events, and so forth. Each query viewer contains an SQL query along with other logic for establishing and comparing baseline results, analyzing historical data to find patterns in network activity, and performing drill-down investigation on a particular aspect of the results. The query viewer you create displays all the fields specified in the query you select (or create) for the query viewer.

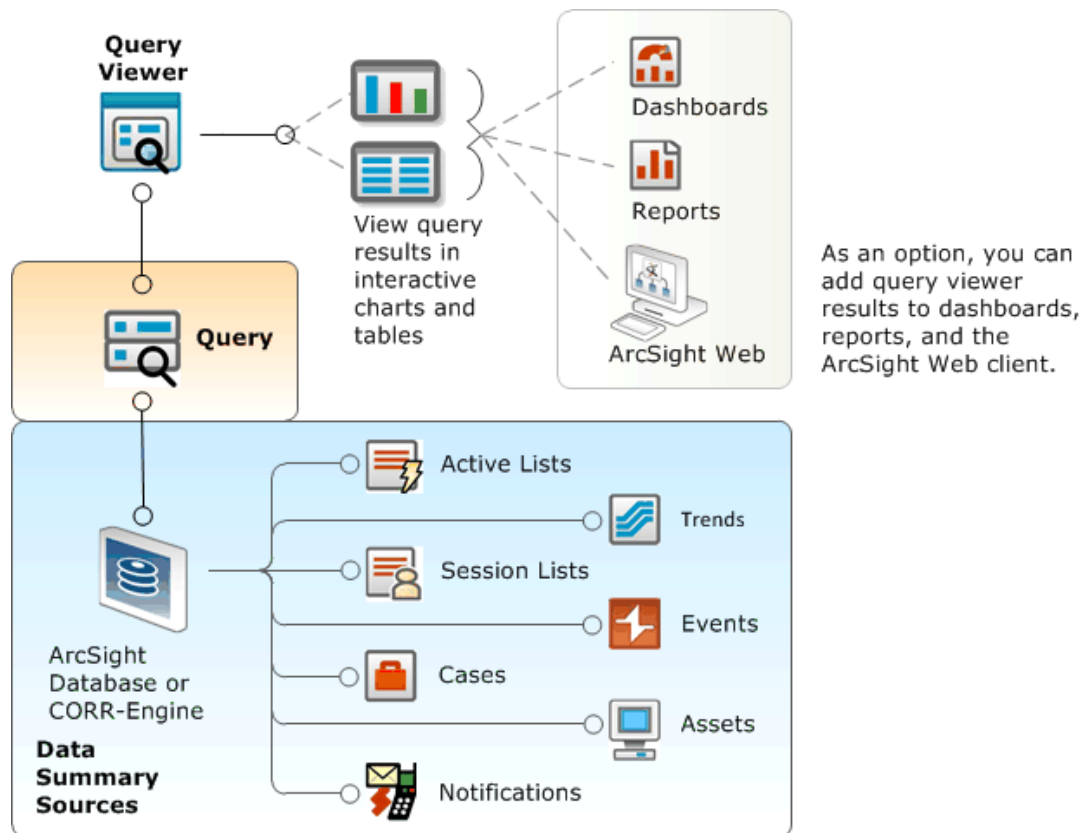
You can use query viewers to run the same SQL queries used for reports, and get results quickly. Then, if desired, you can generate a simple report directly from the query viewer results. Full-featured reporting (with queries, trends, and templates) is still offered for more robust reporting requirements (see [“Building Reports” on page 275](#)), but query viewers provide a shortcut to running those same SQL queries apart from reporting. (See also [“Active Channels or Query Viewers?” on page 86](#).)

Query viewers provide high-level summaries to monitor system health, reveal trends, and allow for drill-down investigation of all types of resources. Query viewers can work with trend tables rather than event tables, and so can return results much faster than [Active Channels](#).

The SQL-based summary views and trend analysis in query viewers use aggregation to provide a higher-level perspective than data gleaned from exclusively event-focused active channels and snapshot, limited-range data monitors.

Query viewers offer a way to run queries outside of a full reporting paradigm (where queries and trends are always tied to a particular report). They offer a quick way to run SQL queries on the data sources available to report queries.

Also, you can generate simple reports directly from query viewer results.



Query Viewers leverage an existing report query to run SQL queries on data sources, such as trends, active lists, session lists, assets, cases, events, and notifications. Each query viewer contains a base SQL query along with other logic for establishing and comparing baseline results, analyzing historical data to find trends, and performing drill-down investigation on a particular aspect of the result. The results are displayed in interactive charts and tables, which can be added to dashboards and published as reports.

Query viewers provide:

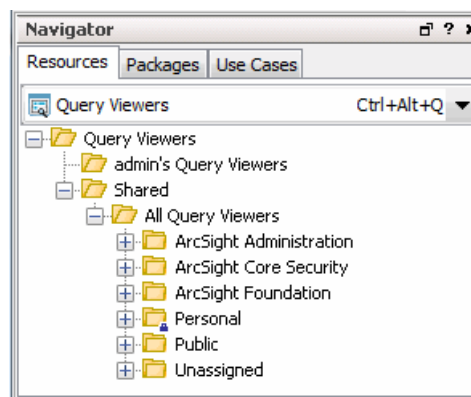
- **A quick way to run SQL queries and trends apart from full-scale reporting.** If you want to run a pre-built SQL query and view results quickly, or build and test several iterations of a custom query, query viewers are an easy way to do it. (You can also generate a simple report directly from a query viewer.)



- **High-level summaries.** For example, using the aggregation provided by queries and trends allows summaries of “interesting things” over the last month, day, or hour.
- **Non-event-based summaries.** Queries can be used to analyze resources other than events (such as assets and cases).
- **Event-based summaries.** Queries can be used to analyze events, and eventually lead to active channels (with drill-down investigation).
- **Baselines.** Analysts can apply a baseline to the information resulting from a particular run of a query viewer. A baseline acts as a reference point against which to compare results of other runs of the same query and highlights the *deltas* (differences) to help identify areas that vary significantly from normal.
- **Drilldown.** Query viewers can provide drilldown investigation into the same or another query viewer for good performance on the next level of results as well. Ultimately, the drilldown can lead to an event channel, where the performance costs are the trade-off for the power of event-based analysis in an active channel. The query viewer author defines the appropriate drilldown paths and levels.
- **Performance.** Query viewers can use trend tables which are typically much smaller than event tables, and can be pre-built with summary views in mind. So, in most cases query viewers can return and display results faster than [Active Channels](#).
- **History.** When based on trends, query viewer result data can be kept for as long as desired and be independent of the event archival process.
- **Flexibility.** ArcSight provides both pre-built query viewers and a resource editor for adding custom query viewers to suit the needs and environment of your organization.
- **Presentation Options.** Query viewer results can be displayed as tables (with baselines, if desired), pie charts, and bar charts, and added to [Dashboards](#) for quick display and monitoring.

## Navigating to Query Viewers

In the Navigator panel, select **Query Viewers** resource from the drop-down menu.



## Pre-Built and Custom Query Viewers

The Manager to which your Console is connected has pre-built query viewers available for use. At a minimum, you have access to standard content query viewers that ship with ArcSight. You might also have access to custom query viewers provided by content developers for your organization.

## Standard Content

ArcSight comes with a set of pre-built query viewers that address common network monitoring and trend analysis scenarios. To access the standard content query viewers, in the Navigator panel select **Query Viewers**, then click to expand the list to **Query Viewers/Shared/All Query Viewers**.

Folders for ArcSight Administration, ArcSight Core Security, and ArcSight Foundation include the standard content query viewers.

If you have purchased ArcSight Solutions packages, query viewers for those are displayed under ArcSight Solutions.

For information on how to run and use any pre-built query viewer, see [“Running Queries and Viewing Results” on page 231](#), [“Generating Reports from Query Viewers” on page 243](#), and [“Defining and Using Baselines” on page 245](#).

## Custom Query Viewers

When administrators or content developers at your organization create custom query viewers, they have the option of sharing these with other administrators and users. So, depending on your role and user permissions, you might have access to:

- query viewers that ship with ArcSight
- custom-built query viewers that other administrators have shared
- your own custom-built query viewers

For information on how to create your own custom query viewers, see [“Customizing Query Viewers” on page 253](#).

## Customizing Query Viewers as Needed

You can modify the provided query viewers as needed to get the data you want. Customizing an existing query viewer can range from hiding or showing data fields, changing the sort order inherited from the base query, to adding variables and modifying key fields. These kinds of changes do not affect the base query, only the query viewer.

Once a query viewer is defined to reference a particular base query, that query viewer cannot be changed. If you want to reference a different base query, you need to create a new query viewer. Which brings us to an important point. *Where do you get the base queries you need?* See [“Query Viewers Need Base Queries” on page 231](#) to find out.

## inActiveList Conditions for Queries

In a query, you can define an `inActiveList` condition and map multi-valued attributes to single-valued active list fields. For example, you have an active list that keeps track of actor roles, where one of the role values can be Normal, Restricted, and Privileged. You can test if an actor has one of these roles through the `inActiveList` condition. In this scenario, your list has a field called `RoleName`. You map the actor's role name attribute to this field. Keep in mind that an actor's `RoleName` attribute is multi-valued because an actor can have multiple roles. Through the `inActiveList` condition, your query will check if one of the actor's roles is, for example, Privileged. Querying an active list of assets require extra steps, as explained in [“Example: Creating Asset-Related Conditions for Queries on Lists” on page 315](#).

## Query Viewers Need Base Queries

A primary attribute of any query viewer is the SQL query it references and uses. This is the core of the query viewer. If you create the query viewer yourself, you define this as part of the initial query viewer attributes by browsing to and choosing a query from the **Reports/Queries** tree. If you are using a pre-defined query viewer, it already references a base query.

Reports, trends, and query viewers are all consumers of SQL queries, which still must be created first in the **Reports** resource **Queries** tab. So, if you don't find a query viewer or query that gives the data view you want, you first need to create a new query in **Reports > Queries**. Then go to the Query Viewers resource to create a new query viewer that references the base query you just created. (For information on creating queries, see ["Building Queries" on page 299.](#))

## Running Queries and Viewing Results

To run a query defined in a query viewer, do either of the following:

- Select a query viewer and choose **View Data as... > <Display Format>**  
Or
- Double-click a query viewer.  
Double-clicking provides the default view, as defined in the query viewer. For information on how to set the default view, see [related information on page 255](#) in ["Query Viewer Attributes" on page 254.](#)

The query runs, and returns results in the Viewer on the current state of the network and event flow.

Alternatively, you can add the result of a query viewer directly to a dashboard. For information on this, see ["Adding Query Viewers to Dashboards" on page 242.](#)

### To run queries and view results:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Query Viewers** resource.
- 2 Navigate the tree, and select the query viewer you want to run.
- 3 Right-click the selected query viewer and select **View Data as > <Display Format>** and choose one of these options:

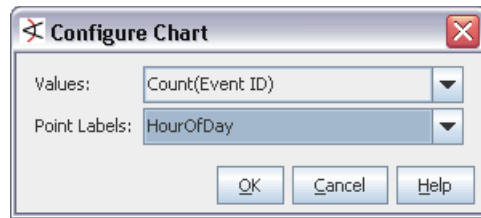
Results Display Format	Description
Bar Chart	Display query results as a bar chart.
Horizontal Bar Chart	Display query results as a horizontal bar chart.
Pie Chart	Display query results as a pie chart.
Table	Display query results in table format. <b>Note:</b> Baselines can only be applied to or viewed for query results shown in table format. (For more about establishing and using baselines, see <a href="#">"Defining and Using Baselines" on page 245.</a> )



Chart-style views (Pie and Bar charts) are limited to showing a maximum of 99 rows. This is a hard limit for charts to guarantee readability; it is not user-configurable. Therefore, results in chart views and table views for the same query viewer might not match since table views can accommodate up to 10,000 rows of data in a query result.

Details on how to read and manipulate query results for each of these formats are provided.

- ◆ If you choose a Table display format, the results are displayed instantly.
- ◆ If you choose a bar chart or pie chart, you are asked to configure the chart display in the Configure Chart dialog.

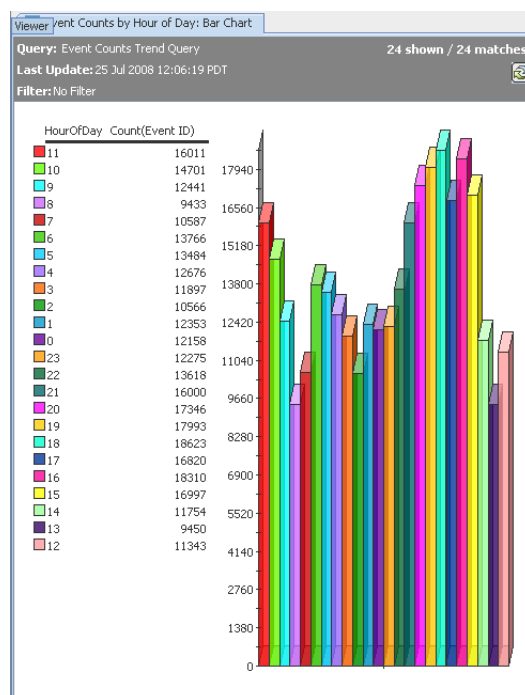


Select fields for **Values** and **Point Labels**.

Field	Description
Values	<p>The <b>Values</b> drop-down menu lists fields in the query result that contain data types. The value you choose is used as the numbers by which to plot the vertical y axis points on a bar chart or the slice sizes on a pie chart.</p> <p>Values typically represent an unknown set of values, like a count. A common example of numeric data appropriate for values is a time like HourOfDay or a count like Count (Event ID) .</p>
Point Labels	<p>The <b>Point Labels</b> drop-down menu provides fields in the query result that contain non-numeric data types. The point labels are used to plot the horizontal x axis labels on a bar chart or the slice labels on a pie chart</p> <p>Examples of non-numeric data types appropriate for point labels are timestamps, strings such as are used for event names, and different types of addresses such as IP or MAC addresses. Point labels are typically a known set of limited values (like hours in a day denoted by timestamps).</p>

### Example View Settings

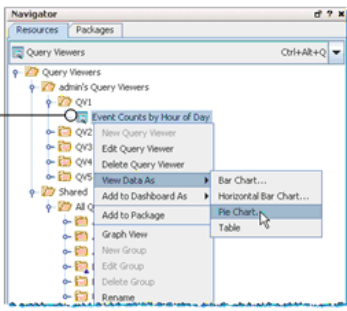
For example, for the Event Counts by Hour of Day query viewer, selecting Count (Event ID) for **Values** (the y axis) and Hour of Day (or Timestamp) for **Point Labels** (the x axis) results in the following display showing the event count for each hour of the day. The event count is depicted on the vertical y axis, with higher bars representing a higher event count for that hour. The hour of day (time) is represented on the horizontal x axis. The event count is shown for the last 24 hours starting at 11 am.



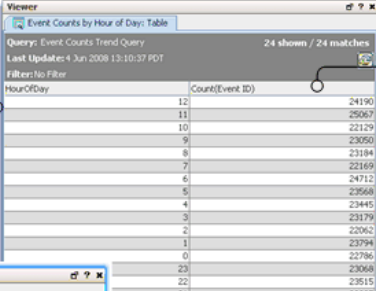
### Understanding the Results View

The results are displayed in the Viewer. The following example shows the “Event Counts By Hour of Day” query result as table, bar chart, pie chart.

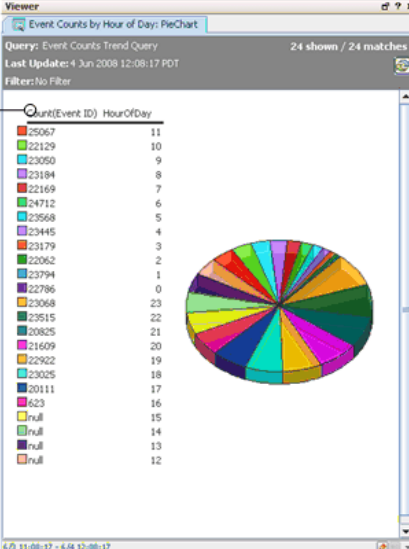
To run a query viewer, right-click one and choose **View Data as > <Display Format>**.



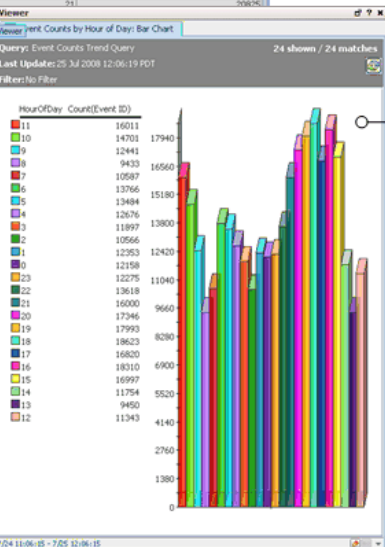
Depending on the display format you select, the query viewer results is shown as a bar chart, pie chart or table. (Right click query results in the viewer to generate a report.)



Query Viewer result for View Data as > Table



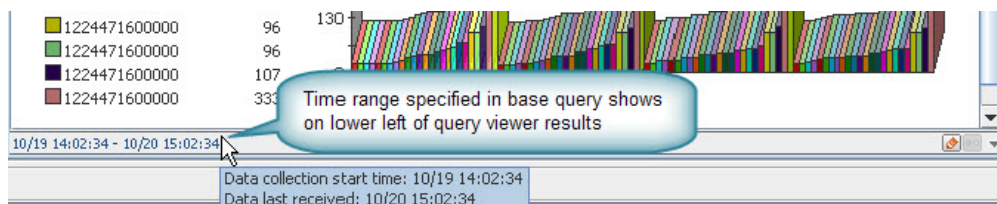
Query Viewer result for View Data as > Pie Chart



Query Viewer result for View Data as > Bar Chart

Notice that the time range for the base query is shown on the lower left of the query viewer results. Hover the cursor over the time range to see an annotated view of start and end times (data collection start time and data last received). This time range comes from the base query. (Another way to see the query time range is to open the query viewer in the editor and double-click **\*Query** in the Attributes display to drill down to the base query editor, which shows query start and end times.)

Following is the Time Range of Base Query:



## Working with Query Viewer Results

Various options are available to you with the different query result display formats (Bar Chart, Horizontal Bar Chart, Pie Chart, or Table).

Viewing query results in table format give you the ability to establish baselines and make comparisons, as well as manipulate the table data.



Note

Query viewers and channels display results from variable calculations differently. For example, a value may be displayed as -0.1 in a query viewer, and -0.099999999999... in a channel.

Such variations are due to differences in the way floating point operations are carried out.

Bar charts and pie charts provide at-a-glance, graphical overviews of the results but with fewer options for manipulating the data after the fact.

Other options, such as filtering a query viewer results or running reports, are available on all result views.

Details of working with each view format are provided in the following topics.

## Results in Table Format

To get results in Table format, right-click a query viewer and choose **View Data as > Table**. You can sort, re-order, and create/compare baselines for data in a table view.

Right-click a table column header to get a list of sort and edit options for the column.

The arrow next to a column header indicates the column is determining the current sort order for the table and shows the current sort order. (For example, this column is sorted showing highest count first.)

Left-click a table column header to sort or reverse-sort it. This affects the entire table.

You can add a baseline to a **table** view of query result data, then run **baseline** comparisons to identify deltas in network behavior.

Only **table views** of query result data can be baselined and compared.

## Investigate View Options

The following right-click **Investigate** options are available on query viewer results in *table* format (obtained by choosing **View Data as > Table**):

- **Baselines.** Right-click *anywhere on the table of results* in the Viewer to add a baseline or compare the current results to an existing baseline.
- **Drilldowns.** Right-click a *row* in the table result to launch a given drilldown on that row item (if drilldowns are provided in the query viewer).
- **Channels.** Right-click a *cell* in the table result to create an active channel with a filter based on the value of the selected table cell.

- **Conditions.** Right-click a *cell* in the table result to add a filter condition based on the value of the cell.



Note

The **Investigate** option is not available if your base query is not on events; for example, if the query is on a session list.

These options are described in detail in the table below.

Right-click a table in the Viewer over a table result to get **Investigate** options. (By default, add baselines and view available baselines here.)

If a query viewer includes drill-downs, these are shown as **Investigate** options (e.g., this one has drill-downs to source and destination addresses). Drill-downs are "row-specific". Right-click a row in a table view to get drill-down options for that row.

Right-click a cell (event Name, in this example) in the Viewer to get Investigate options to:

- create a channel for selected field
- add a condition (filter) to selected field

Investigate Options for Results are shown in the following table.

### Investigate Options

Option	Description
Add as baseline	<p>Add the current results as a baseline for the query viewer.</p> <p>Right-click <i>anywhere on the table result</i> in the Viewer to add a baseline to the query viewer or compare the current results to an existing baseline.</p> <p>(See <a href="#">"Defining and Using Baselines"</a> on page 245 and <a href="#">"Adding a Baseline"</a> on page 248.)</p>
Compare with: <Baseline>	<p>Compare the current results with the selected baseline.</p> <p>Right-click <i>anywhere on the table result</i> in the Viewer to compare the current results to an existing baseline.</p> <p>This menu option is available if there is one or more baselines established for the query viewer. All baselines associated with the query viewer are available from this menu for comparison.</p> <p>(See <a href="#">"Comparing Displayed Results to a Baseline"</a> on page 249.)</p>



---

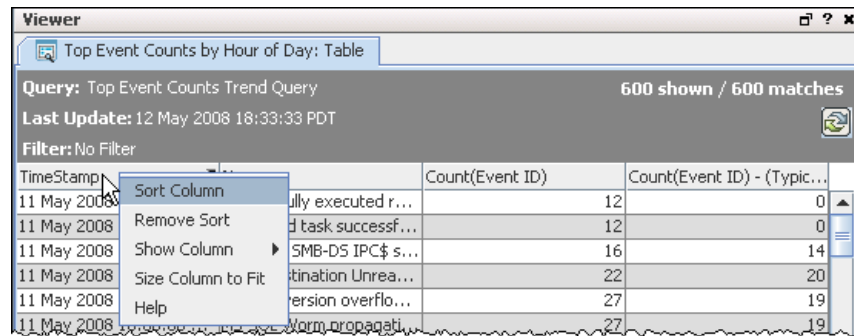
### Investigate Options (Continued)

Option	Description
Drilldowns	<p>Query viewers enable you to drill down to Active Channels, dashboards, query viewers, and reports. If the query includes an event ID or resource ID, you can also drill down to that resource. See <a href="#">“Viewing an Event or Resource Directly from the Query Viewer” on page 241</a> for details.</p> <p>If there are drilldowns associated with the query viewer, these are listed after the baseline options on the right-click Investigate menu for a selected row in the query viewer result.</p> <p>Right-click a <i>row</i> in the table result, and choose Investigate &gt; &lt;<i>Drilldown Option</i>&gt;.</p> <p>For example, an Events query viewer could provide drilldowns to view all source addresses for a selected event. Assuming each row in the result table represents an event, choosing this drilldown from the Investigate menu would lead to a table showing source addresses for the selected event.</p> <p>(See <a href="#">“Query Viewer Drilldowns” on page 261</a> and <a href="#">“Drilldown Example” on page 271</a>.)</p>
Create Channel	<p>Creates an active channel with a filter based on the selected cell in the table result.</p> <p>For example, right-clicking a table cell with an event name and choosing <b>Investigate &gt; Create Channel [EventName]</b> creates an active channel that monitors and filters for occurrences of that event name. The filter is always set to the value of the cell (which in this example would be the event name).</p> <p>For more information about using active channels, see <a href="#">“Viewing and Using Channels” on page 78</a>.</p>
Add Condition	<p>Brings up the Conditions Editor for the selected item, where you can add or modify conditions (filters) on the selected item.</p> <p>Right-click a <i>cell</i> in the query viewer table result to add a filter condition based on the value of the cell.</p> <p>For more information on working with Conditions, see <a href="#">“Common Conditions Editor (CCE)” on page 818</a>.</p>

---

### Column Sort, Display, and Edit Options

Right-click a column header in a query viewer table result to get various options on that column.

**Table 9-1** Column Header Options

Option	Description
Sort Column	<p>Sort items in the column in ascending or descending order.</p> <p>Columns that have been sorted after the query viewer run show an up or down arrow next to them to indicate the direction of the sort.</p> <p>You can also sort the column by left-clicking the column header. Clicking multiple times toggles the sort between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>ascending</b> order (indicated by a <b>up arrow</b> next to the header)</li> <li><b>descending</b> order (indicated by a <b>down arrow</b> next to the header)</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sorting on the contents of a column after a query viewer displays its results changes the view of the data provided by the original query. A query sorts during a query run, and then displays the data based on the sorting it did. If you click columns to re-sort, you are changing the sort order the query gave you. In the cases where the original query used a “single-column” sort, you can “get back” to it in the viewer, but you can’t get back to a multi-column sort because this is offered only in the query sort options, not on the Console UI.</li> <li>Keep in mind that this option sorts on the data result returned by the query. This in combination with query row limits (applied when the query is run) can sometimes yield unexpected results. <b>Example:</b> If the query is defined to run on 2 days’ worth of data but hits the 10,000 row limit after processing only 1 day of data, then only 1 day’s worth of data is returned in the result. An “after-query” sort, in this example, is a sort on only 1 day’s worth of data.</li> <li>Sorting at the query viewer level sorts only the data returned by the query to Viewer. Initial sorting is done by the base query, which is responsible for running against the database. If the query level sort is yielding unexpected results, keep in mind that the original base query sort determines how much you can modify the view of the result.</li> </ul> <p>See also <a href="#">“Sort Baseline Data” on page 251</a>.</p>
Remove Sort	<p>Remove a sort on the selected column. You can remove sorting imposed when the query viewer was run or when a UI column-click sort was done on the displayed result.</p>

**Table 9-1** Column Header Options (Continued)

Option

Description

Show Column

Right-click anywhere on any column header in a table to get a context menu of columns included in the display result.

Select columns to hide or show in the result. Columns with no checkmark beside them are hidden.

This is the equivalent of hiding or showing a column before the query viewer runs. (However, only columns configured to be included in the original query are available to hide/show after the query is run.)

To show a column in the results view that is currently hidden (whether before or after the query ran), right-click again and choose it (checkmark it).

See also [“Show or Hide Baseline Columns” on page 251](#).

Size to Fit

Expand the column, if needed, to accommodate the full width for text in each row of the selected column.

Drag-and-Drop options

Left-click-and-drag on a column header to reposition it in a different horizontal order in the table. For example, if the original query viewer result shows columns in this order:

TimeStamp	Name	Count(Event ID)
12 May 2008 18:00...	Monitor Event	5460
12 May 2008 18:00...	Top value count data monitor value current	807
12 May 2008 18:00...	NETBIOS SMB-DS DCERPC NTLMSSP asn1 ...	661
12 May 2008 18:00...	NETBIOS SMB-DS Session Setup AndX req...	658
12 May 2008 18:00...	Task successfully scheduled	40

You can click-and-drag **TimeStamp** to the right so that the columns display in this order:

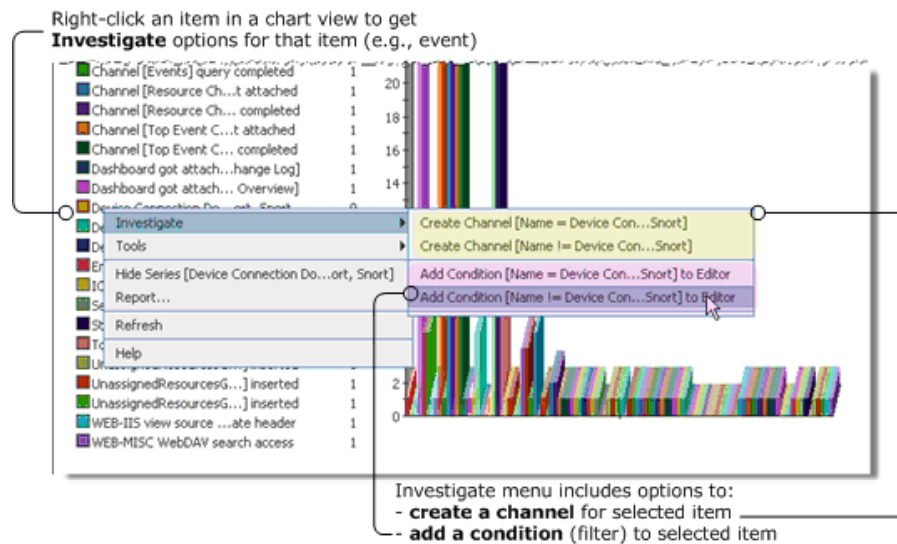
Name	TimeStamp	Count(Event ID)
Monitor Event	12 May 2008 18:00...	5460
Top value count data monitor value current	12 May 2008 18:00...	807
NETBIOS SMB-DS DCERPC NTLMSSP asn1 ...	12 May 2008 18:00...	661
NETBIOS SMB-DS Session Setup AndX req...	12 May 2008 18:00...	658
Task successfully scheduled	12 May 2008 18:00...	40

## Results in Chart Formats

To get results in Chart format, right-click a query viewer and choose either:

- **View Data as > Bar Chart** or **Horizontal Bar Chart**

■ **View Data as > Pie Chart.**



**Table 9-2** Chart Options

Chart Option	Description
Drilldowns	<p>Query viewers can provide <i>drilldowns</i> to <a href="#">Active Channels</a>. If the query includes an event ID or resource ID, you can also drill down to that resource. See <a href="#">“Viewing an Event or Resource Directly from the Query Viewer” on page 241</a> for details.</p> <p>If there are drilldowns associated with the query viewer, select an item in the first or <i>key</i> column, then right-click to get drilldown options in the Investigate menu.</p> <p>For example, an Events query viewer could provide drill-downs to view all source addresses for a selected event. Choosing this drilldown from the Investigate menu on a query result would lead to a table showing source addresses for the selected event.</p> <p>(See <a href="#">“Query Viewer Drilldowns” on page 261</a> and <a href="#">“Drilldown Example” on page 271</a>.)</p>
Create Channel	<p>Creates a channel on the selected item. (For example, right-clicking an event and choosing <b>Investigate &gt; Create Channel [EventName]</b> creates an active channel that monitors and filters for occurrences of that event.</p> <p>For more information about using active channels, see <a href="#">“Viewing and Using Channels” on page 78</a>.</p>
Add Condition	<p>Brings up the Conditions Editor for the selected item, where you can add or modify conditions (filters) on the selected item.</p> <p>For more information on working with Conditions, see <a href="#">“Common Conditions Editor (CCE)” on page 818</a>.</p>

## Filtering Query Viewer Results

You can filter query viewer results shown in table and chart formats.

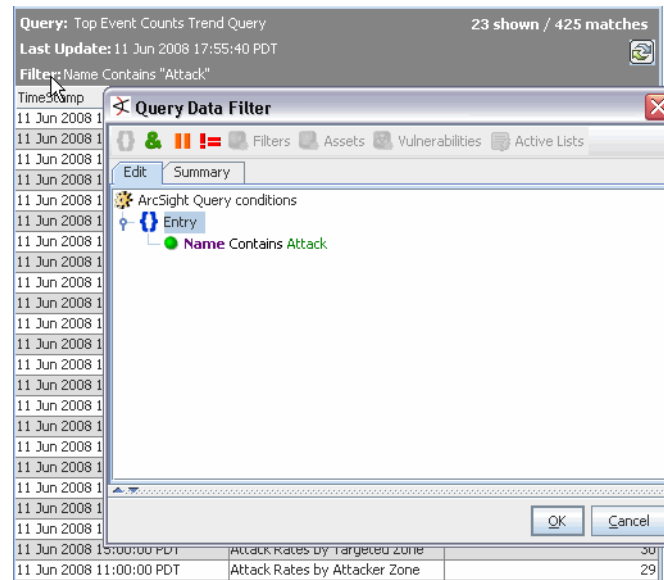
## Adding a Filter

### To filter query viewer results:

- 1 Click **Filter: No Filter** in the header of a query result view. (You can also right-click the filter name and choose **Edit Filter** from the context menu.)

The Common Conditions Editor (CCE) dialog opens.

- 2 Use the CCE dialog to add a filter. (For details on how to use the CCE dialog to create filters, see the topic on the [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818.](#))



- 3 Click **OK** to save the filter, and filter the current result view.



Filters on query viewer results are locally saved and available only while the current result set is displayed. These filters are not saved as a part of the query viewer. When you close the query viewer result, the filter is no longer available; recreate it on a new result set.



Filters can also be applied to baseline *delta* columns. (See [“Defining and Using Baselines” on page 245.](#))

## Removing a Filter

To remove a filter from a displayed query viewer result, right-click the filter name in the header of the result view and select **Remove Filter** from the context menu.

## Viewing an Event or Resource Directly from the Query Viewer

If your query viewer is for events or resources and the query viewer results include an event ID or resource ID field, you can go directly to a specific event or resource from the query viewer.

Right-click the event or resource and select **View > [Event Name] Details** or **View [Resource Name] Details**. For example, drill down to

- An event if the query includes the event ID field
- An actor if the query includes the actor ID field
- An asset if the query includes the asset ID field
- A case if the query includes the case ID field

## Troubleshooting Query Viewers

If queries time out, especially if your environment monitors high event rates (in the thousands per second). Try reducing the number of rows to the range of 100 to 1000 and see if there is an improvement. If that does not improve execution time, refer to the ESM Administrator's Guide's Troubleshooting appendix. Look for the topic, *Query and Trend Performance Tuning*.

## Adding Query Viewers to Dashboards

You can add a query viewer result to a dashboard. Refer to [“Adding a Query Viewer to a Dashboard” on page 107](#).

For more information about working with dashboards, see [“Using Dashboards” on page 102](#).


## Making Query Viewer Results Available to ArcSight Web

Query viewer results on dashboards are accessible from ArcSight Web. For more information, see [“ArcSight Web” on page 762](#).

For more information about working with dashboards, see [“Using Dashboards” on page 102](#).

## Adding Query Viewers as Startup Views

**To set up Query Viewers as the startup view for a group:**

- 1 Select **Users** in the Navigator.
- 2 Right-click a group and choose **Edit Groups** from the context menu.
- 3 In the editor for the selected group, click **Startup Views** tab, then click **Query Viewers** subtab.
- 4 Click **Add** (  **Add...** ) to bring up the Query Viewer Selector.
- 5 In the Query Viewer Selector dialog, navigate to and select (checkmark) the query viewer you want as the startup query viewer for this group and click **OK**.  
  
The full path to the query viewer you selected is shown on the Query Viewers tab in Startup Views.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save your changes and leave the group editor open, or click **OK** to save and close the group editor.

For more information on editing groups and startup views, see [“Editing User Groups” on page 602](#) and [“Setting Startup Views” on page 603](#).



Regardless of startup view settings for groups, the Query Viewers you have showing when you close the Console are reloaded when you restart the Console.

## Generating Reports from Query Viewers

After you run a query viewer, you can generate a simple report containing the results.



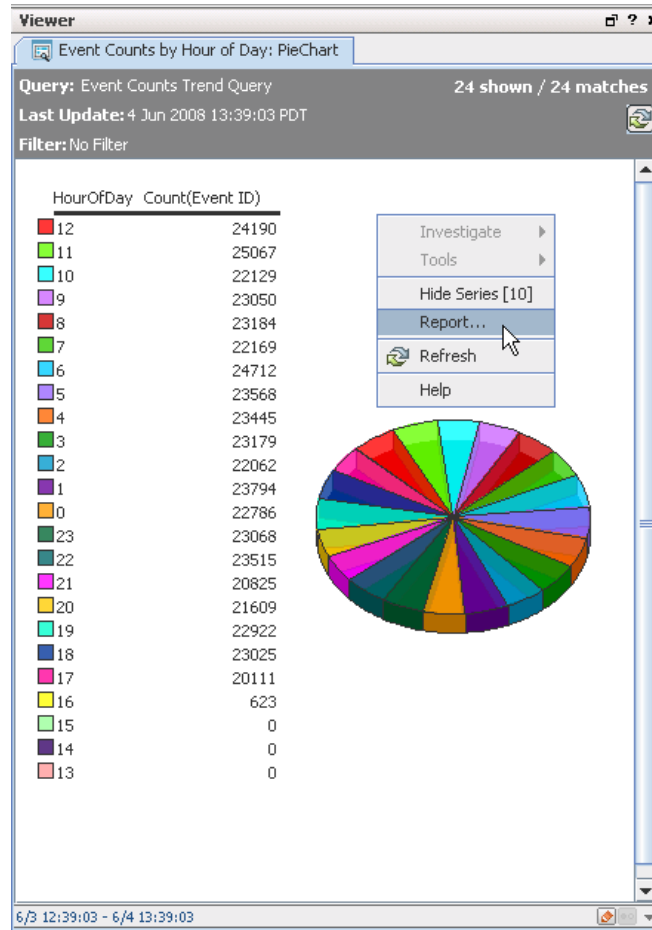
The report display format is based on the query viewer result display. For example, if you chose to view query data as a *pie chart*, the generated report shows the same pie chart view. To generate a report showing results for the same query as a *bar chart* or *table*, you would need to re-run the query viewer (<Query Viewer> > View Data as) in one of those formats, and then generate the report from that view.

The report contents might not include as much data as the query viewer result shown in the Console for these reasons:

- Reports on pie charts and bar charts have a default row limit of 25. This is user-configurable. You can set a higher or lower row limit on the Report Parameters dialog you get when you run the report. (See [Step 2 on page 244](#).)
- Reports on *tables* have no hard limit on number of rows in the table.
- Data viewed in *chart* format has a hard limit of no more than 99 rows, therefore reports on charts have the same hard limit of no more than 99 rows displayed on the Console and Web user interface.

### To generate a report on a query viewer:

- 1 Right-click the query viewer results table or chart (anywhere in the Viewer panel) and click **Report**.



- 2 Specify the options on the Report Parameters dialog or take the defaults and click **OK**.





- For more about Report row limits, see these Tips and [related information on page 243](#).
- If you click **Save Output** on the Report Parameters dialog, you get additional options for setting archived report “Save Output Parameters”.

For more help on setting report parameters, see [“Report Parameters” on page 381](#).

- 3 When the report is ready, a dialog gives you the option of opening it to view it now or saving it to a location you specify through a file browser.

Choose **Open** to view the report or **Save** to save it in a specified location.



Reports initiated from query viewers are provided for convenience as a quick way to share the result data. Query viewer reports are limited to displaying data from the single query covered by the query viewer and retain the format of the chart or table in which the query viewer results are displayed. For information on creating and publishing richer, highly formatted reports on multiple data sources see [Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275](#) and [Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379](#).

## Defining and Using Baselines

You can establish a particular set of query results as a **baseline** snapshot against which to compare the results of other runs of the same query. Comparing the results of the same query run at different times and in different contexts highlights the *deltas* (differences) and helps identify areas that vary significantly from normal.

You can define baselines and run comparisons with any query viewer that:

- Lends itself well to a table format display
- Includes one or more key fields by which to locate matching entries between the baseline and currently displayed information.

For example, suppose you have a query that returns the top 10 event counts by name and you want to compare it against some baseline. A reasonable comparison would be between

similarly named events in both sets of data. In this case, the event name would be used as the key field.



- **Baselines are applicable only to table views of result data.** Baselines do not apply to graphical views such as pie charts, bar charts, and so on. You always have the option to view query data from any query viewer as a graphical chart or a table, but the baseline data is only accessible from the table view of the data.
  - **Baselines require one or more key fields** by which to locate matches between the baseline and the displayed data. The key fields must be built into the query viewer to which you want to add a baseline.
  - **Values for Key fields must be unique.** When adding baselines, make sure key fields in the query viewer have unique values. (See the **Fields** tab in the query viewer editor.) Also, check the query viewer start and end times (on the **Attributes** tab in the query viewer editor) to make sure the time frame over which the query runs makes sense.
- 

You can add one or more baselines to a single query viewer, and delete them as needed.

## Why Baselines are Useful

In addition to providing a way to compare result data from different query runs, baselines provide an efficient way to save, annotate, and retrieve data that might otherwise be too difficult to access in any meaningful way.

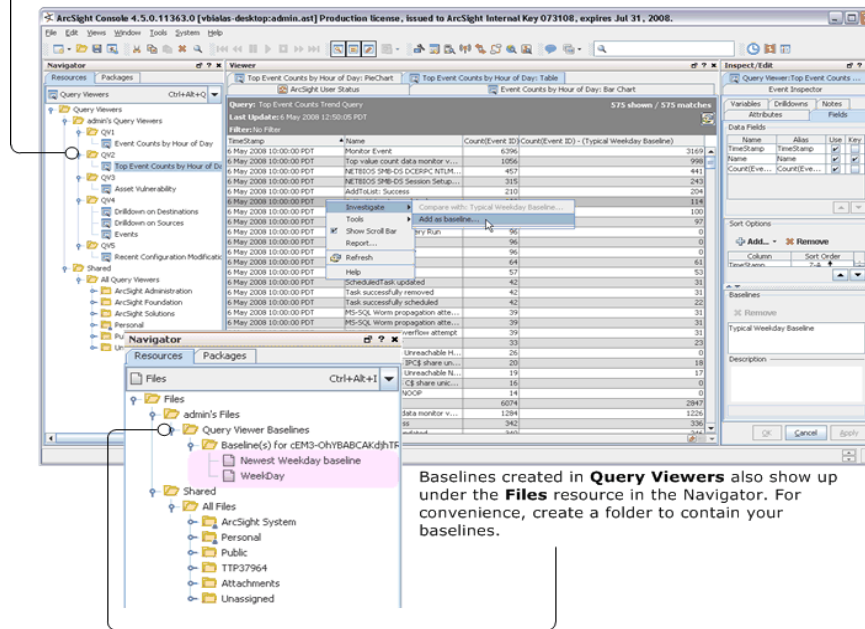
Once a baseline is defined, it is preserved as a File resource that is associated with the query viewer. In the Navigator, choose **Files** and expand the **Attachments** folder to view the new baseline files you created.



The query viewer baseline files in the `Files\Attachments` folder appear along with other files in alphabetical order. For your convenience, in the Files resource, you may add a folder (add a group) to contain only your baselines. You can name it `<yourname> Baselines` and drag your own baseline files from Attachments to your own folder. The baseline files always remain in Attachments but a link is established from files in Attachments to the files in your own folder.

---

In **Query Viewers**, you can create, save, and use baselines to compare result data from the same query viewer run at different times and dates.



Baselines created in **Query Viewers** also show up under the **Files** resource in the Navigator. For convenience, create a folder to contain your baselines.

Baselines are automatically saved in the Attachments folder. For convenience, create another folder and drag your baselines there.

With Query Viewer baselines, you can:

- Retrieve the snapshot baseline data by running comparisons against it.
- Compare current result data against one or multiple baselines.
- Get meta-information about the baseline (such as when it was saved, by whom, and comments).
- Sort, show, or hide the baseline comparison columns.
- Maintain the baseline data as a Files resource baseline even if the original data is lost or is too performance-intensive to re-generate (for example, an aggregation query). (All baselines are automatically added as Files resources when they are created.)
- Add and remove baselines as needed, and edit some meta-information on baselines (for example, description comments).
- Use filters on the baseline (*delta*) columns. For example, you could filter on a baseline column to find where the current results differ from the baseline by more than some specified value.

## Planning for Baseline Comparisons

Query viewer baselines might prove most useful if you take a little time to identify some goals for their use or questions you want answered, and then plan how to implement the baselines for those purposes. Here are some suggestions to start off with.

- 1 Establish questions or goals for baseline comparison monitoring and identify the type of data you want to evaluate.

For example, you might want to determine what type of event traffic is at its highest at different times of day or when network attacks tend to increase. Or, you might notice a spike in certain query viewer results (such as more logins from a particular user) and decide to compare the behavior against a sampling of results from subsequent or previous query runs.

- 2 Identify the query viewer (and associated query) appropriate to use. If the query viewer you need is not provided, you can develop it. See [“Customizing Query Viewers” on page 253](#) for more information on this.

For example, if you want to monitor what type of event traffic is at its highest, you could establish a baseline for a query viewer that returns “Top Event Counts by Hour of Day.” You could also use a query viewer *baseline* to take snapshots of event counts throughout the day, either for record-keeping or to explore and compare later.

- 3 Monitor results for your chosen query (by running the query viewer) to identify a “typical” or “normal” result set to use as a baseline.
- 4 Add (capture) the baseline from the typical/normal result set.
- 5 Monitor subsequent results for variation (spikes, dips) or time periods against which you want to compare with the baseline, and run baseline comparisons on these.

## Adding a Baseline

A baseline is a snapshot of the current results that can be used later as a reference point to compare other query result views. Baselines are often added to capture “normal” network behavior, so that when spikes, dips, or other anomalies surface, these can be compared against the baseline.

Baselines can only be defined on numeric data (because they are designed to show *deltas*, the difference or change between two values).

### To add a baseline to a query viewer:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Query Viewers** resource.
- 2 Select and run the query viewer (containing the query) for which you want to define a baseline.

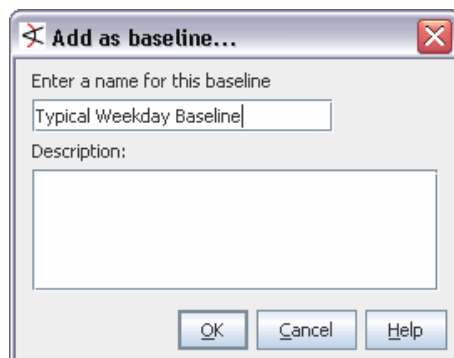
To do this, right-click the query viewer and choose **View Data As > Table**.



Baselines are applicable only to table views of result data.

The query viewer result is displayed in the Viewer.

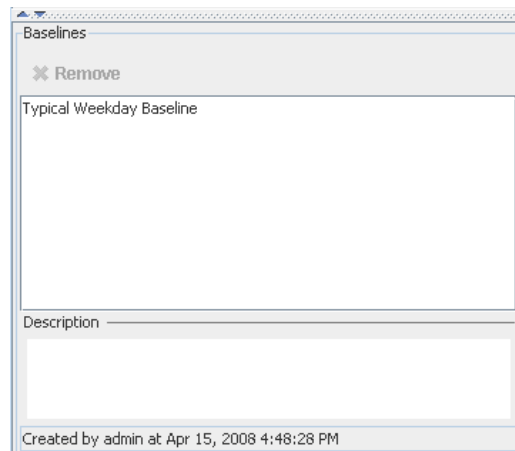
- 3 Right-click anywhere in the results table in the Viewer, and select **Investigate > Add as baseline** to get the Add a baseline dialog.



- 4 Enter a name for the baseline, optional description, and click **OK** to add it.

This saves the current query result data as a named baseline for the selected query viewer, and makes it available for use (through **Investigate > Compare with...** against results from other runs of the same query viewer).

The baseline is shown on the Fields tab of the query viewer to which you added it.



If the query viewer editor is not currently displayed, double-click the same query viewer in the Navigator panel to open it in the editor. Click the query viewer editor **Fields** tab.

## Comparing Displayed Results to a Baseline

Once you establish a baseline for a query, you can compare subsequent results for the same query against the baseline.



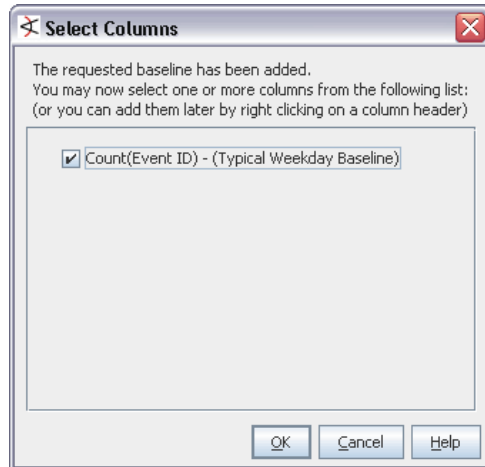
- Baseline comparisons, like baselines, can only be derived from *table* views of the query viewer results. (Select a query and choose View Data as > Table. See [“Results in Table Format” on page 235.](#))
- The query viewer you select for baseline comparison needs to have at least one baseline already added to it. Baselines are shown on the **Fields** tab of the Query Viewer editor.

### To run a comparison:

- 1 If you do not already have a table view of the data you want to compare, right-click the query viewer you want to evaluate against a baseline, and choose **View Data as > Table** from the Navigator menu.
- 2 In the Viewer, right-click anywhere on the table view results and select **Investigate > Compare with: <SomeBaseline>**.

The comparison data is collected and added as a new column. You have the option of hiding or showing it in the table as needed.

- 3 Make your selections on the Select columns table and click **OK**.



If you selected the comparison column, it is displayed on the table next to the original results for that column.

Events: Table		
Query: Events		10 shown / 10 matches
Last Update: 1 Aug 2008 16:40:14 PDT		
Filter: No Filter		
Name	COUNT(Events)	COUNT(Events) - (Typical Weekday Baseline)
Monitor Event	14071	-929
Top value count data monitor val...	10209	1209
ICMP PING	976	
ICMP PING *NIX	852	-57
ICMP PING BSDtype	852	-56
NETBIOS SMB-DS DCERPC NTLM...	678	74
NETBIOS SMB-DS Session Setup ...	317	99
AddToList: Success	238	0
ActiveList entry updated	233	0
Starting Trend Query	192	0

Note that differences between the current values and the baseline can be positive or negative, as shown in the example comparison above. A positive value in the baseline comparison indicates more events in your current sample, compared to the baseline. A negative value in the baseline comparison indicates fewer events in your current sample, compared to the baseline. If the baseline field for a row is null, this indicates that no baseline value was available for that key.



Tip

- By the time the Select Columns dialog is displayed, the Baseline comparison is already available. If you select columns, those are displayed in the viewer on the Table result.
- After running a baseline comparison, the right-click over Table **Investigate > Compare with <Baseline>** option for the baseline you just ran is grayed out (even if you chose not to immediately select any columns or clicked Cancel on the Select Columns dialog). This is because the baseline is already added.
- To show or hide more columns (including baseline columns), right-click the column header, choose **Show Column**, and check (enable) or un-check (disable) columns. See also [“Show or Hide Baseline Columns” on page 251](#)

## Show or Hide Baseline Columns

You can always show or hide columns, including baseline columns. To do this right-click anywhere in the table header (on any of the column titles), choose **Show Column** > *<SomeField>*.

Name	Count(Event ID)	Count(Event ID) - (Typical Weekday Baseline)
Sort Column	6990	6905
Remove Sort	5896	5811
Show Column	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TimeStamp	5734
Size Column to Fit	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Name	5726
Help	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Count(Event ID)	5619
Monitor Event	<input type="checkbox"/> Count(Event ID) - (Reference Baseline)	5600
Monitor Event	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Count(Event ID) - (Typical Weekday Baseline)	5545
Monitor Event		5375
Monitor Event		5375

See also [“Column Sort, Display, and Edit Options”](#) on page 237.

## Sort Baseline Data

You can perform an after-query sort on baseline comparison data by clicking the column headers. A pre-query sort for baseline data is not available. (That is, there is no option to add a sort as a part of the baseline in the query viewer definition.)

The screenshot shows a window titled "Viewer" with a tab "Events: Table". The query is "Events" and it shows 10 matches. The last update was on 1 Aug 2008 16:40:14 PDT. The filter is "No Filter". The table has three columns: "Name", "COUNT(Events)", and "COUNT(Events) - (Typical Weekday Baseline)". A context menu is open over the third column header, showing options: "Sort Column", "Remove Sort", "Show Column", "Size Column to Fit", and "Help".

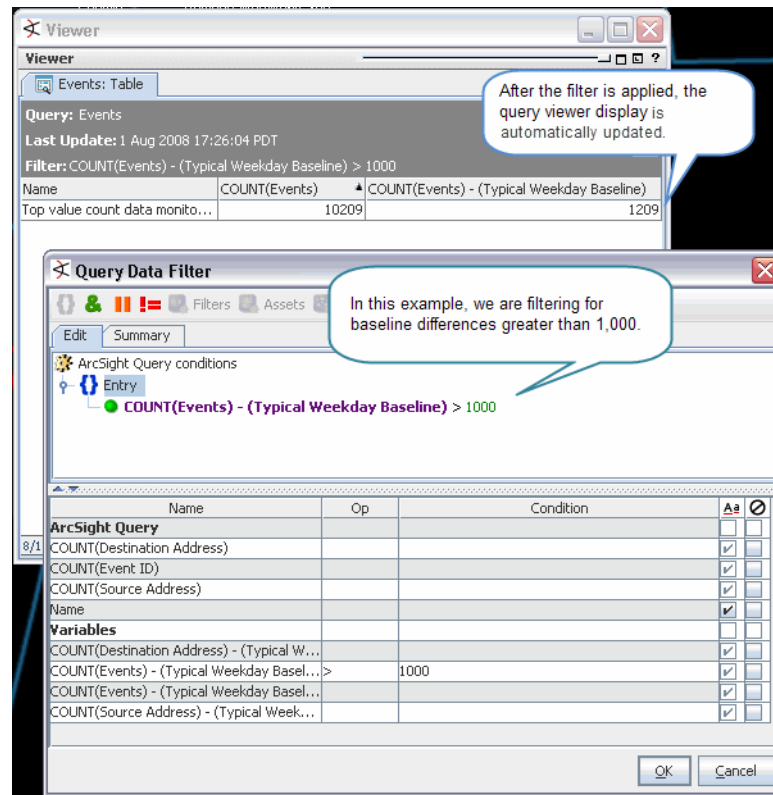
Name	COUNT(Events)	COUNT(Events) - (Typical Weekday Baseline)
Monitor Event	14071	29
Top value count data monitor valu...	10209	09
ICMP PING	976	06
ICMP PING BSDtype	852	06
ICMP PING *NIX	852	07
NETBIOS SMB-DS DCERPC NTLM...	678	04
NETBIOS SMB-DS Session Setup A...	317	99
AddToList: Success	238	0
ActiveList entry updated	233	0
Starting Trend Query	192	0

See also [“Column Sort, Display, and Edit Options”](#) on page 237.

## Filter Baseline Data

You can filter on the baseline comparison column the same way you would filter on any other column. Click the **Filter** in the query viewer header to bring up the Query Data Filter dialog. Enter your filter conditions and click **OK**. After the filter is applied, the query viewer automatically updates.

The Query Data Filter is based on the Common Conditions Editor (CCE). For information about using the CCE to define filters, see [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)”](#) on page 818.



## Removing a Baseline

Baselines, like the queries themselves, are associated with and contained in query viewers. To remove a baseline, you remove it from the list of baselines in the query viewer editor.



Tip

Removing a baseline from a query viewer is different from hiding or showing a baseline column in a query result. If all you want to do is temporarily hide a baseline column in a results table, use the right-click "Show Column" option in the Viewer on the results table as described in ["Column Sort, Display, and Edit Options" on page 237](#) in ["Results in Table Format" on page 235](#).

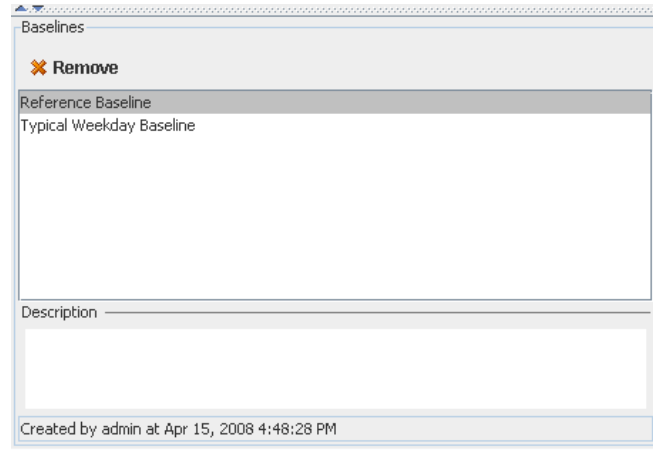
### To remove a baseline from a query viewer:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click the query viewer containing the baseline you want to remove and select **Edit Query Viewer**.

This opens the editor for the query viewer in the Inspect/Edit panel.

- 2 In the editor, click the **Fields** tab.
- 3 Under Baselines, select the baseline you want to remove and click **Remove**.





- 4 Click **Apply** to save your changes to the query viewer, or click **OK** to save changes and close the editor.

Note that there is no confirm dialog for this Remove baseline action, but if you do not want to save your changes, click **Cancel** and the baseline is not removed.

## Customizing Query Viewers

Query viewers provide a shortcut alternative to running SQL queries as a part of reporting. Keep in mind that query viewers use base queries, so a first step in creating a query viewer is deciding what SQL query you want to use. If you can't find one that does what you want, you'll need to create one first, before defining your query viewer.

### Creating a New Query Viewer

The high-level steps for creating a query viewer are as follows:

- 1 Identify your questions and what information you are looking for. (For example, "What types of actions represent the highest volume of events on my network during various times of day?")
- 2 Based on the question you want answered, decide what kind of query you need and determine whether it is available or you have to create it.

If you do not find a suitable query when you browse the choices under Reports/Queries (or on the Query Viewer "Query" field "Select a Query" drop-down menu), you can create one. To get started creating a new query, navigate to **Reports**, and click the **Queries** tab. For more information see ["Building Queries" on page 299](#).

When you know which query you want to use and have either found a pre-built one or created a new one, you are ready to create a query viewer that uses that query.

- 3 Select **Query Viewers** in the Navigator.
- 4 Right-click a group (folder) and select **New Query Viewer**. This launches the Query Viewer Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.



As a general rule, it is best to create new content in the user's own folder.

Note

- 5 Define general attributes for the query viewer as described in [“Query Viewer Attributes” on page 254](#). At a minimum, fill in the required values (red asterisks) on the **Attributes** tab (query viewer name and “base query” to use).
- 6 Choose the **Fields** to display for the query viewer as described in [“Query Viewer Fields” on page 257](#). (Fields are inherited from those available in the base query.)
- 7 Define **Variables** for use in the query viewer as described in [“Query Viewer Variables” on page 260](#) (optional).
- 8 Specify any **Drilldowns** you want to make available as described in [“Query Viewer Drilldowns” on page 261](#) (optional).
- 9 Click **Apply** or **OK** to create the new query.



Note

Be sure to click **Apply** or **OK** frequently to save settings periodically as you work through the above steps. Clicking **Apply** saves settings and leaves the Editor open. Clicking **OK** saves settings and closes the Editor for this query. If you do not apply or accept settings using these buttons, your settings are not saved.

The following sections provide details on defining attributes, fields, variables, and drilldowns for a query viewer.

## Defining Query Viewer Settings

Use the Query Viewer Editor to build a new query viewer or edit an existing one. Query viewer settings are defined on multiple sub-tabs.



Tip

- To access the editor for a query viewer, follow the first steps in either [“Creating a New Query Viewer” on page 253](#) or [“Editing a Query Viewer” on page 261](#).)
- If you want to edit more than one query viewer at a time, choose **Edit > Preferences** from the Console menu, then click **Global Options**. On the Global Options panel, check **Allow multiple editors of the same type**, then click **OK** to save the change and close the Preferences dialog. For more on setting Console preferences, see [“Changing User Preferences” on page 732](#), especially the subtopic [“Changing Global Options Like Panel and Editor Characteristics” on page 734](#).

## Query Viewer Attributes

The following fields in the **Query Viewer** section are attributes to specify when creating a new query viewer.

**Table 9-3** Query Viewer Options

Query Fields	Description
Name	Name for the query viewer. Spaces and special characters are allowed. This is a required attribute.

**Table 9-3** Query Viewer Options (Continued)

Query Fields	Description
Query	<p>Specifies the <b>base query</b> used in this query viewer. This is a required attribute.</p> <p>If you are creating a new query viewer:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click this field to get a drop-down menu showing all available queries on this Manager. You can choose from queries created for reports, for other query viewers, or a new query you created specifically for this query viewer.</li> </ol> <p>If you want to create a new query, you need to do this first before creating the query viewer. (See also <a href="#">“Building Queries” on page 299.</a>)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 From the drop-down menu, select the query you want to use.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are editing an existing query viewer, the Query field is not editable since the base query is set at the time the query viewer is created. If you want to use a different base query, create a new query viewer.</p>
Refresh Data After	<p>Sets an amount of time (in minutes or hours) after which the query viewer automatically runs again and shows new data based on that most recent run. The query viewer is regularly refreshed based on the specified refresh time period.</p> <p>The default for this setting is after every 15 minutes. To change this default:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click the field to activate the settings.</li> <li>2 In the left-hand field, enter a numeral, and in the right-hand drop-down menu, select minutes or hours.</li> </ol>
Query Time Out	<p>Defines a time out limit in which the query must return results. If the query does not complete and send results within the specified time out period, the Manager stops the query run.</p> <p>By default, a time-out of 300 seconds (5 minutes) is configured on the Manager in <code>server.defaults.properties</code>. If you do not specify a Query Time Out in the Attributes tab, this time-out of 5 minutes applies (even if the Query Time Out field shows “None”). If you specify a time out here, then that one is used instead of the default.</p> <p>Setting a a time out limit is good practice especially if the event rate (events per second or <i>EPS</i>) is unusually high, start/end time range is large, or the query is complex. Time outs can help guard against infinite or long running queries that impact system performance. Although this is less of an issue with query viewers since they are designed to minimize impact on system performance, this can still be an issue in some scenarios.</p> <p>Setting time outs can be a useful troubleshooting technique for new queries, or existing queries in new scenarios, for example where event counts spike higher.</p>
Default View	<p>The Default View attribute determines how the result data are displayed when you double-click the query viewer to open the results in the Viewer panel.</p> <p>Define the default (double-click) view format for this query viewer. The choices are to show data as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Table (this is the default)</li> <li>• Pie chart</li> <li>• Bar chart</li> </ul> <p>Double-clicking a query viewer in the Navigator displays result data in the format set here.</p> <p>If you choose <b>Pie Chart</b> or <b>Bar Chart</b> as the default view format, choose fields to use for the <b>Values Column</b> (to plot the y axis points on a bar chart or slice sizes on a pie chart) and <b>Points Labels</b> column (to plot the x axis labels on a bar chart or slice labels on a pie chart). The Values Column and Points Labels are also described in <a href="#">“Select fields for Values and Point Labels.” on page 232.</a></p>

**Table 9-3** Query Viewer Options (Continued)

Query Fields	Description
Values Column	<p>The <b>Values</b> field applies to bar charts and pie charts. This setting provides fields in the query result that contain data types. The value chosen is used as the numbers by which to plot the vertical y axis points on a bar chart or the slice sizes on a pie chart.</p> <p>Values typically represent an unknown set of values, like a count. A common example of numeric data appropriate for values is a time like <code>HourOfDay</code> or a count like <code>Count (Event ID)</code>.</p>
Point Labels Column	<p>The <b>Point Labels</b> field applies to bar charts and pie charts. This setting provides fields in the query result that contain non-numeric data types. The point labels are used to plot the horizontal x axis labels on a bar chart or the slice labels on a pie chart.</p> <p>Examples of non-numeric data types appropriate for point labels are timestamps, strings such as are used for event names, and different types of addresses such as IP or MAC addresses. Point labels are typically a known set of limited values (like hours in a day denoted by timestamps).</p>
<p>Setting the following attributes (start time, end time, or row limit) in the Query Viewer overrides these settings in the base query. (See <a href="#">related information on page 255</a> about defining the base query in the <i>Query</i> attribute.)</p>	
Start Time	<p>Specifies the starting point for the data gathering.</p> <p>A drop-down menu provides values to select based on <a href="#">Velocity Templates</a> (such as <code>\$Now</code>, <code>\$Now - 1d</code>, and so on). You can also provide a timestamp such as: <code>27 Jul 2008 16:00:00 PDT</code>.</p> <p>For more on timestamps and timestamp variables, see <a href="#">"Timestamps" on page 977</a>, <a href="#">"Timestamp Variables" on page 979</a>, and <a href="#">"Variables" on page 982</a>.</p>
End Time	<p>Specifies an end point for the data gathering.</p> <p>A drop-down menu provides values to select based on <a href="#">Velocity Templates</a> (such as <code>\$Now</code>, <code>\$Now - 1d</code>, and so on). You can also provide a timestamp such as: <code>28 Jul 2008 16:00:00 PDT</code>.</p> <p>For more on timestamps and velocity references, see <a href="#">"Timestamps" on page 977</a>, <a href="#">"Timestamp Variables" on page 979</a>, and <a href="#">"Variables" on page 982</a>.</p>
Row Limit	<p>Set the row limit for the data table.</p> <p>The default for all new base queries is the maximum allowable, which is 10,000 rows.</p> <p>If the default is not changed in the base query, and no limit is specified here in the query viewer, the result shows up 10,000 rows of data.</p>

Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642](#).

**Inspect/Edit**

Event Inspector | Query Viewer: Event Counts by H...

Attributes | Fields | Variables | Drilldowns | Notes

**Query Viewer**

* Name	Event Counts by Hour of Day
* Query	Event Counts Trend Query
Refresh Data After	None
Query Time Out	None
Default View	Table
Values Column	
Point Labels Column	

**Common**

Resource ID	cFm5wilh8BABCAD-IXWBgdhA==
External ID	
Alias	
Description	
Version ID	
Deprecated	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Assign**

Owner	
Notification Groups	

**Creation Information**

Created By	admin
Creation Time	20 Feb 2009 17:27:51 PST
Time Since Creation	1 sec(s)

**Last Update Information**

Last Updated By	admin
Last Update Time	20 Feb 2009 17:27:51 PST
Time Since Last Update	1 sec(s)

**Parent Groups**

admin's Query Viewers	/All Query Viewers/Personal/admin's Qu...
-----------------------	---

(Name)  
(Description)

Name	Value	Use Default
<b>Query Parameters</b>		
Start Time	\$Now - 25h	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
End Time	\$Now	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Row Limit	10000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK Cancel Apply Help

## Query Viewer Fields

To define the data display, click the query viewer **Fields** tab.

**Inspect/Edit**

Event Inspector | Query Viewer: Event Counts by H...

Attributes | **Fields** | Variables | Drilldowns | Notes

**Data Fields**

Name	Alias	Use	Key
HourOfDay	HourOfDay	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Count(Event ID)	Count(Event ID)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
TimeStamp	TimeStamp	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Sort Options

+ Add... - Remove

Column	Sort Order
TimeStamp	Z-A ↑

Baselines

- Remove

Newest Weekday baseline

WeekDay

Description

OK Cancel Apply Help

## Data Fields

The data fields shown on this tab are inherited from the base query. When a query viewer is first created, the data fields are shown here with the same settings they inherited from the base query for **Use** and **Key** fields. So, initially all fields are enabled for **Use** and fields that are grouped by columns in the base query show as **Key** fields here.

You have the option of overriding the base query settings for **Use** and **Key** settings on inherited data fields in the query viewer. (Settings here do not affect the base query.) You can override these settings when you first create the query viewer, or when you edit it later.

Select (check) **Use** for fields to display in the query viewer results. Fields not selected to **Use** do not show up in the query results.

Optionally, you can select one or more fields to use as **Key** fields. Key fields are columns that can be used to uniquely identify a role in the query. Only the fields selected as keys are used when doing baseline comparisons.

**Data Fields**


Name	Alias	Use	Key
TimeStamp	TimeStamp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Name	Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Count(Event ID)	Count(Event ID)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>





The query viewer displays results from these columns, showing them from left to right in the order specified. The above settings would result in a query viewer that shows Timestamp as the left-most column, followed by Name, and so forth. You can re-order the columns by selecting a row and clicking the up or down arrow to move it.

## Sort Options

The query viewer inherits the sort options from the base query, but you can override those sort options here, without affecting the base query.

You can add data fields from the base query to sort the query results in the query viewer display.

Click **Add** (  ) to get the list of available fields and select those you want to sort on.

Column	Sort Order
TimeStamp	Z-A 
Count(Event ID)	A-Z 
 	

In the example above, the Timestamp is sorted from newest to oldest. Data with the newest Timestamp is at the top of the list. Data with the oldest Timestamp is at the bottom of the list. (This is indicated by the Z-A sort order and up arrow.) In a case where multiple rows have the same Timestamp, these are sorted by the Count(Event ID) from smallest to largest (as indicated by the A-Z sort order and down arrow).

You can change the priority of a column by selecting a column and clicking the up or down arrow to move it.

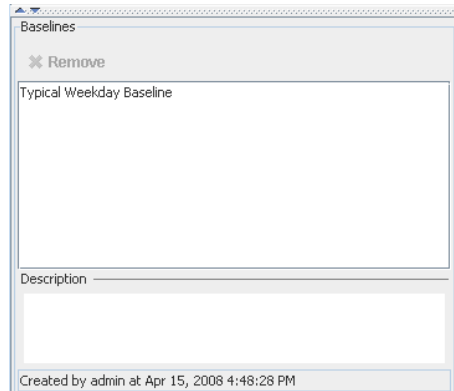
**Note:** It is possible to sort on fields that you choose not to display in the query result.

Suppose you decide to hide the timestamp and count (event ID) columns. In the query viewer Sort Options, you can still sort by Count (Event ID) and Timestamp.

The list of event names and results for this query viewer display in this multi-column sort order by timestamp and count (event ID), but those *columns* do not show up in the display.


## Baselines

If any baselines have been set on results returned on this query viewer, those are listed in the Baselines area of the Fields tab.



Baselines are created on query results tables using the right-click popup option **Investigate > Add as baseline...** after a query runs. (See [“Defining and Using Baselines”](#) on page 245.)

When a query has one or more baselines available, you can compare the current results of a table view with the baseline.

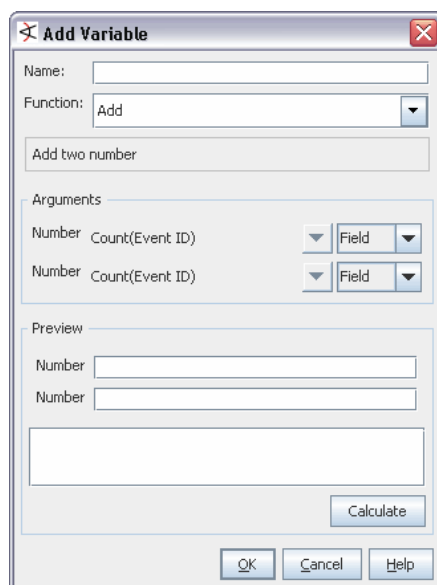
To remove baselines from the query viewer, click the **Fields** tab, select the baseline name, and click **Remove** (  ). Be sure to click **OK** or **Apply** on the Query Viewer Editor to save your changes.

If you remove the baselines from the query viewer definition, they are not available on the next run of the query viewer.

## Query Viewer Variables

To add a local variable, click the **Variables** tab.

- Provide a name for the local variable.
- Choose a function from the drop-down Function menu.
- Fill in other details as needed and click **OK** to add the variable to the query viewer.





The variable you add here shows up in the following views:

- As a field in the Fields tab in the query viewer editor definition (including the options to **Use** and use as a **Key** field)
- As a column in the query viewer result (If the query viewer result is displayed in the viewer when you add the variable, the variable shows up immediately as a column in the result.)

For example, you can add a Timestamp Function (such as GetHour, GetDayOfWeek, GetDayOfMonth, and so forth).



**Note**

#### A query viewer local variable cannot be promoted to a global variable

Local variables defined for data from events, actors, cases, and assets can be promoted to a global variable.

Local variables defined for a query viewer cannot be promoted to a global variable. Query viewers operate on queries, which have their own distinct schema for each instance. A local variable defined for a query viewer is likely only applicable to the specific query viewer it applies to.

For more on using variables in resources, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

For more information on global variables (which can be used in queries), see [“Global Variables” on page 445](#).

## Query Viewer Drilldowns

Adding **drilldown** capability to a query viewer provides the user the option of getting more focused views (by means of additional query viewers) on particular aspects of a single item (asset, case, event, and so on) in the query result.

As a first step in adding drilldown capability to a query viewer, decide what kind of information you want the user to be able to focus on and then create query viewers that get that information.

For example, suppose you have a query viewer that returns the top 10 most frequent events by name. The query viewer might also show timestamps for the events and other information, depending on the base query it leverages and what fields are hidden or shown in the query viewer.


For instructions on adding and managing drilldowns, refer to [“Managing Drilldowns” on page 262](#).

## Editing a Query Viewer

- 1 Navigate to **Query Viewers** in the Navigator panel and select the query viewer you want to modify.
- 2 Right-click the query viewer and select **Edit Query Viewer** from the context menu. This launches the Query Viewer Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, and shows the definition for the selected query viewer.
- 3 Edit the query viewer definition as needed. (See [“Customizing Query Viewers” on page 253](#) for details.)

- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes. (Click **Cancel** to exit the Query Viewer editor without saving changes.)



To edit a query viewer for which results are currently displayed in the Viewer, click the Edit Query Viewer button  on the lower right of the Viewer.

The results display for the query viewer you want to edit must have focus (that is, be on top) in the Viewer.

## Deleting a Query Viewer

- 1 Navigate to **Query Viewers** in the Navigator panel, right-click the query viewer you want to delete, and select **Delete Query Viewer**.

A confirmation dialog is displayed.

- 2 Click **Delete** to confirm your choice and delete the query viewer. (Or click **Cancel** if you decide you do not want to delete it.)

## Managing Drilldowns

This discussion on drilldowns applies to both query viewers and data monitors. Drilldowns provide the ability to investigate details about resources related to what is displayed by query viewers or data monitors.

### Adding a Drilldown

You can configure query viewers and data monitors to drill down to one or a combination of the following resources:

- Active channels
- Dashboards
- Query viewers
- Reports


Each drilldown type has its own options. After you have added one or more drilldowns, Console users can select one by right-clicking on the result and selecting **Drilldown > [drilldown name]** from the context menu.

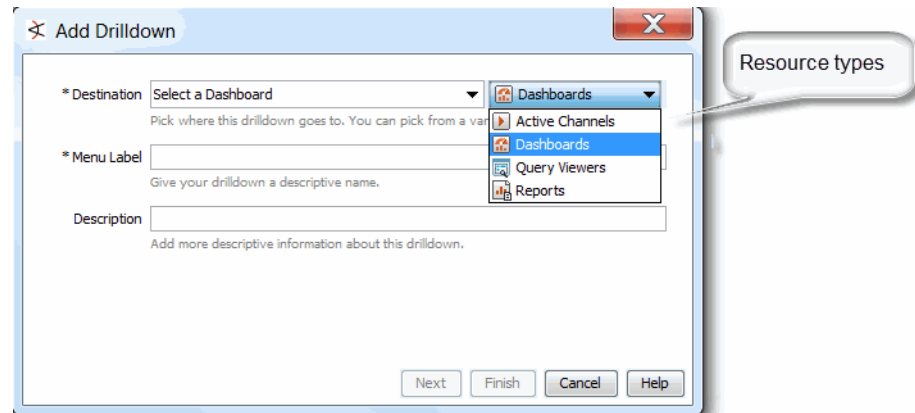
#### To add a drilldown:

- 1 Click the **Drilldowns** tab.

There are two ways to get to the drilldown tab:

- a Right-click on the query viewer or data monitor results in a dashboard and select **Drilldowns/Edit Drilldowns**, which opens the editor to the **Drilldowns** tab.
- b Right-click on a query viewer or data monitor in the Navigator panel and select the **Edit** option, then select the **Drilldowns** tab.

- 2 Click **Add** (  **Add...** ) to open the Add Drilldown panel.


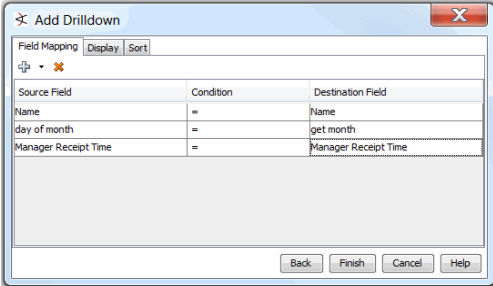



- 3 Enter the following settings for the drilldown's destination:
  - ◆ A resource type, for example, Dashboards
  - ◆ The corresponding specific resource, for example, My\_Dashboard
  - ◆ A menu label (defaults to the specific resource's name) to represent this drilldown on the Viewer panel's right-click Drilldowns menu
  - ◆ An optional description containing additional useful information about the drilldown
- 4 If your destination is a dashboard, click **Finish** to complete the process and add the dashboard to the list of drilldowns. For other destinations, click **Next**.
- 5 Set the remaining options for the destination resource:


**Table 9-4** Drilldown Destinations

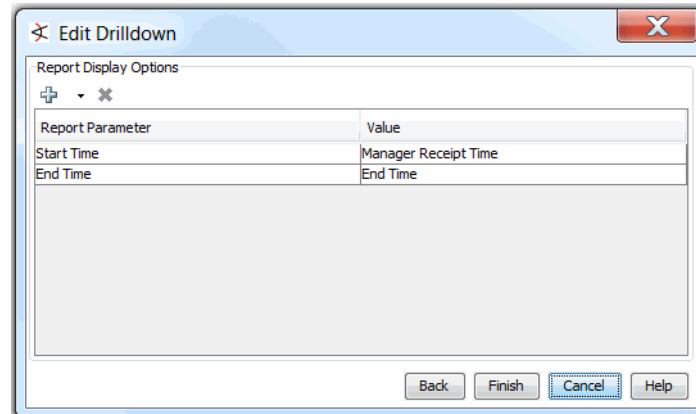
If resource type is ...	Follow these steps ...
Active Channels	<p>For an active channel destination, the settings in the Channel Display Options tab are not required; you may click <b>Finish</b>. If you want to set display options:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select a field set from the drop-down list and click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>2 Change the <b>Sort By</b> field from the drop-down list and the sort order.</li> <li>3 Click <b>Finish</b>.</li> </ol>
Dashboards	<p>After you select the specific dashboard resource and click <b>Finish</b>, you are done.</p>

Table 9-4 Drilldown Destinations (Continued)

If resource type is ...	Follow these steps ...
Query Viewers	<p>For a query viewer destination, field mapping is required:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>On the <b>Field Mapping</b> tab, click <b>Add</b>  <b>Add...</b> to display a dropdown list of source fields. You must define at least one field map.  The source fields are from the source query viewer (the one you are drilling down <i>from</i>). The mapping condition is always set to =.</li><li>Under the <b>Destination Field</b> column, select a field from the destination query viewer (the one you are drilling down <i>to</i>).  For example: </li></ol> <p>The Drilldown definition shown in the example maps the source query viewer/data monitor "Name" column to the target query viewer/data monitor "Name" column. This constructs the following drilldown filter:</p> <pre>&lt;target&gt;.Name = &lt;source&gt;.Name</pre> <p>where <code>&lt;source&gt;.Name</code> is replaced by the actual value from the source query viewer/data monitor row.</p> <p>If there are no eligible field mappings, you cannot complete the drilldown definition; the Finish button is disabled. You can add or remove field mappings, but your choices are limited to the columns already provided in the query viewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>On the <b>Display</b> tab, you can choose to show (check) or hide (uncheck) the data fields in the drilldown result.</li><li>On the <b>Sort</b> tab, you can click <b>Add</b>  <b>Add...</b> to select the columns to specify the sort order of the resulting values. For each added column, change the sort order to ascending (the default) or descending.</li><li>Click <b>Finish</b>.</li></ol>

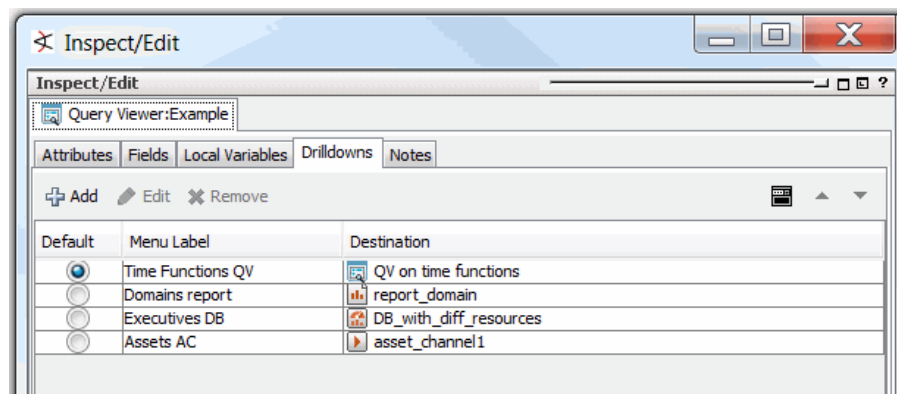
**Table 9-4** Drilldown Destinations (Continued)

If resource type is ...	Follow these steps ...
Reports	<p>For a report destination, the settings in the Report Display Options tab are not required. To use the parameters set for the report, click <b>Finish</b>. If you want to change the drilldown's display options:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Add</b>  <b>Add...</b> to display a list of the destination report's custom parameters, then select a parameter.</li> <li>2 Under the <b>Value</b> column, select the field whose value will be used for the parameter.</li> </ol>



3 Click **Finish**.

Repeat the process to add multiple drilldowns as required. Following is an example of a Drilldowns tab for a query viewer with a variety of drilldowns:

**Figure 9-1** Example of Drilldowns Added to a Query Viewer

The drilldowns are initially displayed in the order they were created. The first drilldown is automatically the default.

#### Tips on Drilldown Definitions

- If the query viewer or data monitor has only one drilldown, this is the default drilldown for that resource. If the query viewer or data monitor has multiple drilldowns, the first drilldown is the default. You can change the order on the Drilldowns tab.

- When you run the query viewer results or view a data monitor, right-click, and select **Drilldown**, the selection list displays the list of drilldowns defined for that resource. The default drilldown is at the top of the list, and the remaining drilldowns are displayed in the sequence as they appear on the Drilldowns tab.
- Drilldowns can be defined for multiple fields of different data types. For example, you could define a drilldown to return a combination of event name and IP address. The first step would be to define a base query viewer to return these fields in a result (see [“Query Viewer Drilldowns” on page 261](#)), and then, as a next step, add a drilldown and select that query viewer to use as the “Drill down to” query viewer.
- Drilldowns cannot be defined to go to fields that are SQL functions.

## Changing the Default Drilldown

When you run the query viewer results or view a data monitor, right-click, and select **Drilldown**, the selection list displays the list of drilldowns defined for that resource. The default drilldown is at the top of the list, and the remaining drilldowns are displayed in the sequence as they appear on the Drilldowns tab. This default position is not affected by any sorting of drilldowns (see [“Changing the Order of Drilldowns” on page 266](#) for related information).


### To change the default drilldown:

On the Drilldowns tab under the Default column, click the button corresponding to the drilldown you want as the default and save.

This drilldown will appear at the top of the selection list the next time you right-click on the query viewer results or data monitor and select **Drilldown**.

## Editing a Drilldown

### To edit a drilldown:

- 1 If you have not done so already, open the editor for the query viewer or data monitor you want to edit.
- 2 Click the **Drilldowns** tab.
- 3 Select the drilldown you want to edit and click **Edit**  **Edit...** .

The drilldown dialog for this drilldown is displayed. Make changes to the fields and options as described in [“Adding a Drilldown” on page 262](#).



You can also edit the drill down from the query viewer or data monitor results. Right-click and select **Drilldown > Edit Drilldowns**. Selecting this command opens the editor for the query viewer at the Drilldowns tab.

---

## Changing the Order of Drilldowns


When you create multiple drilldowns to different resource types, the query viewer's Drilldowns tab displays the drilldowns in the sequence they were created. This initial sort order affects the selection list when you right-click the query viewer results on the Viewer panel and select **Drilldowns**.

You can re-order the drilldowns in two ways:

- Sorting the drilldowns

- Moving specific drilldowns up or down the list

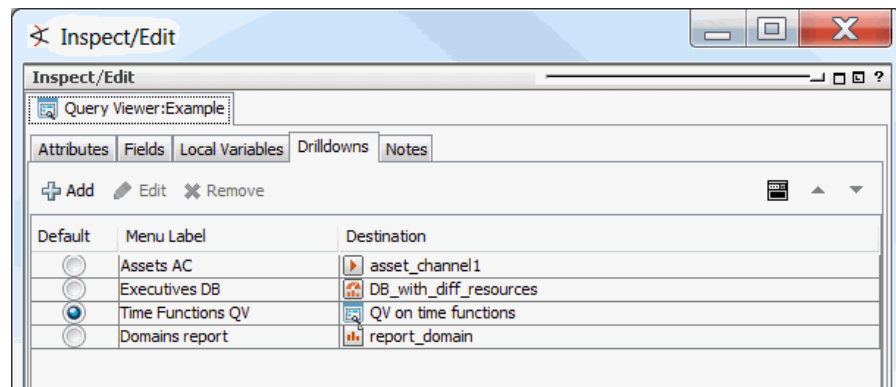
#### To change the sort order:

- 1 If you have not done so already, open the editor for the query viewer you want to edit. (See [“Editing a Query Viewer” on page 261.](#))
- 2 Click the **Drilldowns** tab and toolbar, click **Sort** ()

Multiple drilldowns on the query viewer's Drilldowns tab are sorted in two ways, as follows:



- ◆ First, the drilldowns are sorted alphabetically according to resource type: active channels, dashboards, query viewers, and reports.
- ◆ Next, within the resource type, drilldowns are again sorted alphabetically by their menu labels.

Once you have clicked the Sort button, clicking it again will not change the sort order. The following example is the result of clicking Sort based on [Figure 9-1 on page 265:](#)



Even if the default drilldown moves after sorting, it will still be at the top of the selection list when you right-click on the query viewer results and select Drilldowns. See [“Changing the Default Drilldown” on page 266](#) for related information.

#### To move a drilldown's position on the list:


- 1 If you have not done so already, open the editor for the query viewer you want to edit. (See [“Editing a Query Viewer” on page 261.](#))
- 2 On the **Drilldowns** tab, and select a drilldown (don't click under the Default column if you don't want to change the default drilldown).
- 3 On the toolbar, click the up  or down  arrow buttons to move the drilldown up or down the list.

## Removing a Drilldown

You can remove any drilldown, including the default drilldown. If you delete the default and you have multiple drilldowns, the first one on the list becomes the default.

#### To remove a drilldown from a query viewer:

- 1 If you have not done so already, open the editor for the query viewer you want to edit. (See [“Editing a Query Viewer” on page 261.](#))
- 2 Click the **Drilldowns** tab.

- 3 Select the drilldown you want to remove and click **Remove** (  Remove ).

## Example Queries for Common Scenarios

Query viewers can be used to monitor daily network traffic and get high level summaries of typical activity. Query viewers can also be used to drill down on anomalies or other interesting events.

Following is a brief, conceptual scenario of how an *analyst* might use query viewers to *monitor and investigate* certain types of activity.

Also included here is a description of how the *query content developer* might *build and configure* the base query and query viewers that the analyst uses.



In practice, ArcSight ships with pre-built queries and query viewers as standard content. It is likely that the types of resources described here are provided with ArcSight.

Even so, the configuration of the base query and query viewers is described to illustrate and support this example, and show how a content developer might fine tune these resources to gather the information needed.

---

## Basic Analysis High Level Summaries

A security analyst wants to check if anything unusual is happening on their system. The analyst brings up a query viewer called “Events” that shows all events by event name for the last 2 hours. The columns include:

- Event name
- Total count of all events
- Count by unique source address
- Count by unique destination address

### Analyst’s First View of Events

The analyst can easily glance at the data and see if anything looks out of the ordinary. Columns can be sorted and filters can be changed to refine the details. The data should come up almost immediately.



**Viewer**

Live Events: Table

Query: Events 114 shown / 114 matches

Last Update: 18 Jun 2008 10:08:20 PDT

Filter: No Filter

Name	COUNT(Events)	COUNT(Source ...)	COUNT(Destina...
ActiveList entry expired	338	0	1
ActiveList entry updated	2979	0	1
AddToList: Success	3213	0	1
Agent [Nifty Event Player] reconnected	1	1	1
Agent Login	2	1	1
Agent [Nifty Event Player] heartbeat time...	1	0	1
Agent [Nifty Event Player] type [testalert...	1	0	0
Agent updated	2	1	1
Application Event Counts	8	0	0
ArcSight Event Flow Statistics	9	0	0
ArcSight Manager Started	1	0	1
ArcSight User Login	1	1	0
Asset updated	40	0	1
AttachmentOnlyGroup [Package] inserted	1	1	1
Attack From Suspicious Source	2	1	1
Attack Rates by Attacker Zone	2	0	0
Attack Rates by Service	2	0	0
Attack Rates by Targeted Zone	2	0	0
Attacker Zones by Service	2	0	0
Case inserted	2	0	1
Case updated	2	0	1
Channel [Last Hour] got attached	1	1	1
Channel [Last Hour] query completed	2	0	1
Channel [Live] got attached	1	1	1
Channel [Live] query completed	2	0	1
Compromise - Success	2	1	1
Connector Down	1	0	0
Connector Still Down	2	0	0
Connector Up	1	0	0
CreateNewCase: Success	2	0	1
Data Monitor Entry Timeout	1	0	1

6/18 8:08:20 - 6/18 10:08:20

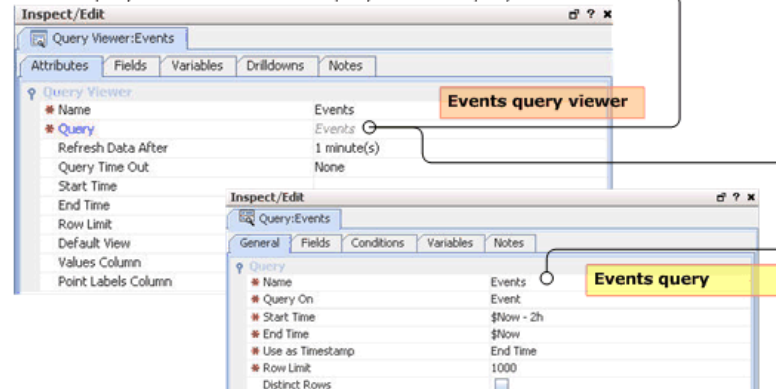
## How the Events Query Viewer is Built

The **Events query viewer** described in this example leverages the Events query.

### Attributes

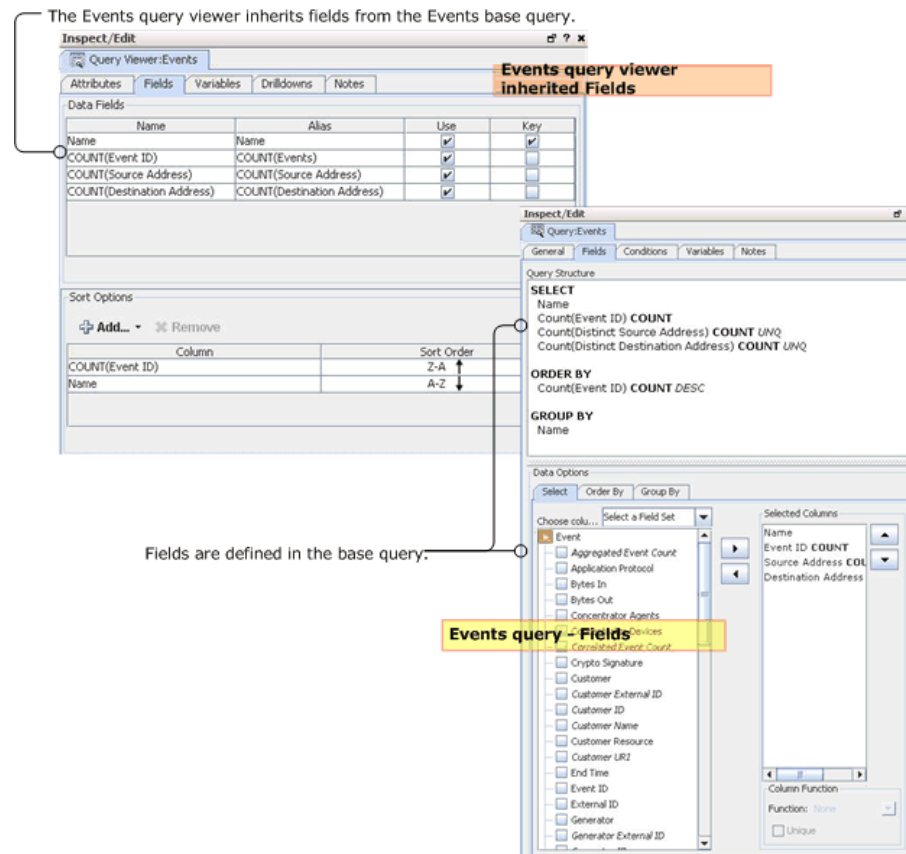
Bringing up the *query viewer editor* for the **Events query viewer** shows that the Events query is used as the base query. Bringing up the **Events query** (base query) in the *query editor* shows that the base query searches on events for the last 2 hours. (Queries are under Reports > Queries in the Navigator.)

The Events query viewer uses the Events query as its *base query*.



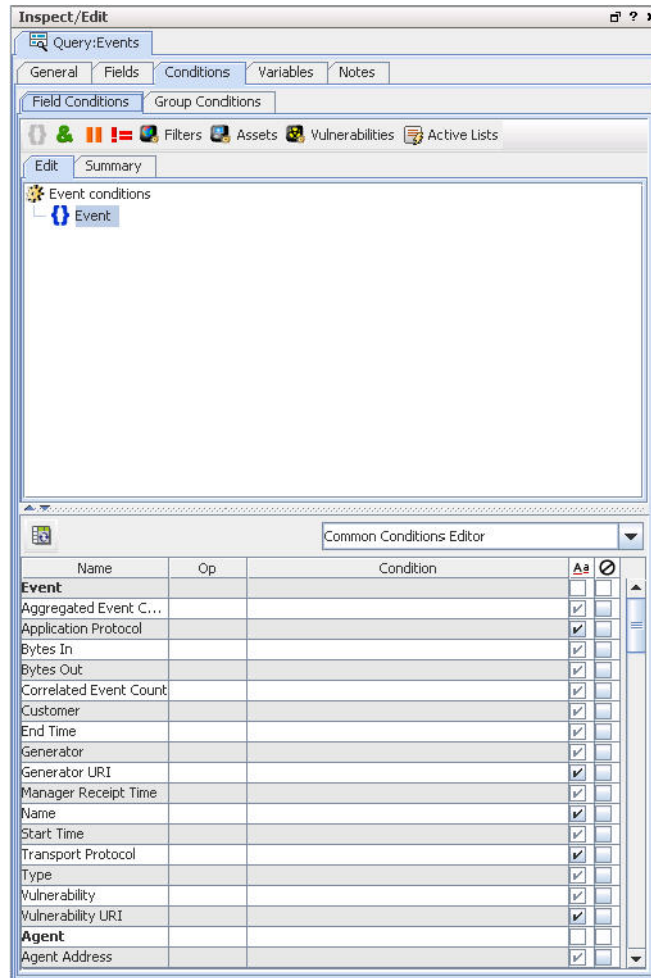
## Fields

The fields selection, order by, and group by logic are all defined in the Fields tab for the base query. The Events query viewer inherits the fields from the base query. These show up on the query viewer Fields tab.



## Events Base Query Conditions Tab

The condition logic to search on Events is defined in the Conditions tab for the base query.



Note

If the event value in your query is the @ symbol by itself, enclose it in double quotes. For example:

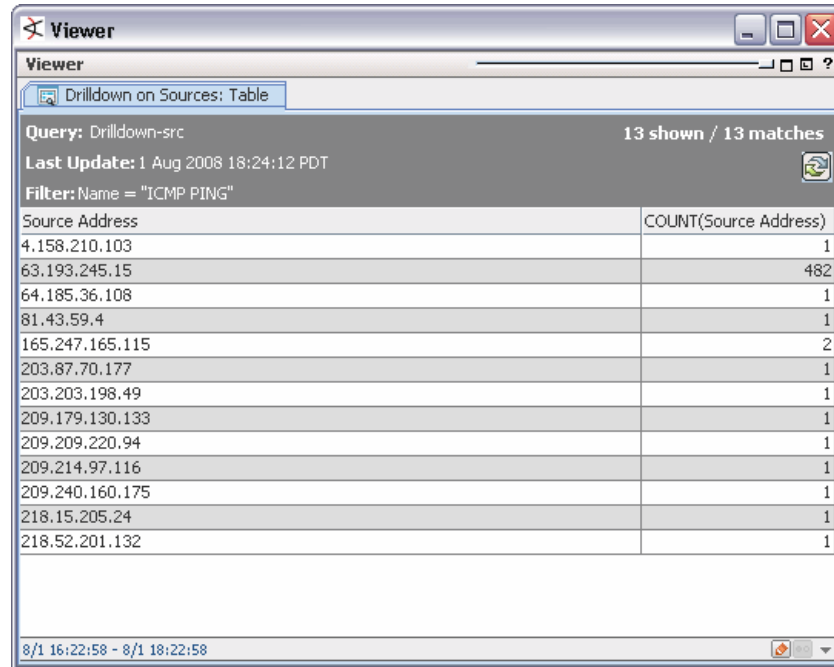
**Name Contains "@"**

You are not required to use the double quotes if the @ symbol is used with other text, for example, **Name Contains @mycompany**.

## Drilldown Example

Continuing with the previous example, the security analyst notes that one of the counts seems troublesome. For example, "Attack from Suspicious Source" is high and showing a lot of unique destination addresses. The analyst would right-click this row and choose **Show Source Addresses**.

The resulting query viewer would show, for this event and time range, the source addresses, as well as other columns of interest (for example, destination address). Then by sorting by source address, the analyst could decide if a single source address (probably with the highest count) was the initiator of most of the attacks. This information could also be provided from an appropriate back end trend table (the same one or a different one), and, as a result, the display should come up almost immediately.



**Viewer**

Drilldown on Sources: Table

Query: Drilldown-src 13 shown / 13 matches

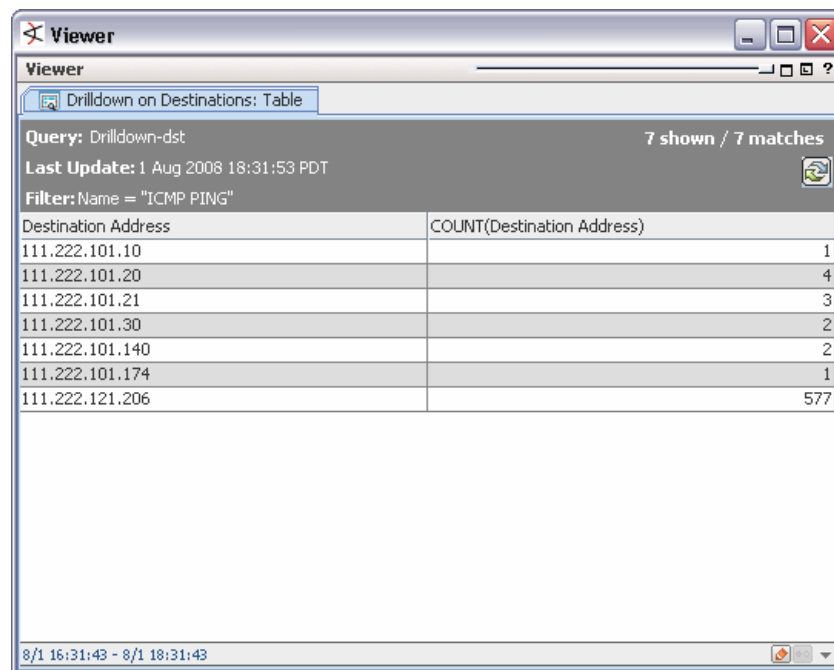
Last Update: 1 Aug 2008 18:24:12 PDT

Filter: Name = "ICMP PING"

Source Address	COUNT(Source Address)
4.158.210.103	1
63.193.245.15	482
64.185.36.108	1
81.43.59.4	1
165.247.165.115	2
203.87.70.177	1
203.203.198.49	1
209.179.130.133	1
209.209.220.94	1
209.214.97.116	1
209.240.160.175	1
218.15.205.24	1
218.52.201.132	1

8/1 16:22:58 - 8/1 18:22:58

The analyst could also show **destination** addresses for the same event row, if that drilldown is defined as a part of the query viewer.



**Viewer**

Drilldown on Destinations: Table

Query: Drilldown-dst 7 shown / 7 matches

Last Update: 1 Aug 2008 18:31:53 PDT

Filter: Name = "ICMP PING"

Destination Address	COUNT(Destination Address)
111.222.101.10	1
111.222.101.20	4
111.222.101.21	3
111.222.101.30	2
111.222.101.140	2
111.222.101.174	1
111.222.121.206	577

8/1 16:31:43 - 8/1 18:31:43

## How the Console Builds Drilldowns

The source and destination drilldowns are added to the Events query viewer on the Drilldowns tab at content development time.

Here is the Drilldowns > Field Mapping tab for the Events query viewer example. The drilldown requires that at least one field is mapped. In this example, this is the Name field.

Field Mapping		
Source Field	Condition	Destination Field
Name	=	Name

Here is the Drilldowns > Display tab for the Events query viewer example.

Field Mapping		
Display	Sort	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Name	Display Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Name	Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Source Address	Source Address
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	COUNT(Source Address)	COUNT(Source Address)

## Non-Event Analysis Example

A security analyst wants to examine "Asset Counts by Vulnerability." The analyst selects this viewer and gets the most recent result (from a trend run) and can examine a table containing columns: Vulnerability and Asset Count. Right-clicking a particular vulnerability row would allow drilldown into the assets with that vulnerability.

## Baseline Analysis for Data Comparison

Continuing with the previous example, the security analyst notes that one of the counts seems significantly higher than last recalled. The analyst right-clicks the query viewer and selects "Compare with Baseline", from which there are zero or more baselines to choose.

This makes additional columns available to the currently displayed viewer that can be added by the user. For example, a new column could be added next to the current "Count" column showing "Count - <Selected Baseline>". This is a comparison number showing the difference between the current value of the count and the baseline value for the count. This is positive, negative, or empty (if a baseline doesn't exist for this vulnerability). The analyst can right-click the new column to sort this column in ascending or descending order.

Other options available to the analyst would be:

- **Add as Baseline...** to save the current values in the display as the new named baseline.
- **Compare with...** to compare to any other set of data available in the trend table.

## History Analysis Example

As hinted in the previous example, any previous trend runs can be used for baseline comparison. Similarly, the analyst can change the query viewer to go back into the past to look at previous data. The analyst could use the default baseline and go back in history to see when some count began to significantly differ from the baseline.

## Chapter 10

# Building Reports

---

These topics describe how you use ArcSight to monitor enterprise security.

[“Understanding the Reporting Workflow” on page 275](#)

[“Using Report Templates” on page 279](#)

[“Building Queries” on page 299](#)

[“Building Trends” on page 317](#)

[“Creating Reports” on page 334](#)

[“End-to-End Reporting Examples” on page 364](#)

Reports are captured views or summaries of data that can be viewed in the ArcSight Console or exported for sharing in a variety of file formats. Reporting is an essential tool for communicating the state of your enterprise security to internal and external stakeholders.

Reporting is a broad subject in ArcSight. Because it can use all the scheduling, conditional logic, resource- and rules-based filtering capabilities of the system, the possibilities can take some time to explore. Creating a report is a multi-step process that can involve steps using several different resources.

See also [Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379](#) and [“Archiving and Scheduling Reports” on page 388](#).

For other options for filtering the database, see [“Query Viewers” on page 227](#), [“Viewing and Using Channels” on page 78](#), and [“Active Channels or Reports?” on page 86](#) under [“Best Practices to Optimize Active Channel Performance” on page 86](#).

## Understanding the Reporting Workflow

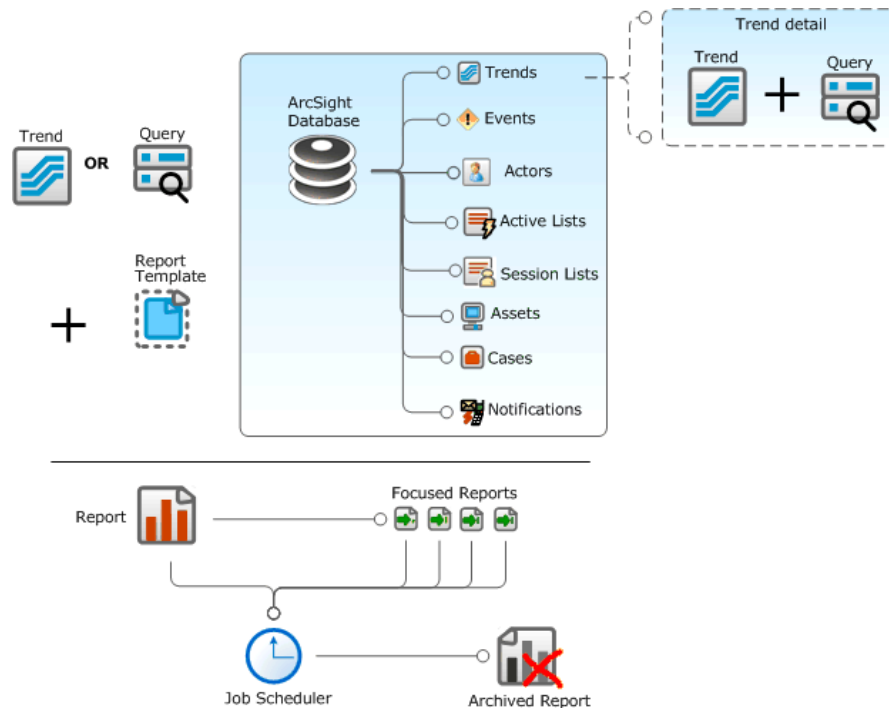
Building reports is a multi-step process that involves use of a few different data gathering and reporting tools. ArcSight can gather report data using standard queries or trends.



Reports can be relatively simple (you can create a report with the Report Wizard based on the results of a single query) or complex (you can create a report based on the results of layers of queries and trends that feed data results up the chain as the basis for new queries). See [“End-to-End Reporting Examples” on page 364](#) for examples of both basic and complex reports.

Following is a quick overview of the reporting workflow tasks and tools, along with a reminder about dependencies among reporting resources.

For a more in-depth description of how these elements build on each other to create various views of the data, see also [“Query-Trend Relationships in Reporting” on page 318](#).



## Step 1 - Build a Query

A query is an ArcSight resource that defines the parameters of data to gather from an ArcSight data source. The results of the query then become the basis for one or more ArcSight reports or trends. As a data source, queries can use the database of events, assets, cases, notifications, active lists, session lists, or data gathered from a trend.

Queries are described in [“Building Queries” on page 299](#).



If all you want to do is build a report based on a single query, at this point you can skip to step 4 and select a template. (See [“Step 4 - Select or Design a Report Template” on page 277](#).)



Queries built for reports can also be used in query viewers.

Query viewers provide several advantages. If you want to run quick SQL queries for monitoring and analysis outside of the reporting resource, you can use query viewers. You can add query viewers to dashboards and generate simple reports on query viewer results.

For information on query viewers, see [Chapter 9, Query Viewers, on page 227](#).

## Step 2 - Build a Trend Based on a Query

A trend is an ArcSight resource that defines how and over what time period data is evaluated for trends. A trend is always based on a query. The trend results are stored in a trend table in the database, and are themselves queryable. Trends can also be used as the primary data source for a report.



Trends are described in [“Building Trends” on page 317](#).





If you want a report based on a single trend-query, at this point you can skip to step 4 and select a template. (See [“Step 4 - Select or Design a Report Template” on page 277](#).)

## Step 3 - Build a Query Based on a Trend

At this point, you have the option of using a simple query or trend in a report, or you can further refine query results by using a trend in another query.

See the [“Building Queries” on page 299](#) and [“Building Trends” on page 317](#) for more information on how to do this.

Data Gathering: Query Building	Data Gathering: Trend Defining
 <p><b>Query source data</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify the data you want to work with</li> <li>Narrow the results by setting conditions and variables</li> </ul>	 <p><b>Is data a trend?</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Design interval trend to operate on events</li> <li>Design snapshot trend to operate on assets, network model, cases, and notifications</li> </ul>

## Step 4 - Select or Design a Report Template

Use an existing report template layout or create your own using the new Report Designer tool. For information on working with templates, see [“Using Report Templates” on page 279](#).

**Layout Designing**



**Design report template**

- Using a stock template?
- Design your own: chart, table, combination



## Step 5 - Create a Report

A report is an ArcSight resource that binds data from a query or trend to an existing report template. Once run, the results of a report can be viewed in the ArcSight Console's Viewer panel, saved (archived), and/or exported in a variety of formats. Reports can be scheduled to run at regular intervals, and also can be run on demand as needed.

Reports are described in [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#), and an overview of the whole topic is provided in [“Understanding the Reporting Workflow” on page 275](#).

Focused reports enable you to run the same report definition on different subdivisions of the data without having to copy and modify the master report every time. For example, you can run an individual Top 10 Infected Systems report for each of your business divisions.

The job scheduler enables you to schedule reports and focused reports to run automatically at specific time intervals. (The job scheduler is also used as a part of building trends which, by nature, involve scheduling.)

<p><b>Report Building</b></p>  <p><b>Bind the query data to the report template</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refine or customize the query by choosing specific elements of the data</li> <li>Add functions</li> <li>Format, organize, and re-order results</li> <li>Format fonts, text color, and background color</li> </ul>	<p><b>Report Refining</b></p>  <p><b>Create focused reports</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Optional</li> <li>Narrow the focus of a report using focused reports</li> <li>Run the same report with different parameters for each division</li> </ul>
---	--



Note

Queries and trends are intended to capture data. Reports are used to display the data from queries and trends. For example, if you wanted to run monthly or quarterly reports on VPN login statistics, you would first create one or more queries to capture the data, then create trends (based on the queries) to define a schedule for running the queries and storing the results, and finally create and run reports on the trends. For a full walk-through of this process, see [“End-to-End Reporting Examples” on page 364](#).

## Step 7 - Run a Report

ArcSight ships with a set of ready-made reports available under the Reports resource. (For example, on the Navigator panel under the Reports resource look in /Reports/Shared/All Reports/ ArcSight Solutions/. Open the sub-groups (folders) to see provided reports.)

For information on how to run an existing report, see [“Running Reports” on page 379](#) and [Running a New or Archived Report](#).

## Step 8 - Archive and Maintain Reports

After running a report, you can elect to save (archive) the report results. This enables you to retrieve a particular report for immediate viewing without having to regenerate the report. Reports that are run on demand are saved on the Archives tab just like scheduled reports. If the Save Output option is chosen for an on-demand report, the archived report has an expiration date of 6 months from the time it was run (by default). If the Save Output option is not chosen for an on-demand report, the report is maintained in the archive for one day only.

Archived reports can also be sent to a notification group after the scheduled report is run.

For information on how to archive and maintain reports, see [“Archiving and Scheduling Reports” on page 388](#) and [“Managing Reports” on page 385](#).

**Report Sharing and Maintenance**



**Share and maintain report output**

- Save report output to share with others using archived reports
- Create and maintain trend partitions

## Managing Dependencies for Reports Resources

As you work with these resources, keep in mind that queries, trends, and reports generally have multiple dependencies upon each other. Modifying some elements within one resource can affect another. If modifications to a resource impact another to the extent that the dependent resource is rendered unusable, errors are reflected in the ArcSight Console. ArcSight manages and updates most of these resources and dependencies automatically, but not all.

For example, a trend built on a query relies on a set of fields (columns) contained in the base query. If you modify fields in the base query that are used in the trend, the trend is disabled. (The proper approach for modifying a query used in a trend is to create a new trend.) Similarly removing a resource (like a query) that another resource (like a report) depends on generates error messages on the ArcSight Console.

## Using Report Templates

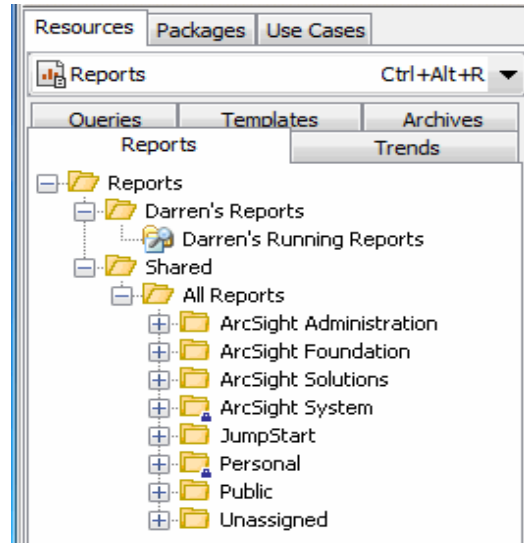
To provide more flexibility in reporting, ArcSight now offers powerful report template tools including a rich offering of ready-made templates and a template design wizard for more customized reports. Template definitions determine how query and trend data are displayed in a report. You can create and adjust templates to specify which data is displayed, what visual elements are used (variations on tables, charts, graphs, and so on), the layout of those elements, the report output file format, and much more. A template consists of report design elements, such as headers, footers, title bars, charts, and tables, arranged on a page according to a layout specification.

Templates can accommodate input from multiple queries and show multiple visual elements, such as three charts and a table each pulling from a different data source, in a single report.

You can use the templates provided or create custom templates with the report template designer.

## Navigating to Templates

In the Navigator panel, select **Reports** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Templates** tab.



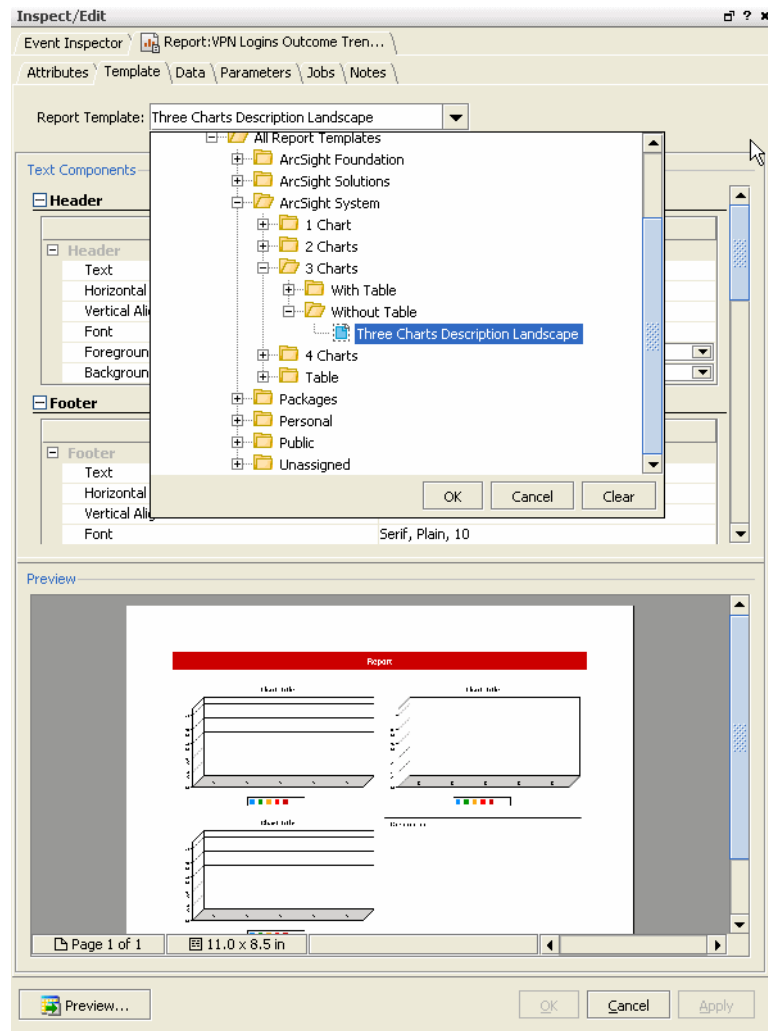
Report templates are a component of ArcSight Reporting resource tools. Be sure to see [“Building Reports” on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools.

## Using Standard Templates

To get you started, ArcSight provides a rich set of templates you can use as-is or copy to use as a starting point for your own template layouts. There are two ways to use standard templates for reports. You can apply a template to an existing report, or you can create a new report based on a template.

### Applying a Template to an Existing Report

- 1 With the **Reports** resource selected in the Navigator panel, click the **Reports** tab.
- 2 If Reports groups (folders) are collapsed, click **+** to expand user and Shared folders and view reports.
- 3 Double-click the report to which you want to apply a template. (Alternatively, you can select the report, right-click and select **Edit Report** from the context menu.) This brings up the Report editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 4 In the Report editor, click the **Templates** tab for the selected report.
- 5 In the **Report Template** field drop-down menu, select a template.
- 6 Click **OK** to apply the template and close the file browser.
- 7 Click **Apply** or **OK** to verify and save the template choice for the selected report.



## Creating a New Report Based on a Template

- 1 With the **Reports** resource selected in the Navigator panel, click the **Templates** tab.
- 2 Right-click your user folder (group) and select **New Report from Template**. This launches the Reports Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel with the chosen template.
- 3 See [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#) for details on how to define data for your report and fine-tune the template by means of the Template tab in the Report editor for this report.

## Copying a Template

An easy way to get started customizing a template is to copy an existing template and modify it to suit your needs. To copy a template:

- 1 Select the **Reports** resource in the Navigator.
- 2 Click the **Templates** tab.
- 3 Open the All Report Templates folder, navigate to a template you want to copy, and select it.
- 4 Left-click, and drag and drop the selected template into your user folder.

- 5 Select **Copy** from the Drag & Drop Options dialog. A copy of the template is dropped into your user folder.

Alternatively, you can select the template you want to copy in the Navigator and choose **Edit > Copy** from the menus. Then select your user folder and click paste to drop the template into the folder.

## Opening the Designer to Edit a Template

- 1 Select the **Reports** resource in the Navigator.
- 2 Click the **Templates** tab.
- 3 Right-click a template and choose **Open in Designer**, or choose **Edit Template** and click the **Open in Designer** button on the Attributes tab for the template editor.

For more about using the template Designer, see [“Designing Custom Templates” on page 282](#).



**Note**

The Report Designer is powered by InetSoft, who also provide the Report Designer's online help.

- There are additional InetSoft documents available online for the report designer. They are attached to a Knowledge Centered Support (KCS) article entitled “InetSoft's Online Help Guides,” available from the HP SSO support site.
  - For support, contact HP Customer Support. Do not use the InetSoft support information mentioned in their documentation.
- 

## Designing Custom Templates

You can use the report template designer to create report templates specific to the needs of your organization. This can be useful, for example, if you need to customize reports per corporate branding, policy requirements, or standards compliance. This can be useful, for example, if you need to customize reports per corporate branding, policy requirements, or standards compliance. (You can also copy the stock templates and use the Designer to modify these templates to suit your needs.)

## Opening the Template Designer to Edit Existing Templates

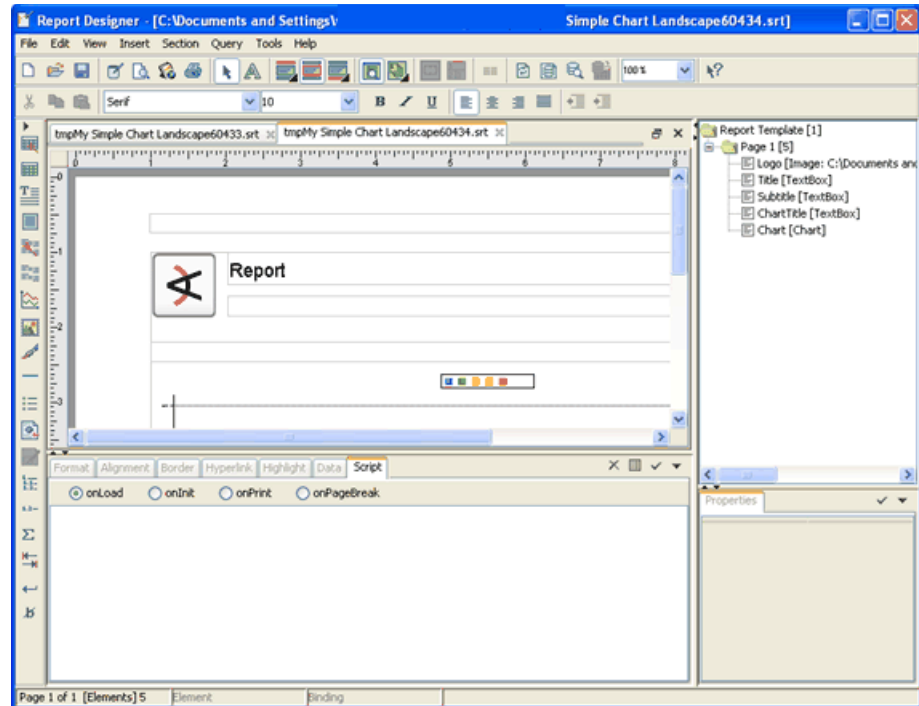
- 1 Select the **Reports** resource in the Navigator.
- 2 Click the **Templates** tab.
- 3 Right-click a template and choose **Open in Designer**, or choose **Edit Template** and click the **Open in Designer** button on the Attributes tab for the template editor.

## Creating a New Template

To design a custom template, you need to first create a new template then launch the report designer wizard:

- 1 With the Reports resource selected in the Navigator panel, click the **Templates** tab.
- 2 Select the template group (folder) where you want to store your new template. (We suggest that you create new content in your user folder. The name of this folder depends on the user name with which you logged into the ArcSight Console.)
- 3 Right-click and select **New Template** from the context menu. This brings up the Template editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.

- 4 Provide a **Name** for the new template in the Template Editor and click **OK**. (Your new template is now displayed in the group you selected in the Navigator.)
- 5 In the Navigator panel, select the template you just created, right-click, and select **Launch Designer** from the context menu. This starts the Report Designer, as shown below. Use the Report Designer to create custom templates.



From the Report Designer menus, you can launch wizards for building common report elements such as **Section > Section Wizard** and **Query > Table Wizard**.

## Template Designer User Interface

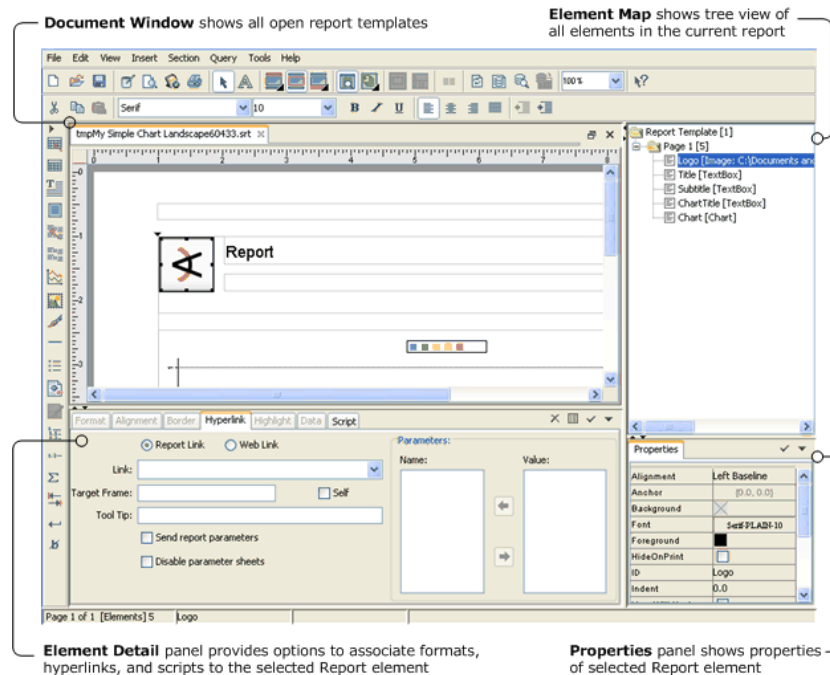
The Report Template Designer provides options for creating fully customized report templates. These topics introduce the Designer features and functions, and provide a quick tour of the user interface (UI).

### Tour of Designer UI

The Report Template Designer user interface (UI) consists of the following panels and tools. See also [“Menus” on page 285](#) and [“Toolbars” on page 288](#) for detailed descriptions of those options.

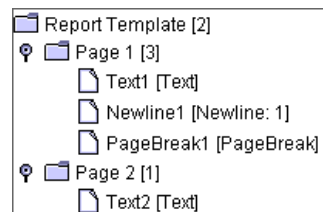
## Overview Diagram

**Report Template Designer:** You can use the Report Designer to create custom templates. To launch the Report Template Designer, right-click a template in the Navigator and choose Open in Designer, or choose Edit Template and click the Open in Designer button on the Attributes tab for the template editor.



## Element Map

The element map displays a hierarchical tree view of all elements in the current report. The element map appears in a frame between the report element toolbar and the document window, and looks like this:



Selecting an element on the element map causes that element to be selected in the report.

To display the element map, click **Element Map** on the **View** menu.

## Document Window

The document window is the largest window on the Report Designer screen and contains all the currently opened report templates. Reports can be minimized, maximized, resized and moved within the document window.

- To arrange open report templates, click **Cascade** on the **Window** menu.
- To change the active report template, click the template's file name on the **Window** menu.

## Status Bar

The status bar appears at the very bottom of the Report Designer application window and looks like this:





The information displayed on the status bar, from left to right, is as follows:

- Current page number
- The number of elements in the current page
- The ID of the currently selected report element
- Information about the currently selected report element: ID and element type


### Change the Report View

#### Normal View

Click the **View** menu

or

Check the check box button to the left of **Layout View**


Click the **Layout**  toolbar button when the report is in page layout view

#### Page Layout View



Click the View menu

or

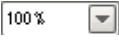
Uncheck the check box button to the left of **Layout View Change the Editing Mode**

Click the **Layout**  toolbar button when the report is in normal view.

### Change the Editing Mode

- To switch to Element Selection Mode, click the **Selection Mode (Pick Tool)**  toolbar button.
- To switch to Text Mode, click the **Text Mode (Text Tool)**  toolbar button.

### Change the Report Magnification

To increase or decrease the display size of the report (zoom in or zoom out), select the magnification percentage from the drop-down list  on the toolbar.

### Menus

The Report Template Designer menus are described in the following tables.


















Report Template File Menu Items	Description
New	Creates a new Style Report template.
Save	Saves the current report template.
Export	Exports the current report in one of the following formats: PDF, HTML, Excel, RTF, SVG, CSV, or text.
Preview	Displays a preview of the generated report in a new window.
Print	Prints the current report.
Page Setup	Sets the current report's page format properties.



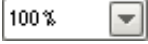

















Report Template File Menu Items	Description
Most recently used file list	These menu items display the most recently opened reports. Clicking one of these items opens the corresponding report template in a new window.
Exit	Exits the Report Designer.
Report Template Edit Menu Items	Description
Undo	Reverses, one at a time, a series of editor actions.
Copy	Copies the current selection to the clipboard.
Cut	Deletes the selection from the report and copies it to the clipboard.
Paste >> Into Page	Inserts the contents of the clipboard into the current document.
Paste >> Into Section	Inserts the contents of the clipboard into selected Section element.
Report Template View Menu Items	Description
Layout View	Sets the report view to either Normal view or Layout view.
Element Map	Displays a tree mapping all report elements on the page in a frame to the left.
Ruler	Sets the visibility of the ruler.
Grid	Sets the visibility of the grid.
Snap To Grid	Sets whether inserted report elements should be placed at the nearest grid vertex or not.
Properties	Displays the properties dialog for the selected report element.
Console	Displays the error console.
Report Template Insert Menu Items	Description
Header	Elements are inserted into the page header.
Body	Elements are inserted into the page body.
Footer	Elements are inserted into the page footer.
Basic Element >> Table	Inserts a table.
Basic Element >> Text	Inserts a text element.
Basic Element >> Textbox	Inserts a text box.
Basic Element >> Image	Inserts an image.



Report Template Insert Menu Items	Description
Basic Element >> Chart	Inserts a chart.
Basic Element >> Tab	Moves the insertion point to the next tab stop.
Basic Element >> Bullet	Inserts a bulleted item.
Basic Element >> Separator	Inserts a horizontal line across the page.
Spacing Element >> Newline	Inserts a newline.
Spacing Element >> Break	Inserts a line break.
Spacing Element >> Space	Inserts a non-breaking space.
Spacing Element >> Page Break	Inserts a page break.
Spacing Element >> Conditional Page Break	Inserts a page break that only occurs when one or more specified conditions are met.
Spacing Element >> Area Break	Inserts an area break.
Special Field >> Table of Contents	Inserts a table of contents.
Special Field >> Page Number	Inserts a text element displaying the current page number into the header or footer.
Special Field >> Page Count	Inserts a text element displaying the page count into the header or footer.
Special Field >> Date	Inserts a text element displaying the current date into the header or footer.
Report Template Format Menu Items	Description
Preference	Displays the formatting preferences dialog.
Draw Area	Inserts a new page area into the report template.
Order Area	Changes the flow order of the page areas in the report template.
Report Template Window Menu Items	Description
Cascade	Places all document windows in a cascading arrangement.
Close All	Closes all document windows.
Window list	This list contains a menu item for each open document window. Clicking one of these items brings the corresponding window to the foreground.

## Toolbars

The Report Template Designer toolbars are described in following tables.

Standard Toolbar	Description
 Save	Saves the current report template.
 Preview Report	Displays a preview of the generated report in a new window.
 Print	Displays the print dialog, allowing the user to print the active document.
 Selection Mode (Pick Tool)	Switches to element selection mode.
 Text Mode (Text Tool)	Switches to text editing mode.
 Cut	Copies the current selection to the clipboard and deletes the selection from the report.
 Copy	Copies the current selection to the clipboard.
 Paste	Inserts the contents of the clipboard into the current document.
 What's This	Clicking this item and then a menu item, toolbar button or window region displays help information on what was clicked.
Layout Toolbar	Description
 Header	Elements are inserted into the page header.
 Body	Elements are inserted into the page body.
 Footer	Elements are inserted into the page footer.
 Element Map	Sets the report view to Normal Layout view, with a tree mapping all report elements on the page in a frame to the left (in Report Designer).
 Layout View	Switches between Normal and Layout views, and displays the page layout properties dialog.
 Draw Area	Inserts a new page area into the report template.
 Order Area	Changes the flow order of the page areas in the report template.
 Columns	Places two page areas side-by-side on the page to split the report into columns. The areas flow from left to right.

Format Toolbar button		Description
	Font	Sets the current font.  To use Japanese characters in reports, install the Arial Unicode MS True Type font (ARIALUNI.TTF) or an equivalent Unicode font in your system font directory. Use that font for any component (such as a textbox or a table) for which you want Japanese/Unicode characters.
	Font Size	Sets the current font size.
	Zoom	Zooms in and out according to the percentage selected.
	Bold	Makes text boldface.
	Italic	Renders the current text in italics.
	Underline	Underlines the current text.
	Left Justify	Changes the alignment to left justification.
	Center	Changes the alignment to center justification.
	Right Justify	Changes the alignment to right justification.
	Fill	Changes the alignment to fill justification.
	Decrease Indent	Decreases the current indentation.
	Increase Indent	Increases the current indentation.
Report Element Toolbar button		Description
	Table	Inserts a table.
	Text	Inserts a text element.
	Text Box	Inserts a text box.
	Chart	Inserts a chart.
	Image	Inserts an image.
	Separator	Draws a horizontal line across the page.
	Table of Contents	Inserts a table of contents.
	Tab	Moves the insertion point to the next tab stop.

Report Element Toolbar button	Description
 Newline	Inserts a newline.
 Space	Inserts a non-breaking space.

## Setting Report Page Options

As a part of your report template designs, you can set page options such as page size, orientation, margins, and so forth. The page settings you define at template design time are built into the “deployed” template as defaults.

### Setting the Page Size

- 1 Select the **File > Page Setup** from the menus.
- 2 Select a page size from the drop-down list, or enter the size and units of measurement for non-standard page sizes.
- 3 Click the **OK** button.

### Setting the Page Orientation

- 1 Select the **File > Page Setup** from the menus.
- 2 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape**.
- 3 Click the **OK** button.

### Setting the Page Margins

- 1 Select the **File > Page Setup** from the menus.
- 2 Set the distance, in inches, from the edge of the page for the **Left**, **Top**, **Right**, and **Bottom** fields
- 3 Set the distance, in inches, from the edge of the page to the top of the page header and footer in the **Header** and **Footer** fields.
- 4 Click the **OK** button.

### Setting the Page Background

Select the **File > Page Setup** from the menus, and click the **Background** tab.

#### Setting a Background Color


- 1 Select the **Color** option.
- 2 Select a color from the drop-down list.
- 3 Click the **OK** button.

#### Setting a Background Image


- 1 Select the **Image** option.
- 2 Enter the path to the image.
- 3 Select the loading method.
- 4 To embed the image in the template file, check the **Embed** option.

- 5 Select either **Tile** or **Center** positioning option.
- 6 Enter preferred size of image or leave unspecified for actual image size.
- 7 Click the **OK** button.

### Editing the Page Header

- 1 Click the Header  toolbar button or select the **Header** item from the **Insert** menu.
- 2 Insert and edit report elements as you would normally.


### Editing the Page Footer

- 1 Click the Header  toolbar button or select the **Header** item from the **Insert** menu.
- 2 Insert and edit report elements as you would normally.


## Designing Report Flow Layout

With the Report Template Designer, you can design the flow layout for a report template that specifies layout of the report content on the page.

### Drawing a Page Area

- 1 Change the report view to **Layout**
- 2 Click the **Draw Area**  toolbar button.
- 3 Click and hold the left mouse button where you want the upper-left corner of the page area to be placed.
- 4 Continue holding the left mouse button and drag the cursor to the location you want for the lower-right-hand corner of the page area.
- 5 Release the mouse button.

### Changing the Order of Page Areas


- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the **Order Areas**  toolbar button.
- 3 Move the mouse over the area you want to receive the flow first. The cursor should turn into a hand.
- 4 Click the left mouse button. The number in the corner of the page area should now be "1".
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each page area, in the order you want to flow.

### Inserting an Area Break

- 1 Click the cursor on the location where you want the break.
- 2 Select the **Area Break** from the **Insert»Spacing Element** menu.

### Creating a Non-flow Area


- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.

- 2 Click the **Draw Area**  toolbar button.
- 3 Click and hold the left mouse button where you want the upper-left corner of the page area to be placed.
- 4 Continue holding the left mouse button and drag the cursor to the location you want for the lower-right corner of the page area.
- 5 Release the mouse button.
- 6 Right-click the page area you just created.
- 7 Click **Properties** on the popup menu.
- 8 Disable (uncheck) the **Flow Area** property.
- 9 Click the **OK** button.

### Creating a Fixed Position Element

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click a non-flow area.
- 3 Set the report view to **Normal**.
- 4 Insert the element into the non-flow area as you would a normal page area.

### Creating an Element Associated Area

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the small arrow in the corner of the **Layout**  toolbar button.
- 3 Click the **Edit** item on the drop-down menu.
- 4 From the drop-down list on the dialog, select the report element you want to associate with the page layout.
- 5 Click the **New** button.
- 6 Click the **OK** button.

### Creating Parallel Report Flows

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Create a non-flow area to one side of the report.
- 3 Create normal report areas in the remaining page area however you want.
- 4 Right-click the non-flow area.
- 5 Click the **Properties** item on the popup menu.
- 6 Deselect (uncheck) the **Repeat Contents** property.
- 7 Set the report view to **Normal**.
- 8 Place report elements in the non-flow area for one part of the parallel report flow.
- 9 Place report elements in the other page areas for the other part of the parallel report flow.



## Designing Report Tabular Layout

Using the Report Template Designer, you can define the default layout for tables in a report template.

### Inserting a Row

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the row you want to insert the new row before.
- 3 Right-click the row.
- 4 Click **Insert Row** on the popup menu.

### Inserting a Column

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the column you want to insert the new column before.
- 3 Right-click the column.
- 4 Click **Insert Column** on the popup menu.

### Deleting a Row

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the row you want to delete.
- 3 Right-click the row.
- 4 Click the **Delete Row** item from the popup menu.

### Deleting a Column

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the column you want to delete.
- 3 Right-click the column.
- 4 Click the **Delete Column** item from the popup menu.

### Splitting a Cell

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.
- 2 Click the cell you want to split.
- 3 Right-click the cell.
- 4 Select the **Split Cell** item on the popup menu.
- 5 To split the cell horizontally select **Rows**; to split the cell vertically select **Columns**.
- 6 Enter the number of cells to split the current cell into.
- 7 Click the **OK** button.

### Resizing a Cell

- 1 Set the report view to **Page Layout**.

- 2 Move your mouse over the cell's edge until the cursor changes to the resize cursor.
- 3 Press and hold the left mouse button.
- 4 Drag the mouse until the cell is the desired size.
- 5 Release the mouse button.




## Building Report Elements into a Template

The following topics describe how to use the Report Template Designer to include different types of report elements into a template.

### Inline Elements

Inline elements include options for inserting text, text formatting, working with tabs, and spaces.

#### Inserting Text

- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the text.
- 2 Click the Text  toolbar button or select the **Text** item from the **Insert>>Basic Element** menu.
- 3 Type the text to display.


#### Formatting text

- 1 Right-click the text or textbox element.
- 2 Select the format to apply from the **Format** submenu on the popup menu.

These formats are available in the Report Designer:

Format Type	Description
Date format	Specifies conversion for date/time values.
Decimal format	Specifies conversion for numeric values.
Currency format	Specifies formatting of numbers as currency (with a currency symbol).
Percent format	Specifies formatting of numbers as percentages.

#### Inserting a Tab

To insert a tab, press the **Tab** key or click the Tab  toolbar button.

#### Setting the Tab Stops

Select the **Format > Preferences** item from the menus, and click the **Tab Stops** tab.

#### Adding a Tab Stop


- 1 Enter the distance, in inches, from the left margin to position the tab stop in the text field.
- 2 Click the **Set** button.

### Removing a Tab Stop

- 1 Select the tab stop from the list.
- 2 Click the **Clear** button.

To apply the changes, click the **OK** button.

### Inserting a Space

To insert a space, press the **Space** key or click the Space  toolbar button.

### Setting a Space's Width

- 1 Click the space element to format.
- 2 Right-click the element.
- 3 Select the **Properties** item from the popup menu.
- 4 Enter the width, in points, of the space in the **Number of Points** field.
- 5 Click the **OK** button.

### Float Elements

Float elements include options for setting anchors, working with text wrap, setting margins, working with charts and text boxes, and inserting images.

#### Setting the Anchor

- 1 Move the mouse over the float element.
- 2 Click and hold the left mouse button.
- 3 Drag the element to the desired position.
- 4 Release the mouse button.

If a float element's anchor is not set, it is laid out as an inline element.

#### Setting the Text Wrapping

When one or more anchored elements exist on a line, other flow elements could wrap around the anchored elements. To set the wrapping:

- 1 Click the element to edit.
- 2 Right-click the element.
- 3 Select the **Properties** item from the popup menu.
- 4 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 5 Select the wrapping style to apply to this element.

The Report Designer offers these wrapping styles:



No wrapping; the flow overlaps the float element.



Wraps around the left side of the float element.



Wraps around the right side of the float element.



Wraps around both sides of the float element.




No contents allowed on either side of the float element.

---


### Setting the Margins

- 1 Click the element to edit.
- 2 Right-click the element.
- 3 Select the **Properties** item from the popup menu.
- 4 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 5 Enter the size, in points, in the **Left**, **Top**, **Right**, and **Bottom** fields.
- 6 Click the **OK** button.


### Inserting a Chart

- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the report.
- 2 Click the Chart  toolbar button or select the **Chart** item from the **Insert >>Basic Element** menu.
- 3 Select the chart type from the drop-down list that appears.

### Inserting a Text Box

- 1 Click the report at the location to insert the element.
- 2 Click the Text Box  toolbar button or select the **Text Box** item from the **Insert>>Basic Element** menu.
- 3 Type the text to display.
- 4 Right-click the text box and select the **Properties** item from the popup menu to apply formatting.

### Inserting an Image


- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the image.
- 2 Click the Image  toolbar button or select the **Image** item from the **Insert>>Basic Element** menu.
- 3 Enter the path to the image in the text field.
- 4 Check the **Embed** option if you want to embed the image data in the report template.
- 5 Select the loading option (see below) to use.
- 6 Click the **OK** button.

The loading options supported by the report designer are:

Loading Option	Description
Resource	Loads the image as a resource. The path to the image must be relative to the class path.
URL	Loads the image from the specified URL.
Relative path	The path to the image is relative to the location of the report template in the local file system.
Full path	The path to the image is the full path on the local file system.

## Block Elements


### Inserting a Table

- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the table.
- 2 Click the Table  toolbar button.
- 3 Select the number of rows and columns for the table.


Or

- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the table.
- 2 Select the **Table** item from the **Insert>>Basic Element** menu.
- 3 Edit the number of rows and columns for the table by selecting the table element.
- 4 Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 5 Select **Headers and Data** tab and modify rows and columns fields and click **OK**.


### Inserting a Bullet

- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the bullet.
- 2 Click the Bullet  toolbar button or select the **Bullet** item from the **Insert>>Basic Element** menu.
- 3 Type the text to appear next to the bullet. The bullet and the text are separate elements.

### Inserting a Separator Change a Separator's Line Style

- 1 Click the report at the location you want to insert the separator.
- 2 Click the Separator  toolbar button or select the **Separator** item from the **Insert>>Basic Element** menu.

### Inserting a Newline

- 1 Click the report at the location to insert the newline.
- 2 Click the Newline toolbar  button or press the **Enter** key.

### Changing a Newline's Height

- 1 Click the newline element to edit.

- 2 Right-click the element and select the **Properties** item from the popup menu.
- 3 Enter the number of lines in the **Number of Newlines** field.
- 4 Enter the height, in points, of each newline in the **Newline Size** field.
- 5 Click the **OK** button.

### Inserting a Page Break

- 1 Click the report at the location to insert the page break.
- 2 Select the **Page Break** item from the **Insert>>Spacing** Element menu.

### Inserting an Area Break

- 1 Click the location in a page area to insert the break.
- 2 Select the **Area Break** item from the **Insert>>Spacing Elements** menu.

### Drawing a Freehand Shape

- 1 Change the report view to **Page Layout**
- 2 Click one of the shape buttons on the report element toolbar.
- 3 Press and hold the left mouse button at the location of the upper-left corner of the shape.
- 4 To constrain a rectangle to a square, or an oval to a circle, hold down the **Shift** key.
- 5 Drag the mouse to the location of the lower-right corner of the shape.
- 6 Release the mouse button.

You can draw these freehand shapes:



A rectangle or square




An oval or circle




A line

---

### Inserting a Numbered Heading

- 1 Click the report at the location to insert the heading.
- 2 Click the Heading  toolbar button.
- 3 Select the heading level from the drop-down list.
- 4 Type the text for the heading.

### Inserting a Table of Contents

- 1 Click the report at the location to insert the table of contents.
- 2 Click the Table of Contents  toolbar button or select the **Table of Contents** item from the **Insert>>Special Field** menu.
- 3 Select the style for the table of contents from the drop-down list.

- 4 Click the **OK** button.

The table of contents is generated automatically, based on the numbered headings in the report.

### Changing an Element's Font

- 1 Click the element whose font you want to modify.
- 2 Select the font's name  from the drop-down list on toolbar.
- 3 Select the font size  from the drop-down list on the toolbar.
- 4 To make the font bold, click the Bold **B** toolbar button.
- 5 For an italic font, click the Italic *I* toolbar button.
- 6 To underline the font, click the Underline U toolbar button.

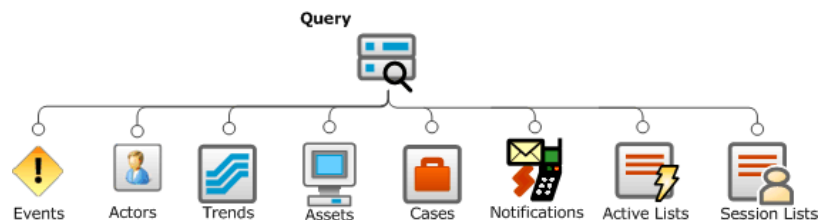
## Building Queries

A query is an ArcSight resource that defines the parameters of the data you want to report on derived from an ArcSight data source. The result of the query then becomes the basis for one or more ArcSight report and trend. The Query Editor is a component of ArcSight Reporting resource tools. Queries are used in:

- **Reports.** See [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#) for more information.
- **Query viewers.** Additionally, if you want to run quick SQL queries for monitoring and analysis outside of the reporting resource, you can use query viewers. You can add query viewers to dashboards and generate simple reports on query viewer results. For information on query viewers, see [Chapter 9, Query Viewers, on page 227](#).
- **Trends.** See [“Building Trends” on page 317](#).

### How Queries Work

As a data source, queries can use the database of events, actors, modeled network objects (assets), cases, notifications, case-sensitive session lists or active lists, or data gathered from a trend.



In a query, you select the data fields you want to report on, specify any additional functions you want run on them (such as sum, average, and so on), and any sort or group-by conditions you want to add, such as grouping results by source address, zone, or priority.

## Using Queries and Trends Together for Reports

A query can be used as the primary data source for a report. Or, a trend (based on one query) can be used as the data source to another query that further refines the initial query result. A collection of trend queries (queries that use trends as their data source) can provide focused views of a data set which can then be fed into a single report or multiple reports.

For a more detailed description of the relationships you can build between queries and trends for reporting, see the [“Query-Trend Relationships in Reporting”](#) on page 318.



While running reports or trends, if you run into an error about the inability to run the query because temporary sort space is exceeded, refer to the recommendations on how to increase the sort space size in the Troubleshooting section of the Administrator's Guide. You may also want to further refine queries being used by reports and trends.

## Using Queries in Query Viewers

You can use queries built for reports in *query viewers*, outside of the reporting paradigm. Query viewers provide a “channel-style” view of SQL query results but are not limited to events in terms of scope. They provide high-level summaries to monitor system health, reveal trends, and allow for drill-down and investigation of all types of resources across time. Query viewers are performance-tuned to work with trend tables rather than event tables, and so can return results much faster than active channels.

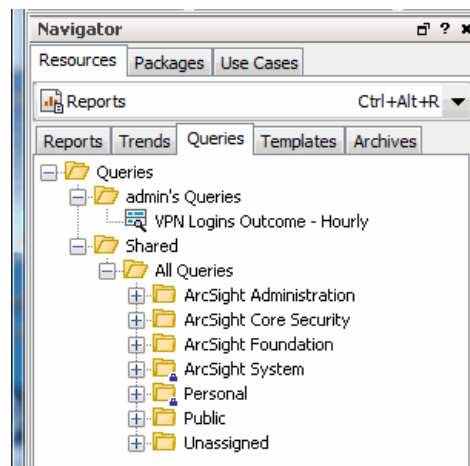
Query viewers include their own simple reporting option by which you can initiate a report on the query results from the query viewer.

For more about using query viewers, see [Chapter 9, Query Viewers](#), on page 227.

## Building a Query

### Navigating to Queries

In the Navigator panel, select **Reports** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Queries** tab.





## Creating a New Query

The high-level steps for creating a query are as follows:

- 1 Right-click a group (folder) and select **New Query**. This launches the Query Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.



As a general rule, it is best to create new content in the user's own folder.

- 2 Define [General Query Attributes](#). At a minimum, fill in the required values (red asterisks) on the General tab.
- 3 Define a schema for [Query Fields](#).
- 4 Create [Query Conditions](#).
- 5 Define Query Variables (optional).
- 6 Click **Apply** or **OK** to create the new query.



Be sure to click **Apply** or **OK** frequently to save settings intermittently as you work through the above steps. Clicking **Apply** saves settings and leaves the Editor open. Clicking **OK** saves settings and closes the Editor for this query. If you do not apply or accept settings using these buttons, your settings are not saved.

The following sections provide details on how to use the Query editor to define query attributes, fields, conditions, and variables.

## Defining Query Settings

Use the Query Editor to build a new trend or edit an existing one. Query settings are defined on multiple sub-tabs.

### General Query Attributes

The following fields in the **Query** section are required attributes that must be specified when creating a new query.

#### General Query Attributes

Query Fields	Description
Name	Name for the query. Spaces and special characters are OK. This is an alias for the query that appears in pick lists in other editors.

---

**General Query Attributes (Continued)**

Query Fields	Description
Query on	<p>From the drop-down menu, select one of the following data sources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Event</b> - Select Event if you want to create a report or view trends on event activity</li> <li>• <b>Active List</b> - Select Active List to query or view trends on list entries. Additionally select a <a href="#">Query Type</a>. If you are creating a list query with asset-related conditions, see also <a href="#">“Example: Creating Asset-Related Conditions for Queries on Lists” on page 315</a>.  For more about active lists, see <a href="#">“Managing Active Lists” on page 511</a>. <b>Caution:</b> For good query performance, query on case-sensitive lists only.</li> <li>• <b>Actor</b> - Select Actor to query or view trends on actor information. (For more information on actors, see <a href="#">“Actors” on page 189</a>.)</li> <li>• <b>Asset</b> - Select Asset if you want to report or view trends on statistics about the assets on your network, such as a list or count of assets categorized in a particular asset category, or the zone a particular asset is in at a particular time. (For more about assets, see <a href="#">“Modeling the Network” on page 695</a>.)</li> <li>• <b>Case</b> - Select Case if you want to report or view trends on the status of cases, such as number of cases opened and resolved. (For more about cases, see <a href="#">“Case Management and Queries” on page 531</a>.)</li> <li>• <b>Notification</b> - Select Notification if you want to report or view trends on the status of events sent out in the notification workflow, such as number of events in the Investigate stage. (For more about notifications, see <a href="#">“Managing Notifications” on page 615</a>.)</li> <li>• <b>Session List</b> - Select Session List to query or view trends on session activity.  If you are creating a list query with asset-related conditions, see also <a href="#">“Example: Creating Asset-Related Conditions for Queries on Lists” on page 315</a>.  (For more about session lists, see <a href="#">“Managing Session Lists” on page 524</a>.) <b>Caution:</b> For good query performance, query on case-sensitive lists only.</li> <li>• <b>Trend</b> - Select Trend if you want to report or maintain trend information on the data gathered in another trend. For instructions about how to build a trend, see <a href="#">“Building Trends” on page 317</a>.</li> </ul>
Query On Resource	Available for queries on active and session lists. Select a list from the drop-down panel.
Query Type	<p>Available for queries on active lists. Select one:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Snapshot</b> - Select Snapshot if you want the query to return values from the active list with no historical baseline.</li> <li>• <b>Interval</b> - Select Interval if you want to view values within a specified period.</li> </ul>

---

---

**General Query Attributes (Continued)**

Query Fields	Description
Start Time	<p>This field only appears if you are querying on an interval active list, event, or trend. Enter values depending on the data source you selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active List, Interval type</b> - Specify the starting point for the data gathering from the specified active list.</li> <li>• <b>Event</b> - Specify the starting point for the data gathering from the events database. Event data is generally kept unarchived for 30 days by default, so specify a start time within that time frame.</li> <li>• <b>Trend</b> - Specify the starting point for the data gathering from the trends database. Be sure to specify a period within the lifecycle of the trend; otherwise, the query returns an empty result set.</li> </ul> <p><b>Tip:</b> If the query is used as a base query in a trend, the trend start time overwrites the start time set here. See <a href="#">"Trend Parameters" on page 325</a>.</p>
End Time	<p>This field only appears if you are querying on an interval active list, event, or trend. Enter an end time depending on the type of source data you selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active List, Interval type</b> - Specify the ending point for the data gathering from the specified active list.</li> <li>• <b>Event</b> - Specify the ending point for the data gathering that is some time after the starting point. Keep in mind that large time spans can mean large amounts of data, which can affect system performance.</li> <li>• <b>Trend</b> - Specify the end point for the data gathering that is some time after the starting point.</li> </ul> <p><b>Tip:</b> If the query is used as a base query in a trend, the trend end time overwrites the end time set here. See <a href="#">"Trend Parameters" on page 325</a>.</p>
Use as Timestamp	<p>This field only appears if you are querying on an interval active list, event, or trend. This field indicates which value to use as the timestamp for the report itself. This value helps with sorting and scheduling.</p> <p>The following options are available for queries on events and trends:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>End Time</b> - Select End Time if you want to use the event or trend end-time you specified in the End Time field. The timestamp reflects the event end time. If you are querying on a trend, select this option.</li> <li>• <b>Manager Receipt Time</b> - Select Manager Receipt Time to use the time the event was received at the Manager. If you are querying on a trend, this is probably not an appropriate option to choose because in that case, Manager Receipt Time would indicate when the trend is run, rather than when events are received by the Manager.</li> </ul> <p>The following options are available for interval queries on active lists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Date-based field on the active list</b> - This is the default, if such field exists in the active list.</li> <li>• <b>Creation Time</b> - When the list was first populated (created)</li> <li>• <b>Last Modified Time</b> - When the list was last updated</li> </ul>

---

## General Query Attributes (Continued)

Query Fields	Description
Row Limit	<p>Set the row limit for the data table. The default is 10000 rows.</p> <p><b>Tips:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The row limit you set here determines the row limit for reports using this query. Consider how row limit will affect report readability. For example, if you have a simple chart with just the X- and Y- axes, you might want a maximum of 20 rows for a single-page chart. For stacked charts, your data points still correspond to the row limits but two or more will be on the same column. See also <a href="#">“Selecting Data for the Z-Axis on a Chart (Optional)” on page 345</a> for additional information.</li> <li>If the query is used as a base query in a trend, the trend row limit overwrites the row limit set here. See <a href="#">“Trend Parameters” on page 325</a>.</li> </ul>
Distinct Rows	If you check this box, when there are duplicate returned rows, only one of them is shown. That is, only unique (distinct) rows appear.
Database Hint	If you are using Oracle, database hints are optional statements in addition to the standard query statements. They are used to provide additional instructions on how to execute the specific query. Consult your Oracle documentation or HP Support for details about database hints. This does not apply to the CORR-Engine.

The example below shows a query definition for *VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly* that returns VPN login attempts over a one day period each time it is run (Start Time is \$Now - 1d and End Time is \$Now).

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' window with the 'Query Editor' tab selected. The 'General' sub-tab is active, showing the following configuration for the query 'VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly':

- Query**
  - Name: VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly
  - Query On: Event
  - Start Time: \$Now - 1d
  - End Time: \$Now
  - Use as Timestamp: End Time
  - Row Limit: 10000
  - Distinct Rows: ☐
  - Database Hint:
- Common**
  - External ID:
  - Alias (Display Name):
  - Description:
  - Version ID:
  - Deprecated: ☐
- Assign**
  - Owner:
  - Notification Groups:



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

## Query Fields

The Query **Fields** tab contains the following main options with which to define query data and structure:

- [SELECT Query Fields](#)[ORDER BY Query Fields](#)
- [GROUP BY Query Fields](#)
- [ORDER BY Query Fields](#)



**Drag-and-drop is available on Query Structure panels.** You can drag-and-drop items between options (for example, to group by Category Outcome, drag it from SELECT to GROUP BY. It stays in SELECT but is also used to GROUP BY)

### Search Shortcuts

- Type part of the field name to find (for example, Name) in the Search box.
- Use the up/down arrow keys to jump to each instance of "Name" in the available fields.
- When you find the field name you want, press Return to add it to the condition statement under the selected section (SELECT, GROUP BY, or ORDER BY)
- Ctrl+F gets the Search box back in display if it's hidden

**Common Conditions Editor (CCE).** The Query Editor, like other resource editors, uses the CCE for building conditional statements (query structure). For more tips on using the CCE, see ["Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)" on page 818](#).

## SELECT Query Fields

Click **Add SELECT columns** to select the data for the query. Data selected enters one big bucket, and any functions set for any of the data fields is performed on the entire bucket of data.

**Drag and Drop** items between options (e.g., to group by Category Outcome, drag it from SELECT to GROUP BY. It remains in SELECT but is also used to GROUP BY)

**Select a Field Set:**  
Narrow the list of data fields to one designed for a particular use case.

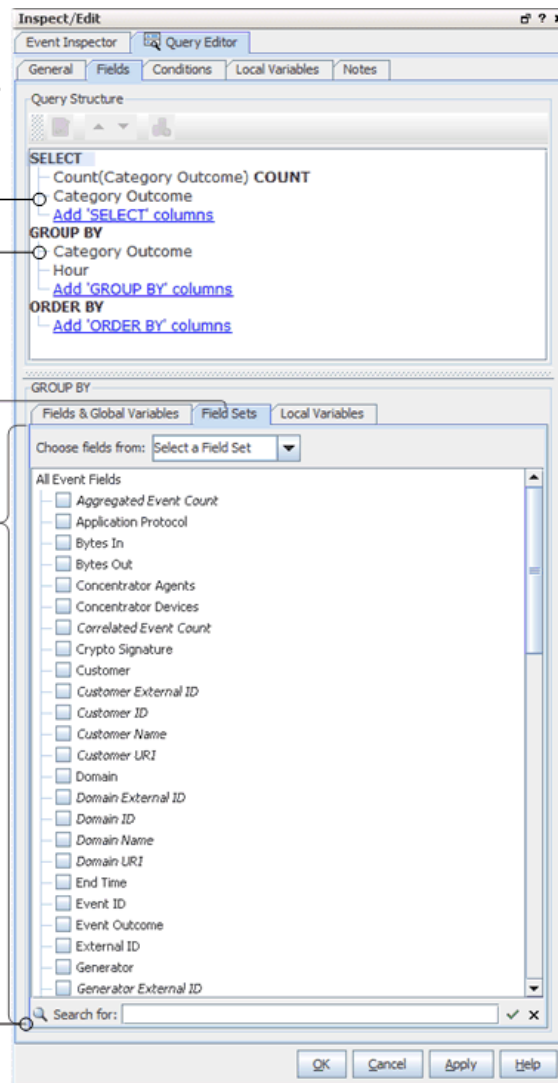
**Choose Columns:**  
Select one or more data fields, then click the arrow to move it to the Query Columns area.

**Search Shortcuts:**  
Type part of the field name you want to find (e.g., Name) in the Search box.

Use the up/down arrow keys to jump to each instance of "Name" in the available fields.

When you find the field name you want, hit Return to add it to the selected query structure sections (SELECT, GROUP BY, or ORDER BY)

Ctrl+F gets the Search box back in display if it's hidden



**Query Structure:**  
Shows a summary of selected data and any optional functions and/or order-by and group-by conditions.



**Tip**



Fields shown in italics on the Data Options panel are derived, referenced, or side table fields (rather than "hard event data" in the main database tables). See also, ["Data Fields" on page 837](#) and ["Variables" on page 982](#).

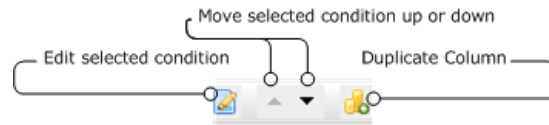
### Query Structure (SELECT)

The Query Structure section at the top provides a summary of the fields selected in the SELECT section at the bottom. If you add GROUP BY or ORDER BY settings, these show up here also.

You can select from **Fields and Global Variables**, **Field Sets**, or **Local Variables** as data to build the query. Choosing a field set limits the fields shown to the selected field set.

- Click a field or variable (checkmark it) to select it.

- Click again (remove the checkmark) to deselect it.
- To edit a field or variable that you already have set as a query condition (showing under SELECT), simply double-click it or select it (click once) and click the Edit button (  ) in the toolbar. (For example, you might want to edit the query by adding a function to it, as described in [“Applying Functions to SELECT Columns” on page 307.](#))
- To duplicate a field or variable that you already have under SELECT, select it (click once) then click the Duplicate Column button (  ) in the toolbar.
- To move column up or down, select it and click the up or down arrow in the toolbar.



You can also select a condition item and right-click to get the various Edit options (**Edit**, **Copy**, **Delete**, **Duplicate**, etc.)

## Applying Functions to SELECT Columns

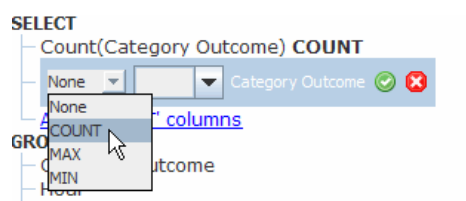
Optionally, you can specify an aggregate function on a particular column of data, such as a line item count, or in the case of numeric data, a sum or average

If the query is not grouped by one or more columns, then aggregate functions added here are applied to the whole result set.

If the query is grouped by one or more columns, then the aggregate function is performed on each group individually.

Adding a function adds a data field to the query schema that provides the results of the function, which can later be displayed in a report.

To specify a function for column data, double-click a field or variable in the top pane under “SELECT” and select a Function (from the drop-down menu) to apply to the column data.




The available functions are:


- **COUNT** - Count the number of line items returned in this column.
- **SUM** - Add all numerical data in a column, such as aggregated event count.
- **AVERAGE** - Calculate the average of all numerical data in a column, such as aggregated event count.
- **MAX** - Calculate the top values of the items returned in this column.
- **MIN** - Calculate the lowest values of the items returned in this column.
- **Standard Deviation (STDDV)** - Calculate the variation from the “average” (mean) for this column. (Square root of the variance.)

- **VARIANCE** - Calculate the amount of variation within the values returned for this column.

Select **Unique** to apply the function only to unique values in the column. (For example, the target address column may have 50 items in it, but only three are unique. To get a count of unique target addresses, check the Unique box.)

Click the green checkmark button () to add the function.

To remove a function from a field, select the field, change the function selection to None, and click the green checkmark button again.

To cancel a modification to a function, click the () button or simply click elsewhere on the UI (off of the Function menu.)

## GROUP BY Query Fields

Click **Add GROUP By** to divide query results into separate buckets. For example, you could do a “group by” if you are interested in sorting items by timestamp, such as logins between 3 and 5 p.m. Functions on **GROUP BY** data apply to timestamp based fields only.



**Drag and Drop** items between options (e.g., to group by HOUR, drag it from GROUP BY to ORDER BY. It remains in GROUP BY but is also used to ORDER BY)

**Query Columns:** Shows columns selected for the group by.

**Choose Columns:** Select one or more data fields to determine which fields to group by, then click the arrow to move it to the *Query Columns* area.

**Search Shortcuts:**  
Type part of the field name you want to find (e.g., Name) in the Search box.  
Use the up/down arrow keys to jump to each instance of "Name" in the available fields.  
When you find the field name you want, hit Return to add it to the selected query structure sections (SELECT, GROUP BY, or ORDER BY)  
Ctrl+F gets the Search box back in display if it's hidden



Fields in shown in *italics* on the Data Options panel are derived, referenced, or side table fields (rather than "hard event data" in the main database tables). See also, ["Data Fields" on page 837](#) and ["Variables" on page 982](#).

## Query Structure (GROUP BY)

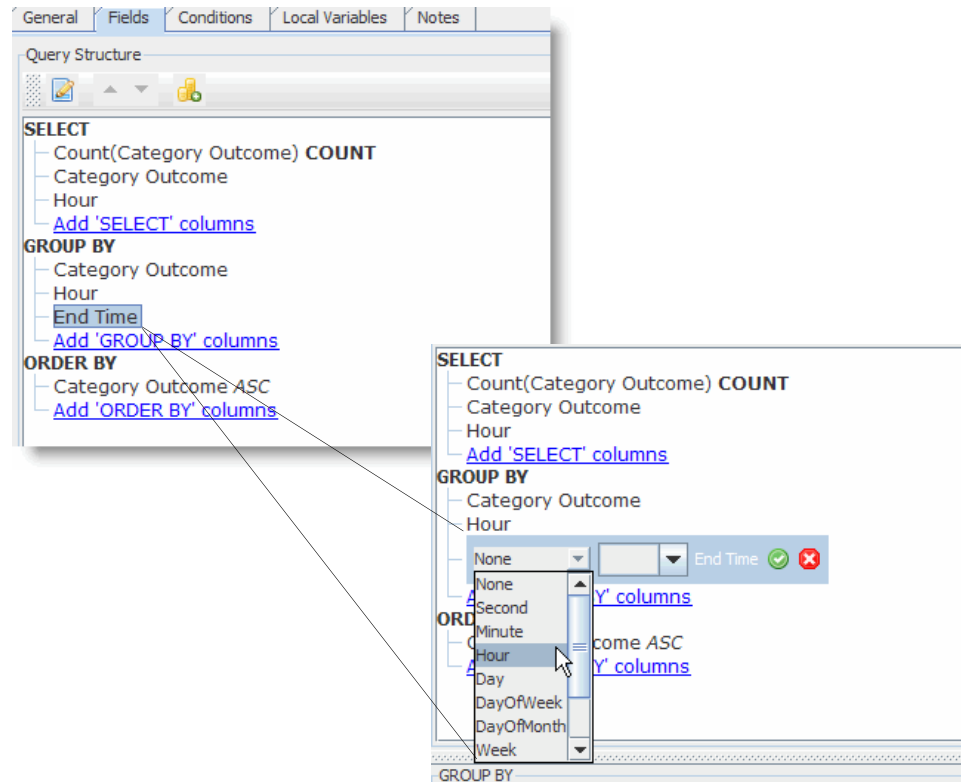
The Query Structure section at the top provides a summary of the fields selected in the GROUP BY section at the bottom. SELECT and ORDER BY settings show up here also.

Adding and editing fields and variables to order by works similarly to adding them for SELECT. See ["Query Structure \(SELECT\)" on page 306](#).

## Applying Time-Based Functions to GROUP BY Columns

You can specify a time-based function on the group by column of data. Time-based functions apply only to time-based fields, such as event end time.

To specify a function for GROUP BY column data, double-click a field or variable in the top pane under "GROUP BY" and select one of the available time-based functions (from the drop-down menu) to apply to the column data.



Functions on items under GROUP BY create a separate bucket of data for each time function specified.

To specify a function for column data, select a data field in the Query Columns section then select a Function (from the drop-down menu) to apply to the column data:

- **Second** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in the same second.
- **Minute** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in the same 60-second period.
- **Hour** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in the same 60-minute period.
- **Day** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in the same 24-hour period.
- **DayofWeek** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur on the different days of the week, such as Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday.
- **DayofMonth** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur on various days of the month, such as the first, second, and third.
- **Week** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in a week.
- **Month** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in a month.
- **Year** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in a year.

- **Quarter** - Creates a new bucket for all events that occur in a quarter.

## ORDER BY Query Fields

Click **Add ORDER BY** columns to specify the order in which you want the data in your buckets sorted. For example, you might “order by” if you were interested in the numeric value of the items in your bucket such as the top 10 logins.

**Drag and Drop** items between options (e.g., to group by Category Outcome, drag it from SELECT to GROUP BY. It remains in SELECT but is also used to GROUP BY)

**Query Columns:** Shows columns selected for the order by.

**Choose Columns:** Select one or more data fields to determine the sorting order by, then click the arrow to move it to the Query Columns area.

**Search Shortcuts:**  
Type part of the field name you want to find (e.g., Name) in the Search box.  
Use the up/down arrow keys to jump to each instance of "Name" in the available fields.  
When you find the field name you want, hit Return to add it to the selected query structure sections (SELECT, GROUP BY, or ORDER BY)  
Ctrl+F gets the Search box back in display if it's hidden



Fields in shown in *italics* on the Data Options panel are derived, referenced, or side table fields (rather than “hard event data” in the main database tables). See also, [“Data Fields” on page 837](#) and [“Variables” on page 982](#).

## Query Structure (ORDER BY)

The ORDER BY columns can be different than the ones you chose for the query data under SELECT. Also, you can apply functions to these columns.

Adding and editing fields and variables to order by works similarly to adding them for SELECT. See [“Query Structure \(SELECT\)” on page 306](#).

## Applying a Column Function to Order By

Optionally, you can specify an aggregate function on a particular column of data to group by, such as a line item count, or in the case of numeric data, a sum or average.

You apply a function to ORDER BY columns the same as you do to a SELECT column, and the same functions are available depending on the fields or variables chosen. See [“Applying Functions to SELECT Columns” on page 307](#).

To specify a function for column data, double-click a field or variable in the top pane under “ORDER BY” and select a Function (from the drop-down menu) to apply to the column data.



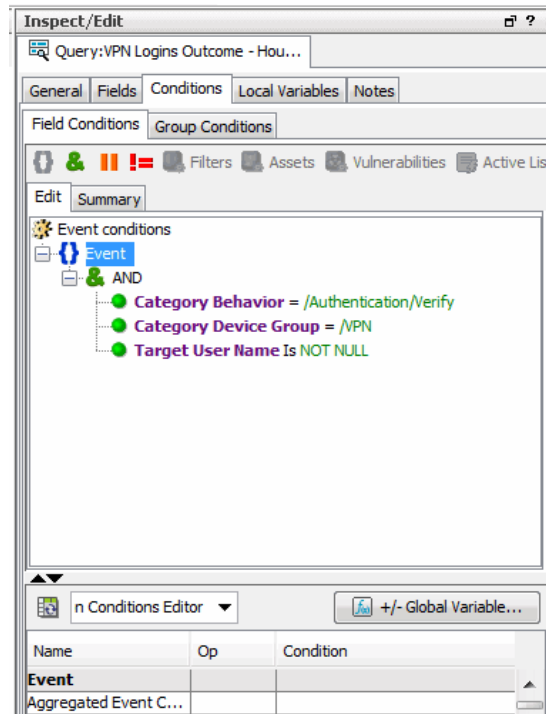
## Sort Order

Under ORDER BY you can also set the sort order on the fields/columns. By default, the sort order is ascending (**ASC**). You can change it to descending (**DESC**).

## Query Conditions

Optionally, you can create conditions on individual fields or on groups as part of the query. You can add filters, and conditions based on assets, vulnerabilities, and active lists.

Use the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) within the query editor to create query conditions as described in this section.



The Common Conditions Editor is used throughout the ArcSight Console for various resources. In addition to the topics that follow on defining conditions for a report query, see also [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#), [“Conditional Statements” on page 832](#), [“Conditions” on page 833](#), and [“Logical Operators” on page 920](#).

## Creating Conditions on a Field

For information on how to create conditional statements, see [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#), [“Conditional Statements” on page 832](#), [“Conditions” on page 833](#), and [“Logical Operators” on page 920](#).

- 1 Click the **Conditions** tab and select data fields from the fields below list to build a condition statement in the display area at the top of the Edit sub-tab.

The data field table displays a **Name**, **Operator**, and **Condition** column. These three columns are combined to create *<data field> <logic operator> <data field value>* condition statements. For example, if monitoring a Cisco Router, you could define a condition statement to specify Device Product = Cisco Router: Device Product as the data field, equals (=) as the logic operator, and Cisco Router as the data field value.

- 2 In the Op column, double-click the cell and select a logic operator from the drop-down menu.
- 3 In the Condition column, type a data field value or double-click the cell and select a value from the drop-down menu. Press **Enter** to add the condition to the statement above.
- 4 Repeat this process to add more statements to the condition.

- 5 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes and create the condition.

## Tips on creating conditions

- Drop-down menus appear if the selected data field has a set of value options.
- For example, if the Category Behavior data field is selected, a drop-down menu appears with the value options of /Access, /Access/Start, Access/Stop/ and so on. One of the choices in this menu is /Authentication/Verify, which is the condition we selected for Category Behavior in our example condition.
- For date and time data fields, such as Detect Time, you can type an actual date value, such as 10/12/2002 8:54:00 AM, or you can use special Time variables.
- The condition statement appears as a branch under the logical operator.
- To add a condition to an event field, click in its condition box and click the ellipses icon.
- To activate all operands on the top, select an item in the editor view, as shown above.

## Creating Group Conditions

Creating a group condition is similar to creating a normal condition, except you pick an aggregate function to perform on the group.

You would use it if, for example, to group by event name and when you want to get only the events with more than 100 occurrences in the query. In this case, you would add a Count() aggregate function to the eventID field, for example, count(eventId) > 100 to eliminate the events that have occurred less than 100 times.

## Query Variables

Variables are run-time information derived from the source data (event, asset, case, notification, or trend, depending on the schema) that can be used in the query wherever normal fields can be used.



You can create local variables which are available only to the resource you are creating (in this case, a query), or use global variables. The following steps describe how to set a local variable. For information on creating global variables, see [Chapter 13, Global Variables, on page 445](#).

### To set a local variable:

- 1 Click the **Variables** tab.
- 2 Click **Add** to launch the Variables dialog.
- 3 The Variables dialog displays different values depending on the function you choose. In the Variables dialog, enter the following values and click **OK**.

Options	Description
Name	Enter a name for the variable. This is the alias that appears in the Conditions editor when you can use the variable. Spaces and special characters are OK.
Function	From the drop-down menu, select a function. For a description of each function, click <b>Help</b> in the lower right corner.
Arguments	The arguments section contains a series of fields where you set the parameters for the variable. The available fields vary with the function you select.

Options	Description
Preview	The preview area provides an interface where you can enter values for the key variable fields so you can verify that the parameters you specified return the expected results.  Enter test values and click <b>Calculate</b> .

## Editing a Query

- 1 Navigate to **Reports** in the Navigator panel, select the **Queries** tab, and select the query you want to modify.
- 2 Double-click the query, or right-click and select **Edit Query** from the context menu. This launches the Query Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, and shows the definition for the selected query.
- 3 Edit the query definition as needed and click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes. (Click **Cancel** to exit the Query editor without saving changes.)



**Caution**

If the query is used in a trend, the query and associated schema referenced in the trend are set at the time the trend was created. After the trend is created, you can add columns to the base query, but columns added to the query after the trend is created are not used by the trend. You can remove columns from the base query that are not used by the trend. However, if you want to add or remove columns (data fields) in the query that are used in the trend, create a new trend and select that modified query.

## Example: Creating Asset-Related Conditions for Queries on Lists

This example applies to queries on active and session lists. A list is typically populated automatically by one or more rule actions (see [“Rules Authoring” on page 397](#)). You can then query those lists to create reports.

For queries on lists, the Assets button on the query's Condition tab is disabled. This therefore limits your ability to add an asset-related condition by means of a button. You can, however, use the Common Conditions Editor to create your query condition statements in queries on lists containing assets.

This example uses a query on a list that contains assets. The goal of this example is to use a list to collect asset information, and you would regularly query that list for this information. Specifically, you are looking for assets that belong to a specific category.

### Model your network:

Assets are part of your network model. For complete information, see [“Modeling the Network” on page 695](#).

### Create your list:

Create a field-based active or session list containing assets fields. Details are in [“List Authoring” on page 511](#).

### Create your query:

This query is interested in looking at the list and getting assets that belong to a particular asset category. Details for setting general query attributes are in [“Defining Query Settings” on page 301](#).

**Add your query conditions:**

For our purposes, we want to look for assets that belong to a category.

- 1 On the Conditions tab's Common Conditions Editor, locate the asset field of interest, for example, Asset ID. Use the **InGroup** operator for the field.
- 2 Click the ellipsis in the Condition column to display the Advanced Editor for the asset field.

The Advanced Editor provides the following options for the asset field:

Asset Options	Action
Asset	Expand the asset group nodes and select an asset group.
Zone	Expand the zone nodes and select a zone.
AssetCategory	Expand the asset category nodes and select an asset category.

- 3 Specify your asset attribute of interest and browse to the desired resource URI to complete your condition statement.

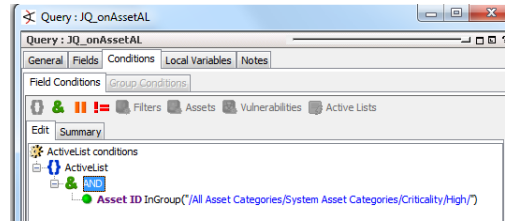
For example:

To provide an asset-related value for your query condition, click the Common Conditions Editor's Advanced Editor button. Choose an asset attribute (Asset, Zone, or AssetCategory), then browse to the specific ESM resource.

Expand the nodes as required and select the desired resource.

In our example, we choose **AssetCategory**. We are interested in the Criticality category that is equal to High. A list of asset category groups is displayed, from which you can further expand to select the category you want. The query's condition statement is then updated according to your selections, for example:





The query will then return Asset IDs belonging to the asset category specified in the condition statement.

## Building Trends

A trend is an ArcSight resource that defines how and over what time period data are aggregated and evaluated for trends. A trend executes a specified query on a defined schedule and time duration.

The ArcSight trends engine evaluates source data for trends based on event conditions (such as number of worm outbreaks, incident time-to-close, or number of cases closed) or common network elements (such as operating system, business role, or regulatory compliance relevance).

Trends can be used as the primary data source for a report, or used as the data source input to another query which is then used in a report (perhaps along with other queries or trends).

Building trends is a component of ArcSight Reporting resource tools. Be sure to start with [“Building Reports” on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools, and [“Understanding the Reporting Workflow” on page 275](#) to see how trends fit in to the process of creating a report.

## How Trends Work

A trend references a query, specifies a schedule on which the query automatically triggers, and provides mechanisms for efficiently storing, viewing, and leveraging the trend results for reporting. The trend results are stored in a trend table in the ArcSight database and can therefore be queried.

Trends can be set to run indefinitely or to end at a specified date and time. A trend can be configured to start retrieving historical data from logs, start with current events, or at some specified time in the future. (You can also specify advanced options on how and when to build tables and store data.

Once trend data is collected, you can view the results in the Data Viewer table and generate a trend report that displays the results in tables and graphs.



Depending on the data gathered by the base query, the trend is either *snapshot trend* or an *interval trend*.

## Snapshot Trend

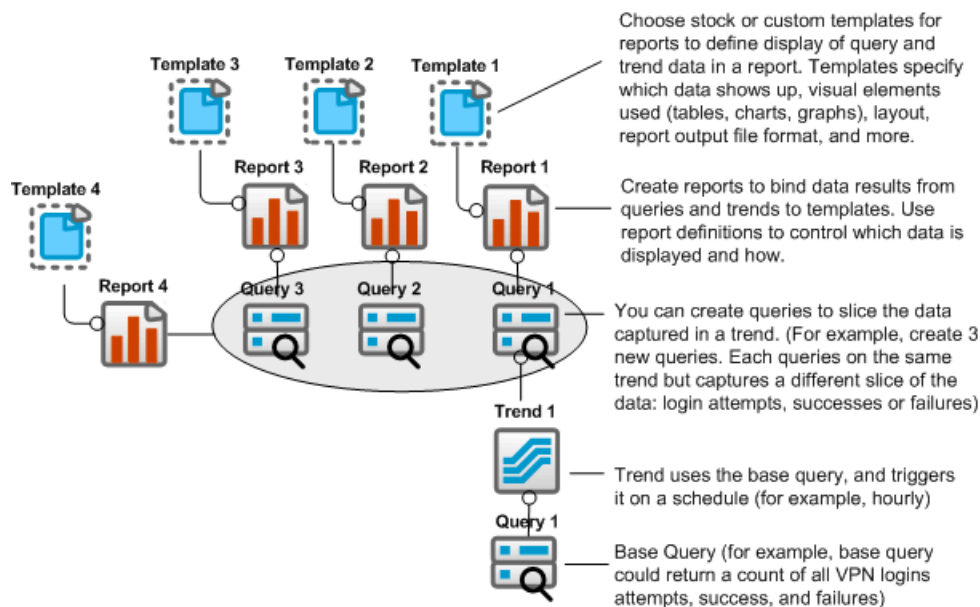
A *snapshot trend* uses a query that operates on a fixed moment in time, for example, to gather information about assets on your network. Snapshot trends are built from queries based on assets, cases, or notifications. For example, snapshot queries and the trends built from them would be used to determine metrics such as current number of assets, number of systems with a particular operating system, or number of systems with particular vulnerabilities. A snapshot trend operates on data in the current moment in time, and only collects data going forward. Therefore, you cannot use trends to answer the question, “how many assets were there in this zone a month ago?” You can use trends to collect data from this point forward, however, and in a month from now, you have a month's worth of data telling you how many assets were in this zone at regular intervals over the last month.

## Interval Trend

An *interval trend* uses a query that operates on events that happen over a specified time window, for example, to gather information about how many events of a particular description occurred daily over a 6-month period. Interval trends are event-based. For example, an interval trend using a base query with a time window could gather information to determine the number of login attempts in the past hour. You can refresh an interval trend manually as needed by selecting the trend in the Navigator and clicking **Refresh** on right-click context menu.

## Query-Trend Relationships in Reporting

A base trend is made of one query. Trends can be used as the primary data source for a report. Or, a trend based on one query can be used as the data source to another query that further refines the initial query result. A collection of trend queries (queries that use trends as their data source) can provide focused views of a data set, which can then be fed into a single report or multiple reports.



For example, you could create a trend called “VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly” that references a query that returns all VPN login attempts, successful logins, and failed attempts. You could schedule the trend to run hourly. You can use this base trend directly in a report.

A more powerful approach would be to further refine the data results by creating three new trend queries, each of which takes the base trend as its data source, but then sets further conditions on the query data to return one specialized slice of the results. One query could return only login attempts, another only successful attempts, and another only failed attempts. You could then draw on four queries in a single or multiple reports to show different views of the data. (The base query would show all types of login events, and the other three would show the focused views.)

Multiple reports can be generated from a single query or trend, and a single report can capture data from multiple queries and trends.

The ability to automate and refine queries by feeding them into trends and vice versa, along with the flexibility in populating reports, solves many typical enterprise security reporting challenges. You can build a trend that gets a daily event count, feed the trend into a query that sums up the daily counts to get a monthly event count, and even feed that monthly count query into another trend and so forth. Managed Security Service Providers (MSSP) can tier query-trend approaches to create focused reports for multiple customers built from what are initially broad range queries.

## Building a Trend

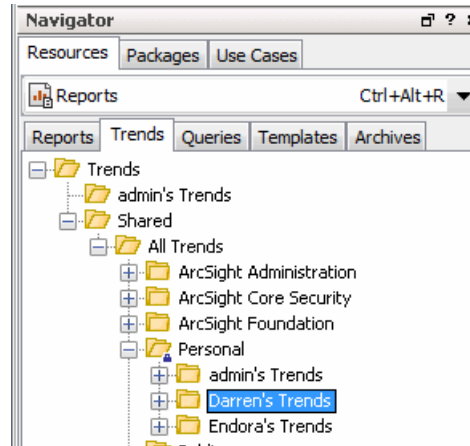
Before you begin building a trend, make sure that you have a query defined that captures the data on which to build a trend. (See [“Building Queries” on page 299](#) if you need more information.)



For a query used in a trend, the query and associated schema referenced in the trend are set at the time the trend was created. After the trend is created, you can modify some elements of the query if they do not affect the trend. For example, you can add or remove columns in the query if the related trend does not depend on them. Such modifications made to a referenced query are not reflected in the trend. If you modify aspects of the query that a trend depends on, the trend is disabled.

## Navigating to Trends

In the Navigator panel, select the **Reports** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Trends** tab. Trend groups (folders) are organized according to users.



## Creating a New Trend

As a general rule, it is best to create new content under an individual folder. The high-level steps for creating a trend are as follows:

- 1 Expand the Trends navigator to display the trend groups. Right-click a trend group (folder) and select **New Trend**. This launches the Trend Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 2 Define trend attributes. At a minimum, fill in the required values (red asterisks) on the Attributes tab as described in the [Trend Attributes](#) topic.
- 3 Verify the trend schema represented by the selected Data Fields is appropriate.
- 4 Test the trend schema to make sure it is returning the expected data as described in [Testing a Trend](#).
- 5 Define a trend schedule as described in [Trend Schedule](#).
- 6 Click **Apply** or **OK** to create the new trend.



**Caution**

Do not click **Apply** or **OK** until you have defined the required values in the **Trend** section (trend name and query to use) and the trend schema in the Data Fields section of the Attributes tab. When you commit changes to the trend, the query and the schema are set and cannot be edited. If you decide to use a different base query or need to make a change to the schema, delete the trend and start with a new trend.



**Note**

A trend uses a “snapshot” version of the query as its data source. After you have used a query in a trend, you can modify some elements of the query if they do not affect the trend. For example, you can add or remove columns in the query if the related trend does not depend on them. Such modifications made to a referenced query are not reflected in the trend. If you modify aspects of the query that a trend depends on, the trend is disabled.

## Defining Trend Settings

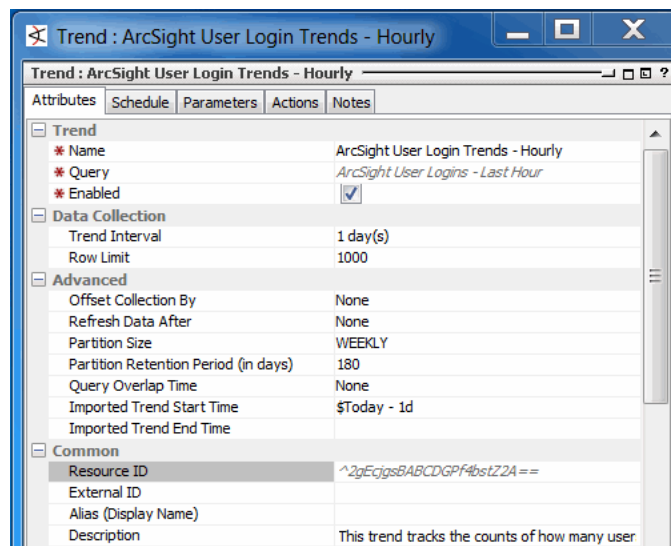
Use the Trend Editor to build a new trend or edit an existing one.

## Trend Attributes

The following fields in the Trend section are required attributes to specify when creating a new trend.

Trend Fields	Description
Name	Name for the trend. Spaces and special characters are OK. The name you enter here is the alias that appears in data source pick lists in other editors.
Query	<p>Specifies the query that this trend uses.</p> <p>If you are creating a new trend, use the Query drop-down menu to select a query as the source data for your trend. See <a href="#">“Building Queries” on page 299</a> for information about queries.</p> <p>Trends tend to use up system resources, so make your queries for trends as refined as possible.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> Once the trend is created, you can add columns to the base query, but columns added to the query after the trend is created are not used by the trend. You can remove columns from the base query that are not used by the trend. However, if you want to remove columns (data fields) in the query that are used in the trend, create a new trend and select that modified query.</p>
Enabled	By default, the Enabled check box is checked. This activates the trend to begin working on live data as soon as the trend is created. Uncheck this box if you want to experiment with the trend before pushing it live.

The following example shows a trend that uses the “ArcSight User Logins - Last Hour” query as its basis.



The **Data Collection** section provides default values for row limit and query duration. You can keep the defaults or modify as needed.

Trend: Data Collection Fields	Description
Trend Interval	Time span over which the trend operates. The default is one hour. For example, if the query counts the number of logins, this setting counts the number of logins every hour.
Row Limit	Maximum number of rows of data the trend captures. The default number is 1000.

The **Advanced** section provides optional settings to offset trend data collection and refresh trend data at a specified point in the future. By default, the offset and refresh values are set to **None**. You can keep the defaults or modify as needed.

Trend: Advanced Fields	Description
Offset Collection By	<p>Delays trend data collection by the time period specified. Offsetting trend data collection time enables you to compensate for events that arrive to the Manager late, either from a time zone lag or other data collection lag. Trend data collection starts after the time delay entered here.</p> <p>Enter a time delay and select Hours or Minutes from the drop-down menu. The default offset is None.</p>
Refresh Data After	<p>Triggers the system to automatically re-evaluate the query data at a later time to capture any additional events that may have come in late.</p> <p>Enter a refresh interval and select Hours or Minutes from the drop-down menu. The default refresh is None.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Manager supports late arrival of events. For example, a SmartConnector can send a batch of events later if it is falling behind. You need to explicitly schedule a refresh of trend data only if SmartConnectors frequently lag behind in sending events to the Manager. If SmartConnectors rarely go down and are generally on time delivering events, there is no need to set this option.</p>
Partition Size	<p>Specifies the time range of partitions for this trend data, which in effect determines the partition size.</p> <p>The default "time slice" for trend tables is WEEKLY. That is, if the default setting is used, each partition would contain a week's worth of data. Partition size can be set to weekly or monthly. You can always modify the Partition size as needed by editing the trend definition.</p> <p>The Partition Size works in concert with the Partition Retention Period, described below.</p>

Trend: Advanced Fields (Continued)	Description
Partition Retention Period (in days)	<p>Specifies the number of days to retain the partitions from this trend as active in the ArcSight database. The default is 180 days. You can always modify the Partition Retention Period as needed by editing the trend definition.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Partition Retention Period works in combination with the Partition Size. The system makes sure you always have as much data, if not more, than you specified in the configuration of these two settings. Similarly for factors such as time zones and daylight savings time, more data (never less) is retained. For example, if the Partition Size is set to MONTHLY and the Partition Retention Period is 45 days, the system stores two months' worth of data in two partitions. If the Partition Retention Period is set to 0 days, the data collected from one run of the trend is retained until the next partition is started. For example, if the Partition Size is MONTHLY and the Partition Retention Period is 0 days, then you keep one month's worth of data. Make sure that the trend start date is appropriate; a trend with a MONTHLY partition size, 0 days retention, and a start date near the end of the month would not maintain data for very long.</p>
Query Overlap Time	<p>The query overlap time is the amount of time by which the next query should overlap with the previous query (overlapping the tail-end of the previous query).</p> <p>The default overlap is 0 ("None"), which corresponds to the normal non-overlapping trend query case.</p> <p>By setting a query overlap time, you can configure a trend to support calculations like moving averages. The query overlap time extends the trend to include overlapping query ranges.</p> <p>For example, to collect moving average data over a 10 day period, you could run the query each day over the previous 10 days. A query overlap time set to 0 (the default) would result in non-overlapping runs, such that the query would run every 10th day over the previous 10 days.</p> <p>On the other hand, to get an overlapping trend run, you could specify a 9 day overlap. With this setting, the query would run every day (10 day query - 9 day overlap) over the previous 10 days. The trend would gather data every day for days 1-10, 2-11, 3-12, etc.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Queries should not normally be run on the event table for anything longer than a day. Queries longer than a day should normally only run on other trend tables to allow the query to finish in a reasonable amount of time.</li> <li>• This option is enabled for snapshot trends.</li> </ul>

Trend: Advanced Fields (Continued)	Description
Imported Trend Start Time	<p>If the trend is exported without schedule start and end times, the trend <b>start time</b> specified here is used when the trend is imported.</p> <p>If the trend is exported without Schedule start and end times and no value is specified for Imported Trend Start Time, then when the trend is imported it defaults to use \$CurrentDate as the start time. With \$CurrentDate, the trend captures data starting from 12:00:00 AM of the current day.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The imported trend start time takes effect only if the trend is exported without Schedule start time. To exclude the Schedule start time from a trend upon export, set the package <b>Format</b> option to <b>export</b>. For information on this, see the description of the package Format options in <a href="#">"Creating Packages" on page 645</a>.</p>
Imported Trend End Time	<p>If the trend is exported without schedule start and end times, the trend <b>end time</b> specified here is used when the trend is imported.</p> <p>If the trend is exported without Schedule end time and no value is specified for Imported Trend End Time, then when the trend is imported it defaults to using no end time. (With this setting, the trend runs indefinitely until it is manually disabled or edited to include an end time.)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The imported trend end time takes effect only if the trend is exported without Schedule end time. To exclude the Schedule end time from a trend upon export, set the package <b>Format</b> option to <b>export</b>. For information on this, see the description of the package Format options in <a href="#">"Creating Packages" on page 645</a>.</p>



Tip

Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642](#).

The **Data Fields** section is where you build the trend schema. This is populated automatically when you first select the query to use in this trend. The list shows the data fields collected by the query you chose. By default, all the query fields are selected for use in the trend. If you do not want to use a particular data field, clear (click to remove the check mark) the Use box for that item. Also, you can select which fields you also want to index. Indexing is done mostly for query efficiency, and TimeStamp is selected by default. It is helpful if the query you are using returns a large amount of data, and you want to run sub-queries on the data.

Data Fields	Use	Index
Name		
TimeStamp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Attacker Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Attacker Asset Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Attacker Zone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Device Event Category	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
End Time	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



The **Summary** box at the bottom displays a summary of the query interval and the schedule on which it runs.

## Trend Schedule

Click the **Trend Schedule** tab to review or modify settings for the following parameters:

- **Schedule Frequency** - Specifies how often the query runs and gather data. The default is to run once every hour on the hour.
- **Schedule Range** - Specifies start and end date/time for the period during which the trend collects data at the scheduled collection times. By default, the date and time the trend was created is used as the trend schedule start time. The default is indefinitely; that is, No End date.

With the default settings, this trend would collect data once every hour on the hour until it is disabled manually.

A Summary of the configured schedule is shown at the bottom of the tab.

**Trend : ArcSight User Login Trends - Hourly**

Attributes | **Schedule** | Parameters | Actions | Notes

**Query Data Source:** ArcSight User Logins - Last Hour  
**Trend Interval:** 24 hours  
**Next Run:** 19 Jun 2013 05:00:00 PDT

**Schedule Frequency**

☐ Hourly Every 1 day(s)  
☒ Daily Occurs at 5:00:00

**Schedule Range**

**Start:** 8 May 2013 00:00:00 PDT  
**End:** ☒ No End date  
☐ End on 18 Jun 2013 10:25:42 PDT

**Summary**

Occurs Daily every 1 days(s) at 5:00:00 AM.  
 Schedule will start on 5/8/13 12:00:00 AM.

Refresh Trend Runs Test OK Cancel Apply Help

## Trend Parameters

The Parameters tab lets you further refine the query results in terms of row limits, time zone restraints, filters, and start and end times. If you set parameters in the base query used by this trend, those parameters show up on the Trend Parameters tab. In the Trend, you can specify default parameters.

Then at Report building time, you can opt to run the report with the default parameters or "all parameters." You can also further refine parameter details for a specific run of a report.

For more information on specifying parameters in reports, see [“Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom” on page 355 in Creating Reports](#).



Note

Trend start/end times and row limits are used for gathering the data, and overwrite the start/end times and row limits set in the base query. If you do not customize the Trend Parameters, the defaults on this tab are used (not the start/end times and row limit on the Query General Attributes tab).

For reporting on the data (once it is collected), you can set new start/end times and row limit in the **Report Parameters** tab. The report parameters prescribe only the “outbound” or publishing data derived from the data already collected, not the how the data is gathered. (See [“Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom” on page 355 in Creating Reports](#) and [“Running Reports” on page 379](#) for more information.)

## Trend Actions (Add to Active List)

**Trend actions** give you the option to send specified columns (fields) in trend results to [Active Lists](#) (see [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#)). You do this by defining an **Add to Active List** trend action. On the Actions tab for a trend, you can select to send data from one or more columns in the trend results to a specified active list.



Tip

Trend actions for active lists are similar to the **add to active list** rule action described in [“Rule Actions Reference” on page 422](#). Unlike rules, however, **add to active list** is the only action available for trends, and the settings are not as fine-grained as for rules; for example, thresholds, number of events, time units, and so on do not apply to trend actions.

## How Trend Actions are Useful (Summary Views and Rules)

The *Add to Active List* trend action provides another mechanism to get information from trends outside of (and in addition to) reports, and supports summary views of information from multiple trends.

For example, you can build a single active list that gets updates from multiple trends (each trend updating different columns in the active list). Also, a single active list can receive updates and show information from trends as well as from other sources (for example, rules). Alternatively, you can build multiple active lists that get updates from a single trend.

Perhaps most importantly, the ability to populate active lists with trend data makes trend results readily available for use in rules, filters, active channels, and so forth. In previous releases, trends could not be easily leveraged in rules and other such resources.

### Example Use Case

Consider the following example use cases for leveraging trend results in active lists:

- **Taking Action on Event-Based Trends.** Suppose an analyst wants to monitor the logins per hour by users based on their typical hourly login patterns and flag anything that is above a certain absolute threshold or more than  $n$  times a user's previous average.

The analyst can set up a trend to update the information in a trend table based on aggregation of per-user login events. The trend would have an **action** that updates an active list with the most recent results. Then, the analyst can configure a rule to update another active list when a user logs on and another rule to compare the current login count against what is normal for that user. Any gross discrepancy could be used to trigger an alarm about a possible threat.

- **Taking Action on Asset-Based Trends.** Suppose an analyst wants to monitor assets by how vulnerable they are, and watch for “unusual activity” on especially vulnerable assets.

The analyst can set up a trend to check vulnerability counts on assets and log the top *n* most vulnerable assets on a daily basis. The active list would have an **action** to update an active list. Incoming events on assets would trigger rules that would check this active list against the particular device and, if present, trigger extra processing.

## Plan and Define Active Lists with Fields Mapped to Trend

As a first step in setting up trend actions, determine which active lists the trend should populate and with what data. You might have existing active lists to add trend data to, or you could create new lists specifically for some trend results. (See [“Example: Populating Active Lists with Trend Results” on page 328](#) for an example of designing an active list based on the trend fields you want to monitor.)

## Define a Trend Action

Use the trend **Actions** tab to configure actions on a new or existing trend.

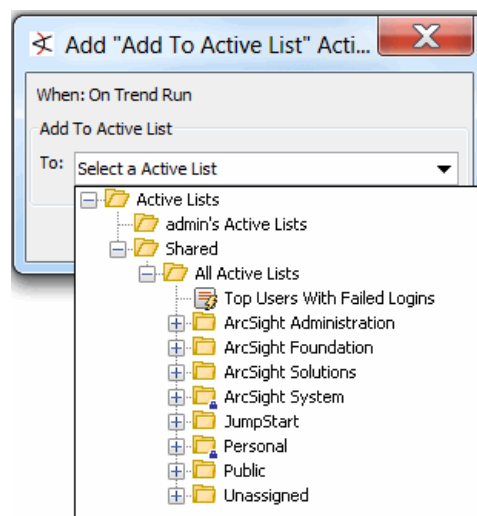
### To define a trend action on an existing trend:

- 1 Select a trend in the Navigator, right-click and choose **Edit Trend**.
- 2 In the Trend Editor, click the **Actions** tab.
- 3 Select the action **On Trend Run**, right-click, and choose **Add to Active List**.



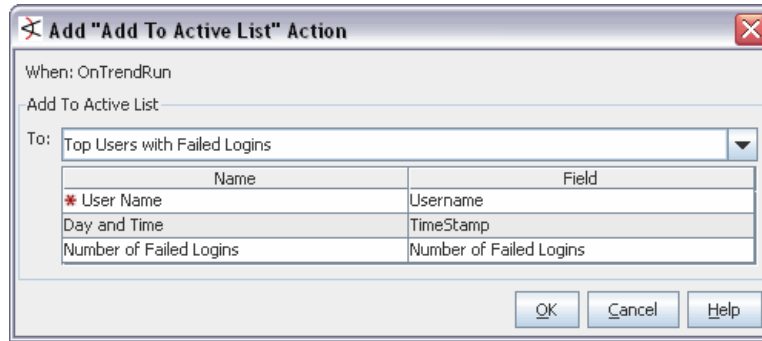
You can only use a *fields-based* active list in a trend action (not event-based lists). For more information on types of active lists, see [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#), especially the description of how to define data for the list ([“Data: Event-based, Fields-based” on page 514](#)).

- 4 Select an active list from the dialog.



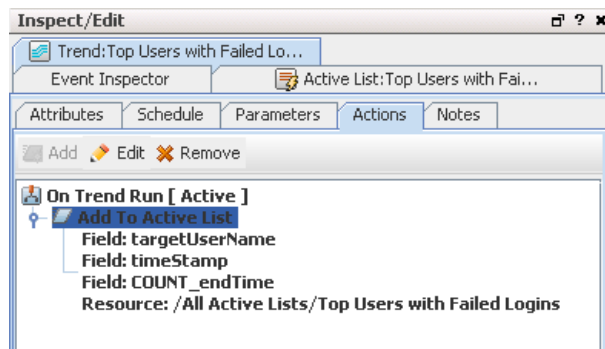
The active list you select here will be updated when this trend runs.

- 5 On the Add to Active List dialog, select fields from the trend (on the right side) to map to active list fields (on the left).



What you are doing in this step is mapping trend column names to active list column names. All the “key” columns required by the active list must have trend columns mapped to them so that the active list entry (row) is correctly updated by the trend. However, not all of the active list value columns need to have trend columns mapped. Not specifying all the key columns is an error.

- Click **OK** to add the action.



The action shows on the actions tab.

Note that you could add more actions here (by selecting the **On Trend Run** and clicking **Add**), edit this action, or remove it.

You can add multiple actions to a single trend (i.e., configure a single trend to update particular columns in multiple active lists with trend results).

- Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the Trend Editor to save your changes.

### Example: Populating Active Lists with Trend Results

Suppose you want to monitor top failed user logins daily and send that data to an active list. (You could then configure rules to interact with the active list and trigger an alarm based on some threshold; for example, a single user with a certain number of failed logins per day.) To do this, you could create an active list with fields that map to a trend that monitors “top users with failed logins”. To see the fields in this trend:

- In the Navigator, choose **Reports**, click the **Trends** tab, then navigate to `//Trends/Shared/All Trends/ArcSight Foundation/Intrusion Monitoring /SANS Top5 Reports/Top Users with Failed Logins per Day`.
- Select the trend, right-click and select **Data Viewer** from the context menu to display the trend results in the Viewer. Note the columns included by default in this trend table (TimeStamp, Day, User Name, and Number of Failed Logins).

You would need to have one or more of these fields in your active list to capture relevant data in the list, as we'll show in the next section where we define the trend.

Viewer			
Top Users with Failed Logins Details			
Top Users with Failed Logins per Day Details			
Name: Top Users with Failed Logins per Day		25 shown / 25 matches	
Start Time : 15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT			
End Time : 16 Jul 2009 11:39:17 PDT			
Filter: No Filter			
TimeStamp	Day	Username	Number of Failed Logins
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15		55
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	lara	28
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	john	16
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	UNKNOWN	8
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	**unknown**	8
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	rajiv	8
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	shannon	7
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	michael	7
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	root	6
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	kashanmi	4
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	admin	3
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	dferrier	2
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	ram	2
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	oracle	2
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	sysadmin	2
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	fsaf	1
15 Jul 2009 00:00:00 PDT	2009-07-15	fdsfds	1

To continue with our example, we could create a fields-based active list with fields that map to the trend "Top Users with Failed Logins per Day" as follows.

Inspect/Edit

Event Inspector Active List: Top Users with Failed Logins per Day

Attributes Notes

Add Entry

Active List

- Name: Top Users with Failed Logins per Day AL
- Optimize Data: ☐
- Capacity (x1000): 10
- TTL Days: 1
- TTL Hours: 0
- TTL Minutes: 0
- Allow multi-mappings: ☐
- Partially cached: ☐
- Time partitioned: ☐

Common

- Resource ID: H570xpOMBABCDzCcB+NbWA==
- External ID:
- Alias (Display Name):
- Description:
- Version ID:
- Content Version ID:

(Name)

(Description)

\* Data: ☐ Event-based ☒ Fields-based ☒ Key Fields

Name	Type	Sub-type	Key-field
User Name	String		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Day and Time	Date		<input type="checkbox"/>
Number of Failed L...	Long		<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Cancel Apply Help

Name	Type	Key Field
User Name	String	This is the key field.
Day and Time	Date	
Number of Failed Logins	Long	

When the trend runs, it populates the active list with data on top users with failed logins by user name, and list the count of failed logins for each user along with date/time information. This active list could be used as the basis for rules, filters, active channels, and so on.

User Name	Day and Time	Number of Failed L...	Creation Time	Last Modified Time	Count
**unknown**	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	8	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
admin	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	3	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
dferrier	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	2	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
dsfdsa	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
fdgfdgd	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
fdsfds	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
fsaf	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
fsdfds	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
gfdgfd	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
john	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	16	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
kashanmi	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	4	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
lara	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	28	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
michael	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	7	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
oracle	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	2	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
rajiv	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	8	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
ram	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	2	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
ROOT	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
root	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	6	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
saf	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
shannon	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	7	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
Super	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
supertest	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	1	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
sysadmin	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	2	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1
UNKNOWN	15 Jul 2009 00:00:...	8	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	16 Jul 2009 06:40:...	1

## Notes on Trend Action Behavior

- When it is mentioned that a trend “updates” the active list entry (row), what is meant is that either the row is inserted if it is not currently present, or if it is present, it is updated. Note that the update only populates / overrides the columns specified by the trend column mapping. Any other active list columns that do not have trend column mappings preserve their existing values. What this means is that it is possible for a single active list to be updated by multiple trends, each updating different columns. The active list is appropriately locked during read-modify-write cycle to avoid data corruption.
- A trend can be executed under a variety of circumstances, including refresh and backfill. However, for purposes of updating the active list, only the most recent data are entered into the active list. For example, no backfill data are added to the active list. A trend refresh run does not normally cause the active list to update, with the only exception being if it is the most recent data being refreshed.

- This trend action never removes entries from the active list. If the you want to have entries removed, use the active list's TTL (time-to-live) to have them expire. (For information on the TTL setting, see [related information on page 512](#) under [Creating an Active List](#).)

### Editing a Trend Action

- 1 Navigate to the trend you want to edit.
- 2 Click the trend **Actions** tab.
- 3 Select the action you want to edit and click **Edit**.
- 4 On the Add to Active List dialog, make changes to the field mappings as needed and click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the Trend Editor to save your changes.

### Removing a Trend Action

- 1 Navigate to the trend you want to edit.
- 2 Click the Trend **Actions** tab.
- 3 Select the action you want to remove and click **Remove**.
- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the Trend Editor to save your changes.

## Testing a Trend

When you are creating a new trend or modifying an existing one, you might want to test it first to determine if you have defined the trend properly to return the data you want. To test the results of the schema you selected, make sure you are on the Schedule tab for the trend you want to test and click **Test**. Here are navigation instructions in case you are not already on that tab:

- 1 Navigate to **Reports > Trends** in the Navigator panel, and select the trend you want to test.
- 2 Do one of the following:
  - ◆ Right-click and choose **Test** from the context menu
  - Or**
  - ◆ Click **Edit Trend** to bring up the Trend editor in the Inspect/Edit panel. Within the editor for the selected trend, click the **Test** button at the bottom of any of the editor tabs (Attributes, Schedule, Parameters, and so forth).

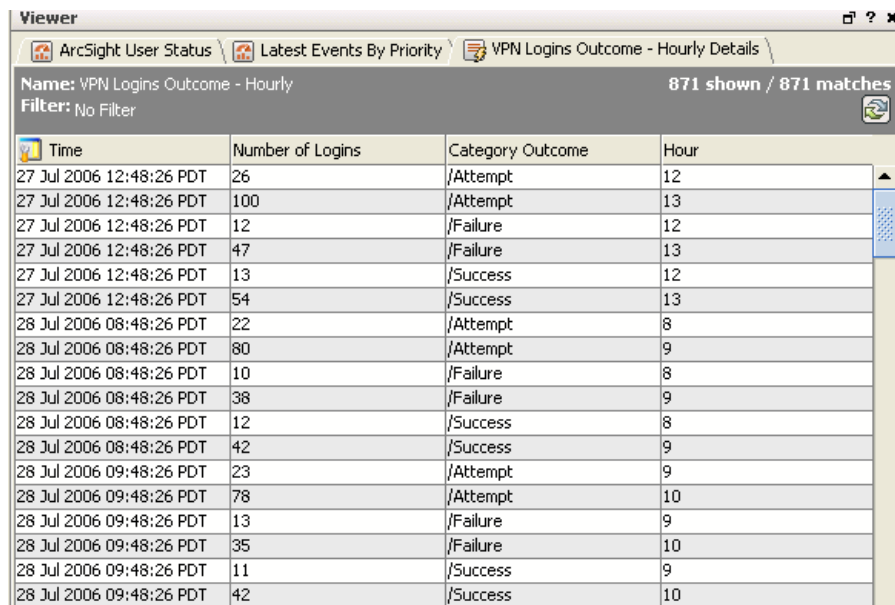
This procedure evaluates the current event stream for matching events and populate the Test Trend pop-up dialog. The message "Success: x rows" at the bottom of the dialog tells you how many rows your trend returned.

The Test Trend sample shows a maximum of 25 rows. For interval queries, the sample also shows data from, at most, the last hour. If there is no match for the data, the trend returns no rows. This may mean that your current event query data contains no matching events or resources, or it may mean that your query needs to be refined.

## Viewing Trend Data

- 1 Navigate o **Reports > Trends** in the Navigator panel, and select the trend for which you want to view the data.

- Right-click and select **Data Viewer** from the context menu. This launches the Trend Data Viewer in the Viewer panel and shows the query results. As with other ArcSight event viewers, you can select an event or group of events, right-mouse click, and access various tools from the context menu to use for further investigation.



The screenshot shows the 'Viewer' window with the title bar 'ArcSight User Status \ Latest Events By Priority \ VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly Details'. The main content area displays a table with the following data:

Time	Number of Logins	Category Outcome	Hour
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	26	/Attempt	12
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	100	/Attempt	13
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	12	/Failure	12
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	47	/Failure	13
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	13	/Success	12
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	54	/Success	13
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	22	/Attempt	8
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	80	/Attempt	9
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	10	/Failure	8
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	38	/Failure	9
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	12	/Success	8
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	42	/Success	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	23	/Attempt	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	78	/Attempt	10
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	13	/Failure	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	35	/Failure	10
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	11	/Success	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	42	/Success	10

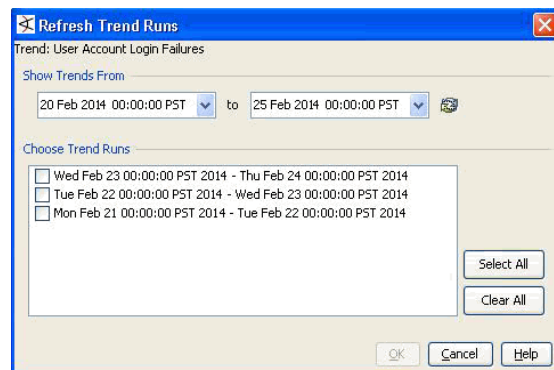
## Refreshing Trend Data

In addition to relying on the scheduled execution of a query according to its interval trend schedule, you can manually refresh the trend data at any time by using the trend refresh feature.

### To refresh a trend table:

- Do either of the following:
  - Click the **Refresh Trend Runs** button on the trend's Attributes tab for the selected trend.
  - In the Navigator, select a trend you want to refresh, right-mouse click and select **Refresh trend runs...** from the context menu.

This opens the **Refresh Trends** dialog which displays the trend query start times of the selected trend.





- 2 Select a period consisting of a start and end time stamp under **Show Trends From**, select one or more of the trend runs under **Choose Trend Runs**, and click **OK** to refresh the selected trend runs.

This executes the base query and refreshes the trend table on the selected runs. Trend refresh allows you to manually re-run a trend to compensate for events that arrive to the Manager late, either from a time zone lag or other data collection lag.



Also, you can configure data collection to be offset by some time period to compensate for late arrival of events. For more information, see Advanced settings for trends in this Help topic.

## Editing or Viewing a Trend Definition

- 1 Navigate to **Reports** in the Navigator panel, select the **Trends** tab, and select the trend you want to modify.
- 2 Double-click the trend, or right-click and select **Edit Trend** from the context menu. This launches the Trend Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, and shows the definition for the selected trend.
- 3 Edit the schedule, advanced settings, and so forth as needed and click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes. (Click **Cancel** to exit the Trend editor without saving changes.)



The query used for a trend and the schema are set at the time the trend was created, and cannot be edited later. If you decide to use a different base query or need to make a change to the schema, delete the trend and start fresh. You can edit the base query by adding columns to it, but columns added to the query after the trend is created are not used by the trend. You can remove columns from the base query that are not used by the trend. However, if you want to add or remove columns (data fields) in the query that are used in the trend, create a new trend and select that modified query.

## Using a Trend in a Query or Report

Trends can be used as the primary data source for a report. Or, a trend (based on one query) can be used as the data source to another query that further refines the initial query result.

For more information on next steps, see Building Queries and [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#).

## Disabling or Enabling a Trend

To disable an enabled trend, right-click the trend and choose **Disable Trend**.

To enable a disabled trend, first review the trend's start date on the trend editor's Schedule tab. By default, the start date is when the trend was created. If the start date is way in the past, for example over six months ago, note that the trend will try to backfill the data from that schedule. This will impact performance, and if the data is no longer available, you may not see any results. Before enabling an old trend, choose its start date that will realistically pull the data you need.

## Deleting a Trend

To delete a trend, right-click it and choose **Delete Trend**. If the trend is being used in a query that is in turn being used in a query viewer, you will see a message that states “Dependent Resource Warning.” You can force the deletion by clicking **OK**.

## Creating Reports

Reports are captured views or summaries of data that can be viewed in the ArcSight Console or exported for sharing in a variety of file formats. You can create reports by pulling together the result sets from one or more queries or trends.

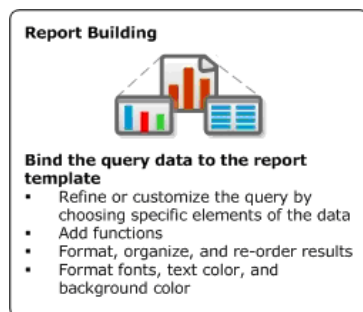
For information on how to run an existing report, see [“Running Reports” on page 379](#).

Creating Reports is a component of ArcSight Reporting resource tools. See also [Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools, including how to build queries or trends and how to use a provided or custom template.

## How Reports Work

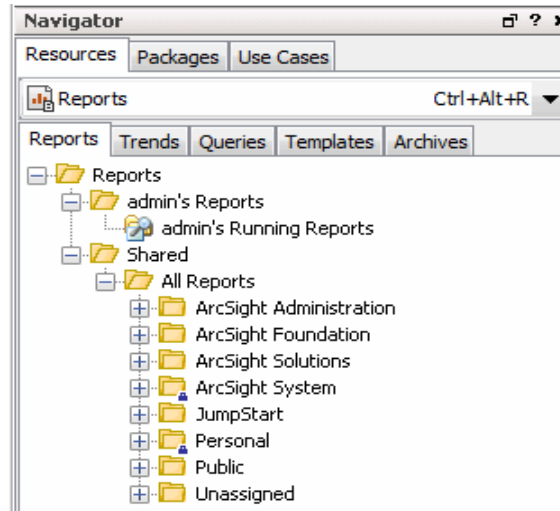
When you have source data defined in queries or trends, you can design reports to present the data in charts and tables. You can use one of the templates provided with ArcSight or design your own template using the Template Designer. This topic explains how to create a report that binds result data from queries and trends to a template, once you have one. (For information on accessing report templates or designing custom templates, see [“Using Report Templates” on page 279](#).)

The reports resource defines how query data is bound to a report template. Depending on the report template you use, the reports editor exposes different parameters, variables, and conditions that enable you to choose which elements of the query data you want to show in the report. You can also apply additional functions to run on the data, and set numerous formatting options.



## Navigating to Reports

In the Navigator panel, select the **Reports** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Reports** tab.



## Creating a Report

The high-level steps for creating a report are as follows:

- 1 Right-click a reports group (folder) and select **New Report** (or **New Report from Template** to start with a base template that you can refine later). This launches the Reports Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.



As a general rule, create content in the user's own folder.

- 2 Define report attributes such as report name (required) and optional aliases and owner/notification details. See ["Report Attributes" on page 336](#).
- 3 Select the report template you want to use. Defaults are provided. See ["Report Templates" on page 337](#).
- 4 Choose report data (required) by:
  - a Associating one of these existing data sources: a query, a trend, a session list, or an active list. You choose from the displayed resource selector.
  - b Specifying what parts of the query data source you want to use for each report element. Optionally, apply legends and top/bottom functions.

See ["Binding Data to the Report" on page 340](#).

**Note:** Unlike report templates and parameters which provide defaults, you cannot save the report without specifying the data source.

- 5 Specify report parameters concerning output details, such as file format, paper size, and routing instructions. You can set limits on the query return, such as row limits, time zone restraints, apply filters, and specify report start and end times. See ["Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom" on page 355](#).

- 6 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save settings and create the new report.



Note

Be sure to click **Apply** or **OK** frequently to save settings intermittently as you work through the above steps. Clicking **Apply** saves settings and leaves the Editor open. Clicking **OK** saves settings and closes the Editor for this query. If you do not apply or accept settings using these buttons, your settings are not saved.

- 7 Run the report to test it as described in [Running a New or Archived Report](#). See ["Running and Managing Reports" on page 379](#).

The following sections provide details on how to use the Report editor to define report attributes, apply a template, choose report data, and specify report parameters.

## Defining Report Settings

Report settings include general attributes, template selection, and data specification.

### Report Attributes

The **Report Attributes** tab is where you define a report name, set alias report name and notification options, and view tracking details such as when the report was created and last updated.

The following field is required on the Report Editor's **Attributes** tab.

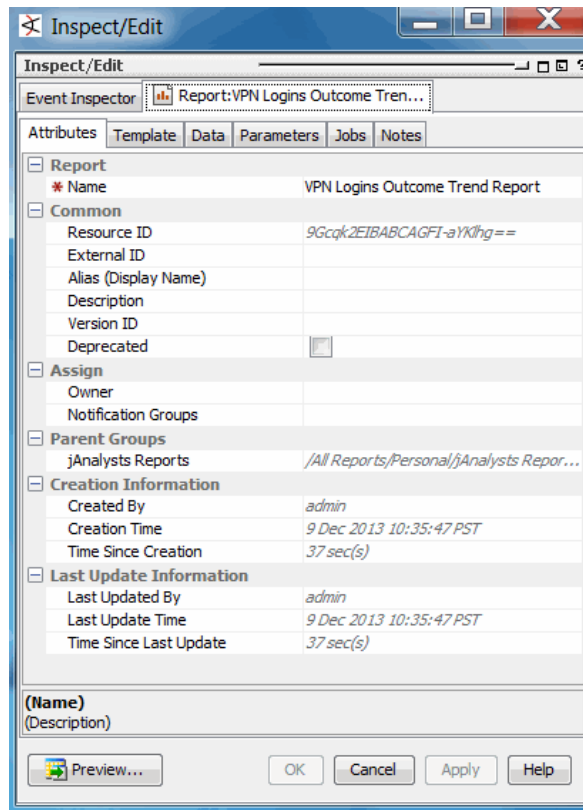
Report Field	Description
Name	<p>Default name for the report. Spaces and special characters are allowed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can change the report name by editing the report and changing the name on the Attributes tab. You can also set the report name on the Jobs tab where you define the report's archiving schedule (see <a href="#">"Archiving and Scheduling Reports" on page 388</a>), or change the name at report runtime (see <a href="#">"Running a Defined Report" on page 380</a>).</p>



Tip

Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642](#).

The following example shows the Report Attributes for a report:



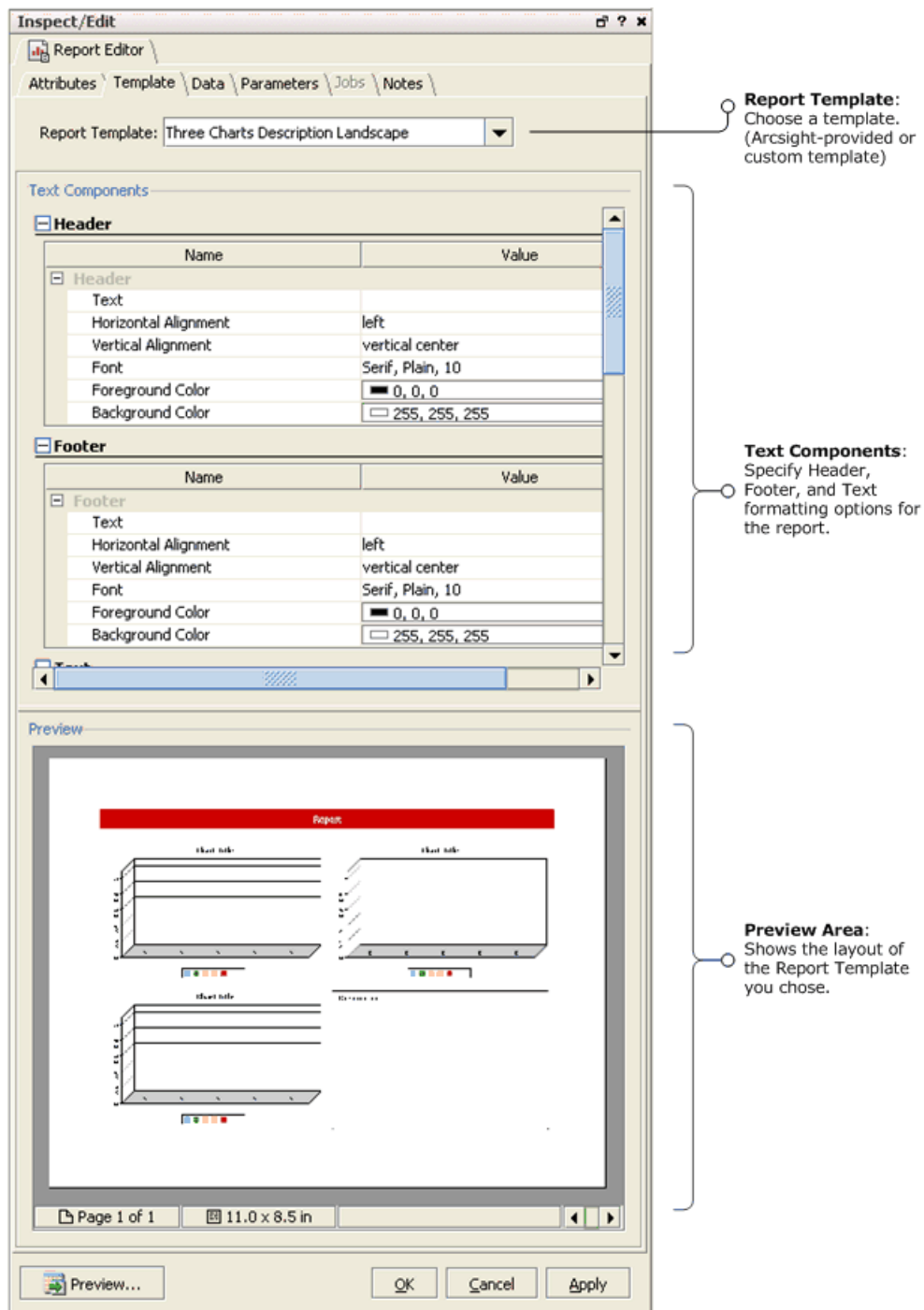
## Report Templates

The **Templates** tab is where you specify the template for the report. You can specify fonts, colors, page headers and footers, and the chart and table combinations and layout you want to use.

### Report Template Selection

To populate the editor, select a template from the **Report Template** drop-down menu. ArcSight comes with six stock templates in the System templates folder, or you can navigate to your own template.

The following example shows the system template Three Charts Description Landscape.



## Text Components

**Text Components** areas for Header, Footer, and Text sections provide fields to specify values for each of those sections of the report page.

**Table 10-1 Report Template Text Components**

Attribute	Description
<b>Header</b>	
Text	Type the text you want to use as the header of your the pages in your report, such as the name of your department, or the series of reports to which it belongs.  <b>Note:</b> You can use Velocity template references for fields that accept text, as described in <a href="#">“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003</a> .
Horizontal Alignment	From the drop-down menu, select where you want the header to appear in the header area: left, right or center.
Vertical Alignment	From the drop-down menu, select where you want the header to appear in the header area: top, center, or bottom.
Font	From the drop-down dialog, select a font from the list of fonts available on your local system, font size, and style (bold, italic). The preview window indicates how the font will look.
Foreground Color	From the drop-down dialog, select a foreground color. This is the color of the lettering.
Background Color	From the drop-down dialog, select a background color. This color fills the header box.
<b>Footer</b>	
Text	Type in the text you want to use as the footer of your the pages in your report, such as the name of your company, a confidentiality statement, or the date. You can use the variables provided (such as \$currentpagenumber and \$totalpagenumber for page numbers). These are evaluated when you run the report to populate report output with appropriate numbering.  <b>Note:</b> You can use Velocity template references for fields that accept text, as described in <a href="#">“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003</a> .
Horizontal Alignment	From the drop-down menu, select where you want the footer to appear in the footer area: left, right or center.
Vertical Alignment	From the drop-down menu, select where you want the footer to appear in the footer area: top, center, or bottom.
Font	From the drop-down dialog, select a font from the list of fonts available on your local system, font size, and style (bold, italic). The preview window indicates how the font will look.
Foreground Color	From the drop-down dialog, select a foreground color. This is the color of the lettering.
Background Color	From the drop-down dialog, select a background color. This color fills the footer box.

**Table 10-1 Report Template Text Components (Continued)**

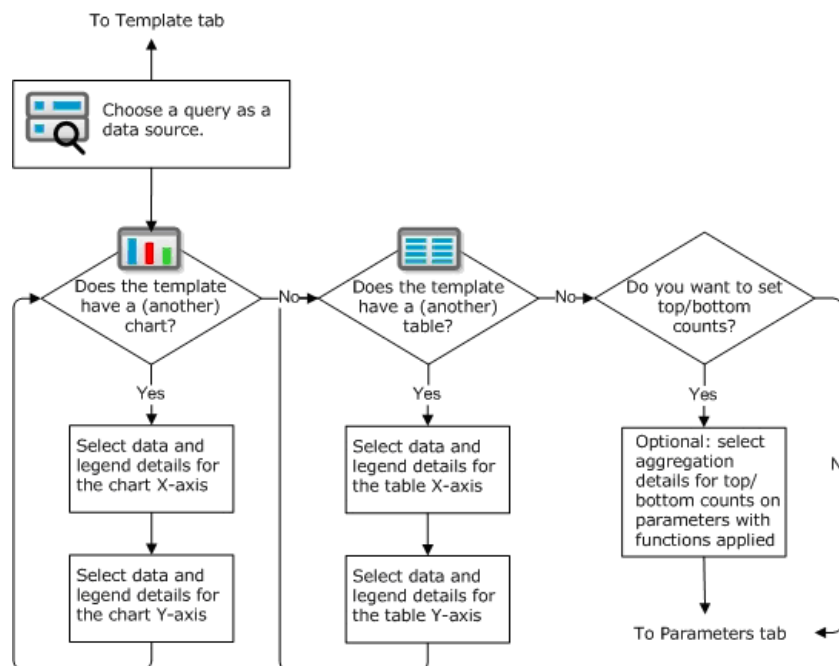
Attribute	Description
<b>Text</b>	
Text	Type in the text you want to use as the title of your report, such as Top 10 Attacks per Zone.
Horizontal Alignment	From the drop-down menu, select where you want the title to appear in the title area: left, right or center.
Vertical Alignment	From the drop-down menu, select where you want the title to appear in the title area: top, center, or bottom.
Font	From the drop-down dialog, select a font from the list of fonts available on your local system, font size, and style (bold, italic). The preview window indicates how the font will look.
Foreground Color	From the drop-down dialog, select a foreground color. This is the color of the lettering.
Background Color	From the drop-down dialog, select a background color. This color fills the title box.

## Preview Area

The Preview Area shows the layout of the report, and does not show the formatting updates as you go along. If you have designed other text boxes for your template, the attributes for those text boxes are displayed here using the same format as those shown above.

## Binding Data to the Report

Once the template is chosen and formatted, you are ready to populate the elements of the report with data.





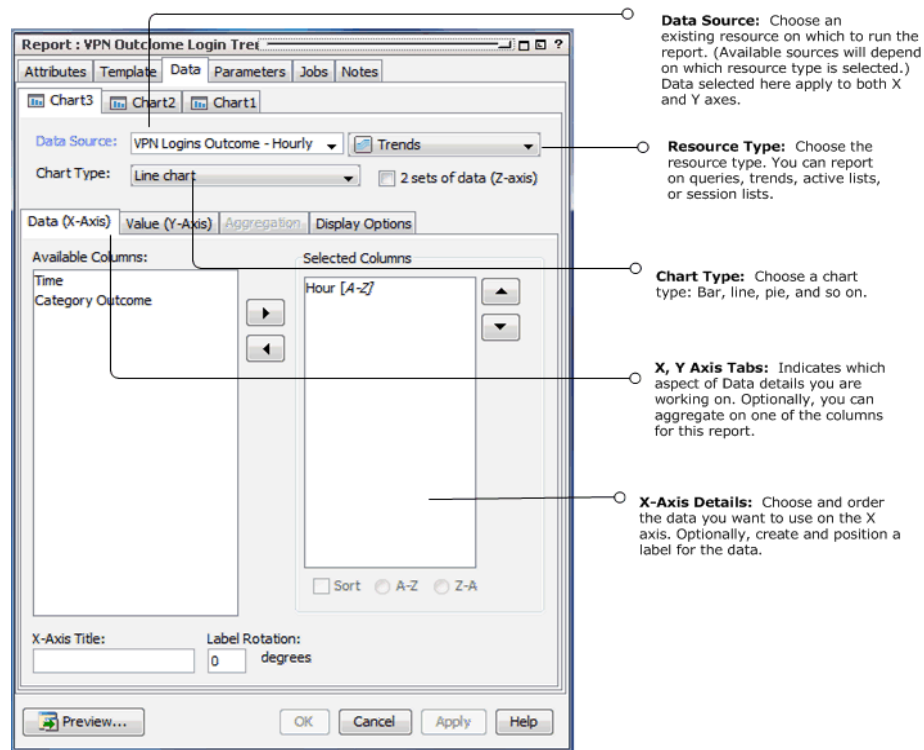
## Binding Data to Charts

The **Data** tab is where you choose which parts of the query or filter result data you want to use for each report element, apply legends and, optionally, top/bottom functions.

Use these options to select the data source (query or trend), chart and table type to use for the report, columns to include, and details on how the chart presents data.

Chart Data	Description
Data Source	<p>From the drop-down menu, select an existing data source you want to use for the chart in your report.</p> <p>The <b>data source</b> drop-down menu provides a list of existing resources based on the <b>resource type</b> you selected in the accompanying drop-down. You can report on queries, trends, active lists, or session lists.</p> <p>When the data source is selected, the remaining elements of the Data tab populate with the data available in the selected resource.</p>
Chart Type	<p>From the drop-down menu, select the type of chart you want to use for the chart part of the report. Depending on the template you use, you may have are several types of bar charts available as well as line charts, pie charts, speedometer, and so forth. The data source and chart type you choose apply to both the X- and Y- axes.</p>
2 sets of data (z-axis)	<p>Check this box if you want to plot the same type of data in a series fashion, for example, hourly EPS rates for connectors and different connectors comprise the series.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you check this box, the Data tab adds a subtab for the Z-axis.</p>

## Selecting Data for the X-Axis on a Chart



If the report template you selected contains a **Chart**, bind your result data to the chart as described in the following table.

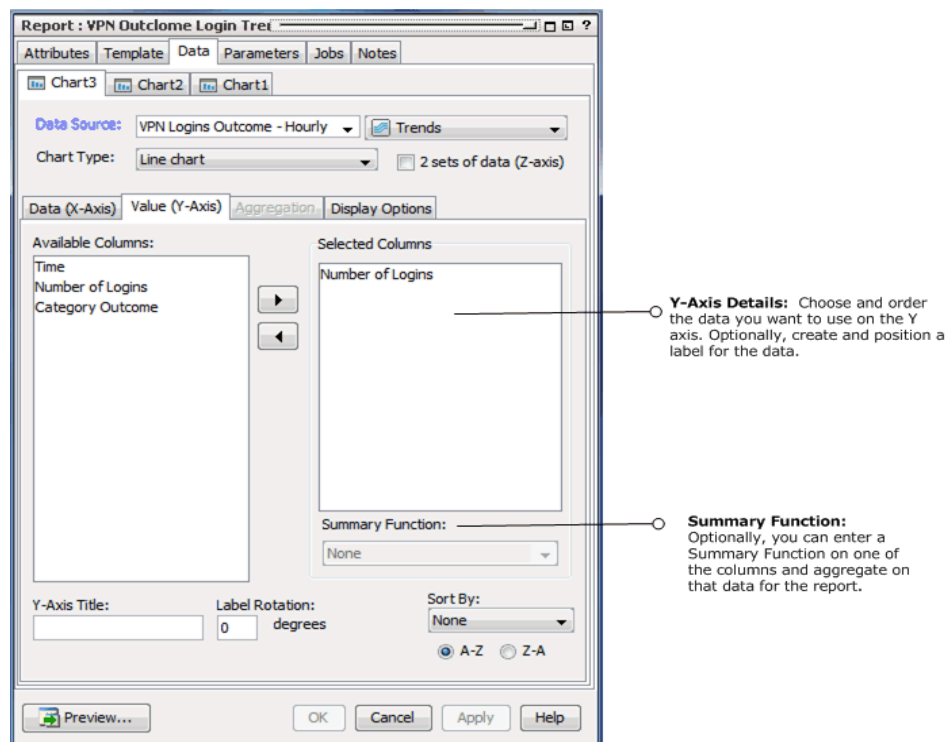
**Table 10-2 Binding Results to a Chart**

X-Axis Data Attribute	Description
Available Columns	<p>Select the data fields from the query you want to show in the X-axis and use the right-hand arrow to move it to the Selected Columns area. The data you select here should be the items you want to count</p> <p>For example, to build a trend report showing number of events over time, use a trend that captures the number of events per day. Add the end time to the X-axis to represent the day and add the count gathered for that day to the Y-axis. In this case, the X-axis is the data label, and the Y-axis is the count.</p>
Selected Columns	The Selected Columns area shows which data fields you have selected for the X-axis, and provides the opportunity to change the sort order of the data.
Sort	<p>Sort the selected column in ascending or descending order.</p> <p>To change the sort order, select the column then click the Sort check box. Select A-Z to sort data in ascending order; select Z-A to sort data in descending order.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are also plotting a Z-axis (data series) and your output is a bar chart, make sure to set your sorting on the X-axis.</p>
X-Axis Title	Specify a title for the X-axis.

**Table 10-2** Binding Results to a Chart (Continued)

X-Axis Data Attribute	Description
Label Rotation	Select a rotation angle for the by entering a digit between 0 and 360.  Labels refer to the individual X-axis data points, which are automatically derived from the data. The Label Rotation controls the angle of these labels.

## Selecting Data for the Y-Axis on a Chart



Y-axis data should be numeric. If the data you select is a non-numeric data type, such as a string, apply a numeric *summary function* to it, such as **Count** or **Count distinct**.

**Table 10-3** Y-Axis Attributes for Charts

Y-Axis Data Attribute	Description
Available Columns	Select the data fields from the query you want to show in the Y-axis and use the right-hand arrow to move it to the Selected Columns area. The data you select here should be the item you want to count by. For example, to show how many addresses each of your attacker zones have, you would select the attacker address.
Selected Columns	The Selected Columns area shows which data fields you have selected for the Y-axis, and provides the opportunity to change the sort order of the data.

**Table 10-3 Y-Axis Attributes for Charts (Continued)**

Y-Axis Data Attribute	Description
Summary Function	<p>You can assign a summary function to one or more columns of data. (In the "Function" row for a column, click in the column to get a drop-down menu of functions.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Count</b> - Provides a count of all line-items returned by the query. <b>Note:</b> The Count function is a simple count of all events. It takes into consideration the <i>aggregated event count</i> and counts each event in an <i>aggregated event</i> individually. For example, if an event has an aggregated event count of 5, the Count function counts this event as equivalent to 5 events (with an <i>aggregated event count</i> of 1 each). Take this into account when comparing the number of rows in a report with the "grand total" count based on the Count function.</li> <li>• <b>Count Distinct</b> - Provides a count of how many items are unique. For example, if there are 100 IP addresses but only 5 of them are unique, the system counts 5.</li> <li>• <b>Average</b> - Adds the results of numeric data and divides by the number of line items.</li> <li>• <b>Sum</b> - Adds the results of numeric data.</li> <li>• <b>Max</b> - For numeric data, Max calculates the line item with the highest value.</li> <li>• <b>Min</b> - For numeric data, Min calculates the line item with the lowest value.</li> <li>• <b>Median</b> - For numeric data, Median calculates the line item with the value closest to the middle between high and low.</li> <li>• <b>Standard Deviation</b> - For numeric data, measures the dispersion of the values in the data set (how spread out they are). If the data points are all close to the mean, then the standard deviation is close to zero. If many of the data points are far from the mean, then the standard deviation is further from zero. If all the data values are equal, then the standard deviation is zero. The Standard Deviation is the square root of the variance.</li> <li>• <b>Variance</b> - For numeric data, measures how spread out the distribution of data is. The variance is computed as the average squared deviation of each number from its mean. The variance and the standard deviation are closely related measures of dispersion and variability.</li> </ul> <p>Selecting one of these functions activates the <b>Aggregation</b> tab, where you can set further parameters on these functions. To set a function, select a column, and choose a function from the Summary Function drop-down menu.</p>
Y-Axis Title	Type in a title for the Y-axis. Select a rotation angle by entering a digit between 0 and 360.
Label Rotation	<p>Select a rotation angle for the by entering a digit between 0 and 360.</p> <p>Labels refer to the individual Y-axis data points, which are automatically derived from the data. The Label Rotation controls the angle of these labels.</p>

**Table 10-3 Y-Axis Attributes for Charts (Continued)**

Y-Axis Data Attribute	Description
Sort by	<p>Optionally, choose a sorting order for the data on the Y axis. You can display data alphabetically (the default), reverse alphabetical, or sort by count.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> If you are plotting a Z-axis (data series) and your output is a bar chart, make sure to set your sorting on the X-axis.</p>

## Selecting Data for the Z-Axis on a Chart (Optional)

The Z-Axis subtab is available only if you check the [2 sets of data \(z-axis\)](#) checkbox because you want to plot data in a series fashion. The only available option on the subtab is to select a column for the Z-Axis.

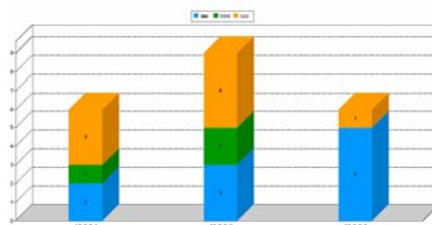


### Best practices when using series (Z-axis):

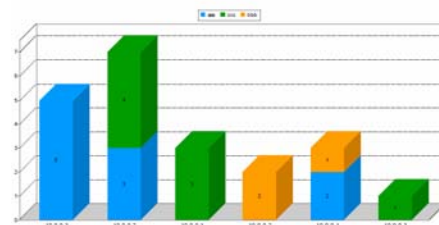
If you are setting data on the Z-axis, note that you cannot use Top N Charts. Also consider the effect of the [Row Limit](#) setting in the query. For example, if your row limit for a normal chart (X- and Y-axes only) is 10 rows, you will get 10 data points. For a stacked chart with Z-axis, you will still get 10 data points but two will be in the same column. You can try a limit of 25 to 30 rows, which makes the chart readable, but could cause a readability issue if there is not a lot of overlap (stacking) in the data series.

## Effect of Sorting on Bar Charts with Series Data

You might encounter unexpected results in your bar charts (stacked or not stacked) if you are plotting data on the X-, Y-, and Z-axis (see ["2 sets of data \(z-axis\)"](#) on page 341). Consider the following stacked bar charts, where the expected result is shown in Example A but the actual result shows as Example B. In Example B, the stacks seem to spread out along the X-axis as separate data points (the samples are only to represent the behavior described in this topic).



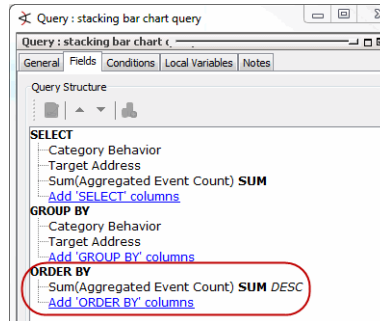
**Example A: Expected Result**



**Example B: Actual Result**

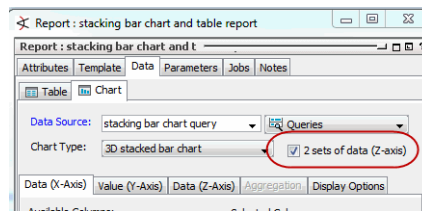
The following configurations can result to a stacked chart report similar to Example B:

- The query has an ORDER BY statement:



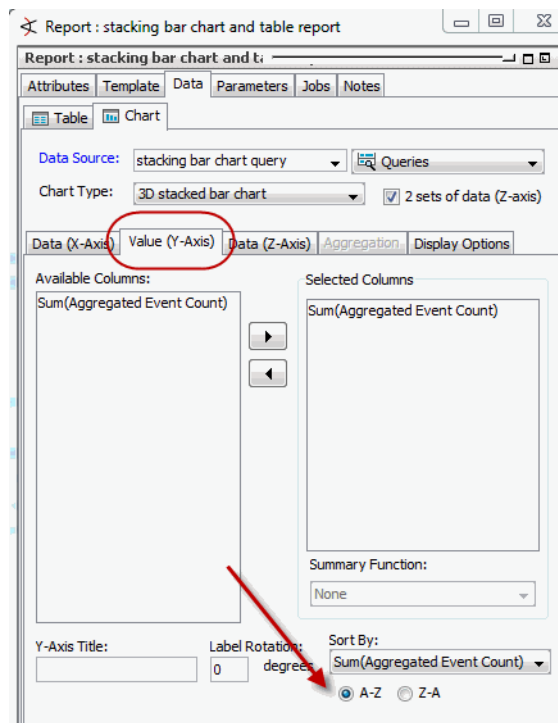
The query is not wrong; in fact, the report rendered as a table shows correctly. Additionally, the query may be driving other resources like query viewers and so on; therefore, you should not change the query in this case.

- The chart is configured for z-series data plotting:



Again, there is nothing wrong with this setting if you want to plot a data series.

- The column included in the ORDER BY statement from the query is applied to the Y-axis and sorting is also enabled:

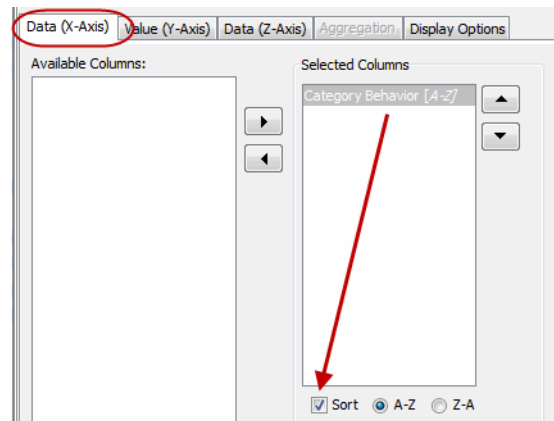


Using the query's ORDER BY column on the Y-axis and also applying the sorting to the Y-axis gives you the Example B report. To fix this problem, configure the report so that

sorting is ignored on the Y-axis. Instead, apply sorting to the X-axis according to the following instructions.

**To configure the report so that it sorts on the X axis:**

- 1 Go to the chart's setting for the X-axis parameters and click the entry under Selected Columns.
- 2 Click the **Sort** checkbox and select the sort order as desired.



You don't need to remove sorting on the Y-axis as long as sorting is enabled for the X-axis. The X-axis takes precedence, and the resulting report will now be like Example A.

## Specifying Top/Bottom Filters Aggregation Filters for a Chart (Optional)

You can also set **Top/Bottom Counts** for a chart. This tab only becomes active when a summary function is applied to data in the Y axis. Settings in the **Aggregation tab** set top/bottom counts to data with summary functions applied. This is an optional step.

**Inspect/Edit**

Report:VPN Logins Outcome Tren...

Attributes Template **Data** Parameters Jobs Notes

Chart3 Chart2 Chart1

Data Source: s Outcome Trend Query - Attempt Queries

Chart Type: Line chart 2 sets of data (Z-axis)

Data (X-Axis) Value (Y-Axis) **Aggregation**

Set a top or bottom filter for the chart (optional)

How do you want to filter the chart data?

☒ None (Show all)

☐ Top 10 by means of Number of Logins

☐ Bottom by means of Number of Logins

**Display Options**

Font: Verdana, Plain, 8 Show X-axis grid

☒ Show Legend Show Y-axis grid

Placement: Bottom

**Scale and Format**

Data (y-axis): ☐ Logarithmic Scale ☒ Show Value

Min Max Incr

Preview... OK Cancel Apply

**Top Bottom Filter:** Optionally, use aggregation to set top/bottom counts for Y-axis numeric functions.

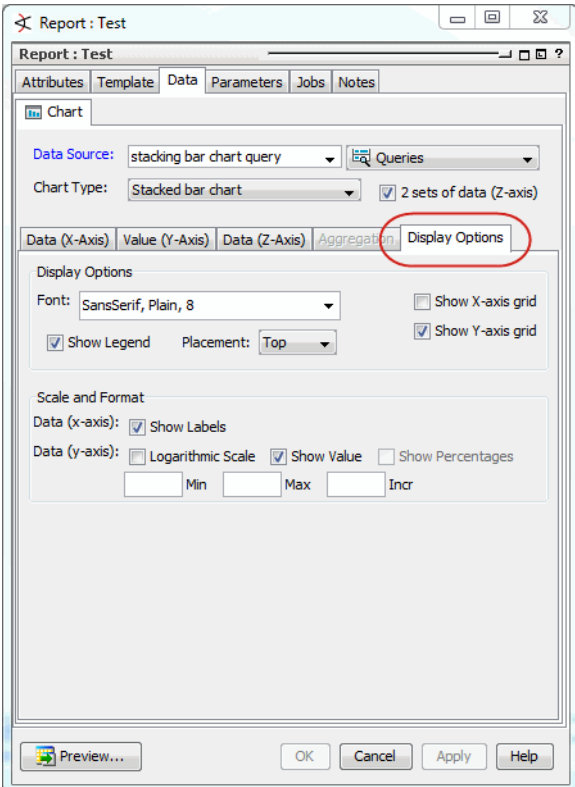
On the Chart Aggregation tab, set the top or bottom filter for the chart. If there are more charts in your report, repeat these processes until data is bound to all the charts and laid out in your report template.

Aggregation Top/Bottom Filter	Description
None (Show all)	By default, no top/bottom filter is set.
Top	Select <b>Top</b> if you want to show the a certain number of entries with the highest values. Enter a digit in the text box, and from the drop-down list, select an appropriate Y-axis data column with a function applied.
Bottom	Select <b>Bottom</b> if you want to show a certain number of entries with the lowest values. Enter a digit in the text box, and from the drop-down list, select an appropriate Y-axis data column with a function applied.



## Setting Display Options and Scale Formats for Charts

Use the Display Options subtab to specify visual formats on the chart. These options, unless otherwise noted, simultaneously apply to the X- and Y-axes.



Category	Attribute	Description
Display Options	Font	From the drop-down menu, select a font style and size for the X- and Y-axis text.
	Show Legend, Placement	Select this box to show a legend of the data elements. Keep in mind the number of different data elements your query may return. If the data you selected contains many elements, the legend may be large, which reduces the available space for the chart itself. If you choose to display the legend, you can move its location from choices in the Placement drop-down menu.
	Show X-Axis grid, Show Y-Axis grid	For the selected axis, include the grids on the report. The X-axis grid displays as vertical lines per data point, and the Y-axis grid displays as horizontal lines.
Scale and Format		
Data (x-axis)	Show Labels	Select this box to display the labels for data points on the X-axis.

Category	Attribute	Description
Data (y-axis)	Logarithmic Scale	Use this option if your data point deltas are so huge that incorporating them on the chart poses a readability issue; for example, one data point is 1,000 and the next is 100,000. With logarithmic scaling, values are then displayed in orders of magnitude instead of linearly.
	Show Value	Displays the value of the data point.
	Min	The minimum value as a starting data point to plot on the chart. For example, if you set it to 1000, values below that will not be plotted. The chart begins at 1000 on the Y-axis. If left blank, plotting starts at the 0,0 position.
	Max	The maximum value for the data point.
	Incr	Increments to use on the Y-axis starting with the specified minimum.

## Binding Data to Tables

If the template you selected contains a table, use the Table **Fields** tab to build a visual representation of a table in which to display the query result. You can choose the type of data source (trend, query, active list, or session list) and the particular data source (which query, trend, etc.) to report on. Then you can select which fields from the data result to appear in your report (with the "Use" check box). Use Groups to combine fields into a single column in your Report table (drag and drop or menu commands available for the report table).

Table Data	Description
<b>Data Source</b>	<p>From the drop-down menu, select an existing data source you want to use for the table part of your report.</p> <p>The <b>data source</b> drop-down menu provides a list of existing resources based on the resource type you selected in the accompanying drop-down. You can report on queries, trends, active lists, or session lists.</p> <p>When the data source is selected, the remaining elements of the Data tab are populated with the data from the selected resource.</p>

**Inspect/Edit**

Event Inspector **VPN Logins**

Attributes Template Data Parameters Jobs Notes

Table

Data Source: VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly Queries

Fields Aggregation

Available Columns:

Groups	Timestamp	Category Outcome (Count)	Category Outcome	Hour
Fields				
Use	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Function				
Alias	Time	Number of Logins	Category Outcome	Hour
Width	Auto			Auto
Sort				
H. Align	right			
V. Align	bottom			
Page Break	<input type="checkbox"/>			

Custom Layout: User specified layout

Display Options

Choose font and color settings for the table. Click on a column above to set individual column fonts and colors.

Font:  Foreground:  Background:

Global Options

☒ Merge cells ☐ Show grand total

☒ Show group header

☒ Show group columns

Label:

**Data Source:** Choose an existing resource on which to run the report. (Available sources will depend on which resource type is selected.)

**Resource Type:** Choose the resource type. You can report on queries, trends, active lists, or session lists.

**Fields and Groups:** Select the data fields you want to display in the table (by enabling **Use** for a field you want to show).

Provide a display name alias and specify data sort order in the column by dragging and dropping fields to desired location in column order.

Group multiple fields in a single column by dragging fields into Groups.

**Display Options:** Select a column or group to set font, foreground, and background display options.

**Global Options:** Global options apply to the whole table.


## Specifying Fields for a Table

In the **Available Columns** area, you can select the fields you want to display in the table, group multiple fields into a single column as needed, assign Alias names for column headings, specify a data sort order, and set column size and alignment options.

### Table 10-4 Available Columns for Tables

Attribute	Description
Groups	<p>Optionally, you can sort data results from queries by grouping two or more fields into a single column.</p> <p><b>To create a group:</b> Right-click in the Groups row for a column and choose <b>Make Group</b>. This brings up a dialog where you can name a new group and add the selected field.</p> <p><b>To add fields to a group:</b> Drag fields from the <b>Fields</b> row to the <b>Groups</b> row. Alternatively, right-click a field and choose <b>Add to Group</b>. This brings up a dialog where you can name the group to which you want to add the selected field.</p>
Fields	<p>This displays fields as columns for your report. The field name is displayed as it is referred to in the ArcSight database. This field is not editable.</p>

**Table 10-4 Available Columns for Tables (Continued)**

Attribute	Description
Use	<p>By default, all data entries are selected for use in the table. If you do not want to use all the available columns, uncheck the corresponding check box.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> If you de-select a data entry to indicate you do not want to use that column in report, the column is automatically pushed to the far right (the end of the table) to move it out of the way so that you can focus on the columns you are using. If you then select "Use" again for that same data entry, its column is inserted back into its original position along with the other columns you have selected to use.</p>
Function	<p>To set a function on a field, click in the Function row for that field's column. Select the function you want to apply to the column from the Function drop-down menu. Once the function is set, the field appears with the function icon .</p> <p>Fields set with functions can be filtered in the Aggregation tab.</p>
Alias	Enter a display name alias for the data column. For example, if the column is referred to as Source Translated Zone Name in the ArcSight database, this name can be shortened to Zone Name or Src Zone for display in the report table. In our example, we provide the aliases Time instead of Timestamp and Number of Logins for Category Outcome (Count).
Width	<p>Set column Width to either of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b> - Automatically divides column width evenly among the selected columns</li> <li>• <b>User Specified Layout</b> - This option requires that you enter numbers to specify percentage widths for individual columns.</li> </ul>
Sort	Indicate the sort order for the data in each column.
H Align	Right-click in the H Align row to get a drop-down menu for specifying horizontal alignment of text in a given column. You can select for left-aligned, centered, or right-aligned text in the corresponding column.
V Align	Right-click in the V Align row to get a drop-down menu for specifying vertical alignment of text in a given column. You can select for top, bottom, middle, or baseline text in the corresponding column.
Page Break	Right-click in the Page Break row in a column to get options for specifying a page break before or after the that column.

With the **Custom Layout** options, you can specify custom column widths for the data in the table. By default, the **Custom Layout drop-down** menu shows User Specified Layout, which enables you to enter a numeral to specify a percentage for individual columns. Select one of the following:

- **Fit content** - Adjusts the column width to accommodate its content without wrapping. If the content is wider than the table, the table is extended to multiple pages.
- **Fit content one table area per page** - Adjusts the column width to accommodate its content without wrapping, and breaks each column onto its own page.
- **Fit content to page** - Adjusts the column width to accommodate its content without wrapping, and stretches the last column to fill the page.

- **Equal width columns** - Each column receives the same width to fit across a single page.
- **User specified layout** - Enables you to enter a numeral that represents a percentage of the overall page width. You can set a percentage for each column that totals 100%, or enter a percentage for one column, and the others selected receive an even percentage of the space remaining.

The **Display Options** area provides format options for each individual data column. This enables you to set different font style, size, and color and column background colors for each data column. To activate the display options, select one or more data columns:

- **To select one column:** click the column by its Field name.
- **To select one or more contiguous columns:** click a field, hold down the Shift key, and select the remaining fields.
- **To select one or more non-contiguous columns:** click a field, hold down the Ctrl key and select the remaining fields

Attribute	Description
Font	From the drop-down menu, choose a font for the selected columns.
Foreground Color	Foreground color for text, any visible lines that describe rows/columns, and other elements in the foreground. The example above shows all columns using black (RGB 0,0,0).
Background Color	Background (field) color for the data column. The example above shows the Count line with a pale yellow background (RGB 255, 255, 153).

In the **Global Options** area, you can set formatting options that apply to the whole table (not just one column).

Attribute	Description
Merge cells	Indicates whether to merge cells for grouped columns. When this option is enabled, identical values in grouped columns show only once. When this option is disabled, identical values show as many times as they occur (regardless of whether they are grouped).
Show group header	Indicates whether to show a group header row. This is a group label for when you have a summary function that adds one more rows at the end of the section. If this option is enabled, the table includes an extra column with a header derived from the content by which the section is grouped.
Show group columns	Enable this option to populate the grouped columns with data. (If this option is disabled, grouped columns are empty.)
Grand total	If you want to provide a grand total of all the sections, check the Show grand total box.
Label	If you selected a grand total, you can apply a label for the grand total. For example, use Total VPN Login Attempts.

Click the **Preview** button to preview the report table with the current configuration.

## Enabling the Aggregation Tab for a Table

If your report is using the Table template, the Aggregation tab is disabled by default until the following requirements are met on the report's Data > Fields tab:

- At least one of the columns is assigned to a group.
- At least one of the columns must be set with a function.

The following scenario describes the process to enable the Aggregation tab.

- 1 Define the query. For example, you want to look at event names by priority. In the query's Fields tab, select the columns you need (Name and Priority in this case). After selecting the columns, add these same columns to the GROUP BY list. In the Conditions tab, define the conditions for the query (for example, you are interested in Priority greater than 3).
- 2 Create a report. On the Template tab, use one of the table templates (for example, Simple Table Portrait). In the Data tab, specify the query described in [Step 1](#) above as your data source. The Fields tab is automatically populated by the columns from the query, in this case, Name and Priority.
- 3 On the Fields tab, create a group for one of the columns (for example, for Priority), then select a function for another column (for example, for Name) from the drop-down list. Columns with functions can be filtered through the Aggregation tab. For instructions on how to add columns to groups and how to apply functions to columns, see [related information on page 351](#). The Aggregation tab is enabled after you click **Apply**.

### Set Top/Bottom Counts in Table Aggregation Tab (Optional)

If the Aggregation tab is enabled, you can set optional top/bottom counts to data with functions applied to individual fields. The following example shows the format used is *Function(Field)*. This is an optional step.

Report:ReportByPriority

Attributes Template Data Parameters Jobs Notes

Table

Data Source:

QueryByPriority

Fields Aggregation

Set a top or bottom filter for the chart (optional)

Section that will be filtered: Priority

How do you want to filter the chart data?

☐ None (Show all)

☐ Top  by means of Count(Name)

☒ Bottom  by means of Count(Name)

On the Aggregation tab, set the top or bottom filter for the table. If there are more tables in your report, repeat these processes until data is bound to all the tables and laid out in your report template.

Aggregation Top/Bottom Filter	Description
None (Show all)	By default, no top/bottom filter is set.
Top	Select <b>Top</b> if you want to show the a certain number of entries with the highest values. Enter a digit in the text box, and from the drop-down list, select an appropriate Y-axis data column with a function applied.
Bottom	Select <b>Bottom</b> if you want to show a certain number of entries with the lowest values. Enter a digit in the text box, and from the drop-down list, select an appropriate Y-axis data column with a function applied.

## Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom

The **Parameters** tab is where you set report output details such as file format, paper size, and routing instructions. From here you can also set limits on the query return such as row limits and time zone restraints, apply filters, and specify report start and end times.

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' dialog box with the 'Parameters' tab selected. The 'Report Parameters' section contains two expandable groups: 'Common Parameters' and 'Custom Parameters'. 'Common Parameters' includes fields for Report Format (pdf), Page Size (Letter [8.5x11 in]), Run as User (Select a User), Email to, Email addresses, Email Format (Send URL), and Email Subject (\$ReportName). 'Custom Parameters' includes Start Time (\$Now - 1h) and End Time (\$Now). Below these are buttons for 'Add...', 'Edit...', and 'Remove'. The 'Query Parameters' section contains an expandable 'Chart' group with fields for Time Zone (Manager Time Zone), Filter by (Select a Filter), Row Limit (25), Start Time (\$Now - 1h), and End Time (\$Now). At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Preview...', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

**Report Parameters:** Set report output details.

**Custom Parameters:** Add and edit custom parameters.

**Query Parameters:** Set override parameters for query data selected for each element of the report.

In the **Report Parameters** area, enter the following values. The Use Default checkboxes do not apply to these items; the default values are used until you uncheck the boxes and use a new value. Note that users can re-set most of these parameters at report runtime.

**Table 10-5 Report Parameter Values**

Common Parameters	Description
Report Format	<p>From the drop-down menu, select one of the following report output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>pdf</b> - Outputs the report as an Adobe PDF file.</li> <li>• <b>xls</b> - Generates a Microsoft Excel file for tables and charts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> XLS reports you run with <i>Microsoft Excel 2002</i> might have page break format problems (misalignments, column spillover) due to default page size settings in Excel. To correct this problem, open the resulting XLS report in Excel, choose <b>File &gt; Page Setup</b> from the menus, change the paper size to Letter (instead of Legal), and click <b>OK</b> to save your changes. The report has the appropriate page break formatting. <i>This problem does not occur in newer versions of Microsoft Excel.</i></p> <p><b>Note:</b> XLS report formats display speedometer charts as pie charts. This is a known limitation in Microsoft Excel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>rtf</b> - Produces a rich-text format document.</li> <li>• <b>csv</b> - Creates tabular data as a list of comma-separated values.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Reports generated in CSV format are not the full equivalent of exports to other formats like PDF or HTML. CSV format is useful for loading report data into a spreadsheet for further manipulation. Since CSV is meant to contain tabular data, only the table data of a report is normally useful. Therefore, ArcSight exports only the table data portion of a report to CSV format, ignoring any other report information such as charts or text, including report titles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>html</b> - Generates the report in a Web page displayed by the default web browser.</li> </ul> <p>Your selection affects your choice for e-mail formats. See <a href="#">related information on page 357</a>.</p> <p>The output file is created at report runtime and is stored in the Archived Report Group corresponding to the report's group. See the Archives tab on the report's edit panel.</p>
Page Size	From the drop-down menu, select a paper size.
Run as User	<p>Run the report as a particular user. From the drop-down menu, select the user name by which you would like to run the report.</p> <p>For example, this option would allow an administrator for an Managed Security Service Provider (MSSP) to run report for a customer. The administrator would need write permissions to the user.</p>



**Table 10-5 Report Parameter Values (Continued)**

Common Parameters	Description
Email to	<p>You can have the report sent as e-mail to one or more ArcSight users.</p> <p>From the drop-down menu, select the Console users to whom the report should be e-mailed. The selection list is read from the Users resource (see <a href="#">“Managing Users” on page 597</a>).</p> <p>The recipient will only see his or her user name in the To field even if there are multiple recipients for this report.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, an e-mail is sent even if the report is empty. See <a href="#">related information on page 357</a> for details on how to turn off this setting.</p>
Email addresses	<p>Send the report to one or more comma-separated or semicolon-separated e-mail addresses. This option does not require the recipient to be an ArcSight user.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The recipient will only see his or her e-mail address in the To field even if there are multiple recipients for this report.</p>
Email Format	<p>Specify how the report is to be accessed by the recipient.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose <b>Send URL</b> if you want to point users to the report. Use this option if the report is large and is saved (archived) to a network-accessible location</li> </ul> <p>You can provide URLs for all report formats: PDF, XLS, RTF, CSV, and HTML.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose <b>Attach Report</b> if you want to send the report directly to the user's e-mail box.</li> </ul> <p>You can only attach PDF, XLS, RTF, and CSV report formats.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>&lt;6.5c&gt;</b> Choose <b>Attach Compressed Report</b> if you want the PDF, XLS, RTF, or CSV report to be compressed (zipped) first before mailing.</li> <li>If you want to display the report on the e-mail message body so that the recipient immediately sees the report upon opening the e-mail, select <b>Embed Report</b>.</li> </ul> <p>You can only embed CSV and HTML report formats.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you select an email format for an unsupported report format, the notification automatically uses the URL.</p>
Email Subject	<p>Specify the subject on the notification. Defaults to the report's Name attribute (denoted by \$ReportName). If you want to use a customized subject, type the text either in addition to the default or replace the default text entirely.</p>

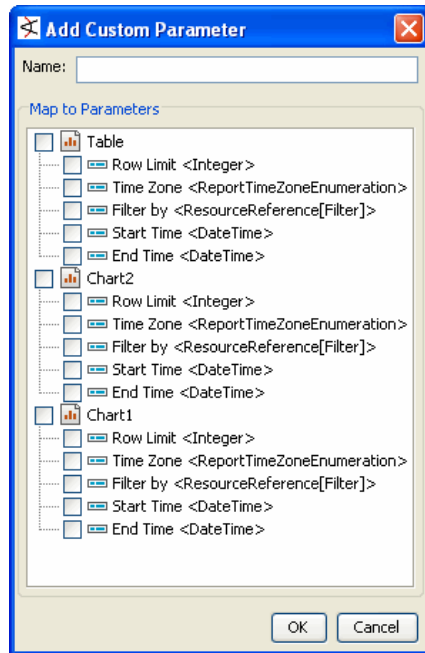


If you have set reports to be emailed to recipients, empty reports will also be sent. This is determined by the server default property, `report.scheduler.notify_empty_reports`, which is set to **true**. If you don't want empty reports to be sent, change the setting to **false**. The property is stored in the `server.defaults.properties` file. Follow the instructions in the ESM Administrator's Guide on how to use this file as a starting point for your customized properties. The details are in the guide's *Configuration* chapter, topic on *Managing and Changing Properties File Settings*.

## Adding Custom Parameters for Report Data

### To add a custom parameter that applies to the Report data:

- 1 Click the **Add** button. Parameters added here override those set in the query. For example, if you want all the report elements to report on events for the past 2 hours, you can create a start time parameter of `$Now-2h`, which sets both table and chart start times to `$Now-2h`. Custom parameters are saved locally to the report definition, and are not persisted back in the query.



- 2 Give the parameter a name and map it to a query parameter.
- 3 Click **OK** to apply them to the report definition.
- 4 Back in the **Parameters** tab in the **Custom Parameters** section, enter an override parameter for the fields you selected from the Add Custom Parameters dialog.
- 5 In the **Query Parameters** area, enter any override values for the parameters in your query data. The Use Default checkboxes are only activated for items where default parameters exist and override values can be entered.

Enter these override parameters as needed for each chart and table.

Query Override Parameters	Description
Time Zone	By default, the Manager Time Zone is used. Choose the Console time zone, or another of the time zones from the drop-down list.
Filter By	Set a filter to operate on the query conditions.
Row Limit	The report gets its row limits from the settings in the query being used. By default, row limit for a table is 10000 and row limit for a chart is 25. You can change the default to manage row size.

Query Override Parameters	Description
Start Time	<p>To set a start time that overrides the one set in the query, disable Use Default for this field and specify a start time here.</p> <p>For example, if you want all the report elements to report on events for the past 2 hours, you can create a start-time parameter of <i>\$Now-2h</i>, which sets both table and chart start times to <i>\$Now-2h</i>.</p> <p>This setting is saved locally as part of the report definition, not as part of the original query upon which the report is based.</p>
End Time	<p>To set an end time that overrides the one set in the query, disable Use Default for this field and specify an end time here.</p> <p>This setting is saved locally as part of the report definition, not as part of the original query or trend upon which the report is based.</p>

- 6 Click **Apply** to save settings or **OK** to save settings and close the Inspect/Edit details for this report.


## Displaying a Custom Parameter Prompt at Report Runtime

You can configure your report to prompt for a value at report runtime. If so, the user is prompted by the Parameters dialog box to enter a value before the report is created. This prompt will be based on one of the report's custom parameters. For example, you have a report which is based on a query on assets, and you want the user to enter the first few characters of the host name when the report is run, so that the report contains data only about those hosts. The configuration is a two-step process:

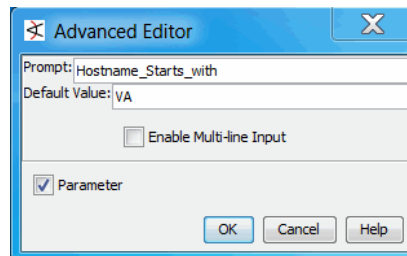
- [Defining the Prompt in the Query's Condition Tab](#)
- [Adding or Removing a Prompt for Custom Parameters in the Report](#)

### Defining the Prompt in the Query's Condition Tab

In the following procedure, you will create a query condition to display the prompt. The example is based on a query on assets.

- 1 On the Reports resource, select the **Queries** tab.
- 2 Locate the query being used by the report, right-click, and choose **Edit Query**.
- 3 Go to the query's **Conditions** tab.
- 4 On the Field Set or CCE panel at the bottom of the tab, locate the field for which you want to display a prompt, for example, Host Name.
- 5 To prompt for a value for the Host Name field:
  - a Select a logical operator. This example uses StartsWith.
  - b Click the **Browse** icon (  ).
  - c In the Advanced Editor dialog, click the **Parameter** check box to display the Prompt and Default Value fields.
  - d In the Prompt field, provide a meaningful name for this prompt. For example, your prompt can say **HostName Starts with** to match your logical operator. Notice that spaces are automatically replaced by underscores.

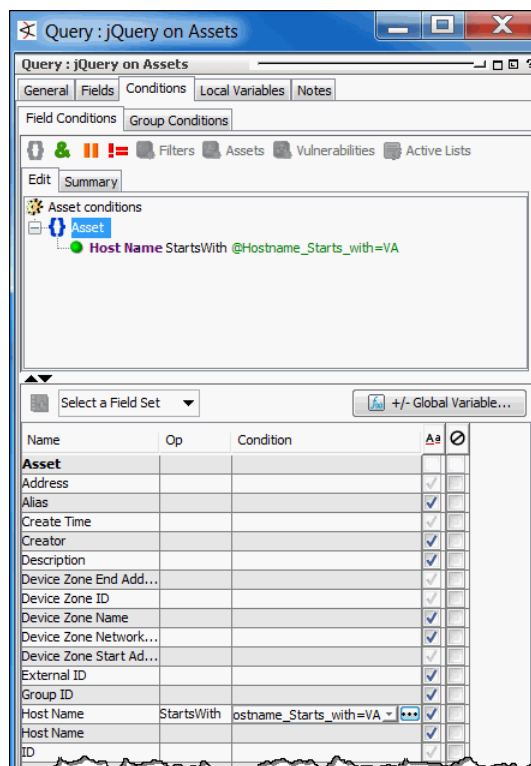
- e Enter a default value (case sensitive) which can be changed at report runtime. The following example uses **VA** for host names starting with that string.



When specifying default values for the prompt, remember that string values are case sensitive.

- f Click **OK**. Click on the field again on the Field Set or CCE panel to save your condition.

The Console automatically inserts the **@** symbol in front of your prompt name, replaces spaces with underscores, and also adds this condition statement as shown:



The @ symbol is automatically inserted and spaces are replaced by underscores.

- 6 Save your query. The condition you just added will be displayed on the report's query parameters list. The next step is to add this prompt as a custom parameter in the report.

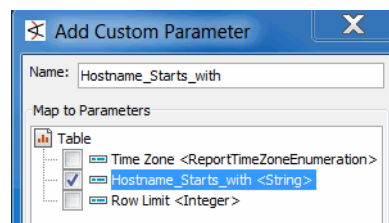
### Adding or Removing a Prompt for Custom Parameters in the Report

This topic shows how to add a custom parameter in your report using the field for which you created a prompt in the query.

**To add the prompt:**

- 1 On the Reports resource, select the **Reports** tab.
- 2 Locate the report, right-click, and choose **Edit Report**.
- 3 Go to the **Parameters** tab and verify that the field configured in the base query is listed in the Query Parameters list.
- 4 Click the **Add** button (+ Add...) to display the Add Custom Parameter dialog.
- 5 Under Map to Parameters, check the parameter corresponding to the prompt name, then enter a meaningful name in the Name field.

The name used here will be displayed to the person running the report, so make sure the name you use clearly states what the report is expected to display (host names starting with a specified text string).

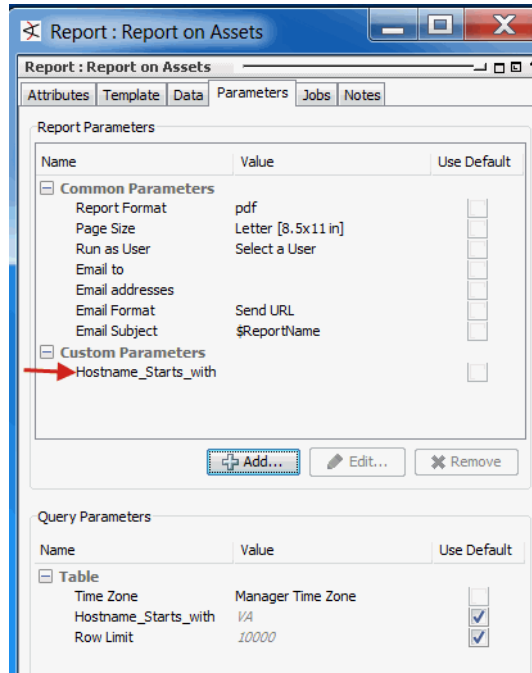


In the query condition, spaces are resolved with underscores but not here, so make sure you insert the underscores as required.

**Caution**

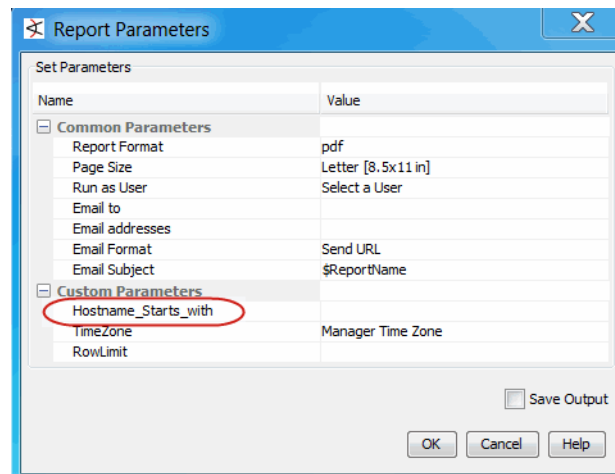
Click **OK**.

The custom parameter is added to the Report Parameters section. Notice that the default value for the custom parameter in the Query Parameters section is not picked up in the Report Parameters section. If you want the default value to be displayed by the prompt, enter the value in the Report Parameters section.



- 6 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the report.

The next time you run the report, the custom parameter will be displayed in a dialog as in the following example:



Based on the example, you can then enter the starting character strings (case-sensitive) of host names to be included in the report. If a default value is displayed, choose to run the report with the default or replace the value before running. See ["Running and Managing Reports" on page 379](#) for more details on how to run a report.

#### To remove the prompt:

If the report no longer requires a prompt, undo your configurations in this sequence:

- 1 Remove the custom parameter from your report by selecting it on the report's Parameters tab and clicking **Remove**.

- 2 Remove the condition for the prompt from your query by right-clicking it on the query's Conditions tab and selecting **Delete**.

## Generating Reports with Asian Fonts

This topic provides setup procedures so reports can display Asian character sets.

### To generate reports that properly display Asian character sets:

- 1 Configure the operating system and the ArcSight Manager to support the Language you are using.
- 2 Make sure you have the Adobe Acrobat Reader 9 or later to view the PDF report.

If the Manager is running on Linux, do the following:

- 1 Download ARIALUNI.TTF font from the Linux support site.
- 2 Go to the `/usr/share/fonts/` directory and create a subdirectory called `/arial`.
- 3 Copy ARIALUNI.TTF to `/usr/share/fonts/arial`.
- 4 Make a backup of the `$ARCSIGHT_HOME/reports/sree.properties` file.
- 5 Add this property to `sree.properties`:  
`font.truetype.path=/usr/share/fonts/arial`.

### To generate a report in PDF format to display Chinese, Japanese, Korean (CJK), or Romanian characters:

- 1 Log in to the ArcSight Console and open the report.
- 2 Find the template used by the report.
- 3 Edit the template and select Open in Designer.
- 4 Edit the fields that need to display these characters.
- 5 Set the fonts to **Arial Unicode** for the fields that display these characters
- 6 Save the template and click **Apply**.
- 7 Run the report with PDF format.
- 8 Open the generated report (using Adobe Acrobat Reader 9 or later for PDF) to see these characters.

To generate a report in RTF format to display Chinese, Japanese, Korean (CJK), or Romanian characters:

- 1 Log in to the ArcSight Console.
- 2 Select **Edit > Preferences > Global Options**.
- 3 Set the font to **Arial Unicode MS**.

## Editing a Report

- 1 Navigate to **Reports** in the Navigator panel, select the **Report** tab, and select the report you want to modify.
- 2 Double-click the report, or right-click and select **Edit Report** from the context menu. This launches the Report Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, and shows the definition for the selected report.

- 3 Edit the report definition as needed and click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes. (Click **Cancel** to exit the Query editor without saving changes.)

## End-to-End Reporting Examples

This topic includes two examples:

**Quick-start example with Report Wizard** - An introductory example of how to create a simple report on the results of a single, stock query with the Report Wizard.

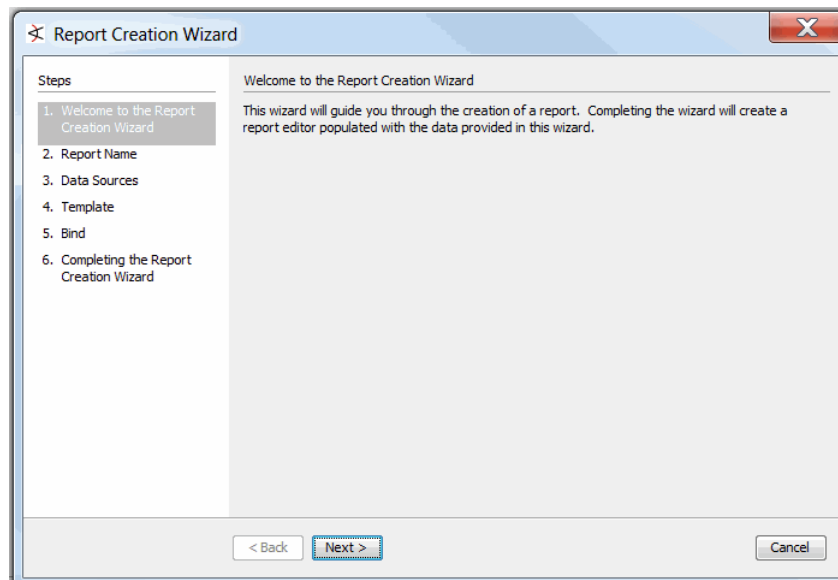
**Advanced example** - A more in-depth example reporting on the results of several trend-queries and using a heavily-modified 3-charts template. This example walks you through creating the following resources for example queries, trend, and report:

- A base query that captures data about number of VPN login attempts per hour.
- A trend that takes the base query as input, executes it, and stores captured data per a schedule you define.
- Queries that build on the trend to filter on various VPN login outcomes.
- A report that uses the complex queries as data sources and provides visual representations of query results in charts and tables based on an ArcSight provided template.

Even if you do not anticipate immediately having to create these elements from scratch (ArcSight provides a starter set of stock reporting content), we suggest working through both the simple example and the more complex one to gain an understanding of how queries, trends, and templates work together in the context of reporting.

## Example of Creating a Simple Report with the Wizard

- 1 Navigate to the Reports resource in the Navigator panel and click the **Reports** tab. Right-click your user folder and choose **Start Report Wizard**.

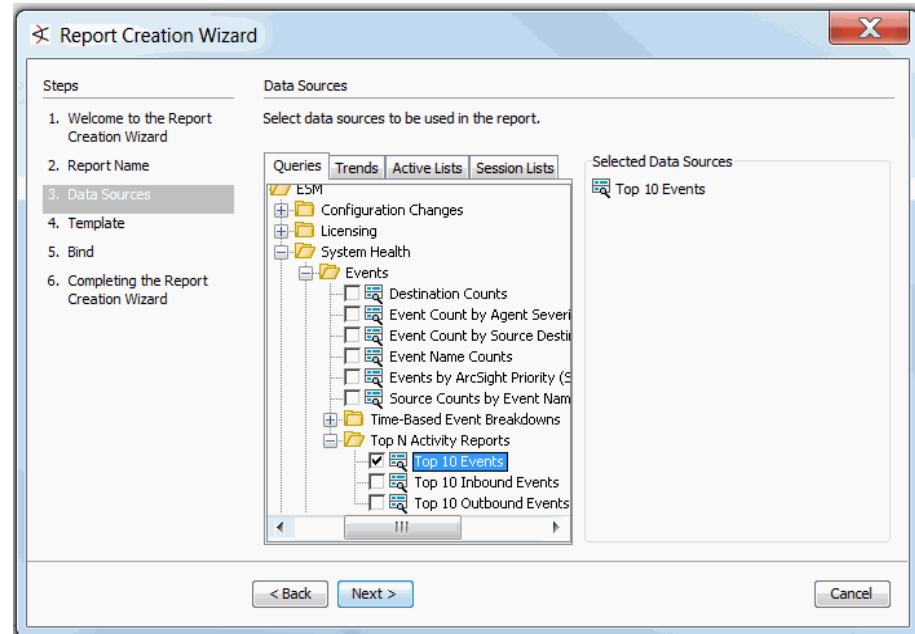


Click **Next**.

- 2 On the **Report Name** page, enter a name for your report (this example uses My Top 10 Events Report). Click **Next**.

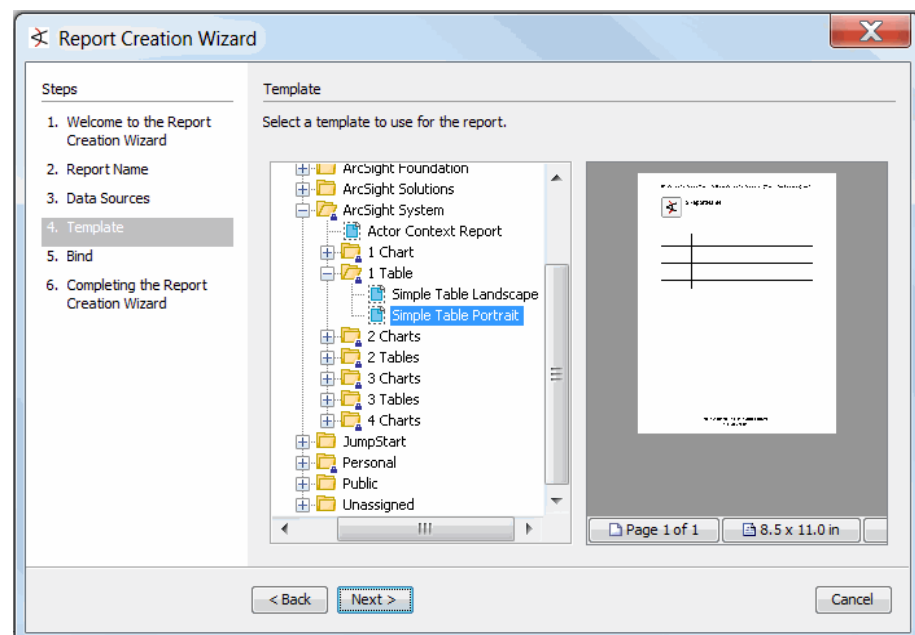


- On the **Data Sources** page, select the **Queries** tab (if not already selected, and navigate the Queries tree to choose an existing query. For this example, we select the **Top 10 Events query**, which you can find in Queries/Shared/All Queries/ArcSight Administration/ESM/System Health/Events/Top N Activity Reports/.



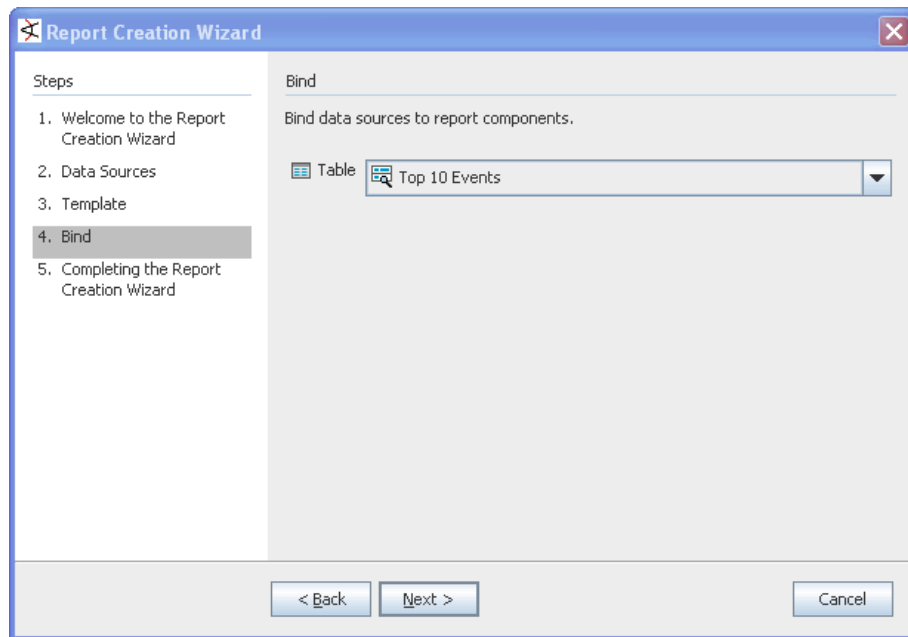
Click **Next**.

- On the **Template** page, select a template. For this example, select the **Simple Table Portrait** template under /Report Templates Shared/All Report Templates/ArcSight System/.



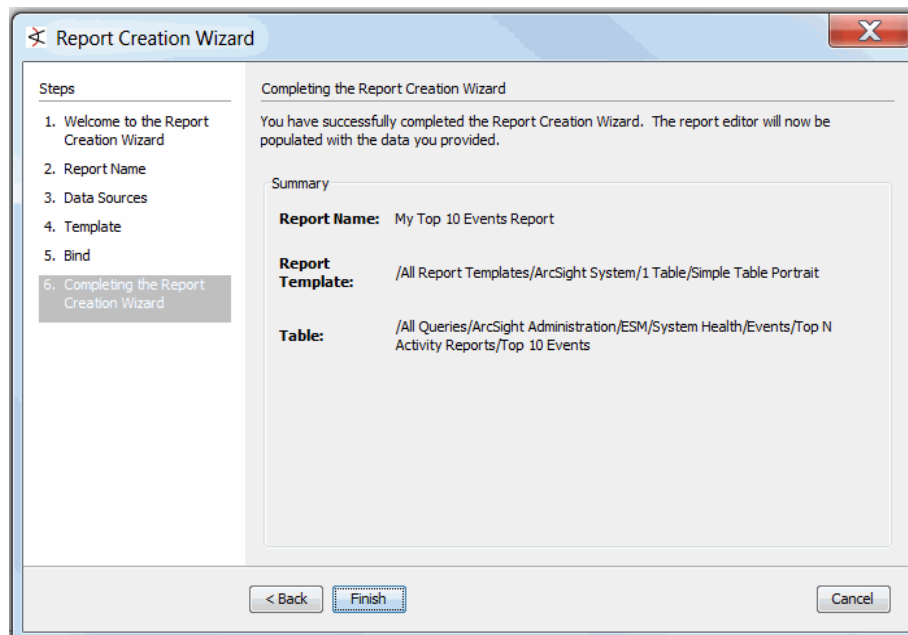
Click **Next**.

- 5 On the **Bind** page, review the data source you selected in a previous step. In our example, we chose the Top 10 Events query.



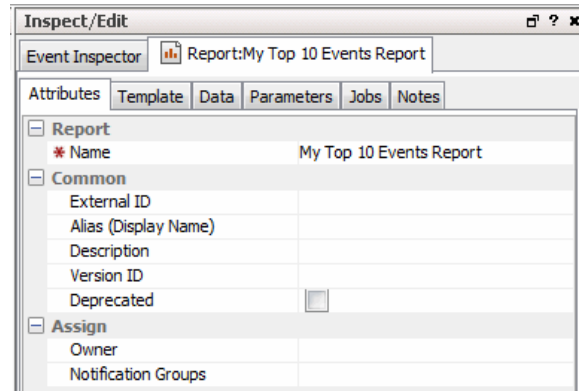
Click **Next**.

- 6 Review the report configuration summary.

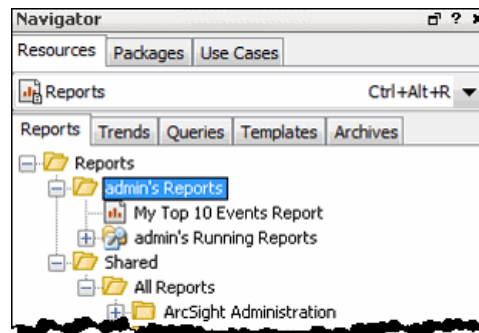


- 7 When you are satisfied with the report configuration, click **Finish** on the last page of the Report Wizard.

The **Report Editor** is automatically displayed on the Attributes tab.



- 8 Click **Apply** or **OK** on the Report editor to apply the report name and create the report.
- 9 The new report is added to your Reports folder shown in the Navigator.



- 10 On the Navigator panel Reports tree, open your Reports folder, right-click the new report and select **Run > Report with defaults**.

## Advanced Reporting Example Overview

We build an example query that shows the number of login attempts on a virtual private network (VPN). Then, we use the query in a trend to collect data on VPN login attempts on an hourly basis. Next, we build several more focused queries on top of the trend to get views into particular slices of the data (all login attempts, successful logins, and failed logins).

Finally, we use the data results from the queries and trends to create a report. To format the report, we use one of the ArcSight provided templates.

Start by navigating to the Reports resource in the Navigator panel, then follow these steps to build the example report:



**Note**

You need a set of canned VPN login events to properly verify the query and trend resources created for this example.

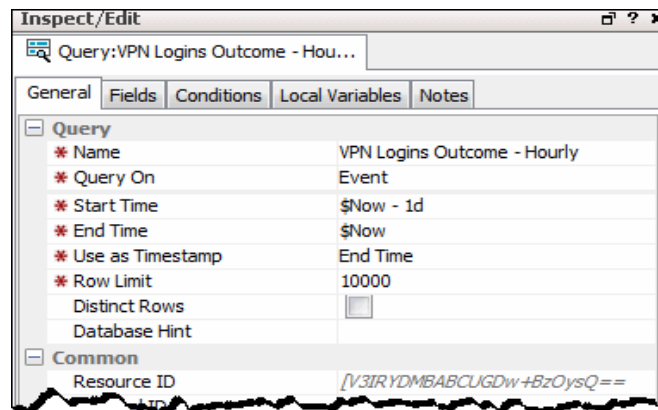
## Step 1 - Build the VPN Logins Outcome Query

Start by building a base query that captures VPN Login Data to return a count of hourly VPN login attempts. Following is a summary of configuration details you can use to create this query. (If you need more general help on creating queries, refer to Building Queries.)

### Query Name and Other General Attributes

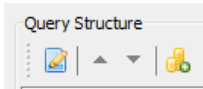
Create a new query, name it, and set the required attributes for it on the Query **General** tab as shown.

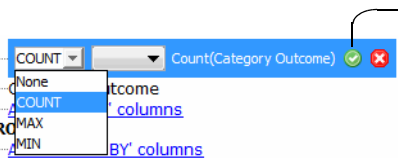
Query Attributes	Value
Name	VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly
Query on	Event
Start Time	\$Now - 1d
End Time	\$Now
Use as Timestamp	End Time
Row Limit	10000 (this is the default)



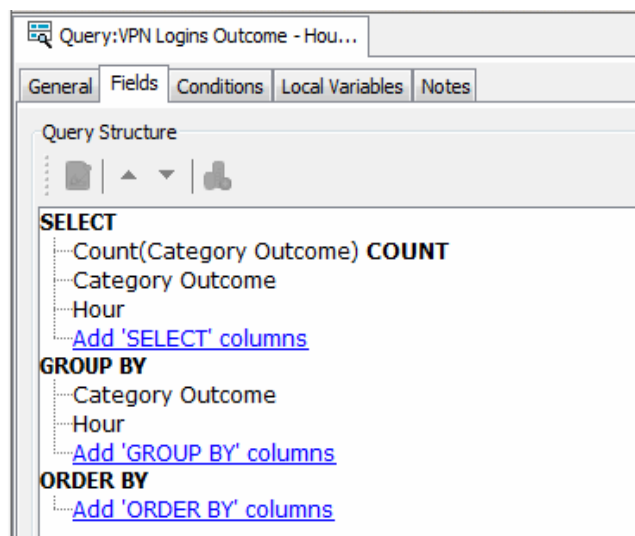
### Fields to Include in Query Result

On the Query **Fields** tab, select fields and apply functions as shown to populate columns in the table of result data.

Selected Fields	Description
Category Outcome	Add the Category Outcome field to the Query Structure list by clicking the <b>Add SELECT columns</b> link. This enables the Query Structure's toolbar icons and also opens the SELECT panel.
	
	From the Field Sets panel at the bottom, select Category\Category Outcome to add it to the list. This column contains the outcome of each login attempt (success or failure).

Selected Fields	Description
Category Outcome (COUNT)	<p>Add a second Category Column to the Query Structure list to which you will apply the Count function.</p> <p>To get this, click the <b>Category Outcome</b> column you just added, then click the <b>Duplicate Column</b> icon on the toolbar. While this duplicate is still selected, click on it to display the column's edit panel. Select COUNT from the Function drop-down menu (the first field), then click the checkmark icon to apply your changes.</p>  <p>Move this column to the top of the list using the arrow on the toolbar.</p>
Hour	<p>Add the variable called <b>Hour</b> which returns the hour value based on the end time of the event.</p> <p>To get this variable, on the SELECT panel click the <b>Fields &amp; Global Variables</b> tab. Expand All Fields\ArcSight Foundation\Variables Library\Timestamp Formats and select Hour. This column contains the date and time of the login attempt.</p>

After you click **Apply**, the Group By list is automatically populated with Category Outcome and Hour.



## Query Conditions

On the Query **Conditions** tab, define some logical conditions for the login data that narrow the query result to return only the data you are interested in. Filter on VPN Logins by specifying that each login attempt must be categorized in a specific event category and device group:

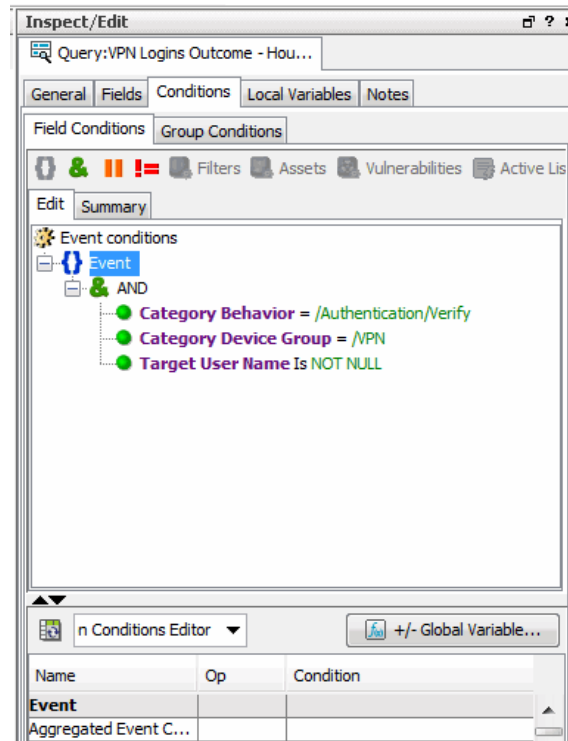
**Category Behavior = /Authentication/Verify**

**Category Device Group = /VPN**

Also, each login attempt must have a target user name value:

### Target User Name Is NOT NULL

Here is how the Field Conditions on this query should look in the display:

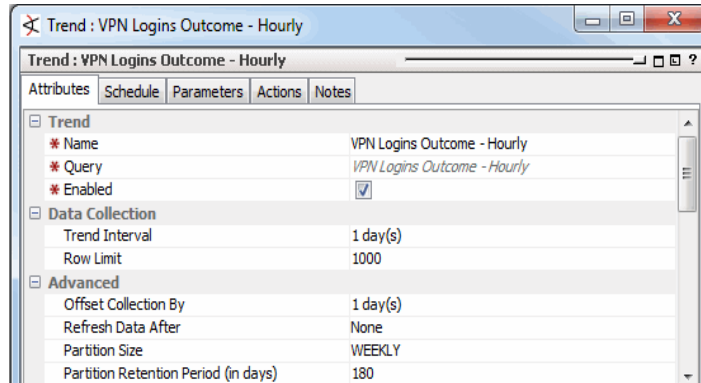


Click **Apply** or **OK** in the Query Editor to save the new query.

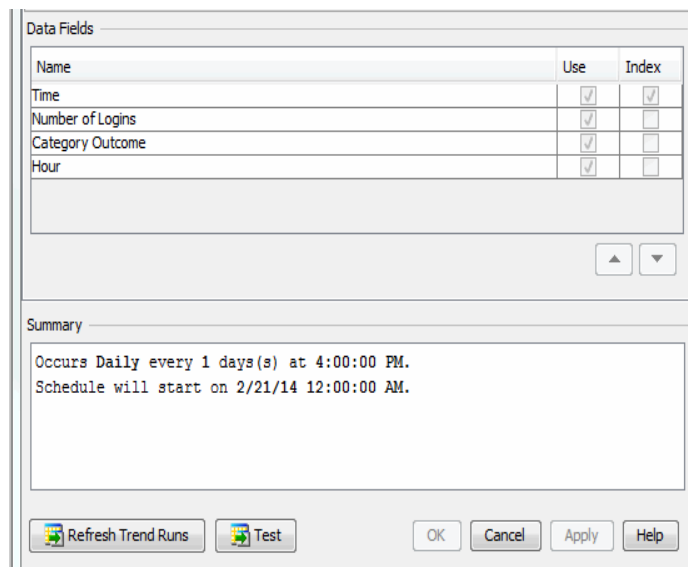
## Step 2 - Build the VPN Logins Outcome Hourly Trend

Next, create a new trend, name it, and set general attributes for it on the trend **Attributes** tab as shown. This trend uses the data results from the VPN Logins Outcome Query you just created. Keep the defaults for trend interval (1 hour to collect data on an hourly basis) and row limit at 1,000 (it stops collecting data when the table is filled at that limit).

Trend Attributes	Value
Name	VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly
Query	VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly
Enabled	On
Trend Interval	1 day
Row Limit	1000 (default)
Offset Collection By	1 day
<b>Trend Schedule</b>	
Schedule Frequency	Daily
Occurs at	Time when trend is being created in HH:MM:SS



Under Data Fields, you can see the fields the trend is getting from the query initially reflected with the original field names: TimeStamp, Count(Category Outcome), Category Outcome, and Hour. For readability, change the first two fields to the aliases Time and Number of Logins as shown below (double-click on the actual field name and type over the existing name).



From here, you can test the trend to ensure you are getting correct data. To do this, click the **Test** button on the trend **Attributes** tab. The **Test Trend** dialog returns an example result set. For each row, the Trend should return Timestamp, count of login attempts, Category Outcome (Attempt or Failure), Hour (from the Hour variable).

Trends also have schedules. On the Trend **Schedule** tab, define a schedule that specifies how often you want to run the trend. For the example, define this one to run every hour on the hour (Hourly, every 1 hour at "0 minutes after").

A trend's range defines when to start and terminate the data collection.

The trend starts as you specified and keep going until it is manually terminated.

Here is the data collected from a trend that ran hourly for a few days. You can view result data from your trend in the grid view by selecting the trend in the Navigator and clicking the Data Viewer for it in the right-click menu.

Time	Number of Logins	Category Outcome	Hour
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	26	/Attempt	12
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	100	/Attempt	13
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	12	/Failure	12
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	47	/Failure	13
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	13	/Success	12
27 Jul 2006 12:48:26 PDT	54	/Success	13
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	22	/Attempt	8
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	80	/Attempt	9
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	10	/Failure	8
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	38	/Failure	9
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	12	/Success	8
28 Jul 2006 08:48:26 PDT	42	/Success	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	23	/Attempt	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	78	/Attempt	10
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	13	/Failure	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	35	/Failure	10
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	11	/Success	9
28 Jul 2006 09:48:26 PDT	42	/Success	10

When you are satisfied that the trend is set up correctly, click **Apply** or **OK** in the trend Editor to save the trend.

### Step 3 - Filter the Trend Data (Login Attempts, Successes, Failures)

You can further refine the VPN login query data by creating separate queries based on the trend, each of which capture information a particular aspect of VPN login events. Developing several trend-based queries like this (to show different data slices of common scenarios), gives you a rich set of data views from which to run reports later.

Create three more queries all of which use the original trend as their data source, and then further filter the data to show only attempts, failures, or successes, respectively. Use each of these queries, **Attempt**, **Failure**, and **Success**, to further filter the login data captured in the trend:

- **Login Outcome Trend Query - Attempt**
- **Login Outcome Trend Query - Failure**
- **Login Outcome Trend Query - Success**

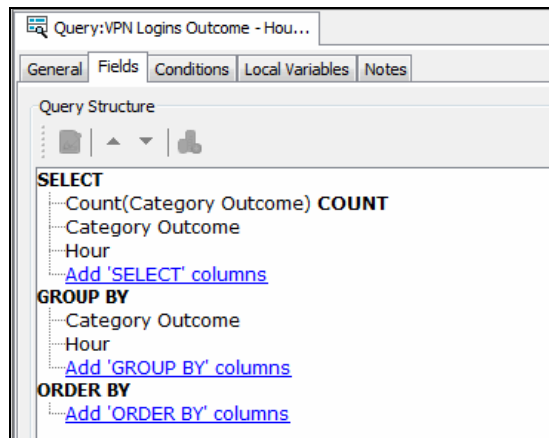
As an example of how this is done, here are the details for creating one of these; the **Failure** Query definition.

Create a new query and name it **Login Outcome Trend Query - Failure**.

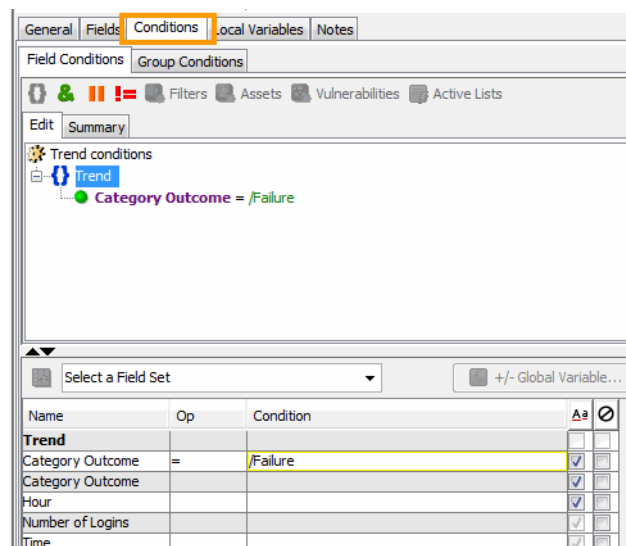
As the query's data source type (Query On), choose **Trend** and select the "VPN Logins Outcome - Hourly" trend.

In the Query **Fields** tab, choose the same fields as in the original query to populate columns.





On the **Conditions** tab, specify **Category Outcome = /Failure**. The query only returns the login attempts that failed.



Save your changes. You have now built a query that reports on failed VPN login trends.

Create the other two queries (Login Outcome Trend Query - Attempt and Login Outcome Trend Query - Success) the same way specifying the appropriate Category Outcome condition for each.

You are ready to report on the trend data.

## Step 4 - Create the VPN Logins Outcome Report on Trend Data

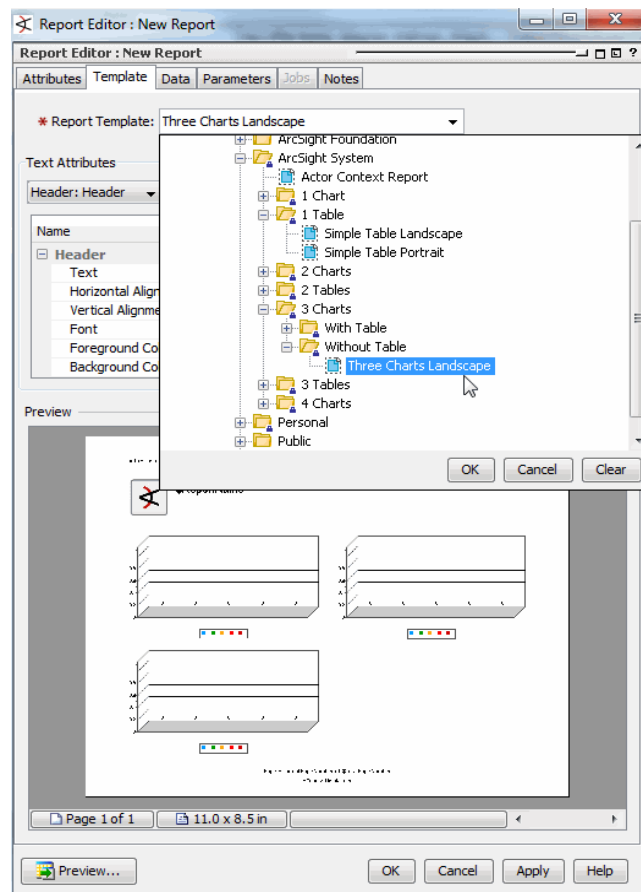
You can leverage multiple data sources in your report. For this example, you can use all three of the VPN Login trend-based queries you just built to create a report.

On the **Reports** tab, create a new report in your user folder and name it **VPN Login Outcome Trend**.

## Choose a Template and Bind it to Result Data

A Template defines the visual constructs of a report such as layout, portrait or landscape, number of tables, number and types of charts, placeholders for text areas, and so on. You can find the ArcSight provided templates under **Report Templates/Shared/All Report Templates/Arcsight System/**.

In the Editor (Inspect/Edit panel) for your new report, click the **Template** tab and select the **Three Charts Landscape** to use as the Report Template. (Look in the drop-down tree under 3 charts/Without Table/ to find this template). In the preview panel you can see what the report template looks like. Double-click the template preview to open it in the viewer. Here you can see what the report looks like before adding the data.



On the Reports **Data** tab, you can bind each of the three charts in the template to each of the VPN login “trend” queries. (The data source type for each of these charts is a query, but remember that each of the queries uses a trend as its data source, which, in turn, was built on our original query.)

Chart	Description
Chart 1	<p>On the Report Data <b>Chart 1</b> tab, select <b>Login Outcome Trend Query - Attempt</b> as the Data Source for the first chart. This query returns the number of login attempts over the last hour.</p> <p>On the X-Axis (horizontal) tab, add the Hour value to the Selected Columns. We'll show the Hour value on the X axis of the chart.</p> <p>On the Y-Axis (vertical) tab, place the Number of Logins (Category Outcome with "Count" applied to it) in Selected Columns. This shows on the Y axis of the chart.</p> <p>For Chart Type select a line chart.</p>
Chart 2	<p>On the Report Data <b>Chart 2</b> tab, select <b>Login Outcome Trend Query - Failure</b> as the data source for the second chart. This query returns the number of failed logins per hour.</p> <p>Configure this chart also to show the Hour value on the X (horizontal) axis, and the number of failed logins on the Y (vertical) axis.</p>
Chart 3	<p>On the Report Data <b>Chart 3</b> tab, select <b>Login Outcome Trend Query - Success</b> as the data source for the third chart. This Query returns the number of successful logins per hour.</p> <p>Specify the same assignments as the other charts for X and Y axis.</p>



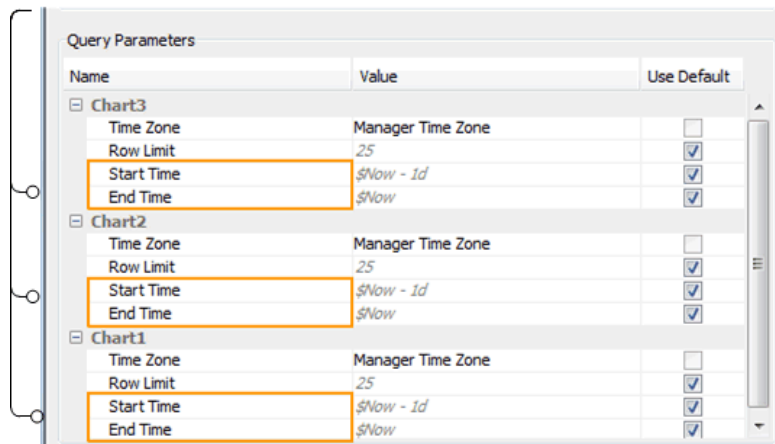
At this point since you have selected some data for the report, you can click **Apply** to create the new Report and then continue working. It is a good idea to save frequently.

## Using Custom Parameters

On the Report **Parameters** tab, you can view all the common parameters for the report (in Report parameters area), and all the parameters required for each chart (in Query Parameters area).

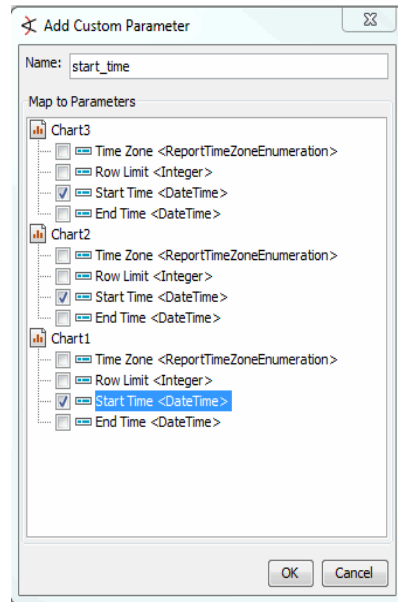
You can also provide Custom parameters. You can use Custom parameters to tie together similar parameters from multiple queries for one consistent value. For example, we could do this with Start Time and End Time.

**Use Custom Parameters** to tie together similar parameters (like Start Time and End Time) from multiple queries for one consistent value.



**Create a new Custom parameter called “start\_time”:**

Click the **Add** button on the **Parameters** tab, and create a new parameter called `start_time` to prompt for Start Time field values. Map it to “Start Time” for all three charts (Chart 1, Chart 2, and Chart 3).



The custom parameter is added to the list of report parameters under Custom Parameters.

Similarly, add an End Time by adding a new parameter called “end\_time” and map it to End Time for all three charts.

On the Parameters tab under Custom Parameters, use the drop down menus to choose the following values for your new parameters:

- Set **start\_time** to `$Now-1d`
- Set **end\_time** to `$Now`

**Report : VPN Login Outcome Trend**

Attributes | Template | Data | **Parameters** | Jobs | Notes

**Report Parameters**

Name	Value	Use Default
<b>Common Parameters</b>		
Report Format	pdf	<input type="checkbox"/>
Page Size	Letter [8.5x11 in]	<input type="checkbox"/>
Run as User	Select a User	<input type="checkbox"/>
Email to		<input type="checkbox"/>
Email addresses		<input type="checkbox"/>
Email Format	Send URL	<input type="checkbox"/>
Email Subject	\$ReportName	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Custom Parameters</b>		
StartTime	\$Today - 1d	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add... Edit... Remove

**Query Parameters**

Name	Value	Use Default
<b>Chart3</b>		
Time Zone	Manager Time Zone	<input type="checkbox"/>
Start Time	\$Today - 1d	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
End Time	\$Now	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Row Limit	25	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Chart2</b>		
Time Zone	Manager Time Zone	<input type="checkbox"/>
Start Time	\$Today - 1d	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
End Time	\$Now	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Row Limit	25	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Preview... OK Cancel Apply Help

Click **Apply** or **OK** in the Report Editor to save the new report.

## Step 5 - Run the Report

To run the report, select the VPN Login Outcome Trend report in the Navigator panel and choose **Run > Report with defaults** from the right-click menu to run and view the report.

The report will now have three charts each showing a different slice of the data:

- Number of login attempts
- Number of failed logins
- Number of successful logins



# Running and Managing Reports

---

This topic describes how run and manage various types of reports. Information is included on working with ad hoc reports, archived reports, focused reports, delta reports, and scheduled reports. The topic on Running Reports includes detail on setting report parameters at run-time. Also included is information on how to import and export reports, and work with report groups.

[“Running Reports” on page 379](#)

[“Managing Reports” on page 385](#)

[“Archiving and Scheduling Reports” on page 388](#)

## Running Reports

Defined reports are usually run on a schedule and their output archived automatically. But there are also many occasions when you need to run the basic report types directly.

See also [Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools, including how to develop new reports, queries, or trends using a provided or custom template.



### Tips:

- By default, you can run up to four reports at the same time. The number of reports allowed to run simultaneously is a configurable parameter on the Manager in `ARCSIGHT_HOME/config/server.properties` through the setting

```
report.maxconcurrentinteractivereports = <number>
```

If the number is exceeded, each report will be placed in queue and will be run in the order they appear. Refer to the ESM Administrator's Guide's Configuration section, topic on *Managing and Changing Properties File Settings*.

- If you are having problems running a large or complex report, refer to the topic [“Running Large or Complex Reports” on page 383](#).
- If you are having problems running PDF reports with Asian fonts, see the topic [“Generating Reports with Asian Fonts” on page 363](#).
- If a report does not show up as expected, try restarting the Console and running the report again.

## Running a New or Archived Report

When you run reports, you most often use an existing report definition; or a copy of a report already defined, run, and archived for later use. Defining new reports is a separate topic described in [Creating a Report](#). Please see also [“Archiving a Report” on page 388](#) and [“Scheduling Report Tasks” on page 391](#).



**Tip**

If you are having problems running a large or complex report, refer to the topic [“Running Large or Complex Reports” on page 383](#).

If you are having problems running PDF reports with Asian fonts, see the topic [“Generating Reports with Asian Fonts” on page 363](#).

## Running a Defined Report

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Reports** resource tree.
- 2 Click the **Reports** tab.
- 3 Navigate the Reports tree, and select the report you want to run.
- 4 Right-click the selected report to bring up the Context menu, and select **Run** with one of the report-type options described in [“Run-Report Options” on page 381](#).
- 5 In the Report Parameters dialog, enter settings in Common Parameters and Custom Parameters sections as appropriate. See [“Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom” on page 355](#) for the available settings.
- 6 Click **Save Output** if you want to save a copy of the report to disk.

Name	Value
<b>Common Parameters</b>	
Report Format	html
Page Size	Letter [8.5x11 in]
Run as User	Select a User
Email to	
Email addresses	
Email Format	Send URL
Email Subject	\$ReportName
<b>Custom Parameters</b>	
StartTime	\$Today - 1d
EndTime	\$Today
RowLimit	10000
FilterBy	All Events

Name	Value
<b>Output Parameters</b>	
Archive Report Folder	Select a Archived Report Group
Archive Report Name	\${Today}/\${ReportName}_\${Now}
Archive Report Expiration Time	\$Now +6M

☒ **Save Output**

OK Cancel Help

**Figure 11-1** Run Report Options



If you select this option, additional archive parameters are displayed. You can override any of these defaults also. You can:

- ◆ Change the group in which to archive the report. By default,
- ◆ Provide a report name other than the default.
- ◆ Specify an expiration time at which to discard the report from the archive. By default, the report is saved in the archive for 6 months from the time it was run.



You can use Velocity template references for fields that accept text, such as Archive Report Name and Archive Report Expiration Time. See [“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003](#) for details.

- 7 In the Report Parameters dialog box, enter new parameters if available and appropriate.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 In the options dialog box click **Open** to open the report, **Save** to choose a location and format for the output file, or **Cancel** to quit. The Save option applies to all but HTML files.

## Run-Report Options

To run a report, right-click a report in the Navigation panel, select **Run** from the Context menu, and choose one of these report-type options.

Report Type	Description
Report	Run the report, but with the opportunity to edit its current parameters (if present). If you choose this option, the Report Parameters dialog is displayed before the report is run. You can override the default report parameters for just this run of the report. See <a href="#">Figure 11-1 on page 380</a> .
Report with defaults	Run the report directly, using its defined parameters, if present. For focused reports, this is the only option.
Report with selected event	Run the report using as parameters the fields of an event selected in a Viewer panel grid view.
Delta report	For reports based on bar charts, run the report after selecting another report as the comparison for the delta.

## Report Parameters

You can override the existing report parameters at the time you run a report See [Figure 11-1 on page 380](#)). Other parameters are set when the report was created as described in [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#). For a list of report parameters that you can change, see [“Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom” on page 355](#).

## Displaying an Archived Report

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Reports** resource tree.
- 2 On the **Archives** tab, right-click a report and choose **Show Archive Report**.

## Running a Delta Report

Delta reports show the difference between two sets of parameters, within a single comparative report. Defining new reports is a separate topic described in [Creating a Report](#). In order to run a delta report, you must have an existing report first. You can also set up a delta report to run and archive on a schedule. Please see also [“Archiving and Scheduling Reports” on page 388](#) and [“Scheduling Report Tasks” on page 391](#) for more information.

- 1 From the Navigator panel drop-down menu, select the **Reports** resource.
- 2 On the **Reports** tab, right-click a report and choose **Run**, then **Delta Report**.



The **Run Delta Reports** option is available only for reports with a bar, 3D bar, or inverted bar chart. The report must contain one chart only (no tables). The X and Y axis must have at least one column each, and no Z-axis. The chart must not have any summary function or top N filter applied. For more information about creating reports with these characteristics, see the [“Binding Data to the Report” on page 340](#) section (under [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#)).

- 3 Select the parameters for the first report, select a report format from the drop-down menu, and click **OK**.
- 4 Select the parameters for the second report and click **OK**.
- 5 Select **Save Output** if you want to save a copy of the report to disk.

If this option is selected, additional archive parameters are displayed. You can override any of these defaults also. You can select a group in which to archive the report, provide a report name, and specify an expiration time at which to discard the report from the archive. By default, the report is saved in the archive for 6 months from the time it was run.



You can use Velocity template references for fields that accept text, such as Archive Report Name and Archive Report Expiration Time. See [“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003](#) for details.

The Report Viewer appears and displays the delta report. The report shows the difference between two sets of parameters used on a single report. The report also shows the data for each of the parameters.

When a delta report is run or archived, an internal event is sent to the ArcSight Manager. This event contains the following data fields and values:

Delta Report Event-data Field	Description
Event Name	Delta Report Generated (Report: <i>&lt;ReportName&gt;</i> ), where <i>&lt;ReportName&gt;</i> is the name of the report.


Rules can be created using the delta report data fields.

## Running Reports from a Grid View

You can define reports on-the-fly based on specific events in grid views in the Viewer panel.

### Running a Rule-Context Report from a Grid View

- 1 In a grid view, select a correlation event.
- 2 Right-click it and choose **Report > Rule Context Report**.
- 3 In the **Report Parameters** dialog box, enter the time, in minutes, before and after this event's occurrence and click **OK**.
- 4 You can choose to Open or Save the report file.

In the grid view, a correlation event is marked with a **Flash** icon (  ). A report showing the correlation event and the events that triggered the rule appear.

### Running an Event Context Report from a Grid View

- 1 In a grid view, select an event.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Report > Event Context Report**.
- 3 In the **Report Parameters** dialog box, enter the time, in minutes, before and after this event's occurrence and click **OK**.
- 4 You can choose to Open or Save the report file.

The report shows the events that occurred, within the specified time before and after this event appears.

### Running a Channel Report from a Grid View

- 1 In a grid view, select an event.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Report > Channel Report**.
- 3 The Report Parameters dialog is displayed, and its fields are automatically populated with the event data fields. You can enter new parameters to limit or extend the report.
- 4 Choose a Report File Format from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 You can choose to Open or Save the report file.



**Note**

The channel report exports all of the events in the channel into a report. A channel report refers to the whole channel, not the selected event. However, you do need to select an event in the grid view in order to "select" the channel and get the Report > Channel Report menu option.

## Running Large or Complex Reports

A very large report (for example, a 500 MB PDF report) might require so much virtual machine (VM) memory that it can cause the ArcSight Manager to crash and re-start. To prevent this scenario, you can set up the Manager to expose a special report parameter for generating the report in a separate process. The separate process has its own VM and heap, so the report is more likely to finish. Even if the memory allocated is still not enough,

the report failure will not crash the Manager. This option must be set up on the Manager to expose it in the ArcSight Console report parameters list.

The default server property is

`report.canarchiveinseparateprocess=false`. You need to change this to **true**.

The steps are as follows:

- 1 Refer to the ESM Administrator's Guide. In the Configuration chapter, follow the instructions in the topic on *Managing and Changing Properties File Settings, Editing Properties*. Make sure to restart the Manager after making changes.

After setting the property to **true**, you will now have the ability to set the report parameter on the ArcSight Console.

- 2 On the ArcSight Console, open the report that you want to run in a separate process in the Report **Editor**, and click the **Parameters** tab. Set the parameter **Generate Report In Separate Process** to **true**.
- 3 Run the report. The report should run like a normal report, but it does not consume the resources of the Manager VM. See notes below for more information.



#### Tips:

- If a report is saved with the parameter set to **true**, the report is archived as a separate process even if the property `report.canarchiveinseparateprocess` in `server.properties` is set back to **false** later on.
- This property indicates whether reports are allowed to be archived in a separate process. When this property is set to **true**, the option to run and archive the report in a separate process is available in the common properties in the Report Editor. Setting the value to true causes the report to be archived in a separate process. The benefit of archiving a report in a separate process is to avoid consuming Manager resources and potentially crashing the Manager.
- Use this parameter only in special circumstances as needed. For example, if archiving a report is causing the Manager to crash then you might apply this solution. Generally, if a report contains tables that have more than 500,000 rows with 4 or 5 columns per row it is likely that the report is large enough over-tax the Manager VM memory. However, the tipping point may vary depending on the Manager heap size and the details and data in the tables so it is best to only resort to this solution if you encounter problems archiving a particular report.

---

Reports that query over a large time range with complex joins run much faster if the query contains a full scan database hint. This option must be set up on the Manager to expose it in the ArcSight Console report parameters list.

The default server property is `report.canquerywithfullscanhint=false`. You need to change this to **true**.

The steps are as follows:

- 1 Refer to the Administrator's Guide. In the Configuration chapter, follow the instructions in the topic on *Managing and Changing Properties File Settings, Editing Properties*. Make sure to restart the Manager after making changes.

After setting the property to **true**, you will now have the ability to set the report parameter on the ArcSight Console.

- 2 On the Console, open the report that you want to contain the full scan hint in the Report **Editor**, and click the **Parameters** tab. Set the parameter **Query with Full Scan Hint** to **true**.
- 3 Run the report.



If a report is saved with the parameter **true**, the full database optimization hint is applied even if the property `report.canquerywithfullscanhint` in `server.properties` is set back to **false** later on.

When the property is set to **true**, the report uses the `FULL_SCAN` hint in the SQL queries it generates to query the database. The content of the report does not change, but the queries logged in `server.report.log` contain the hint. `FULL_SCAN` hint can significantly reduce the runtime for SQL queries that query events within a large time range and contain complex joins.

Use this parameter only in special circumstances if your organization has determined with the help of customer support or professional services that it is appropriate.

## Managing Reports

Managing reports includes editing existing reports, importing/exporting, and organizing reports into groups.

### Editing a Report

Over time, reports often need to be adjusted to keep them appropriate and useful. For more information, see [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#).

- 1 Navigate to **Reports** in the Navigator panel, select the **Report** sub-tab, and select the report you want to modify.
- 2 Double-click the report, or right-click and select **Edit Report** from the context menu. This launches the Report Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, and shows the definition for the selected report.
- 3 Edit the report definition as needed and click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes. (Click **Cancel** to exit the Query editor without saving changes.)

### Creating Focused Reports

In addition to using the reports already available in the Navigator panel's Reports resource tree, you can easily make and save refinements to these definitions. These more narrowly defined or focused reports are also stored in the resource tree, so other people can also use them.

Focused reports are identical to other reports. They differ only in being useful variations on already defined reports. You create focused reports when you want to make a special variation available to other ArcSight users through the Reports resource tree.

#### Creating a focused report

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Reports** resource tree.
- 2 On the **Reports** tab, right-click a report and choose **New Focused Report**.
- 3 In the Focused Report Editor, select the **Attributes** tab and name the report. Name focused reports in a fashion that properly distinguishes them from their originals.

- 4 Click the **Parameters** tab and change any of the values as appropriate. These values are the same ones you set when Running a New or Archived Report.

**Tip**

You can use Velocity template references for parameter fields that accept text, as described in [“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003](#).

- 5 Click **Apply** to make changes and keep the editor open. Click **OK** to store the definition in the resource tree in the same folder as the original report and close the editor.

**Note**

A focused report reflects changes made to the report on which it is based.

---

## Importing and Exporting Reports

**Caution**

To import and export reports, use the packages feature. Since the reporting capabilities involve using queries, trends, and templates as a part of building reports, the import/export tool must track and manage dependencies across resources. Packages gives you this capability. Packages supersedes the import/export facility provided in previous releases and offers enhanced functionality, including version support, dependency management, and import/export capabilities. Portable ArcSight packages can automatically manage dependencies across resources and other packages. Please see the information on packages in [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#).

You can import or export reports by following these procedures.

### Importing Reports

- 1 In the **Reports** resource tree, select the **Reports** tab.
- 2 On the Reports tab, right-click a report group where you want the imported report to be placed and select **Import Report**.
- 3 In the window, select a file to import to the report group.
- 4 Click **Open**.

### Exporting Reports

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, select the **Report** tab.
- 2 On the Reports tab, right-click a report and select **Export Report**.
- 3 In the window, select the directory to save the report.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Moving or Copying a Report

You may need to move or duplicate report definitions to better organize your work, to publish your definitions, or to make editable copies of enterprise reports.

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, navigate to a report and drag and drop it into another group.

- 2 Select **Move** to move the report, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the report, or **Link** to create a copy of the report that is linked to the original report.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the report that is not affected when the original report is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the report that is linked to the original report. Therefore, if you edit a linked report, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked reports, you can either delete the selected report or all linked report copies.

## Managing Report Groups

Report groups store similar reports, and control access to reports, using access control lists (ACLs). When editing access control permissions, permissions given to a report group are also given to all groups and reports within that group.

Groups and reports can be managed with drag and drop functionality. You can move or copy groups and reports into other groups from the Reports resource tree. If a group is deleted, the reports within that group are also deleted.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

Note

### Creating a Report Group

- 1 On the **Navigator Panel** drop-down menu, select **Reports**.
- 2 In the Reports resource tree, right-click a group and select **New Group**.
- 3 Enter a report group name in the "name" text field.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

### Renaming a Report Group

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the "name" text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

### Editing a Report Group

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, right-click a group and select **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Report Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text field.
- 3 Click **OK**.

### Moving or Copying a Report Group

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Select **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the

copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting a Report Group

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, right-click a group and select **Delete Group**.
- 2 Click **Yes** in the dialog box.

## Archiving and Scheduling Reports

You can schedule reports to archive automatically with the scheduler. The scheduler accepts multiple schedules by year, month, week, day, or hour. For example, a report can be archived automatically on the first of January at both 5 AM and 6 PM. The scheduler also sends e-mail notifications informing users when a scheduled report has been archived. Report Archiving is a component of ArcSight Reporting resource tools. Be sure to see [Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools.

## Archiving a Report

### To archive a report:

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, select the **Reports** tab.
- 2 On the Reports tab, right-click a report and select **Schedule for Archiving > Report**.

The report editor opens at the **Jobs** tab.

- 3 Click **Add** on the Jobs tab, and choose either **Schedule Report** or **Schedule Delta Report**.

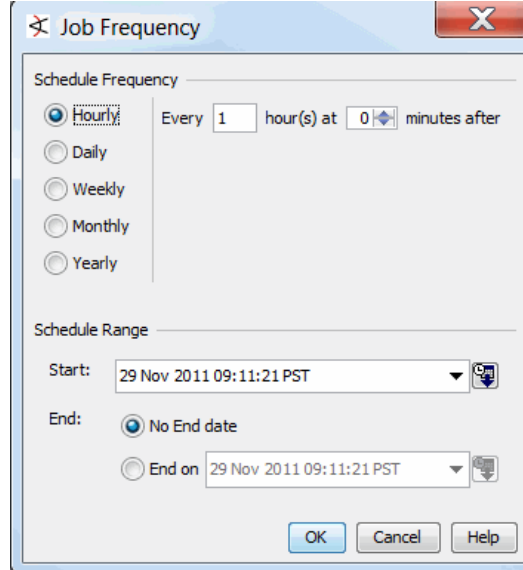


The option to **Schedule a Delta Report** job is available only for certain types of event-based reports, and only when a previously-run report is available in the archives. Otherwise, clicking Add on the **Jobs** tab takes you directly to the job scheduler to schedule a standard report. For more information about Delta reports, see [“Running a Delta Report” on page 382](#).

---

- 4 Enter a name and description for the job.
- 5 In the Jobs scheduler, click the link labeled **Click here to set up schedule frequency** to get the Job Frequency dialog, and configure the schedule.





The image shows a 'Job Frequency' dialog box with a title bar containing a close button (X). The dialog is divided into two main sections: 'Schedule Frequency' and 'Schedule Range'.

**Schedule Frequency:** This section contains five radio buttons for selecting the frequency: 'Hourly' (selected), 'Daily', 'Weekly', 'Monthly', and 'Yearly'. To the right of these buttons, there is a text field 'Every' followed by a numeric input '1', the text 'hour(s) at', a spin box with '0', and the text 'minutes after'.

**Schedule Range:** This section contains two fields: 'Start' and 'End'. The 'Start' field has a text box with '29 Nov 2011 09:11:21 PST' and a drop-down arrow. The 'End' field has two options: 'No End date' (selected with a radio button) and 'End on' (with a radio button and a text box containing '29 Nov 2011 09:11:21 PST' and a drop-down arrow). At the bottom right are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

In the Job Parameters section, select or enter values for the parameter fields as necessary. For date parameters, enter values in the text fields, click the drop-down arrows or click the time buttons to select a time range. For time data, you can enter a specific value, such as 8:54:00 AM or you can use special timestamp variables.

Click **OK** to save changes to the Job schedule.

To view all scheduled jobs, click the **Open scheduled jobs list** tool button (🕒). The scheduled tasks are listed in the Viewer panel under "Current Jobs."

For more information on setting up and viewing scheduled jobs, see ["Scheduling Jobs" on page 954](#).

- 6 Back in the report editor Jobs tab, under the **Job Parameters** section, enter values for the report parameters by clearing the Use Default check marks, or change nothing here to keep the defaults. You can set the report format, e-mail options, output parameters, start and end times, and so on. These are the same parameters described in ["Report Parameters" on page 381](#).

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' dialog box for a report named 'Top 10 Events'. The dialog has tabs for 'Attributes', 'Template', 'Data', 'Parameters', 'Jobs', and 'Notes'. The 'Jobs' tab is selected, showing a table with columns 'Jobs' and 'Description'. Below this, it indicates the 'Next Run Time' as '8 Dec 2008 15:00:00 PST'. The 'Job Parameters' section contains several groups of parameters, each with a 'Name', 'Value', and 'Use Default' checkbox.

Name	Value	Use Default
<b>Common Parameters</b>		
Report Format	html	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Page Size	Letter [8.5x11 in]	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Run as User	Select a User	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Email to		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Email Format	Send URL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Email Subject	ReportName	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Output Parameters</b>		
Archive Report Folder	Select a Archived Report G...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Archive Report Name	{Today}/{ReportName}...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Archive Report Expir...	Now+6M	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Custom Parameters</b>		
StartTime	Now - 1d	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
EndTime	Now	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Subtitle</b>		
Text		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Chart</b>		
Time Zone	Manager Time Zone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Filter by	Select a Filter	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Row Limit	10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Start Time	Now - 1d	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
End Time	Now	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Title</b>		
Text	Top 10 Events	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>ChartTitle</b>		
Text		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The 'Summary' section at the bottom indicates the report occurs hourly and will start on 8 Dec 2008 14:05:24 PST. At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Preview...', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

- 7 Click **Apply** or **OK** on the report Editor to save your changes for this report.



There is a property in server.defaults.properties:  
report.scheduler.archive\_empty\_reports=

By default, this property is true. The scheduler archives reports even if they are empty. If you set it to false, do so in server.properties, not server.default.properties. False means the scheduler does not archive Empty reports. Refer to the Administrator's Guide's Configuration section, topic on *Managing and Changing Properties File Settings*, for instructions on how to change settings properly.


## Parameterized Report Entries

The top portion of the dialog may or may not exist, depending on whether you chose any parameterized conditions while creating the report. A typical example of a parameterized condition is: detect time between \$CurrentDate-1d and \$CurrentDate. If such

parameters exist, they are used for both immediate as well as scheduled generation of reports. While scheduling reports for archiving, these parameters are displayed in the Edit Parameters dialog. It is possible to independently modify the dates specified in the parameter text fields. In addition to relative dates, absolute dates can be specified as parameter values. Examples of valid absolute dates are: 01/01/2001 and 01/01/2000 11:00:00 AM.

## Viewing an Archived Report

To view an archived report, select the **Reports** resource in the Navigator (if it is not already selected) and click the **Archives** tab. Navigate the Archived Reports tree to find the archived report you want, then right-click the report and choose **Show Archive Report**. The report is displayed in the Viewer.

If you do not find the report you are looking for, you might want to check to see if it has run yet. To view all scheduled jobs, click the **Open scheduled jobs list** tool button (  ). The scheduled tasks are listed in the Viewer panel under "Current Jobs."

## Scheduling Report Tasks

You can schedule some tasks to occur automatically. Specifically, this feature is available for archiving reports individually or by group, for taking Pattern Discovery snapshots, and for scheduling rules. This topic discusses the scheduler as it relates to scheduling reports (For more information on job scheduler in general, see also ["Scheduling Jobs" on page 954.](#))

### Scheduling Individual-Report Archiving

- 1 Choose the Reports resource tree in the Navigator panel, select the **Reports** tab, and right-click the report you want to schedule.
- 2 Choose **Schedule for archiving**, then **Report** or **Delta Report** for delta reports. (This opens the report with the Jobs tab showing.)
- 3 Click **Add** on the Jobs tab.

- 4 Enter a name and description for the job.
- 5 In the Job Parameters section, select or enter values for the parameter fields as necessary.
- 6 In the Summary section, click the link labeled **Click here to set up schedule frequency**.
- 7 In the Job Scheduler dialog, select the desired frequency and enter the associated settings.

The following table shows scheduling options.

Option	Description
Schedule Frequency	<p>Choose a timing for the schedule. The typical choices are self-explanatory: Hourly, Daily, Weekly, Monthly, and Yearly. For each timing, enter additional settings such as occurrence (Every) and time. For Monthly, also specify the day of the month. For Yearly, specify the month and date.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> If you are scheduling a yearly report on a leap year and you choose February 29 as the month and date, the Console will not save your setting. To ensure that yearly reports are covered on leap years, choose a different date; or choose either February 28 or March 1 if you want your schedule to be as close as possible to February 29.</p>
Schedule Range	Select the start and end date for the report run.

- 8 Repeat [Step 3](#) to add another schedule for the same group.
- 9 Click **OK**.  
  
Reports can be archived in PDF, HTML, Excel, Comma Separated Value (csv), or Rich Text Format (rtf). The default PDF format should be used when archiving reports. Compared to PDF reports, other reports may lose formatting information and appear differently. In addition, Excel format is more memory-intensive than PDF.
- 10 Select the **e-mail scheduled reports** to check box and a user from the drop-down menu to automatically send an e-mail notification when the report is archived.  
  
The user receives an e-mail notification stating that the report has been successfully archived. The e-mail also contains a URL to the report so that the user can view the report from the URL. The e-mail notification is sent to the e-mail address listed in the user's profile. The user must have an e-mail address in their user profile.
- 11 For the **Archive Folder** text field, click the archive report group button to select where to list the archived report.
- 12 In the Archive Report Selector, select a report archive group and click **OK**.
- 13 In the Report Parameters window, click **Update**.
- 14 For delta reports, in the Schedule Summary, right-click **Default** under the **Param Set 2** column and select **Edit Parameters** to change the second parameter set, if any. Click **Update**.
- 15 In the Schedule Summary, click **Close**.



You can use Velocity template references for fields that accept text, such as Archive Folder and Archive Report Selector. See [“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003](#) for details.

## Scheduling Report Archiving by Resource Group

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, navigate to a particular group.
- 2 Right-click the group and choose **Schedule for archiving>Report group**. (This opens the report with the **Jobs** tab showing.)
- 3 Click **Add** on the **Jobs** tab.
- 4 Enter a name and description for the job.
- 5 In the Job Parameters section, select or enter values for the parameter fields as necessary.
- 6 In the Jobs scheduler, click the link labeled **Click here to set up schedule frequency**.
- 7 In the Job Scheduler dialog, select the desired frequency and enter the associated details. Refer to [related information on page 392](#) for guidance.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Repeat [Step 3](#) to add another schedule for the same group.

## Standard Time Transitions

If the trigger time for a particular scheduled task run happens to fall during the transition time between daylight saving time (DST) and standard time (ST), the interval for that run will be different than expected.

Time zones that honor DST have a period of time that occurs twice during the transition from DST to ST. For example, in the US when changing from DST to ST, this hour occurs once while the DST is still in effect and again after switching to the Standard Time. The transition period occurs at 2 a.m., therefore 1:00:00 a.m. - 1:59:59 a.m. occurs twice (1:00:00 a.m. PDT - 1:59:59 a.m. PDT and 1:00:00 a.m. PST - 1:59:59 a.m. PST), where 1:00 a.m. PST is 60 minutes after 1:00 a.m. PDT. In this example, if the scheduled task is due to trigger any time between 1:00:00 a.m. - 1:59:59 a.m., the interval for that particular run of the scheduled task will not be as expected.

Similarly, when the time changes from ST to DST, the 1:00:00 a.m. - 1:59:59 a.m. hour does not occur at all. The local time changes directly from 1:00 a.m. to 2:00 a.m. So, if your scheduled task run was scheduled to trigger between 1:00:00 a.m. - 1:59:59 a.m., the interval for that particular run will be off by an hour.

The interval calculation for subsequent scheduled runs do not get affected.

Currently, there are four time zones that are not supported in ESM:

- Kwajalein
- Pacific/Kwajalein
- Pacific/Enderbury
- Pacific/Kiribati

These time zones fall in two countries, Marshall Islands and Kiribati.

## Editing a Report Archiving Schedule

You can change the archiving schedule for report definitions in your Reports resource folders.

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, select the **Reports** tab.
- 2 On the Reports tab, right-click a report and select **Schedule for archiving**, then **Report** or **Delta Report** for delta reports.
- 3 In the Schedule Summary, right-click in the braces { } column and select the **Parameters** option to change report parameters set for the specific scheduled report. To delete a current scheduled archive report, right-click in the braces { } column of an existing schedule and click **Delete**.
- 4 To change the interval scheduling of a report, click the report interval button and **Yearly**, **Monthly**, **Weekly**, **Daily**, or **Hourly**, click the date and time buttons.
- 5 If editing within the same time frame, click the **Month**, **Date**, **Day**, **Hour**, **Min**, **AM/PM** buttons to specify changes to the report schedule.
- 6 When you've finished editing the schedule, click **OK**.

## Editing Report Archiving Parameters

You can change the archiving parameters of the report definitions in your Reports resource folders.

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, select the **Reports** tab.
- 2 On the Report Definitions tab, right-click a report and select **Schedule for archiving**, then **Report** or **Delta Report**.
- 3 Right-click in the braces { } column for a scheduled report and select the **Parameters** option.
- 4 In the Report Parameters window, type in the report parameter text fields, if any.  
  
For date and time data fields, such as Detect Time, you can type an actual date value, such as 10/12/2002 8:54:00 AM, or you can use special timestamp variables.
- 5 Select the **E-mail scheduled reports to** check box, and a user from the drop-down menu, to automatically send an e-mail notification when the report is generated.  
  
The user receives an e-mail notification stating that the report has been successfully archived. The e-mail also contains a URL to the report so that the user can view the report from the URL.  
  
The e-mail notification is sent to the e-mail address listed in the user's profile. The recipient must have an e-mail address in their user profile.
- 6 For the Archive Folder text field, click the archive report group button to select where to list the archived report.
- 7 In the Archive Report Selector, select a report archive group and click **OK**.
- 8 In the Report Parameters window, click **Update**.
- 9 For delta reports, in the Schedule Summary, right-click **Default** under the **Param Set 2** column and select **Edit Parameters** to change the second parameter set, if any. Click **Update**.
- 10 In the Schedule Summary, click **Close**.

## Deleting a Report Archiving Schedule

You can remove individual archiving schedules for reports in the Scheduled Tasks list.

- 1 In the Reports resource tree, select the **Reports** tab.
- 2 On the Report Definitions tab, right-click a scheduled report (showing a calendar icon) and choose **Schedule for archiving**, then **Report** or **Delta Report**.
- 3 On the line for the schedule to remove, right-click in the braces { } column and choose **Delete**.
- 4 In the confirmation dialog box, click **Delete** to remove it or **Cancel** to let it remain.





## Chapter 12

# Rules Authoring

---

This section explains how to use rules to correlate events in your environment.

[“Designing Rules” on page 397](#)  
[“Rule Types” on page 398](#)  
[“Managing Rules” on page 399](#)  
[“Managing Rule Groups” on page 401](#)  
[“Specifying Rule Conditions” on page 403](#)  
[“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414](#)  
[“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#)  
[“Enabling and Disabling Rules” on page 429](#)  
[“Importing and Exporting Rules” on page 431](#)  
[“Scheduling Rules” on page 431](#)  
[“Verifying Rule\(s\) with Events” on page 439](#)  
[“Deploying Real-time Rules” on page 442](#)  
[“Loading Rules” on page 443](#)

## Designing Rules

Creating rules involves defining the events the rule evaluates, thresholds, and actions you want the rule to trigger. Conditions define which events trigger the rule, thresholds determine when a condition is met and a correlation event is generated, and actions state what responses are taken when a correlation event is generated. To define rule events and conditions, thresholds, and actions, begin by determining:

- Which event occurrences do I want to be aware of? This determines the rule's **events** and **conditions**.
- How many times do I want the event or events to occur and within what time frame? This determines the rule's **threshold**.
- What actions should automatically occur when an event is generated? When should those actions occur? This determines the rule's **actions**.

Before you create rules, determine which events you want to monitor. Be specific and as clear as possible. For example, monitoring all events from a Cisco Router would not be as useful as monitoring all denied events from that Cisco Router. In addition, the more conditions you add to a rule, the more specific the rule becomes. Use the ArcSight data

fields to guide you in selecting and specifying conditions. For more information, see [“Data Fields” on page 837](#).

## Rule Types

ESM provides the following rule types:

Rule Types	Description
Standard rules	Include all features for rule creation such as multiple event conditions, field aggregation, and rule actions based on different triggers. You can convert a standard rule to a lightweight or pre-persistent rule ( <a href="#">“Converting Rule Types” on page 401</a> ).
Lightweight rules	<p>Include a small set of features for rule creation for faster and simpler rule processing.</p> <p><b>A lightweight rule:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Has only one event condition (no joins).</li><li>• Does not aggregate data fields, therefore, the Aggregation tab is disabled.</li><li>• Executes a specific action only on the <b>On Every Event</b> trigger.</li><li>• Only allows active list and session list actions.</li><li>• Does not generate correlation or audit events, although failures are logged.</li><li>• Is processed earlier in the flow than standard rules.</li><li>• Can be converted to other rule types (<a href="#">“Converting Rule Types” on page 401</a>)</li></ul>

Rule Types	Description
Pre-persistence rules	<p>Include a small set of features to enable basic event analysis and the setting of various event fields, therefore enriching these base events, before the events themselves are persisted in CORR-Engine. A typical usage for this rule type would be for threat-level formula calculations.</p> <p><b>A pre-persistence rule:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has only one event condition (no joins).</li> <li>• Does not aggregate data fields, therefore, the Aggregation tab is disabled.</li> <li>• Executes a specific action only on the <b>On Every Event</b> trigger.</li> <li>• Can only perform the <b>Set Event Field</b> action. The action is applied to incoming base events. Values of the modified fields are available to standard and lightweight real-time rules, which run during the post-persistence processing flow.</li> <li>• Does not generate correlation or audit events, although failures are logged.</li> <li>• Is processed earlier in the flow than lightweight and standard rules.</li> <li>• Cannot be scheduled or replayed, since events occurring in the past have already been persisted and can no longer be modified.</li> <li>• Can be converted to other rule types (see <a href="#">“Converting Rule Types” on page 401</a>).</li> </ul>

## Managing Rules

Like other resources, the rule-management tasks include creating, changing, deleting, and deploying them.

### Creating Rules

Before creating rules, determine which events you want to monitor. Be as specific and as clear as possible. For example, monitoring all events from a Cisco Router would not be as useful as monitoring all **denied** events from that Cisco Router. In addition, the more conditions you add to a rule, the more specific the rule becomes.

Use the ArcSight data fields to guide you in selecting and specifying conditions.

#### To create a rule:

- 1 From the Navigator Panel drop-down menu, choose **Rules**.
- 2 Right-click a group and choose **New Rule | <Rule Type>**. See [“Rule Types” on page 398](#) for guidelines on rule types.
- 3 Required: On the **Attributes** tab, type a name in the **Name** text field.  
  
The name is restricted to 25 characters. Be as descriptive as possible. The name is stored in the Event Name data field and appears in the Event Name column on the grid view.
- 4 Optional: Enter data in the Common and Assign sections, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes

sections, including the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

- 5 Define conditions on the **Conditions** tab following instructions in [“Specifying Rule Conditions” on page 403](#). Note that for non-standard rules, there are restrictions. See [“Rule Types” on page 398](#) for details.
- 6 For standard rules, add correlating events, specify thresholds and time windows to qualify events, and aggregate incoming event data based on matching fields on the **Aggregation** tab. See [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#), and [“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414](#) for more information.



The Aggregation tab is enabled for standard rules only.

- 7 Click **OK** to save and close the rule. You can also click **Apply** to save changes but keep the rule open.

## Editing Rules



If you are changing a standard rule to other types, follow the instructions in [“Converting Rule Types” on page 401](#).

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Attributes** tab to edit the rule name and other attributes. To change the Rule Type, see [“Converting Rule Types” on page 401](#) for specific details.
- 3 Select the **Conditions** tab to edit events, logical operators, and condition statements as described in Common Condition Editor.
- 4 Select the Aggregation tab to edit. See [“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414](#) for details.
- 5 After editing the conditions and other elements of the rule, click **OK** to save and close the rule. You can also click **Apply** to save changes but keep the rule open.

## Moving or Copying Rules



You cannot move or copy a pre-persistence rule into a rule group that has been scheduled.

- 1 In the **Rules** view, navigate to a rule and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Select **Move** to move the rule, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the rule, or **Link** to create a copy of the rule that is linked to the original rule.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the rule that is not affected when the original rule is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the rule that is linked to the original rule. Therefore, if you edit a linked rule, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked rules, you can either delete the selected rule or all linked rule copies.

## Converting Rule Types

Converting a lightweight or pre-persistence rule to standard rule is straightforward: On the rule's Inspect/Edit panel, Attributes tab, choose the standard rule type. This makes the features for standard rules available. You then add join conditions, change aggregation settings, and define actions on various types of triggers as required by the new standard rule.

Converting a standard rule to lightweight or pre-persistence rule requires that the rule must first meet the converted rule's requirements; otherwise, the rule you are converting will not be saved. See ["Rule Types" on page 398](#) for each type's features.

### To convert a standard rule to a different rule type:

- 1 Make sure your standard rule already complies with the target rule type's requirements. Refer to ["Rule Types" on page 398](#) for guidance.
- 2 In the Rules resource tree, right-click the standard rule you want to convert and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 3 In the Rules Editor, select the **Attributes** tab and change the Rule Type to **Lightweight Rule** or **Pre-Persistence Rule**.  
The Aggregation tab is disabled.
- 4 In the **Conditions** tab, make sure that only one condition exists.
- 5 In the **Actions** tab:
  - a Make sure that **On Every Event** is active and the other triggers are inactive.
  - b For conversion to lightweight rules, make sure that the action is on an active or session list. For conversion to pre-persistence rules, the only allowed action is Set Event Field. Disable other actions.

The old settings of this former standard rule (aggregation thresholds, de-activated triggers, and disabled actions) will be restored when the rule is re-converted back to standard.

- 6 Save your converted rule.

## Deleting Rules

- 1 In the **Rules** resource tree of the Navigator panel, right-click a rule and choose **Delete Rule**.
- 2 Click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog box.

## Managing Rule Groups

Rule groups are created to store similar groups or rules in a single location. Groups can be created within groups to meet enterprise needs. You can have a combination of standard and lightweight rules in the same rule group. Because you cannot schedule pre-persistence rules, keep them in the same rule group which you would not schedule.

Move and copy groups and rules on the Rules resource tree with the drag and drop functionality. If you delete a group, the rules within that group are also deleted.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

---

## Creating Rule Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Rules**.
- 2 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.  
A New Group text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 Type the new group's name in the text field.
- 4 Press **Enter**.
- 5 Refer to [“Scheduling Rules” on page 431](#) to add entries in the group's **Jobs** tab.

## Renaming Rule Groups

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the text field, enter the group's new name.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Editing Rule Groups

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Optionally, you can designate owners of a rule, and specify user groups that are notified of rules changes.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Refer to [“Scheduling Rules” on page 431](#) to add or edit entries in the group's **Jobs** tab.

## Moving or Copying Rule Groups

- 1 In the **Rules** resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting Rule Groups

- 1 In the **Rules** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Specifying Rule Conditions

After creating a new rule or opening an existing rule for editing, you can specify conditions on which a rule triggers, based on specific event, filter, asset, or vulnerability criteria. Like other ArcSight analysis components, rules editing uses the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#). See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under “[Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#)” on page 818. You cannot save a rule without specifying at least one condition.

## Creating New Rule Conditions

The Conditions tab provides a default event alias, **event1**, which you edit and to which you add condition statements for evaluation. Standard rules support multiple event conditions while lightweight rules support only one event condition.



Standard rules can have multiple event conditions, while lightweight and pre-persistence rules are limited to only one.

### To specify rule conditions:

- 1 In the Rules Editor, select the **Conditions** tab.
- 2 To edit the event alias (give it a name), right-click **event1** and select **Edit**. Type a new name for the alias in the text field and click **OK**.

Since rules can have numerous events, aliases should be unique and descriptive. For example, if monitoring Cisco Router denied events, **Cisco Router denied** could be the alias name. The name appears as a branch under the **Event conditions** tree.

- 3 Add a condition statement to the event alias using the Common Conditions Editor table (usage rules and features of this editor are described in “[Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#)” on page 818):
  - a Locate the event name you want to use in the condition statement.
  - b Choose the logical operator (for example, =) to be used for comparing values. If you need help, see “[Logical Operators](#)” on page 920 for descriptions.
  - c Choose the value from the drop-down list under the Condition column to use as the basis for comparison.



If you want to use a global variable for the condition statement, you can attach one by clicking the +/- **Global Variables** button and then choosing the global variable from the selector dialog. The selected global variable will be added to the Common Conditions Editor table at the bottom. See “[Global Variables](#)” on page 918 for more information.

- 4 For standard rules only: To add more event aliases, select **Event conditions** and click the **New Event Definition** button; or right-click **Event conditions** and choose **New Event Definition**. Type an event name in the **Alias** text field and click **OK**.

If you have more than one event alias, a **Matching Event** branch appears. This enables you to define a join relationship on the multiple event aliases. For more information on joining two events, see [“Creating Matching or Join Conditions” on page 407](#). Other important references are [“Logical Operators” on page 920](#) and [“Conditions” on page 833](#).

If you are working on a non-standard rule, you will not be able to save the rule if you have more than one event condition.

- 5 On the Conditions tab, click **Apply**.

The rule with the default threshold and action is created and listed in the Rules resource tree.

For standard rules only, see [“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414](#) for aggregation time-frame options.

## Adding Filter Conditions

You add filters to rules as new conditions. It is usually more desirable to use an existing filter resource, if possible.

If there are other conditions in the rule, you choose whether to tie them to the filter condition with AND, OR, or NOT logical operators. For more information on filters, see [Chapter 7, Filtering Events, on page 175](#).

### To add a filter condition to a rule:

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Conditions** tab and select the event alias to which you want to add a filter condition.
- 3 Click the **And**, **Or**, or **Not** button; or right-click a logical operator and choose **New Logical Operator**, then **And**, **Or**, or **Not**.
- 4 Right-click the logical operator and select **New Matches Filter Condition**.
- 5 In the Filter Selector, select a filter and click **OK**.
- 6 On the Conditions tab, click **OK**.

The Common Condition Editor's buttons and commands are discussed further in [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#).

See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#).

## Adding Asset Conditions

Asset conditions state whether your enterprise assets are targets or sources of events. An asset condition states “if an event occurs and the selected asset is the source or target, generate a correlation event.” For more information on assets, see [Chapter 23, Modeling the Network, on page 695](#).

### To add an asset condition to a rule:

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Conditions** tab.



- 3 Click the **And**, **Or**, or **Not** button, or right-click a logical operator and choose **New Logical Operator**, then **And**, **Or**, or **Not**.

If there are existing conditions, you can tie them to the asset condition with either the AND, OR, or NOT logic operator. If AND is used, all the existing conditions and the asset condition must occur in the event. If OR is used, either the existing conditions or the asset condition must occur. If NOT is used, all but the asset condition must occur.

- 4 Select the logical operator and click the **Assets** button or right-click the logical operator and select **New Assets Condition**.
- 5 In the **Assets** panel below, select **Source Asset ID** to monitor if an asset is the source of an event or **Target Asset ID** to monitor if an asset is the target.
- 6 Select an asset or group and click **Apply**.

The asset condition appears in the **Correlate** section and is tied to any existing condition statements with the logic operator selected.

- 7 On the **Conditions** tab, click **OK**.

See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under “**Common Conditions Editor (CCE)**” on page 818.

## Adding Vulnerability Conditions

You can use an existing enterprise vulnerability to create a rule condition. A vulnerability condition states “if an event occurs with the vulnerability selected, generate a correlation event”. For more information on vulnerabilities, see [Chapter 23, Modeling the Network](#), on page 695.

### To add a vulnerability condition to a rule:

- 1 In the **Rules** resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the **Rules Editor**, select the **Conditions** tab.
- 3 Click the **And**, **Or**, or **Not** button or right-click a logical operator and choose **New Logical Operator**, then **And**, **Or**, or **Not**.

If there are existing conditions, you can tie them to the vulnerability condition with either the AND, OR, or NOT logic operator. If AND is used, all the existing conditions and the vulnerability condition must occur in the event. If OR is used, either the existing conditions or the vulnerability condition must occur. If NOT is used, all but the vulnerability condition must occur.

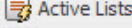
- 4 Choose the logical operator and click the **Has Vulnerability** button or right-click the logical operator and choose **New Has Vulnerability**.
- 5 In the **Vulnerability Selector**, select a vulnerability and click **OK**.

The vulnerability appears on the **Conditions** tab and is tied to any existing condition statements with the logic operator selected.

- 6 On the **Conditions** tab, click **OK**.

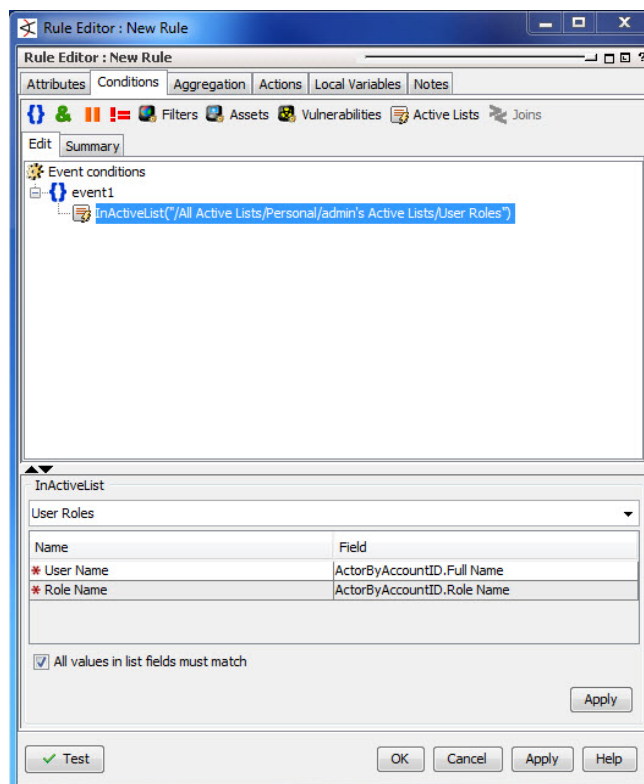
See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under “**Common Conditions Editor (CCE)**” on page 818.

## Adding Active List (InActiveList) Conditions

Use the Active List selector  to identify a particular active list that contains the argument for a condition. This condition evaluates whether an item or list of items is in an active list. You can use this to map a field or a global variable in the event schema to a corresponding field in an active list. It does not evaluate items in other non-event schemas (such as cases or assets).

When the InActiveList condition is used to compare values in two lists, an additional option is shown where you can specify whether **All values in list field must match**.

- If **All values in list field must match** is checked (selected), the Active List condition evaluates to true only if all values in both lists match (that is, all values must be in both lists for the condition to be true).
- If “All values in list field must match” is *not checked* (de-selected), then if any field matches (is in both lists), the condition statement evaluates to true. (This is the default behavior for queries.)



For example, suppose you have a fields-based multi-mapped active list that has User Name as a key field and accepts entries with multiple roles for the same user in the Role Name field.

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' window for 'Active List: User Roles'. The 'Attributes' tab is selected. The 'Active List' section contains a table with the following data:

Attribute	Value
Name	User Roles
Optimize Data	<input type="checkbox"/>
Capacity (x1000)	10
TTL Days	1
TTL Hours	0
TTL Minutes	0
Allow multi-mappings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Partially cached	<input type="checkbox"/>
Time partitioned	<input type="checkbox"/>
Case-Sensitivity	Case-Sensitive

Below the 'Active List' section, there is a 'Common' section with the following fields:

Field	Value
Resource ID	HQweuWkABACADWXRw-xdg==
External ID	
Alias (Display Name)	
Description	

At the bottom, there is a 'Data' section with a table:

Name	Type	Sub-type	Key-field
User Name	String		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Role Name	String		<input type="checkbox"/>

Then suppose you set up an Active List (InActiveList) rule condition to compare the value of Role Name to a list type string field, like `ActorByAccountID.FullName`. If you then get list entries in your active list (for example, user "Samantha Stevens" with roles as both "Administrator" and "Development Lead"), then your rule results in a comparison of two lists:

- ◆ The list of Samantha Steven's roles
- ◆ The `ActorByAccountID.FullName` list

This product ships with several global variables that deal with actor-based lists. See the ArcSight Solution Guide for IdentityView for the list.



- The InActiveList operator option evaluates single-value attributes and multi-value attributes. The field you map could return multiple values (for example, a user could have multiple roles). In the case of multi-value attributes, if any one value matches, the condition evaluates to true.
- A condition that tests for whether all or any values in a list match is only available to specify on in-memory operations (for example, in rules, filters, data monitors).

See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under "Common Conditions Editor (CCE)" on page 818.

## Creating Matching or Join Conditions

This topic applies to standard rules only. It provides examples for creating matching or join conditions and suggestions for optimizing the use of resources to process such rules.

A matching or join condition is a condition statement that joins two data fields with the Matching or Join condition logic operator on the Conditions tab. Creating matching or join conditions using data fields provides the flexibility of creating conditions without knowing the specific data field's values. You can create the following join data field conditions:

- Same data field for two events: `EventOne <data field A> <logic operator> EventTwo <data field A>`. For example, `EventOne Source Address =`

EventTwo Source Address. In this example, both event data fields must have the same value. This rule is useful when monitoring activity from an unknown Source Address that is generating numerous events.

- Different data fields for two events: EventOne <data field A> <logic operator> EventTwo <data field B>. For example, EventOne Source Address = EventTwo Target Address. In this example, the Source Address of the first event must equal the Target Address of the second event.
- Different data fields for the same event: EventOne <data field A> <logic operator> EventOne <data field B>. For example, EventOne Source Address = EventOne Target Address. In this example, the Source Address must equal the Target Address of the same event.



There is a relatively high memory cost for join rules with low-selectivity join conditions (such as same source IP or same target IP). Just like queries in SQL, the more selective the conditions (the conditions on the individual events as well as the join conditions), the less expensive it is to execute, because fewer conditions match.

You can dramatically reduce the memory consumption by the correlation engine, by as much as 50% in some cases, through some techniques. When authoring a rule you should order conditions on the events to be correlated (or joined) by placing the most restrictive conditions first; for example, adding join conditions like event1's Source Address = event2's Source Address Or event2's Detect Time = event1's Detect Time.

If your condition specifies more than one event aliases, you can set any or all of them with the **Consume After Match** flag. This means that if a matching event is found and the rule is triggered, the rule will not correlate the event any further. Without the Consume After Match flag, the event is kept in working memory even after a matching event is found and the rule has been triggered. The event alias continues to be combined with events matching other aliases until the event itself expires.

If enabled, the Consume flag appears next to the event alias on the Conditions tab:

EventOne (Consume after match)



Lightweight and pre-persistence rules have only one event, therefore, the Consume After Match option is not available.

### To create a rule with matches or joins (with two or more events):

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Conditions** tab.
- 3 Select the **Matching Event** branch and select **New Logical Operator**, then **And**, **Or**, or **Not**. Then add the second event that is tied to the first event.

When adding join conditions, you need to decide how the new condition ties to the existing events in the rule. If you use **And**, the new join condition must occur, in addition to the existing events, to trigger the rule. If you use **Or**, the new join condition or the existing events must occur. If you use **Not**, all but the new join condition must occur. The logical operator appears as a branch under Joins.

- 4 Click the **Join Condition** button or right-click the logical operator and select **New Join Condition**.

A condition statement appears, displaying event, data field, and logic operator text fields. These fields are combined to create `<event> <data field> <logic operator> <event> <data field>` condition statements. For example, if monitoring for the same Source Address data field in EventOne and EventTwo, the condition statement would be `EventOne Source Address = EventTwo Source Address`.

- 5 Select one of the following join data field conditions to use in the following steps:
  - ◆ When monitoring for the same data fields for two events use `EventOne <data field A> <logic operator> EventTwo <data field A>`.
  - ◆ When monitoring for different data fields for two events use `EventOne <data field A> <logic operator> EventTwo <data field B>`.
- 6 In the text fields, choose an event and data field from the drop-down menus.  
 Select data fields that you want to monitor but for which you don't have values. For more information, see ["Data Fields" on page 837](#).
- 7 Choose a logic operator from the drop-down menu.
- 8 Choose an event and data field from the drop-down menus.
- 9 Optionally right-click and select **Consume After Match** on one, some, or all of the event aliases.  
 Doing so reduces the number of rule firings by using the matching event in only one join.
- 10 Click **OK**.  
 The join data field condition appears as a branch under the Matching Event logical operator.
- 11 On the Conditions tab, click **OK**.

See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under ["Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)" on page 818](#).

## Editing or Deleting Join Data Field Conditions

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and select **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Conditions** tab and do the following:
  - ◆ To edit the logical operator, right-click the logical operator and select **Edit** or select the logical operator and press **Enter**. In the text field, select a logical operator and click **OK**.
  - ◆ To edit the condition statement, right-click the condition statement and select **Edit** or select the condition statement and press **Enter**. In the text field, make edits and click **OK**. For more information, see ["Creating Rules" on page 399](#).
  - ◆ To delete the Matching Event event, right-click **Matching Event** and select **Delete**. In the dialog box, click **Yes**. The event, its logical operators, and condition statements are deleted.
  - ◆ To delete the logical operator, right-click the logical operator and select **Delete**. In the dialog box, click **Yes**. The logical operator and all its condition statements are deleted.
  - ◆ To delete the condition statement, right-click the condition statement and select **Delete**. In the dialog box, click **Yes**.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Negating Event Conditions

This information applies to standard rules.

In addition to monitoring event conditions that occur, you can monitor event conditions if they *don't* occur by negating these conditions. For example, if you want to monitor badge scans (for which you defined an event alias called `BadgeScan`) before an application is accessed (for which you defined an event alias called `Login`), you negate the `BadgeScan` event and set the rule to trigger if `BadgeScan` does not happen *before* the `Login` event is reported. For such a rule, the events must have had happened (they are past events) before the rule is triggered.

You can also negate a *future* event condition. For example, consider these sequence of events you want to monitor:

- 1 A server reboots (`ServerReboot` event).
- 2 The server successfully comes up and is available again (`ServerUp` event).
- 3 If the server does not come up, you want to be notified.

In this case, you will negate the `ServerUp` event condition so that the rule is triggered if that event is *not received* (the server does not come up from a reboot) on the same device. A **time out** property is used in conjunction with negating an event condition. If the negated event is not received within the specified timeout, then the rule is triggered. For purposes of discussion, we will use the term “positive events” for events that are not negated.

### To negate event conditions:



Note

Before following the procedures, make sure the rule has multiple event conditions so you can negate at least one. To create event conditions, see [“Creating Rules” on page 399](#).

---

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Conditions** tab.
- 3 Right-click an event alias and select **Negated**.
- 4 In the dialog, enter a Time Out value and specify the time unit in Seconds, Minutes, or Hours. Then click **OK**.

Time Out is the amount of time to wait between the occurrence of the positive event and the non-occurrence of the negated event, after which the rule is triggered.



#### Tips on using Time Out:

- For the rule to fire, the [Alias Expiration](#) time for all positive event conditions must be greater than the negated event condition's time out value.
- Once you have saved the Time Out value, you cannot change it unless you right-click the negated event, uncheck Negated, right-click the same event, and select Negated again.
- [Timeout](#) values are cumulative. The rule will wait for the sum of the event timeouts before firing. See also related information in [Timeout aggregation criteria](#).
- If a rule has multiple negated event aliases, set the timeout of one negated alias to **three minutes**, then set the remaining timeout values to zero. For example, consider a rule with three event aliases: event1 is positive, event2 is negated with timeout = 1 minute, and event3 is negated with timeout = 2 minutes. The rule will not trigger until at least 3 minutes after event1 has been matched. Moreover, if the event expiration time (by default the aggregation time window) is only 2 minutes, the rule will not trigger at all because event1 will be removed from memory prior to the cumulative timeout.

On the Conditions tab, the negated event is preceded by an exclamation point (!) and the time out period appears next to the event. The following example shows a five-minute time out period.

```
!<EventName> (Time Out: 5m)
```

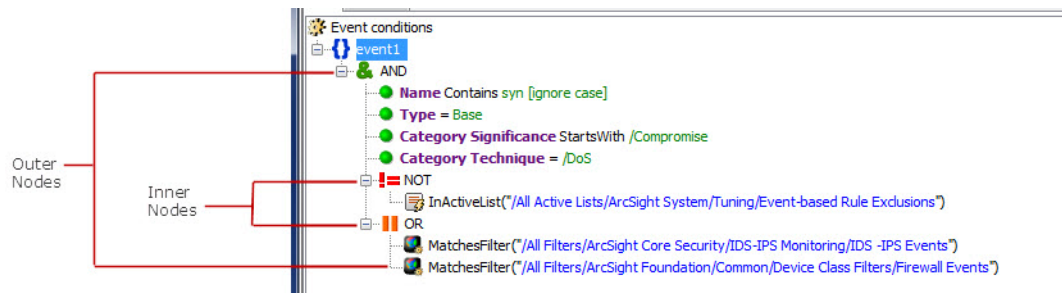
- 5 To remove the Negated flag, right-click the negated event and select **Negated** again.

See also [Condition Tree Command Buttons](#), [Condition Tree Context Menu Commands](#), and [Adding Conditions](#) under “[Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#)” on page 818.

## Optimizing the Evaluation of Event Conditions

This information is written for advanced content authors. It describes how to automate the optimization of event conditions in all rule types to reduce impact on CPU usage. (The settings describe here also impact event-based and correlation data monitors. See “[Optimizing the Evaluation of Data Monitors’ Event Filters](#)” on page 118 for information.)

Evaluating event conditions is one of the most resource-intensive operation in event processing. ESM evaluates event conditions in the sequence they appear on the rule's Conditions tab. The following example shows event conditions:



As far as resource usage is concerned, there are general guidelines on how to order these conditions from the most economical to the most expensive, and that is, put the least

costly condition on top. However, this may not be enough; you must also consider the TRUE/FALSE rate and whether you are using OR or AND operators.

## Automating Condition Optimization

**Requirement:** To optimize the evaluation of event conditions, rules must be deployed in the Console's Real-time Rules.

ESM provides the ability to have event conditions evaluated and if necessary, re-sequence the conditions to be evaluated by adding this property setting in the `server.properties` file:

```
rule.dm.optimize.evaluation=true
```

This setting automates the process of evaluating and optimizing all of your deployed rules and data monitors. The optimization process occurs in memory and will leave your resources intact. If there are changes, for example, real-time rules are updated, or the user de-activates and then re-activates the rule, optimization runs again.

The following line in `server.log` denotes the end of optimization:

```
End of conditions optimization in <n> events
```



Refer to the following documents for more information:

- For detailed instructions on how to add settings to the `server.properties` file, go to the ESM Administrator's Guide's Configuration section. Refer to the topic, "Managing and Changing Properties File Settings."
  - For information on the `server.log` file, see the ESM Administrator's Guide, Configuration chapter. Refer to the topic, "Configuring Manager Logging."
- 

## Tracing the Optimization

The tracing feature described here is optional; however, if you want to use this feature, the condition optimization setting must be turned on first. The tracing feature enables you to capture information about how your rules were optimized. The information is stored in `server.log`.

To use the tracing feature, add this property setting in the `server.properties` file:

```
rule.dm.trace.optimize.evaluation=true
```

With this setting, the original sequence of conditions and how these conditions are re-ordered (optimized) are written in the `server.log` file.

To locate the information in the log file, search for the rule's name. The following example shows the log statements that include the evaluated rule's URI (shown to be under Real-Time Rules) and a sampling of the profiled values. The profile describes the average time in nanoseconds a specific condition took to process. The condition's position is indicated by an index starting with position 0. The profile in the log indicates that the costliest condition at Index 4 took an average of 2,375 nanoseconds over a sampling of 23:



## Standard Rule

```
[2014-06-25 10:15:56,630] [INFO]
[default.com.arcsight.common.simplerulesengine.engine.d] Optimizing /All Rules/Real-time Rules/Intrusion Monitoring/Attack Monitoring/DoS/SYN Flood Detected by IDS or Firewall
Profiled values are
[ Index=2, avgTime=366 ,numSamples=23, Index=3, avgTime=407 ,numSamples=23, Index=1, avgTime=434 ,numSamples=23, Index=0, avgTime=928 ,numSamples=22, Index=5, avgTime=1793 ,numSamples=23, Index=4, avgTime=2375 ,numSamples=23]
```

The following lines indicate the order of conditions (denoted as nodes) as originally defined. Red numbers correspond to the index:

## Original nodes are

```
Node : name Contains "syn" 0
Node : type EQ "Base" 1
Node : categorySignificance StartsWith "/Compromise" 2
Node : categoryTechnique EQ "/DoS" 3
Node : Not (<deviceEventClassId, name, attackerZoneName, attackerAddress,4 targetZoneName, targetAddress>InActiveList( "H7nDOZB0BABC337GCqa7qw==:/All Active Lists/ArcSight System/Tuning/Event-based Rule Exclusions::" ) )
Node : ( ( categoryDeviceGroup StartsWith "/IDS" And type EQ "Base" And 5 categoryDeviceGroup NE "/IDS/Host/Antivirus" ) Or categoryDeviceGroup EQ "/Firewall" )
```

The following lines indicate the optimized order of conditions (denoted as nodes):

## Optimized nodes are

```
Node : categorySignificance StartsWith "/Compromise" Moved from position 2
Node : categoryTechnique EQ "/DoS" Moved from position 3
Node : type EQ "Base" Moved from position 1
Node : name Contains "syn" Moved from position 0
Node : ( ( categoryDeviceGroup StartsWith "/IDS" And type EQ "Base" And categoryDeviceGroup NE "/IDS/Host/Antivirus" ) Or categoryDeviceGroup EQ "/Firewall" ) Moved from position 5
Node : Not (<deviceEventClassId, name, attackerZoneName, attackerAddress, targetZoneName, targetAddress>InActiveList( "H7nDOZB0BABC337GCqa7qw==:/All Active Lists/ArcSight System/Tuning/Event-based Rule Exclusions::" ) ) Moved from position 4
```

Observe how nodes were moved up and down to indicate which conditions are evaluated first. Index 4, originally profiled as the costliest, is now evaluated last.

**To save a rule in its optimized state:**

If you are a content author, you can leverage this log information to modify your rule permanently. This procedure is optional.

- 1 Refer to the log and re-ordering the rule conditions in the rule accordingly.
- 2 Saving the rule in its optimized state.

You may then disable the tool, described in [Disabling the Optimization Feature](#).

## Disabling the Optimization Feature

Optimization runs only once on all existing rules and the profiles for the evaluated rules are stored in the log file. Each time you change anything in the rules engine, such as adding, updating, disabling, and re-enabling a deployed rule, evaluation and optimization runs

again. When the feature is no longer needed, you can change the optimization setting to `false` in `server.properties`.

## Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation

The topic on thresholds and aggregation applies to standard rules. Thresholds are defined as an aggregate number of occurrences within a time span. When a threshold is met, the rule triggers an action.

The Aggregation tab is enabled for standard rules only. It is disabled for lightweight and pre-persistence rules.



Caution

If you set a rule to aggregate over fields of a **multi-mapped active list** or **overlapping session list**, the rule might fire multiple times, once for each field value in the corresponding list entries. The Console displays a warning to this effect when such a list field is selected in the Aggregation tab.

We recommend that you do not set rules to aggregate over multi-mapped active list or overlapping session list fields, *and also* add entries to the same list in a rule action ([“Adding a Rule Action” on page 418](#)). Setting *both* aggregation and rule actions to add entries to the same multi-mapped or overlapped list can cause the number of triggered rules to increase to an unmanageable level.

See also [“Allow multi-mappings” on page 513](#) in Active List topics and [“Overlapping Entries” on page 524](#) in Session List topics.

## Setting or Changing Rule Thresholds

- 1 In the Rules Editor, select the **Aggregation** tab.
- 2 In the **Number of Matches** field, enter a number if you want more than one matching event.
- 3 In the **Time Frame** field, enter an appropriate value and choose a time unit.
- 4 If you want to aggregate on the basis of certain fields' content being distinct, click **Add** under the **Aggregate only if these fields are unique** pane to select the fields to use. Select fields from global variables, field sets, and local variables.



Tip

Fields are *unique* only when the combined value of all fields is unique. For example, suppose you wanted to aggregate on three fields: Event Name, Event Message, and Category Outcome, with a threshold of two matches. If you received two events both with values of Failed Login, Attempt, and Failure for these fields, respectively, these events *would not* be aggregated.

However, if you received only one event like the first example, and another with values of Failed Login, Attempt, and **Success**, these two events *would be* aggregated because the combined value is not the same for the given threshold number of events.

Aggregating on unique fields is applicable when you want to monitor widespread conditions, such as an attack on ten unique systems.

You can use the rule action to set an event field with a unique aggregation field's value. See [Set Event Field](#) for details.

- 5 If you want to aggregate on the basis of certain fields' content being identical, click **Add** under the **Aggregate only if these fields are identical** pane to select the fields to use. Select fields from global variables, field sets, and local variables.

**6** Click **OK**.

The choices you make are expressed as a conditional statement in the **Summary** panel.

### Examples of Grouping Unique or Identical Field Values

You can use aggregation techniques to group unique or identical field values and map them into an active list through the Add to Active List rule action (refer to the rule action, [Active List](#)).

For the examples here, assume there is an event-based active list that maps the following:

IP Address = Source Address

Name = Source User Name

Consider an event set with the following values:

SourceAddress	SourceUserName	TargetAddress
1.2.3.4	sumerian	2.2.2.2
1.2.3.4	agta	2.2.2.2
1.2.3.4	sumerian	2.2.2.2
1.3.5.7	trojan	2.2.2.2
1.3.5.7	agta	2.2.2.2

#### Case 1: Unique aggregation on one field

You would like to capture the unique source addresses. The fields in your Aggregation tab would be something like:

**Aggregate only if these fields are unique:** SourceAddress

**Aggregate only if these fields are identical:** TargetAddress

After aggregation and through the Add to Active List rule action, the active list entries would consist of:

IP Address	Name
1.2.3.4	sumerian
1.3.5.7	agta

#### Case 2: Unique aggregation on two fields

Using the same event set, this time the fields in the Aggregation tab would be:

**Aggregate only if these fields are unique:** SourceAddress, SourceUserName

**Aggregate only if these fields are identical:** TargetAddress

With the Add to Active List rule action, the active list entries would consist of:

IP Address	Name
1.2.3.4	sumerian

IP Address	Name
1.2.3.4	agta
1.3.5.7	trojan
1.3.5.7	agta

## Aggregation Time Criteria

The ArcSight Console provides time-evaluation criteria that can affect event-occurrence aggregation and rule-triggering. You apply these to rules through the Aggregation tab and the statement panel of the Conditions tab.

### Aggregation Time Criteria

Criteria	Application
Time Frame	<p>Set on the <b>Aggregation</b> tab, <b>Time Frame</b> establishes the time span for occurrence aggregation. Event-occurrence aggregation is always controlled by Time Frame. Secondly, Time Frame becomes the default for global and alias expiration time, if these are not set separately.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Rule Action trigger <a href="#">On Time Unit</a> can be set in conjunction with the Aggregation Time Frame to limit the number of times a rule is triggered. (See <a href="#">related information on page 421</a>.)</p>
Global Expiration	<p>Set on the <b>Conditions</b> tab, a global expiration applies to an entire rule. This is the amount of time that qualifying events for all aliases are retained in memory for evaluation, based on Manager receipt-time. Setting an alias expiration overrides a global expiration, if present. To set Global Expiration, right-click the rule's root node (Correlate) in the Conditions tab and choose <b>Set Global Expiration Time</b>.</p>
Alias Expiration	<p>Set on the <b>Conditions</b> tab, an alias expiration applies to a single event alias within a rule. This is the amount of time that a qualifying event for this alias (only) is retained in memory for evaluation, based on Manager receipt time. Setting an alias expiration overrides a global expiration, if present. To set Alias Expiration, right-click an event alias in the Conditions tab and choose <b>Set Alias Expiration Time</b>.</p> <p>An event with an expiration time is displayed with an indicator, for example:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">event1 (Wait time: 5m)</p> <p>To remove the alias expiration time, right-click the event alias and change the time to <b>0</b>.</p>
Matching Time	<p>Set on the <b>Conditions</b> tab, a matching time creates a time-proximity comparison for multiple-alias rules, based on events' actual creation times. When two or more rule-condition aliases are present, a Matching Event node appears. You can right-click this node and choose <b>Set Matching Time</b> to require events' original timestamps (specifically, the event's original end-time) to fall within a range. Note that this time-proximity test is independent of and different than the memory-retention parameter set by global or alias expiration.</p>

---

**Aggregation Time Criteria (Continued)**

Criteria	Application
Timeout	<p>Set on the <b>Conditions</b> tab, you are prompted to set a time out value in seconds, minutes, or hours when you set an event alias to Negated. The time out begins after receipt of all positive events. If a negated event is not received within this time out period, then the rule is triggered.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you have multiple negated events with different time out settings, the longest time out period takes precedence.</p>

---

## Deleting Aggregation from a Rule

- 1 In the Rules resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, select the **Aggregation** tab.
- 3 In the **Aggregate only if these fields are unique** or **Aggregate only if these fields are identical** lists select the fields to delete and click **Remove**.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Creating Rule Actions

The Actions tab of the Rules Editor offers a consistent interface for defining actions to take based on the thresholds of the events that trigger them.

In the Actions tab, you click the buttons in the top row to Add, Edit, or Remove event-action sets for rules. Click **Hide Empty Triggers** to hide or show triggers not currently used.



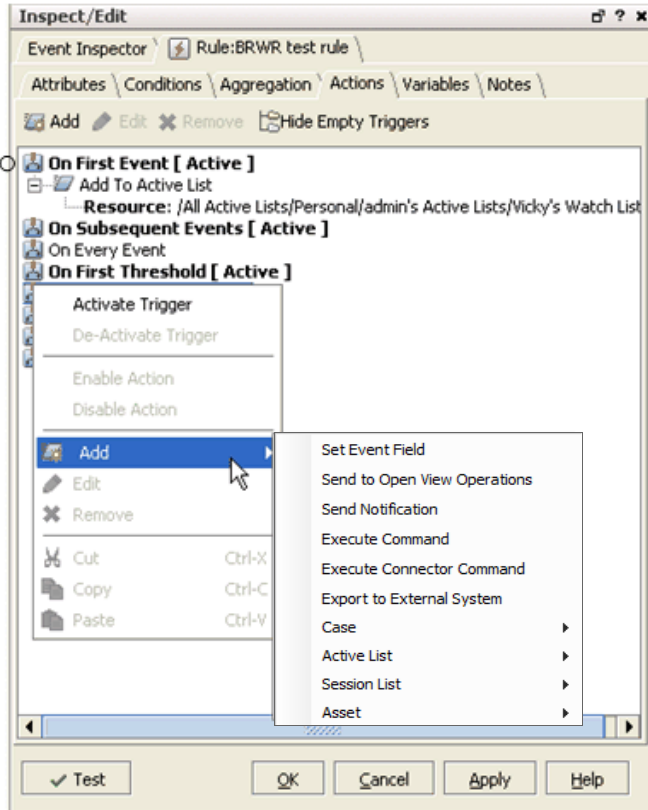
**Note**

Rules, rule triggers, and rule actions can be enabled or disabled at various levels. The rule itself can be enabled or disabled, the trigger on a particular rule can be activated or deactivated, and a rule action associated with a particular trigger can be enabled or disabled. Details on rule triggers and rule actions are described in this topic. For more information and a summary, see also ["Enabling and Disabling Rules" on page 429](#).

---

In the **Rules "Actions"** tab, you can define actions to take based on thresholds of the events that triggered them. In this example, "On First Event" is a trigger which is currently activated. The user has configured an action associated with this trigger to add events to the specified active list.

The Add list is expanded here to show all the actions you can configure for each trigger.



## Adding a Rule Action

You add rule actions by choosing an event threshold trigger, clicking **Add**, choosing an action, then setting the action's parameters.

### To add a rule action:

- 1 Create a new rule (["Creating Rules" on page 399](#)) or edit a rule (["Editing Rules" on page 400](#)).
- 2 In the Rules Editor, click the **Actions** tab.

For standard rules, the first trigger, `On First Event`, is active by default. For other rule types, only the `On Every Event` trigger is active and all other triggers are disabled.

- 3 For standard rules, select an applicable threshold trigger that is active. If the desired trigger is not active, right-click it and select **Activate Trigger**.
- 4 Click **Add** (🔍), then
  - ◆ For standard rules, choose an action from the available options.
  - ◆ For lightweight rules, choose either **Active List** or **Session List**.
  - ◆ For pre-persistence rules, only the **Set Event Field** action is available.

- 5 In the **Add "Action Name" Action** dialog box, set the action's parameters, if present. See ["Rule Actions Reference" on page 422](#) for information about rule actions.
- 6 Click **OK** to add the new action to the rule's threshold trigger.

## Editing a Rule Action

You edit rule actions by choosing an event threshold trigger, clicking **Edit**, then changing the action's parameters.

### To edit a rule action:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click a rule and choose **Edit Rule**.
- 2 In the Rules Editor, click the **Action** tab.
- 3 Select an action below a threshold trigger.
- 4 Click **Edit** to open that action's Add Action dialog box.
- 5 Change the action's parameters as appropriate.



You can use references to Velocity Templates as parameters for rule actions to derive values from event fields and variables. (See ["Velocity Templates" on page 999](#).)

- 6 Optionally, right-click the trigger and choose **De-activate Trigger** to stop generating a descriptive event each time this rule action occurs.
- 7 Click **OK** to record the changes.

## Removing a Rule Action

To remove a rule action, select an action below a trigger in the **Actions** tab and click **Remove**.

## Activating or De-activating a Rule Trigger

When a trigger is activated, all enabled rule actions it contains are triggered when conditions are met.

- To activate a rule trigger, select the trigger in the **Actions** tab and click **Activate Trigger**.
- To de-activate a rule trigger, select the trigger in the **Actions** tab and click **De-Activate Trigger**.

## Enabling or Disabling a Rule Action

For finer-grained control over which rules are triggered when, you can enable or disable a rule action associated with any of the triggers.

- To disable an action, select an action below a trigger in the **Actions** tab and click **Disable**.
- To enable an action, select an action below a trigger in the **Actions** tab and click **Enable**.

## Threshold Triggering Options

Consider the following factors for determining your triggering options:

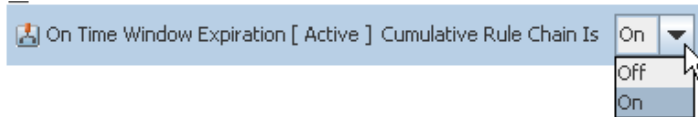
- The minimum threshold value you can set is **1**.
- Triggering actions on every or subsequent occurrence can quickly use up resources. Use these options conservatively.
- For threshold-based triggers, only a single correlation event is triggered on receipt of any single incoming event, even if that event has an aggregated event count high enough to trigger multiple firings. This is by design to prevent excessive firings. For example, if a rule has a threshold of 10, an event with an aggregated event count of 200 triggers only one rule firing (not 20).

**Table 12-1** Trigger Thresholds

Trigger	Threshold
On First Event	The first time rule conditions are met, overriding aggregation threshold settings. This is the default trigger.
On Subsequent Events	The second and subsequent times rule conditions are met (not the first), overriding aggregation threshold settings.
On Every Event	Every time rule conditions are met, overriding aggregation threshold settings. <b>Note:</b> This is the only trigger available for lightweight and pre-persistence rules.
On First Threshold	For the number of matches greater than 1, the first time rule conditions and threshold settings are met.
On Subsequent Thresholds	For the number of matches greater than 1, the second and subsequent times rule conditions and threshold setting are met, not the first.
On Every Threshold	Every time rule conditions and threshold settings are met.



**Table 12-1 Trigger Thresholds (Continued)**

Trigger	Threshold
On Time Unit	<p>Defines an action to take if the given threshold is met in the specified number of minutes specified. (When: On Time Unit: Every &lt;NumberOfMinutes&gt;).</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>With <b>On Time Unit</b> (OTU), the minimum threshold value you must set is <b>2</b>.</li> </ul> <p>This setting can work in conjunction with aggregation to limit the number of times a rule is triggered. For example, aggregation is set to 2 matches in 1 minute and you get 50 matches in 1 minute (depending on how you set the rule actions). If you then specify the rule to trigger at On Time Unit = 1 minute, even if there were 50 matches in 1 minute, the rule would only trigger once per minute when the aggregation threshold is met.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The list of correlated events attached to the On Time Unit trigger excludes the events composing the first threshold. For example, if the threshold is <b>2</b> and <b>5</b> matching events are found, the first <b>2</b> events are excluded and only the remaining <b>3</b> are included in the list of correlated events.</li> </ul> <p>If you want to include the missing first two events for the threshold rule firing, you can additionally use <a href="#">On First Threshold</a> or <a href="#">On Every Threshold</a> in conjunction with On Time Unit. In this case, you will not see the first two events as part of On Time Unit. Instead, the first two events will be part of On First Threshold or On Every Threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Activating On Time Unit does not imply that a rule is triggered on the first event, on subsequent events, or on every event that meets conditions. This specifically sets the rule to trigger for every given On Time Unit <b>if</b> aggregation thresholds are met.</li> <li>Be sure to set On Time Unit to less than or the same value as the Aggregation "Time Frame" (<a href="#">related information on page 416</a>) to prevent getting an extra correlation event for the rule itself.</li> </ul>
On Time Window Expiration	<p>Expiration time of threshold settings</p> <p>When the <b>On Time Window Expiration</b> (TWE) trigger is activated, it includes an option to display a <b>cumulative rule chain</b> (a summary of triggered rules) at the end of the triggered rules list.</p> <p>By default, the cumulative rule chain option on an activated TWE trigger is off. To toggle the option between On and Off, right-click the <b>active</b> TWE trigger and select <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> on the cumulative rule chain option as needed.</p>  <p>When a TWE trigger activates a rule, a correlation event is generated. If the cumulative rule chain option is <i>on</i>, the correlation event contains all the base events from the first threshold to the TWE.</p> <p>If the cumulative rule chain option is <i>off</i>, the generated correlation event contains events from the last threshold to the TWE.</p>

## Rule Actions Reference

For rule actions, consider the following factors:

### Action sequence

Add actions in the order in which you want them to be executed. For example, to set a static value in an active list, first add the action, **Set Event Field**; then add the action, **Add to Active List**.

Note that the Editor display does not always match the internal representation of the specified order of rule actions. However, if you add rule actions in the proper order, that order is maintained internally.

Actions added to a rule show up the first time in the order you add them. You can continue to modify these and they show up in this order. After you click **Apply**, the display reorders the actions so that **Add to Active List** shows up first even though the internal representation has not been modified. Even so, rule actions continue to work as expected unless you change the order. For example, if you delete the Set Event Field action then add it back in after Add to Active List action is already configured, the rule actions are mis-ordered and do not trigger as expected.

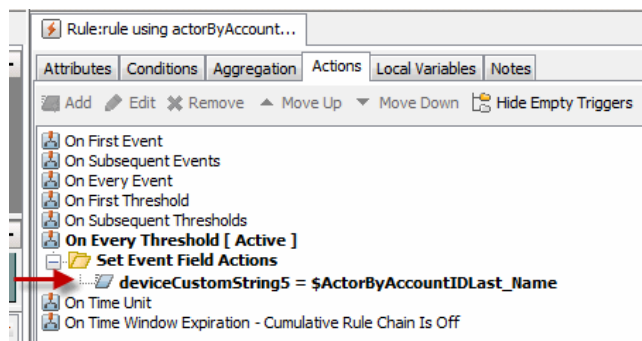
### Use of velocity expressions in rule actions involving lists

You can use references to Velocity Templates as parameters for rule actions to derive values from event fields and variables. (For additional details, see [“Velocity Templates” on page 999](#).)

If you are using velocity expressions to derive values from variables and your rule is acting on an active or session list, perform these extra steps in conjunction with your action:

- 1 Aggregate over the fields of interest on the rule's **Aggregation** tab.
- 2 Use the **Set Event Field** action to set unused fields to the fields in [Step 1](#). Start with the **\$** symbol followed by the exact name of the variable but without any special characters like spaces and dots. For example, if the variable is **ActorByAccountID.Last Name**, you may use something like:

```
$ActorByAccountIDLast_Name
```



- 3 Continue by specifying the list to be acted on by the rule.

### Rule actions for lightweight and pre-persistence rules

If you are creating or editing a lightweight rule, the rule can only act on active and session lists. If you are creating or editing a pre-persistence rule, the only available action is to set an event field.

The following table contains rule actions that are available if you right-click a trigger on a rule's Actions tab and select **Add**.

**Table 12-2 Rule Actions**

Action	Expanded Menu Option	Description
Set Event Field		<p>Fill in a data field value for correlation events generated by the rule using one of these methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose from the drop-down list of compatible data fields for the value to place in the event field. This works for all field types.</li> <li>Use an expression in the format <code>@&lt;eventfieldname&gt;</code> to set a string type field such as Device Custom String1 with the value of a unique aggregation field. For example, if you are doing unique aggregation on source address, your value for Device Custom String 1 = <code>@sourceAddress</code>.</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Step 4</a> in <a href="#">"Setting or Changing Rule Thresholds"</a> on <a href="#">page 414</a> for a description of unique aggregation fields.</p> <p>If the correlation event already has a value for the selected data field, that value is overridden with this rule action.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Set Event Field is the only available action for pre-persistence rules. If a pre-persistence rule calls the Set Event Field action, the modification is done to the incoming base event which has not yet persisted, instead of on the rule's correlation event.</p>
Send to OpenView Operations		<p>Send the triggered rule's associated events to a special ArcSight SmartConnector within the Manager. The connector forwards the information to an HP OpenView Operations installation.</p> <p>This applies only where you have specifically integrated OpenView with ESM. Request the ArcSight Tech Note concerning HP OpenView Operations for more information.</p>
Send Notification		<p>Send e-mail, pager, or cell phone messages to the ESM users in the notification group when rules are triggered. Specify a notification group in the Destination Group drop-down menu, then enter the notification text in the Message box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Ack Required</b> if you want to begin an escalation chain. In this case those notified must acknowledge that they received the notification.</li> <li>If you do not select Ack Required, the message is for information purposes only and is displayed on the Notifications manager's Informational tab.</li> <li>For more information, see <a href="#">"Managing Notifications"</a> on <a href="#">page 615</a>.</li> </ul>

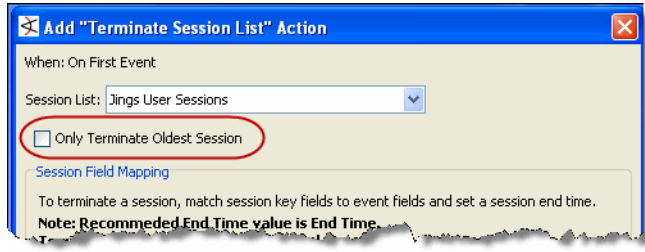
**Table 12-2** Rule Actions (Continued)

Action	Expanded Menu Option	Description
Execute Command		<p>Execute a command when the rule triggers. Select an operating system platform from the drop-down menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the command string in the Command field.</li> <li>Enter any required parameters in the Parameters field. Otherwise the command cannot execute without user intervention.</li> </ul> <p><b>Caution:</b> Using parameters of Date/Time with the Execute Command requires that the variable name be within double quotes (" "). For example, to use \$endTime as a parameter to a command to be executed on a rule action, enter the parameter as "\$endTime".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the Action Type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Automatically run on manager:</b> Execute the command at the ArcSight Manager without further intervention.</li> <li><b>Run on Manager with Console confirmation:</b> Require an operator at a Console to approve the command before it executes.</li> <li><b>Run on connector(s):</b> Send the command to the connectors that report the events.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Execute Connector Command		<p>Execute a SmartConnector command applicable to the device reporting the events.</p> <p>Select the SmartConnector to execute the command. After you select a connector, the command field is populated with the commands available for that connector. Only certain SmartConnectors can process commands beyond the basic set that all SmartConnectors support (start, stop, pause, continue, and terminate). This is similar to <a href="#">"Sending Control Commands to SmartConnectors" on page 678</a>.</p>
Export to External System		<p>Send the rule and the triggering events to an external system that is integrated with ArcSight. The export file in XML format is stored in the ArcSight Manager's archive/exports directory.</p>
Case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create New Case</li> <li>Add to Existing Case</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create a case when the rule is triggered. See <a href="#">"Using a Rule to Create a New Case" on page 427</a> for detailed steps.</li> <li>Update an existing case. See <a href="#">"Using a Rule to Add to an Existing Case" on page 428</a> for detailed steps.</li> </ul> <p>When the rule is triggered, the correlation event is added to the case. The maximum number of rule-associated events a case can hold is 1000, as controlled by the default server property, rules.max_events_in_case. If this limit is reached, the Console sends a warning message and disables the action until the number of events in the case drops below the maximum. To decrease the number of events, manually remove them from the case.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> A suggested approach to creating and updating cases based on triggered rules is to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Configure an action to create a case on first event or some other threshold, set the new case's attributes, and then</li> <li>2 Add to that same case when subsequent events or thresholds are triggered for that same rule.</li> </ol>

**Table 12-2** Rule Actions (Continued)

Action	Expanded Menu Option	Description
Active List	Add to Active List	Add the associated events to an existing active list that you select.
	Remove from Active List	Remove the associated events from an existing active list that you select.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Add To Active List</b> and <b>Remove From Active List</b> either take no arguments (if acting on an event-bound active list) or a list of event fields (if <b>not</b> dealing with an event-bound active list). The values from the specified fields (those specified either by an event-bound active list or by the argument list) form an item that is added to, or removed from, the active list. Removing an item that is not present does not cause an exception. Adding an item that is already present simply increments that item's counter. You can see this counter in the Active Lists Editor. (See <a href="#">"Active Lists" on page 753</a> and <a href="#">"Managing Active Lists" on page 511</a> for more information.)</li> <li>• When you are specifying fields to be added to or removed from the active list, you have the option to select local variables from the <b>Fields</b> tab or global variables from the <b>Global Variables</b> tab.</li> <li>• For lightweight rules, only the Active List and Session List actions are enabled.</li> <li>• See <a href="#">related information on page 414</a> about aggregation settings combined with rule actions that add entries to multi-mapped active lists and overlapping session lists.</li> <li>• See <a href="#">related information on page 422</a> about using velocity expressions in rules that act on lists.</li> </ul>		

**Table 12-2** Rule Actions (Continued)

Action	Expanded Menu Option	Description
Session List	Add to Session List	Add the associated events to an existing session list that you select.
	Terminate Session List	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add the events to the session list when a session terminates.</li> <li>Terminate the oldest session. If checked, the oldest session is added to the "terminate" session list. Oldest time is based on the session's Start Time.</li> </ul>
		
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you are specifying fields to be added to the session list, you have the option to select local variables from the <b>Fields</b> tab or global variables from the <b>Global Variables</b> tab.</li> <li>For lightweight rules, only the Active List and Session List actions are enabled.</li> <li>See <a href="#">related information on page 414</a> about aggregation settings combined with rule actions that add entries to multi-mapped active lists and overlapping session lists.</li> <li>See <a href="#">related information on page 422</a> about using velocity expressions in rules that act on lists.</li> </ul>		
Asset	Add Asset Category To Asset	<p>Add the asset category to the associated asset.</p> <p>This supports the automated discovery and categorization of assets (web servers, mail servers, firewalls, etc.) based on the type of events each asset is sending. Rules can be constructed to listen for certain types of events, and then categorize the associated asset appropriately. (You also set up a condition based on which to <a href="#">Remove Asset Category From Asset</a>.)</p>
	Remove Asset Category From Asset	<p>Remove the asset category from the associated asset.</p> <p>This supports automated categorization (or de-categorization) of assets along with the <a href="#">Add Asset Category To Asset</a> rule action.</p>



### Duplicate rule actions after a crash recovery:

When you stop ESM, it takes a checkpoint of the rules engine so that it knows which actions were performed and where it stopped. If ESM crashes in such a way that it cannot take a checkpoint (power failure, for example), it returns to the last checkpoint when it restarts, and replays events from there. Any actions that occurred between that checkpoint and the ESM crash are therefore be repeated. Repeated actions that generate audit events generate duplicate audit events.

You should investigate repeated actions that do not duplicate well. For example, if an action adds an item to an Active List, that item's counter will be incremented. If the action runs a command, it will run it again, and so on.

## Applying Rule Actions on Cases

This topic covers details on rule actions to create or update a case.

### Using a Rule to Create a New Case

The **Create a New Case Action** panel provides all fields necessary to set case attributes. The dialog example shows that case creation is based on the **On First Event** trigger for this rule.

When you use a rule to create a case, you are required to give the case a name. It is possible that your organization has customized the Case resource so that additional fields are mandatory. If so, note that the rule will not check for the additional mandatory fields, and the rule **will not** fail if you don't set those fields. After the rule creates the case, then the case owner can edit and set the fields.

#### To apply the Create New Case rule action:

- 1 Required: Provide a name for the case.

You can name a case in conjunction with an existing field value from an event. For example, you want your action to create a new case called Suspicious Login Attempts based on a value in the event field, Attacker Address. For this scenario, your case name's format will be **Suspicious Login Attempts \$attackerAddress**.

- 2 Specify a case group and owner.

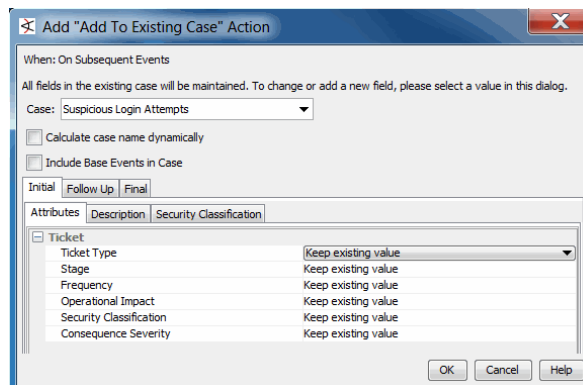
- 3 Optionally choose **Include Base Events in Case**. This means both correlation events and the correlated base events that triggered the rule will be added to the case's Events tab.
- 4 Specify the case's attributes when the rule is triggered. For information on case attributes, refer to ["Case Editor Tab Fields" on page 802](#). For text fields, you can use the velocity notation similar to the methodology for calculating the case name dynamically. For multi-line text fields, the value specified in this rule action will be *appended* to the existing values, but only if the new value being appended by the rule is unique. For example, your multi-line Attacker Address field has these IP addresses:

```
192.0.2.0
192.0.2.9
192.0.2.24
```

If the rule fires and sets the field with Attacker Address = 192.0.2.9, this value will not be appended because the value is already in the field.

## Using a Rule to Add to an Existing Case

The **Add To Existing Case Action** panel provides all fields necessary to change case attributes. The panel does not fetch current values of the existing case. Instead, the default selection is **Keep existing value**. Remember that you are defining the rule to keep or change certain case attributes *when* the action is triggered, whatever the case attributes are at that time.



### To apply the Add To Existing Case rule action:

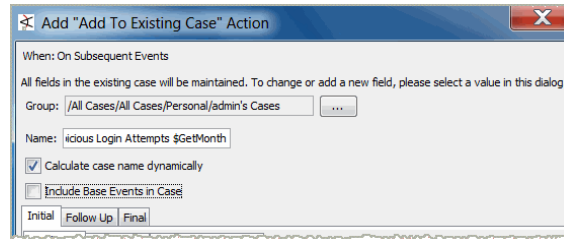
- 1 Specify a case by choosing one of two options:
  - ◆ Select an existing case. Use the **Case** drop-down menu to navigate the Cases resource tree and select the case.



Make sure the case is not locked when the rule triggers; otherwise, the rule fails. However, even if the rule fails, correlation events are still added to the case because the addition of events doesn't alter the case resource itself.

- ◆ Select **Calculate case name dynamically** to specify a case defined in another rule action.





This setting inherently depends on another rule action to create the case first. In this scenario, the referenced case will not be available until the rule action designed to create it is triggered. If you are calculating the case name dynamically, browse to the group you defined as the case location in the other rule action that creates the case.

For the dynamic case name, specify the name based on the same case name you provided in the other rule action that creates the case. An example of a dynamic case name is one that includes a variable. In the example, `GetMonth` is a variable name, and so the dynamic name entry is **Suspicious Login Attempts \$GetMonth**. If your variable name has spaces, replace the spaces with the underscore character. For example, if your variable is `Get Month`, then your case name is `Suspicious Login Attempts $Get_Month`.

- 2 Optionally choose **Include Base Events in Case**. This means both correlation events and the correlated base events that triggered the rule will be added to the case's Events tab.
- 3 Specify the case's updated attributes when the rule is triggered, or keep the existing values. For information on case attributes, refer to ["Case Editor Tab Fields" on page 802](#). For multi-line text fields, the value specified in this rule action will be *appended* to the existing values, but only if the new value being appended by the rule is unique. For example, your multi-line Attacker Address field has these IP addresses:

```
192.0.2.0
192.0.2.9
192.0.2.24
```

If the rule fires and sets the field with Attacker Address = 192.0.2.9, this value will not be appended because the value is already in the field.

## Enabling and Disabling Rules

You can enable (set to on) or disable (set to off) rules. ESM can also automatically disable rules.




Note

Keep in mind that only rules deployed in Real-time Rules show up in a live channel when they are triggered. Therefore, once you have created and verified rules and are ready to deploy them on real-time events, move or copy the rules to your user folder under Real-time Rules as described in ["Deploying Real-time Rules" on page 442](#).


## Enabling Rules

In the **Navigator** panel's **Rules** resource tree, right-click the rule and choose **Enable Rule**. The rule is displayed as enabled or on (🔥) in the Navigator.

## Disabling Rules



In the **Rules** resource tree, right-click a rule and choose **Disable Rule**. The rule is displayed as disabled or off () in the Navigator.

## Automatically and Manually Disabled Rules

If a rule is **disabled** or off () , the rule is grayed out on the **Navigator** panel in the Rules resource tree.

A rule can be manually disabled by an administrator or automatically disabled by ESM. ESM disables a rule for any one of the reasons in the following table. When a rule is automatically disabled, it generates an audit event indicating that this happened so that administrators can follow up as needed.

**Table 12-3** Why Rules are Automatically Disabled

Cause	Description
Rule is invalid	<p>An invalid rule is automatically disabled and displayed as <b>broken</b>  in the Navigator.</p> <p>If an administrator configures a rule or related resource in a way that “breaks” the rule and leaves it in an invalid state, the system automatically disables the rule.</p> <p>If a rule is disabled automatically due to an invalid configuration, an <code>Invalid Reason</code> field is displayed in the <b>Rule Editor</b> on the <b>Inspect/Edit</b> panel. When the rule is reconfigured to a valid state and enabled, the <code>Invalid Reason</code> field is no longer displayed.</p> <p>The <code>Invalid Reason</code> field is not displayed for rules that are manually disabled.</p>
Rule is recursive	<p>Rules that trigger themselves in a recursive loop is automatically disabled <i>temporarily</i>. A rule that is automatically disabled due to recursion is re-activated after a time frame that matches the aggregation time frame for the rule. (The default aggregation time frame is 2 minutes.)</p> <p>An auto-disabled rule is displayed with a special icon  in the Navigator. (It shows with the “broken” symbol, overlaid by an ArcSight logo to indicate that the system disabled it.)</p> <p>A rule can be inherently recursive due to a flaw in its design, or temporarily recursive because of some particular events involved. In the first case, temporarily disabling the rule often clears out the problem, and allows the rule to run normally when it is re-activated.</p> <p>If the rule is inherently recursive, it is continuously re-enabled and auto-disabled. The solution in this case is to redefine the rule logic and redeploy it, since it is effectively a “broken” rule.</p>

**Table 12-3** Why Rules are Automatically Disabled (Continued)

Cause	Description
Number of rule triggers exceeds configured limits	<p>Number of rule triggers exceeds configured limits. A rule that exceeds configured limits show as disabled (🔒) in the Navigator, and offer a right-click option for the user to manually disable it permanently.</p> <p>The system disables a rule if the rule exceeds the configured limits on the number of rules triggered per minute or ratio of base events to triggered rules.</p> <p>A rule in this state continues to attempt to run until the user disables it permanently by right-clicking it in the Navigator and choosing <b>Disable</b>.</p>

For rules that are disabled automatically, right-click the disabled rule and select **Disable** so that the rule is permanently disabled until you can fix the rule. If you don't manually disable these rules, they continuously attempt to run, then are enabled and disabled by the system in a cyclical manner. This can impact system performance.

## Disabling Rule Components

You can also disable certain components of a rule, such as particular rule triggers or a rule actions associated with particular triggers. For information on this, see [“Activating or Deactivating a Rule Trigger” on page 419](#) and [“Enabling or Disabling a Rule Action” on page 419](#) (in [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#)).

## Importing and Exporting Rules

Rules are created in a readable XML format. You can export a rule or rule group to an external file to modify it. After modification, you can import it back into the ArcSight Manager.



To import and export rules, use the packages feature. Packages supersede the import/export facility provided in previous ESM releases and offer enhanced functionality, including version support, dependency management, and import/export capabilities. Portable ArcSight packages can automatically manage dependencies across resources and other packages. Please see the information on packages in [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#).

## Scheduling Rules

You can schedule rules to run at a specified time interval such as hourly, daily, or monthly.

Scheduled rules are a useful alternative to real-time rules in situations where you want to deploy rules that take into account historical data along with live data, or when you simply want to control when the rules are run. The scheduled rules engine can process historical data, take real actions, and generate correlated events which are the same as those generated by the real-time rules engine.

Consider the following points when scheduling rules:

- Scheduling does not apply to pre-persistence rules. If an unscheduled rule group includes pre-persistence rules, the Console prevents you from scheduling that rule

group. However, scheduling is at the group level. You can still schedule a parent group even if one or more of its child groups contain pre-persistence rules.

- Don't use past start and end dates for your rule schedules. The rule will not run because the scheduler assumes that the job is finished.
- After a scheduled job has run once, it will not run again even if you change the schedule's start time and try to rerun it. Remove the old schedule and create a new one in this case.
- If you are interested only in historical data and you use a past start time and no end time, the rule will be in "catch up" mode. The rule will execute on all the data from the start to the current time, not only on historical data.

## Scenarios for Using Scheduled Rules

- **Batched Events.** In many environments, certain types of events are not immediately available to the Manager, but instead are sent in batches infrequently; sometimes once a day, or once a week. Such events have different Manager receipt times and end times. Manager receipt times are current (when the batches are submitted), but the event end times are in the past, since the events have actually happened in the past. Common examples of events that are sent in batches are those involving physical security devices and represent individuals gaining entry to buildings or offices by means of badge readers and card keys.

Since these events (like an employee entering an office) arrive late to the Manager, they cannot be effectively correlated with other events (like a user login) by typically deployed rules that use the real-time rules engine. When the real-time rules engine receives login events, it waits for 1 minute (or whatever the time window for this rule is) and then discards that login event, since the other event did not arrive within rule's time window. Consider a rule that looks for a badge swipe event and a login event within 1 minute of each other (aggregates on 1 minute). The login events are received by the Manager in real time as they occur. But the badge swipe events are collected and submitted only once a day at 10 p.m.

A real time rule would not correlate the two events because it would discard the login event before it ever gets the batched event. But if you scheduled your rule to run at midnight with the scheduled rules engine, it could correlate the actual end times of batched events and login events that occur within 1 minute of each other. Scheduled rules can correlate these types of events because (a) rules can be scheduled to run when both the login and batched events are available within the database and (b) although the Manager receipt times for these events would be different, their end times are close together within the aggregation window. Correlations are based on end times of events.

- **Historical Data.** You may want to capture and correlate other kinds of historical data (other than batched events). For example, if you have observed a pattern of events over the last several weeks, decide to write rules to take actions on some of those events, and correlate not only future occurrences of them but also the past events. This is possible to do by specifying the desired date range in the filter for the schedule, for example, a filter that specifies manager receipt time (MRT) to be between a past date range.
- **Optimized Rule Schedules.** Another scenario in which you might want to use scheduled rules is for rules that are more appropriate to run after business hours (for example, in the middle of the night). The job scheduler on rule groups lets you specify the appropriate schedule, and the rules are deployed as correlated events but are executed on off-hours.

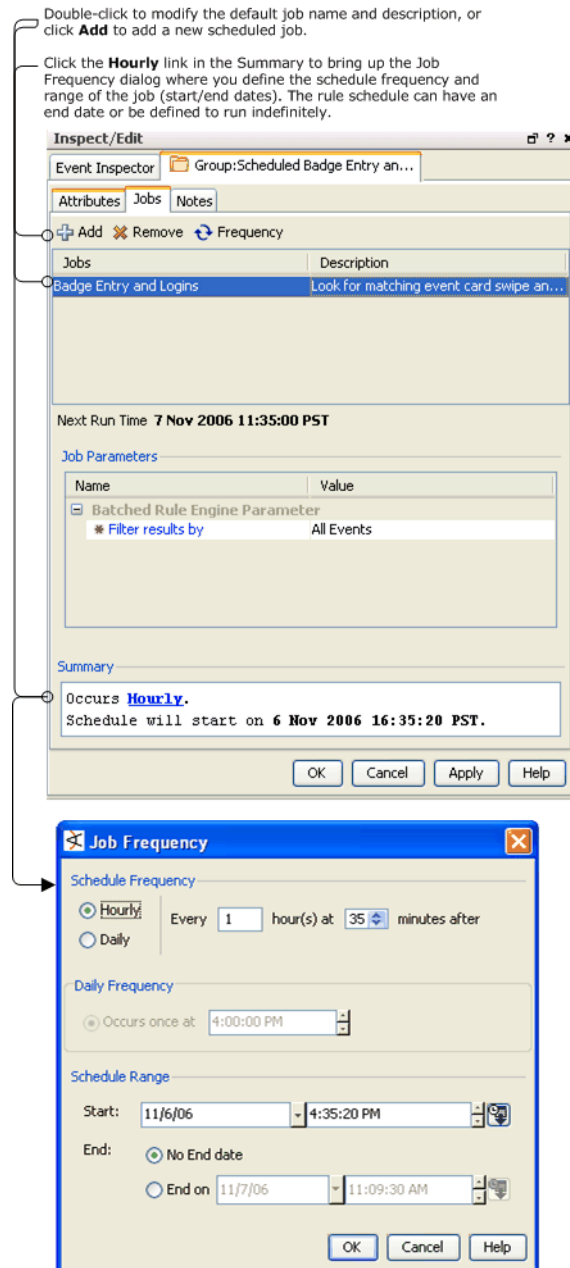
In all such cases, scheduled rules generate correlation events and take real actions when triggered, just like deployed real-time rules.



Although scheduled rules that correlate batched events work in part with historical data, these are deployed rules (not tests) that take actions as appropriate and do affect the live system.

## Scheduling a Rule Group

- 1 Click the **Rules** resources on the Navigator.
- 2 Identify the rules you want to schedule. (For information on how to create new rules, see [“Managing Rules” on page 399.](#))
- 3 If these rules are not already in a rule group, create a new rule group and link or move rules into it. (For information on how to create and work with rule groups, see [“Managing Rule Groups” on page 401.](#))
- 4 Select a rule group, right-click, and choose **Edit Rule Group** from the context menu.
- 5 Click **Jobs** in the Rule Group editor.
- 6 Add a job, name and describe it, and specify a schedule on which to run the rule group.
- 7 Specify a filter for these rules. (By default the filter is set to All Events. Click **Filter Results by** to refine the filter to display only events relevant to the rule. Narrowing the filter optimizes performance when the rule is run.)



**8** Click **Apply** or **OK** to deploy.

The rules are deployed according to the schedule specified in the Rule Group editor on the Jobs tab, and are triggered if the rule conditions are met.

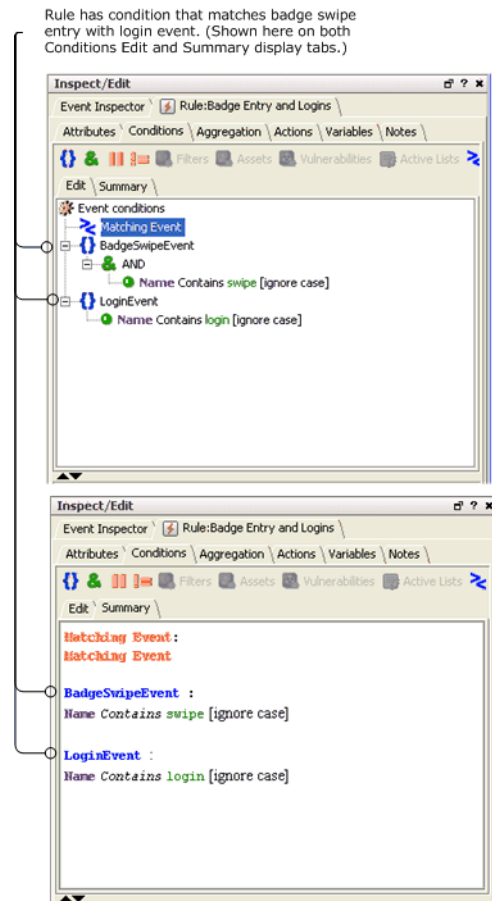


**Note**

You cannot schedule a single rule outside of a group, but you can schedule it as a “group of one” contained in a folder. To schedule one or more rules, place them in a folder. Multiple rules in the same folder run together per the schedule as part of the rule group.

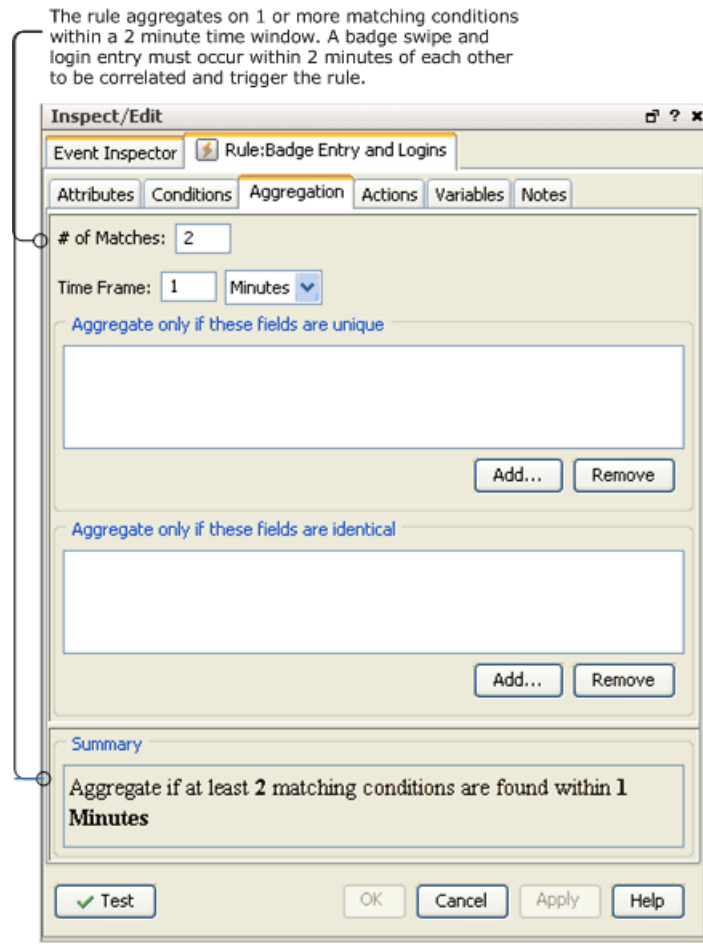
## Example of a Scheduled Rule (Badge Swipes and Logins)

This example applies to standard rules. The following shows the **conditions statements** for a rule that correlates Badge swipe events that are sent to the Manager in a batch file once per day; with login events that are sent to the Manager frequently in real-time. The example rule looks for an event with “swipe” in the name and an event with “login” in the name.



**Figure 12-1** Example Scheduled Rule: Condition Statements

This rule sets an **aggregation time window** to correlate these events at 2 minutes. This means that a login event (end time) must occur within 2 minutes of a badge swipe event (end time) in order for the rule to be triggered.



**Figure 12-2 Example Scheduled Rule: Aggregation**

Note that if you deploy this rule in real-time rules, the rule is not triggered to capture the events you want to correlate. Although the badge swipe events are actually occurring within 2 minutes of login events (according to event end times), the ArcSight Manager Receipt Time for badge swipe events is always hours later (whenever they are submitted as batched events). In this kind of scenario, the real-time rules engine would never correlate these events because the badge swipe events (with late Manager Receipt time) would be read in so much later.

If, however, you deploy this as a scheduled rule to run on a nightly basis, the rule is triggered and capture the correlated events. This is because the scheduled rules engine is designed to correlate historical data with live data.

To configure this as a scheduled rule, you would create a new folder (group) for it under Rules resources in the Navigator, link or move the rule into the folder, then edit the rule group to add a scheduled job (on Jobs tab). The job schedule defines when the rule runs. Once the job schedule is applied to the rule group, the rule is deployed as a scheduled rule.

**To create and test the example rule:**

- 1 Create a rule called **Badge Entry and Logins**.
- 2 On the Conditions tab for this rule, set a condition to look for two events joined by AND; an event with **swipe** in the event name and an event with **login** in the event name.

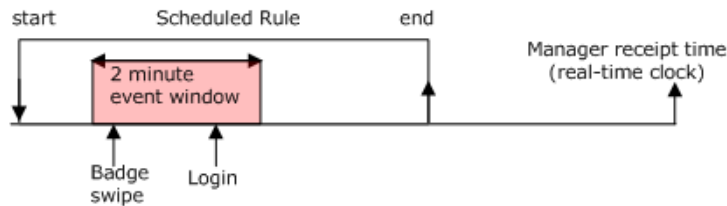


- 3 Save the new rule.
- 4 Create a new rule group folder called **Badge Entry and Logins** and link or move the rule into that folder.
- 5 Edit the **Badge Entry and Logins** rule group to add a scheduled job for the rule of the same name.
- 6 Save the new rule group.

The rule is deployed after you save the rule group with the scheduled job.

For testing purposes, schedule the job to start in 5 minutes from the current time and then use the ArcSight Test Alert connector to test sending events to the Manager with end times within two minutes of each other and different Manager receipt times. (For example, to model a real-world scenario: set Manager receipt time for badge swipes to several hours later than for logins.)

Make sure that the start time of your scheduled job is earlier than the event end times on your test events (so that the scheduled job is running to capture the events). You should see the scheduled rule triggered on correlated events.



**Figure 12-3** Start Time on Example Scheduled Rule is Set Earlier than End Times of Events

As a comparison, deploy the same rule in a real-time rules folder and send the test events again. Note that the same rule is not triggered by the real-time rules engine because it is not designed to correlate historical data.

In every scheduled run of a rule, only events arriving between that run and the earlier run are considered for input.

## Testing Rules

This information applies to standard rules.

You can test standard rules against copies of active channels for valid conditions logic, verify that rules are triggered by the events they are supposed to capture, and that they generate correlated events as expected.

The ArcSight Console provides two different ways of getting to tools for testing and verifying rules against events before deploying the rules in real time:

- Test a single rule from within the rule editor by clicking the Test button.
- Test rules and rule groups from the navigation tree with the Verify Rules with Events option.

These options are somewhat similar. They differ in the navigation paths to select or set up the channels, and more importantly in that from the rule editor you can test only the selected rule but from the navigation tree you can test several selected rules or rule

groups. This Help topic explains how to test a single rule from the rule editor. See also [“Verifying Rule\(s\) with Events” on page 439](#).



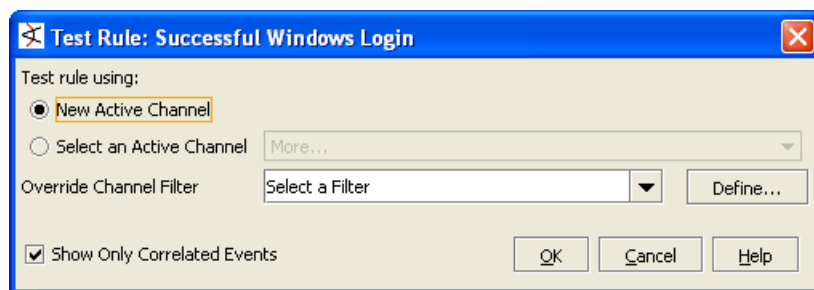
Note

Keep in mind that only rules deployed in Real-time Rules act on live events and show up in a live channel when they are triggered. For more information, see [“Deploying Real-time Rules” on page 442](#).

## Testing a Rule from the Rule Editor

- 1 Choose the Rules resource in the Navigator, and select the rule you want to test.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Edit Rule** to bring up the Rule editor for that rule in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 3 In the editor for the selected rule, click **Test**.

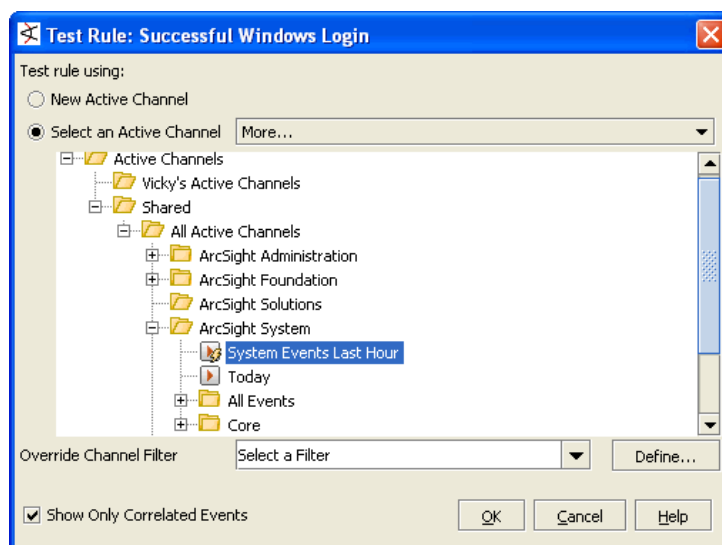
This brings up the Test Rule dialog where you can choose an existing active channel or create a new channel in which to verify the rule.



- 4 Select either **New Active Channel** or **Select an Active Channel** depending on whether you want to test the rule in a new or existing channel.

You can set override channel filters on either a new or existing active channel.

If you choose **Select an Active Channel** (which means you are opting to use an existing channel rather than create a new one), an in-line browser is displayed where you can navigate to and choose an existing channel.



- 5 Once you have set up the channel, click **OK**. (If you need more help on setting up channels, see ["Viewing and Using Channels" on page 78](#).)

The channel is displayed in the Viewer panel.

## Showing Rule Errors

If rules have errors, the rule icon (  ) changes to indicate it.

In the Rules resource tree, right-click the rule-error icon and choose **Show Error**. The error appears in a dialog box.

## Verifying Rule(s) with Events

This topic applies to standard rules. ArcSight Console provides two different ways to test or verify rules before deploying them. These options are somewhat similar. They differ in the navigation paths to select or set up the channels, and more importantly in that from the rule editor you can test only the selected rule but from the navigation tree you can test several selected rules or rule groups.

This topic explains how to test multiple rules or rule groups from the navigation tree using "Verify Rule(s) with Events." See also ["Testing Rules" on page 437](#).

"Verify rule(s) with events" is an enhanced version that replaces "replay with rules" in previous versions. You can test rules by running them against a set of captured events for historical analysis. Now you can replay events to verify rules in existing active channels or, as before, create new channels for this purpose. Also, you can select a single rule, multiple rules, or a rule group to verify. (In earlier releases, only the last of these options was available.)

To verify rules with events, select an existing active channel or create a new one, and then scan the list of events in the channel to verify that the rule is triggered and that it generated correlated events as expected.

Existing active channels have a sliding time window for events (based on the channel filters).

New active channels created as "replay with rules" channels have a fixed time window for qualifying events, and the events are those that qualify under the rules in the selected group. These active channels incorporate the conditions, aggregation characteristics, and actions defined for the rules in the selected group.



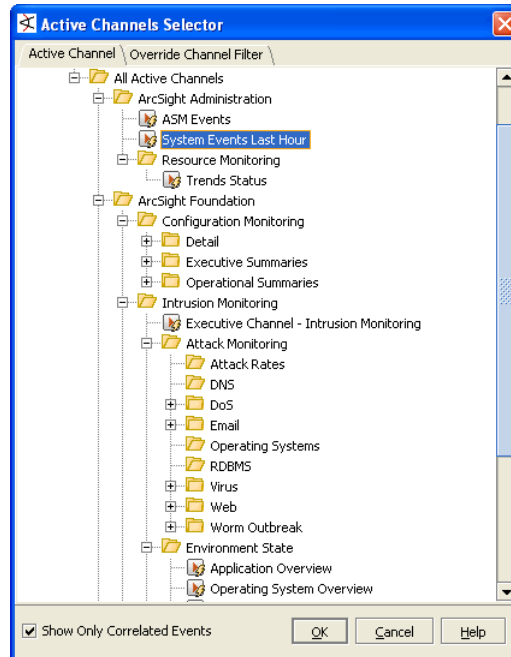
**Note**

Rules tested against pre-existing active channels are actually executed on copies of active channels the system automatically generates for this purpose. Rules run in verify mode do not generate real rule actions correlated with live or historical system events and, therefore, when they are triggered no real rule actions are impacting the system state. Only real-time rules or scheduled rules (set up to capture batched and other types of historical data) trigger real rule actions.

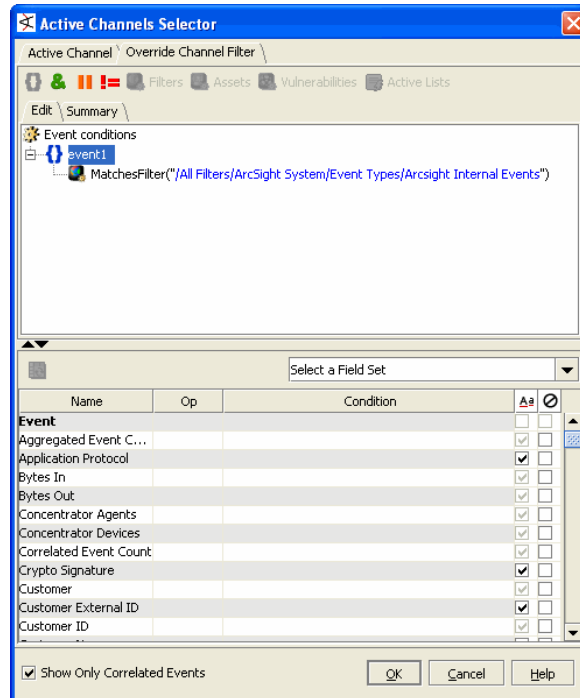
Once you have created and verified rules and are ready to deploy them on real-time events, move or copy the rules to your user folder under Real-time Rules. For more information, see ["Deploying Real-time Rules" on page 442](#) and ["Scheduling Rules" on page 431](#).

## Verify Rule(s) from the Resource Tree

- 1 In the Rules resources tree, right-click an appropriate group and choose **Verify Rule(s) with Events**.
- 2 From the sub-menu, choose **Most Recent Opened Active Channels, More**, or **New Active Channel**.
  - ◆ **Most Recent Opened Active Channels**. Choose from the list of recently opened channels. The selected channel is displayed in the Viewer panel.
  - ◆ **More**. This brings up the Active Channel Selector dialog. Use this dialog to navigate to the channel you want.



If you want to redefine or further narrow the stream of events in the selected channel, click the **Override Channel Filter** tab to add filters to it. The **Override Channel Filter** tab shows the conditions on the currently selected channel. You can add, remove, or modify the filters here.

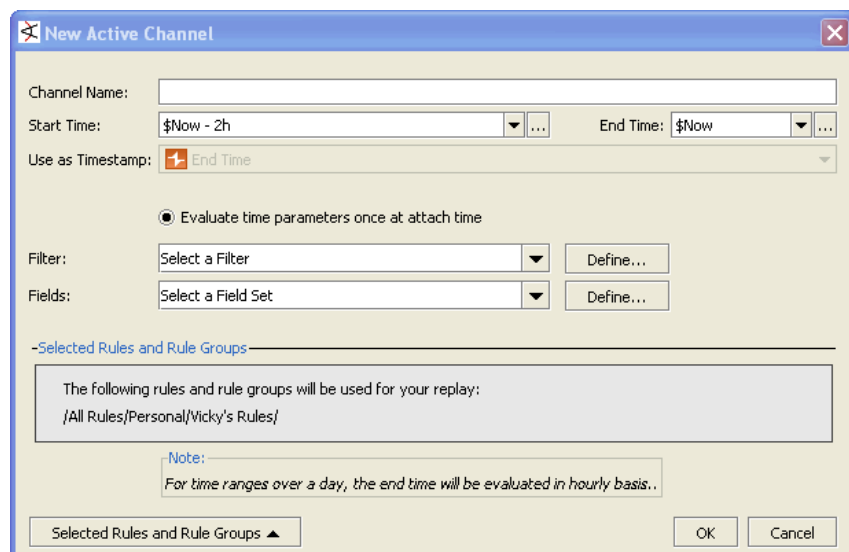


Click **OK** to choose the selected channel with filter modifications (if any).

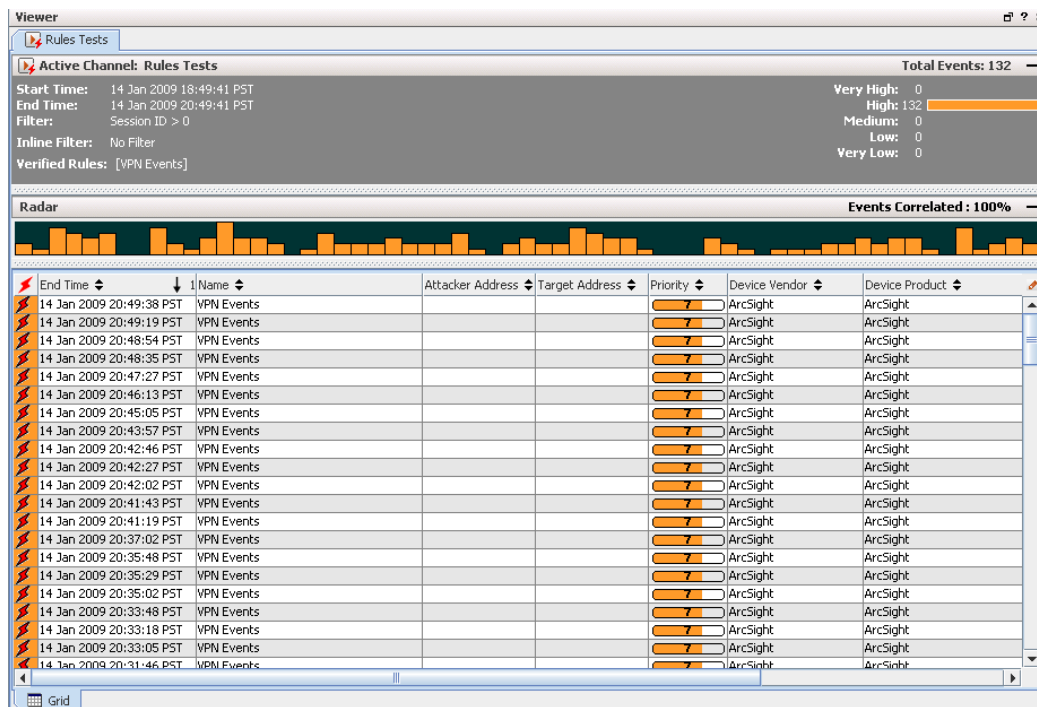
The selected channel is displayed in the Viewer panel.

#### ◆ New Active Channel...

Selecting this option brings up a dialog where you can set up the parameters for the active channel that displays the rules in action. Provide a name for the new channel and set the other channel options as described in [“Viewing and Using Channels” on page 78](#).



Click **OK** to create the new channel with your chosen settings. The new channel is displayed in the Viewer panel.



Tip

**About Test Channels:** A lightning bolt icon on a channel indicates it is a test channel created as a result of choosing **Verify Rules with Events** on a rule. Test channels cannot be re-used, even for the same rule. Remove test channels from the Active Channels folder in the Navigator.

**Alternatives to Test Channels:** If you would like to re-use a channel to test various rules, create a standard active channel, for example, "My Rules Test Channel" (see ["Creating an Active Channel" on page 80](#)), then send rules test results to that channel. You can re-use a standard channel as many times as you want to test rules (i.e., *verify rules with events*).



Note

Filters shown on rule verification channels are not designed for copying and re-use outside of these special rule testing channels. Rule verification channels show rule-triggered events and other non-correlation events in the channel, but the complete filtering logic that accomplishes this is not exposed.

Filter conditions on these channels display the original filter (if one is applied) and "Session ID > 0". The session ID statement is a simplified representation of the back-end filtering taking place in the special rule verification channel to limit this particular channel to show only new rule-triggered events.

## Deploying Real-time Rules

Once you have created and verified rules and are ready to deploy them on real-time events, move or copy the rules to your user folder under Real-time Rules.

Rules run in verify or test rule mode do not generate real rule actions correlated with live or historical system events and, therefore, when they are triggered no real rule actions are impacting the system state.

Only real-time rules show up in a live channel, generate correlation events, and trigger real rule actions.



A special category of rules called scheduled rules can capture batched and other types of historical data, generate correlation events, and trigger real rule actions. These act similar to real-time rules, but are deployed differently. They are evaluated according to a schedule, and trigger off of historical/past events. See [“Scheduling Rules” on page 431](#) for more information.

## Deploying a Rule

In the **Navigator** panel's **Rules** resource tree, right-click a rule or a rule group (folder) and choose **Deploy Realtime Rule(s)**.

The rules you deploy are linked into the Real-time Rules folder (Shared/All Rules/ Real-time Rules). This means that if you change something in the working copy of a rule (in your user folder), those changes also take effect in the deployed rule and vice versa.

You can also manually copy, link, or move rules from your working user folder to a user folder in Real-time Rules. To do this, click and drag a rule or rule group to the Real-time Rules folder, then choose an option in the dialog (Copy, Link, or Move). Using this method of deploying real-time rules is useful if you want to copy or move the rules rather than link them.

If a rule is already enabled (⚡), it is deployed as enabled. If a rule has been disabled (🔒) during testing phase, it is deployed into real-time rules but remain disabled until you enable it. Rules must be both enabled and deployed in real-time rules to take effect in the live system. (If you enable or disable a deployed, linked rule in the original location it is also enabled or disabled in real-time rules and vice versa.) For more information, see [“Enabling and Disabling Rules” on page 429](#).

## Removing or Un-deploying a Rule

You can remove rules from the Real-time Rules folder, thereby “un-deploying” them from the live system.

To un-deploy a rule (beyond disabling it), select the rule in the Real-time Rules folder, right-click, and choose **Delete Rule** from the context menu.

Depending on whether the rule was linked, moved, or copied into the Real-time Rules folder, you get different options at this point.

- If the rule has been moved or copied into your working folder, you get an option to remove it or to cancel the operation.
- If the rule is a link to the original rule in your working folder, you get options to remove it from this group only, delete it entirely from all locations, or cancel the operation. (A linked file is treated as a single entity, so edit actions taken on the file in any location affect all instances of it.)

## Loading Rules

How you create rules affects the load placed upon the ArcSight Manager. This load is a function of how many partial and full matches are generated by those rules. Since partial matches occur when any condition of a rule is met and full matches occur once all

conditions of a rule have been met, poorly written rules can generate many partial matches without generating any full matches.

Also, poorly written rules can generate, in a worst case scenario, one additional event for every incoming event. However, well-written rules have conditions that are restrictive enough to limit partial matches to those events that are likely to participate in a full match. Such rules are also likely to generate very meaningful derived events and they also impose a smaller load on the ArcSight Manager. Therefore it is very important that you carefully plan, write, and test all your custom rules.

## Automatic Disabling

ESM automatically disables improperly written rules that would produce excessive or meaningless events. The conditions that cause rules to be disabled are described below.

The factors that control rule disabling are shown in the table below.

Rule Disabling Factor	Operation
Alias Matches	If an alias is defined in the rule, this is the number of events matching that alias, independent of other defined aliases.
Partial Matches	If more than one alias is defined in the rule, this is the number of events matching the aliases defined before the current one, and for the current one, and for their join condition (if present).
Generated Events Counts	The number of correlation events generated.
Base Event Counts	The number of base events used by the rule to generate correlation events.
Time Unit Counts	The number of time units (minutes) that passed since the current rule activated.

Therefore, the conditions that can result in rule disabling are:

- The number of matching aliases would exceed the default limit of 100000.
- The number of partial matches for any of the aliases would exceed the default limit of 100000.
- The rule generates more than five correlation events for each base event it processes.
- The rule generates more than 1000 correlation events in one time unit.

The above values are defaults that may be adjusted differently for your enterprise.



## Chapter 13

# Global Variables

---

This topic describes global variables, which enable you to create a variable that derives data from fields in the resource and event schema and can be used and re-used in monitoring and authoring contexts throughout the Console.

[“About Global Variables” on page 445](#)  
[“Creating a Global Variable” on page 446](#)  
[“Promoting a Local Variable to a Global Variable” on page 448](#)  
[“Editing a Global Variable” on page 450](#)  
[“Navigating to Global Variables” on page 451](#)  
[“Adding a Global Variable to a Resource” on page 451](#)  
[“Chaining a Global Variable” on page 455](#)

## About Global Variables

ArcSight provides the ability to create variables that derive values from existing data fields that you can create locally in the resource you’re working on to make monitoring and correlation more specific to particular scenarios.

In addition to these local variables, there is a global variable resource that makes it possible to define a variable once, then re-use it in multiple places wherever conditions can be expressed (active channels, rules, filters, data monitors, and queries), and wherever fields can be selected (CCE, field sets).

Global variables are centralized and reusable, which makes them an essential building block for user correlation in the Actors feature and other advanced correlation scenarios.

Once created, global variables can be selected in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) as additional fields on the Filters or Conditions tabs, as `Group By` arguments for data monitors and queries, and in rule conditions and actions. You can add variables to field sets in the Field Set Editor to extend the event and resource schema with values derived from other data fields.

The global variables feature also makes it possible to easily promote local variables defined for a particular resource into a global variable, where it can be re-used in other condition statements.

## Global Variable Dependencies

Global variables depend on a pre-defined schema, so in-memory data gathered during run-time in active channels, active lists, session lists, query viewers, queries, and trends cannot be used to define a global variable.

In-memory global variables can be displayed as columns in active channels, but not used as part of a condition or filter (for example, to derive a list or query result).

This chapter describes how to use Console tools to create global variables, and how to leverage them in other resources. For details about the supported variable types and functions, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

## Remote Variables Processing

Variables using Group, List, and Category Model functions are evaluated on the Manager, not directly on the Console, and are referred to as “remote” variables.

These remote variables are evaluated only once on the console for any given event or resource. Therefore, the value of the variable on the Console does not change even if the underlying data is modified that would result in a different value for the variable. New events (in events channels) and resources (in resource channels) evaluate the variable again, and you see the updated value.

Because not all variables can be calculated on the Console, there may be a delay in returning values from variables calculated “remotely” on the Manager.

## Creating a Global Variable

Here are the high-level steps for creating a global variable:

- 1** In the Navigator panel, go to **Field Sets** and click the **Fields & Global Variables** tab.
- 2** In the Fields tree, right-click the group to which you want to add the global variable, such as **<user’s> Fields**, and select **New Global Variable**.
- 3** In the Global Variable Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel, define the global variable.
  - a** In the *Attributes* tab, name the global variable, specify its type, and specify the group in which to place it to help others find it in pick lists. For details, see [“Global Variable Editor: Attributes Tab” on page 447](#).
  - b** In the *Parameters* tab, define the parameters the variable use and the functions it performs. For details, see [“Global Variable Editor: Parameters Tab” on page 447](#).
  - c** In the *Local Variables* tab, you can optionally add a local variable, which extracts data from a field that can be used for the overall global variable. For details, see [“Global Variable Editor: Local Variables Tab” on page 448](#).
- 4** Click **Apply** to apply the changes and keep the editor open; click **OK** to save changes and close the editor.

## Global Variable Editor: Attributes Tab

Field	Description
Name	<p>Enter the variable name (which must be unique in the containing group). Global variable names cannot be SQL keywords.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The value you enter here cannot be changed once the global variable is saved. If you want to change the name of the global variable after it is saved, make note of the variable attributes and re-create the variable with the desired name.</p>
Type	<p>From the drop-down selector, select the type of global variable you want to create: The type you choose here determines the type of fields available to this variable, and which resources can use the data derived from it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Event Global Variable.</b> Select this default option if you want the global variable to operate on event fields.</li> <li>• <b>Asset Global Variable.</b> Select this option if you want the global variable to operate on fields associated with assets in the network model.</li> <li>• <b>Case Global Variable.</b> Select this option if you want the global variable to operate on fields associated with cases.</li> <li>• <b>Actor Global Variable.</b> Select this option if you want the global variable to operate on fields associated with actors.</li> </ul>
Group	<p>From the drop-down menu, select the group in which to place your global variable. This is the group where you find the global variable in field pick lists in the CCE and Field Sets editor. The <b>Variables</b> group is selected by default, which means if you want to select this global variable in the pick lists, you scroll down to the Variables group. If you want to position this variable to the top group of the pick list, you select <b>root</b>.</p>

For a description of what to enter in the Common fields, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

## Global Variable Editor: Parameters Tab

Use the Parameters tab to choose the category, function, and arguments necessary to supply the values.

- 1 On the Parameters tab's Function field, select the function that the variable uses to evaluate. First select a category, such as **Arithmetic**, then choose a function from that category, for example, **Add**.
- 2 In the Arguments fields, specify the arguments (number and type parameters depending on the function), each of which may be a constant value, a field from the parent field set, or another global variable (see [“Chaining a Global Variable” on page 455](#)). For example, for the Add function which adds two numbers, your arguments will consist of the values from two specified fields to be added.
- 3 For relevant functions, you can verify that the arguments you entered in the Function and Arguments fields return the values you want by entering sample parameters in the *Preview* fields.

For details about how to fill out the Function and Arguments fields, see [“Variable Definition Fields” on page 985](#).

## Global Variable Editor: Local Variables Tab

Use the Local Variables tab to extract a value from a field that you want to use in the overall Global Variable.

- 1 Click **Add**. This launches the Add Local Variable editor.
- 2 In the Add Local Variable editor, enter a name for the local variable, specify a function, and add arguments (number and type parameters depending on the function).
- 3 Verify that the arguments you entered in the Function and Arguments fields return the values you want by entering sample parameters in the *Preview* fields.

For details about what to enter in the Function and Arguments fields, see [“Variable Definition Fields” on page 985](#).

## Promoting a Local Variable to a Global Variable

If you have an existing resource (such as a field set or rule) that contains one or more local variables that you want to re-use in other resources, it is easy to convert that variable to a global variable.

This feature is available in the following resource editors: active channels, data monitors, field sets, filters, rules, and queries.



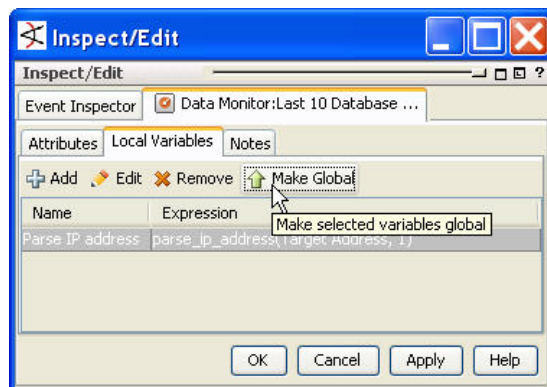
### Limitation in promoting local variables for resources

Local variables defined for data from events, actors, cases, and assets *can* be promoted to global variables.

Local variables defined for query viewers *cannot* be promoted to global variables. Query viewers operate on queries, which have their own distinct schema for each instance. A local variable defined for a query viewer is likely only applicable to that specific query viewer.

### To promote a local variable:

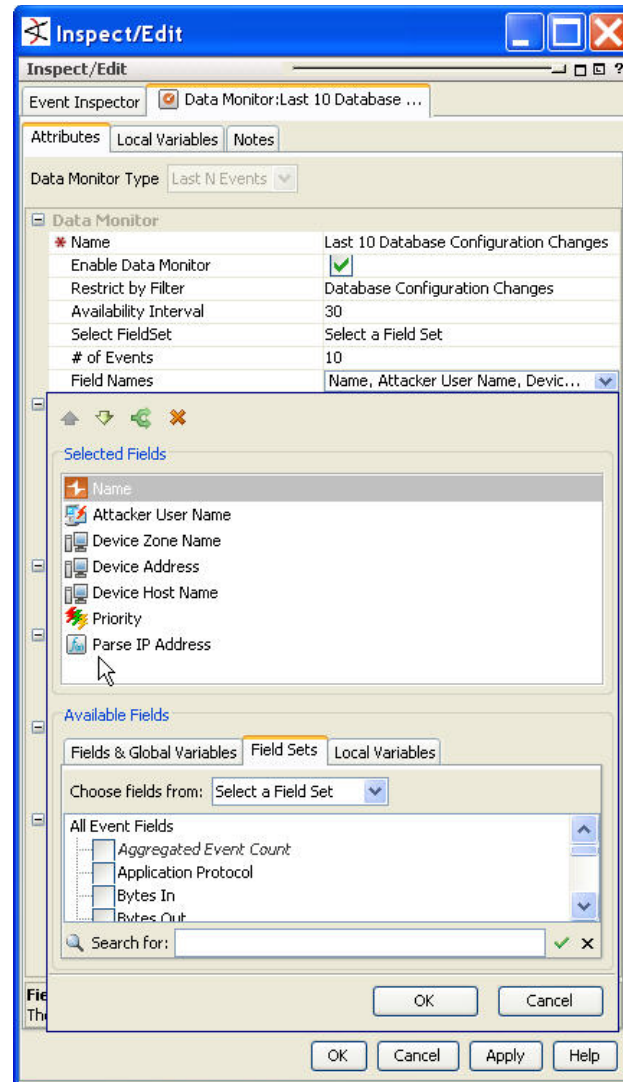
- 1 At the Local Variables tab in the resource editor, select the local variable you want to promote. This activates the Make Global button in the local variable toolbar.



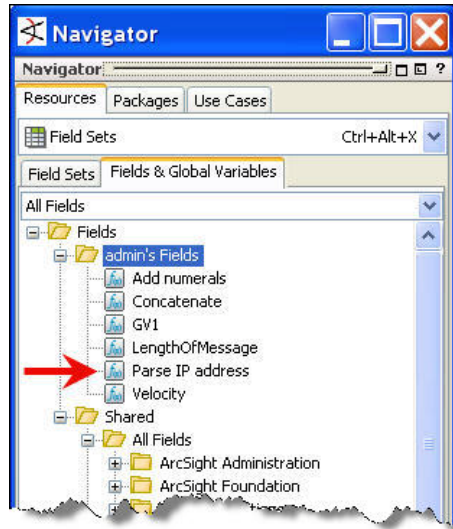
- 2 Click the **Make Global** button.
- 3 On the Fields Selector, choose the group to which you want to save the global variable.
- 4 Decide whether to use the global variable you just promoted in the resource. At the prompt:

- ◆ Click **Yes** to promote the local variable to a global variable. This removes the variable from the local variables list and makes it available to the resource as a global variable.
- ◆ Click **No** to keep the variable local in the host resource.

If you opted to replace the local variable with the global version, you can see it by viewing the condition or selected fields tab, depending on what type of resource you are working in.



- 5 To find the new global variable you just promoted from the global variables tree, go to **Field Sets > Fields & Global Variables**. Navigate to the group in which you saved the global variable.



The new global variable appears in the Variables hierarchy and be available to other resources.

A global variable may also chain (use as parameters) other variables that are local to a resource. A common use case is to create a complex chain of variables, and expose only the variable representing the final result as a global variable, keeping the chained intermediate variables local to their host resource.

## Editing a Global Variable

**To edit an existing global variable:**

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to **Field Sets > Fields & Global Variables**. Right-click the global variable you want to edit and select **Edit Field**.
- 2 In the Global Variable editor, you can only make edits to the group in which the global variable is stored, and the function parameters, since changes to the variable name and type could impact other resources that link to the variable.
- 3 Click **Apply** to save the global variable and leave the editor open, or click **OK** to save and close the editor.

## Moving or Linking a Global Variable

A global variable can be moved or linked in the Navigator the same way other resources can be moved or linked. Global variables cannot be copied. For details, see [“Move, Copy, or Link a Resource” on page 69](#).

## Deleting a Global Variable

**To delete a global variable:**

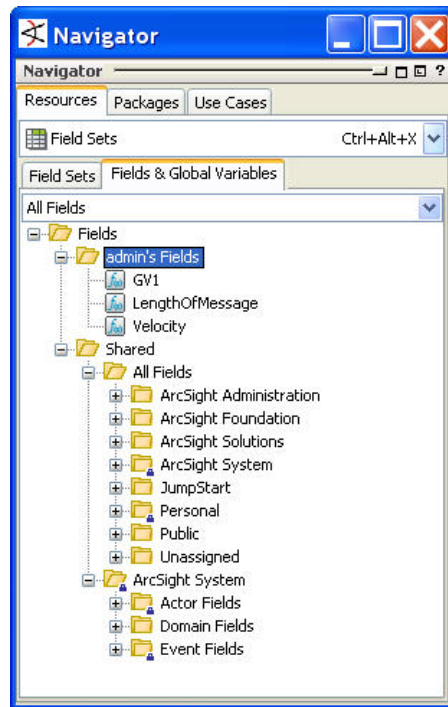
- 1 In the Navigator panel, right-click the global variable and select **Delete Field**.
- 2 At the confirmation dialog box, click **Delete**.

If any resources depend on this variable, a warning is displayed containing the URI of the impacted resources. You can override the warning and force-delete the variable. In such cases, the dependent resources are marked invalid; you can then edit those resources and remove any orphaned references.

## Navigating to Global Variables

The Console Navigator contains a resource tab called Field Sets with a tab called **Fields & Global Variables**. This tab displays:

- Global variable resources defined by users and in standard content
- Standard event schema fields



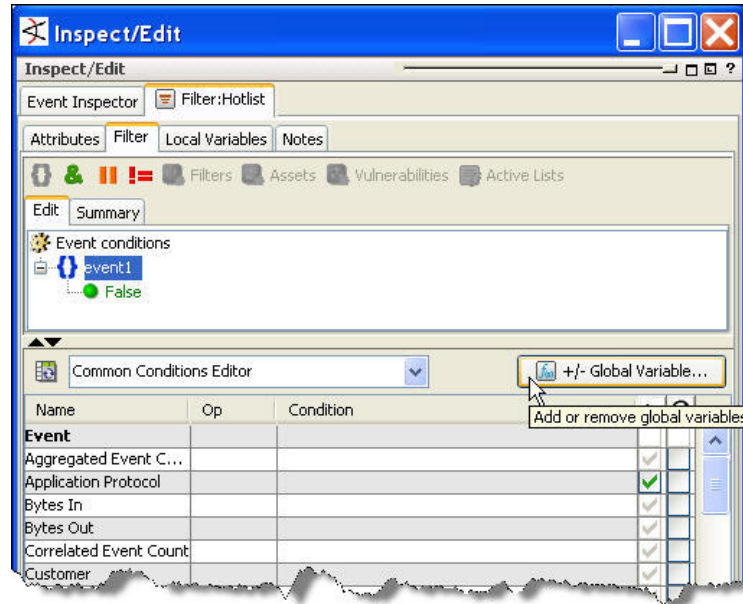
To view fields in the standard schema, including device custom fields, on the Fields & Global Variables tab, browse to All Fields/ArcSight System/Event Fields.

## Adding a Global Variable to a Resource

You can add a global variable to any resource, data monitors and field sets in which you can express a condition in any resource that uses the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#). Global variables are made available to query viewers through the queries.

## Accessing a Global Variable Using the CCE

Resources that use the CCE provide a button that enables you to access and add a global variable to a condition statement.



#### To add a global variable using the CCE:

- 1 In the CCE for a given resource, click the **+/- Global Variable** button.
- 2 On the Global Variable Selector dialog, select one or more variables you want to add and click **OK**.

Only variables whose schema type matches the given resource are displayed. For example, an actor-based global variable can be added to an actor-based query, not an event-based or other resource-based queries.

- 3 The added variables appear in the field list under the group selected for it in the Global Variables editor (such as the Variables group). You can use these variables in condition statements for this resource.

For details, see [“Adding or Removing Global Variables Using the CCE” on page 829](#) in the reference topic on the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#).

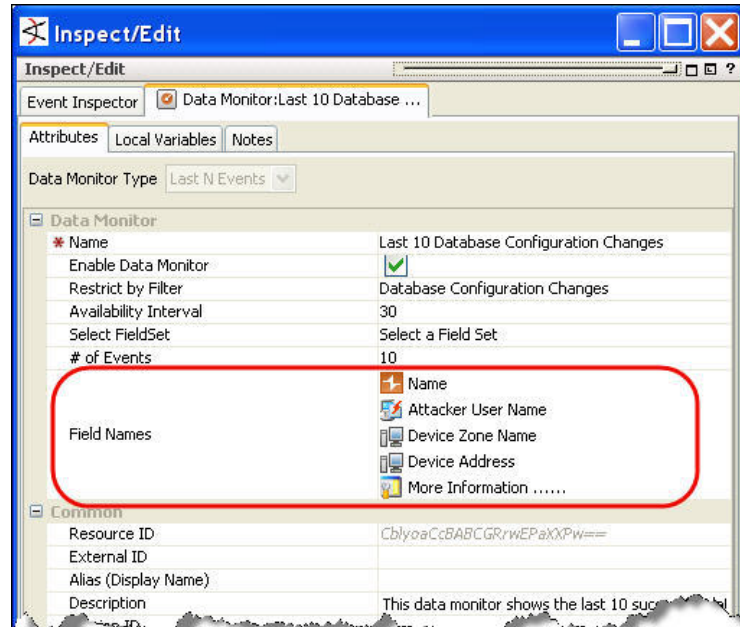
If the resource you are working in uses a field set that contains global variables, any global variable fields included in the selected field set are also available for selection in the CCE.

## Adding a Global Variable to a Data Monitor

You can add a global variable to any fields-based data monitor on the attributes tab where fields are selected. Field-based data monitors include:

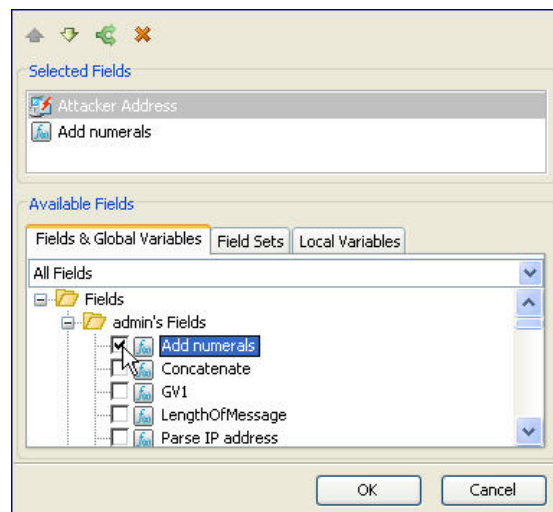
- Event graph
- Hierarchy Map
- Last N Events
- Last State
- Moving Average
- Statistics
- Top Value Counts (bucketized)





#### To add a global variable to a data monitor:

- 1 Go to **Dashboards > Data Monitors**. Either create a new data monitor (right-click a group and choose **New Data Monitor**) or edit an existing data monitor (right-click a data monitor and choose **Edit Data Monitor**).
- 2 In the Data Monitor editor where you can select fields, click the value field to launch the field selector. The available fields vary depending on the type of data monitor you selected.
- 3 In the field selector, click the **Fields & Global Variables** tab and select an available global variable. Click **OK**.



For details about how to use the data monitor editor, see [“Using Custom View Dashboards”](#) on page 120.

## Adding a Global Variable to a Field Set

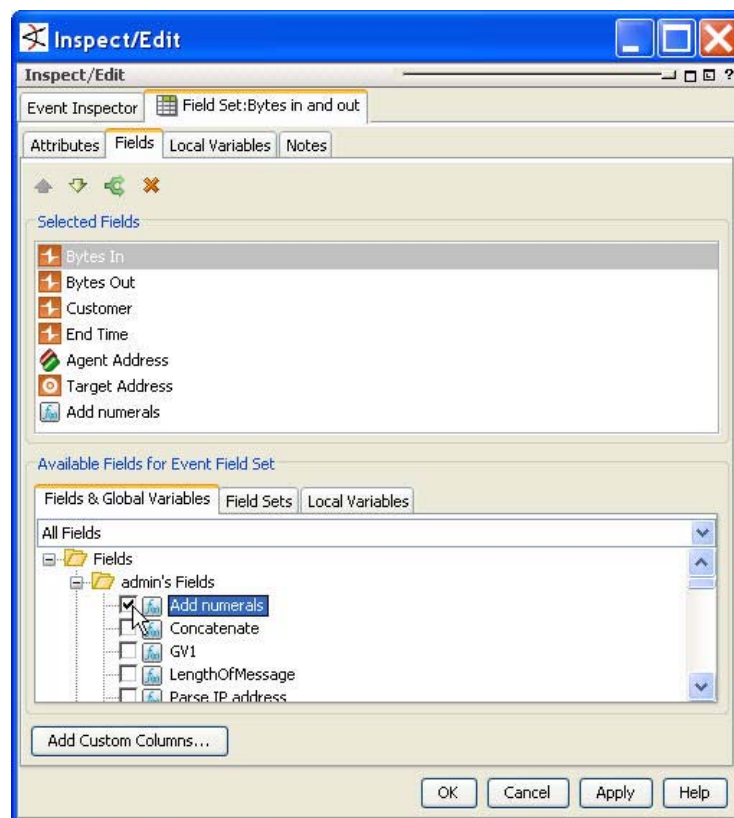
You can also add a global variable to a field set. Once you add a global variable to a field set, whenever you apply that field set in a resource, you can select the global variable directly without having to add it first.

There are five different types of field sets:

- **Actor field set.** An actor field set contains only actor-related fields. Only a global variable created using actor fields can be added to an actor field set.
- **Asset field set.** An asset field set contains only asset-related fields. Only a global variable created using asset fields can be added to an asset field set.
- **Case field set.** A case field set contains only case-related fields. Only a global variable created using case fields can be added to a case field set.
- **Event field set.** An event field set is a named subset of available data fields from the security event schema.

### To add a global variable to a field set:

- 1 Go to **Field Sets** resource, which opens by default to the **Field Sets** tab. Either create a new field set (right-click a group and choose **New Field Set**) or edit an existing field set (right-click a field set and choose **Edit Field Set**).
- 2 In the Field Set editor Fields tab where you can select fields, click the **Fields & Global Variables** tab and select an available global variable. Click **OK**.



For details about creating a field set, see [“Creating a Field Set” on page 156](#).

## Adding Global Variables to an Active Channel


When you initially create an active channel, you can only apply fields that are defined as a field set, either an existing one, or an ad hoc one you define one when setting up the active channel.

Global variables can only be added to an active channel from an existing field set that contains them. If an existing field set contains one or more global variables, those global variable fields become part of your active channel.

However, if you are defining the fields ad hoc from the New Active Channel dialog, the Define Grid Fields selector does not present global variable fields.

### Viewing global variables in the Event Inspector

When you view events in an active channel and open an event that contains a global variable field in the Event Inspector, you may need to refresh the Event Inspector view to see the global variable fields, because the Manager processes global variable data differently from regular event data.

- If the Hide Empty Rows icon  is on (so empty rows are not displayed), you may not see the global variable fields in the event inspector.
- To refresh the view, de-select, then re-select the Hide Empty Rows icon.

## Chaining a Global Variable

You can “chain” variables, that is, use one variable as a function parameter for another. The parent (outer) variable doing the chaining can be either a local or global variable.

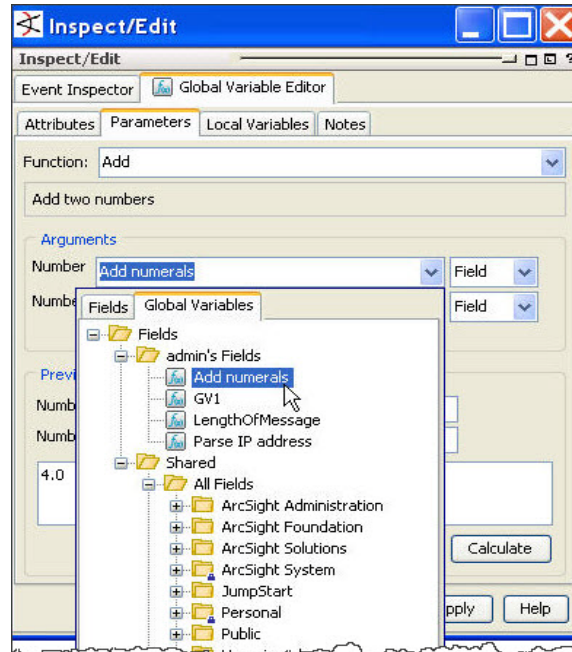
A variable (local or global) may be chained inside another variable only if the child (inner) variable's return type is compatible with the outer variable's parameter type. For example, an ADD function variable can be chained inside a variable that takes a numeric parameter.



Before making one variable a function parameter of another variable, create the inner variable first, and make sure that its data type is compatible with the function you want the outer variable to perform.

These steps show an example of chaining two global variables using the Global Variable Editors' Parameters tab. You can also chain a global variable in the parameters of a local variable defined in the Local Variable tab of the Global Variable editor.

- 1 In the Global Variable Editor's Parameters tab, select a function that matches the data type of the global variable function you want to chain. For example, if you want to perform an arithmetic function, the child (inner) variable should be a number.



- 2 In the Arguments section, select the inner global variable from the Global tab.
- 3 Verify that the arguments you entered in the Function and Arguments fields return the values you want by entering sample parameters in the *Preview* fields.

In the case of global variables that perform lookups from Active or Session Lists, the nested sub-fields (representing the list columns) are also available for selection, provided the sub-fields are the required data type.

## Chapter 14

# Use Cases

---

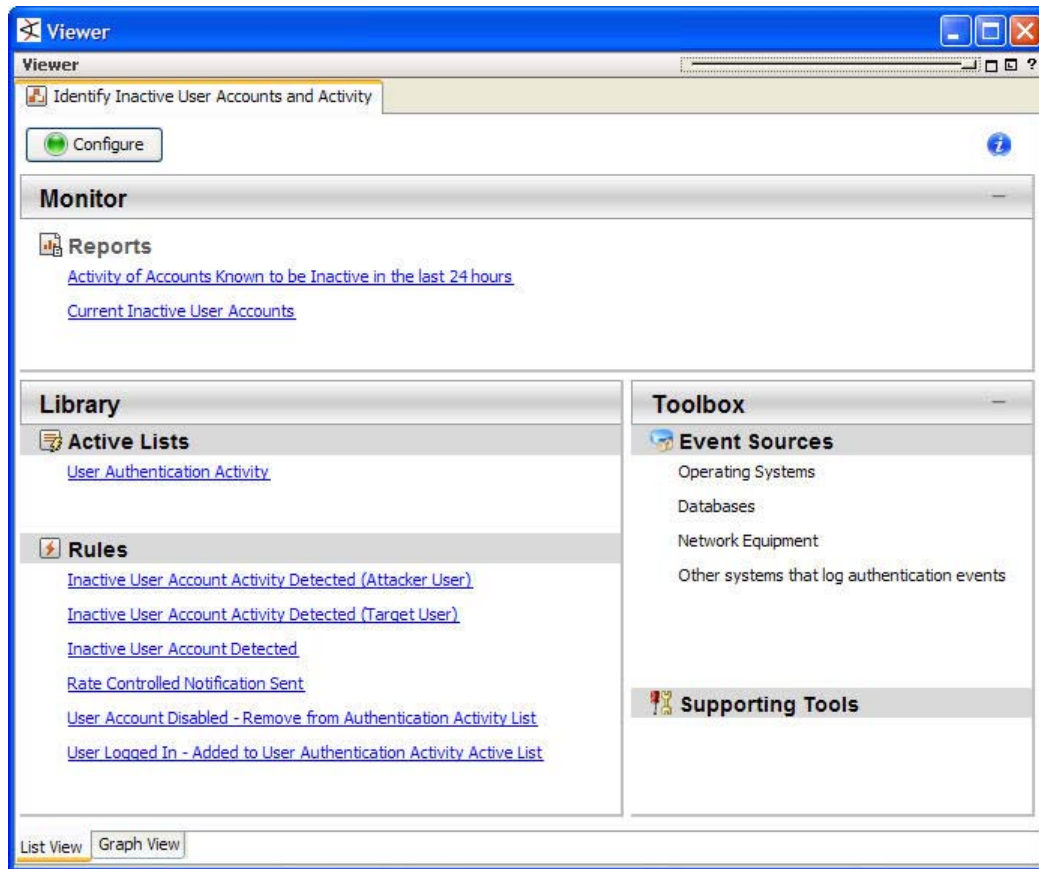
Use cases are a way to view, configure, and transport specially developed sets of related resources that address specific security issues and business requirements.

[“About Use Cases” on page 457](#)  
[“Navigating to Use Cases” on page 459](#)  
[“Master Use Cases” on page 459](#)  
[“Standard Use Cases” on page 460](#)  
[“Installing Use Cases” on page 461](#)  
[“Viewing and Using Use Cases” on page 462](#)  
[“Configuring Use Cases” on page 464](#)  
[“Configuration Panels” on page 471](#)

## About Use Cases

Use cases are special ArcSight content groupings that provide an integrated console-based alternative for viewing and interacting with resources to the standard one-resource-at-a-time viewing method offered in the Resource tree of the Navigator panel. Use cases also make it easy to configure shared resources in a single operation, and to export related resources in an ArcSight Resource Bundle for use in other ArcSight instances. Use cases are currently available only for ArcSight-provided content.

The example below shows all the resources that make up a comprehensive use case for monitoring inactive users. The resources are organized into the function they serve: monitoring resources, a library of correlation resources that drive the use case, and a toolbox of supporting tools, including event sources.



From this centralized home page, you can monitor the dashboards and channels, edit the filters, field sets, and data monitors, view the associated event sources and notification destinations, and perform other relevant workflow tasks related to the use case.

ArcSight provides use cases delivered in ArcSight Resource Bundles (.arb) ready to be installed from the `ARCSIGHT_HOME/current/jumpstart` directory. The Jumpstart directory delivers ArcSight start-up content designed to streamline the process of getting your environment customized and online analyzing events quickly. Learn more about use cases and those provided in the jumpstart directory in [“Standard Use Cases” on page 460](#).

For resources that require configuration with values specific to your operating environment, the Use Cases feature provides a Use Case configuration wizard to configure them in a simple, centralized operation as described in [“Configuring Use Cases” on page 464](#).



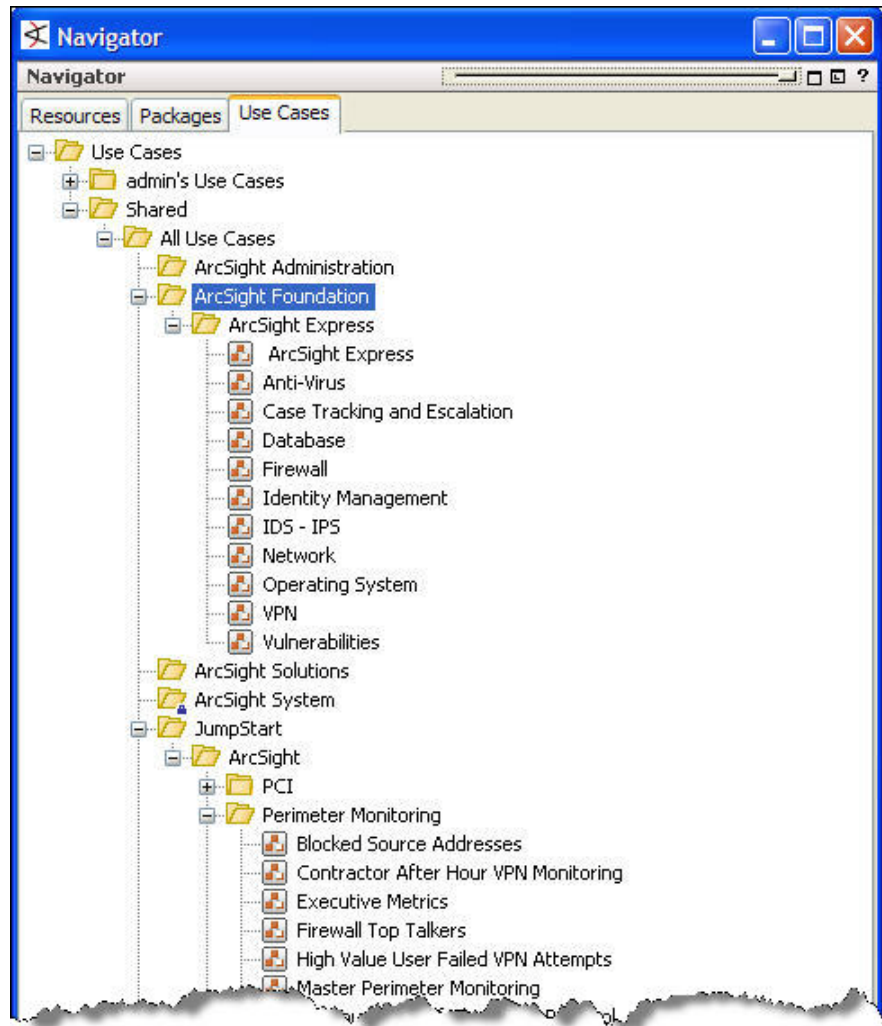
**Note**

Users with Admin privileges should use Configuration wizard.

Because many different types of resources are included in a given use case from many different locations in the individual resource trees, HP recommends that only users with Admin privileges run the use case configuration wizard. This ensures that the user performing the configuration has adequate permissions to access the configurable resources.

## Navigating to Use Cases

Like packages, use cases span resources, so they are presented in their own tab in the Navigator panel parallel with resources and packages. The example below shows the standard use case resources installed automatically in the ArcSight Foundation tree, and the Perimeter Monitoring use case available for installation as a Jumpstart package.



When a use case resource is installed, the resources that make up a use case are distributed in different locations throughout the individual resource trees in the Resources tab. When a use case home page is opened in the Viewer panel, the use case home page provides a right-click option that enables you to locate a given resource in the individual resource navigator.

## Master Use Cases

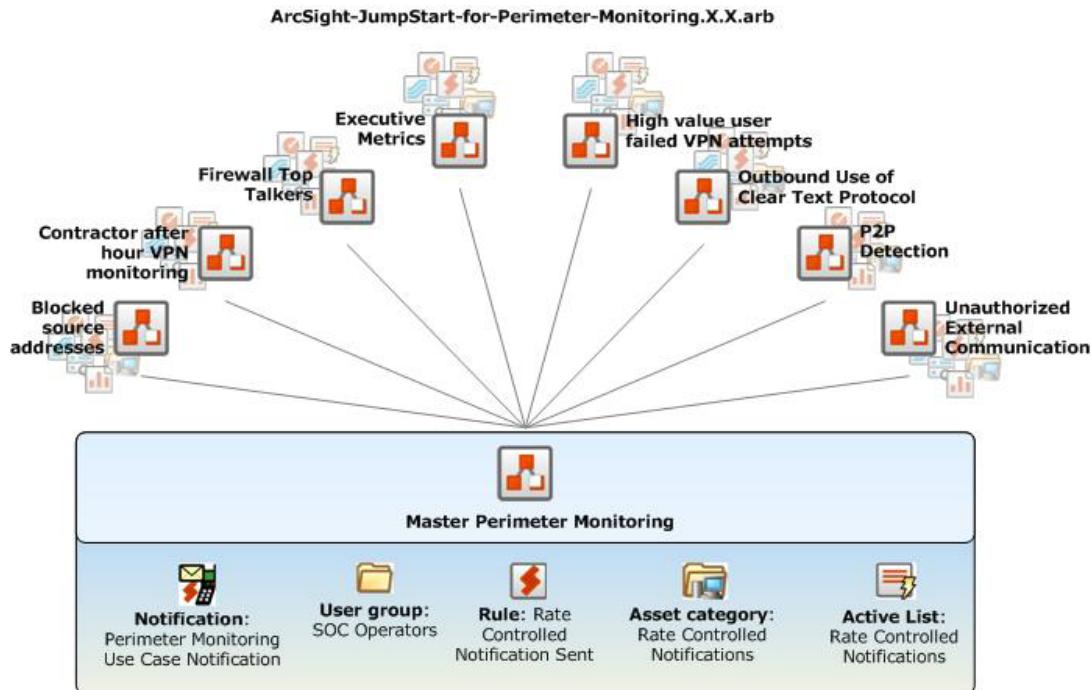
For scenarios that call for multiple related use cases, any common resources shared by a group of related use cases can be managed by a master use case. A master use case is simply another use case that contains resources shared by other related use cases. Master



use cases help centralize any configuration required to tailor the use case to your operating environment.

## How Master Use Cases Work

A use case may contain several related use cases. Common resources that serve all the use cases are contained in a master use case. Running the use case configuration wizard on any use case configures that single use case as well as the master use case resources, if they are not already configured. The diagram below illustrates the use cases that make up the ArcSight Jumpstart for Perimeter Monitoring family of use cases.



When a master use case is present, the **Use Case** configuration wizard for the master use case is automatically launched when the ARB containing the group of related use cases is installed. The individual use cases that are part of that group all reference the configurations set in the master use case.

## Standard Use Cases

The use cases provided with the product are designed to get it customized quickly to your environment and analyzing events quickly. To see the use cases that are available, refer to Standard Content Guides for ESM, available at <https://protect724.arcsight.com>.

For information about ArcSight System or ArcSight Administration content, refer to the ArcSight System and the ArcSight Administration Standard Content Guide. For information about an optional foundation, refer to the Standard Content Guide for that foundation.

HP provides use cases delivered in ArcSight Resource Bundles (.arb) ready to be installed from the `ARCSIGHT_HOME/current/jumpstart` directory. The Jumpstart directory delivers ArcSight start-up content designed to streamline the process of getting your environment customized and online analyzing events for perimeter monitoring and user



monitoring, and addressing regulatory requirements for PCI and SOX. See [“Installing Use Cases” on page 461](#) for details on installing Jumpstart use cases.

**Table 14-1 Use Case Bundles**

Use Case Bundle	Description
<code>ArcSight-JumpStart-for-PCI.1.0.5787.arb</code>	Resources that can help determine when user accounts become inactive on PCI-regulated systems, part of a larger program for complying with Payment Card Industry regulations.
<code>ArcSight-JumpStart-for-Perimeter-Monitoring.1.0.5788.arb</code>	Resources that address activity coming into and going out of the network, such as VPN logins, outbound protocols, top firewall activity, blocked addresses, and P2P tracking.
<code>ArcSight-JumpStart-for-SOX.1.0.5789.arb</code>	Resources that address example accounting oversight use cases, part of a larger program for complying with the Sarbanes-Oxley act.
<code>ArcSight-JumpStart-for-User-Monitoring.1.0.5790.arb</code>	Resources that address general use cases relating to user activity on the network.

Once installed, the jumpstart use cases appear in the Jumpstart group in the Navigator panel.

## Installing Use Cases


This topic describes how to install a use case from an ARB file in the `ARCSIGHT_HOME/current/jumpstart` directory.

- 1 Log into the ArcSight Console as the ESM Administrator.



Only Admin users should use the Configuration wizard

Because many different types of resources are included in a given use case from many different locations in the individual resource trees, HP recommends that only users with Admin privileges run the use case configuration wizard. This ensures that the user performing the configuration has adequate permissions to access the configurable resources.

- 2 In the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel, click **Import** (  ).
- 3 Browse to the `ARCSIGHT_HOME/current/jumpstart` directory, select a use case ARB file to import, and click **Open**.  
  
When the import is complete, the Results tab of the Importing Packages dialog is displayed as well as the Packages for Installation dialog.
- 4 In the Packages for Installation dialog box, verify that the package Install checkbox is selected and click **Next**.  
  
The progress of the install is displayed in the Progress tab of the Installing Packages dialog. When the install is complete, the Results tab of the Installing Packages dialog displays the Summary Report.
- 5 In the Installing Packages dialog, click **OK**.

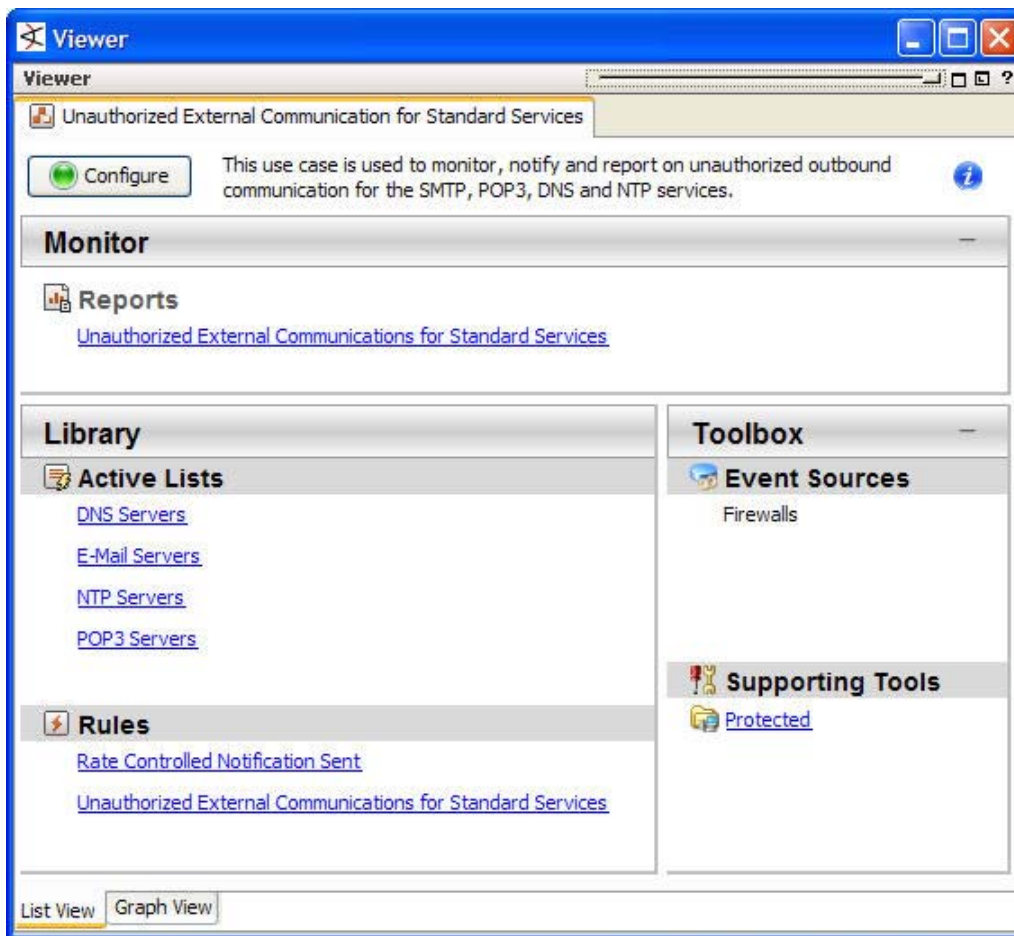
- 6 In the Importing Packages dialog, click **OK**.

If a master use case is associated with a use case group in the ARB file, the **Use Case** wizard launches and starts configuring the master use case associated with the use case group. The master use case is provided so you can configure the common resources used by the use cases in the group in a single process using the configuration. For more information, see [“Master Use Cases” on page 459](#). For instructions on using the **Use Case** wizard, see [“Configuring Use Cases” on page 464](#).



For more information, see [“Importing Packages” on page 649](#) and [“Installing Packages” on page 651](#).

## Viewing and Using Use Cases

To open a use case in the Viewer panel, double-click the use case in the Use Cases tab of the Navigator panel, or right-click the use case and select **Open Use Case**. The Use Case opens in the Viewer panel.



The use case viewer is organized into the following sections:

Use Case Section	Description
 Configure	The Configure button launches the <b>Use Case</b> configuration wizard.
	The information section contains a description of the use case.
Monitor	The Monitor section contains monitoring-related resources: active channels, dashboards, reports, focused reports, and query viewers.
Library	The Library section contains a section for every type of correlation resource that drives the use case: active lists, session lists, field sets, filters, queries, rules, trends, actors, fields, and data monitors.
Toolbox	The Toolbox section contains event sources and supporting resources, such as notification destinations, groups, and other use cases.
Supporting Tools	The Supporting Tools section contains any other resource types included by the content author.



View the use case and its associated resources in a resource graph

You can view a resource graph of the use case and its associated resources by selecting the Graph View tab at the bottom of the Viewer panel.

## Accessing Resources from the Viewer Panel

When a use case is open in the List View tab of the Viewer panel, you can view, edit, navigate, or graph a use case resource by right-clicking the resource and selecting from one of the following options:

- **View**—Open the resource in the Viewer panel to view the contents of the resource. This option is not available for all resources.
- **Edit**—Open the resource for editing in the Inspect/Edit panel. For more information, see [“Inspecting and Editing” on page 50](#).
- **Find in Navigator**—Open the resource in the Navigator panel. For more information, see [“Navigating” on page 41](#).
- **Graph View**—View the association between this resource with other resources using a graphical viewer. For more information, see [“Visualizing Resources” on page 632](#).
- **Rule**—Enable or disable the rule. This option is available with a rule resource.
- **Trend**—Schedule the trend. This option is available with a trend resource.



View the use case and its associated resources in a resource graph

You can view a resource graph of the use case and its associated resources by selecting the Graph View tab at the bottom of the Viewer panel.

## Configuring Use Cases

ArcSight provides a **Use Case** configuration wizard to assist you in configuring all the resources in the use case to reflect your operating environment in a single operation.



You can still configure resources individually

If you need to change the configuration for a single resource in the use case, you can always use the individual resource editor.

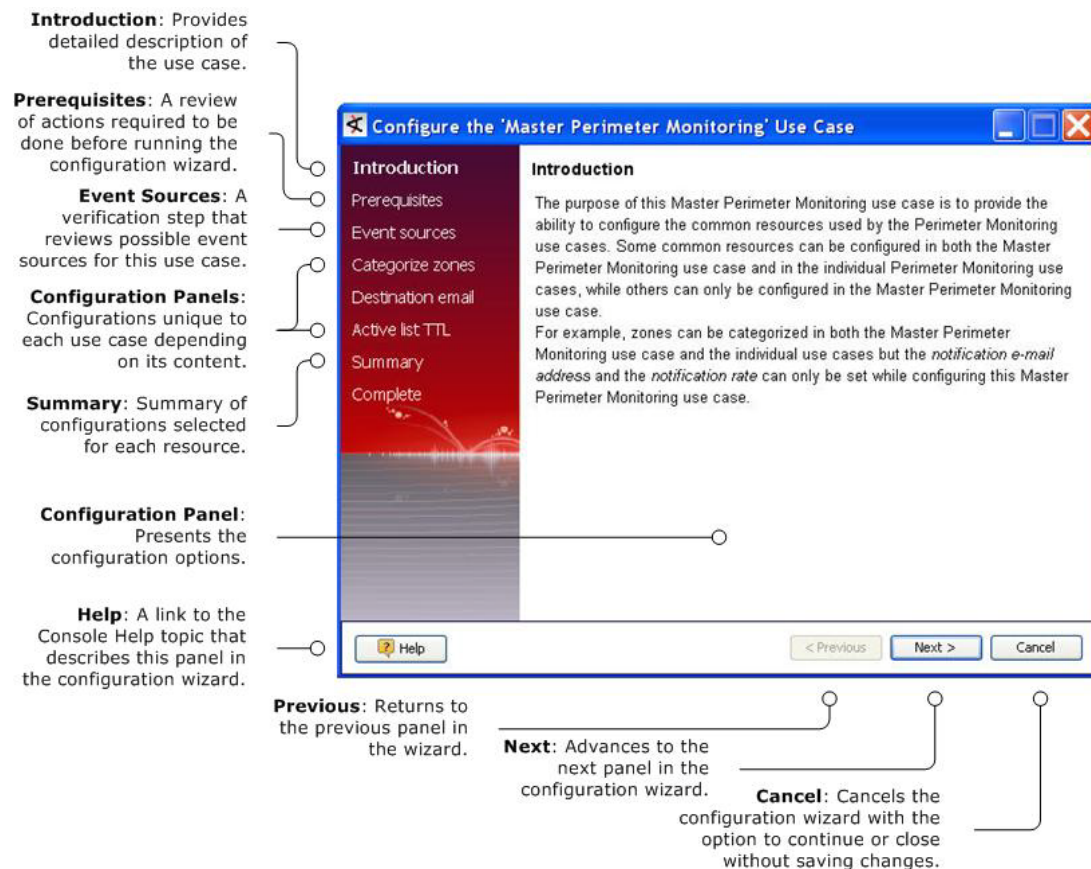


Only Admin users should use the Configuration wizard

Because many different types of resources are included in a given use case from many different locations in the individual resource trees, HP recommends that only users with Admin privileges run the **Use Case** configuration wizard. This ensures that the user performing the configuration has adequate permissions to access the configurable resources.

## Navigating the Use Case Configuration Wizard

The **Use Case** configuration wizard consists of the following features:



To use the **Use Case** wizard:

- ["Step 1 - Model Your Network" on page 465](#)
- ["Step 2 - Install Use Case Package Bundles" on page 465](#)
- ["Step 3 - Launch the Use Case Wizard" on page 465](#)
- ["Step 4 - Introduction Panel" on page 465](#)
- ["Step 5 - Prerequisites Panel" on page 466](#)
- ["Step 6 - Confirm Event Sources Panel" on page 467](#)
- ["Step 7 - Configuration Panels" on page 468](#)
- ["Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel" on page 469](#)

## Step 1 - Model Your Network

Model your network first as a part of the initial configuration of ESM. Use case configuration requires having a network model in place. So, model your network before running the **Use Case** wizard.

To assist in modeling your network, a Network Model wizard is provided on the ArcSight Console (menu option **Tools > Network Model**). For more information, see ["About the Network Model" on page 695](#).

## Step 2 - Install Use Case Package Bundles

Do this step only if you plan to use one of the use cases supplied in the ArcSight jumpstart directory.

Import and install the use case package bundle that contains the use case (if it is not already installed). For more information, see ["Installing Use Cases" on page 461](#).

## Step 3 - Launch the Use Case Wizard

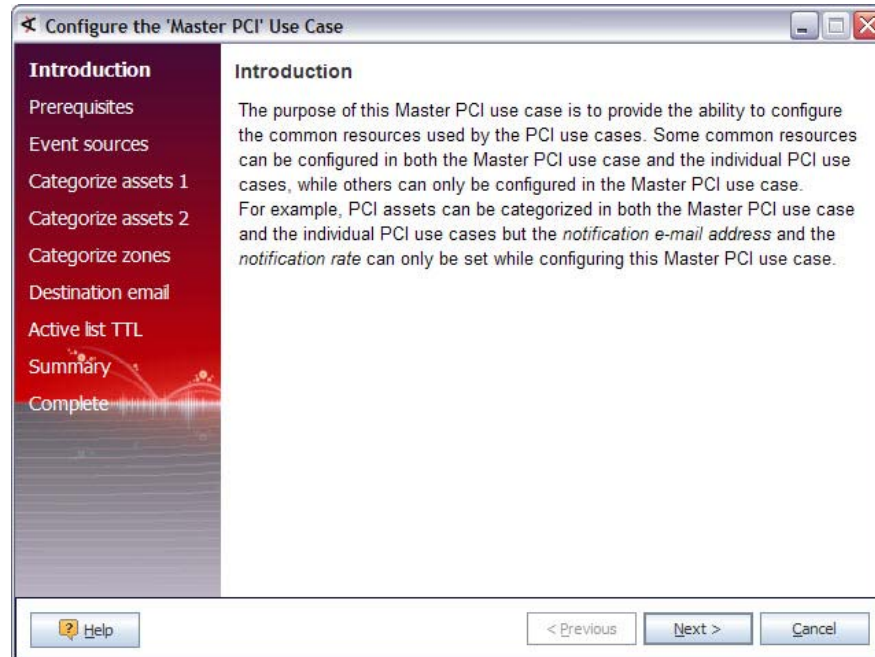
Launch the **Use Case** wizard using one of the following methods:

- **Browse from the Navigator panel**—In the Navigator panel, select the **Use Cases** tab, right-click a use case and select **Configure Use Case**.
- **From the Console menus**—Choose **Tools > Use Case** from the menus. Select a use case from the tree in the wizard and click **Next**.
- **From the Viewer panel**—In the Navigator panel, select the **Use Cases** tab, right-click a use, and select **Open Use Case**. In the Viewer panel, click **Configure Use Case**.

The Introduction panel of the **Use Case** wizard displays.

## Step 4 - Introduction Panel

The Introduction panel describes the purpose of the use case. If you are configuring a master use case, the introduction specifies if there are essential common resources that can only be configured using the master use case. For more information, see ["Master Use Cases" on page 459](#).



Click **Next**.

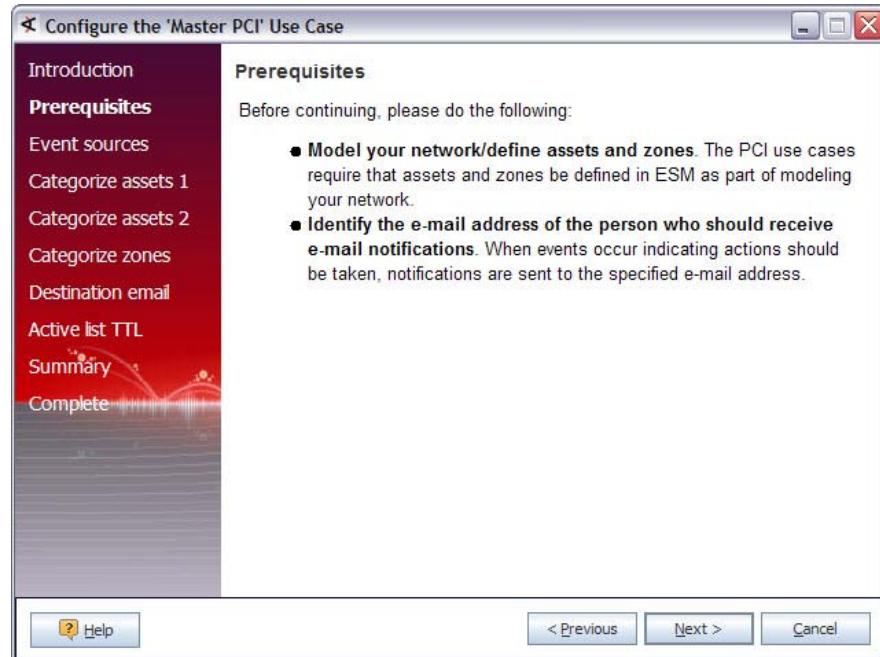
The Prerequisites panel is displayed as shown in [Step 5 - Prerequisites Panel](#).

## Step 5 - Prerequisites Panel

The Prerequisites panel describes required actions or information needed before continuing with the **Use Case** wizard:

- **Any actions that should be completed before running the Use Case wizard.** For example, your network should be modeled before using the **Use Case** wizard to configure the use case. A Network Model wizard is provided from the ArcSight Console (menu option **Tools > Network Model**). For more information, see ["About the Network Model" on page 695](#). Complete these actions before continuing with the **Use Case** wizard.
- **The information that needs to be provided when running the Use Case wizard to configure the use case.** For example, the number of days before a user is required to change their passwords or the network devices on your network that are subject to the PCI regulation. Gather this information before continuing with the **Use Case** wizard.



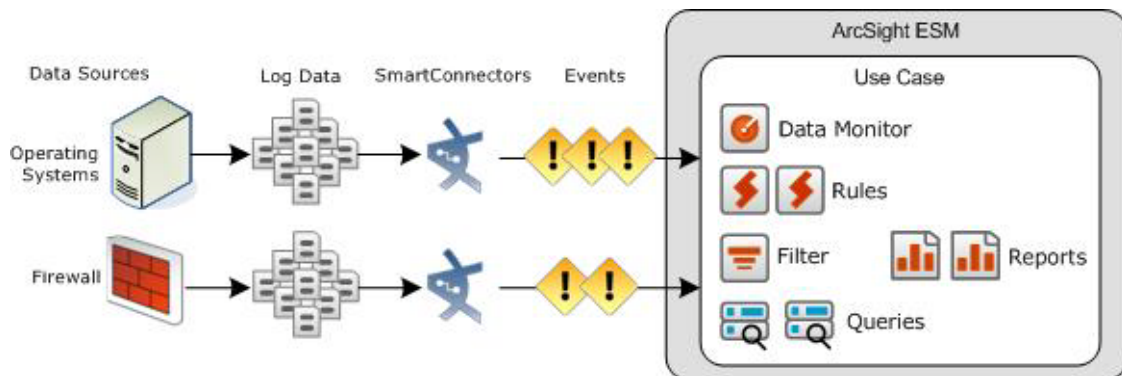


Click **Next**.

The Confirm Event Sources panel is displayed as shown in Step 6 - Confirm Event Sources Panel.

## Step 6 - Confirm Event Sources Panel

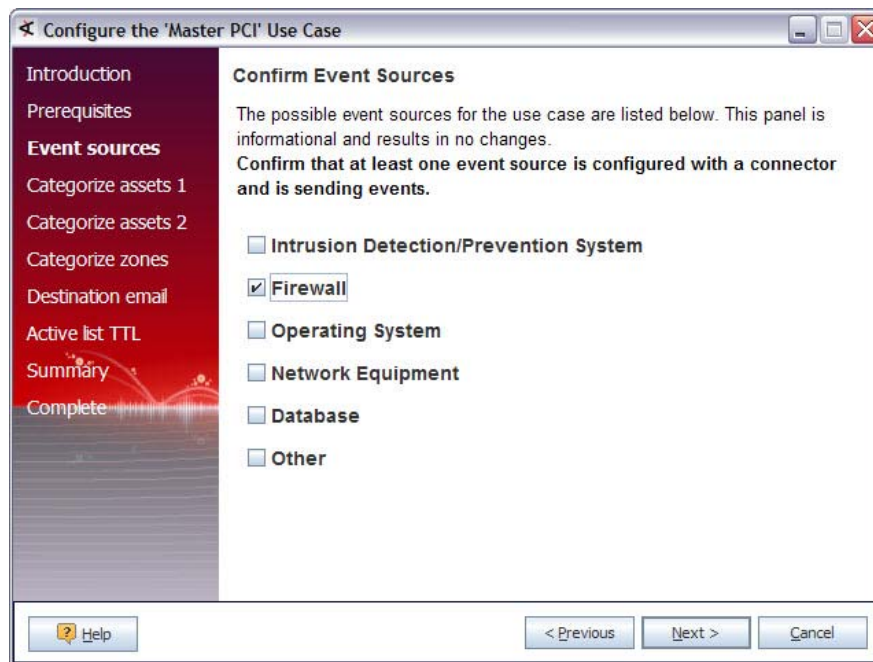
The Confirm Event Sources panel lists the event sources that send events to the Manager through a SmartConnector for the use case. SmartConnectors collect log data from event sources (such as firewalls and operating systems) and generate events that are sent to ESM as shown in the following diagram:



The resources in the use case are driven by these events and without the event sources, the use case does not generate output. For more information, see *Devices and Connectors in a Network* in ESM 101 and [Chapter 22, Managing SmartConnectors, on page 657](#).

For your environment, confirm the event sources that are configured with a SmartConnector and supplying events to ESM for this use case. For most use cases, you are asked to confirm that **at least one of the listed event source** is configured with a SmartConnector and sending events to ESM.

Confirm the event sources and click **Next**.



After the Confirm Event Sources panel, a series of configuration panels are displayed.

## Step 7 - Configuration Panels

The series of configuration panels displayed depends on the resources that make up the use case and are different for each use case.

In these configuration panels, you are prompted to supply values that reflect your environment. The values you provide are used to populate the settings in the resources that make up the use case. After the series of configuration panels, the Summary of Settings to Apply panel appears. The settings are not actually saved to the resources until the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel. If you click Cancel in any of the configuration panels or in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel, none of the configuration settings specified in any of the configuration panels are saved.

The **Use Case** wizard displays the following types of configuration panels:

- ["Categorize Assets/Zones Panels" on page 471](#)
- ["Populate Active List" on page 473](#)
- ["Specify the Notification E-mail Address Panel" on page 475](#)
- ["Set the Inactivity Time Period Panel" on page 476](#)
- ["Set the Notification Rate Panel" on page 476](#)
- ["Schedule Daily Report Panels" on page 477](#)
- ["Schedule Weekly Report Panels" on page 479](#)
- ["Schedule Monthly Report Panels" on page 480](#)
- ["Schedule Yearly Report Panels" on page 482](#)



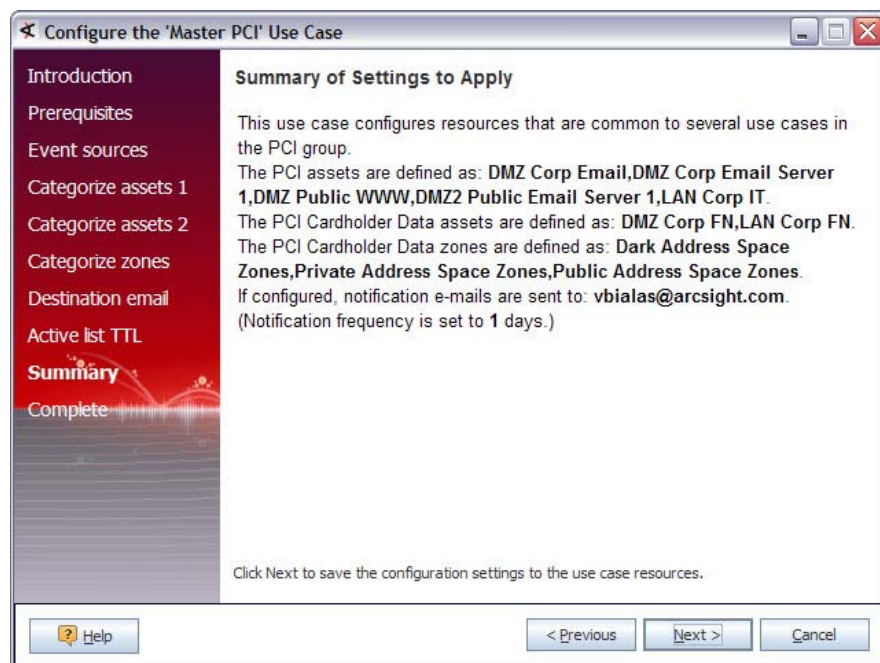
For each configuration panel, follow the instructions in the appropriate configuration panel and Help topic and click **Next**. Repeat until the Summary of Settings to Apply panel appears as shown in “Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel” on page 469.

## Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel

The Summary of Settings to Apply panel displays a summary of the settings you specified in the previous configuration panels.

Choose one of the following options:

- To apply the settings specified in the previous configuration panels to the use case resources, click **Next**.
- To cancel without applying settings, click **Cancel**.
- To go back to the previous panel, click **Previous**.

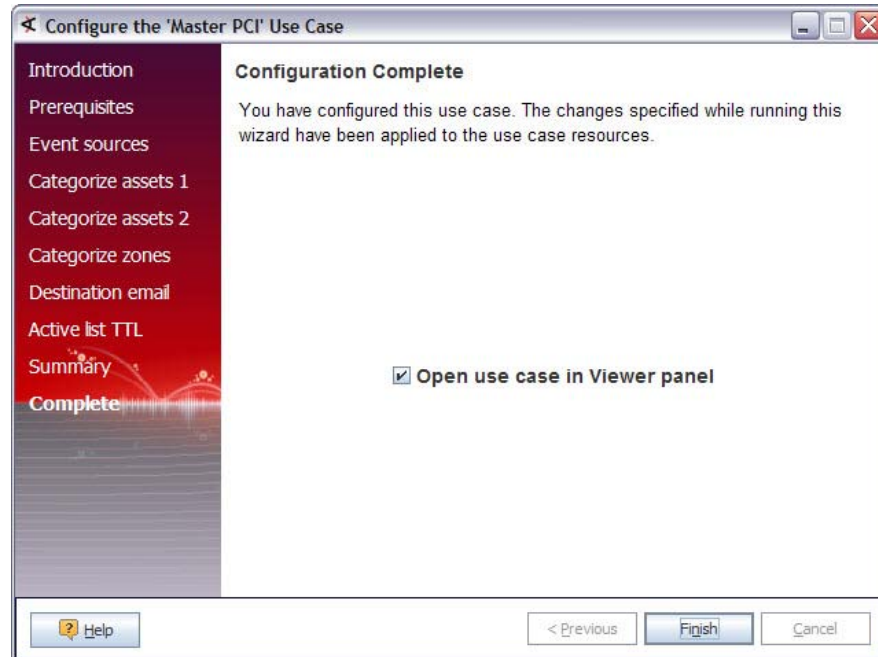


After you click Next, the settings are applied to the resources in the use case. If the use case contains data monitors, the data monitors are enabled.

A Commit Changes dialog briefly displays as the settings are applied to the use case resources. After the settings have been applied, a Configuration Complete panel displays as shown in the next step: Step 9 - Configuration Complete Panel.

## Step 9 - Configuration Complete Panel

The Configuration Complete panel displays a message indicating that you have completed configuration of the use case.



Leave the *Open use case in Viewer panel* checkbox selected and click **Finish**.

The Console displays the use case in the Viewer panel, and use case configuration is complete. If the event sources for this use case are configured with a SmartConnector and are sending events to ESM, the following actions occur:

- The “library” resources in this use case, such as rules, data monitors, and queries, start processing events.
- If the conditions in the use case are met, data is provided to the output resources of the use case such as reports, active channels, dashboards, and cases.

In the future, you can reconfigure the use case resources, using either of the following methods:

- Run the **Use Case** wizard again—For more information, see [“Step 3 - Launch the Use Case Wizard” on page 465](#).
- Edit the resource directly in the Navigator panel—For more information, see [“Navigating” on page 41](#).

## Configuration Panels

After the Confirm Event Sources panel, the configuration wizard presents a series of configuration panels. The set of configuration panels displayed depends on the content of the use case and is different for each use case.

["Categorize Assets/Zones Panels" on page 471](#)  
["Populate Active List" on page 473](#)  
["Specify the Notification E-mail Address Panel" on page 475](#)  
["Set the Inactivity Time Period Panel" on page 476](#)  
["Set the Notification Rate Panel" on page 476](#)  
["Schedule Daily Report Panels" on page 477](#)  
["Schedule Weekly Report Panels" on page 479](#)  
["Schedule Monthly Report Panels" on page 480](#)  
["Schedule Yearly Report Panels" on page 482](#)  
["Enable Rules Panel" on page 484](#)  
["Enable Rule Actions Panel" on page 485](#)  
["Set Session List Entry Expiry Panel" on page 486](#)

After going through the series of configuration panels, the Summary of Settings to Apply panel is displayed. Return to ["Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel" on page 469](#).

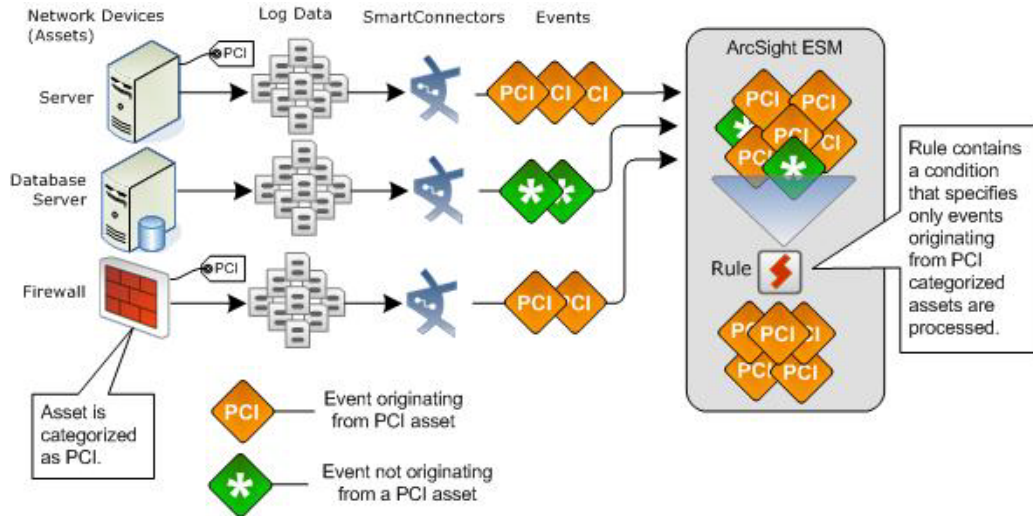
## Categorize Assets/Zones Panels

In the Categorize Assets or Zones panels, you are asked to classify assets or zones into an ESM category. A logical category (such as PCI or SOX) can be applied to assets, asset ranges, asset groups, zones, or zone groups.

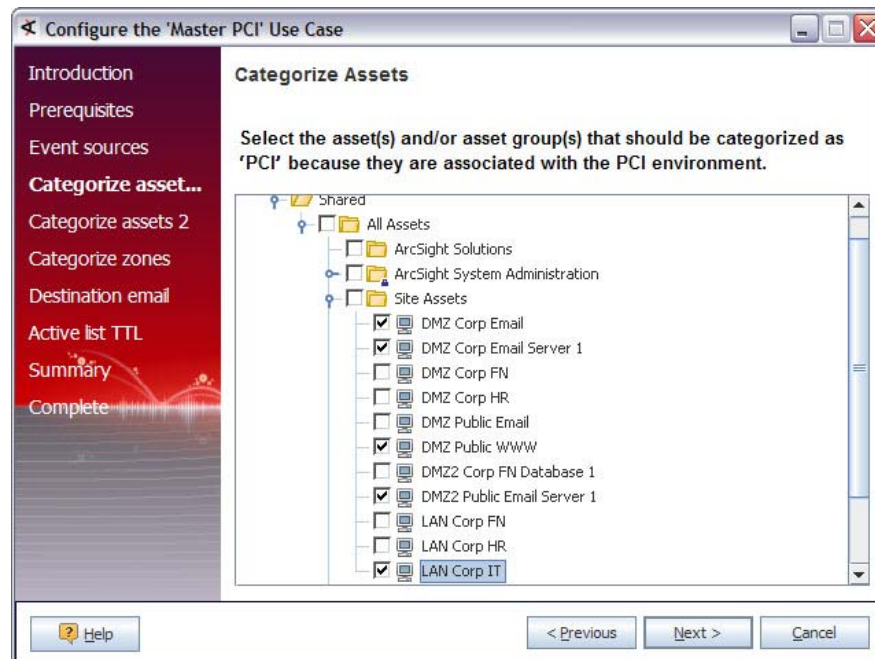
A group is a folder containing one or more, related resources. For example, zone groups are folders in which one or more zone resources are stored. Although the assets contained in a zone do not inherit the properties of a zone, the zone groups are hierarchical, which means that properties assigned to a zone group apply to all the zones contained within that group.

These categories provide a cross-referencing capability that makes it possible to track and filter network activity based on business relevance. Using these categories, the events processed by the use case resources can be restricted.

For example, classifying assets into the PCI group can limit the set of events processed by the use case resources to only those events that originate from PCI assets. For example, a rule in a PCI use case may be configured to only process events originating from assets categorized as PCI as shown in the following diagram:



In the Categorized PCI Assets panel, you are prompted to supply the network devices (assets) that should be regulated by the Payment Card Industry (PCI) standard and therefore categorized as a PCI asset, as shown in the following example. The assets and asset groups you select in this panel are classified as a PCI asset in ESM.



For more information, see [“Network Model” on page 696](#), [“Categories” on page 808](#), and [“Asset Model” in the ESM 101](#). If any assets/zones have already been categorized, a check mark displays next to the asset/zone name. If your assets/zones are already categorized and no revisions need to be made, click **Next** to skip this step. For example, if you already categorized your assets/zones in the master use case, you do not need to categorize your assets/zones again. You can however, revise your asset/zone categorization while configuring the individual use case.

Select the assets that should be categorized and click **Next**.



The new categorization is not applied until **Next** is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel as described in [“Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel” on page 469](#).

The categorization of assets, assets groups, zones, or zone groups is global in ESM and not specific to a use case. Any categorization changes made in this panel (while configuring either an individual use case or the master use case) affect any resources that reference this category in any use case. The last set of categorization changes, applied by clicking Next in the *Summary of Settings to Apply* panel, overrides any previous settings.

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Populate Active List

If your use case includes one or more field-based (static) active lists for looking up non-event related data, the use case configuration wizard includes the Populate Active List panels.

In the Populate Active List panels, you are prompted for sets of data that are used to populate Fields-based active lists. Active lists store data over a period of time. Resources such as rules and data monitors can reference the data stored in active lists. For example, an active list could store the port numbers that are allowed access to the PCI Card Holder Data Environment (CDE). For more information, see *How Active Lists Work* in the ESM 101.

You may be prompted for a single column of data or multi-column sets of data. For example, you might be prompted to supply a set of trusted port numbers (one column of data) or a set of default User Accounts and associated Vendor Names (two columns of data). The data you provide in the panels is added to the data that may already exist in the active list.

### To define the input data:

- 1 If you plan to import the data using a CSV file, create the CSV file to import. The data types of the columns and the number of columns in the CSV file must match the columns in the active list. For example, in the Define Default User Accounts panel, you are prompted to provide a set of default User Accounts and associated Vendor Names. The *Default User Account-Vendor List* active list is a two column active list that expects default User Accounts in the first column and associated Vendor Names in the second column.
- 2 Select a method for populating the active list. In the first Define Data Sets panel, select one of the following options:
  - ◆ **Import CSV file**—Provide the data by importing a Comma-Separated Value (CSV) file
  - ◆ **Manual data entry**—Provide the data by typing the values directly into a table.

Configure the 'PCI 2.1 - Monitor Default User Accounts' Use Case

**Introduction**

Prerequisites

Event sources

Categorize assets

**Populate active list**

Daily report

Summary

Complete

## Define Default User Accounts

Supply the default user accounts and vendor names for your network e.g. scott Oracle. If a CSV file is used, it should contain two columns.

User Account	Vendor Name
jeff	Unix

Add Remove

? Help < Previous Next > Cancel

- 3 If the **Import CSV file** option is selected, click... and browse for a CSV file to import. Select the file and click **OK**.
- 4 Click **Next**.

The second define data panel displays as shown.

[illegible]

If you imported data using a CSV file, the data is displayed in the panel.



- 5 Enter values.
- 6 Add additional rows as needed:
  - a Click **Add**.
  - b Enter the data into the new row.
- 7 Click **Next**.

When Next is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel as described in [“Step 8 - Summary of Settings to Apply Panel” on page 469](#), the new values are added to the existing values already present in the active list. If you specify a value that already exists in the active list, an additional entry is added and the Count for that entry is increased by one.

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Specify the Notification E-mail Address Panel

In the Specify the Notification E-mail Address panel, you are prompted to supply an e-mail address or an e-mail alias (distribution list). If an e-mail address is specified, a notification (alert) is sent to the specified e-mail address when the conditions described in the panel are satisfied. For example, the use case could contain a rule that tests when default system accounts are used. Once the rule is triggered, an e-mail notification is sent to the specified e-mail address or distribution list.



The e-mail address does not have to be an ESM user.

In order for notifications to be sent to specified e-mail address, notifications must be configured. For more information, see [“Managing Notifications” on page 615](#) and [“Acknowledging Notifications” on page 58](#).

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Set the Inactivity Time Period Panel

In the *Inactivity Time Period* panel, you are prompted to supply an expiration time period as shown. In this example, an account expires if no logins have occurred within the specified time period.

The numeric value you specify sets the expiration time period in days. This expiration time period is the Time To Live (TTL) in days for an active list. Entries in the active list expire when the Time To Live (TTL) has been reached. This expiration causes an event to be generated. This event can be used by other ESM resources such as filters and rules. For more information, see [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#).

For example, in the *PCI 8.5 - Identify Inactive User Accounts* use case, you are prompted to supply the Inactivity Time Period. If you answer 45 days, the Time To Live (TTL) for the *Users Who Accessed Cardholder Data* active list is set to 45 days which means once an account has been on the active list (indicating no activity) for more than 45 days, it expires. This expiration generates an event which triggers the *Inactive User Account Detected* rule.



**Caution**

The value specified in this panel is saved as Time To Live (TTL) in days for the active list. If other resources reference this active list, the change to the TTL value can affect the behavior of other resources listed in different use cases.

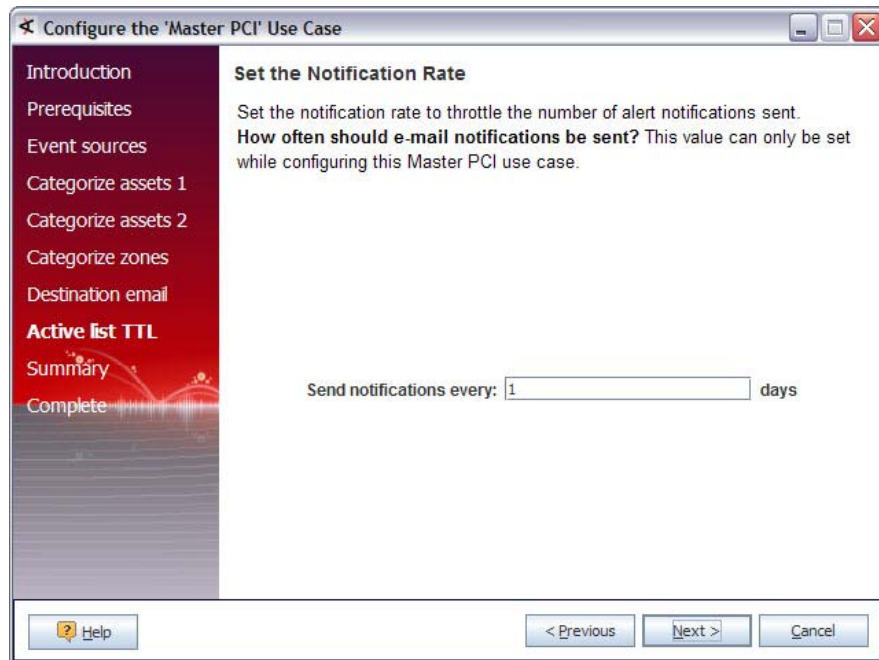
Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Set the Notification Rate Panel

In the *Set the Notification Rate* panel, you are prompted to specify how often a notification e-mail should be sent—the notification rate. This rate is used to throttle the number of alert notifications sent. The rate specified in this panel sets the Time To Live (TTL) in days for the *Rate Controlled Notifications* active list.



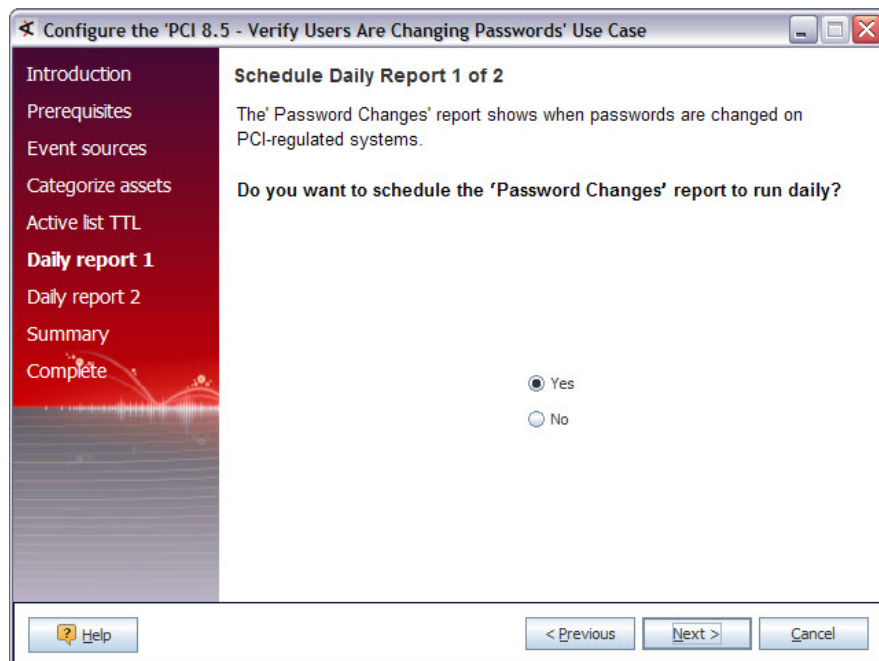
If the notification rate is set to 0, only one e-mail is sent for every issue until the entry is manually removed from the *Rate Controlled Notifications* active list.



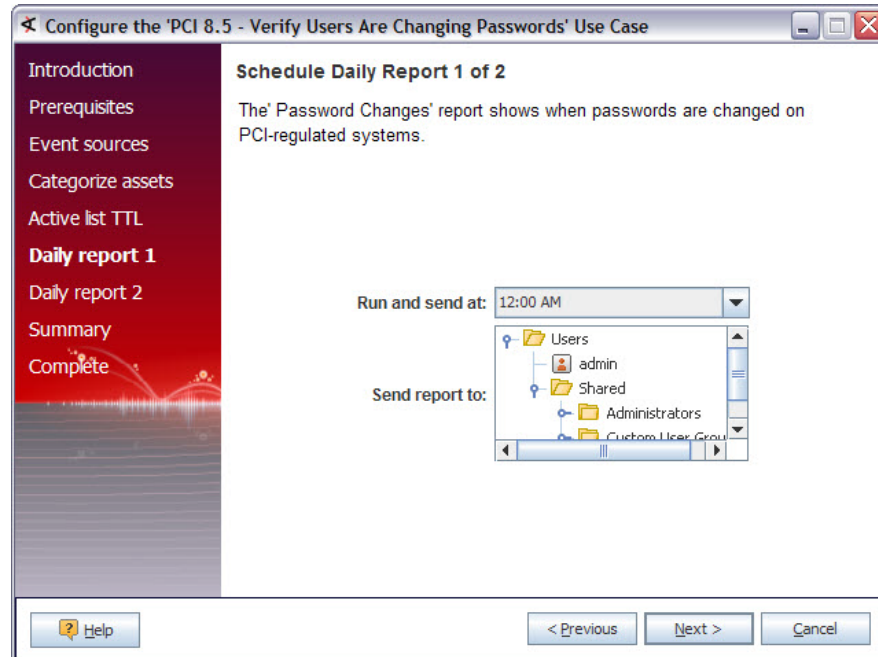
Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Schedule Daily Report Panels

In the *Schedule Daily Report* panel, you are prompted to schedule a daily report, as shown:



If you answer **Yes**, another panel displays as shown:



In the **Run and send at** field, select a time during the day when the report should run. When a report runs, the output of the report is stored on the ESM Manager. You can elect to send the report to the e-mail address associated with the ESM user.



Note

For best performance, schedule reports to run at different times during the day.

In the **Send report to** field, browse for an ESM user.



Note

In order for the report to be sent, an e-mail address must be specified for the selected ESM user. For more information about creating an ArcSight user or specifying an e-mail account for an ESM user, see ["Managing Users" on page 597](#). If no e-mail address is specified, the report is archived on the ArcSight Manager.

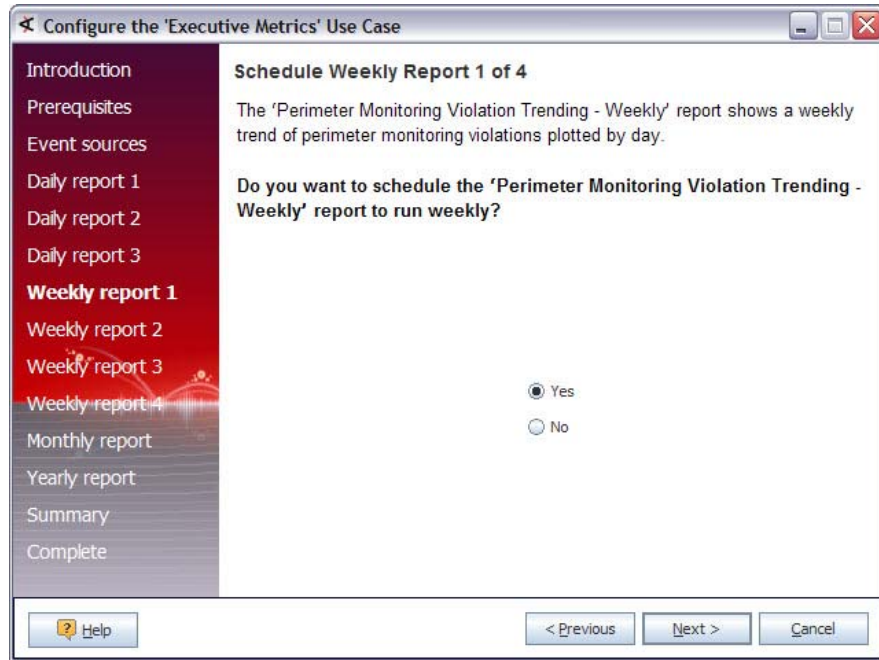
When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel, the **Use Case** wizard creates a job for the report called `Use Case Scheduled Job` that is scheduled to run daily. If you edit or remove the `Use Case Scheduled Job`, this can cause inconsistencies between the report and the wizard.

For more information, see [Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379](#).

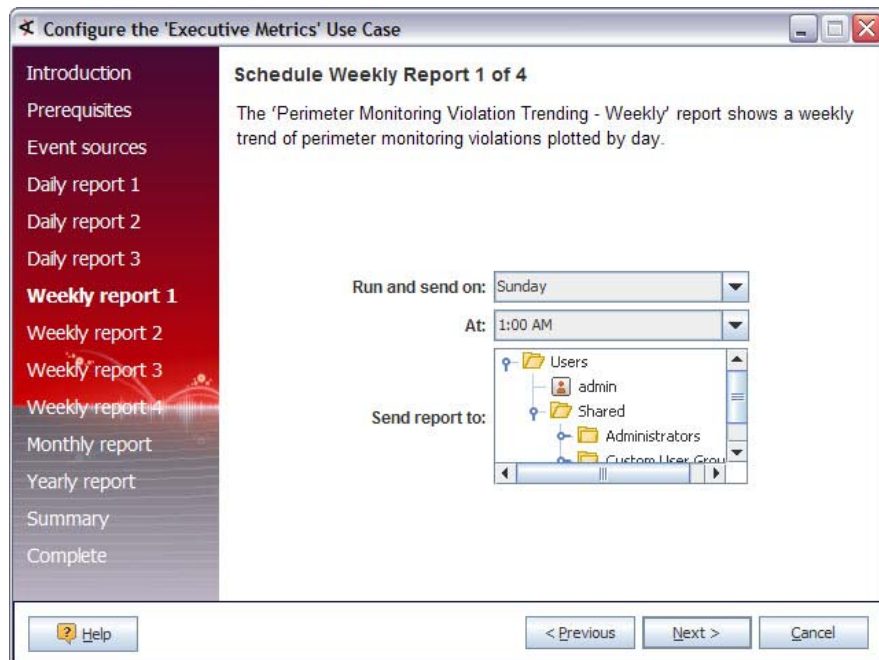
Return to the list of configuration panels in ["Step 7 - Configuration Panels" on page 468](#).

## Schedule Weekly Report Panels

In the **Schedule Weekly Report** panel, you are prompted to schedule a weekly report, as shown:



If you answer **Yes**, another panel displays as shown:



In the **Run and send on** field, select the day of the week when the report should run.

In the **At** field, select a time during the day when the report should run.



For best performance, schedule reports to run at different times during the day.

When a report runs, the output of the report is stored on the ArcSight Manager. You can elect to send the report to the e-mail address associated with the ESM user.

In the **Send report to** field, browse for an ESM user.



In order for the report to be sent, an e-mail address must be specified for the selected ESM user. For more information about creating an ESM user or specifying an e-mail account for an ESM user, see ["Managing Users" on page 597](#). If no e-mail address is specified, the report is archived on the ESM Manager.

When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel, the **Use Case** wizard creates a job for the report called `Use Case Scheduled Job` that is scheduled to run weekly. If you edit or remove the `Use Case Scheduled Job`, this can cause inconsistencies between the report and the wizard.



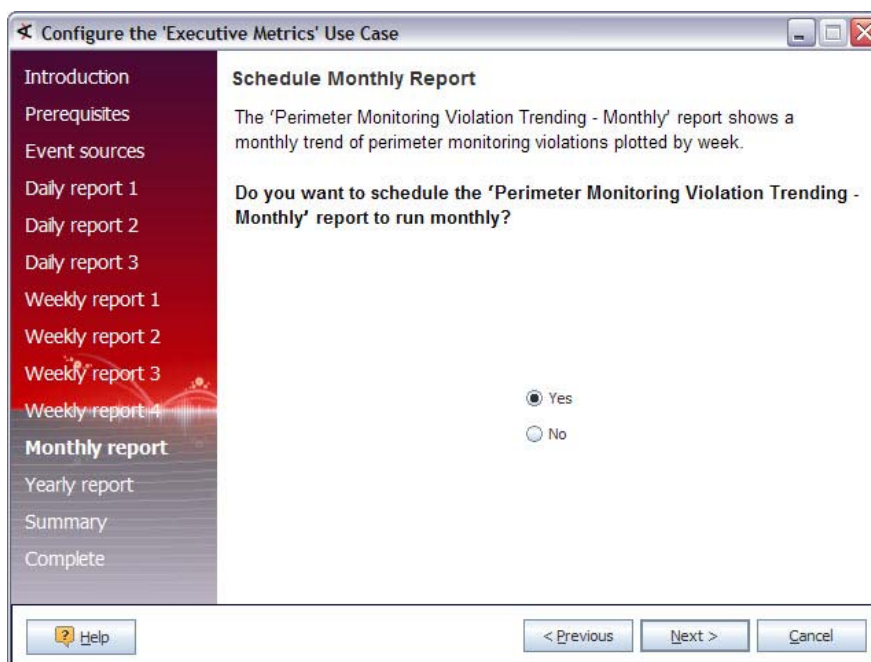
Weekly reports do not display results immediately. It can take up to twenty four hours for the report to display results and results are only displayed if the conditions in the query invoked by the report are satisfied.

For more information, see [Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379](#).

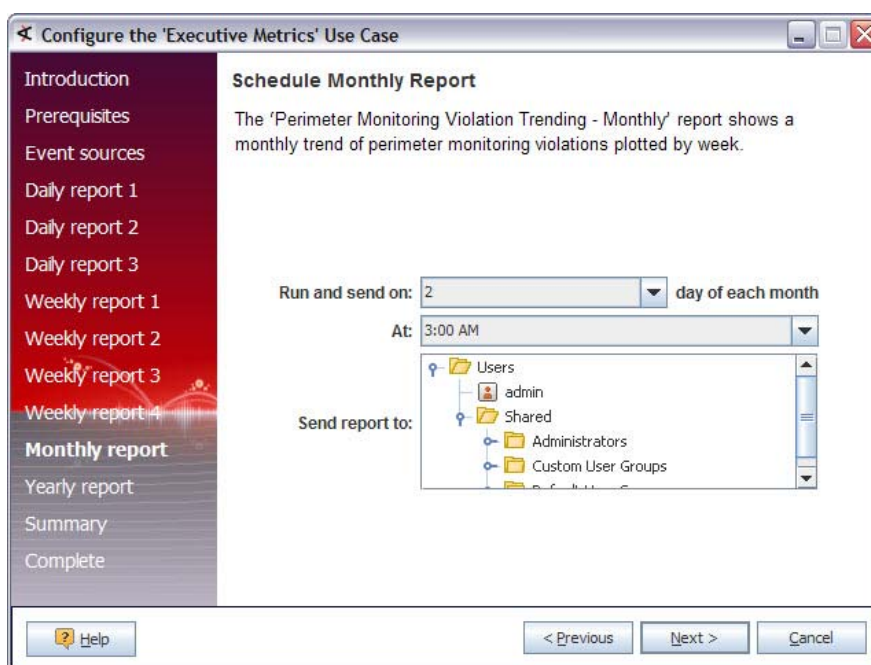
Return to the list of configuration panels in ["Step 7 - Configuration Panels" on page 468](#).

## Schedule Monthly Report Panels

In the **Schedule Monthly Report** panel, you are prompted to schedule a monthly report, as shown:



If you answer **Yes**, another panel displays as shown:



In the **Run and send on \_\_ day of each month** field, specify the day of the month when the report should run. When a report runs, the output of the report is stored on the ESM Manager. You can elect to send the report to the e-mail address associated with the ESM user.

In the **At** field, specify a time during the day when the report should run.



For best performance, schedule reports to run at different times during the day.

In the **Send report to** field, browse for an ESM user.



In order for the report to be sent, an e-mail address must be specified for the selected ESM user. For more information about creating an ESM user or specifying an e-mail account for an ESM user, see [“Managing Users” on page 597](#). If no e-mail address is specified, the report is archived on the ESM Manager.

When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel, the **Use Case** wizard creates a job for the report called `Use Case Scheduled Job` that is scheduled to run monthly. If you edit or remove `Use Case Scheduled Job`, this can cause inconsistencies between the report and the wizard.



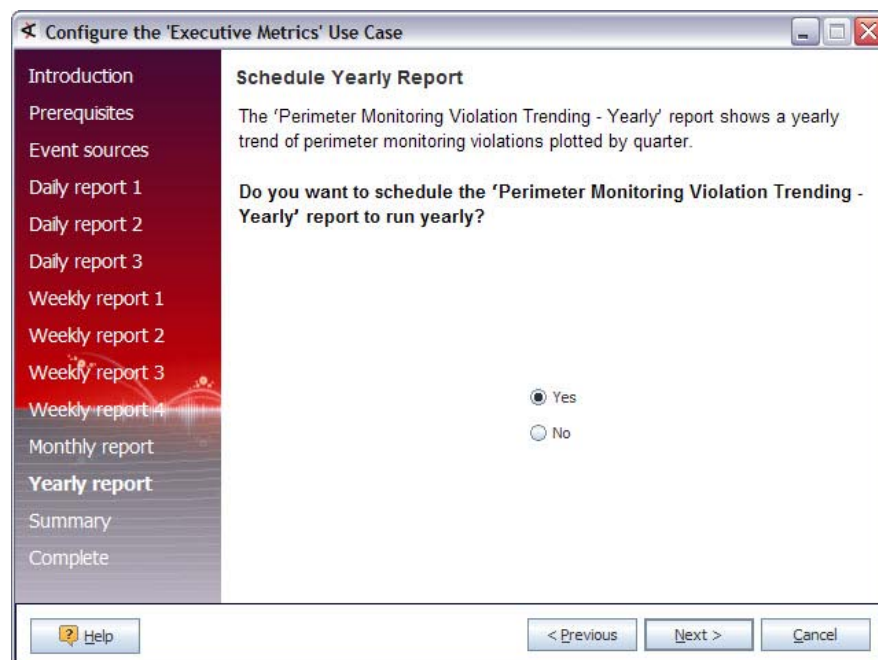
Monthly reports do not display results immediately. It can take up to twenty four hours for the report to display results and results are only displayed if the conditions in the query invoked by the report are satisfied.

For more information, see [Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379](#).

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Schedule Yearly Report Panels

In the **Schedule Yearly Report** panel, you are prompted to schedule a yearly report, as shown:





If you select **Yes**, another panel displays as shown:

In the **Run and send on** field, specify the day of the month when the report should run. When a report runs, the output of the report is stored on the ESM Manager. You can elect to send the report to the e-mail address associated with the ESM user.

In the **On the \_ day** field, specify the day of the month when the report should run.

In the **At** field, specify a time during the day when the report should run.



For best performance, schedule reports to run at different times during the day.

In the **Send report to** field, browse for an ESM user.



In order for the report to be sent, an e-mail address must be specified for the selected ESM user. For more information about creating an ESM user or specifying an e-mail account for an ESM user, see ["Managing Users" on page 597](#). If no e-mail address is specified, the report is archived on the ESM Manager.

When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Settings to Apply panel, the **Use Case** wizard creates a job for the report called `Use Case Scheduled Job` that is scheduled to run yearly. If you edit or remove the `Use Case Scheduled Job`, this can cause inconsistencies between the report and the wizard.



Yearly reports do not display results immediately. It can take up to twenty four hours for the report to display results and results are only displayed if the conditions in the query invoked by the report are satisfied.

For more information, see [Chapter 11, Running and Managing Reports, on page 379](#).

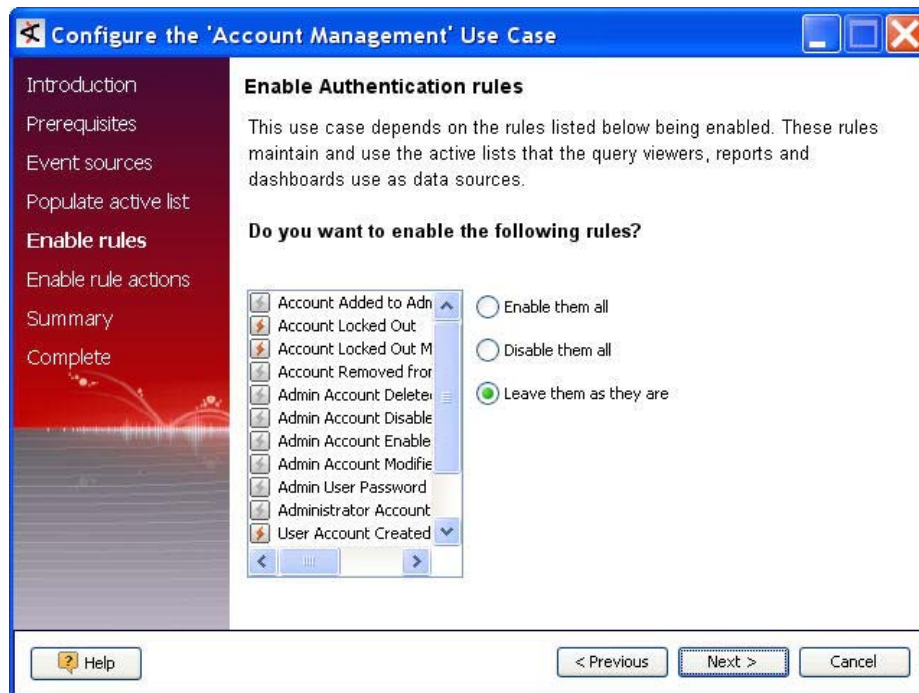
Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Enable Rules Panel

The Enable Rules panel provides the opportunity to enable (or disable) the rules associated with this use case in a single operation. The example used in this topic comes from the Account Management use case provided as part of standard content (Use Cases > All Use Cases/ArcSight Foundation/Microsoft Windows Monitoring).

The Enable Rules panel of the use case configuration wizard presents a list of all the rules included in the use case. Some rules may be enabled by default, as shown in the example. In this panel, you can:

- **Enable them all:** Selecting this option enables all the rules in the use case.
- **Disable them all:** Disables all the rules in the use case, including those that are enabled by default.
- **Leave them as they are:** Keeps the rules as they are shown:



**Note**

Changes appear after the configuration wizard is completed

Changes you make in this panel won't be visible in the list of rules until after the configuration wizard is completed.

You can also enable and disable rules individually outside of the use case configuration wizard. You can access the rule editor by right-clicking the rule list from the use case home page (right-click > **Edit Rule**) or from the Resources tree in the Navigator panel (**Resources** > **Rules** > right-click > **Edit Rule**). For instructions, see [“Enabling and Disabling Rules” on page 429](#).

For more about rules, see [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#).

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).



## Enable Rule Actions Panel

The Enable Rule Actions panel provides the opportunity to enable (or disable) certain rule actions that require configuration for your environment for rules associated with this use case. This panel appears after the [Enable Rules Panel](#) panel.



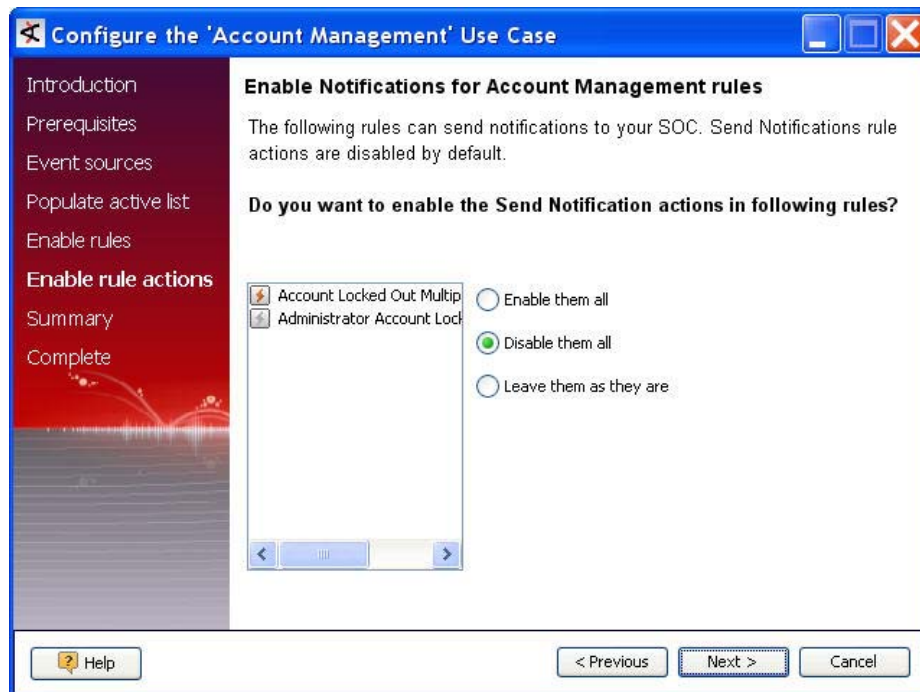
Changes appear after the configuration wizard is completed

The changes you make in this panel and the Rule Action panel won't be visible in the list of rules until after the configuration wizard is completed.

The example used in this topic comes from the Account Management use case provided as part of standard content (Use Cases > All Use Cases/ArcSight Foundation/Microsoft Windows Monitoring).

The Enable Rule Actions panel of the use case configuration wizard presents a list of the rules in the use case that have actions that require local configuration, such as Notifications, as shown in this example. In this panel, you can:

- **Enable them all:** Selecting this option enables the action for all the rules that have configurable actions associated with them.
- **Disable them all:** Disables the Notification action for all the rules that have configurable actions associated with them.
- **Leave them as they are:** Keeps the rule actions as they are shown:



You can also enable and disable rule actions individually outside of the use case configuration wizard. You can access the rule editor by right-clicking the rule list from the use case dashboard (right-click > **Edit Rule**) or from the Resources tree in the Navigator panel (**Resources** > **Rules** > right-click > **Edit Rule**). For instructions, see [“Enabling or Disabling a Rule Action” on page 419](#).

For more about rules, see [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#).

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

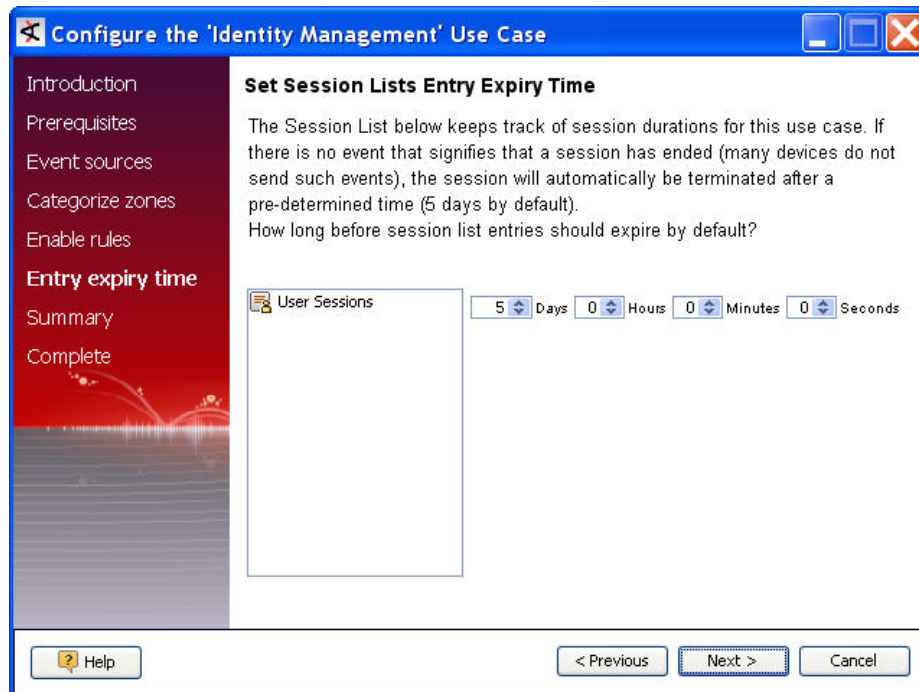
## Set Session List Entry Expiry Panel

The Set Session List Entry Expiry panel provides the opportunity to set the expiration time on session lists that don't already have a specific end time already defined. The default expiration is 5 days. You can further refine this by adjusting the days, hours, minutes, and seconds.

The example shown in this topic comes from the Identity Management use case included with the ArcSight Express use cases (**Use Cases** > All Use Cases/ArcSight Foundation/ArcSight Express).

In this panel, you can use the up/down arrows to set the end-time parameters (days, hours, minutes, and seconds) for all the session lists in the use case.

Expiration time is calculated from the time the entry was made. For example, if an entry is made on Tuesday at 3 p.m. and the default is not changed, the entry would expire on Sunday at 3 p.m.



You can also set the session list entry expiration time individually outside the use case configuration wizard. You can access the session list editor by right-clicking the session list from the use case dashboard (right-click > **Edit Session List**) or from the Resources tree in the Navigator panel (**Resources** > **Lists** > **Session Lists** > right-click > **Edit Session List**).

For more about session lists, see [Chapter 15, Identity Correlation, on page 487](#).

Return to the list of configuration panels in [“Step 7 - Configuration Panels” on page 468](#).

## Chapter 15

# Identity Correlation

---

Identity correlation provides the ability to model users and associate them with events. Identity correlation can be accomplished using **session lists** for some scenarios (*session correlation*) and **active lists** for others (*user or device correlation*).

You can capture and record session-related data in a user-defined *session list* where it can be used for a number of purposes in identifying and tracking users in relation to MAC addresses, IP addresses, machines, network logons, and so forth.

Also, you can use a pre-populated *active list* to find a value and then use the value (as a variable) in a rule. You can use this strategy to identify entities or objects in a variety of scenarios such as correlating various user IDs (logins, e-mail addresses, badge IDs) to unique IDs; mapping unique user IDs to user roles; and even finding the status of a machine by its host name.

The following topics describe scenarios for using both resources, and include step-by-step examples of using sessions lists and active lists with rules and variables for identity correlation.

["Understanding Session Correlation" on page 487](#)

["Managing Session Lists" on page 491](#)

["Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins \(Example\)" on page 491](#)

["Using Active Lists to Correlate Users \(Example\)" on page 502](#)

## Understanding Session Correlation

You can leverage ArcSight-provided resources (pre-defined [Session Lists](#) and [Rules](#)) or develop customized session lists to use for identity correlation, as described here.

### How Session Correlation Works

Session correlation captures and records session-related data in a user-defined list, where it can be used by ArcSight's Correlation Engine to:

- Resolve event endpoints against DHCP sessions to identify which device was located at the reported IP address at the time of the event.
- Use existing maps that link MAC addresses and/or host names to users, if available.
- Attribute actions originating from a specific device to its owner.
- Extract and resolve user information from VPN logins, including the VPN user name and session characteristics.

- Track who accesses a given network node at a given time to trace events that originate from this device to users that were logged in at the time.

Session correlation is a three-step process that involves three or more ArcSight resources.



The user defines a session list, then creates a rule to populate it. The results written to the session list can be used anywhere variables are used, such as to trigger other rules, or to populate active channels, dashboards, and reports.

The high-level steps are:

- 1** Create a session list (as described in [“Creating a Session List” on page 524](#)).
- 2** Create a rule to populate the session list (as described in [“Creating a Session List Rule” on page 488](#)).
- 3** Use the session list output wherever needed (as described in [“Using the Session List Output” on page 490](#)).

See also [“Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins \(Example\)” on page 491](#) for a walkthrough of creating and populating a session list with Windows session information.

## Creating a Session List Rule

Make sure you have created a session list for this procedure. To create a rule that writes new sessions into your session list or that re-sends session start times to your session list:

- 1** In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Rules**.
- 2** In the Rules resource tree, right-click a group and select **New Rule > Standard Rule**. The Rules Editor displays in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 3** At the **General** tab, enter the following values:

### Rule Settings for Session Lists

In this field...	...enter this
Name	Enter a name in the Rule Name text field. The Rule Name should be as descriptive as possible. It is stored in the Event Name data field and appears in the Event Name column of the grid view. The Rule Name text field is required and restricted to 25 characters.
Rule Type	Keep the selection, <b>Standard Rule</b> . Using a standard rule allows multiple event conditions, aggregations, and triggers. However, if you want to keep the rule simple, consider a <b>Lightweight Rule</b> , which is limited to acting on lists. See <a href="#">“Rule Types” on page 398</a> for more details.

---

**Rule Settings for Session Lists (Continued)**

In this field...	...enter this
Common: External ID, Alias	If this rule is referenced by an external system, such as Remedy or vulnerability scanner, enter the pertinent external ID information here. If not, leave these fields blank.
Description	Enter a description in the Description text field. The description should be meaningful and detailed. For example, This rule creates an entry to the DHCP session list when a new DHCP session starts.
Assign: Owner, Notification Groups	If you wish to specify an owner for this resource and to automatically notify other users when this rule is changed, select existing users and notification groups from the drop-down menu. This step is optional.

---

- 4 On the **Conditions** tab, enter the conditions that indicate a session start and click **Apply**.
- 5 On the **Aggregation** tab, specify the event fields from the session list that you want to have displayed in the event grid when the rule is triggered by the session conditions specified in the Conditions tab. You should probably aggregate all items you specified in your session list so that those values get populated when the event occurs.
- 6 On the **Actions** tab, set the trigger and the action you wish the rule to take when the conditions are met:

- a Select the trigger you want to apply to this rule and make sure it is activated.

**On First Event** is the default trigger. This determines which occurrence of the "session start" conditions will trigger the action to write the event to the session list as the start of a session. See ["Threshold Triggering Options" on page 420](#) for details on the available triggers.



You can use references to Velocity Templates as parameters for rule actions to derive values from event fields and variables. (See ["Velocity Templates" on page 999](#).)

---

- b While the trigger is selected, click **Add** to add an action. **Select Session List | Add to Session List**.
- c In the Add Action dialog box at the Session List drop-down menu, navigate to the session list you created earlier. The parameters you set for the session list are displayed in the Session Field Mapping area.
- d In the Session Field Mapping area at the Start Time field, select which event time stamp you want to use to record as the official start time.

---

Start Time	Description
End Time	The time the event ended.
Manager Receipt Time	The time the event arrived at the Manager.

---

- e For the remaining fields you specified in your session list that have multiple choices, select which value you wish to use for your session list and click **OK**. You can find a description of the data fields, see ["Data Fields" on page 837](#).

- 7 Click **OK**. The relevant events matching this rule will populate the session list.

## Using the Session List Output

Once the session list has been populated by events that trigger the session list rule, the session data can be accessed anywhere variables can be used:

- Active channels
- Data monitors
- Dashboards
- Filters
- Reports
- Rules

## Creating a Variable

From the editor of one of the resources (active channel, data monitors, dashboards, filters, reports, rules), you can create a variable that uses the `GetSessionData` function. This variable is derived from the session time-stamp data stored in the session list.

### To create a variable:

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose the resource that you wish to consume the session list data. These steps use Filters as an example. Right-click a filter group and select **New Filter**.
- 2 On the Attributes tab, enter a name for the filter, and optionally, external ID and alias information, and/or owner and notification group information.
- 3 On the Variables tab, click **Add**, then choose either Local Variable or Global Variable (depending on whether you want this variable shared across all resources). In the "Add Variable" dialog, enter the following values and click **OK**:

In this field...	...enter this
Name	Enter a name for the variable. This name appears in the <Lists> menu available from the <a href="#">Common Conditions Editor (CCE)</a> . Spaces and special characters are OK.
Function	In the Function pull-down menu, select <b>List Functions &gt; GetSessionData</b> .
Arguments	In the <field name> pull-down menu, select the session list you created previously.
Preview	To preview the results, select an asset from the list of assets reporting events to ArcSight and click <b>Calculate</b> .

- 4 Perform any necessary Session Field Mapping.
- 5 In the Filters tab conditions editor, scroll down to the bottom of the Fields list until you see Variables. Here you see the name of the variable you created in [Step 3](#). In the Operator field, select an operator appropriate for the `GetSessionFunction` variable you created in [Step 3](#). In the Condition field, enter an appropriate value. Session lists that allow overlapping sessions would take a list of values separated by commas. Session

lists that do not allow session overlapping would take a single value. This instructs the filter to derive its values from your session list.

- 6 When you have finished setting all the conditions, click **Apply** to save changes and keep the editor open; click **OK** to save the filter and exit the editor.

## Populating a Session List Manually

Session lists are really designed to be populated automatically by rule actions, however, there may be times when you need to populate the list manually. For example, you may want to enter known values to your session list for testing purposes, or to get session correlation started with known values while you are waiting for the event stream to populate the list with more session-related values.

To manually add data to the session list you just created, see [“Adding a Session List Entry” on page 528](#).

## Managing Session Lists

While you can manually update session lists, their real value comes when you author automatic, rule-driven lists with dynamic content.

See also [“Understanding Session Correlation” on page 487](#) and [“Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins \(Example\)” on page 491](#).

For specific instructions on working with session lists, refer to [“Managing Session Lists” on page 524](#). Locate the following topics for specific tasks:

- [“Creating a Session List” on page 524](#)  
Note that session lists are usually defined in conjunction with rules specifically tailored to interact with those lists dynamically. Lists not driven by rules are empty or contain only manually added entries that have not timed out.
- [“Editing a Session List” on page 527](#)
- [“Moving or Copying a Session List” on page 527](#)
- [“Exporting a Session List” on page 527](#)
- [“Deleting a Session List” on page 528](#)
- [“Adding a Session List Entry” on page 528](#)
- [“Adding a Session List Entry Based on an Existing Entry” on page 528](#)
- [“Deleting a Session List Entry” on page 528](#)
- [“Terminating a Session List Entry” on page 529](#)

## Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins (Example)

Using session lists for identity correlation is a three-step process that involves three or more ArcSight resources. The high-level workflow for creating and using session lists for identity correlation is:

- 1 Create a session list.
- 2 Create a rule to populate it.

### 3 Use the session list output.

The results written to the session list can be used anywhere variables are used, such as to trigger other rules, or to populate active channels, dashboards, and reports.

This Help topic steps through an example of building and populating a session list to track Windows user login sessions.

## Example Overview

This example shows you how to create a session list with a schema appropriate for storing information about Windows logins and logoffs.

Next, we create two rules to populate the session list:

- A rule that is triggered at the start of a successful Windows login and populates the session list with the successful login event data
- A rule that is triggered when a user logs off and populates the session list with the session termination event data

Then, we verify the rules using the Verify Rules with Events tool to make sure that the rules are triggered and that your session list is populated appropriately with session logins and start/end times.

Finally, we create a new report using the session list you just created as the data source, and run the report.



You need a set of canned or live Windows session events (user logins/logoffs) to properly verify the resources you create for this example.

## Step 1 - Create a Session List to Store Windows Sessions

Start by creating a session list that will contain Windows login sessions.

Choose the **Lists** resource in the Navigator, and click the **Session List** tab. Right-click a user folder and choose New Session List. (For more detailed help on creating session lists, see ["Creating a Session List" on page 524.](#))

In the Session List editor, name the session list, and add the fields as shown.

Session List Attributes	Value
Name	Windows Login Sessions
Overlapping Entries	Disabled (leave unchecked)  This example assumes that the Windows server we are monitoring does not support multiple-user logins, which is why we leave Overlapping Entries unchecked.
In MemoryCapacity(x1000)	10 (keep the default)

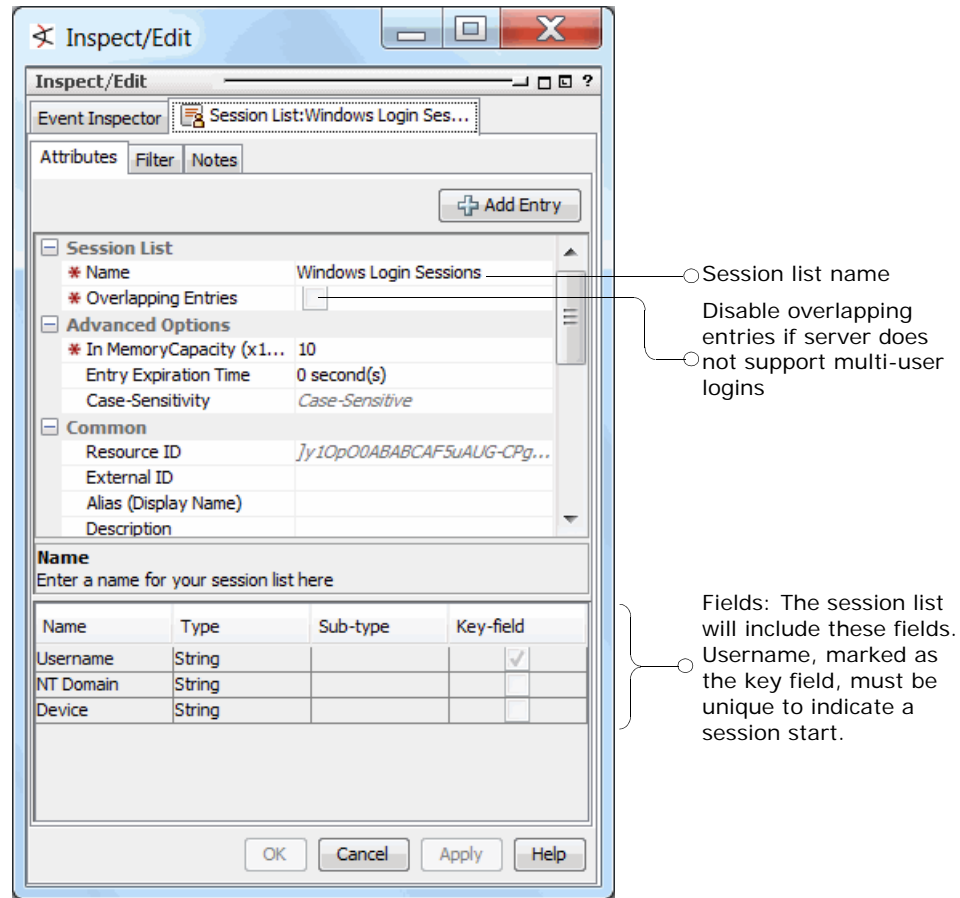


Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642.](#)



Add the following three fields with names and types as shown. Set "Username" as the key-field.

Field Names for Session Lists	Type	Key Fields
Username	String	Enabled
NT Domain	String	
Device	String	



**Figure 15-1** Example Session List

## Step 2 - Create Rules to Populate the Session List with Windows Logins

Create two rules with which to populate the session list:

- A rule that triggers on Windows session logins
- A rule that triggers when a Windows session terminates

To create a new rule, choose the Rules resource from the Navigator drop-down menu, right-click a user group, and select New Rule from the context menu. (If you need more

help on creating rules, see [“Managing Rules” on page 399](#). For a general introduction to working with rules, see [“Rules Authoring” on page 397](#).)



Note

For this example, first create rules in a user folder under Rules for testing purposes. Once you have created and verified rules and are ready to deploy them on real-time events, move or copy the rules to your user folder under Real-time Rules. Only rules deployed in Real-time Rules filter on live events and show up in a live channel when they are triggered. See [“Deploying Real-time Rules” on page 442](#) for more information.

## Rule 1: Triggers on Windows Session Logins

Create a rule to populate the session list. Use the following attributes, conditions, aggregation, and actions as shown below.

### Attributes

On the **Attributes** tab, enter the name of the session login rule as follows.

- **Name:** Successful Windows Login

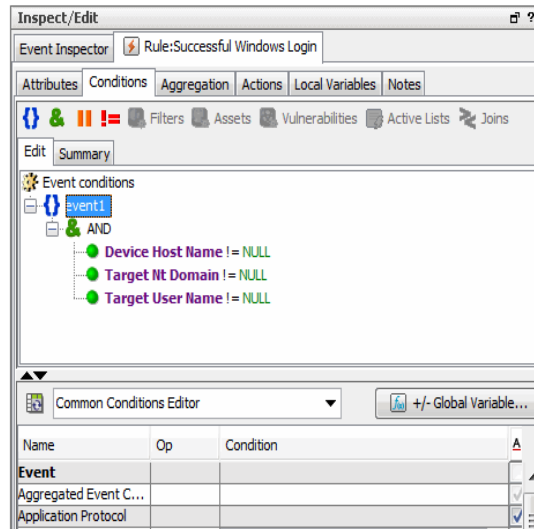
Inspect/Edit	
Event Inspector Rule: Successful Windows Login	
Attributes Conditions Aggregation Actions Local Variables Notes	
Rule	
* Name	Successful Windows Login
* Rule Type	Standard Rule
Common	
Resource ID	59K1P00ABABCAGE2Ew2wPpQ==
External ID	
Alias (Display Name)	
Description	
Version ID	
Deprecated	<input type="checkbox"/>
Assign	
Owner	
Notification Groups	
Parent Groups	
Jing's Rules	/All Rules/Personal/admin's Rules/Jing's Rules/
Creation Information	
Created By	admin
Creation Time	1 Aug 2013 12:16:52 PDT
Time Since Creation	1 min(s) 28 sec(s)
Last Update Information	
Last Updated By	admin
Last Update Time	1 Aug 2013 12:18:20 PDT
Time Since Last Update	

### Conditions

Click the **Conditions** tab for the login rule, and enter the following conditions.

- Target User Name Is NOT NULL
- Target Nt Domain Is NOT NULL
- Device Host Name Is NOT NULL

Setting these conditions causes the rule to be triggered on any event that includes a device host name and a user name where the target is a Windows NT domain. (For more information on using the Common Conditions Editor or “CCE”, see [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#) and [“Conditional Statements” on page 832](#).)

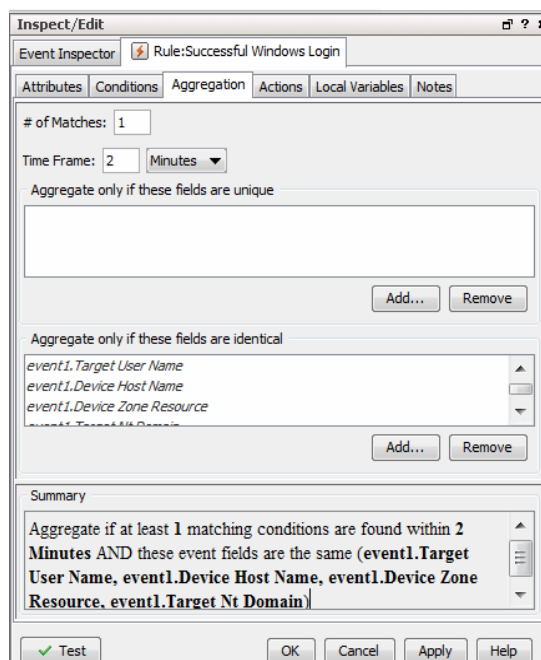


## Aggregation

Click the **Aggregation** tab for the login rule. Under **Aggregate only if these fields are identical**, click **Add...** to bring up the Add Fields dialog. Select the following fields on which to aggregate and click OK to add them to the rule.

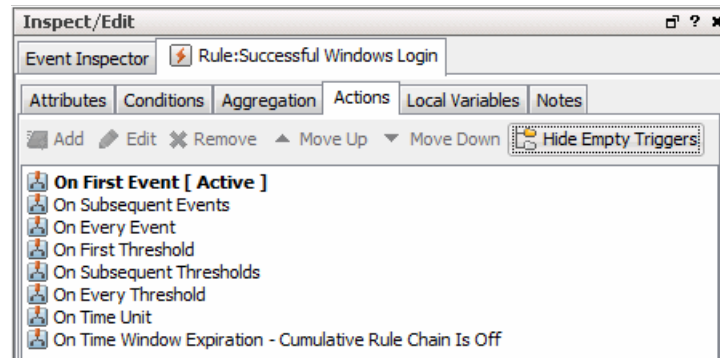
- Target User Name
- Target Nt Domain
- Device Host Name

Aggregation can be used to combine multiple events (as specified in the number of matches) into a single entry for the session list. But in this case (where we are aggregating events with identical fields on only a single match), we are specifying fields in the Aggregation tab for the purpose of making those same fields available in the Actions tab.



## Actions

Click the **Actions** tab for the login rule.



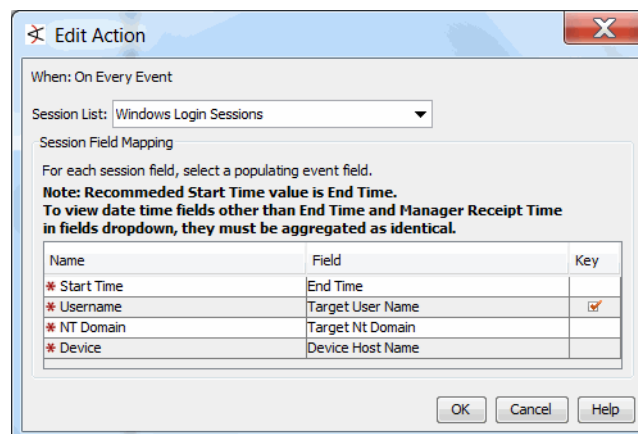
Right-click **On Every Event** and select **Activate Trigger**. Right-click again and select **Add | Session List | Add to Session List**.

In the Session List drop-down menu on the Add dialog, select the Windows Login Sessions session list you created in the first step.

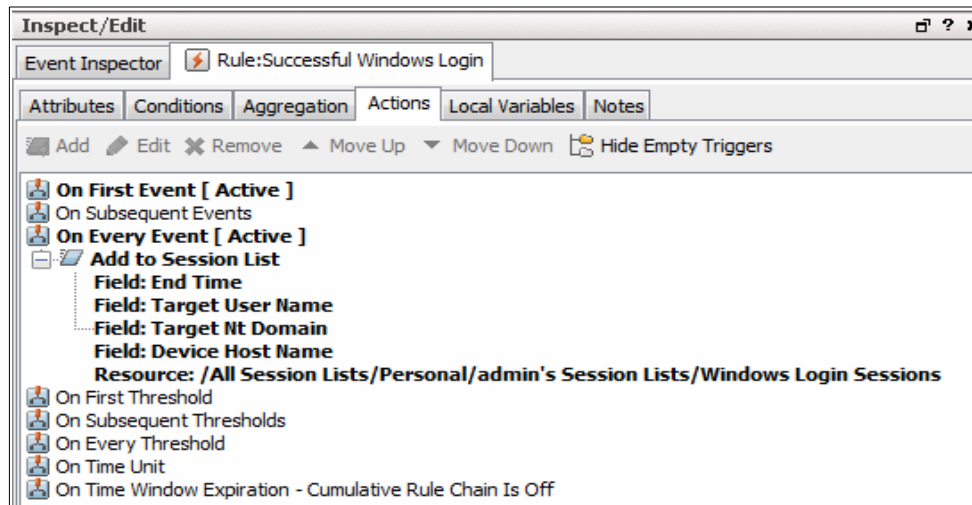
Map the fields as follows.

- Start Time: End Time
- Username: Target User Name
- NT Domain: Target Nt Domain
- Device: Device Host Name

This prompts the rule to add a login event to the Windows Login Sessions list every time a matching login event occurs.



Click **OK** on the Add to Session List dialog to add the actions to the rule. When the actions are properly configured, they are displayed under the **On Every Event** action as shown. Windows session logins are added to the session list on every event.



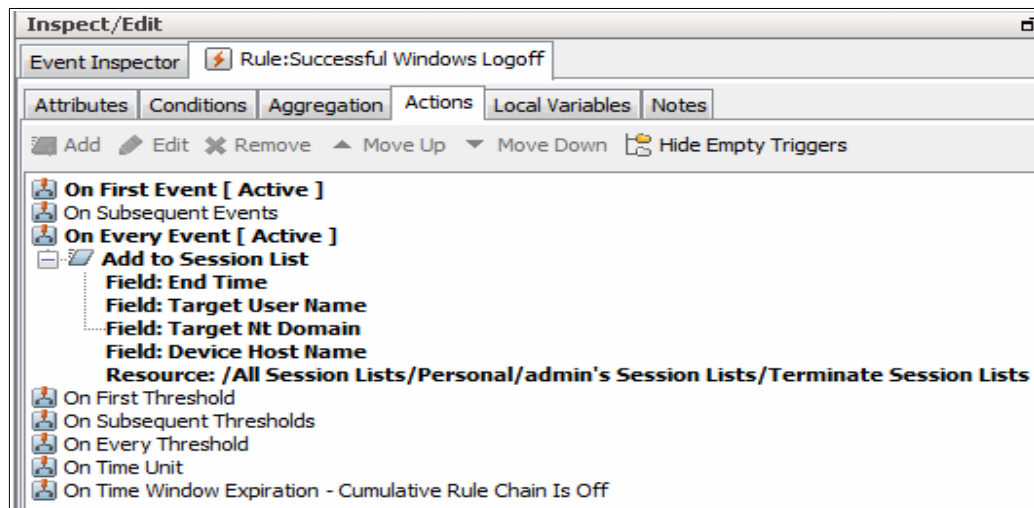
Click **OK** to save the session login rule.

## Rule 2: Triggers on Termination of Windows Sessions

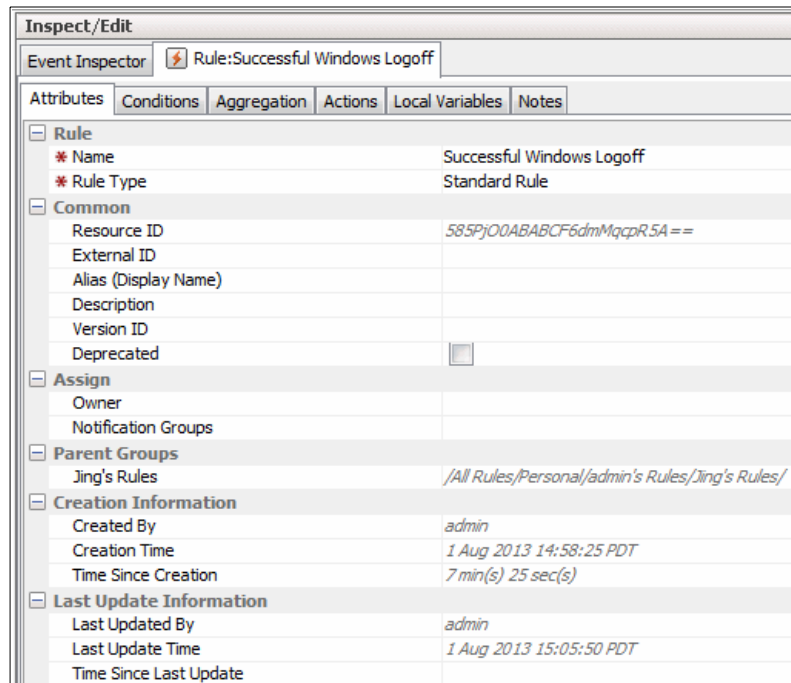
Create a rule to populate the session list with Windows session termination information. Define this "terminate session list" rule with the same settings as the "add to session list" rule you just created, with the following differences specific to terminating the session:

- On the **Attributes** tab, Rule Name is Windows User Logoff (instead of Login).
- On the **Conditions** tab, define the same Conditions as in the previous rule.
- On the **Aggregation** tab, aggregate on the same fields as in the previous rule.
- On the **Actions** tab, define the same actions as in the previous rule but add the actions to **Terminate Session List** instead of Add to Session List. (The menu path for adding the logoff rule is **Add | Session List | Terminate Session List**.)

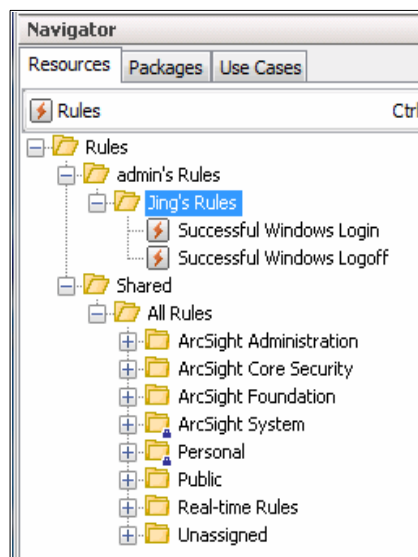
The **Actions** tab for the logoff rule is shown below. Notice that for Windows logoffs, the rule triggers the action to add an entry to the terminate session list on every logoff event.



Here is an example of the **Attributes** tab for the logoff rule when it is completely configured.



## Step 3 - Verify Rules



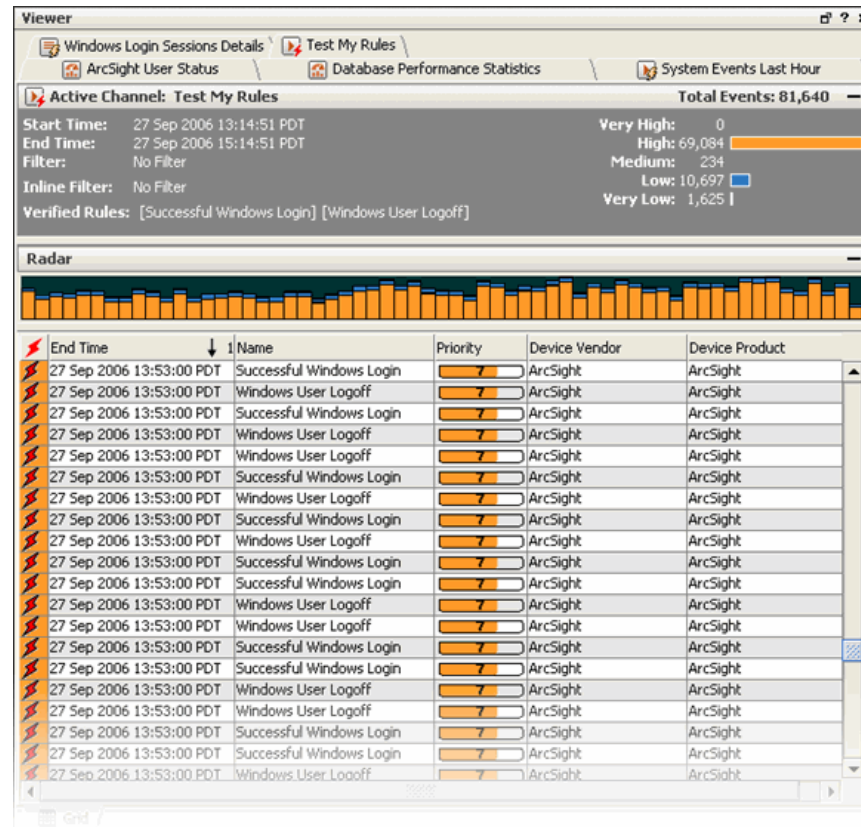
For each rule, we want to answer some key questions to verify the rules are working as expected.

Rule	Verify Questions
Add to Session List	Is the rule triggered when a Windows logon occurs? Are the values inserted into the Session List?
Terminate Session List	Is the rule triggered when a Windows logoff occurs? Is the End Time in the Session List changing according to the rule (that is, is it terminating the session for this user)?

To test the rules before deploying in real time, we can use an active channel created from the Verify Rules with Events option, and also view entries in the Windows Login session list we created in the first step of this example.

- 1 Select the Rules folder that contains them, right-click, and choose **Verify Rule(s) with Events** in the context menu. You can create a New Active Channel to test the rules.

The following example shows the login rule triggered for several events.



- 2 Choose the **Lists** resource in the Navigator, and click the **Session Lists** tab. Select your **Windows Login Sessions** list, right-click, and choose **Show Entries** from the context menu.

Username	N T Domain	Device	Start Time	End Time
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:43:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:44:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:45:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:46:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:47:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:48:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:49:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:50:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:51:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:52:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:53:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:54:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:55:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:56:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:57:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:58:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
jarrod		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 13:59:19 PDT	27 Sep 2006
lucy		johnnyquest	27 Sep 2006 14:00:04 PDT	27 Sep 2006
lucy		johnnyquest	27 Sep 2006 14:00:04 PDT	27 Sep 2006
lucy		orangeblast	27 Sep 2006 14:00:04 PDT	27 Sep 2006

For more information on testing rules, see [“Verifying Rule\(s\) with Events”](#) on page 439 (formerly Replay-with-Rules).



Once you have created and verified rules and are ready to deploy them on real-time events, move or copy the rules to your user folder under Real-time Rules. Only rules deployed in Real-time Rules filter on live events and show up in a live channel when they are triggered. For more information, see [“Deploying Real-time Rules”](#) on page 442.

## Step 4 - Use the Session List in a Report

You can leverage session lists in a variety of resources including reports, active lists, active channels, data monitors, and as input to other rules. (For example, you could use a rule to correlate multiple failed VPN logins over a short timeframe with a particular user entry in the session list. You might specify that if both conditions are met, add the user to an active list such as /Active Lists/Shared/All Active Lists/ArcSight System/Threat Tracking/Suspicious List.)

For this example, use the session list in a simple report.

Create a new report on the session list for this example. The steps are:

- Create a report
- Choose a report template
- Choose the session list as the data source for the report
- Run the report

Here are step-by-step instructions for creating a report showing the Windows logins

- 1 In the Navigator, choose the **Reports** resource and click the **Templates** tab.
- 2 Expand the folder /Report Templates/Shared/All Report Templates/ArcSight System/, right-click **Simple Table Portrait** and choose **New Report from Template**.
- 3 Provide a name for the report (for example, Windows Login Sessions).



- 4 Click the **Data** tab and select Session Lists for the Data Source type and the Windows Login Sessions list for the data source.
- 5 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the report.
- 6 Still under the Reports resource in the Navigator, click the **Reports** tab. The report you created is displayed under your user folder.
- 7 Select the new report, right-click and choose **Run Report** or **Run Report with Defaults** from the context menu.

Following is an example of an HTML version of the Windows Login Sessions report.

Report					
Username	N T Domain	Device	Start Time	End Time	Creation Time
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15	Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
shannon		churchill	Sep 27 2006 16:04:15		Sep 27 2006 16:23:06
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55
steve		belmont	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 14:12:33	Sep 27 2006 15:18:55

For more information on creating and using reports, see [“Creating Reports” on page 334](#) and [“Running Reports” on page 379](#).

## Using Active Lists to Correlate Users (Example)

You can use active lists to find a value and then use value (as a variable) in a rule. You can use this strategy to identify entities or objects in a variety of scenarios; for example:

- Given that logins from the same attacker are showing up under multiple IP addresses, find out whether the attacks are coming from the same machine with different IP addresses.
- Correlate user logins (e.g., onto server machines) with physical building or room entry. A user's login ID is not the same as badge ID. You use an active list to map various user identifiers (login, e-mail, badge) to a unique user ID (UUID) for each user.
- Map UUIDs to user roles.
- Find the current status (e.g., up, down) of a given machine host name.
- Find the current status (e.g., up, down) of a given SmartConnector.

(The last two can be handled using data monitors also.)

This example shows how to build a rule that leverages unique user ID information from a pre-populated active list to correlate user logins on critical servers with badge swipe entries to the server room. The rule is triggered when a server user login does not have a matching badge swipe ID.

The example highlights how an active list with values can be leveraged for identity correlation. In this case, the active list collects target user IDs for the same user from different sources (e.g., user login, badge ID, e-mail address, phone number) and maps those different IDs to a unique user ID. The rule then uses the unique user ID to correlate badge swipe IDs with user login IDs.

(For more about active lists, see also [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#), [“Case-Insensitive Lookup in Case-Sensitive Active Lists” on page 517](#), and [“Using Rules to Populate an Active List” on page 518](#).)

### Example Overview

For this example, consider a scenario where server machines with critical data reside in a secure area. Only users in a specialized group are allowed physical access to the server room (with badge swipe on a card reader) and user login permissions to the servers. This example assumes a policy against remote logins to the server room machines.

We want to monitor and correlate user access to the server room (badge swipes) and user logins on the server machines, and take action (e-mail notification) if our access policies are violated. Some examples of policy violations that we want to catch are:

- Cases where someone logged into a server but no badge swipe is registered. This could indicate policy violations such as remote logins or unauthorized server room entry (e.g., server room door was left open)
- There is no matching badge swipe ID for a server console login (e.g., a user stole someone's badge to get into the server room, then logged in to the server with a different user ID)

This example assumes a pre-populated active list with values with a schema appropriate for storing information about user IDs. The active list keys off of user identifiers from various sources (e.g., user login, e-mail address, phone number) and map these variants to the same unique user ID (UUID).

The UUID can then be used as a variable in a rule for correlating user login IDs with badge IDs. We'll show how to create this rule, which leverages the user information collected in the active list.

## Step 1 - Build and Populate the Active List with User IDs

This example assumes that you have a pre-populated active list that maps user identifiers from various sources (badge ID, user login, e-mail, phone number) to unique user IDs (UUIDs). For the purposes of the example, we are interested in correlating badge IDs and user logins for users who log into critical servers. The active list (populated with our list of users) provides the "User Map" we need to derive each user's unique ID.

The active list definition includes the following two fields with names and types as shown. "User Identifier" is set as the key-field. This information is available in incoming events (badge swipes and user logins). Each user identifier is mapped to a UUID. Assume, for this example, that we got this mapping from IT or Human Resources departments. The UUID value is the information we'll want to extract from this list via a variable.

Field Names for Session Lists	Type	Key Fields
User Identifier	String	Enabled
UUID	String	

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' window for an 'Active List: User Map'. The 'Attributes' tab is selected. The 'Active List' section includes fields like Name (set to 'User Map'), Capacity (10), TTL Days (1), TTL Hours (0), TTL Minutes (0), and checkboxes for 'Allow multi-mappings', 'Partially cached', 'Time partitioned', and 'Case-Sensitivity' (set to 'Case-Sensitive'). The 'Common' section includes Resource ID (set to 'HTz3500ABABCF62eyeTQt0A=='), External ID, Alias (Display Name), Description, Version ID, Content Version ID, and a 'Deprecated' checkbox. The 'Assign' section includes Owner and Notification Groups. The 'Parent Groups' section shows 'admin's Active Lists' with a path '/All Active Lists/Personal/admin's ...'. The 'Creation Information' section shows the list of fields: 'User Identifier' (String, Key-field) and 'UUID' (String).

**Fields:** The active list include these fields. User Identifier, marked as the key field, is the value returned from various sources (badge, user login, etc.)

The unique user ID (UUID) that the user identifier maps to is provided here through an LDAP system or some other data source. This is the focus of this active list; to map various user IDs to this UUID. The UUID will be used as a variable in a rule.

## Populating an Active List with User Data

There are various ways to populate an active list with this kind of user information:

- Human Resources (HR) or IT database
- Identity management system
- Import from a CSV file (in the Navigator, right-click the active list and choose **Import CSV File**. See [“Importing an Active List” on page 522.](#))
- Manually add names to the list



Note that this is a different type of task than populating an active list based on data gleaned from events (e.g., [“Using Rules to Populate an Active List” on page 518.](#))


In this example, we *already have the “map” and the values we need (the unique user IDs) provided in the active list*, and we are going to feed them into a rule as a variable.

In the other example (using rules to populate the active list), we are using a rule to add items to an active list and to discover and use values as items are added to the list.

Here is an example of an active list pre-populated with user information.

Viewer				
User Map Details				
Name: User Map			9 shown / 9 matches	
Last Update: 4 Feb 2009 17:07:09 PST				
Filter: No Filter				
User Identifier	U U I D	Creation Time	Last Modified Time	Count
badge0123	SamanthaStevens	3 Feb 2009 18:21...	3 Feb 2009 18:21...	1
badgeID4156	StephanieMartinelli	3 Feb 2009 18:17...	3 Feb 2009 18:17...	1
badgeID5245	RobertJackson	28 Jan 2009 16:3...	3 Feb 2009 18:18...	1
rjackson	RobertJackson	28 Jan 2009 16:3...	3 Feb 2009 18:18...	1
rjackson@xyz.com	RobertJackson	4 Feb 2009 15:50...	4 Feb 2009 15:50...	1
samstevens	SamanthaStevens	3 Feb 2009 18:21...	3 Feb 2009 18:21...	1
samstevens@abc.com	SamanthaStevens	4 Feb 2009 15:49...	4 Feb 2009 15:49...	1
stephmartinelli	StephanieMartinelli	3 Feb 2009 18:17...	3 Feb 2009 18:17...	1
stephmartinelli@xyz.com	StephanieMartinelli	4 Feb 2009 15:50...	4 Feb 2009 15:50...	1

If you want to follow along with the example but don't have a database or spreadsheet of user information handy, you can manually add example data:

- 1 Build and save the User Map active list definition as described in [“Step 1 - Build and Populate the Active List with User IDs” on page 503.](#)
- 2 In the Navigator, right-click the User Map active list and choose **Show Entries**.  
The list is shown in the Viewer panel.
- 3 Click the Add Entry button  at the top right of the list to get the Active List Entry Editor.
- 4 Use the Active List Entry Editor to manually add user identifiers and unique user IDs. Click **Add** on the editor to add each line of data. To support the example, add at least

two lines for each user. Keep the UUID the same, but the user identifiers different to illustrate the mapping.

User Identifier	UUID
badge0123	SamanthaStevens
samstevens	SamanthaStevens
badgeID5245	RobertJackson
rjackson	RobertJackson

## Step 2 - Create a Rule that Uses Active List Values to Correlate User IDs

Now that we have an active list that maps various user IDs to unique user IDs (UUIDs), we can create a rule that makes use of the active list to correlate events coming from the same user with different user IDs (such as a badge swipe ID and a server login ID).

The following sections show how to define this example rule.

### Attributes

On the **Attributes** tab, provide a name for the rule: **Server Room Console Login Policy**

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' dialog box for a rule. The 'Attributes' tab is selected. The rule name is 'Server Room Console Login Policy Violat...'. The rule type is 'Standard Rule'. The 'Common' section contains fields for Resource ID (5jIqyP0ABABCAF3t0oo4ZAQ==), External ID, Alias (Display Name), Description, Version ID, and a checkbox for 'Deprecated'. The 'Assign' section has fields for Owner and Notification Groups. The 'Parent Groups' section shows 'admin's Rules' with a path '/All Rules/Personal/admin's Rules/'. The 'Creation Information' section shows 'Created By' as 'admin', 'Creation Time' as '2 Aug 2013 08:43:22 PDT', and 'Time Since Creation'. The 'Last Update Information' section shows 'Last Updated By' as 'admin', 'Last Update Time' as '2 Aug 2013 08:43:22 PDT', and 'Time Since Last Update'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Test', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

## Variable

Next, we'll define a variable we can use to find unique user IDs (UUIDs) in the active list we created in the previous step ("[Step 1 - Build and Populate the Active List with User IDs](#)" on page 503).

### To define a variable for finding unique UUIDs:

- 1 Create a variable called `UserMap`: Click the **Local Variables** tab for your rule.
- 2 Click **Add** to begin. Provide these values for the variable definition.

Option	Specify this Value
Name	<b>UserMap</b>
Function	From the <b>List</b> category: <b>GetActiveListValue</b>
List	<b>UserMap</b> This is the active list we created in the previous step (" <a href="#">Step 1 - Build and Populate the Active List with User IDs</a> " on page 503).
User Identifier (Active List Key field mapping)	<b>Target User ID</b> Use the pull-down under "Field" to select Target User ID event field. For matching events, the rule uses the value in the Target User ID field as a lookup key in the active list. For example, if the Target User ID is a login ID of "samstevens", a badge ID of "badge0123", or an e-mail address of "samstevens@abc.com", all of these resolve to a unique user ID of "SamanthaStevens" in the active list mapping. The variable value passed to the rule to be evaluated in a condition would be SamanthaStevens, the UUID for any of those user identifiers.

The following example shows the variable definition on the Add Variable dialog.

**Add Local Variable**

Name:

Function:

Retrieve ActiveList value

Arguments

List:

Field Mapping

For each key field, select a matching SecurityEvent field.

Name	Field	Key
User Identifier	Target User ID	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

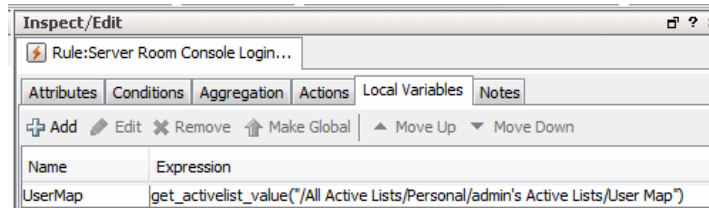
Preview

Set a value for each key field.

Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/> Key Fields	
User Identifier	

- 3 Click **OK** to save the variable.

The new variable is listed on the Local Variables tab as shown:



## Conditions

We define the rule conditions so that each time a server machine login occurs, the rule conditions are evaluated. (The `ServerRoomConsoleLogin` condition causes this to happen.)



For more information on using the Common Conditions Editor (CCE), see [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#) and [“Conditional Statements” on page 832](#).

A comparison (`Matching Event`) is made between server room logins and badge swipe IDs in a 2-minute time window. The matching event uses our `UserMap` variable (see [“Variable” on page 506](#)) to get the unique ID from the active list we built in the previous step ([“Step 1 - Build and Populate the Active List with User IDs” on page 503](#)).

The rule is triggered in cases where you do not find a matching badge swipe ID for a user login.

We define the rule conditions as follows.

- ◆ The `ServerRoomConsoleLogin` condition finds server room machine logins via the event name and asset category. The summary of this condition is:

```
SeverRoomConsoleLogin : ( Name = Console Login AND Target
Asset ID InGroup("/All Asset Categories/Server Room
Machines/") )
```

This is the “start” condition that causes the rule conditions to be evaluated because **it is looking for server logins**.

- ◆ We define a `Matching Event` condition that correlates server machine logins (one type of user identifier) with badge IDs used for server room entry (another type of user identifier) based on the unique user ID (UUID) from the Active List. We do this by using the `UserMap.UUID` variable we created for this purpose (see [“Variable” on page 506](#)).

**Matching Event:** `SeverRoomConsoleLogin.UserMap.UUID = BadgeSwipe.UserMap.UUID`

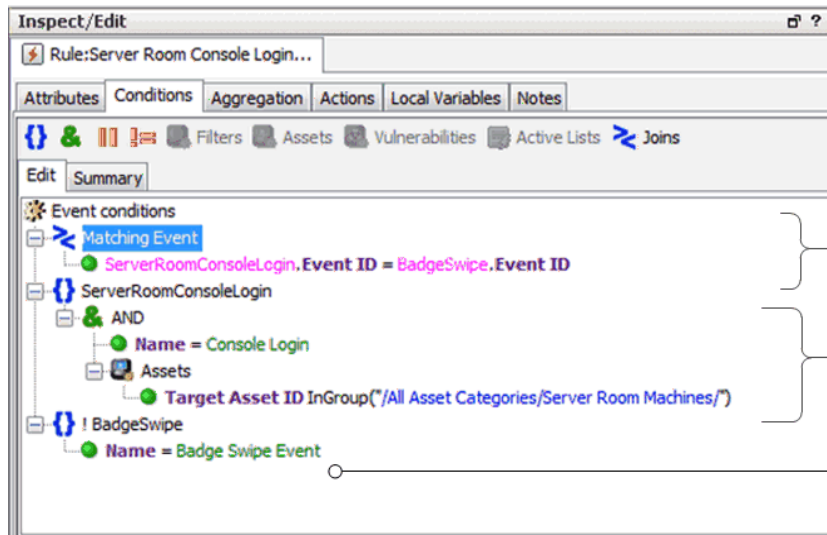
If we find a badge ID matches for all server logins, the rule is not triggered. If there is a server login with no matching badge ID within our time window, the rule is triggered.

- ◆ If someone logs in, we want to find a matching badge swipe ID for it. Since we are looking for users who logged in to servers but did not use their own badges to enter the room, we add a condition specifying that no badge swipe event (a negated `Badge Swipe` event) occurred for this user. So we add the event name called **BadgeSwipe** with condition Name = **Badge Swipe Event**, right-click the

event name, and select **Negated**. This is to denote the event that did not occur. The summary of this condition is:

**! BadgeSwipe : Name = Badge Swipe Event**

The following examples show the rule conditions definition (Edit panel) and summary (Summary panel).

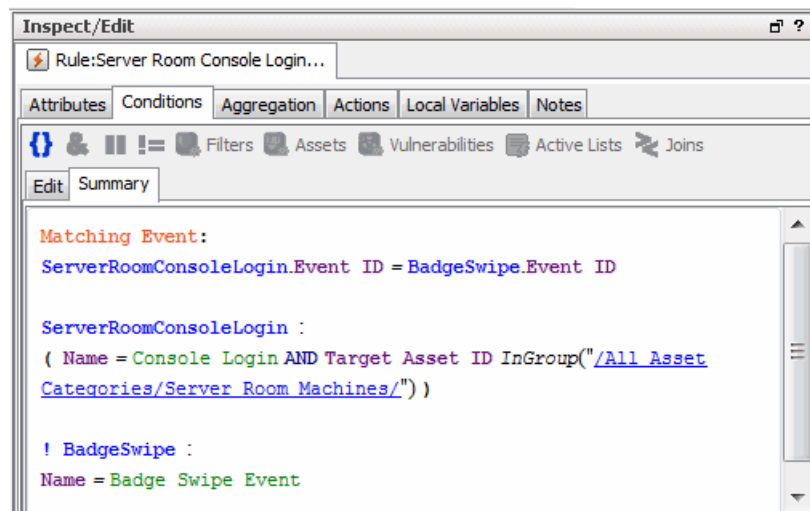


**Matching Event Condition:** Correlates server login IDs with badge swipe IDs based on unique IDs (UUIDs) gleaned from the active list. The UserMap variable is used to get UUID values from the active list.

**Server Room Console Login Condition:** Finds server room machine logins (via event name and asset category). This is the "start" condition that causes the rest of the rule conditions to be evaluated.

**Negated Badge Swipe Event Condition:** We are looking for users who logged in but did not use their own badges to enter the room. Adding this condition completes the scope of the conditions. When there is a server login, the rule correlates IDs (via the Matching Event), but triggers only if there is no matching badge swipe (this condition).

Following is an example of a Rule Conditions Summary.



## Aggregation

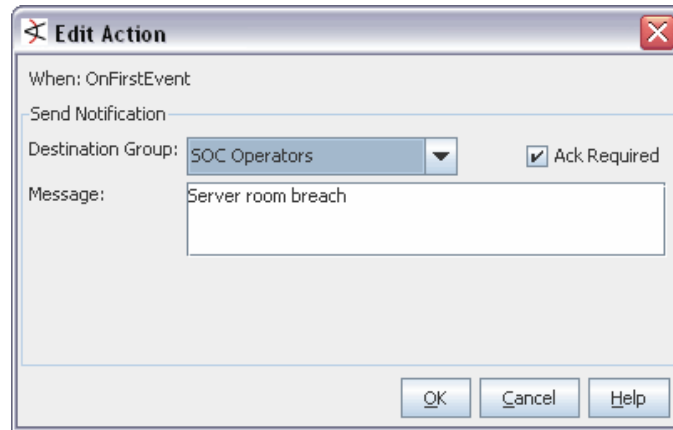
For this example, use default aggregation settings. Aggregate on 1 match in a 2-minute timeframe.



## Actions

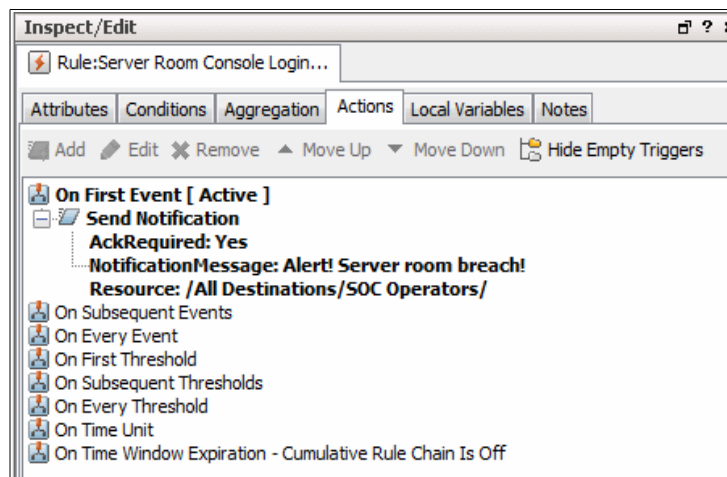
- 1 Click the **Actions** tab for the rule to set up an action to take if the server room is breached.
- 2 Select **On First Event** (this trigger is activated by default), right-click and choose **Add > Send Notification** to bring up the Add “Send Notification” Action dialog.
- 3 Choose the Destination Group for the e-mail, type in a message, and click **OK** to add this action to the On First Event trigger.

For this example, we chose `SOC Operators` as the Destination Group. Our message is “Server room breach”.



- 4 Click **OK** to save the notification definition.

When the action is configured, it is displayed under the “On First Event” trigger as shown in the figure. According to this rule, a message is sent on the first trigger event; the first event in every time window that indicates a server room policy violation.



Click **Apply** or **OK** on the rule editor to save the example rule.



## Chapter 16

# List Authoring

---

Active lists and session lists are important tools for tracking traffic with IP addresses of interest.

[“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#)

[“Managing Active List Groups” on page 523](#)

[“Managing Session Lists” on page 524](#)

[“Field Naming Restrictions” on page 529](#)

### Required Settings for Large Lists

By default, active lists and session lists each support 1 million entries. This section describes the required settings to support up to 5 million entries.

- You increase the list entries limit through the `activelist.max_capacity` and `sessionlist.max_capacity` property settings in the `server.properties` file, as in the following example:

```
activelist.max_capacity = 5000000
sessionlist.max_capacity = 5000000
```

- To have adequate memory for 5 million entries, use these settings in the `server.wrapper.conf` file:

```
wrapper.java.initmemory=32768
wrapper.java.maxmemory=32768
```

Both files are stored in the Manager's `config` directory. Refer to the Administrator Guide's Configuration section, topic on “Managing and Changing Properties File Settings.”

- Set the Console's Java heap setting to **1536 MB**.

## Managing Active Lists

While you can manually update active lists, their real value comes when you author automatic, rule-driven lists with dynamic content. See [“Creating an Active List” on page 511](#) and then [“Using Rules to Populate an Active List” on page 518](#).

### Creating an Active List

Active lists are usually defined in conjunction with **rules** specifically tailored to interact with and populate the lists dynamically. Lists not driven by rules are empty or contain only manually added entries that have not timed out. (See [“Using Rules to Populate an Active](#)

List” on page 518 and “Rules Authoring” on page 397 for more information on how to create rules that work with active lists.)

#### To create an active list:

- 1 Choose the **Lists** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Click the **Active Lists** tab.
- 3 Right-click an active list group and choose **New Active List**.
- 4 Fill in fields and select options as follows.

---

#### Active List Attributes

In this field...	...enter this
Name	Enter a name for the active list. This name identifies the active list in ArcSight pick lists. Spaces and special characters are allowed.
Optimize Data	If you want to create a hash-based list, click <b>Optimize Data</b> to toggle it on. This option reduces the memory usage of an active list. It is useful for active lists with more than 1,000 entries or for lists that contain a large amount of information per entry. See “ <a href="#">Optimize Data with Hash-Based Active Lists</a> ” on page 754 (in the reference topic “ <a href="#">Active Lists</a> ” on page 753).
Capacity (x1000)	This setting indicates the maximum number of active list entries the system is to keep in memory. The default is 10,000. For most cases, 10,000 is appropriate, however, you may wish to adjust this setting if the devices you are monitoring for this active list contain a lot of data to ensure you have adequate memory cache available.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This represents a limit on in-memory capacity only. If you also select <b>Partially cached</b>, more entries are retained but this has an impact on performance when it is necessary to retrieve active list items from the database.</li> <li>• If the maximum number of entries is reached, an existing entry is randomly selected and removed.</li> <li>• Capacity influences the maximum memory that can be consumed by the active list. The memory usage is proportional to the number of entries in the list, which usually are less than the capacity. Capacity affects memory usage, but has little if any impact on performance.</li> </ul>	
TTL Days, TTL Hours, TTL Minutes	In the <b>TTL</b> (Time To Live) fields, set the number of <b>Days</b> , <b>Hours</b> , or <b>Minutes</b> an unused result should remain on the active list before it is removed. Use <b>0</b> (zero) to cause the field to never expire. The maximum number of days is <b>99999</b> .

---

---

**Active List Attributes (Continued)**

In this field...	...enter this
Allow multi-mappings	<p>Check this box to allow multiple instances of key pairings. This enables a single key, such as an actor attribute, to map to multiple values, such as a set of roles. You can use this to return a list of entries with the same value for the key field.</p> <p>For example, with multi-mappings enabled, you can create an active list that could return multiple roles for an actor named Clark Kent (reporter, superhero, space traveller) or multiple names associated with a farmhouse in Kansas (Clark Kent, Superman, Kal-El).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Don't use this setting if you are creating a <b>Time partitioned</b> active list.</p>
Partially cached	<p>When <b>Partially cached</b> is selected, additional entries beyond the in-memory <a href="#">Capacity (x1000)</a> maximum are stored and retrieved from the database.</p> <p>Using partial caching increases overall capacity but can impact performance because it takes more time to retrieve list entries from the database.</p> <p>This setting is required by <a href="#">Time partitioned</a> active lists.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> There is a limitation when in-memory resources such as active channels and data monitors are used to return values from a partially-cached list. Only those values that are in the cache are returned. Reports and query viewers are not affected by this limitation because these resources query the database directly and do not use cache.</p>
Time partitioned	<p>A partially-cached, time-partitioned active list enables you to capture data over time. Without time partitioning, a partially-cached list requires constant retrievals from the database to update the entries, and flushing out old entries are done at random. With time partitioning, the cached data is segregated into partitions based on the list's timestamp (Date field) value. Time-partitioned list data are kept in memory, and older data are the first to age out of the list.</p> <p>This option requires that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The list must <i>not</i> be multi-mapped.</li> <li>• <a href="#">Partially cached</a> must be enabled.</li> <li>• The list must be fields-based (not event-based). Fields must include at least a date and a string field that are set as key fields. Without a date key field, the time partitioned setting is ignored.</li> </ul>

---

---

**Active List Attributes (Continued)**

In this field...	...enter this
Case Sensitivity	<p>You can optionally configure the list to be case-sensitive or -insensitive. Furthermore for case-insensitive lists, you can specify case-insensitivity for keys only, or for both keys and values. The feature enables you to store and look up values in lists regardless of case.</p> <p>Select one:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Case-Sensitive (the default)</li> <li>Key Case-Insensitive</li> <li>Key &amp; Value Case-Insensitive</li> </ul> <p><b>Important:</b> After you save the list, you cannot change this setting. If you want to revert the case sensitivity setting, define a new list instead.</p> <p><b>Cautions on case-insensitive lists:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If your list is case insensitive, don't use the <b>Optimize Data</b> option.</li> <li>Lookups on case-insensitive lists will slow down query and active channel performance. Make sure your queries and variables (used by channels) get values from <i>case-sensitive</i> lists.</li> </ul>
Common and Assign fields	<p>Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see <a href="#">"Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642</a>.</p>
Data: Event-based, Fields-based	<p>In the Data panel, choose <b>Event-based</b> or <b>Fields-based</b> lists. Your entries here determine what kinds of values your list is populated with.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> After you have selected your data fields and saved the active list, you cannot add, remove, or change existing data fields.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Event-based</b> option is convenient for choosing event attributes as found in existing events. When checking or adding to an event-based list, you only need to supply an event. This option is not supported in time-partitioned lists. Go to <a href="#">Step 5</a> for related instructions.</li> <li>The <b>Field-based</b> option offers detailed event and attribute selection controls that involve mapping fields to field attributes. Use this setting for time-partitioned lists. Go to <a href="#">Step 6</a> for related instructions.</li> </ul> <p>Field-based lists that use "Key Fields" are known as <b>active lists with values</b>. (For more information, see <a href="#">"Active Lists with Values" on page 756</a>.)</p>

---

**5** To add event-based attributes:

- a** Click **Select Fields**.
- b** On the Field Selector panel, select one or more event fields for your list data collection then click **OK** to close the Field Selector panel. Then click **Apply** or **OK** on the Active List Editor panel to save your event-based list.

- 6 To add field-based attributes:
- a Under the Name column, replace *<Enter Name>* with a descriptive name for the field. For a list of restricted characters, see [“Field Naming Restrictions” on page 529](#).
  - b Select the data type and corresponding subtype as applicable:

---

#### Field-Based Data Types and Subtypes

Type	Subtype
Address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IPv4 Address</li> <li>IPv6 Address</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The IPv6 address will be simplified on the list. For example, <code>2001:db8:0000:0000:0000</code> will be displayed as <code>2001:db8::</code>. The 0s are dropped and replaced by two colons (<code>::</code>).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MAC Address</li> </ul>
Date	<p>This field is required for time-partitioned active lists. Additionally, you must set this as a key field. If the time-partitioned list has no date or time-based field, time partitioning does not occur.</p> <p>This Date field is used as a default Timestamp value for interval-type queries on active lists.</p>

---

---

**Field-Based Data Types and Subtypes (Continued)**

Type	Subtype
Double, Integer, or Long	<p>Optionally select one of the numeric subtypes to accumulate values when the field is updated, for example, by a rule. If you do not select a cumulative numeric subtype, the entries are replaced when the list is updated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SUM</b> adds the existing value and the inserted value. For example, if type is Double, subtype is SUM, and the current value is 100.00, inserting a value of 50.0 results in a new value of 150.00.</li> <li>• <b>MAX</b> takes the greater of the existing and inserted values. For example, if type is Double, subtype is MAX, and the current value is 100.00, inserting a value of 50.0 does not change the current value because 100.00 is already a maximum of itself and 50.0.</li> <li>• <b>MIN</b> takes the lesser of the existing and inserted values. For example, if type is Double, subtype is MIN, and the current value is 100.00, inserting a value of 50.0 results in a value of 50.0.</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The cumulative values feature is only available in fields-based active lists.</li> <li>• Cumulative numeric fields cannot be used as key fields.</li> <li>• If you are manually editing list entries for the cumulative numeric subtypes, the value you enter is the final value. This means accumulation of values does not occur with manual entry edits.</li> <li>• These cumulative numeric subtypes are not supported in multi-mapped active lists because new entry values for the same key add rather than modify the entries.</li> <li>• Trends <i>cannot</i> act on lists with cumulative numeric fields.</li> <li>• Rules and Pattern Discovery <i>can</i> act on lists that use cumulative numeric fields.</li> </ul>
Resource Reference	Any ArcSight Resource such as Asset, Report, Actor, and so on.
String	This is optional for lists in general but required, along with a Date field, if your list is time partitioned.

---

- c** Optionally check **Key Fields** to enable a per-field Key option, and then select one or more data fields that must be unique.

For example, the ArcSight-provided active list ArcSight Foundation/Configuration Monitoring/Assets with Recent Configuration Modifications uses fields-based data, and keys on unique values for asset address, zone, and name.



Field-based lists that use **Key Fields** are known as active lists with values. (For more information, see [“Active Lists with Values” on page 756.](#))



Note

- For a time-partitioned active list, your key fields must be a Date field and a string field.
- Don't make cumulative numeric fields as key fields.

- 7 Click **Apply** to save and continue editing or **OK** to save and close.

Database columns are defined after the list is created. After the new list is saved, you cannot add, remove, or change columns to the list.

You can use the **Add Entries** button in the Active List Editor to manually insert values to the current active list. See [“Editing an Active List” on page 521.](#)

## Case-Insensitive Lookup in Case-Sensitive Active Lists

This information applies only to case-sensitive lists, including lists created in ESM 5.2 and older versions, where lists were case-sensitive by default.

Suppose the case-sensitive active list was designed to capture user logins, aggregated on the user name. If user **John** logged in 10 times and user **Mae** logged in 7 times, you want the active list to display two lines: one line showing John's 10 logins, and another showing Mae's 7 logins.

You then create a rule to populate the list with login information. If all login names received from your devices are formatted in the same case (upper case, lower case, or initial caps), the list provides the desired display. However, if the user names arrive in different formats from active directories and other sources (for example, John, JOHN, and john for a single user), by default the list and associated rule do not aggregate these different forms of the same user name on a single line, but rather treat them each as a unique login names.

If you do not want case-sensitive results (as in this example), you can use either the **ToUpper** function or the **ToLower** function in a **Variable** as a part of the rules that populate your active list. You can use one of these functions as a variable in a rule, and map it to any field (such as as a DeviceCustomString field) in the active list for which you want to normalize upper/lower case format.

The following topics provide a walk-through example that shows how to make case-insensitive active lists:

- [“Using Rules to Populate an Active List” on page 518](#), especially the sections [For Case-Sensitive Lists: Use Variables to Make the Active List Case-Insensitive](#)
- [“Aggregation” on page 519](#)
- [“Actions” on page 519.](#)



Tip

More fine-grained conditions logic requires more processing and can have a performance impact. For example, specifying a case-insensitive active list requires more processing than a case-sensitive active list. Use conditions logic like this only as necessary, and weigh your performance requirements as a part of content creation.

## Using Rules to Populate an Active List

Typically, active lists are defined in conjunction with **rules** specifically tailored to interact with and populate the lists dynamically. (See [“Rules Authoring” on page 397](#) for more information on how to create rules.)

### Example

For example, to create an active list that captures information about VPN login events, you need to create both (a) the active list that forms the *table* to store and display the data, and (b) the rules to capture and send matching events to the list. The rules *populate* and update the list for you.

This example shows how to create an active list and a rule that work together to capture VPN login events. The active list shows the number of logins by user name.

### Example Active List

To try out this example, first create a fields-based active list named **VPN Events**, with fields named `User Name` and `Category`, both of type `String`. Set `User Name` as the Key field.

Name	Type	Sub-type	Key-field
User Name	String		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Category	String		<input type="checkbox"/>

### Example Rule to Populate Active List

Next, create a rule, also named **VPN Events**, to populate the active list with user names and category information for matching login events.

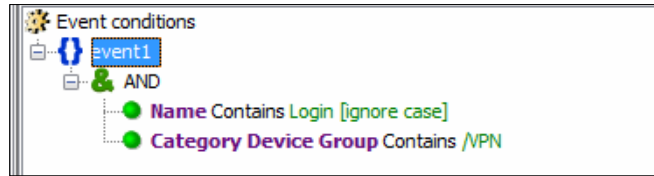
#### What the Rule Does

The goal is to define this rule to look for VPN login events, using values found in `Event Name` and `Category Device Group` fields as indicators of such events. A matching event triggers the rule. When triggered, the rule interacts with our VPN Events active list as follows.

Populate this field in the Active List	With the value from this field in incoming events
User Name	Target User Name
Category	Category Device Group

#### Conditions

Set **Conditions** to capture events when the **Event Name** contains `Login` and **Category Device Group** contains `VPN`. To capture event names from various sources that might be formatted differently (for example, in all upper case, all lower case, or initial capitalization), uncheck the Case-Sensitive ( ) option next to the Event Name field. This shows up in the **Conditions Summary** tab as follows:



More fine-grained conditions logic (as used in this example) requires more processing and can have a performance impact. For example, using "`<SomeField> Contains <SomeString>`" for a field lookup requires more processing than writing a field lookup like "`<SomeField> = <SomeString>`".

### For Case-Sensitive Lists: Use Variables to Make the Active List Case-Insensitive

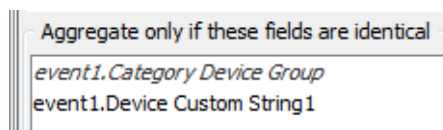
If your list is *case-insensitive*, you can skip this topic.

This information is provided for backward compatibility. In earlier releases of ESM, for example, 5.2 and older, and 6.0c, lists were case-sensitive by default. If you have lists created in earlier ESM versions, this topic explains how to perform case insensitive

For this example, we want to make our active list *case-insensitive*. That is, since `User Name` is the active list *key field*, we want to aggregate matching events from the same user regardless of the original capitalization format of the user name in the event. If 3 events come in with user name **Jeff**, and 4 more come in with user name **jeff**, these should be shown on a single line in the active list showing that Jeff logged in 7 times. As described below, we'll map a **Variable** String Function called `ToUpper` to achieve this. You can also use `ToLower` and get the same results.

### Aggregation

On the **Aggregation** tab in the rule, select the fields for aggregation *only if they are identical*. In the Add Field dialog, set Aggregation for event1 on `Category Device Group` and `Device Custom String`.



If your list is case-sensitive and you want to aggregate identical fields regardless of case sensitivity, you will also include in the above dialog an aggregation for `event1.ConvertToUpperCase`, our variable which you have previously created in [For Case-Sensitive Lists: Use Variables to Make the Active List Case-Insensitive](#) and can now select in Add Field's Local Variables tab.

### Actions

Activate the rule **Actions** option **On Every Event** (de-activate others), and select **Add to Active List**.

- **For case-sensitive lists only**, insert the `ConvertToUpperCase` variable into the active list. Select **On Every Event**, right-click, and choose **Add Set Event Field**. Map `Device Custom String 1` to `$ConvertToUpperCase`. (This syntax is called the velocity template for the function. See ["Using Velocity Expressions in Rule Actions" on page 1001](#).)

**Add "Batch Set Event Field..." Action**

When: On Every Event

Set EventField

Rule Action - Set Event Field

Name	Value
<b>Device Custom</b>	
Device Custom Date1	
Device Custom Date1 Label	
Device Custom Number1	
Device Custom Number1 Label	
Device Custom String1	\$ConvertToUpperCase
Device Custom String1 Label	

- Add values for **User Name** and **Category** to the active list. Map the fields as follows:

- ◆ User Name: Device Custom String1
- ◆ Category: Category Device Group

**Add "Add To Active List" Action**

When: On Every Event

Add To Active List

To: VPN Events

Name	Field
* User Name	Device Custom String1
* Category	Category Device Group

OK Cancel Help

### Local Variables

On the **Local Variables** tab in the rule, create a variable named `ConvertToUpperCase`, select the String Function `ToUpper`, and select Target User Name as the argument. Click **OK** to save the variable.

**Add Local Variable**

Name: ConvertToUpperCase

Function: ToUpper

Converts all characters inside a string to upper case

Arguments

String Target User Name

In subsequent steps, this variable inserts Target User Name values in the active list. This way, all lookups from the active list use upper case key field values.



**Tip**

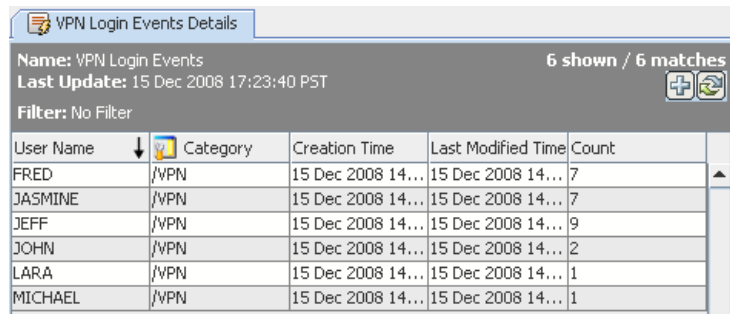
Keep in mind that more fine-grained conditions logic requires more processing and can have a performance impact. For example, specifying a case-insensitive active list requires more processing than a case-sensitive active list. Use conditions logic like this only as necessary, and weigh your performance requirements as a part of content creation.

## Save and Test

Click **OK** on the Rule Editor to save the rule.

When you are ready to test the rule, remember to drag-and-drop the rules into the Real-time Rules folder to deploy them. When you do this, you'll get a choice of whether to move, copy, or link them. Linking is often most efficient. (See ["Deploying Real-time Rules" on page 442.](#))

When the VPN Events rule is triggered, user names are added to the VPN Events active list.



The screenshot shows a window titled "VPN Login Events Details" with a sub-header "6 shown / 6 matches". Below the header, it says "Name: VPN Login Events" and "Last Update: 15 Dec 2008 17:23:40 PST". A filter is set to "No Filter". The main content is a table with the following data:

User Name	Category	Creation Time	Last Modified Time	Count
FRED	/VPN	15 Dec 2008 14...	15 Dec 2008 14...	7
JASMINE	/VPN	15 Dec 2008 14...	15 Dec 2008 14...	7
JEFF	/VPN	15 Dec 2008 14...	15 Dec 2008 14...	9
JOHN	/VPN	15 Dec 2008 14...	15 Dec 2008 14...	2
LARA	/VPN	15 Dec 2008 14...	15 Dec 2008 14...	1
MICHAEL	/VPN	15 Dec 2008 14...	15 Dec 2008 14...	1

A logical next step in this example scenario would be to create another rule that checks to see if certain user names are showing up in the active list, and then takes some action (like sending an e-mail or adding those names to a "suspicious users" list, if appropriate).

## Editing an Active List

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, right-click an active list and choose **Edit Active List**.
- 2 Make appropriate changes to the properties of the active list.
- 3 To add values manually:
  - a Click **Add Entry**.
  - b On the ActiveList Editor panel, add the value for your data list and click **Add**.
  - c To see the updates on your list as you add more values, right-click the active list on the resource tree and select **Show Entries**.
- 4 Click **Apply** to save and continue editing or **OK** to save and close.

## Editing Active List Entries



If your fields-based active list contains numeric subtypes to accumulate values, be careful about manual changes. Your manually-entered value replaces the existing cumulative value, and this new value is not cumulative.

- 1 Right-click an item in the Active List resource tree and choose **Show Entries**.
- 2 In the active list grid view, right-click an entry and choose **Edit**.
- 3 Click the entry's **Source Address** or **Count** to make changes.
- 4 Click **Modify** to change the existing entry or **Add** to post the changed entry as a new one.

## Move or Copy an Active List

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, navigate to an active list and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the active list, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the active list, or **Link** to create a copy of the active list that is linked to the original active list.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the active list that is not affected when the original active list is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the active list that is linked to the original active list. Therefore, if you edit a linked active list, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked active lists, you can either delete the selected active list or all linked active list copies.

## Importing an Active List

You can import a comma-separated-value (CSV) file as data. This is useful if you have data from other systems that you want to import; you can use the import to populate your active lists.

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, select an active list, right-click, and choose **Import CSV File**. This brings up a file browser.
- 2 Browse to find the CSV file you want to import, select it, and click **Open**.

The Import Preview displays. If this is the file you want to import, click **OK** to add it to the active list.

- 3 Right-click the active list you just populated with the CSV file and choose **Show Entries**. This displays the newly-added data from the CSV file in the Viewer panel as active list details.



The default view limit is 2000 entries. To view more, specify the number of entries in your filter.

---

## Exporting an Active List

In the active list viewer, you can export selected entries from an active list to a CSV file. This is useful if you want to manage active list data external to the ArcSight Console.

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, select an active list and choose **Show Entries**. The data in the active list is displayed in the Viewer panel as active list details.
- 2 On the active list detail in the Viewer panel, select one or more entries (typically, rows of events).
- 3 Right-click and choose either **Export CSV - Visible Columns** or **Export CSV - All Columns**. This brings up a file browser.
- 4 Browse to the location where you want to save the exported data, enter a file name in the File Name field, and click **Save**. The entries you selected for export are saved as a CSV file in the chosen location.

## Deleting an Active List

- 1 Right-click an active list and choose **Delete Active List**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Managing Active List Groups

Active list groups are created to store similar groups or active lists in a single location. Groups can be created within groups to meet enterprise needs.

Groups and active lists can be managed with drag and drop functionality. You can move or copy groups and active lists into other groups in the Active Lists resource tree. If a group is deleted, the active lists within that group are also deleted.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

### Navigating to Active Lists

- 1 Choose the **Lists** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Click the **Active Lists** tab.

### Creating an Active List Group

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Active Lists** resource tree.
- 2 In the Active Lists tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.
- 3 A name text field appears under the group you selected.
- 4 In the name text field, type in a name.
- 5 Press **Enter**.

### Renaming Active List Groups

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the name text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

### Editing Active List Groups

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text field.
- 3 Click **OK**.

### Moving or Copying Active List Groups

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Select **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you select **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you select **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the

copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting Active List Groups

- 1 In the Active Lists resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Managing Session Lists

While you can manually update session lists, their real value comes when you author automatic, rule-driven lists with dynamic content.

See also [“Understanding Session Correlation” on page 487](#) and [“Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins \(Example\)” on page 491](#).

## Creating a Session List

Note that session lists are usually defined in conjunction with **rules** specifically tailored to interact with and populate the lists dynamically. Session lists not driven by rules are empty or contain only manually added entries that have not timed out. (See [“Understanding Session Correlation” on page 487](#) and [“Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins \(Example\)” on page 491](#) for more information.)

A session list can have up to 5 million entries. See [“Required Settings for Large Lists” on page 511](#) for information on how to support this maximum limit.

### To create a session list:

- 1 Choose the **Lists** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Click the **Session Lists** tab.
- 3 Right-click a session list group and choose **New Session List**.
- 4 In the Session List Editor, in the **Inspect/Edit** panel, define the following values.

---

#### Session List Attributes

In this field...	...enter this
Name	Enter a name for the session list. This name identifies the session list in ArcSight pick lists. Spaces and special characters are allowed.
Overlapping Entries	Check this box to alert the system to allow multiple instances of key pairings, which keeps the previous session with the same key field open. For example, you might check this box if the list is tracking activity for an asset that supports multiple user logins.

---



---

**Session List Attributes (Continued)**

In this field...	...enter this
In Memory Capacity (x1000)	<p>This setting indicates the maximum number of session entries the system keeps in memory. The default value is 10,000. For most cases, 10,000 is appropriate; however, you may wish to adjust this setting if the devices you are monitoring for this session list contain a lot of data to ensure you have adequate memory cache available.</p> <p>As a best practice, be sure to set In Memory Capacity higher than the number of live sessions you anticipate. This helps optimize performance and, therefore, keeps results reliable.</p>
Entry Expiration Time	<p>Enter an expiration time for session list entries. This indicates the time after which entries are marked as terminated (if no explicit termination event is received previous to this).</p> <p>The default is 0 seconds, which means the entry never expires. An entry with no expiry date/time can only be terminated explicitly (through user action on ArcSight Console, rule actions, or archives).</p>
Case Sensitivity	<p>You can optionally configure the list to be case-sensitive or -insensitive. Furthermore for case-insensitive lists, you can specify case-insensitivity for keys only, or for both keys and values. The feature enables you to store and look up values in lists regardless of case.</p> <p>Select one:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Case-Sensitive (the default)</li> <li>• Key Case-Insensitive</li> <li>• Key &amp; Value Case-Insensitive</li> </ul> <p><b>Important:</b> After you save the list, you cannot change this setting. If you want to revert the case sensitivity setting, define a new list instead.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> Lookups on case-insensitive lists will slow down query and active channel performance. Make sure your queries and variables (used by channels) get values from case-sensitive lists.</p>

---

- 5 Set the **Common** and **Assign** fields as appropriate. Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

- 6 Define columns for session list entries:

Under the Name column, replace *<Enter Name>* with a descriptive name for each session parameter you want to track; for example, IP address, zone, or MAC address. The name you enter here appears as a label in the session list and in the Variable pick list. Names can contain spaces, such as **User Name**. For a list of restricted characters in field names, see [“Field Naming Restrictions” on page 529](#).

Columns for Start Time, End Time, and Creation Time are pre-defined.

- 7 Enter the corresponding data type, sub-type, and mark as key field as required. Refer to the following table for guidance:

**Session List Column Types and Subtypes**

Type	Subtype
Address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IPv4 Address</li> <li>IPv6 Address</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The IPv6 address will be simplified on the list. For example, 2001:db8:0000:0000:0000 will be displayed as 2001:db8::. The 0s are dropped and replaced by two colons (::).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MAC Address</li> </ul>
Date	This Date field is used as a default Timestamp value for interval-type queries on session lists.
Double, Integer, or Long	<p>Select the applicable numeric type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Leave the Subtype column blank even if you see the selections. The numeric subtypes MIN, MAX, and SUM are not supported in session lists.</p>
Resource Reference	Any ArcSight Resource such as Asset, Report, Actor, and so on.
String	This is optional for lists in general but required, along with a Date field, if your list is time partitioned.
Key field	Select one or more fields that must be unique to indicate a session start. In most cases, you would select at least two fields to make a key-value pair. For example, in the case of a DHCP login event, when a new IP and zone combination are written to the list, this indicates that a new session has started.

Database columns are defined after the session list is created. Column definitions cannot be added, removed, or changed once the new session list is saved.

- 8 Click **Apply**.

The Filter tab for the list becomes enabled.

- 9 Click the **Filter** tab in the Session List Editor and define a filter that limits the number of events to consider for the new session list. Session lists without filters must evaluate every event, which can negatively affect performance. The Filter tab presents the Field Set selection panel. Although the filter editor is similar, session list filters are not the same as Filter resources. Session list filters use different fields than Filter resources, for one thing.

Session lists are often concerned with logins to specific machines. In this case, you would write a filter that would limit evaluation to IP address ranges of interest. By filtering out all events except those targeting IP addresses in the DHCP server's subnet, for example, you are effectively limiting session list evaluation to inside traffic, reducing the overhead of session list evaluation. Other uses of session lists suggest

other installation-specific knowledge that can be used to create session list filters that restrict the number of events matched against the session list.



Filters are used to improve session list performance by restricting the number of events that must be evaluated. Filters, such as DHCP IP address ranges, are installation-specific. Therefore, consider adding a filter to pre-defined session lists, such as /All Session Lists/ArcSight Foundation/Network Monitoring/DHCP, to improve performance.

**10** Click **Apply** to save and continue editing or **OK** to save and close.

You can use the **Add Entry** button in the Session List Editor to manually create more entries for the current session list.

## Using Rules to Populate a Session List

Session lists are usually defined in conjunction with *rules* specifically tailored to interact with and populate the lists dynamically. Lists not driven by rules are empty or contain only manually added entries that have not timed out. See [“Understanding Session Correlation” on page 487](#) and [“Using Session Lists to Correlate Session Data on User Logins \(Example\)” on page 491](#) for more information, including an example walk-through of how to create a session list and rules with which to populate it.

For information about rules, specifically, see [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#).

## Editing a Session List

- 1** In the Session Lists resource tree, right-click a session list and choose **Edit Session List**.
- 2** Make appropriate changes to the properties of the session list.
- 3** Click **Apply** to save and continue editing or **OK** to save and close.

## Moving or Copying a Session List

- 1** In the Session Lists resource tree, navigate to a session list and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2** Choose **Move** to move the session list, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the session list, or **Link** to create a copy of the session list that is linked to the original session list.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the session list that is not affected when the original session list is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the session list that is linked to the original session list. Therefore, if you edit a linked session list, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked session lists, you can either delete the selected session list or all linked session list copies.

## Exporting a Session List

In the session list viewer, you can export selected entries from a session list to a CSV file. This is useful if you want to manage session list data external to the ArcSight Console.

- 1** In the Session Lists resource tree, select a session list, and choose **Show Entries**. The data in the session list is displayed in the Viewer panel as session list details.

- 2 On the session list detail in the Viewer panel, select one or more entries (typically, rows of events).
- 3 Right-click and choose either **Export CSV - Visible Columns** or **Export CSV - All Columns**. This brings up a file browser.
- 4 Browse to the location where you want to save the exported data, enter a file name in the File Name field, and click **Save**. The entries you selected for export are saved as a CSV file in the chosen location.

## Deleting a Session List

- 1 Right-click a session list and choose **Delete Session List**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Delete**.

## Adding a Session List Entry

Entries are added to a session list through rule actions (see [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#)) or manual entry, described below.



A session list can contain only one entry with the same key and StartTime value (up to milliseconds). This is useful in preventing duplicate session entries from multiple rule firings and from scheduled rules that are also deployed in real-time.

## Adding a Session List Entry Based on an Existing Entry

- 1 Right-click an item in the Session List resource tree and choose **Show Entries**.
- 2 In the session list grid view, right-click an entry that is similar to the entry you would like to add. Choose **Edit**. The Session List Entry editor appears in the Inspect/Edit window.
- 3 Click a row's **Value** column to make changes. The column type may limit the kind of data that can be entered.
- 4 Click **Add** to post the changed entry as a new one.


## Adding a New Session List Entry

- 1 Right-click an item in the Session List resource tree and choose **Edit Session List**. The Session List Entry editor appears in the Inspect/Edit window.
- 2 Click the **Add Entry** button.
- 3 Click a row's **Value** column to make changes. The column type may limit the kind of data that can be entered.
- 4 Click **Add** to save the new entry. The **Reset** button clears all values.

## Deleting a Session List Entry

- 1 Right-click an item in the Session List resource tree and choose **Show Entries**.
- 2 In the session list grid view, right-click the entry that you would like to delete. Choose **Delete**. Confirm the deletion by clicking **Delete**.

## Terminating a Session List Entry

- 1 In the Session Lists resource tree, right-click a session list and choose **Show Entries**.
- 2 In the session list grid view, right-click the entry you want to terminate and select **Terminate Session Entry**.
- 3 Enter the date and time for the session end time. Click the  button for a context menu containing relative times such as Now, 1 hour ago, 1 day from now, and so on. Click **OK**.

## Field Naming Restrictions

The following information on field naming restrictions applies to both session lists and field-based active lists. When you enter a name for your field, you are creating a database column. Field names, therefore, are subject to character restrictions consistent with database column names. The following table lists the characters you must not use in field names.

**Table 16-1** Disallowed Characters in Field Names

Disallowed Character	Description
&	Ampersand
*	Asterisk
@	At
^	Caret or circumflex
:	Colon
.	Dot or period
=	Equals
!	Exclamation point
>	Greater than
-	Hyphen or dash
<	Less than
(	Parenthesis, left
)	Parenthesis, right
+	Plus
'	Single quote
/	Slash, forward
[	Square bracket, left
]	Square bracket, right
	Vertical bar



# Case Management and Queries

---

Cases track individual or multiple related events and export event data to third-party products. Cases can stand alone or integrate with a third-party case management system, such as HP Service Manager or BMC Remedy.

A case contains information about an incident, usually with one or more events attached. Use cases to track, investigate, and resolve events. Where cases are similar, you can copy events directly from one case to another. You assign cases of interest to analysts, who can investigate and resolve them based on severity and enterprise policies. You can also use rules to automatically open a case when certain conditions are met.

You can assign cases to groups of users who receive a notification with access to the case and its associated data. Those users can take action on the assigned case and specify other actions to be taken, assign it to another user, or resolve the case.

Also refer to the reference guide topic [“Case Editor Tab Fields” on page 802](#) when building and using cases.

[“Using External Case Management Systems” on page 531](#)

[“Managing Cases” on page 532](#)

[“Working with Events in Cases” on page 539](#)

[“Managing Case Groups” on page 541](#)

[“Running Case Queries” on page 543](#)

[“Creating a Report from a Case” on page 543](#)

## Using External Case Management Systems

HP provides the ability to integrate with external case management systems. You can export ESM cases to these external case management systems as XML files. See [“Exporting a Case to an External System” on page 537](#).

### HP Service Manager

If you have the HP Service Manager, you can configure ESM to integrate with it using the Enterprise System Connector for HP Service Manager. Then you can use HP Service Manager to provide supplemental or alternative ticketing, tracking, and workflow support for security event data.

The Enterprise System Connector for HP Service Manager transfers data from ESM to HP Service Manager. The ArcSM connector can also be configured to update the ArcSight

database with HP Service Manager status. For more about the ArcSM connector, see the ArcSM documentation.

## BMC Remedy

If you have the Remedy Action Request System, you can configure ESM to integrate with it using an application called ArcRemedyClient. Then you can use Remedy to provide supplemental or alternative ticketing, tracking, and workflow support for ESM security event data.

ArcRemedyClient runs in the background as a service, transferring data from ESM to Remedy. ArcRemedyClient can also be configured to update the database with Remedy status. For more about the ArcRemedyClient, ask your HP Customer Service representative for ArcSight products.

## Managing Cases

This topic describes the basic tasks necessary to create, manage, and delete cases.

Cases can be created and automatically updated as a rule action when the conditions of the rule are met by incoming events. You can also add an event to a case directly from resources that monitor events, such as active channels and dashboards.

By default, you are only required to set the case's Name field. Beginning with ESM 6.5c SP1, HP provides the ability to customize fields on the Case Editor UI and mark them as mandatory, like the Name field. This is done through the assistance of HP Customer Support or HP Professional Services for ArcSight products. If you have upgraded from an older ESM version, verify if mandatory fields have been defined to suit your business requirements after the upgrade. If so, note that cases created in the previous version will now have the required fields. If you view the old cases on the Case Editor UI in ESM 6.5c SP1, you will not be able to close the case's Inspect/Edit panel without setting the required fields.

The events added to a case are attached to the case itself, which makes it possible to preserve case event history over time.

See also [“Collaborating on Events” on page 168](#).

## Creating a New Case

This topic describes how to create a case as part of an existing case group. You can have more than 1,000 cases per case group. If you have 1,000 cases or less, you can view them by expanding the case group node on the resource navigator tree. Beyond 1,000 cases, create an active channel or query viewer based on a filter for case group ID to view all cases in the group. See [“Monitoring Events” on page 77](#) for details about active channels and query viewers.

- 1 Choose the **Cases** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a case group and choose **New Case**. You can also choose the **New Case** option on the File menu.
- 3 In the Case Editor, select the **Initial** tab.
- 4 Select the **Attributes** sub tab.
- 5 Set all required fields, one of which is the **Name** field.



Display ID numbers are assigned automatically when you save the case.

- 6 Specify **Ticket** information for the case as described in the [Case Properties](#) table.
- 7 In the Assign section:
  - a Choose a user on the **Owner** drop-down menu, to assign one or more case owners.
  - b Choose groups on the **Notification Groups** drop-down menu to notify groups of the new case.
- 8 For the optional Common section, refer to [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).
- 9 Click **OK**.

For details on defining case attributes, see [“Case Properties” on page 533](#), [“Editing a Case” on page 533](#) and [“Case Editor Tab Fields” on page 802](#) (a complete reference).

## Case Properties

Property	Usage
Ticket Type	The drop-down list includes <b>Internal</b> , <b>Client</b> , and <b>Incident</b> types.
Stage	Selections indicate workflow stage of ticket; default selections include <b>Queued</b> , <b>Initial</b> , <b>Follow-Up</b> , <b>Final</b> , and <b>Closed</b> . (See also <a href="#">“Creating New Stages” on page 171</a> and <a href="#">“Editing Stages” on page 172</a> .)
Frequency	Indicates how often reported issue occurs. Values assigned are <b>0</b> (never or once), <b>1</b> (less than 10 times), <b>2</b> (10 to 15 times), <b>3</b> (15 times), <b>4</b> (more than 15).
Operational Impact	Impact of reported issue. Values assigned are <b>0</b> (no impact), <b>1</b> (no immediate impact), <b>2</b> (low priority impact), <b>3</b> (high priority impact), <b>4</b> (immediate impact).
Security Classification	Values assigned are <b>1</b> (Unclassified), <b>2</b> (Confidential), <b>3</b> (Secret), <b>4</b> (Top Secret).
Consequence Severity	Values assigned are <b>0</b> (None), <b>1</b> (Insignificant), <b>2</b> (Marginal), <b>3</b> (Critical), <b>4</b> (Catastrophic).
Reporting Level	Calculated based on <b>Ticket</b> info values entered. You can also use entries in all Case Ticket fields to generate reports so you can categorize cases based on specific case information.
Incident Information	Automatically populated based on events included in the case.

For more information on entries in the remaining Initial tabs, and the **Follow-Up**, **Final**, **Events**, and **Notes** tabs, see [“Editing a Case” on page 533](#) and [“Case Editor Tab Fields” on page 802](#) (a complete reference).

## Editing a Case

To be able to edit a case that has already been saved, you first need to lock it by selecting the **Locked by** checkbox. This prevents other users from modifying the case while you're editing it.

- 1 In the Cases resource tree, right-click a case and choose **Edit Case**.
- 2 In the Case Editor, select the particular workflow tab you want to edit, as in [“Cases Editor Workflow Tabs” on page 534](#).
- 3 Select the tab and add or edit its information. When you are finished with this, click **OK** to save your changes.
- 4 When you are finished with the case, clear the **Locked by** checkbox to release the lock on the case before you click **Close**.

**Caution**

Rules can also automate making updates to the case based on event conditions. However, if the case is locked when the rule triggers, the rule action to update the case will fail.

For details on the rule action on cases, refer to [“Rule Actions Reference” on page 422](#).

## Cases Editor Workflow Tabs

Tab	Usage
Initial	Provides basic case information: case ticket attributes, description and security classification.
Follow-Up	Descriptions of actions taken, planned, or recommended.
Final	Ticket resolution and reporting, including attack mechanism, attack agent, incident information, and vulnerability information.
Events	<p>A list of the events included in the case.</p> <p>If a rule action created or updated the case, the correlation event (the event resulting from a rule firing) is automatically added to the tab. If the rule action is also configured to include the correlated base events, you can expand the correlation event on the case's Events tab to view the associated base events. See <a href="#">“Rule Actions Reference” on page 422</a> and read about the Create New Case and Add to Existing Case actions.</p>
Notes	<p>System-generated audit trail of updates done to the case, and miscellaneous case information you manually enter. Information is presented in table and list formats. The items are sorted chronologically in descending order.</p> <p>You cannot delete entries once they are written to the table and list.</p>

## Finding Cases

You can locate a particular ArcSight case by its reference ID if you wish.

- 1 Right-click a group in the Cases resource tree and choose **Edit Case by ID**.
- 2 Enter the ID string in the dialog box and click **OK** to display it in the Case Editor.

When working from cases listed in a Viewer panel channel view, you can locate a particular case's position in the Navigator panel's resource tree.

- 1 Right-click a case in the channel grid view and choose **Find Case in Navigator**.
- 2 Look for the highlighted item in the Navigator panel's Cases resource tree.

## Attaching a File to a Case

Make sure that since installing the ArcSight Console you have logged in at least twice before attaching a file. A second login solves an authentication problem that can prevent you from attaching or uploading a file.

### To attach a file:

- 1 Open an existing case and click **Lock** to edit it.
- 2 Click **Attachments** and attach by uploading the file.

Field	Description
File Name	The default is the uploaded filename, which you can change.
Attachment Name	A descriptive name for the file. This name can differ from the actual file name, and can include spaces. If you do not provide an alternative name here, the original file name is used.
Attachment Description	Optional description of the file.
Sharing	Click <b>Share this file in Arcsight</b> if you want to make the file available as a shared resource on the ArcSight Manager
Mime Type	Read-only field that indicates the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) type of the attached file.
Encoding	Text encoding; for example, you could select Chinese text for internationalization requirements.

- 3 Click **Attach**.

The Attachments tab displays the list of attached files. A file resource is created for each attachment. See [“Managing File Resources” on page 623](#) for additional information.

- 4 Select a file to view its summary. From the summary view, you can attach, edit, or detach a file.
  - ◆ Attach: attaches the file to the case.
  - ◆ Edit: enables you to edit the name and description. You can also upload a new file to replace the existing file by selecting **Replace file** and click **Update**.
  - ◆ Detach: removes the file from the case.
- 5 Unlock the case if you want the case available for editing by other administrators.

## Best Practices on Attaching Files to a Case

ESM automatically creates a file resource for every file that you attach to a case. These file resources are stored in `/All Files/Attachments`. If you are creating packages of such cases, the package will also include the actual attachments. This means the attachments exist twice in the database, as file resources and as part of the package. You should therefore consider the size of the attachment files; for example, attachments of 20 Mb and above use up a lot of space. If you are creating case packages every month for backup purposes, the space usage will increase exponentially since additional file resources are created.

**To manage space usage, you can do the following:**

- Avoid attaching multiple large files to a case. Keep those files in a safe and separate repository. Create a single file containing a list of pointers to the location of related files and attach that list to the case instead.
- If cases are closed, consider packaging them, exporting the packages to a separate and safe repository, then deleting the cases from ESM. When cases are deleted, the case attachments (the file resources) are also deleted.

For more information about creating packages and exporting them, see [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#).

## Viewing a Case Attachment

Once a file is attached to a case, anyone viewing the case can view details about the file and download it. To do this, open a case and click the Attachments tab, which lists files attached to the selected case. Right-click a file name and choose **Open** to open the file or **Download** to download the file to your local system.

If you click **Download**, you get a file browser in which to navigate to the local directory where you want to store the file. In the **File Name** field, type the name under which you want to store the file on your local system and click **Save**. The file is saved as specified.

If the case attachment was also added as a shared resource, the file is available in the ArcSight Manager Files resource folders. To access a shared file, choose **Files** in the Navigator and browse the folders, or choose **Edit > Find Resource** from the menus, enter the file name in the **Search query** field, and click **Find**. (See [“Finding Resources” on page 629](#) for more information on this utility.)

## Tracking Modifications to a Case

A case's Notes tab includes information on changes to that case. You can also view audit events on multiple cases on the event viewer panel (see [“Monitoring Events” on page 77](#) for different methodologies of displaying events).

## Viewing the Case's Notes Tab

The lower part of a case's Notes tab contains information on changes made to the case. The changes are presented in two formats: the Table subtab presents, in row format, the date, the case's owner, and the author of the change. The List subtab contains the corresponding information plus the specific changes made, for example:

Table List		
Date	Owner	Text
29 Jan 2014 12:02:37 PST	admin	Case changed by user ...

Table List	
[0] Author: admin Date: 29 Jan 2014 12:02:37 PST	
Case changed by user 'admin'	
The change(s) are as follows	
Ticket Type: [Internal] -> [Client]	
Stage: [Queued] -> [Initial]	
Frequency: [0] -> [2]	

## Creating an Event Viewer for Cases' Internal Audit Events



**Note**

To be able to view internal audit events in general, the user must belong to a group that has access to the following filter:

/All Filters/ArcSight Administration/ESM/System  
Health/Events/Audit/ArcSight Audit Events

This filter is added to the group's ACL Editor settings on the Events tab and applies to audit events for all resources. Refer to ["Granting or Removing Event Permissions" on page 609](#) for instructions.

Through an active channel, query viewer, or data monitor using the proper filter, you can view details on modifications done to cases.

Refer to ["Monitoring Events" on page 77](#) for the different ways to create an event viewer. Use the following fields in your event viewer to capture audit events related to the case:

Field or Column	Displayed Information
Name	Event name, for example, Case updated or Note inserted.
File Name	The case's name
Target User Name	The user who made the change
Device Custom String3 (Label: AttachedTo)	For the "Note inserted" event, the resource type, Case, to which the note is attached
Device CustomString4 (Label: AttachedToID)	For the "Note inserted" event, the resource ID of the case to which the note is attached
Device CustomString5 (Label: AttachedToName)	For the "Note inserted" event, the display name of the case to which the note is attached



**Tip**

You can copy the resource ID displayed in Device Custom String4.AttachedToID), paste it into the Console's search box, and go to the actual case resource.

## Exporting a Case to an External System

If you have an integration to an external case management system, you can transfer cases from the Cases resource tree to the external system as XML by doing the following.

- 1 Choose the Cases resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a case and choose **Export to External System**.

The Case Editor displays a message informing you of a successful transfer. Exported cases also display a flagged icon indicating the case has been exported. The output file is stored in the Manager's archives/export/ directory.

## Moving or Copying a Case to a Group

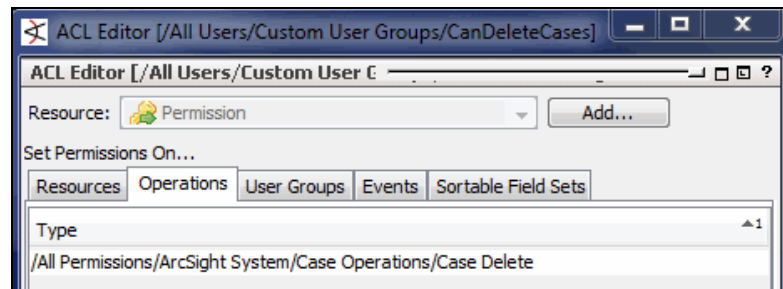
While moving a case, you can choose to move it completely, make a separate copy, or make a copy that is still linked to the original.

- 1 In the Cases resource tree, navigate to a case and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the case, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the case, or **Link** to create a copy of the case that is linked to the original case.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the case that is not affected when the original case is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the case that is linked to the original case. Therefore, if you edit a linked case, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked cases, you can either delete the selected case or all linked case copies.

## Granting Permission to Delete Cases

By default, new user groups added under Custom User Groups are **not** allowed to delete cases. The ability to delete cases is controlled by the permission, `/All Permissions/ArcSight System/Case Operations/Case Delete`, set in the group's ACL Editor on the Operations tab.



A user can belong to multiple groups. If at least one of those groups have permission to delete cases, then the user will have the ability to do so; the permission to delete cases takes precedence.

User groups created in older releases (prior to ESM 6.5c SP1) carry over their legacy permission to delete cases.

### To grant or remove permission to delete cases:

- 1 Right-click the user group and choose **ACL Editor**.
- 2 Follow the instructions in [“Granting or Removing Operations Permissions” on page 606](#) to grant or remove the `/All Permissions/ArcSight System/Case Operations/Case Delete` permission on the ACL Editor's Operations tab.
- 3 If you are granting permission to delete cases, go to the Resources tab:
  - a Follow the instructions in [“Granting or Removing Resource Permissions” on page 604](#) to add the `/All Cases/All Cases` to the list of resources.
  - b Check the **R** and **W** boxes to grant read and write access.

## Deleting a Case



Prior to deleting cases, decide if you want to preserve them after deletion. If so, add this property (or ask an administrator to add it) in the `server.properties` file before deleting any cases:

```
case.archive_ondelate.enabled=true
```

The archived deleted cases are stored as read-only snapshots for historical purposes in the Manager's `archive/cases` directory. The filename format of the archived case is

```
YYYY-MM-DD <deleted case name>.xml
```

For important details on changing properties files, refer to the topic, "Managing and Changing Properties File Settings" under the "Configuration" section of the ESM Administrator's Guide.

There are two conditions where you **cannot delete** a case (right-click option to delete the case is disabled):

- The case is locked.
- You belong to a user group that does not have permission to delete cases. This permission, `/All Permissions/ArcSight System/Case Operations/Case Delete`, is granted through a user group's ACL setting.

### To delete a case:

- 1 In the Cases resources tree, unlock the case you want to delete, if necessary.
- 2 Right-click a case and choose **Delete Case**.
- 3 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.



For related information on the effect on linked cases, see ["Moving or Copying a Case to a Group" on page 537](#).

## Working with Events in Cases

This section describes the process of adding and viewing events associated with cases. The case's Events tab displays events that were added to the case. Events are added to the case through any of these methods:

- Automatically through a rule. The correlation event that triggered the creation or the update of the case is automatically added to the case's Events tab. The correlated base events are also included if this option was selected in the rule. See ["Including Base Events through a Rule" on page 539](#).
- Manually from an event grid such as active channel, data monitor, or query viewer. See ["Creating or Updating a Case from Displayed Events" on page 540](#).
- Manually from another case's event channel. See the topic, ["Copying Event Details from Case to Case" on page 541](#).

### Including Base Events through a Rule

By default, if a rule action creates or updates a case, the case's Events tab automatically includes the correlation event generated by the rule. You can also configure that same rule to include base events to be part of the case's events. See ["Rules Authoring" on page 397](#)

and the Case rule action listed in [“Rule Actions” on page 423](#). Once base events are included, you can view them on the case's Events tab by expanding the correlation event.

## Creating or Updating a Case from Displayed Events



Events added to a case are accessible in the context of that case to any user who has permissions to view or edit the case. Even users who do not have permissions on the *events* themselves have permissions to view full events *in the context of a case* to which they have permissions.

As a best practice, keep this in mind when adding events to a case and setting access control lists (ACLs) on cases. For more information on ACLs, see [“Granting or Removing Resource Permissions” on page 604](#).

You can create or update cases directly from the Viewer panel while you are monitoring suspicious events. The events you select for the case are displayed on the case's Events tab.

- 1 If you are using this procedure to add events to an existing case, make sure the case is locked to prevent others from making changes to the case while you are working on it.
- 2 Display events on the grid using one of the following methods:
  - ◆ Use resources such as an active channel, data monitor, or query viewer, described in [“Monitoring Events” on page 77](#).

Or

  - ◆ Right-click a case that has events and choose **Case Details Channel**.
- 3 On the event grid view, select one or more events.
- 4 Right-click and choose one of the following:
  - ◆ **Add to Case > New Case** to create a new case.
  - ◆ **Add to Case > Case in Editor** if you already have the case displayed on the Inspect/Edit panel.



- If there are multiple Case Editors open when you choose **Add to Case > Case in Editor**, the selected events are added to the Case Editor in focus (showing on top of the others).
- If no Case Editors are currently open but you choose **Add to Case > Case in Editor** option anyway, a new case is created and the selected events are added to it.

- ◆ **Case > Other** to bring up the Case Selector dialog. Navigate to the case where you want to add the events, select the case, and click **OK**.

The selected events appear in the Case Editor on the Events tab.

- 5 For new cases, follow additional instructions in [“Creating a New Case” on page 532](#).
- 6 Click **OK**.

Console adds the events and displays the destination case's Events tab.



- 7 To view the added events on this tab, expand **Other selected Event(s)**.



Events related to a case are preserved in the case's Events tab for tracking purposes even after the retention period where the events would typically age out of the database. However, on the channel, the events are available based on the retention period of the Default Storage Group. For details on the retention period and how to change it, refer to the Administration section of the ArcSight Command Center User's Guide. See the topic, "Storage," for information about editing the retention period of Default Storage Group.

## Copying Event Details from Case to Case

Within the same ESM installation, you can copy event details from Case A to Case B, for situations where those two cases are similar but tracked separately. If Case A is deleted, the copied events in Case B are still available on Case B's Events tab. You can only copy event details between two existing cases. You cannot create a case with these procedures.

### To copy events directly from the source case:

- 1 Make sure the destination case is locked.
- 2 Display the source case's **Events** tab, right-click the event(s), and choose **Add Event(s) to Case**.
- 3 On the Case Selector popup, select the destination case.

Console adds the events and displays the destination case's Events tab.



You can also copy events into a case from any event viewer, like an active channel, query viewer, case details channel, or data monitor. See ["Creating or Updating a Case from Displayed Events"](#) on page 540.

## Deleting Events from a Case

- 1 In the Cases resource tree, right-click a case and choose **Edit Case**.
- 2 In the Case Editor, select the **Events** tab.
- 3 Select one or more events.
- 4 Right-click and choose **Remove from Case**.
- 5 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Managing Case Groups

Case groups are created to store similar groups or cases in a single location. Groups can be created within groups to meet enterprise needs.

You can manage groups and cases with drag and drop functionality. Move or copy groups and cases into other groups from the Cases window. If a group is deleted, the cases within that group are also deleted.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

## Creating a Case Group

- 1 From the **Navigator Panel** drop-down menu, select **Cases**.

Cases are displayed in different colors based on the assigned "Consequence Severity" in the case. The severity descriptions are Catastrophic (Dark Red), Critical (Red), Marginal (Orange), Insignificant (Green), or None (Gray).



Before being able to edit a case that has already been saved, you need to lock the case by selecting the **Lock Case** checkbox, so other users cannot modify the case while you're editing it.

---

- 2 In the **Cases** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.
- 3 A **Name** text field appears under the group you selected.
- 4 In the name text field, type in a name.
- 5 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming a Case Group

In the Cases resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.

- 1 In the **Name** text field, rename the group.
- 2 Press **Enter**.

## Editing a Case Group

- 1 In the Cases resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text field.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying a Case Group

- 1 In the Cases resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.

The ArcSight Console displays a dialog box with drag-and-drop options.

- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting a Case Group

All cases under the group are deleted. If you delete a linked group, the original group is also deleted.

- 1 In the Cases resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Running Case Queries

You can create groups in the Cases resource tree that automatically query every case change that occurs. If a case change results in a state that meets the criteria for such a group, the case is listed in that group.

### Setting Up an Automatic Case Query Group

- 1 Choose the **Cases** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a group in the tree and choose **New Group**.
- 3 Give the group a suitable name.
- 4 Select the **Attributes** tab and enter values as you always do when [Editing Resource Groups](#).
- 5 Select the **Conditions** tab and construct query statements as you do when [Creating Filters](#).
- 6 Click **Apply** to save your changes and keep editing, or **OK** to save and close.

### Setting Up a Case Search Group

You can create a specific case search group based on a the value of a particular case attribute. The search group is updated with all cases matching the condition.

- 1 Choose the **Cases** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a group in the tree and choose **New Search Group**.
- 3 Give the search group a suitable name.
- 4 On the Conditions tab, add a case condition. For example, if you want this search group to contain all cases owned by CaseAdmin, the condition would say

```
Owner = CaseAdmin
```

The search group is populated with all cases assigned to CaseAdmin. The search group is updated as CaseAdmin's assignments change.

## Creating a Report from a Case

You can run a simple report using one of the following ways:

- If your case group consists of up to 1000 cases, you can view all of its cases on the the resource navigator tree from which you choose the case and run the report for it.
- If your case group consists of more than 1000 cases, create an active channel based on a filter for case group ID (see ["Creating an Active Channel" on page 80](#) for additional details) from which you choose a case and run the report for it.

You run a case report one case at a time.

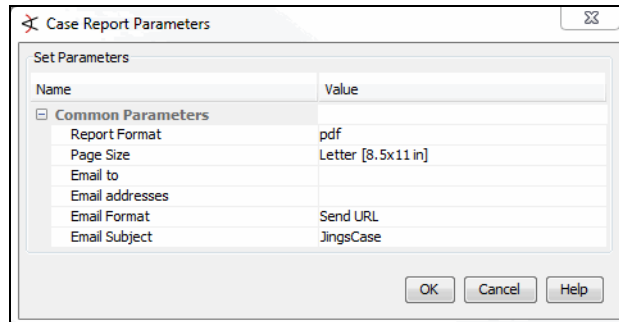
ArcSight provides the convenience of a simple case report template that includes its underlying query, which you can use as is. The output is a simple two-column report that is rotated so that columns (composed of the case attributes) are turned into rows, therefore making the report readable. You can also customize the template by adding case fields.

## Running Case Reports and Setting Default Parameters

### To run a case report and set default parameters:

- 1 On the resource navigator pane or on an active channel of cases, right-click the case and choose **Run Case Report**.

The Case Report Parameters is a simplified dialog box derived from the regular report resource's parameters dialog box:



- 2 Set the default parameters as follows:

Case Report Parameter Name	Value
Report Format	<p>From the drop-down menu, select one of the following report output formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>pdf</b> - Outputs the report as an Adobe PDF file.</li> <li>• <b>xls</b> - Generates a Microsoft Excel file for tables and charts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> XLS reports you run with <i>Microsoft Excel 2002</i> might have page break format problems (misalignments, column spillover) due to default page size settings in Excel. To correct this problem, open the resulting XLS report in Excel, choose <b>File &gt; Page Setup</b> from the menus, change the paper size to Letter (instead of Legal), and click <b>OK</b> to save your changes. The report has the appropriate page break formatting. This problem does not occur in newer versions of Microsoft Excel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>rtf</b> - Produces a rich-text format document.</li> <li>• <b>csv</b> - Creates tabular data as a list of comma-separated values.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Reports generated in CSV format are not the full equivalent of exports to other formats like PDF or HTML. CSV format is useful for loading report data into a spreadsheet for further manipulation. Since CSV is meant to contain tabular data, only the table data of a report is normally useful. Therefore, ArcSight exports only the table data portion of a report to CSV format, ignoring any other report information such as charts or text, including report titles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>html</b> - Generates the report in a Web page displayed by the default web browser.</li> </ul>
Page Size	From the drop-down menu, select a paper size.
Email to	<p>You can have the report sent as e-mail to one or more ArcSight users.</p> <p>From the drop-down menu, select the users to whom the report should be e-mailed. The selection list is read from the Users resource tree.</p> <p>The recipient will only see his or her user name in the To field even if there are multiple recipients for this report.</p>

Case Report Parameter Name	Value
Email addresses	<p>Send the report to one or more comma-separated or semicolon-separated e-mail addresses. This option does not require the recipient to be an ArcSight user.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The recipient will only see his or her e-mail address in the To field even if there are multiple recipients for this report.</p>
Email Format	<p>Specify how the report is to be accessed by the recipient.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose <b>Send URL</b> if you want to point users to the report. Use this option if the report is large and is saved (archived) to a network-accessible location</li> </ul> <p>You can provide URLs for all report formats: PDF, XLS, RTF, CSV, and HTML.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose <b>Attach Report</b> if you want to send the report directly to the user's e-mail box.</li> </ul> <p>You can only attach PDF, XLS, RTF, and CSV report formats.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose <b>Attach Compressed Report</b> if you want the PDF, XLS, RTF, or CSV report to be compressed (zipped) first before mailing.</li> <li>If you want to display the report on the e-mail message body so that the recipient immediately sees the report upon opening the e-mail, select <b>Embed Report</b>.</li> </ul> <p>You can only embed CSV and HTML report formats.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you select an email format for an unsupported report format, the notification automatically uses the URL.</p>
Email Subject	<p>Specify the subject on the notification. Defaults to the case's Name attribute. Change the text if you want.</p>

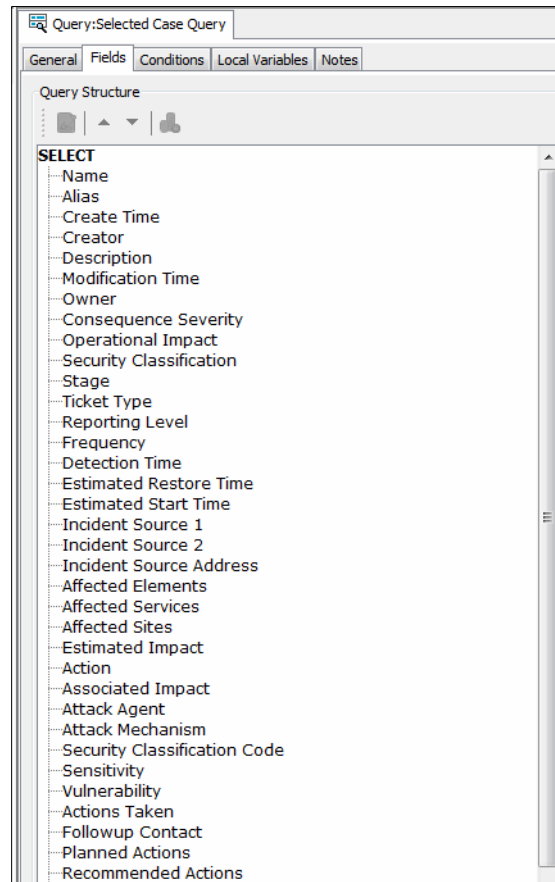
**3** Click **OK**.

**4** Respond to the prompt to open the report for viewing or to save it to a directory of your choice.

## Customizing the Case Report

The basic case report, **Selected Case Report**, and underlying query, **Selected Case Query**, are provided as part of the ArcSight standard content under /All Reports/ArcSight System/Core/Selected Case Report and /All Queries/ArcSight System Core/Selected Case Report/Selected Case Query. This case report, at a minimum, has a name and an underlying query on a case ID. You can copy this report as a template and change the copy to add or remove fields in the report.

By default, Selected Case Query includes the following fields for Selected Case Report:



If you want to change fields in the case report, copy both Selected Case Report and Selected Case Query into a URI of your choice, then modify the copies.

Follow all procedures in this topic according to the sequence:

- [Customize Selected Case Query](#)
- [Customize Selected Case Report](#)
- [Add a Server Property for the New Report URI](#)

## Customize Selected Case Query

This topic explains how to add fields (columns) in the report query so that they are included in the case report. In this procedure, we will add the following fields:

Attack OS  
Attack Impact  
Attack Target

### To customize Selected Case Query:

- 1 Copy `Queries/Shared/All Queries/ArcSight System/Core/Selected Case Report/Selected Case Query` into a custom query group of your choice and rename it, for example:

`Queries/Shared/All Queries/Public/CW3 Selected Case Query`

Keeping this copy in the Public node makes it accessible to all.



You can change the copied query's name, but keep the **Query On = Case** setting.

- 2 On the copied query's **Fields** tab, click **Add 'SELECT' columns** to add fields you want included in the report. Change the sort order as desired.



The Notes field is not available for this query.

## Customize Selected Case Report

This topic explains how to customize the basic case report by using the customized query ([Customize Selected Case Query](#)). For best results, use the Simple Table Portrait for your customized report. The template also supports Simple Table Landscape if you want a wider format. If you use formats other than Table, your report readers might have usability issues.

### To customize Selected Case Report:

- 1 Copy Reports/All Reports/ArcSight System/Core/Selected Case Report into a custom report group of your choice and rename it, for example:  
Reports/Shared/All Reports/Public/CW3 Selected Case Report
- 2 Go to the copied report's **Data** tab:
  - a For the **Data Source** field, browse to the copied query (**CW3 Selected Case Query** in our example) and select it as the data source for the report.  
  
The added fields from the modified query should be in the Available Columns table (scroll horizontally to view all).
  - b On the Available Columns, locate the fields you added to the report query. Check the boxes corresponding to the added columns.

## Add a Server Property for the New Report URI

The default URI for case reports is indicated on the Selected Case Report's Parent Group field:

```
/All Reports/ArcSight/System/Core
```

Your customized case report needs to use a different URI, as explained in the following instructions.

### To enable your case reports to use the new report format:

Add the full URI, including the customized report name, in `server.properties` through this statement:

```
case.report.uri=<New report URI>
```

For example:

`case.report.uri=/All Reports/Personal/CaseWorker3's Reports/CW3 Selected Case Report`

For instructions on setting server properties, refer to the "Managing and Changing Properties File Settings" topic in the ESM Administrator Guide. After you follow the instructions in that guide, this URI appears on the customized case report's Parent Group field.



# Integration Commands

---

["What are Integration Commands?" on page 549](#)  
["Planning Checklist and Workflow" on page 552](#)  
["Navigating to Integration Command Resources" on page 553](#)  
["Quick Examples" on page 553](#)  
["Defining Commands" on page 556](#)  
["Using Configurations to Group Commands" on page 565](#)  
["Specifying Targets" on page 571](#)  
["Authorization and Authentication Settings" on page 573](#)  
["Running Integration Commands" on page 576](#)  
["Ready-Made ArcSight Threat Response Manager \(TRM\) Commands" on page 578](#)  
["ArcSight Logger Search Commands" on page 585](#)  
["Network Tools as Integration Commands" on page 589](#)

Integration commands leverage the power of security and event management, and broaden its view to show external, snap-in views from appliances like ArcSight NSP and ArcSight Logger, as well as third-party applications.

HP ships ArcSight ESM with standard content (pre-built commands) and a platform for building your own command configurations.

Contact HP ArcSight Professional Services if you need assistance in authoring tools integrations with ArcSight products or other applications.

## What are Integration Commands?

Integration commands enable you to link from the ArcSight Console to information in other views and applications. You can also build and launch commands locally and on remote servers or appliances, using field values in events as command parameters. You can configure the commands as context-aware, right-click options on different views, resources, and editors on the ArcSight Console.

Configurations can define valid data types and selections for a set of commands. For example, you could configure a set of URL commands to run as a right-click on a selected cell in an active channel and accept only IP addresses as data types.

The ability to integrate commands for various applications means the ArcSight Console can serve as a central hub for defining, managing, and launching TRM actions, Logger searches, and third party applications, as well as local ArcSight scripts. You can also configure and manage role permissions and access lists (ACLs) for tools and commands in the ArcSight Console.

## Supported Command Types

You can build these types of context-based, right-click commands into the ArcSight Console:

Command Type	Output Results	Examples
<b>URL</b> commands link to Web page URLs or URIs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Web browser</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Out-of-the-Box NSP TRM URL commands</li> <li>Out-of-the-Box Logger Searches</li> </ul>
<b>Script</b> commands run scripts	Script/executable output result (for example, action)	Network Tools
<b>Connector</b> commands are derived from associated nodes or applications (for example, configuration XML for a TRM connector command)	Structured result based on the SmartConnector and its associated node or application	TRM Connector commands

For more information on working with commands, see [“Defining Commands” on page 556](#).



**All integration commands are** designed as **manual**, right-click options in various contexts in the ArcSight Console. This enables you to launch commands in ArcSight Console displays and, access available work flows in other applications (for example, in the NSP's TRM Web UI).

To define **rule-driven commands**, configure rule actions to send **SmartConnector commands** (rather than by creating integration commands).

For example, with rule-driven TRM connector commands, you do not need to build integration commands. You can add TRM connector commands as rule actions by having the TRM SmartConnector installed and registered with the Manager.

For more information about using SmartConnector commands in rules, see [“Execute Connector Command” on page 424 in Rule Actions Reference](#).

## Out-of-the-Box Commands for ArcSight Logger and ArcSight NSP (ArcSight TRM Component)

ArcSight ships with pre-built, URL-based commands for the following ArcSight appliances.

- ArcSight NSP , TRM component: A typical command would take an action based on the event. For example, you might select a suspicious login attempt in an intrusion monitoring channel or Hot List, and investigate or quarantine the associated IP address using TRM. (For information on NSP TRM commands, skip to [“Ready-Made ArcSight Threat Response Manager \(TRM\) Commands” on page 578](#).)
- ArcSight Logger: A typical command would be to run a remote search or query on an element in a selected Logger stored event in an active channel. (For information on Logger commands, skip to [“ArcSight Logger Search Commands” on page 585](#).)

## Local Scripts and Commands to Other Applications

Typical activities for which you might build and run commands in the ArcSight Console that connect to other applications and tools include:

- Launch third-party Web interfaces
- Launch scripts
- Run external searches
- View submitted tickets
- Get Asset/Vulnerability information
- Get Payload Information

You can set up context-aware commands to third-party applications and custom scripts. With command configurations, you can make these available in specified ArcSight Console views and use particular fields as parameters to your commands.

ArcSight ships with standard utilities configured to be available in ArcSight Console views. For example, the **ping** command is available in grid views such as active channels, lists, and query viewers, and takes as a parameter the *IP address* or *host name* in the selected event.

For information on integrating basic network tools such as Ping, Nslookup, or ArcSight specific “Send Logs”, see [“Using the Network Tools” on page 54](#) and [“Network Tools as Integration Commands” on page 589](#).

## How it Works

Integration commands provide resources for tools integration authors to:

- Build context-sensitive commands that you can run locally or on multiple, remote target servers, and you can mix, match, and re-use with configurations.
- Associate parameters with commands to read the resources for which you call the commands. Command parameters make use of Velocity Expressions to pick up values from fields and resources. (See [“Velocity Templates” on page 999](#).)
- Define configurations sets of commands) for various external applications to specify relevant contexts, commands, rendering formats, and, optionally, remote targets.

Once integration commands and configurations are in place, analysts and operators working with the ArcSight Console can use your custom-built commands or ArcSight pre-built commands (for Logger or NSP TRM) to manage and monitor networks and assets with an extended reach into other views, toolkits, and servers.

Configure Login credentials for authentication on external applications through integration parameters on the user resource. See [“Setting User Login Parameters” on page 573](#) and [“Setting Logins and Other Parameters to Prompt for Values at Runtime” on page 574](#).)

Define authorization to use or edit commands through access control lists (ACLs) as described in [“Access Control Lists \(ACLs\) on Integration Commands” on page 575](#).

## Planning Checklist and Workflow

Plan your command integrations by identifying the utilities or applications to integrate and collecting the necessary information. Here is a checklist of considerations.

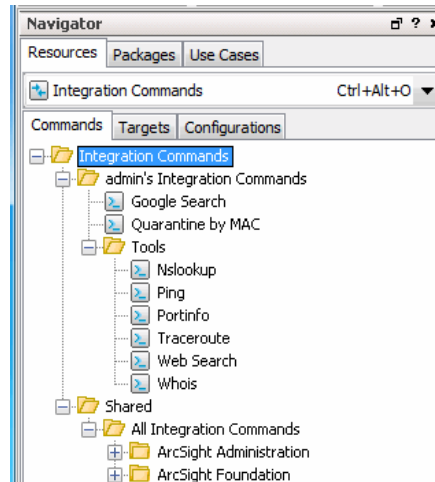
Components	Questions
Commands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What commands will you run on the external application? Is there a subset of commands you want to integrate into the ArcSight Console?</li> <li>What is the command type (Web URL, local executable script, or Connector command) and syntax.</li> </ul>
Servers, Authentication SmartConnectors	<p>Integrating Logger or NSP URL commands requires an IP address or Host name of the appliance and authentication credentials for users.</p> <p>Integrating a Connector command like TRM requires access to the NSP appliance, and a TRM connector deployed and registered with the Manager to which your ArcSight Console is connected.</p>
Configurations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>How do you want to render (display) output results of commands? This largely depends on the command type; for example, URL commands are rendered in an external or embedded browser.</li> <li>How many integration configurations do you need?</li> <li>Does the application you are integrating have more than one type of interface? (for example, Web and CLI, like TRM) If so, you'll need a configuration for each interface and associated command type.</li> </ul>
Users	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Which users work with these integration tools or applications?</li> <li>Are authentication parameters required on target servers, appliances, or applications? If so, collect or establish user names and passwords for users who run these commands.</li> <li>Plan for configuring integration parameters on user accounts for users who work with the external applications. These users need login credentials for both ArcSight and the target applications.</li> <li>For users with the same authentication parameters for a target server, you can create a target resource with those parameters instead of duplicating the parameters in each user account. Then you can configure the ACL of that target resource so that only those users have access to it. When a command is triggered in the right context, only the target to which that user has access is displayed. Use a similar ACL approach for commands. For example, a single configuration can contain groups of commands, where some commands require special privileges.</li> </ul>

Once you have a plan, you might try configuring the commands and testing in this order:

- 1 Add the commands (command name, type, the command itself, and its parameters).
- 2 Specify the targets (remote servers where commands run), if any.
- 3 Create one or more configurations, add in the commands you created, choose how command results are rendered (displayed), and define ArcSight Console UI contexts where these commands are available for use.
- 4 Add Integration Parameters to User Accounts. If authentication is required on target servers, configure login credentials on user accounts for users who run these commands. These users need login credentials for both ArcSight and on the target applications.
- 5 Test the commands. See ["Running Integration Commands" on page 576](#)

## Navigating to Integration Command Resources

To create or edit integration commands and configurations, start by navigating to **Integration Commands** resources. Following is an example of the resource with custom integration commands:



Users can access existing integration commands and configurations through right-click commands on the ArcSight Console in various contexts. The contexts depend on how the commands are configured.

## Quick Examples

To experiment with building integration commands, you need one **command** and one **configuration**. Create the commands first because the configuration references the commands.


The configuration also defines how command results are rendered, and references **contexts** where your new Integration Commands appear in the ArcSight Console right-click menus (for example, Viewers, Resource Panel, Editors, and more specifics within those contexts).

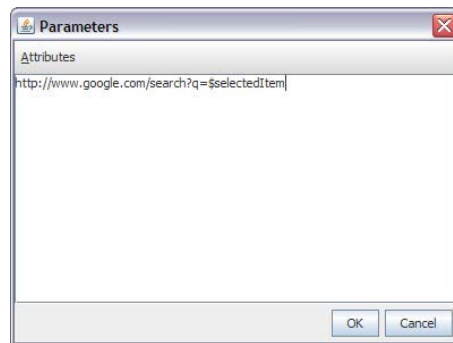
To define **targets** (remote servers where commands run), add them to the configuration.

Here are examples of how to set up a command to do a Google Search on a selected cell in the ArcSight Console, and how to set up commands that use Google Maps to locate a target and an attacker. The examples do not require a “target,” so just set up a command, add it to a configuration, and run it. The details of this and other types of commands and configurations are discussed further in the topics that follow.

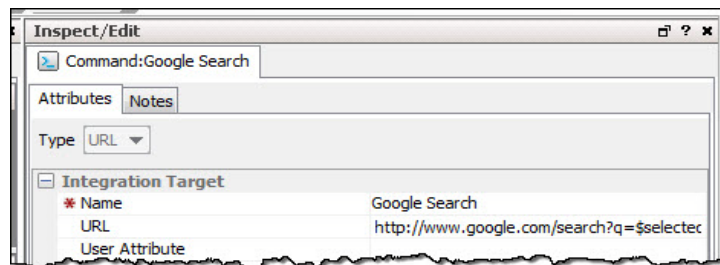
### To add a command for Google Search:

- 1 Start by getting the format of the Google search. Do a Google Search in a Web browser. Copy the first part of the URL (everything *before* or *to the left of* the search term) from the Address bar, so you have it on your clipboard. (You paste in to the Parameters dialog in [Step 4](#).)
- 2 In the ArcSight Console Navigator panel, select the **Integration Commands** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Commands** tab.

- 3 Right-click the group (folder) where you want to create the command and select **New Command**.
- 4 On the Commands Editor, fill in these attributes:
  - ◆ For command Type, choose **URL**.
  - ◆ For Name, provide a user-friendly name like **Google Search**.
  - ◆ For URL, click the browse button  to get the Parameters dialog. Paste the Google search prefix (from [Step 1](#)) into the Parameters dialog scratch pad:  
http://www.google.com/search?q=
  - ◆ Click **Attributes** on the Parameters dialog to get a list of Velocity Expressions. Select the option, **Selections > \$selectedItem**. The expression is added as a parameter to the search:  
http://www.google.com/search?q=\$selectedItem



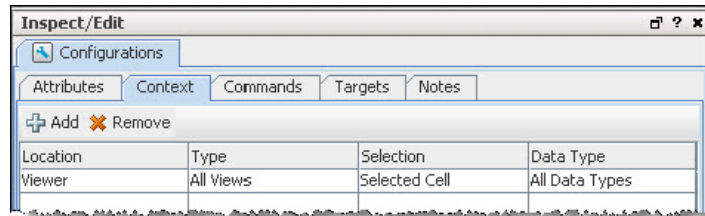
- ◆ Click **OK** to close the Parameters dialog and save your changes.
- ◆ Click **Apply** or **OK** on the Commands editor to save the command.



- 5 Set up the configuration and add the command to it:
  - a Click the **Configurations** tab.
  - b Right-click a group and select **New Configuration**.
  - c On the Configurations Editor, select **URL** as the configuration Type, and enter a descriptive name.  
  
The output will be rendered on a Web browser specified during Console installation.
  - d Click the **Context** tab. This sets where in the ArcSight Console the command is available. Click **Add** to get a set of context fields, then click into each field to select a location, type, selection, and data type. (You can add multiple contexts by

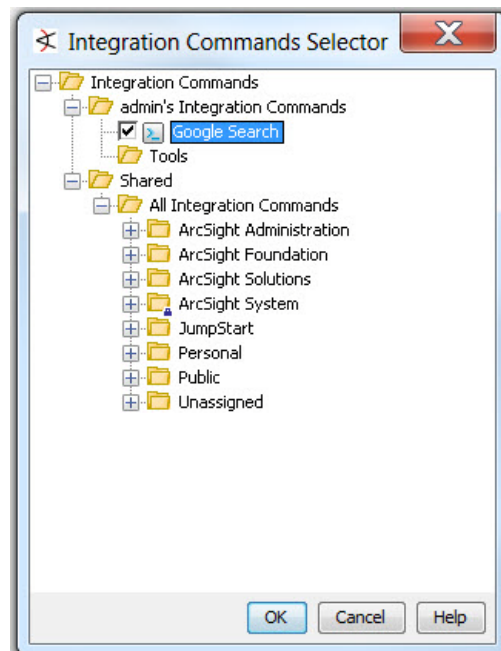
clicking Add again.) Add one context to show in the Viewer in all “views” and to take the selected cell as the “selection”:

Location	Type	Selection	Data Type
Viewer	All Views	Selected Cell	All Data Types



When the search command is deployed as part of this configuration, and run using a right-click command in the context of the ArcSight Console, it searches on the text in the “cell” (Viewer table cell) the user selects in the ArcSight Console.

- e Add the command to the configuration. On the Configuration Editor, click **Commands**. Click **Add** to get the command selector, select your Google Search command, and click **OK**.



- f Click **Apply** or **OK** on the Configurations Editor to save the configuration.
- 6 Run the Search command you just built:
    - a Open any active channel, list, data monitor, or query viewer with a table style view.
    - b Right-click any cell in the Viewer that contains a term you would like to search on, and select **Integration Commands > Google Search** (or whatever you named the command).

The command runs a search using the text from the selected cell as the search term, and returns search hits in your preferred browser.

#### To add a command for Google Maps:

Use the same basic steps in the previous example for Google search to integrate a command named **Google Maps**. This Google Maps example lets you pass the GeoLatitude and GeoLongitude to locate, for example, an attacker and a target. Refer to the following information as a guide when you are at [Step 4 on page 554](#).

Command	URL and attribute
Attacker	http://maps.google.com/maps?q=\${attackerGeoLatitude},\${attackerGeoLongitude}
Target	http://maps.google.com/maps?q=\${targetGeoLatitude},\${targetGeoLongitude}

The remaining topics in this section provide more information and examples on how to build all types of commands, how to add user authentication, how to use targets for TRM commands, how the standard network tools are implemented as integration commands, and more.

## Defining Commands

Use the *commands* feature to configure URL, Script, and Connector commands for custom and third party applications and other ArcSight products. Setting up *commands* is the first step in a multi-part process to providing a set of integration commands. (Other tasks include setting up configurations, targets, and user login parameters). This topic explains how to add and edit the command portion of an integration command solution.

#### To add a new command:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, select the **Integration Commands** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Commands** tab.
- 2 Right-click a group (folder) in which to create the command, and select **New Command**. This launches the Command Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel. It is best to create new content in your own folder.
- 3 On the **Command Editor**, select the command **Type** and fill in the fields for command Name and other attributes.



The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' dialog box for a command named 'Google Search'. The 'Attributes' tab is selected, and the 'Type' is set to 'URL'. The dialog is organized into several sections: 'Integration Target' (Name, URL, User Attribute, Password Attribute), 'Common' (Resource ID, External ID, Alias (Display Name), Description, Version ID, Deprecated), 'Assign' (Owner, Notification Groups), 'Parent Groups' (admin's Integration Commands), 'Creation Information' (Created By, Creation Time, Time Since Creation), and 'Last Update Information' (Last Updated By, Last Update Time, Time Since Last Update). The 'Name' field is highlighted, and the 'URL' field contains the text 'http://www.google.com/search?q=\$selected'. At the bottom, there is a 'Name' field with the prompt 'Enter a name for this command' and buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

Command Type	Description
<b>Script</b>	Executable script that runs <i>locally</i> to the ArcSight Console where the command is launched.
<b>URL</b>	Web URL for which you can define parameters.
<b>Connector</b>	Commands for ArcSight Connectors.

- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to add the new command.



## Command Types and Attributes

The command attributes vary, depending on the type (Script, URL, or Connector), as described below.

### Script Commands

Like other commands, you can make script commands available to multiple users and user groups. Users probably run the ArcSight Console on many different machines. Integration script commands always run on the same machine as the ArcSight Console used to launch them. Therefore, the working directory and program path names should reflect where commands are found in ArcSight Console users' environments

Attribute	Description
<b>Name</b>	User-friendly Name for the command.


Attribute	Description
<b>Working Directory</b>	<p>Directory containing the executable script.</p> <p>For example, <code>\$systemRoot\system32\</code></p> <p>You can type the directory path in the Program field, or click the Browse Directory button  to get a file browser. Use the file browser to navigate to and select the command.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Be sure this path reflects the location of the script on machines used by ArcSight Console users for whom you are building these commands.</p>
<b>Program</b>	<p>Full path to the executable command.</p> <p>For example, <code>\$systemRoot\system32\ping.exe</code></p> <p>You can type the full path to the command in the Program field, or click the Browse Directory button  to get a file browser. Use the file browser to navigate to and select the command.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Be sure this path reflects the location of the script on machines used by Console users for whom you are building these commands.</p>
<b>Parameters</b>	<p>Provide parameters for the command. (See <a href="#">“Adding and Editing Command Parameters”</a> on page 560.)</p> <p>The Attributes list provides Velocity Expressions for all event fields and an option to add <code>\$selectedItem</code> as an attribute.</p>



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields”](#) on page 642.

---

## URL Commands

Attribute	Description
<b>Name</b>	User-friendly name for the command.
<b>URL</b>	<p>The URL for the command, along with any parameters provided as arguments to the URL.</p> <p>Click the browse button  to get the Parameters dialog. (See <a href="#">“Adding and Editing Command Parameters” on page 560</a> for information on how to add the URL along with parameters or <i>arguments</i> to the URL.) You can copy/paste URLs onto the Parameters dialog scratch pad or type them directly. The Attributes link provides Velocity Expressions you can add as parameters (attributes) to the URL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Type or paste URL directly in the Parameters dialog scratch pad.</li> <li>Click Attributes to add a Velocity Expression as a URL parameter.</li> </ul> <p>Determine the URL by first accessing it from a Web browser address bar. This also shows you where in the URL to add the parameters (if any).</p> <p><b>Example: Web Search</b></p> <p>To set up a Google Search on a parameter, do a Google Search in a Web browser. Extract the first part of the URL (everything <i>to the left of</i> the search term) from the Address bar, and paste it into the Parameters dialog scratch pad: <code>http://www.google.com/search?q=</code></p> <p>Click <b>Attributes</b> on the Parameters dialog to get a list of Velocity Expressions. Select the option, <b>Selections &gt; \$selectedItem</b>. The expression is added as a parameter to the search:</p> <p><code>http://www.google.com/search?q=\$selectedItem</code></p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the Parameters dialog and save your changes. Click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b> on the Command Editor when you are satisfied with all settings.)</p> <p>When this search command is deployed as part of an integration configuration, and run via a right-click command in the context of the ArcSight Console, it searches the text in the cell (Viewer table cell) the user selects in the ArcSight Console.</p>



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

## Connector Commands




### Prerequisites for Connector Commands

If you plan to build and use **Connector commands** you need:

- Access to relevant servers, for example, an ArcSight NSP appliance for Threat Response Manager (TRM) commands.
- One or more of the associated SmartConnectors deployed and registered with the Manager to which your ArcSight Console is connected. For example, when you set up the TRM connector, it verifies its connection to the NSP appliance and asks for authentication credentials. If a TRM connector is registered, the Console displays its group name as **CounterACT** instead of *Connector*.

Test connectivity and authentication between your local machine, SmartConnectors, and appliances before setting up Connector integration commands.

Attribute	Description
<b>Name</b>	User-friendly Name for the command.
<b>Group</b>	Choose a group from the Group drop-down menu. Depending on which Group you select, relevant commands are provided in the next field (Command). See <a href="#">“Execute Connector Command” on page 424</a> in <a href="#">Rule Actions Reference</a> .
<b>Command</b>	Choose a command from the drop-down menu. Depending on which Group you selected, relevant commands are provided here. Choose a Connector command from the drop-down list.  See <a href="#">“TRM Connector Command Example” on page 562</a> for references, examples, and details on TRM commands and parameters.  <b>Note:</b> In order to get the list of Connector commands, you need to have the SmartConnector deployed and registered with the Manager to which your ArcSight Console is connected.
<b>Parameters</b>	To define parameters for the command: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the browse button  to get the Parameters dialog. A table of name-value pairs is provided that represents the valid parameters for the given command.</li> <li>Select the parameters to use, and define values for them with either hard-coded values or <i>Velocity Expressions</i>.  For example, you could define the Connector command Quarantine Node By IP Address to use three parameters; IP Address, Quarantine Period, and Overwrite Active Quarantine (a yes/no value set to 0 or 1, respectively).  You could set the IP address to a Velocity Expression for <i>attacker address</i>, Quarantine Period could be set to 1 hour, and overwrite set to Yes.  The Attributes list provides Velocity Expressions for all event fields along with options to add Console selections, dates, and channel start and end times as attributes.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b> on the Parameters dialog to save your changes.</li> </ol> For more information about using Velocity Expressions for parameter values, see <a href="#">“TRM Connector Command Example” on page 562</a> .



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).


## Adding and Editing Command Parameters

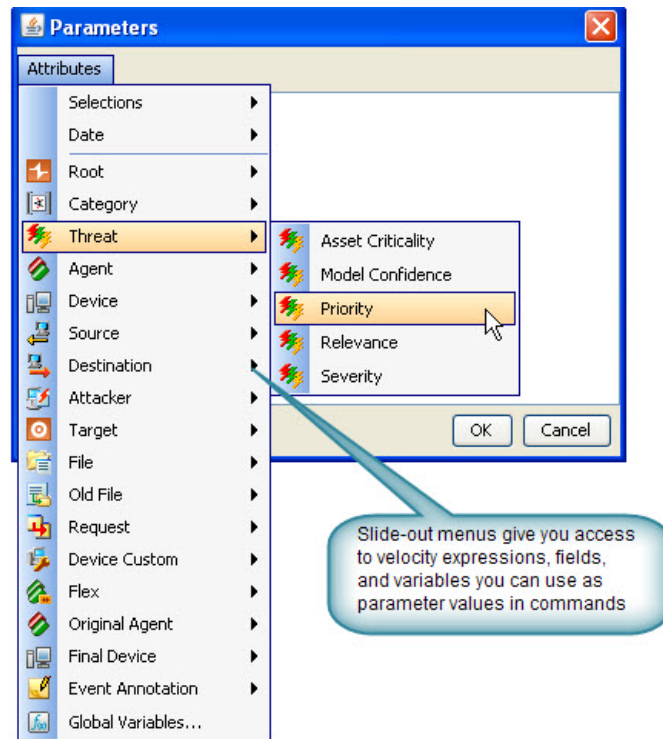
The Attributes list includes Velocity Expressions for all event fields and an option to add user field or item selections, channel start or end time, date/time, and other Velocity Expressions as attributes.



See also [“TRM Connector Command Example” on page 562](#) for adding parameters to Connector commands. The Parameters dialog for Connectors is slightly different.

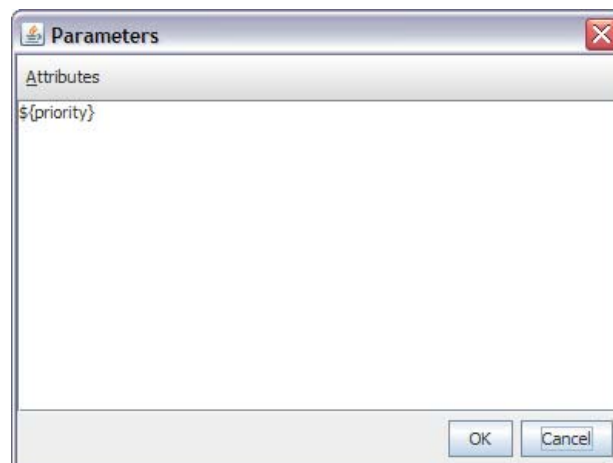
**To provide Parameters for a command:**

- 1 Click the browse button  to get the Parameters dialog.
- 2 Click **Attributes** to get a list of variables and Velocity Expressions.



- 3 Select the expression you want to add. The attribute list includes Global Variables. If the global variable to add is composed of a list of fields, expand the global variable displayed in the Parameters dialog and select the field you want.

The expression is added to the Edit Attributes scratch pad as a parameter.



- 4 You can continue adding expressions, which are chained together.

For example, selecting **Threat > Priority** from the Attributes list results in this parameter being placed on the scratch pad:

```
${priority}
```

Subsequently selecting **Attacker > Address**, updates the scratch pad entry with chained-together expression:

```
${priority} ${attackerAddress}
```



**The Parameters dialog is an editable scratch pad.** In addition to adding Velocity Expressions from the Attributes menu and Templates for Connector command parameters, you can type new expressions directly into the dialog. Also, you can select and edit existing expressions manually. (See also [“Removing a Command Parameter” on page 562](#))

- 5 When the Parameters scratch pad reflects the expressions you want to include as command parameters, click **OK**.


The parameters you added are reflected on the Attributes tab in the Command Editor.



Be sure to click **Apply** or **OK** on the **Command Editor** to save changes to command parameters along with any other changes to the command that you want to retain.

## Removing a Command Parameter

To remove a command parameter:

- 1 Click the browse button  to get the Parameters dialog.
- 2 Select the parameter in the scratch pad and hit the Delete key on your keyboard.
- 3 To add a new parameter to replace the one you are deleting, do so by following steps described in [“Adding and Editing Command Parameters” on page 560](#).
- 4 Click **OK** on the Parameters dialog.
- 5 Click **Apply** or **OK** on the **Command Editor** to save your changes.

## TRM Connector Command Example

Since adding parameters to a Connector type command is slightly different than for URL or Script command types, here is an example of creating a TRM Connector command.

To learn more about TRM commands, see the SOAP API Reference Guide for ArcSight NSP. See also [“Deep Dive into TRM Connector XML” on page 564](#).

### Example of TRM Command and Parameters

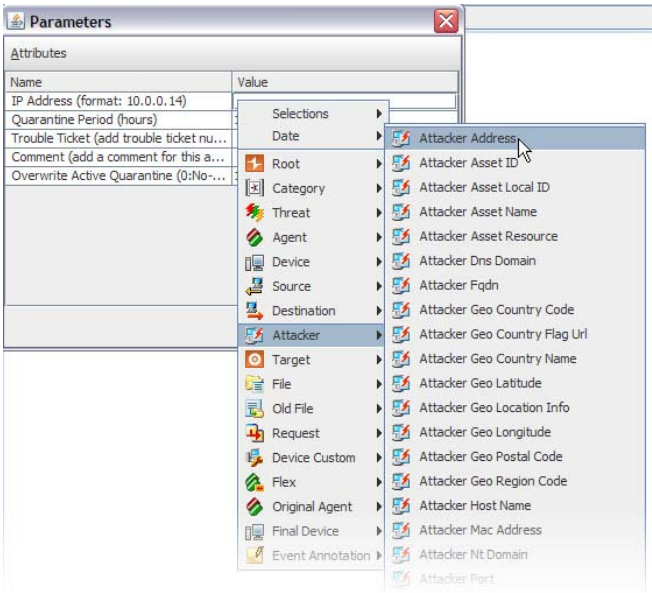
In this example, you use the TRM command “Quarantine Node By IP Address” to quarantine an attacker node. Use three parameters: IP Address, Quarantine Period, and Overwrite Active Quarantine. In the Parameters field for this command, use hard-coded values for length and overwrite, but use a Velocity Expression to let the user derive the attacker address for a selected event on the ArcSight Console.

- 1 Create a new command of type **Connector** and name it.
- 2 In the Group field, select **Connector**.

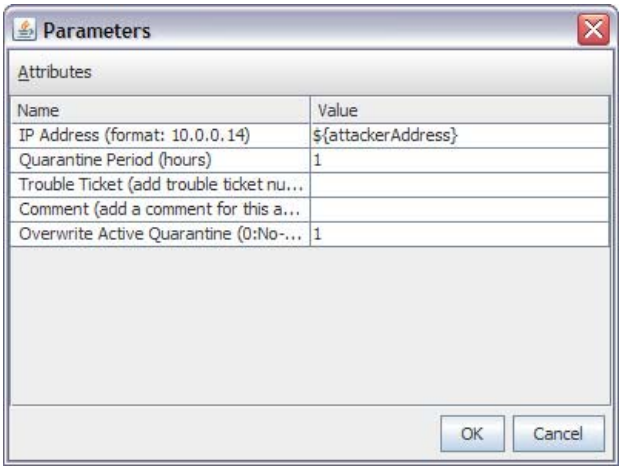
- 3 In the Command drop-down menu, select **Quarantine Node By IP Address** from the list of TRM Connector commands provided.
- 4 In the Parameters field, click the browse button  to get the Parameters dialog.

Right-click the Value field next to IP Address on the Parameters dialog to get the Velocity Expression chooser.

To get the Velocity Expression `${attackerAddress}`, select **Attacker > Attacker Address** on the Parameters dialog.



To quarantine the attacker node for 1 hour and overwrite the value, type in the number 1 for both Quarantine Period and Overwrite Active Quarantine.



Press the Enter key after adding each value to be sure it is applied.

After entering the parameter values, the command attributes are defined as follows:

Parameter Name	Value
IP Address	<code>\${attackerAddress}</code>

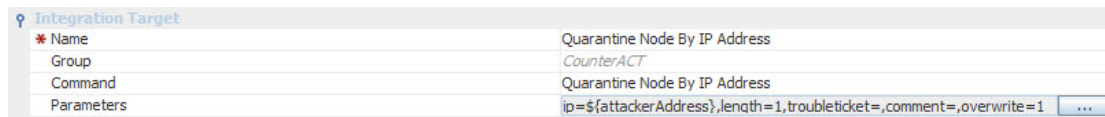
Parameter Name	Value
Quarantine Period	1
Overwrite Active Quarantine	1

Click **OK** to save them.

- Review the parameter values on the Editor Attributes tab. They formatted similar to an XML-formatted TRM command:

```
ip=${attackerAddress},length=1,troubleticket=,comment=,overwrite=1
```

You might have to stretch the Editor window to see all the parameters.



- Click **Apply** or **OK** to save the command.

## Deep Dive into TRM Connector XML

If you want to learn more about NSP TRM commands, the best reference is the SOAP API Reference Guide for ArcSight NSP. A number of Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) calls for TRM actions have been enabled in common event format (CEF), and these are the TRM commands currently available in the ArcSight Console as integration commands.

If you are interested in knowing more about how these commands are constructed, you can look at the TRM configuration XML files. This is not necessary; you can use the TRM SmartConnector integrations commands without ever looking at the SOAP Guide or the TRM XML. We are providing this information in case you are interested in exploring further on the NSP TRM side of things.

To access the TRM configuration XML file, select Connectors in the Navigator, right-click the TRM connector and do one of the following:

- Choose **Send Command > Tech Support > Get Configuration XML** and save the file. (This gets a copy of this file directly from the SmartConnector. In some cases, this file might be more up-to-date than the one on the Manager.)

Or

- Choose **Export Connector Configuration As XML** and save the file. (This gets the version of this file that is currently on the Manager.)

## Example of TRM Command XML

Here is the configuration XML for a TRM **Quarantine Node** command:

```
<Command Description="Quarantine Node"
  DisplayName="Quarantine Node" Name="quarantine">
  <Parameters>
    <Parameter ContentType="-1"
      Description="IP to quarantine" Name="ip" Prompt="IP to quarantine"/>
    <Parameter ContentType="-1"
      Description="Time to quarantine" Name="length" Prompt="Time to
quarantine"/>
    <Parameter ContentType="-1"
```



```

Description="Overwrite(0:No,1:Yes) " Name="overwrite"
Prompt="Overwrite(0:No,1:Yes) "/>
</Parameters>
</Command>

```

## Using Configurations to Group Commands

An integration **configuration** resource represents a family of commands of the same type. Commands in a configuration share the same context, rendering method, and targets.

Configurations provide a way of grouping similar commands and specifying common options for where on the ArcSight Console UI the commands are available (**contexts**), how command results are displayed (**renderer**), and where commands run (scripts run locally; others, like Connector commands, can have one or more remote **targets**). This is partly a matter of preference (about how you want to group, organize, and present commands to ArcSight Console users), and partly a matter of which commands belong together.

Typically, each integration maps to a single product; for example, one resource each for ArcSight Threat Response Manager (TRM) and ArcSight Network Configuration Manager (NCM). However, you can distribute sets of commands across multiple configurations, if needed. This is useful when the same product has different types of interfaces. For example, ArcSight TRM-Web takes URL based commands whereas TRM requires Connector commands.



**Configurations can include only commands of the same type** (script, URL, or Connector). Commands that share a configuration use the same renderer, contexts, and (if relevant) targets. You might want to make finer-grained groupings; for example, sub-groups of scripts or Connector commands.

For example, you might group a set of TRM commands that deal with quarantine of nodes into a single configuration. Or you might group a set of URL-based commands used for searching and researching on particular types of events (via Google Searches, Knowledge Base articles, and so forth).

Setting up *configurations* is a step in a multi-part process of making a set of integration commands available to ArcSight Console users. (Other tasks include setting up commands, targets, and user login parameters).

This topic explains how to add and edit the *configuration* portion of an integration command solution. For an overview of the integration commands feature, see [“Integration Commands” on page 549](#). For more details on the relationship between commands, configurations, and targets, see [“How it Works” on page 551](#).

### To create a configuration:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, select the **Integration Commands** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Configurations** tab.
- 2 Right-click a group (folder) where you want to create the configuration, and select **New Configuration**. This launches the Configurations Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 3 Fill in the fields on Attributes, Context, Commands, and Targets tabs as described in:
  - ◆ [“Configurations Attributes” on page 566](#)

- ◆ “Configurations Contexts” on page 567
- ◆ “Configurations Commands” on page 569
- ◆ “Configuration Targets” on page 570 (when commands run on remote targets)

The screenshot shows the 'Inspect/Edit' dialog for a configuration named 'Google Search'. The dialog has tabs for 'Attributes', 'Context', 'Commands', 'Targets', and 'Notes'. The 'Attributes' tab is selected. The 'Type' is set to 'URL'. The configuration details are as follows:

Configuration	
Name	Google Search
Renderer	Internal Browser
Allow Multi Select	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Common	
Resource ID	eHZ2J+xsBABCE-zxEFpjb0A==
External ID	
Alias	
Description	
Version ID	
Deprecated	<input type="checkbox"/>
Assign	
Owner	
Notification Groups	
Parent Groups	
Samantha's Integration Configurations	/All Integration Configurations/Personal/Samanth...
Creation Information	
Created By	admin
Creation Time	25 Aug 2008 13:25:03 PDT
Time Since Creation	9 day(s) 5 hour(s) 12 min(s) 21 sec(s)
Last Update Information	
Last Updated By	admin
Last Update Time	26 Aug 2008 16:36:31 PDT
Time Since Last Update	8 day(s) 2 hour(s) 53 sec(s)

At the bottom, there are buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to add the new configuration.

## Configurations Attributes

Define the configuration name, renderer and other basic details for the configuration on the Configurations **Attributes** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Configurations' dialog with the 'Attributes' tab selected. The 'Type' is set to 'URL'. The configuration details are as follows:

Integration Configuration	
Name	Google Search
Renderer	Internal Browser
Allow Multi Select	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Configuration Attributes

Attribute	Description
Type	<p>Choose the type of configuration from the drop-down menu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Script</li> <li>• URL</li> <li>• Connector</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The configuration type must match the command types in the configuration. (See <a href="#">“Command Type” on page 557</a>.) Once the configuration is saved, the type is not editable. This setting influences choices on other options for the configuration, such as the <a href="#">Renderer</a>.</p>
Name	A user-friendly, informative name for the configuration that (preferably, one that indicates the commands contained in it).
Renderer	<p>Select how the output of the command is rendered. The renderers available depends on the configuration <a href="#">Type</a> chosen.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Web Browsers” on page 1009</a>.</p>
Allow Multi Select	<p>Use this to allow selecting multiple events on which to run a command. It is off by default. A check mark indicates it is on/enabled.</p> <p>When on, users can select multiple events and the commands assign the values to a parameter as a comma-separated list.</p> <p>For example, suppose you have a command with the parameter <code>ip=\$targetAddress</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With Multi Select disabled, the command accepts only a single IP address based on a selected event (for example, <code>ip=192.0.2.0</code>).</li> <li>• With Multi Select enabled, a user can also get <code>"ip=192.0.2.1,192.0.2.2"</code> if two rows are selected.</li> </ul> <p>In order for this to work: (1) the ArcSight Console context (for example, active channel) must allow multi-row selection, and (2) the integration target (for example, NSP TRM) must support a comma-separated list of values for the given command and parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Multi Select does not affect how individual fields in an event are processed. Event field processing is determined entirely by the definition of command parameters. For example, a command with an Attacker Address parameter always gets that value from the selected event.</p>



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

## Configurations Contexts

As a part of constructing command configurations, you can configure **contexts** for where in the ArcSight Console certain commands are available. At the same time, you can define **parameters** for picking up and passing the value in any selected cell, row, or event field.

For example, you could configure a URL command for a Google search as a right-click command on any cell in an ArcSight Console grid view. By using a parameter as the argument to the search command, you could pick up the text from the selected cell or value from any selected field to use as your search term. (In the Commands editor, all

fields, provided as a list of Velocity Expressions, are available for use as command parameters.)

Once configured, integration commands are available on right-click context menus from a variety of contexts including:

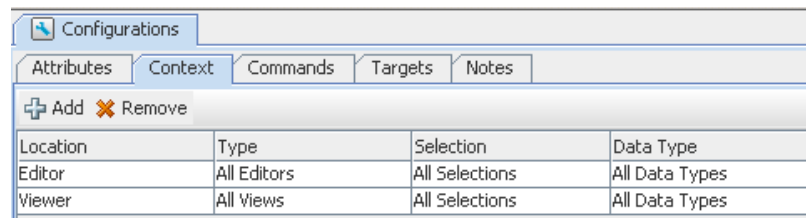
- Relevant fields in active channels (for example, IP address, host name, MAC address)
- Relevant resources (for example, assets)
- Active Lists, sessions lists, query viewers and channels

Also, you can configure **user login parameters** on ArcSight Console users (via a new Integration Parameters tab in the Users resource editor), thereby binding user login information to commands for third-party or ArcSight applications that require secure logins. (See [“Setting User Login Parameters” on page 573](#) for more information.)

You can configure a command to prompt for parameter information, which is often useful for login scenarios and as well as others. (See [“Setting Logins and Other Parameters to Prompt for Values at Runtime” on page 574](#) for more information.)

## How to Set Up Command Contexts

Use controls on the Configurations **Context** tab to add, edit, or remove contexts in a configuration.



Location	Type	Selection	Data Type
Editor	All Editors	All Selections	All Data Types
Viewer	All Views	All Selections	All Data Types

Click the fields under Location, Type, Select, and Data Type to get drop-down menus with which to select contexts in the ArcSight Console UI where the command is available and to which selections it applies.

### Command Context Attributes

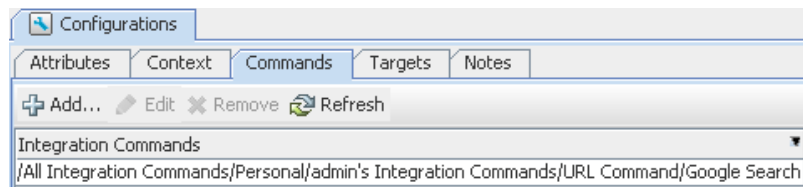
Attribute	Description
Location	View where in the ArcSight Console the command is available. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Viewer, for the Viewer panel where <a href="#">Views</a> of active channels, dashboards, and so on are shown</li> <li>Resource, for the <a href="#">Navigator Panel</a> resource tree</li> <li>Editor, for resource editors</li> </ul>
Type	Contexts in the ArcSight Console panels where the command is available. Available types vary depending on the location you choose. <p>For example, if you choose <b>Viewer</b> for the location, you can specify types of “views” where you want the command to display, such as Grid View, Chart View, various List entries, Dashboards, Query Viewers, and so on.</p>
Selection	User selection or subset of it that is fed into the command. Options can include All Selections, Selected Cell, Selected Row, Selected Attribute.

**Command Context Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute	Description
Data Type	<p>Data type for the parameters fed into the command (derived from the Selection). Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Data Types</li> <li>• IP Address</li> <li>• MAC Address</li> <li>• Date</li> <li>• Double</li> <li>• Integer</li> <li>• Long</li> <li>• Resource</li> <li>• String</li> </ul>

## Configurations Commands

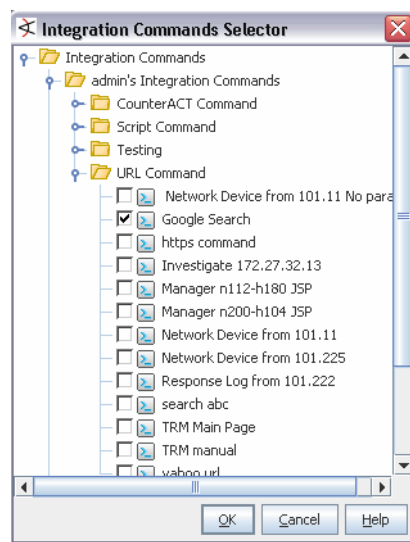
Use controls on the Configurations **Commands** tab to add, edit, or remove commands in a configuration.



### Adding a Command to a Configuration

On the Configurations **Commands** tab:

- Click **Add** to bring up the Commands Selector dialog.



- Navigate to and click (checkmark) the commands you want to add, and click **OK**.

The commands are added to the list. (You can add multiple commands to a single configuration.)

## Editing Commands in a Configuration

On the Configurations **Commands** tab:

- Select the command you want to edit and click **Edit**.
- This provides a shortcut into the **Command Editor** for the selected command. See [Step 3 on page 556](#) and [“Command Types and Attributes” on page 557](#) for information on editing the command.

## Removing Commands from a Configuration

On the Configurations **Commands** tab, select a command in the list and click **Remove**.

## Configuration Targets

Targets are not required for all command types, only for those that run on remote servers. Before you can add a target to a Configuration (explained here), you first need to define it as described in [“Specifying Targets” on page 571](#).

Use controls on the Configurations **Targets** tab to add, edit, or remove targets in a configuration.



**Note**

**If you plan to add remote targets to a configuration**, you need host information for the remote servers and login credentials if authentication is required.

**If you plan to add remote NSP TRM targets to a configuration**, you need the following:

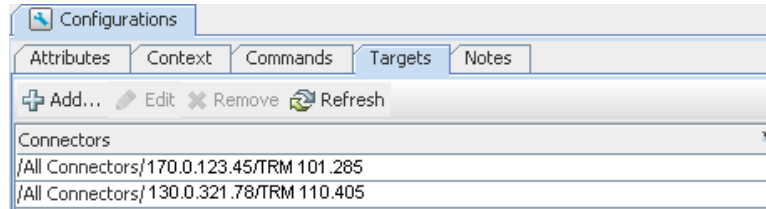
- Access to deployed NSP appliances
- If you plan to access TRM using Connector commands, you need one or more Threat Response Manager SmartConnectors installed and configured to connect to your NSP appliances. Read the ArcSight NSP Installation and Administration Guide, chapter on Integrating NSP with ArcSight ESM, for detailed description and steps.
- If you plan to access TRM using URL commands, you need a TRM Web client to derive URL commands. For TRM URL commands, you also need to define a target separately as described in [“Specifying Targets” on page 571](#).
- If you plan to access TRM using URL commands, you also need TRM user login credentials for the NSP appliances you plan to use. If you are an administrator configuring TRM commands for multiple users who send TRM commands each using their own TRM logins, you need the TRM login credentials for all those users in order to configure them as integration commands. (See [“Setting User Login Parameters” on page 573](#).)

See also [“Configuring the SmartConnector” on page 657](#).

---

## Adding a Target to a Configuration

Targets are applicable to Connector commands like Threat Response Manager (TRM) commands sent to an NSP appliance through the onboard TRM Connector (which is treated as the “target” for TRM commands), and any other commands that you want to send to a remote server.



- Click **Add** to bring up the Connectors Selector dialog.
- Navigate to and click (check mark) the target you want to add, and click **OK**.

## Editing Targets in a Configuration

- Select the target you want to edit and click **Edit**.
- This provides a shortcut into the **SmartConnector Configuration** Editor for the selected connector or target. (See [“Configuring the SmartConnector” on page 657](#), and also the SmartConnector User’s Guide.)

## Removing Commands from a Configuration

On the Configurations **Contexts** tab, select a target in the list and click **Remove**.

## Specifying Targets

Optionally, you can specify targets (remote servers where one or more commands run). For example, Threat Response Manager (TRM) commands can be sent to a Network Synergy Platform (NSP) appliance via a Web URL.

If you have multiple remote servers, you might want to configure multiple targets on which to run a single command with the same or different parameters.

For example, you can configure any of the following as command targets.

- Applications with Web interfaces/clients like
  - ◆ ArcSight Network Synergy Platform (NSP) appliances
  - ◆ ArcSight Logger appliances
  - ◆ Search providers (for example, Google, Yahoo, ask.com)
  - ◆ IT/Security portals
  - ◆ Asset/Vulnerability information
  - ◆ Ticketing Web servers
- Connectors
  - ◆ Threat Response Manager connector in the NSP appliance

Setting up *targets* is a step in a multi-part process of making a set of integration commands available to ArcSight Console users. (Other tasks include setting up commands, configurations, and user login parameters).

This topic explains how to add and edit the *configuration* portion of an integration command solution. For an overview of the integration commands feature, see [“Integration Commands” on page 549](#).

**To add a new target, do the following:**

- 1 In the Navigator panel, select the **Integration Commands** resource from the drop-down menu and click the **Targets** tab.
- 2 Right-click a group (folder) where you want to create the target, and select **New Target**. This launches the Command Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 3 Fill in the fields as described below.
- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to add the new target.

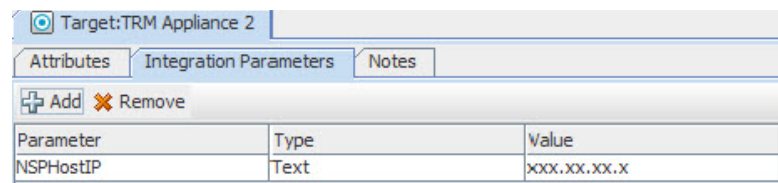
## Target Attributes

The only target attribute you need to provide is a user-friendly name for the server.

Attribute	Description
<b>Name</b>	Name for the remote server or appliance where the command run.

## Target Integration Parameters

Targets are used only for URL configurations, where you parameterize the Web host target of the URL, and sometimes login credentials. Type directly into the fields to define a parameter, as described below.



Field	Description
<b>Parameter</b>	Parameter name, as specified in the command definition related to this target. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NSPHostIP is a parameter for the IP address of the TRM target appliance.</li> </ul>
<b>Type</b>	Parameter type. Choose <b>Text</b> or <b>Password</b> from the drop-down menu. Password type parameters are automatically encrypted. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Always set login credentials (passwords or authentication tokens) to type "Password" (not "Text"). (Credentials set to "Text" are not masked on the UI and are sent as clear text if the renderer is an external browser.)</li> <li>You can set passwords and authentication credentials on target servers too, but we recommend against it in most cases. Doing so risks opening up a target server to any user who has access to the integration commands (not necessarily an account on the target server). Additionally, it does not give you any tracking information based on user logins to the server.</li> </ul>
<b>Value</b>	Hard-coded value, variable, or Velocity Expression for the parameter. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A host name or IP address as a value for a target server parameter</li> </ul>



To add a new parameter, click **Add**. This gives you a new row in which to enter Parameter, Type, and Value information. You can add multiple parameters to a target.



Entering data in the Common and Assign sections is optional, depending on how your environment is configured. For information about the Common and Assign attributes sections, as well as the read-only attribute fields in Parent Groups and Creation Information, see [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#).

## Authorization and Authentication Settings

**Authentication:** You can specify user login behavior for commands designed to run on secure, remote target servers. You can specify login credentials to be used as part of the command, or set parameters that prompt users to enter their user name and password when they run the command.

**Authorization:** You can set up fine-grained access control lists (ACLs) to specify which ArcSight Console users have permissions to view, run or edit different commands.

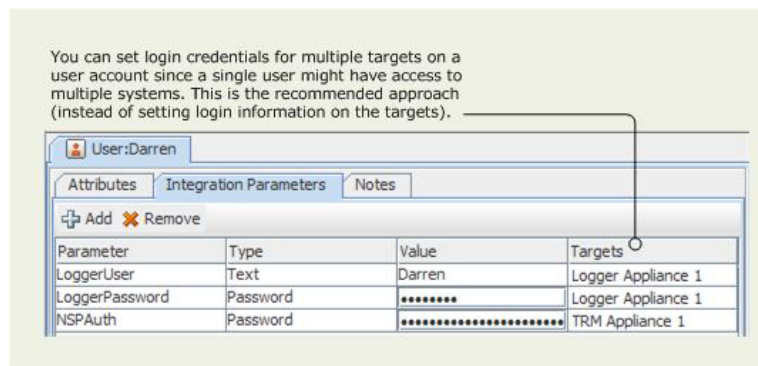
The following topics explain how to set up login details and ACLs in integration commands.

### Setting User Login Parameters

You can specify login credentials on user accounts or on remote target servers. It is best to set login credentials on user accounts, but both options are described below. (Login credentials are not required for Connector integration commands because the authentication is handled as part of the SmartConnector setup.)

### Setting Login Credentials

For URL commands on remote targets (including TRM commands) and script commands that run locally, you can define login credentials as a part of user configurations. (Choose Navigator > **Users**, select and edit a user or create a new one, then click the **Integration Parameters** tab on the **User Editor**.)



Defining login information as part of user accounts gives you the flexibility to configure multiple users, each with different logins. In this case, login credentials are not tied to the command target, but rather associated with individual users.

A single user account can have login credentials for different servers and scripts. In the example pictured above, the user “Darren” has login credentials for an NSP appliance (via

the authentication token defined for the NSPAuth parameter) and also for a Logger appliance (which takes a user name and password as authentication).



**Tip**

For **security best practices**, we recommend that you:

- Always set login credentials (passwords or authentication tokens) to type "Password" (not "Text"). (Credentials set to "Text" are not masked on the UI and are sent as clear text if the renderer is an external browser.)
- Save authentication information only as parameters on user accounts, not on target servers. This strategy binds authentication details to specific users, and gives you tracking information based on user logins (for example, you can tell which users ran which commands and when).

Examples of authentication information are user name and password combinations, and authentication tokens sent in URLs such as in NSP TRM.

## Setting Login Credentials on Target Servers

Although not generally recommended, login credentials for URL commands on remote targets also can be defined as part of the Target definition, as described in ["Specifying Targets" on page 571](#). (Choose Navigator > Integration Commands > Targets tab, select and edit a target or create a new one, then click the **Integration Parameters** tab on the **Targets Editor**.)

Parameter	Type	Value
NSPHostIP	Text	xxx.xx.xx.x

If login information is defined here, everyone who uses the command uses the same credentials to log in to the remote target server.



**Caution**

- Do not save authentication information as parameters on target servers. It runs the risk of opening up a remote server to any user who has access to the integration commands. Additionally, it does not give you any tracking information based on user logins to the server.
- Always set login credentials (passwords or authentication tokens) to type "Password" (not "Text"). (Credentials set to "Text" are not masked on the UI and are sent as clear text if the renderer is an external browser.)

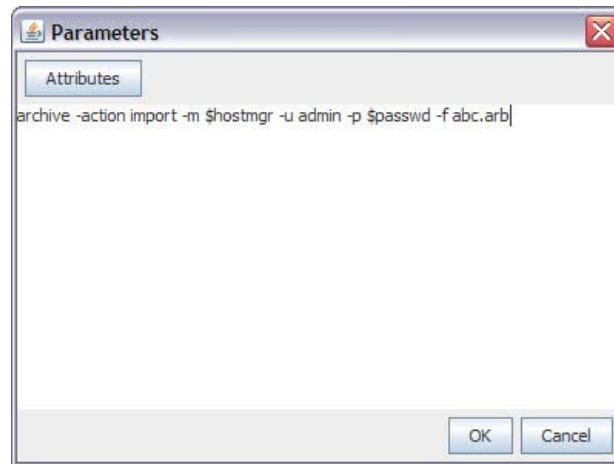
## Setting Logins and Other Parameters to Prompt for Values at Runtime

You can set parameters for which you would like to prompt users to specify values at runtime, such as user name and password, host names, IP addresses, and other options.

When an integration command runs (i.e., when a user selects an integration command in some context on the ArcSight Console), the command first looks for any required parameter values in a variety of sources, including in the command statement itself, in the defined context, on the user account, on the target (if there is one), and so forth. If it doesn't find parameter values in any of these places, the system prompts the user to type in the values.

You can include login and other parameters as flags on a script command that runs against a server, as shown here for the archive command which runs on a Manager. When this command is run, it prompts the user for a Manager host name and administrator password. (It does not prompt for the user name, `admin`, since this already is provided in the command statement.)

```
archive -action import -m $hostmgr -u admin -p $passwd -f
abc.arb
```



Please refer to [“Entering/Saving Command Parameters at Runtime” on page 577](#) (in [Running Integration Commands](#)), for an example of the run-time prompts users see when they run this command.

## Access Control Lists (ACLs) on Integration Commands

You can configure access control lists (ACLs) on integration commands, since they are resources (and ACLs can be configured on resources). For details on how this works in general, please see [“Granting or Removing Resource Permissions” on page 604](#).

You can grant or limit read/write access to integration commands, integration configurations, and integration targets down to the *grouped resource* level for particular *user groups* by setting the setting ACL permissions on the resource group for any set of commands. Note that both the resources themselves and the users must both be in groups in order to work with them in this way.

For example, suppose you have a group of TRM connector commands. The commands are grouped in a command group called “TRM Investigate Commands,” and associated with a configuration called “TRM Investigate Configurations.” You have two users (Darren and Larry) in a group called “Analyzers” to whom you want to give permissions to simply *run* these commands (not edit them). To do this, you would choose **Users** in the Navigator, select the Analyzers group, right-click and choose **Edit Access Control**. On the Resources tab, add both the TRM Investigate commands and configurations groups, and give read access on both. (Add the resource Integration Command and select the appropriate command group in the selector, and add the resource Integration Configuration and select

the appropriate configuration group in the selector, then click the **Read** check boxes for each under Resource Targets and save the ACLs for the user group.)



**Tip**

- User group ACLs with **read** permissions on the integration command and configuration resources groups can **run** commands.
- User groups with **read and write** permissions on integration command and configuration resource groups can **run and edit** these commands.
- Commands can be configured to prompt for input parameter values when the command runs. If you want to give users permissions to **save the parameter values** required at command runtime, then you also need to give **read and write** permissions to the associated **Integration Targets** groups on the ACL editor for the user group.

You can organize users and the commands, configurations, and targets into various groups to fit with the permissions schemes you want to create. You might, for instance, want to create one set of TRM Investigate commands/configurations and give those permissions to one set of users (for example, Darren and Larry in the Analyzers group). Then you could create another set of TRM Quarantine commands/configurations and give those permissions to a different group of users (for example, Samantha, Endora, and Arthur in Analyzer Administrators group). It might be appropriate for this second group to have more authority, and therefore you would grant a broader set of permissions to it (for example, both Investigate and Quarantine permissions per the ACL settings on the Analyzer Administrators group).

## Running Integration Commands

After commands are configured, they are available in various contexts in the ArcSight Console.

For example, suppose you have a configuration for a set of commands with the contexts set as follows:

Location	Type	Selection	Data Type
Viewer	All Views	All Selections	IP Address

This means that the given commands are available on right-click context menus on any view (for example, active channels, list views, chart views, dashboards, and so on). The user can select any row, cell, or area on a chart. In this context, only IP addresses can be provided as valid parameters to the command.

If one of the commands in this configuration was an NSP TRM **Quarantine Node** command (a type of TRM Connector command), then to use the command you would do the following:

- 1 Bring up an active channel, session list, active list, dashboard, or other resource in the viewer that shows, for example, a suspicious device, machine, or user that you want to quarantine.
- 2 Find the row on the Viewer display that contains the suspicious entity, and select a cell in that row that contains the source IP address (for example, Attacker Address).
- 3 Right-click over the cell with the source IP address (for example, Attacker Address), and choose **Integration Commands > Quarantine Node**.

This launches the selected command, using the IP address for the selected cell as the parameter for the command.

In general, a right-click any context in the ArcSight Console UI for which integration commands have been configured show all integration configurations.

## Entering/Saving Command Parameters at Runtime

Commands can be configured to prompt for parameter values at runtime (as described in [“Setting Logins and Other Parameters to Prompt for Values at Runtime” on page 574](#)). Also, if ready-made commands (such as for Logger or TRM) are not pre-configured, you are prompted for values. For example, parameters might ask for a particular host name as command input, an IP address against which to run a command, or login credentials to a target server.

Save To Tar...	Save To User	Parameter	Type	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LoggerPassword	Password	*****
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LoggerUser	Text	ironman

If you launch a command that prompts for input, enter the appropriate text in the “Value” field for each required parameter.

If you have appropriate permissions, you have the option to save parameter values with the target or with your user account so that you don’t have to re-type them each time you run the command.



### Security Best Practice Recommendations:

- In order to save parameter values at runtime, you need to belong to a group with *read and write permissions* to the associated *targets*.
- Always set login credentials (passwords or authentication tokens) to type “Password” (not “Text”). Credentials set to “Text” are not masked on the UI and are sent as clear text if the renderer is an external browser.
- Always save login credentials to user (Save to User), not to the target server. This strategy binds authentication details to specific users. This better safeguards access to the remote server to appropriate users. Also, you have tracking information based on logins as to which users entered which commands.

If you save authentication details as parameters on a target, you run the risk of opening up a remote server to any user who has access to the integration commands (but not necessarily an account on the target server). And you have no per-user tracking information.

Examples of authentication information are user name and password combinations, and authentication tokens that are sent in URLs (for example, NSPAuth parameter that holds the authentication token in NSP TRM).

## Creating New Configurations On-the-Fly

You can also create a new integration configuration from within a context. To do this, right-click anywhere in the UI, and choose Integration Commands > New Configuration. (See [“Using Configurations to Group Commands” on page 565](#) for next steps.)

## Ready-Made ArcSight Threat Response Manager (TRM) Commands

ArcSight TRM commands are integrated into the ArcSight Console and provided as standard content. These commands run on ArcSight Network Synergy Platform (NSP) appliances, in which TRM is one of the application components.

### Prerequisites

Before you can run TRM commands from the Console, make sure you are properly set up with one or more NSP appliances. Refer to the ArcSight NSP Installation and Administration Guide, the chapter on Integrating NSP with ArcSight ESM, for the detailed descriptions and steps, including information on TRM commands.

### Options for Up-Front or On-the-Fly Configuration

Configuring these integrated TRM commands involves specifying the target NSP appliances and saving TRM authentication tokens on users who need TRM command access.

You can use either of these approaches for setting up the TRM integrated commands:

- Configure target and authentication details before the commands are run (for example, a single administrator specifies TRM targets, users, and command parameter values). For this workflow, see [“Enabling TRM Commands” on page 580](#).
- Let users configure commands at command runtime (for example, a user launches a command based on an active channel selection and fills in the target appliance IP address, authentication token, and parameter values on-the-fly). For this strategy, users can refer to [“TRM Integration Commands” on page 578](#) and [“Understanding NSP Authentication” on page 582](#).

If the command details aren't pre-configured, users are prompted to enter the right values when they run the commands. Running one of the commands should set up the target for most commands. Some commands might require further setup that can be done again on-the-fly. Information on how to run integration commands, see [“Running Integration Commands” on page 576](#). (This topic includes information about running commands and entering/saving parameter values at command runtime.)

### TRM Integration Commands

The following integration commands are supported in ArcSight NSP v5.0 and newer versions. These are defined in `/All Integration Commands/ArcSight Administration/TRM`. For all, you need to provide values for the given parameters. At a minimum, these include NSPAuth (user authentication token) and NSPHostIP (target NSP appliance).

The commands execute based on which events you select in the ArcSight Console to launch the command. This is accomplished with Velocity Expressions, which are built into the commands to get values for some parameters, such as `$selectedItem`, `$selectedField`,

*\$attackerAddress*, *\$targetAddress*, and so on. For example, "Quarantine Node" would quarantine the node in the selected event.

**Table 18-1 TRM Commands**

TRM Commands	Description
Auth Queue	Shows the Authorization queue so you can allow or deny any TRM actions listed in the queue (such as Block IP Traffic or Disable Enterprise Account).
Auth Report	Generates reports for quarantines located in the authorization queue.
Block IP Range	Blocks an IP address range on Layer 3 devices on your network so that traffic from nodes with those IP addresses is not permitted.
Block IP Traffic	Blocks any IP traffic coming from a node on the network to the destination port specified in the event.
Disable Enterprise Account	Disables a user account so that the user cannot log on to your network.  The user account needs to belong to the default Enterprise Account Source configured on the NSP appliance.
Investigate Node	Initiates the "investigate" process so you can obtain information about a node's connectivity to the network, such as its IP address, DNS name, MAC address, and location type (whether the node is on an internal or an external interface in the network topology). You can also see which Layer 3 network device is closest to the node and the Layer 2 network device to which the node connects.  You can use this information in a Case.
Network Devices	Lists all the network devices that NSP is managing, such as routers and switches.
Attacker-Target Maps	Displays a map showing network connections for an Attacker-Target scenario (based on the nodes in the event selected in the ArcSight Console).  <b>Note:</b> The map shows Layer 3 logical connectivity (possible routes) not physical connectivity (wires that connect devices). So, the map might not depict the physical topology of the network.
Quarantine Node	Quarantines a node when you discover a problem that has the potential to spread to other nodes in your network. You can select from these Quarantine actions: Disable Port, Filter MAC, and Move to VLAN.
Response Log - Blocked IP Range	Lists all Block IP Range actions taken by TRM and provides details about each one, such as who performed the action, when the action was taken, and the devices on which the action was taken.
Response Log - Blocked IP Traffic	Lists all the Block IP Traffic actions taken by TRM and provides details about each one, such as who performed the action, the date and time the action was performed, and the devices on which the action was taken.

**Table 18-1 TRM Commands (Continued)**

TRM Commands	Description
Response Log - Disabled Account	Lists the Disable Enterprise Account actions taken by TRM and provides details about each one, such as who disabled the account, the date and time the account was disabled, and the status of the disabled account.
Response Log - Quarantined Nodes	Lists the Quarantine Node actions taken by TRM and provides details about each one, such as the IP address of the quarantined node, the date and time the node was quarantined, and the status of the quarantine (active or removed).
Response Report	Generates a response history report that contains a text and graphical representation of the actions performed on the NSP appliance.

## Enabling TRM Commands

To enable pre-configured TRM commands from the ArcSight Console, follow these steps.

### Step 1 - Set up the Command Targets

- 1 In the Navigator, click the **Resources** tab, and then navigate to **Integration Commands > Targets**.
- 2 Create an integration target for your NSP appliance, or edit one of the existing entries.

We recommend that you start by editing the target already provided for you in `/All Integration Targets/ArcSight Administration/TRM/`:

#### TRM Appliance 1

- 3 In the Target editor on the **Integration Parameters** tab, add at a minimum, the following parameters.

<b>Parameter</b>	NSPHostIP
<b>Type</b>	Text
<b>Value</b>	<i>&lt; IP address or Host Name of the NSP Appliance &gt;</i>

you are prompted for other parameters needed when you run the commands. If you want to set up more parameters and values now, you can do so. (See [“TRM Integration Commands” on page 578](#).)



**Best Practice Recommendation:** We recommend saving only the target host information (for example, IP address) on the target server, not the authentication credentials. If you save authentication details as parameters on a target, you run the risk of opening up a remote server to any user with access to integration commands (but not necessarily an NSP TRM account). And you have no per-user tracking information, like you do if you save this information to user accounts.

- 4 If you have more than one NSP Appliance, create an additional integration target for each appliance you want to integrate into the command hub.
- 5 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes to the target.



(For general information about command targets, see [“Specifying Targets” on page 571.](#))

## Step 2 - Set up the Command Configuration

- 1 In the Navigator, click the **Resources** tab, and then navigate to **Integration Commands > Configurations**.

You can find the pre-built TRM command configuration in `/All Integration Configurations/ArcSight Administration/TRM/TRM Commands`.

This configuration includes all the standard content TRM commands.

- 2 Edit the **TRM Commands** integration configuration:
  - ◆ In the Configuration editor, click the **Targets** tab, and then add the integration targets you created in the previous steps (for example, if you used the provided target, choose **TRM Appliance 1**).
- 3 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes to the configuration.

(For general information about command configurations, see [“Using Configurations to Group Commands” on page 565.](#))

## Step 3 - Set up Users for TRM Access

- 1 In the Navigator, click the **Resources** tab, and then navigate to **Users**.
- 2 Edit the users that have access to the NSP appliance. In most cases, these users should have administrator privileges.
- 3 Click the **Integration Parameters** tab, and then create an integration parameter for the NSP authentication token. (Administrators and users with accounts on the target server can obtain this token from the NSP appliance as described in [“Understanding NSP Authentication” on page 582.](#))

<b>Parameter</b>	NSPAuth
<b>Type</b>	Password
<b>Value</b>	<NSP Authentication Token encrypted login credentials>
<b>Targets</b>	<Select targets for that TRM user>



### Best Practice Recommendations:

- Always set login credentials (passwords or authentication tokens) to type “Password” (not “Text”). (Credentials set to “Text” are not masked on the UI and are sent as clear text if the renderer is an external browser.)
- Always save login credentials to user account (Save to User), not to the target server. This strategy binds authentication details to specific users and better safeguards target server access. Also, you have tracking information based on logins as to which users entered which commands.

- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes to the user.

(For general information about setting up login credentials and access control lists for integration commands, see [“Authorization and Authentication Settings” on page 573.](#))

## Understanding NSP Authentication

Integrated TRM commands require use of an encrypted authentication string (token) to connect to the NSP appliance. (An integrated TRM command sends this token to the target NSP appliance as part of a URL to accomplish user login.)

The authentication token is used to log in to an NSP appliance (instead of a user name and password combo). Users who want to send TRM commands to an appliance need to have a valid NSP authentication token. This is used to set up login credentials on users. The token is specified as a value for the NSPAuth parameter for a particular user (in user accounts).

## How to Get an NSP Authentication Token

To get an NSP authentication token, you need access to the NSP appliance.

Log in to the NSP appliance, and generate the authentication token based on your login credentials.



Before you can generate an encrypted value as an NSP administrator or view it as a non-admin user, the setting **Allow Encrypted Authentication Credentials in URL** must be enabled (set to Yes). (By default, this setting is disabled.)

So, as a prerequisite, an administrator needs to navigate to **Admin** tab > **Users & Groups** > **Settings** > **Authentication** tab to enable this setting.

### 1 Generate the token.

There are two ways to obtain an encrypted value for an NSP user name and password:

- An NSP admin user can view the encrypted values for all NSP users on the View Encrypted Authentication Credentials page (**Admin** tab > **Users & Groups** > **Settings** > **Authentication** > **View URL Strings**).

The key is displayed after you click View URL Strings.

(Make sure the setting Allow Encrypted Authentication Credentials in URL is set to Yes, otherwise the URL strings do not show up.)

- An NSP user (with non-admin privileges) can view the encrypted value for their user name and password on the **Change Password For <User\_Name>** page. To get to this page, click **Options** in the top, right-hand side of any NSP screen. The authentication key is displayed under "Encrypted Authentication Credentials in URL is enabled". For information on password restrictions see the Administrator's Guide, chapter 2. "Configuration," "Managing Password Configuration."

### 2 Copy the token. On both the administrator and user pages, the authentication token is displayed in this form: `enc_auth=<AuthenticationKey>`



The authentication token is the string that follows `enc_auth=`. Be sure to copy only that string and do not include `enc_auth=`. A common problem with getting the TRM login to work with the integrated commands is not copying the full string, or including `enc_auth=` in the copy.

### 3 After you get the encrypted value, use it as the value for the NSPAuth parameter (paste it into the parameter value field), as described in ["Step 3 - Set up Users for TRM Access" on page 581](#).

If you are setting up TRM commands on-the-fly (as you run the commands), you use this token during that process. For more on this, see [“Entering/Saving Command Parameters at Runtime”](#) on page 577.



#### Best Practice Recommendations:

- Always set login credentials (passwords or authentication tokens) to type “Password” (not “Text”). Credentials set to “Text” are not masked on the UI and are sent as clear text if the renderer is an external browser.
- Always save login credentials to user, not to the target server. This binds authentication details to specific users, limits access to the remote server to appropriate users, and provides tracking information based on logins about which users entered which commands.

If you save authentication details as parameters on a target, you run the risk of opening up a remote server to any user who has access to the integrated commands (but not necessarily an account on the target server). And you have no per-user tracking information.

## Examples of Running TRM URL Commands

When you have NSP target appliance information and user authentication details, you are ready to run TRM commands from the ArcSight Console. Here are some examples of what to expect when you run a TRM command.

### Attacker-Target Network Map

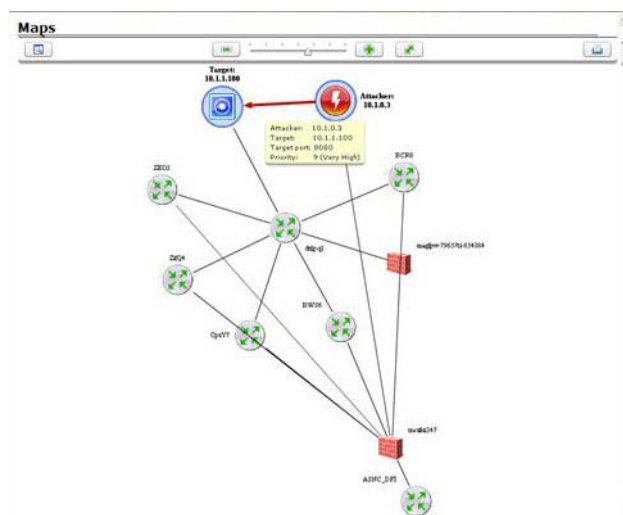
This example shows a network map with an attacker/target scenario and network paths.

Right-click on an event in an active channel, and choose **Integration Commands > TRM Commands**.

On the TRM Commands dialog, select **Network Maps** and **TRM Appliance 1** as the target appliance, and click **OK**.

This logs you in to the target NSP appliance, and sends the Attacker IP address, Target IP address, and Target Port as parameters on the Attacker-Target Map command.

As a result, we get this map:



Mouse over Attacker-Target connecting line to show the threat data detail (IP addresses, priority, and port) as pictured.

## Investigate Node

This example shows details on a selected network node. Right-click on an event in an active channel, select the field containing the IP address to investigate, and choose **Integration Commands > TRM Commands**.

On the TRM Commands dialog, select **Investigate Node** and **TRM Appliance 1** as the target appliance, and click **OK**.

This logs us in to the target NSP appliance, and sends the selected node as a parameter on the Investigate command.

The screenshot shows the ArcSight console with the 'Investigate Node' results. The main content area displays the following information:

**Investigate Node**

Investigate Node Status: Investigate Is Now Complete [Show Running Tasks](#)

Location Type: This is an Internal Address

**Investigative Information**

IP Address:	172.27.26.13	DNS Entry:	endpoint-3.nsp-node3.nsp.rht
MAC Address:	000c.29c0.46d3	WINS Entry:	
MAC Vendor:	VMware, Inc.	Netbios Host:	
Netbios Name:		Netbios Domain:	

**Layer3 Information**

Device	Interface	CIDR
cisco-3550-12T	Vlan65	172.27.26.1/24

**Layer2 Information**

Device	Interface	Relationship
cisco_2960	Fa0/2	Unique

At the bottom of the panel, there are two buttons: **Simulate Quarantine** and **Quarantine Node**. The URL bar at the top shows a long, complex URL for the investigation command.

## Going Further with TRM Command Results

From here, there are a number of ways you could leverage the details you get from the TRM examples.

You can create a case based on the initial event you selected, and feed the NSP details into the case as Notes or an attached file. The drill-down information you get from a TRM Investigate Node command is typically richer. You can copy those details into case notes or into a text file and add it as an attachment.

The Investigate Node display also provides a **Simulate Quarantine** option that lists actions TRM would take to quarantine the node. Running simulations and saving related details is useful where the security operations center (SOC) and network operations center (NOC) need to coordinate authorizations for taking actions. A SOC operator without authorization to quarantine nodes could investigate the node, run the simulation, and send the details to the NOC to take action.

In this scenario, administrators might also use the TRM authorization queue. The operator who runs the TRM commands could quarantine the node, but the command would sit in an authorization queue until an administrator approves it to run.

## ArcSight Logger Search Commands



This topic applies to ESM 5.x and 6.0c.

Beginning with ESM 6.5c, HP introduced the ArcSight Command Center. If you want to search for events on the CORR-Engine database (Logger database), refer to the ArcSight Command Center User's Guide instead of using the integration commands described here.

ArcSight Logger Search commands are integrated into the ArcSight Console and provided as standard content. These commands enable searches on ArcSight Logger appliances and are supported starting with ArcSight Logger v4.0.

Configuring the ready-made integrated Logger commands involves specifying IP addresses for the target Logger appliances and saving login credentials on users who need Logger search access.

### Logger Integration Commands

These integrated commands are supported in ArcSight Logger v4.0 and later versions. (These are defined in /All Integration Commands/ArcSight Administration/Logger.)

Logger Command	Description
<b>Logger Search</b>	<p>Allows you to right-click an event in an active channel and run a search for one of the fields presented in a list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays a pop-up dialog with search options.</li> <li>Allows you to search by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Event Name</li> <li>Destination</li> <li>Source</li> <li>Destination and Source</li> <li>User</li> <li>Service Vendor and Product</li> </ul> </li> <li>You can select the Logger appliance on which to search.</li> </ul>
<b>Logger Quick Search</b>	<p>Allows you to right-click a field in an active channel to search based on the field and value selected. If there is more than one Logger appliance set up, a pop-up dialog box allows users to choose which appliance to search.</p>

### Enabling Integrated Logger Searches

You can use either of these approaches for setting up the Logger searches:

- Configure target and authentication details before the commands are run (for example, a single administrator specifies Logger targets, users, and command parameter values). For this workflow, follow the steps below to:
  1. [Set up Logger Command Targets](#),
  2. [Set up the Logger Command Configuration](#), and
  3. [Set up Users for Logger Access](#).

- Configure commands at command runtime (for example, if you launch a command based on an active channel selection and fill in the target appliance IP address, authentication token, and parameter values on-the-fly).

If you have not pre-configured the command details, you are prompted to enter the right values when you run the commands. Information on how to run integration commands, see [“Running Integration Commands” on page 576](#). (This topic includes information about running commands and entering/saving parameter values at command runtime.)

To enable pre-configured ArcSight Logger searches from the ArcSight Console, follow these steps.

## 1. Set up Logger Command Targets

- 1 In the Navigator, click the **Resources** tab, and then navigate to **Integration Commands > Targets**.
- 2 Create an integration target for your Logger Appliance, or edit an existing target in /All Integration Targets/ArcSight Administration/Logger/, such as Logger Appliance 1 or Logger Appliance 2.
- 3 In the Target editor on the **Integration Parameters** tab, add these parameters.

<b>Parameter</b>	LoggerHost
<b>Type</b>	Text
<b>Value</b>	< IP address or Host Name of the Logger Appliance >

- 4 If you have more than one Logger appliance, create an additional integration target for each appliance to be made searchable.
- 5 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes to the target.
- 6 For information about command targets, see [“Specifying Targets” on page 571](#).

## 2. Set up the Logger Command Configuration

- 1 In the Navigator, click the **Resources** tab, and then navigate to **Integration Commands > Configurations**.

You can find the pre-built Logger command configurations in /All Integration Configurations/ArcSight Administration/Logger/

- 2 Edit the **Logger Search** integration configuration:

In the Configuration editor, click the **Targets** tab and add the integration targets you created earlier.

- 3 Edit the **Logger Quick Search** integration configuration:

In the Configuration editor, click the **Targets** tab and then add one integration target from the list of targets you just created.

- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes to the configuration.

For information about command configurations, see [“Using Configurations to Group Commands” on page 565](#).

### 3. Set up Users for Logger Access

- 1 In the Navigator, click the **Resources** tab, and then navigate to **Users**.
- 2 Edit the users that have access to the Logger appliance. In most cases, these users should have administrator privileges.
- 3 Click the **Integration Parameters** tab, and then specify the integration parameters for the Logger search

Parameter	Description
LoggerUser	The Logger account name to use when accessing a Logger target.
LoggerPassword	The password for that Logger account.
LoggerHost	The IP address of the Logger host.
OTPUser	The Logger user account to use with the OTP authentication feature (see note, below).
OTPPassword	The password to use for the OTPUser specified above.
LoggerPort	For OTP, you must specify the port number for the Logger. For a Logger appliance the port number is 443.



The **One-Time Password (OTP)** function requires that you are using Logger 5.1 or later.

If you have an earlier version of Logger, then for Logger searches continue to use the LoggerUser and LoggerPassword as before. Until you install Logger 5.1 or later, searches display a message that it failed to negotiate a single-use session token and is proceeding with regular authentication. Just click **OK** to continue.

For all of these parameters, you can specify a type of “Password” or “Text.” For Text type, the password appears in plain text in the session URL. This is not an issue for any parameter except passwords, so use text for the others but use the Password type for passwords.

**Save to Target** means that this parameter automatically applies whenever any user is accessing the currently-specified target Logger.

**Save to User** means this parameter is used automatically whenever the currently-logged-in user accesses any Logger target.

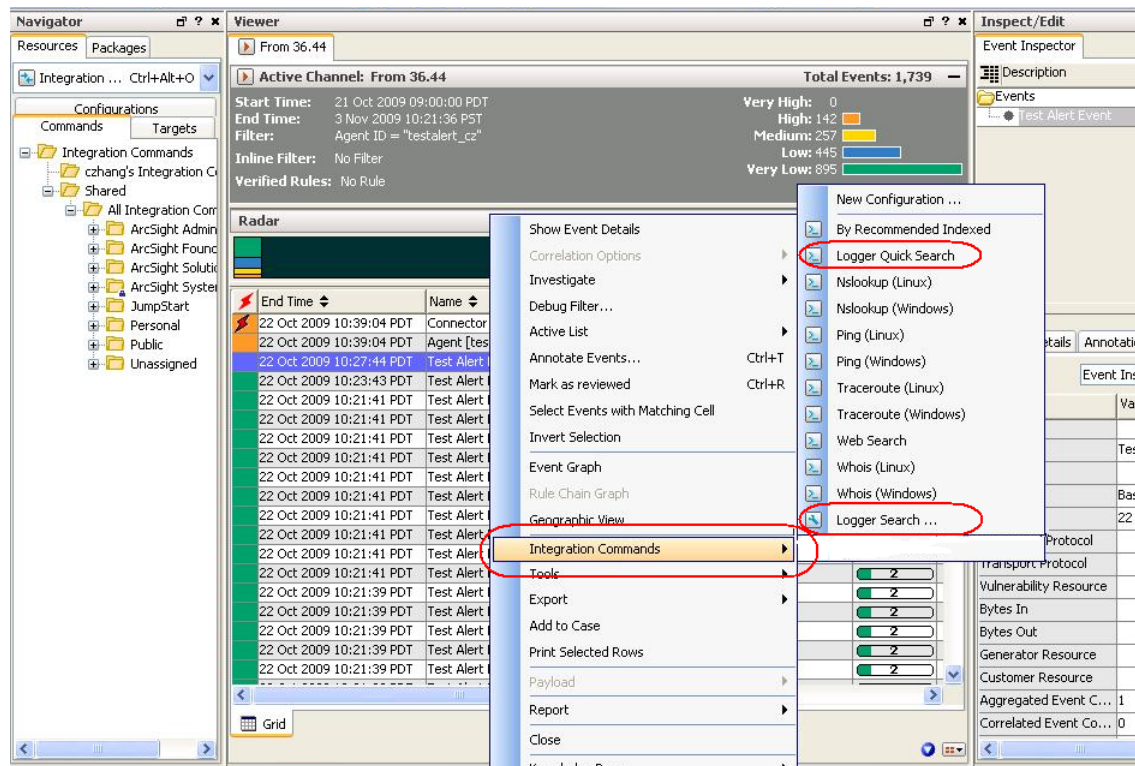
- 4 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes to the user.

For information about setting up login credentials and access control lists for integration commands, see [“Authorization and Authentication Settings” on page 573](#).

### Example of Running a Logger Quick Search

With Logger target appliance information and user authentication details, you are ready to run Logger searches from the ArcSight Console.

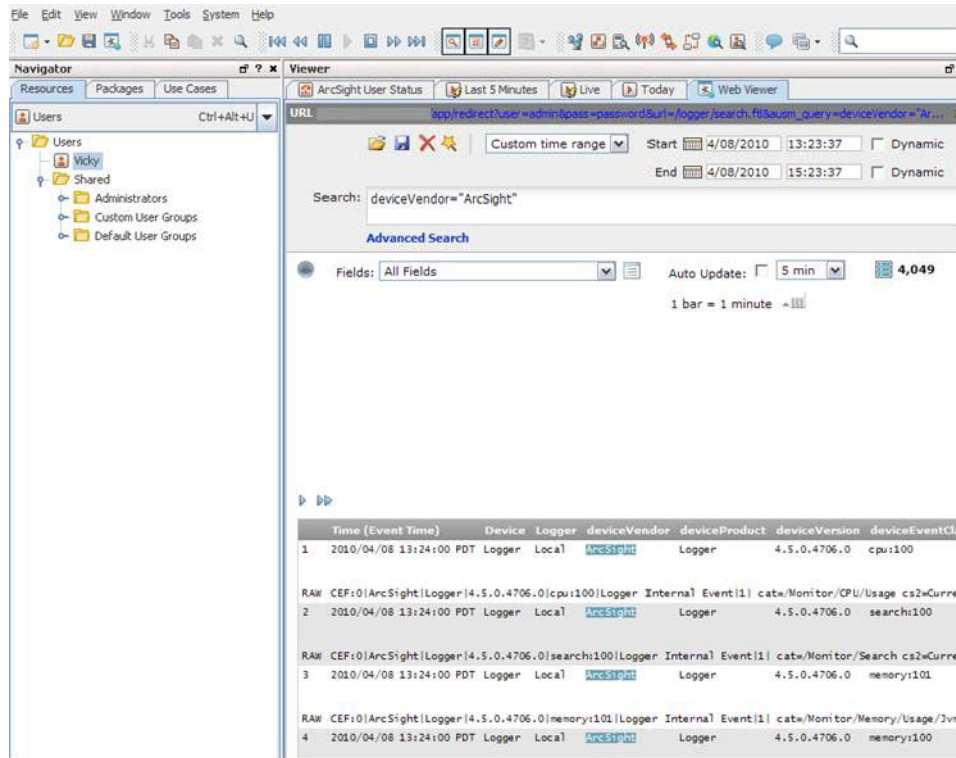
Right-click on an event in an active channel, select a field such as Device Vendor or Device Product, and choose **Integration Commands > Logger Quick Search**.



This logs you into the target Logger appliance (for example, Logger Appliance 1), and sends values for the selected fields as parameters on the search command.

You get the results of the search in the browser, and are now logged in to the Logger Web client, if you want to take further actions on the appliance.











## Network Tools as Integration Commands

The following standard network tools are also provided as integration commands. You can find this toolset in `/Integration Commands/Shared/ArcSight System/Tools/`. You can edit these or add new commands, configurations, and contexts as described in [“Defining Commands” on page 556](#) and [“Using Configurations to Group Commands” on page 565](#). (Also see [“Using the Network Tools” on page 54](#))

With network tools integration commands you can:

- **Define contexts for where tools show up on the ArcSight Console.** You can customize integrated network tools and configure them for all types of views (charts, graphs, tables), and in the navigator, editors, and so on. Legacy network tools are available only on grid views; you cannot define the context.
- **Select and run commands on navigator tree items, all types of views, and editors items.** With integrated network tools, you can select various items in chart and graph views, on the editors, and in the navigator tree. Legacy network tools are limited to running only on the selected cell in a grid view (table) in the Viewer.
- **Configure access control lists (ACLs).** You can grant or limit access to integrated network tools commands for particular user groups by setting the setting ACL permissions on the tools resource group. The integrated network tools reside under `/All Integration Configurations/ArcSight System/Tools`. You can control access to the tools commands and configurations groups (select the Tools group, right-click, and choose **Edit Access Control**) as described in [“Granting or Removing Resource Permissions” on page 604](#). You can organize users and the tools themselves into various groups to fit with the permissions scheme you want to create.

With the legacy network tools, you do not have this ACL option. See [“Access Control Lists \(ACLs\) on Integration Commands” on page 575](#) for more information.

Tree	Icon	Resource
Nslookup		Resolves an IP address to a host or domain name or vice versa.
Ping		Determines whether a particular IP address is online and/or it tests and debugs a network by sending a packet and waiting for a response.
PortInfo		Lists standard usage such as WWW or FTP, for a specified port number.
Traceroute		Shows the path from the ArcSight Console to the IP address selected in the grid view, reporting the IP addresses of all routers in between.
WebSearch		Search the Web through Google to find links to the keywords present in currently selected active channel grid view cells.
Whois		Looks up who is behind a given domain name; information might include addresses and telephone numbers.

These are configured with default Velocity Expressions for parameters. You can edit the commands and configurations for these network tools as needed (and add new ones).

To run a network tool, select an IP address in a grid view (for example, active channel, list, data monitor) and select **Integration Commands > <Network Tool>** from the context menu (for example, **Integration Commands > ping**).



Note

- The Send Logs command is not configured as an integrated command. See [“Using the Network Tools” on page 54](#) and [“Send Logs” on page 958](#) for information on that command.
- To add or re-configure the legacy tools, choose **Tools > Local Commands > Configure**, select a tool, and click **Edit**. Keep in mind that they have limitations compared to the new tools.

## Chapter 19

# Knowledge Base Authoring

---

These topics explain how to do the basic tasks of managing Knowledge Base articles.

[“Managing Knowledge Base Articles” on page 591](#)  
[“Managing Knowledge Base Article Groups” on page 593](#)  
[“Getting Knowledge Base Updates” on page 594](#)  
[“Associating Knowledge Base Articles” on page 595](#)

## Managing Knowledge Base Articles

### Creating Knowledge Base Articles

You can apply the following methods to incorporate knowledge base (KB) articles in the Console.

- Write a new article in the Console using your preferred text or HTML editor. For this method, make sure you have set your Console preferences for your preferred editor. See [“Setting Program Preferences” on page 733](#) for the procedures.
- Import an existing file or web page.
- Reference an existing file or web page.

Writing or importing the article means the content is stored in the Console and you edit the content in the Console. If you edit an imported article in the Console, the original remains untouched. Conversely, editing the original of an imported article does not affect the content that resides in the Console. Referencing an article means the content is being maintained externally.

#### To enter basic information about the KB:

- 1 On the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose the Knowledge Base resource tree.
- 2 Right-click a group and choose **New Article**.
- 3 In the Knowledge Base Editor, select the **Article** tab.
- 4 On the Article tab, type in the **Name** text field.
- 5 Optionally use the **Summary** field to add a brief description of the article.
- 6 Optionally enter a different name for the information source in the **Author/Credits** field. Your user name is the default.

At this time, the Upload File and Launch Editor buttons are still disabled. Note that this condition applies only if you are defining a KB for the first time.

- 7 In the Import/Reference field, select **Import** to enable the buttons.

From here, you can choose use the Console [To write the article using your preferred editor](#). You can also choose [To import an article:](#) or [To reference an article:](#).

#### To write the article using your preferred editor

This assumes you have completed the steps in [To enter basic information about the KB:](#).

- 1 Click **Launch Editor** to start your editor application.
- 2 In the editor application, type the content of your article. Save the file.  
  
The file has an assigned filename using a default path where the Console is installed. On the Console's edit panel for the KB, this path is inserted in the Origin URL field.
- 3 Click **Apply** to save the KB definition.  
  
After saving, the Origin URL field is cleared.
- 4 Verify that the content is added to the KB by clicking the edit panel's **Editor** tab.  
  
If the content needs to be changed in the future, do it here.
- 5 Click **Preview** to see how the article will appear in your default Web browser.

#### To import an article:

This assumes you have completed the steps in [To enter basic information about the KB:](#).



When you select **Import**, only the content between the body tags of the HTML page appear. Therefore, you should use **Reference** when the HTML page uses JavaScript, uses frames, or includes images. Choose **Import** after you have used an editor to create a file specified in the **Origin URL** text field.

---

- 1 In the **Origin URL** text field, type the URL or directory path to the page or file.
- 2 In the Import/Reference field, verify that **Import** is selected.
- 3 Click **Apply** to save the KB definition.
- 4 Verify that the content is added to the KB by clicking the edit panel's **Editor** tab.  
  
If the content needs to be changed in the future, do it here.
- 5 Click **Preview** to see how the article will appear in a Viewer tab.

#### To reference an article:

This assumes you have completed the steps in [To enter basic information about the KB:](#).

- 1 In the **Origin URL** text field, type the URL to the page or file that contains the article's information.
- 2 In the Import/Reference field, select **Reference**.
- 3 Click **Apply** to save the KB definition.
- 4 Click **Preview** to see how the article will appear in a Viewer tab.

## Showing a Knowledge Base Article

In the Knowledge Base window, right-click an article and choose **Show Article**.

## Editing a Knowledge Base Article

- 1 In the Knowledge Base window, right-click an item and choose **Edit Article**.
- 2 In the Knowledge Base Editor, select the **Article** tab.
- 3 On the Article tab, make edits.

For more information, see [“Creating a Knowledge Base Article Group” on page 593](#) (note that in edit mode, the Launch Editor and Upload File buttons are enabled).

- 4 Click **Preview** to see how the article will appear in a Viewer tab.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying a Knowledge Base Article

- 1 In the Knowledge Base window, navigate to an article and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the article, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the article, or **Link** to create a copy of the article that is linked to the original article.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the article that is not affected when the original article is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the article that is linked to the original article. Therefore, if you edit a linked article, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked articles, you can either delete the selected article or all linked article copies.

## Deleting a Knowledge Base Article

- 1 In the Knowledge Base window, right-click an item and choose **Delete Article**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Delete**.

## Managing Knowledge Base Article Groups

Knowledge Base article groups can be used to organize similar or related articles in a single location. For example, you could create a Denial of Service group to store specific articles about Denial of Service attacks such as a Ping Flood attack.

Groups and articles can be managed with drag and drop functionality. You can move or copy groups and articles into other groups within the Knowledge Base resource tree. If a group is deleted, the articles within that group are also deleted.



Note

To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

## Creating a Knowledge Base Article Group

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose the Knowledge Base resource tree.
- 2 In the Knowledge Base window, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.  
A name text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 In the name text field, type in a name.

- 4 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming a Knowledge Base Article Group

- 1 In the Knowledge Base resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the name text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Editing a Knowledge Base Article Group

- 1 In the Knowledge Base resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, type in the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying a Knowledge Base Article Group

- 1 In the Knowledge Base window, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting a Knowledge Base Article Group

- 1 In the Knowledge Base resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Getting Knowledge Base Updates

In the Knowledge Base resource tree, the **Refresh** right-click option refreshes the tree from the selected level, showing changes made to the sub-trees below that group. Supposing a group or article name was modified through another ArcSight Console, or a group or article was deleted, renamed, or moved from another ArcSight Console, refresh shows those changes.

## Refreshing the Knowledge Base Tree

In the Knowledge Base resource tree, right-click the **Knowledge Base** group or article and choose **Refresh**.

## Associating Knowledge Base Articles

Knowledge Base groups and articles can be associated with other resources such as cases, reports, or filters.

### Associating Resources with Knowledge Base Groups or Articles

- 1 Use the Navigator panel to locate an individual or group target resource, for example, a case or case group.
- 2 Right-click the resource and choose **Knowledge Base > Associate with**.
- 3 Use the Knowledge Base Article Selector to find and select an article to associate with the resource.
- 4 Click **OK**.

### Associating Grid View Elements with Knowledge Base Articles

- 1 In a Viewer panel grid view, right-click an event attribute and choose **Knowledge Base > Associate > Cell/Row/Column with**.
- 2 Use the Knowledge Base Article Selector to find and select an article to associate with the grid view's selected cell (data), row (event), or column (attribute).
- 3 Click **OK**.





# Managing Users and Permissions

The following topics cover user management, user permissions with regard to specific resources, and system notifications.

[“Managing Users” on page 597](#)

[“Managing Permissions and Resources” on page 603](#)

[“Managing Notifications” on page 615](#)

## Managing Users

You manage numbers of users by organizing them into groups based on roles or other logical groupings, setting their permissions and passwords, and enabling or disabling their login functionality. Permissions to access specific ArcSight resources (for example, to create rules or reports) are granted to specific groups by editing the access control lists (ACLs) for those groups.

All ArcSight user group memberships and permissions are stored in the ArcSight Database. When users log in, they are allowed to perform any operations for which they are granted permission through their membership in one or more groups.

When you create an ArcSight user, that person automatically receives access to a set of resource groups. Users can store, create, edit, or delete resources within their groups without jeopardizing other users' resources.

## Creating a User

- 1 In the Navigator panel drop-down menu, choose **Users**.
- 2 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click the group in which to place the new user and choose **New User**.
- 3 In the **User Editor**, fill in these fields on the **Attributes** tab in the **Login** section:

### Login Attributes

User Fields	Description
User ID	User name for login ID. This is a required field.

## Login Attributes (Continued)

User Fields	Description
User Type	<p>Choose a user type from the drop-down menu. This is a required field.</p> <p>The currently supported user types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Normal User:</b> Has full privileges to use the ArcSight Console or ArcSight Web client, and all tools. Only apply this user type to accounts that actually need access to the ArcSight Manager.</li> <li>• <b>Management Tool:</b> Has only the privileges needed to run certain management tools used in conjunction with network management products.</li> <li>• <b>Forwarding Connector:</b> Has only the privileges needed by the ForwardingConnector.</li> <li>• <b>Archive Utility:</b> Has only the privileges needed to run the archive utility. Access to specific resources is controlled through ACLs.</li> <li>• <b>Connector Installer:</b> A specialized identity used only to add SmartConnectors to the system.</li> <li>• <b>Web User:</b> Has privileges to use the ArcSight Web client or ArcSight Command Center (not the ArcSight Console or other tools).</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">"Users" on page 981</a> and <a href="#">"User Types" on page 982</a>.</p>
Login Enabled	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the <b>Login Enabled</b> checkbox to <i>give the user login privileges</i> (a checkmark indicates this feature is <b>on</b>):  <div> Login Enabled <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> </div> </li> <li>• Or leave it deselected and <b>off</b> (no checkmark showing) to <i>disable logins</i> for this user:  <div> Login Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> </div> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> A user account login must be <i>enabled</i> to allow login access to the Console. If you disable a login for a user account, the user cannot log into the Console with the credentials associated with the disabled account.</p>
External User ID	<p>Optionally, provide an alternate, external user ID. (An external user ID might be relevant if you have user accounts from other applications feeding into user database.)</p>
Password	<p>Enter a password for this user. This is a required field.</p> <p>By default, passwords require a minimum of 6 characters, can contain a maximum of 20 characters, and can contain numbers and/or letters. System administrators can set special policies or requirements for their sites via a configuration file. For information on password restrictions see the Administrator's Guide, chapter 2. "Configuration," "Managing Password Configuration," "password Character Sets."</p> <p>(Passwords can be modified later as a part of editing user information. See <a href="#">"Resetting User Passwords" on page 599</a>.)</p>
Confirm	<p>Re-type the password to confirm it. This is a required field.</p>

- 4 Fill in these fields on the **Attributes** tab in the **User** section:

User Fields	Description
Last Name	User's last name
First Name	User's first name
Title	User's job title
Department	User's department
Phone	User's phone number
Fax	User's fax number
E-mail	User's e-mail address. Use the format user@host.domain. The "@" sign and host domain are required. E-mail addresses are not case-sensitive.
Pager	User's pager number



For phone, fax, and pager numbers, parentheses (), dashes (-), and periods (.) are allowed. Alphabetic characters are not allowed.

- 5 Click **OK**.

## Editing a User

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click the user and choose **Edit User**.
- 2 In the **User Editor**, edit the text fields as described in the table above.
- 3 Grant or withhold login permission by selecting or deselecting the checkbox next to **Login Enabled**.
- 4 In the **Password** and **Confirm** text fields, edit the user password and confirm it by typing it again. These fields are required.

By default, passwords require a minimum of 6 characters, can contain a maximum of 20 characters, and can contain numbers and/or letters. System administrators can set special policies or requirements for their sites via a configuration file. For information on password restrictions see the Administrator's Guide, chapter 2. "Configuration," "Managing Password Configuration."

- 5 Click **OK**.

## Resetting User Passwords

Administrators can reset user passwords; for example, if a user's original password has been compromised or you want to make users update their passwords.

- 1 While logged into the ArcSight Console as an administrator, choose the **Users** resource in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click the user whose password you want to reset and choose **Reset Password**.

The ArcSight Manager assigns a new random password (8 characters, including numbers and letters) and sends it to the selected user's assigned e-mail address.



Be aware that sending a password by e-mail can be dangerous since e-mails can be intercepted.

Alternatively, the following command on ArcSight Manager can be used to reset a user's password:

```
arcsight resetpwd
```

## Moving or Linking a User

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, navigate to a user and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the user or **Link** to create a copy of the user that is linked to the original user.

If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the user that is linked to the original user. Therefore, if you edit a linked user, whether it is the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked users, you can either delete the selected user or all linked user copies.

## Deactivating and Reactivating a User

A user is deactivated for the following reasons:

- The ArcSight administrator manually clears the user's Login Enabled checkbox. The administrator can also right-click and choose **Delete User**, then click the **Disable Login** button instead of Delete.
- The user attempted to log in and failed three times.
- The user has been inactive for 90 days.



The 90-day period is set in the `server.properties` file through the `auth.user.account.age` property. This property is not dynamic. If you want to change the default number of days, refer to the topic on "Managing and Changing Properties File Settings" in the Administrator's Guide.

A deactivated user is denied access to ArcSight Console, ArcSight Command Center, and ArcSight Web. On the Console, the icon associated with a deactivated user appears gray and the Login Enabled checkbox is cleared.



When a user's login is enabled or disabled, the audit event, `User updated`, is generated. However, the event does not indicate what type of update has occurred. The Enabled or Disabled information is stored in `DeviceCustomString6` field. One way you can view this information is to add `DeviceCustomString6` as a column to the System Events Last Hour channel.

### To reactivate a user:

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, navigate to the deactivated user.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Edit User**.

3 Click **Login Enabled**.

4 Click **Apply**.

The user icon's color is restored.

## Deleting a User

1 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click the user and choose **Delete User**.



A dialog confirms if you want to delete or disable the user's login (deactive the user). Deleting a user means deleting all resources that user created: the user's rules, lists, cases, and so on. Click **More Information** for a list of these resources. If you need the resources, copy the them to another resource group before deleting the user. If you need more time, disable the login first to prevent unauthorized access.

2 In the dialog box, click **Delete** to delete the user and the listed user's resources or click **Disable Login** to disable the user.

### To grant non-administrators permission to delete users

By default, only administrators have permissions to delete users in a group. If you want to grant non-Administrator users permission to delete users in a particular group, you first need to provide *Write* access to the group by editing access to **User Groups** in the ACL Editor. Providing *Write* access to user Reports is necessary.

1 Read thoroughly the ESM Administrator's Guide's topic on Managing and Changing Properties File Settings. In the `server.properties` file, set the following property:

```
user.allowmodification=true
```

2 Restart the Manager.

3 Log into the ArcSight Console as Administrator, and select the **Users** resource in the Navigator.

4 Create a custom user group for non-administrators who will be allowed to delete users. Add the users to this group.

5 Right-click the user group and choose **Edit Access Control** to display the ACL Editor.

6 On the ACL Editor, click the **Resources** tab.

7 Select **Report** in the Resource drop-down menu, and click **Add** to bring up the Reports Selector dialog.

8 In the Selector dialog, select all users under `Reports/Shared/Personal/` and click **OK**. All users are shown as Resources targets.

9 Click to set **Read (R)** and **Write (W)** permissions as desired. Any user in the group now has Edit access to Report groups showing *Write* access (**W** is check-marked), and therefore can delete users in this group.

10 Click **Apply** or **OK** to save your changes.

With *Write* permissions enabled on Reports for users you want to delete, members of this group can log into the ArcSight Console and delete those users.

For more information about ACLs, see [“Granting or Removing User Group Permissions” on page 607](#).

## Managing User Groups

User groups associate related users or groups of users. When a group is created within a group, the new group inherits the existing group's permissions.

Groups and users can be managed with drag-and-drop functionality. You can move or copy groups and users into other groups from the Users resource tree. If a group is deleted, the users within that group are also deleted, unless they are also contained by other groups.



Note

To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.



Tip

You can grant or block non-administrator user access to deploy or un-deploy data monitors. These permissions are configured at the user group level.

For information on how to set user group permissions to enable or disable data monitors, see [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).

---

## Creating User Groups

- 1 On the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Users**.
- 2 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.  
A name text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 In the name text field, type in a name.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming User Groups

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the "name" text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Editing User Groups

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the **Group Editor**, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Linking User Groups

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it is the original or the copy, all links are

edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting User Groups

- 1 In the **Users** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Setting Startup Views

You can define the set of active channel and dashboard resource groups that members of a given ArcSight user group see by default when they first log in. This includes both ArcSight Console and ArcSight Web users. These channels and dashboards are initial defaults only: once users begin changing the content of the Viewer panel, the ArcSight Console and ArcSight Web follow their normal behavior of remembering the most recent state.

The default active channels and dashboards you select for user groups are listed in the User Group Editor on the Startup Views tab.

- 1 Right-click a user group in the Navigator panel's Users resource tree, and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the User Group Editor, click the **Startup Views** tab, then the **Active Channels** or **Dashboards** tabs.
- 3 In either resource tab, click **Add** to open a resource selector dialog box.
- 4 Navigate to and select the appropriate active channels or dashboards to set as users' start-up resources, and click **OK**. Repeat this step to add more resources.
- 5 Click **Refresh** to update the current list of resources, or click **Remove** to take a selected resource off the list. Click **Edit** to change a selected resource in its own editor.
- 6 Click **Apply** to make changes and leave the editor open, or click **OK** to apply your changes and close the editor.

## Managing Permissions and Resources

The subject of managing users is largely that of managing their access to and use of resources.

### Editing Access Control Lists (ACLs)

The user groups ACL Editor has these tabs for viewing or editing permissions on resources, operations, user groups, events, and sortable field sets:

- Resources tab - Lists all resources available to the user group with either inspect or edit permissions, and lets you add/edit resource permissions.
- Operations tab - Lists operations for which this user group has permissions, and lets you add/edit operations permissions. For example, a user group can have permissions to enable or disable data monitors.
- User Groups tab - Lists the user groups with either inspect or edit access to the user group itself, and lets you add user groups.
- Events tab - Lists event filters for which this group has permissions, and lets you add/edit event filter permissions. This user group is permitted to see only events from the filters listed on the Events tab. By default, custom user groups inherit their ACL

settings for events from the parent group. If the user group has no access to event filters, the behavior is as if the group's specified filter in the ACL editor were *Filters\Shared\All Filters\ArcSight System\Core\No Events*.

- Sortable Field Sets tab - Lists sortable field sets for which this user group has permissions. Lets you add/edit field set permissions.

See also ["Access Control Lists" on page 749](#).



Always remember to have both ArcSight Console, ArcSight Command Center, and ArcSight Web users log out and back in after changing user or resource access permissions, so they can see those changes.

---



The Resource ACL display shows relationships between users and groups, and how permissions are acquired for each of the user groups. Child groups inherit permissions from parent groups.

For example, consider the following scenario.

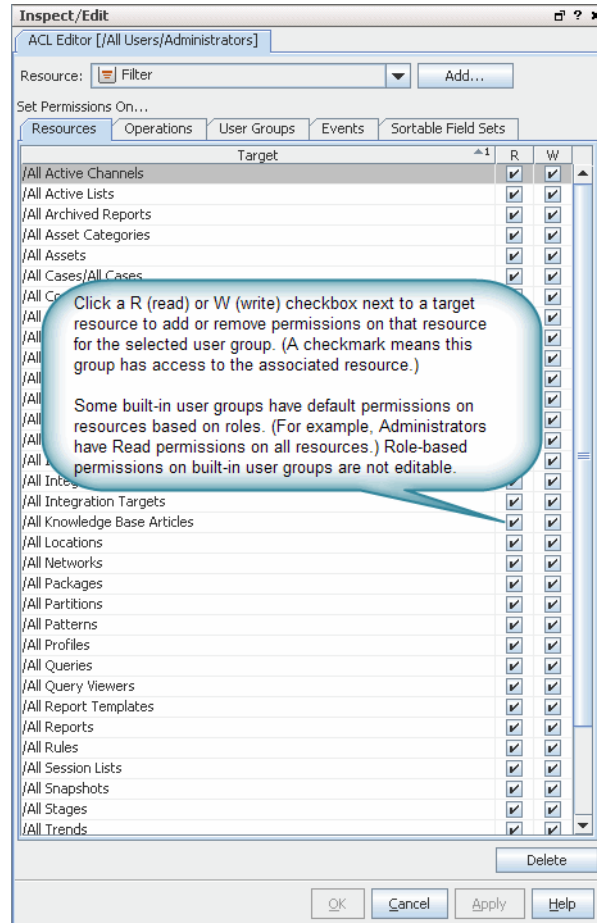
- A user logged in as Administrator (belonging to the group /All Users/Administrators) has read and write permissions by virtue of being in the Administrators group.
  - All users have read permissions because they belong to the group /All Users/Default User Groups by default.
  - A user logged in as an Analyzer Administrator has both read and write permissions because they inherit read permissions from the parent group (/All Users/Default User Groups) and get write permissions per the Analyzer Administrators child group.
- 

## Granting or Removing Resource Permissions

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Users**.
- 2 In the **Users** resource tree, expand it and select a group.
- 3 Right-click the user group and select **Edit Access Control**.
- 4 In the **ACL Editor**, select the **Resources** tab.

The Resources tab lists all resources available to this user group with either inspect (**Read**) or edit (**Write**) permissions, and lets you add/edit resource permissions. Available resources are listed based on *user permissions*, so some might not show.



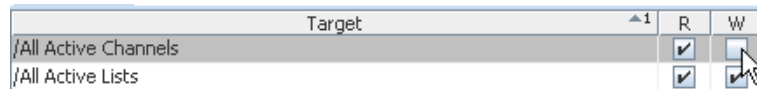


**Be sure to set both permissions on resources and permissions on events appropriately for user groups.** Preventing users from viewing groups of resources (as described here) does not necessarily prevent those same users from viewing event data on those resources.

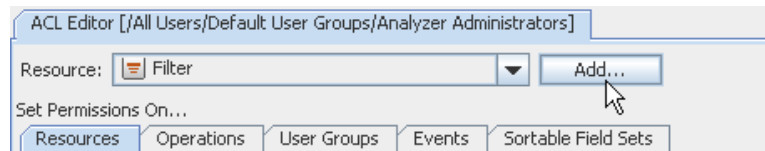
Users with permissions to view certain events (as described in [“Granting or Removing Event Permissions” on page 609](#)), can view *all event fields* for those particular events (in reports, query viewers, etc.) even if they do not have permissions on some *resources* reflected in the event data.

As a best practice, please keep this in mind when granting permissions on events. Otherwise, you might give some users a view into information via event data that you did not intend for them to see. For more information, see [related information on page 610](#) in the Caution note.

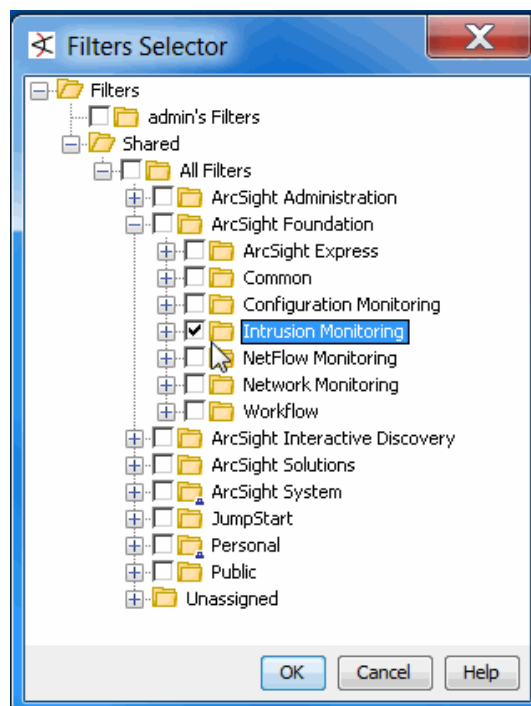
- 5 Add or remove permissions on a resource for this user group as follows.
- ◆ **To edit permissions on a resource *shown* in the current list**, click the **(R)** read or **(W)** write checkbox next to a target resource to add or remove permissions on that resource.
- A checkmark means that this user group has access to the associated resource. A blank checkbox means this group does not have access to the resource.



- ◆ To add permissions for a resource *not shown* in the current list, select a resource from the Resource drop-down menu at the top of the Resources tab and click **Add**.



This brings up the resource selector dialog for the chosen resource. Select the resources you want to add permissions for and click **OK**.



The resource you added is listed as a target on the Resources tab and then you can edit its **Read/Write** permissions as needed.

- ◆ To remove a resource from the list (and **remove all permissions on it** for this group), select the resource in the list and click **Delete**. (The Delete button is at the bottom of the Resources tab).

- 6 Click **OK** on the User Group ACL Editor to save changes to Resources permissions.

## Granting or Removing Operations Permissions

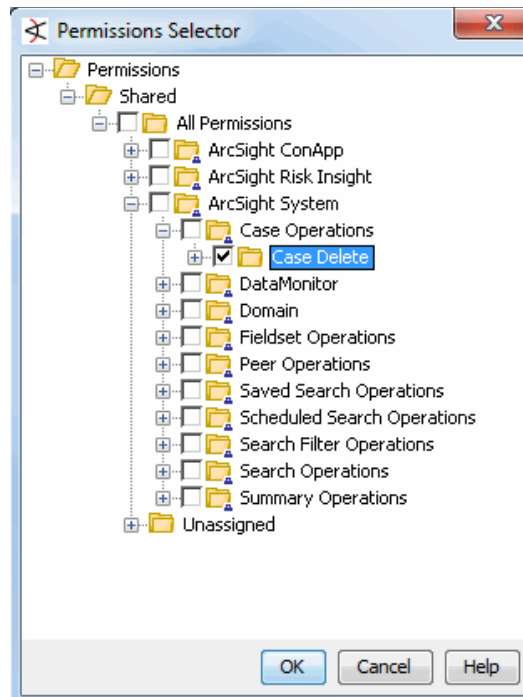
Examples of operations are deleting cases, reading and writing fieldsets, and deploying data monitors, among others. Default user groups available in ESM have their own set of permissions to which they have permission, such as case deletion, and so on. Other operations, such as data monitor deployment, require explicit granting of permissions to user groups. (See also [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612.](#))

Any new groups added under Custom User Group may not have any access to most Administrators can allow or block users for operations permissions by setting permissions on a particular operation.

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Users**.
- 2 In the **Users** resource tree, expand it and select a group.
- 3 Right-click the user group and select **Edit Access Control**.
- 4 In the **ACL Editor**, select the **Operations** tab.

The operations for which this user group has permissions (if any) are listed.

- 5 Add or remove user group permissions to perform an operation as follows.
  - ◆ **To add permissions to perform an operation not listed**, click **Add**.  
Select the operations you want to add permissions for and click **OK**.



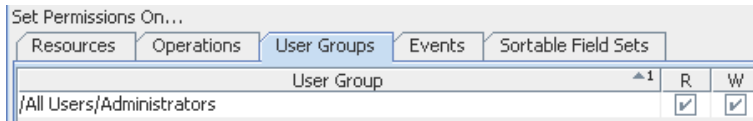
The list of Operations is updated to include the one you added. Operations listed are those this user group has permissions to perform.

- ◆ **To remove permissions to perform an operation**, select the operation in the list and click **Delete**. (The Delete button is at the bottom of the Operations tab).
- 6 Click **OK** on the User Group ACL Editor to save changes to Operations permissions.

## Granting or Removing User Group Permissions

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Users**.
- 2 In the **Users** resource tree, expand it and select a group.
- 3 Right-click the user group and select **Edit Access Control**.
- 4 In the **ACL Editor**, select the **User Groups** tab.

The User Groups tab lists all user groups for which members of the selected group have inspect (**R**ead) or edit (**W**rite) permissions, and lets you add/edit group permissions.

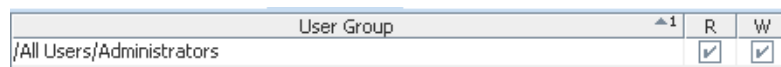


This is where you grant or deny members of the group you are editing permissions to edit their own user groups. Depending on your own user permissions, some user groups may or may not be shown, and Read/Write checkbox options may or may not be editable.

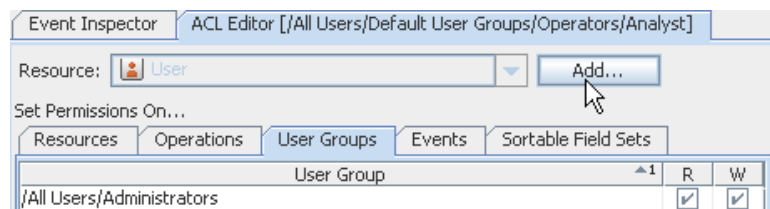
**5** Add or remove permissions on a user group as follows.

- ◆ **To edit permissions on a user group *shown in the current list***, click the (**R**) read or (**W**) write checkbox next to a target resource to add or remove edit permissions on that user group.

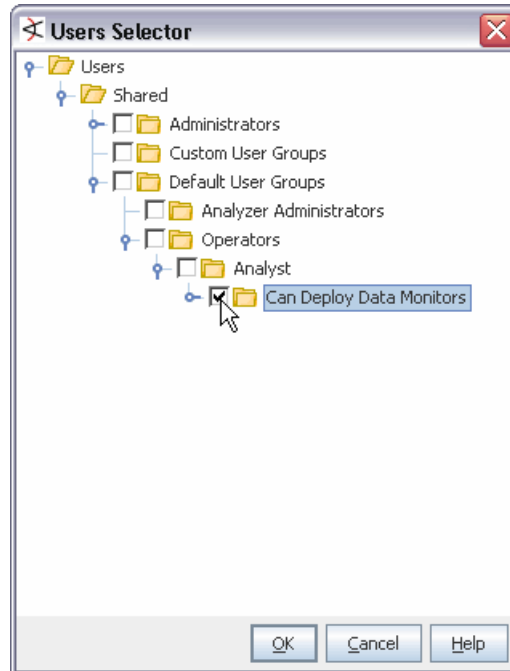
A checkmark means that this user group can edit permissions on the associated group. A blank checkbox means this group does not have edit permissions on it.



- ◆ **To add permissions on a user group *not shown in the current list***, click **Add**.



This brings up the resource selector dialog for the chosen resource. Select the groups you want to add permissions for and click **OK**.



The user group you added is now listed on the User Groups tab and then you can edit its **Read/Write** permissions as needed.

User Group	R	W
/All Users/Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
/All Users/Default User Groups/Operators/Analyst/Can Deploy Data Monitors	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- ◆ To remove a user group from the list (and **remove all edit permissions on it**), select the user group in the list and click **Delete**. (The Delete button is at the bottom of the User Groups tab).
- 6 Click **OK** on the User Group ACL Editor to save changes to User Group permissions.

## Granting or Removing Event Permissions

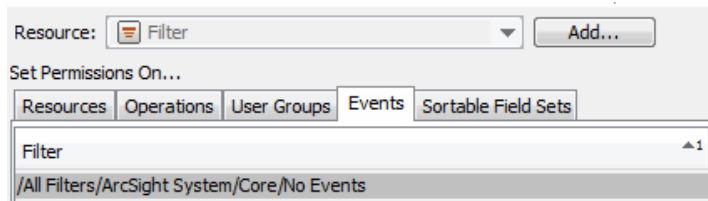
By default, all new groups cannot access any events. If you view the Events tab on the ACL, the filter is shown as

/All Filters/Arcsight System/Core/No Events

After you add filters to this tab, those filters will override `No Events`, which will appear disabled. The filters you add can be ArcSight-provided filters or custom filters, based on individual groups' requirements.

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Users**.
- 2 In the **Users** resource tree, expand it and select a group.
- 3 Right-click the user group and select **Edit Access Control**.
- 4 In the **ACL Editor**, select the **Events** tab.

The default filter is listed on the tab.

**Tip**

User groups are granted permissions to events by means of event *filters* applied to groups. The event filters limit the types of events group members can access through the ArcSight Console.

For example, members of the administrators group can view all events, as indicated by the event filter assigned to the Administrators group by default: /All Filters/ArcSight System/Core/All Events.

For more information about filters, see [Chapter 7, Filtering Events](#), on page 175. For more information about events, see [“Events”](#) on page 914.

**Caution**

**Be sure to set both permissions on resources and permissions on events appropriately for user groups.** Preventing users from viewing groups of resources (as described in [“Granting or Removing Resource Permissions”](#) on page 604) does not necessarily prevent those same users from viewing event data on those resources.

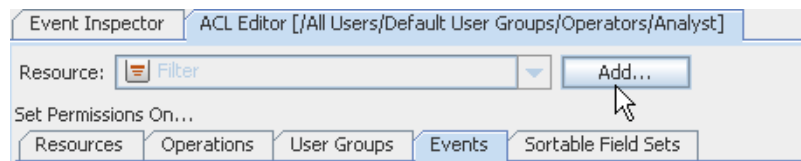
Users with permissions to view certain events (determined by event filters as described here), can view *all event fields* for those particular events (in reports, query viewers, etc.) even if they do not have permissions on some *resources* reflected in the event data.

For example, a user with no read permissions on an asset could still have permissions to view event data related to the asset, and thereby have access to the data contained in the event fields (such as server name, IP address) in the context of that event.

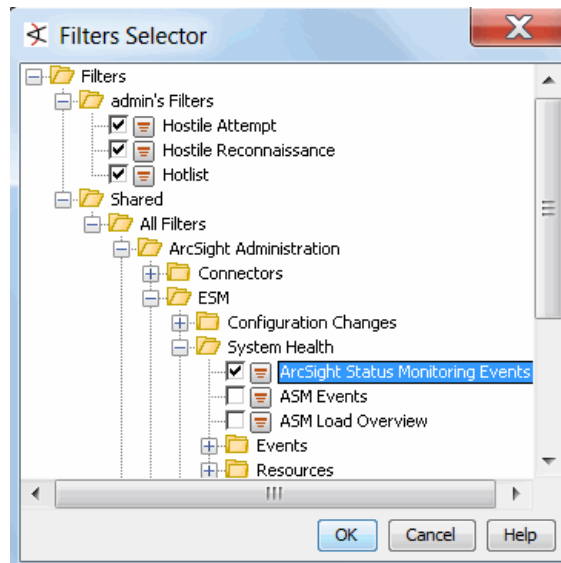
As a best practice, please keep this in mind when granting permissions on events. Otherwise, you might give some users a view into resource information via event data that you did not intend for them to see.

## 5 Add or remove user group permissions to view events as follows.

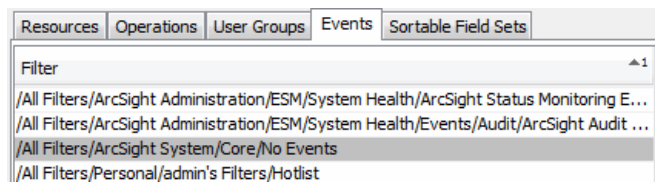
- ◆ **To add permissions to view events** captured by a filter not shown in the current list, click **Add**.



On the Filters Selector dialog, choose the event filters you want to add permissions for and click **OK**.



The list of event filters is updated to include the ones you added. The group has permissions to view the events captured by all filters on the list.



The default /No Events filter is disabled as you add filters to the Events tab.

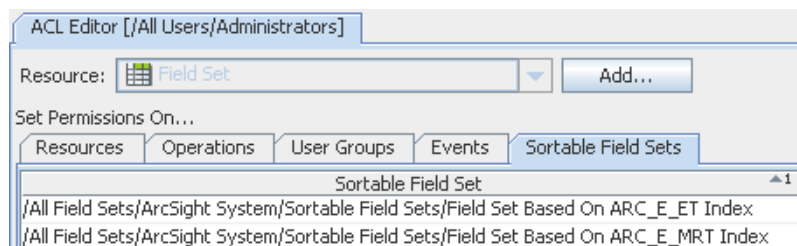
- ◆ **To remove event filters** (permissions to view certain types of events), select a filter in the list and click **Delete**. (The Delete button is at the bottom of the Events tab). You cannot delete the default /No Events filter.

- 6 Click **OK** on the User Group ACL Editor to save changes to Operations permissions.

## Permissions for Sortable Field Sets

ArcSight-provided sortable field sets are used to manage processes that come from all resources. To minimize the impact on performance, you are provided two pre-indexed field sets on which you can sort:

- All Field Sets/ArcSight System/Sortable Field Sets/ Field Set Based on ARC\_E\_ET Index
- All Field Sets/ArcSight System/Sortable Field Sets/ Field Set Based on ARC\_E\_MRT Index



These field sets are indexed for the event's end time (ET) and Manager's receipt time (MRT), respectively. For additional information, see [“Sortable Field Sets” on page 964](#).

## Sharing Resources

You can share your resources with other users by moving, copying, or linking your resource to or into another resource's Public group; for example, to share a filter you would move it into the Public Filters group in the Filters resource tree.

### To share a resource

- 1 In a resource tree, drag a resource and drop it into the Public group (this can be a single resource or a resource group).
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the resource that is not affected when the original resource is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the resource that is linked to the original resource. Therefore, if you edit a linked resource, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked resources, you can either delete the selected resource or all linked resources.

You can also multiple-select resources with the **Shift** key, and drag-and-drop or keyboard copy-and-paste, to move, copy, or link them in another group.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

---

## Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors

Data monitor deployment is controlled through User Access Control Lists (ACLs). Administrators can allow or block users for data monitor deployment permissions.

Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which they belong, users may or may not have options available on their ArcSight Consoles to **Enable** (*deploy*) or disable (*un-deploy*) data monitors. (See also [“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112](#).)

Administrators (all users belonging to the `admin` user group) have permissions to deploy/undeploy data monitors.

Administrators can grant permissions to deploy/disable data monitors for other non-Administrator through the Users resource Access Control Lists (ACLs) editor, as described in [“Granting or Removing Operations Permissions” on page 606](#). As with user permissions for other resources, these are applied at a user group level. As an administrator, you can grant all users in a given group permission to deploy data monitors. Once user groups are set up and appropriate permissions applied to those groups, you can add new users to appropriate groups, and change access permissions for existing users by moving them in or



out of various groups. If you want to allow or disallow a particular user the option to deploy data monitors, move the user in or out of a group that has that permission.



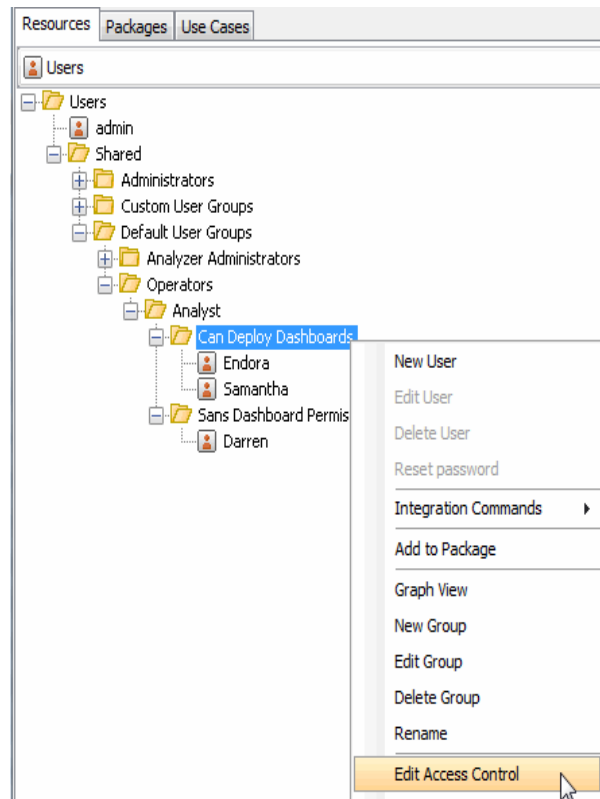
**Write and Deploy permissions.** Data monitor deployment is an all-or-nothing permission (it applies to all data monitors), while read and write permissions are specific to each data monitor. So, in some cases a user could have read-only access to one data monitor and read-write access to another. To deploy a data monitor, a user needs *both* deployment permissions and write permissions. Users with permissions to deploy data monitors can deploy only those data monitors for which they have write permissions. (Fields in the data monitor editor are grayed out for all users without write permission.)

### To configure data monitor deployment permissions:

- 1 If needed, set up one or more user groups for non-admin users to whom you want to control permissions to deploy data monitors. (For example, at the simplest level you might have a group for analysts and operators who are allowed to deploy data monitors and another for those you want to block from this option.)

See [“Managing Users” on page 597](#) and [“Managing User Groups” on page 602](#) for information on adding, deleting, and editing users and user groups.

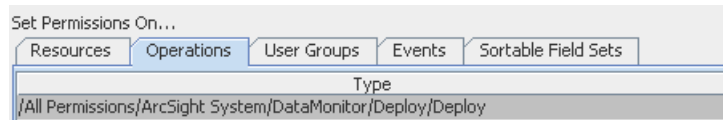
- 2 Follow the instructions provided in [“Granting or Removing Operations Permissions” on page 606](#) to grant or remove permission to deploy data monitors to a particular group. As a part of these instructions, you’ll select the **Users** resource in the navigator, right-click a group and choose **Edit Access Control**.



- 3 In the ACL Editor, click the Operations tab, and click **Add**.

- 4 On the Permissions Selector, select **Deploy** under `Permissions\Shared\All Permissions\ArcSight System\Data Monitor\` and click **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog.

The list of Operations is updated to include deployment permissions on data monitors.



(To remove the permission for this group, select the permission and click **Delete**.)

- 5 Click **OK** on the ACL Editor to save your changes.

For information on deploying or disabling data monitors, see [“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112](#).

For more information on administrator tasks of working with user permissions and ACLs, see [“Managing Permissions and Resources” on page 603](#).

## How Upgrades Affect Data Monitor Deploy Permissions

Upon installation and deployment of a different version of software (for example, version or service pack upgrades), only administrators (`admin` users) keep permissions to deploy/disable data monitors. Non-`admin` users do not have deploy permissions on data monitors even if they had such permissions as part of the previous configuration.

After upgrades, all users have access to already-deployed data monitors. But, initially, non-`admin` users do not have permissions to enable/disable data monitors, nor have access to new data monitors unless an administrator enables (deploys) these.

To re-establish data monitor deployment permissions for non-`admin` users after an upgrade, administrators can reconfigure fine-grained permissions. They can re-group users and perhaps link non-`admin` users into existing or new groups with more permissions (like data monitor deployment), as described in [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).

## Deployment Permissions on Imported Data Monitors


If a user without data monitor deploy permissions imports a data monitor that was archived in the enabled state, the import succeeds but the data monitor is disabled. After the import, the user do not have permissions to deploy the data monitor unless an administrator reconfigures permissions for that user.


If a user with data monitor deploy permissions imports a data monitor that was archived in the enabled state, the import succeeds and the data monitor keeps its enabled (*deployed*) setting. After the import, this user can view the data monitor and re-set its deployment state as needed.

## Managing Notifications

Notifications and their content are created using rules configured with the Send Notification rule action (see [“Rule Actions Reference” on page 422](#)).

### Managing Received Notifications

When the Notifications button in the ArcSight Console toolbar indicates that new notifications have arrived (  ), you click that button to open the Notifications tab in the Viewer panel. This is your central notification repository if you belong to the destination group configured to receive notifications on the Console (the notification group's Destination Type is set to Console).

You can open the Notifications manager at any time by clicking the toolbar button, even if no new notifications are present (  ).

To use the Notifications manager you first choose a category tab for the type of notification received.

Notification Category	Use
Pending	These are notifications that you have not yet handled (reassigned to one of the following categories). Pending notifications older than 24 hours are automatically refiled as Not Acknowledged.
Undelivered	These are notifications that were not delivered.
Acknowledged	These are notifications to which you have replied.
Not Acknowledged	Pending notifications that go unacknowledged or unresolved for more than 24 hours are automatically refiled as Not Acknowledged.
Resolved	These are notifications for which you or a colleague have found a resolution and so have marked the notification accordingly.
Informational	These are notifications that are provided for information purposes only and do not require resolution or intervention. See <a href="#">“Deleting Informational Notifications” on page 616</a> for additional information.



Note

If you don't see notifications appearing, make sure your ArcSight user identity (not just your e-mail address) is set as a destination in the Notifications Editor.

In a category, click **Acknowledge** to mark a selected notification as acknowledged. Click **View Event** to see the event that triggered a notification. Click **Resolve** to reclassify the notification as Resolved.

For each category of notification there is a common set of columns of information concerning them..

Notification Column	Definition
Priority	This is the same priority set by the SmartConnector and modified by the current threat level formula (and seen in grid views), unless modified by the rule that triggered the notification.
Triggering Event	The event that caused the rule to trigger the notification.
Notification Group	The branch of the Notifications resource tree to which this destination belongs.
Escalation Level	The Escalation Level (and implied destinations) the notification has reached while waiting for resolution.
Create Time	The time at which the notification was created



Note

Also note that you can set a severity threshold for notification pop-ups and sounds in ArcSight Console Preferences, and also manage your notifications from an ArcSight Web browser client.

## Deleting Informational Notifications

Informational notifications don't require action, and you can delete them. The Informational tab includes a Delete button.

- 1 On the Console toolbar, click the **Notifications** icon.
- 2 Select the **Informational** tab.
- 3 If you see any informational notification that you no longer require, select it, click **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.

## Managing Notification Groups and Levels

This chapter describes how to handle the tasks required for managing notification groups and levels.

### Creating Notification Groups

- 1 On the Navigator panel drop-down menu, choose the **Notification** resource tree.
- 2 In the Notification panel, right-click **All Destinations** and choose **New Group**.  
A "name" text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 In the "name" text field, type in a name.
- 4 Press **Enter**.



Note

As a user, you can create new groups under **All Destinations**, but not new subgroups under existing system-defined groups.

## Renaming Notification Groups

- 1 In the **Notifications** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the "name" text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

## Editing Notification Groups

- 1 In the **Notifications** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the **Group Editor**, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Deleting Notification Groups

- 1 In the **Notifications** resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Adding Escalation Levels

In the Notifications resource tree, right-click a notification group and choose **Add Escalation Level**.

New escalation levels are added in sequential order. If you want to add a level between two existing levels, add another level then move destinations accordingly. For example, if you have **Level 1** and **Level 2** and you want to add a level between them, add another level, **Level 3**. Then, move all destinations from **Level 2** to the new **Level 3**.

## Deleting Escalation Levels

- 1 In the Notifications resource tree, select the last escalation level in a notification group.



All destinations within this escalation level are also be deleted. If you want to save the destinations, make sure you move them to another level **before** deleting.

- 2 Right-click the escalation level and choose **Delete Escalation Level**.

## Managing Notification Destinations

The task descriptions in this topic explain how to manage notification destinations.

### Creating Destinations

Destinations are mapped to user groups, therefore, make sure the user group exists (["Creating User Groups" on page 602](#)) for the destination you are creating.

- 1 In the Notification resource tree in the Navigator panel, right-click an escalation level (such as **Level 1**) and choose **Add New Destination**.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, enter a label for the notification in the **Name** field.
- 3 Set a **Start Time** and **End Time** during the day within which the notification is to be active. The default is all day (12:00:00 AM to 11:59:59 PM).

- 4 Select a **Destination Type** and the related parameters for that type, as follows:
  - ◆ For **Console**, additionally select a user or a user group. This displays the notification on the users' Consoles.
  - ◆ For **Email Address**, enter a valid email address and additionally select a user or user group.
  - ◆ For **Pager**, ignore this setting. This feature is no longer supported.
  - ◆ For **Cell Phone**, enter the cell phone's email address and additionally select a user or user group.



Always set the ArcSight **User/Group** identity for all destination types.

---

- 5 For **User/Group**, select the group from the resource selector popup.
- 6 Click **OK**.

## Editing Destinations

- 1 In the Notification resources tree, right-click a notification destination and choose **Edit Destination**.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, edit the Value fields for the necessary destination attributes.
- 3 Click **OK**.

For more information, see [“Changing Notification and Acknowledgement Settings” on page 619](#).

## Moving or Copying Destinations

- 1 In the Notification resources tree, find a destination and drag it to a different escalation level. You can drag across groups if needed.
- 2 Right-click the destination and choose **Move** to move it, **Copy** to make a separate copy, or **Link** to create a copy of the destination that is linked to the original destination.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the destination that is not affected when the original destination is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the destination that is linked to the original destination. Therefore, if you edit a linked destination, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked destinations, you can either delete the selected destination or all linked destination copies.

## Deleting Destinations

- 1 In the Notification resource tree, right-click a notification destination and choose **Delete Destination**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Changing Notification and Acknowledgement Settings

Administrators can configure notifications, acknowledgements, and wait-time settings. The escalation time window or wait-time depends on the event's severity.

If notifications and/or acknowledgements were disabled during Manager setup, mail server settings made through the ArcSight Console do not take effect until you re-run the Manager configuration wizard to enable notifications and/or acknowledgements on the Manager side.

To run the Manager configuration wizard: (1) stop the ArcSight Console and Manager, (2) re-run the Manager configuration wizard from the Manager's `/bin` directory (`arcsight managersetup`).

See the Administrator's Guide for more information on running the Manager configuration wizard.

See the Command Center User's Guide for more information on setting up notifications.

## Changing E-mail Settings

- 1 In the Notification resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Settings**, then **Edit E-mail** Settings.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, type in the following text fields:

Notification Fields	Definition
From Address	The e-mail address from where the notification messages are sent. It is important that the "from address" specified is one that is not rejected by the SMTP server, since some SMTP servers reject unknown e-mail addresses. For notifications sent by cell phone, any cell phone must be e-mail enabled.
Outgoing Mail Server	The host name of the local outgoing mail server. This is the SMTP server ArcSight uses to send e-mail. The Outgoing Mail Server must be accessible from the ArcSight Manager for e-mail notifications to be sent. SMTP is used to send e-mail. An SMTP server must be configured either at install time or set here.
Incoming Mail Server	The local incoming mail server host name.
Incoming Mail Protocol	Select either IMAP or POP3 mail protocols.
E-mail Account	The e-mail account name. For notifications sent by e-mail, you need to add an address to the e-mail Address field.



POP3 and IMAP can be used to check for e-mail acknowledgments. You can specify these options at install time, or set them here. For acknowledgements, the relevant fields are "incoming mail server," which is the POP/IMAP server to specify to check e-mail, "incoming mail protocol," which is either POP3 or IMAP, "account" and "password," which are the login name and password to access the mailbox from the incoming mail server. Note that replying to mails from the notification "from address" should reach the mailbox accessible to the "account" login.

- 3 Type the **E-mail Account** password in the Password text field and confirm it in the Confirm **Password** text field.

- 4 Click **OK**.

## Adding New Pager Service Providers

- 1 In the Notification resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Settings, Edit Pager Providers**, then **New Service Provider**.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, type in the following text fields:

Pager Notification Field	Description
Provider Name	The name of the service provider, such as Skytel.
Host	The host name for the service provider's server, such as snpp.skytel.com. SNPP is used to send pages. Sending notification pages requires that you configure the appropriate pager provider host and port information.
Port	The port number for the service provider's server.

- 3 Click **OK**.



For notifications sent by pager, firewalls must be configured so that the pager can connect directly to the paging service provider. ArcSight currently supports any provider that supports SNPP.

## Editing Pager Service Provider Settings

- 1 In the Notification resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Settings, Edit Pager Providers**, then the Provider Name.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, edit the text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Deleting Pager Service Providers

- 1 In the Notification resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Settings, Edit Pager Providers**, then the Provider Name.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, click **Delete**.

## Changing Wait Time Settings

The default wait-time values for Very-High severity and High severity are set at 5 minutes, Medium is set for 30 minutes, and Low is set for 2 hours.

- 1 In the Notification resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Settings**, then **Edit Escalation Wait Time**.
- 2 In the Notification Editor, type in the wait time for the hour (**Hr**) and minute (**Min**) text fields for **Very-High**, **High**, **Medium**, or **Low** severity.
- 3 Click **OK**.



## Testing Notification Groups and Destinations

This topic describes how to test notification groups and destinations.

### Testing Group Notifications

In the Notification resource tree, right-click a populated notification group and choose **Test Group Notification**.

A test notification message is sent to the notification destination. Test notifications are not sent to group notification destinations if the End Time has expired. For example, if you test group notification at 6:00:00 PM and the End Time states 5:00:00 PM, a notification message is not sent to the group.

### Testing Destination Notifications

In the Notification resource tree, right-click a notification destination and choose **Test Destination Notification**.

A test notification message is sent to the notification device. Test notifications are not sent to notification destinations if the End Time has expired. For example, if you test a notification destination at 6:00:00 PM and the End Time states 5:00:00 PM, a notification message is not sent to the device.



# Managing Resources

---

This chapter discusses the administrator tasks necessary to manage ArcSight ESM.

- [“Managing File Resources” on page 623](#)
- [“Locking and Unlocking Resources” on page 627](#)
- [“Selecting Resources” on page 628](#)
- [“Finding Resources” on page 629](#)
- [“Visualizing Resources” on page 632](#)
- [“Viewing Resources in Grids” on page 635](#)
- [“Validating Resources” on page 635](#)
- [“Extending Audit Event Logging” on page 641](#)
- [“Saving Copies of Read-Only Resources” on page 642](#)
- [“Common Resource Attribute Fields” on page 642](#)
- [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#)

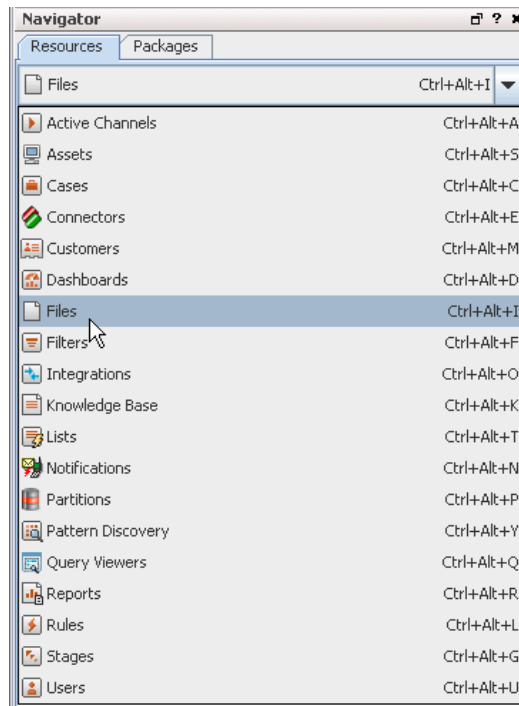
## Managing File Resources

The Files resource tree, when populated, lists various files that have been saved as resources so that they are accessible to all users of the system who are authorized for such access. File resources include case file attachments, templates, and general-purpose shared files.

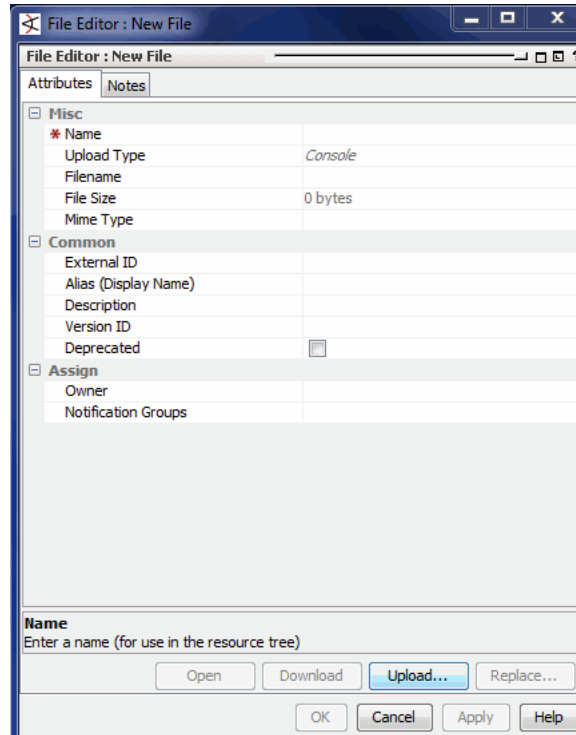
In addition to the tasks detailed below, you can also rename or lock a file, get a Graph View of a file, and so forth. Simply select the file in the Navigator, right-click, and choose a menu option. Operations on groups are also available. Options may vary depending on which file or folder you have selected in the Navigator.

## Uploading Files and Creating a File Resource

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.



- 2 Right-click a file group and choose **New File**.
- 3 On the File Editor's Inspect/Edit panel, click the **Upload** button on the File Editor and select the local file to add.



- 4 On the Upload File Content browser, choose the file to and click **OK**.
- 5 On the File Editor Attributes tab, enter values for the attributes that identify the file.  
The Name attribute is initially the same as the Filename attribute, but you can change the Name.  
Certain attributes are read-only: Upload type is Console, and Filename, File size, and Mime type are set based on the selected file.
- 6 Click **Apply** to update the file and leave the editor open, or **OK** to complete editing and close the editor.

## Viewing Files

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a file and choose **Open**.
- 3 The file is downloaded to a temporary directory (in a sub-directory called `arcsight-files`) and launches in an appropriate viewer, usually a web browser.

You can also open a file resource from the File Editor by clicking the **Open** button.



Note

Case attachments and Manager-generated files are stored in `Files/Shared/All Files/Attachments`.

## Downloading Files Locally

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a file and choose **Download**.

- 3 Specify a location and file name for the new local file.



File resources can be downloaded as often as needed by any console user authorized to access the file resources. Downloading a file does not change the file resource, or the shared file contents on the server.

You can also Download a file resource from the File Editor by clicking the Download button.

## Editing File Resource Attributes

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a file and choose **Edit File**.
- 3 Change the values, as appropriate.
- 4 Click **Apply** to update the file and leave the editor open, or **OK** to complete editing and close the editor.

## Replacing File Resource Contents

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a file and choose **Edit File**.
- 3 Click **Replace** and select the local file containing the new contents for the file resource. The file resource name changes if the selected local file has a different name.
- 4 Click **Apply** to update the file and leave the editor open, or **OK** to complete editing and close the editor.

## Deleting File Resources

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a file and choose **Delete File**.
- 3 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Adding a File or Folder to a Package

From the Files resource Navigator, you can add a file or folder to an existing package or create a new package and add the file to it.

- 1 Choose the **Files** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a file or folder and choose **Add to Package**.  
This brings up the Package Selector dialog.
- 3 In the Package Selector dialog, do one of the following:
  - ◆ Navigate to a package to which you want to add the file or folder, and click **OK**. (The file is saved to the selected package.)

Or

- ◆ Navigate to a location where you want to create a new package and click **New Package**. This brings up the Package Editor where you can name and configure the new package. The selected file or folder is included in the new package.

For more about managing packages, see [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#).

## Finding Files

To find files stored on the Manager, choose **Files** in the Navigator and browse the folders or choose **Edit > Search** from the menus, enter a file name in the **Search query** field, and click **Find**. (See [“Finding Resources” on page 629](#) for more information on this utility.)

## Locking and Unlocking Resources

The locking and unlocking capability applies to the following ArcSight content:

- System core content
- User created content

### System Core Content

A set of predefined content called the System Core content is installed by default. This content provides the foundation building blocks for ESM to work.

System Core content is available in the Core group under the ArcSight System sub-tree of each resource tree. For example, core content for the Filters resource is available in `/All Filters/ArcSight System/Core`.

The modification of System Core content can adversely impact operation, therefore, it is locked by default. ArcSight strongly recommends against unlocking or modifying this content. To unlock this content, contact Customer Support.



Use the resources available in ArcSight Foundation packages or ArcSight Administration to create content to suit your needs.

### User Created Content

ArcSight users can lock any resource or a group of resources to which they have write access privileges. Locking prevents a resource from being modified or deleted. Once locked, such resources or groups can be unlocked only by these users:

- The user who applied the lock; the lock owner.
- Any user who has write permissions to the lock owner. That is, a user who has privileges over the user who applied the lock. For example, the administrator user has write permissions over all users by default. Therefore, if user joe locks a resource, the user administrator can unlock it.



You can make a copy of a locked resource even if you do not have the privileges to unlock it.

You can edit resources in a locked group if you have write access privileges to the resource, however you cannot do the following:

- Delete or remove resources from it.
- Add a new resource to it.

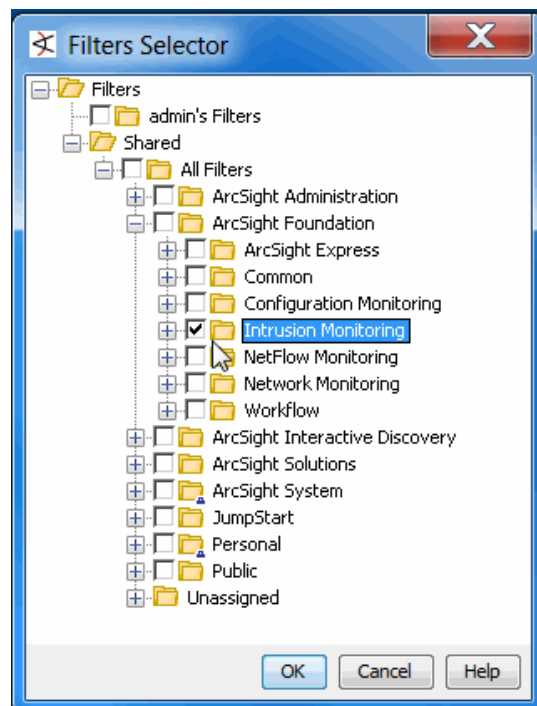
## Unlocking a User-locked Resource

To unlock a resource, right-click the locked resource and select **Unlock** from the drop-down menu. For detailed instructions, see the Console online Help.

## Selecting Resources

You often need to select resources to act on or use while authoring or configuring analysis tools. Selecting is often the first step in managing, authoring, or analyzing resources.

While the Navigator panel is your usual means of selecting resources, you can also encounter the Select Resources dialog box any time selection is a necessary part of some task, such as adding a case group to a rule action or adding user groups to access control lists (ACLs).



For resource groups, click to highlight and select the group you want to choose, then click **OK**. For options that allow multiple selections, select the check boxes next to individual entries in the list under a group, then click **OK**.

This dialog is also displayed for setting user permissions on resources and operations.

For information about setting permissions on resources, see [“Managing Permissions and Resources” on page 603](#).

For information about setting action permissions on who can deploy data monitors, see also [Step 4 on page 614](#) in [“Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors” on page 612](#).





## Finding Resources

Apart from visually navigating the resources in the Navigator panel, you can also find items in busy resource trees by searching or by locating them.

### Searching for System Resources

The search capability uses conventional query elements to search the entire set of system resources, returning a ranked list of qualifying items. Each user sees only those resources for which they have permission, regardless of the query. You can search for a string in All Resources or within a particular resource with both of the following methods.

#### Search Field on Console Tool Bar

In the Search field  on the Console toolbar, type a name or phrase and click the “Find Resource” button (  ). The Search hits are displayed in the Viewer. Single-click an item to display a preview of its definition in the Details pane on the Viewer, or double-click it to open its definition in an Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.

To limit a search to a particular resource type, click the **drop-down menu** tab on the Search field and choose a resource type from the menus. Notice that some resource types have sub-types from which you can choose. If you limit the Search to a resource type, an icon representing the resource type you are searching on is displayed in the Search field (instead of the standard looking glass Search icon).

For example, to search for a name or phrase only in Trends, choose **Reports > Trends** from the Search drop-down, enter the search string, and click the **Find Resource** button.

The Search field in the toolbar accepts all the Query Options described below.

The screenshot shows the ArcSight Console 4.0.0.5190.0 interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, Views, Window, Tools, and System. The left sidebar shows a tree view of resources like Active Channels, Active Channels, and Active Channels. The main window is divided into three panels: Navigator, Viewer, and Inspect/Edit. The Viewer panel shows a search for 'VPN Logins' with 50 results. The Inspect/Edit panel shows details for a selected resource, 'VPN Logins', including a summary and a table of results.

To limit the Search to items of a particular resources, click the Search drop-down button and select a resource type, then enter the Search string and click the Find Resource button.

Note that some resource types have sub-types you can select; e.g., Reports > Trends.

Type the name or phrase associated with the item you are searching for (you can include spaces in the Search string; e.g., VPN Logins) and click the Find Resource button.

Search results are shown in the Viewer panel on a Find Resource tab.

Single-click a found resource to get a Details preview of it.

Double-click the item to open it in an Editor.

As an alternative to using the quick Search field option, you can get a full Search panel in the Viewer:

- 1 Choose **Edit > Find Resource** in the Console's menus, or press **Ctrl+F**.
- 2 In the Viewer panel's Resource Search tab, enter a query string in the **Search query** line, set the number of results to allow, and click **Find**. See ["About Text Search Syntax" on page 630](#).
- 3 When the search returns its results, click any item to see its details or click a result column heading to change the order.

When you click a resource listing in the **Details** panel, it shows you the various pieces of related system information that justified that item's ranking.

## About Text Search Syntax

The search feature uses the Apache Lucene syntax. Lucene's query parser interprets the following as special characters:

+ - && || ! ( ) { } [ ] ^ " ~ \* ? : \

If your query string includes any of these special characters, you escape them with a backward slash (\) for your query to work correctly. For example, if your search string includes (1+1) :2, you write it as

\(1\+1\)\:2

However if your query string *starts* with a special character, enclose the string in double quotes. For example, to search for this Resource ID:

```
^VVsOXg4BABCAIEuBhILMyg==
```

Enter

```
"^VVsOXg4BABCAIEuBhILMyg=="
```

in the query text field. You also use double quotes to enclose a phrase, such as

```
"keep them together"
```

For additional information about the Apache Lucene syntax, go to [http://svn.apache.org/repos/asf/lucene/java/tags/lucene\\_1\\_4\\_2/docs/](http://svn.apache.org/repos/asf/lucene/java/tags/lucene_1_4_2/docs/)

and read the document, `queryparsersyntax.html`.

Pose your queries using these conventions.

**Table 21-1** Apache Lucene Syntax Relevant to Querying for Resources

Query Elements	Descriptions	Examples
Full or partial strings	Phrases, words, or partial words.	"Attack Notification" notification notif
Wildcards	Question marks (?) for single-character substitutions and asterisks (*) for multi-character substitutions.	attack?? (attacker, attacked) notif* (notify, notifier, notification)
Boolean Operators	Use <b>AND</b> and <b>OR</b> to join strings.	attack AND suspicious AND high
Fields	Resource field labels (grid view columns) followed by a colon, with the data expressed as plain strings, Boolean strings, quoted strings, or parenthetical expressions.	type:datamonitor AND name:"event counts" name:"address space" name:(address+space) name:(+address space)
Exclusion	Use NOT, the minus sign (-), and the exclamation point (!) to exclude strings.	at???? - attack at???? NOT attack at???? AND !attack at???? AND !attack AND !type:zone
Proximity	Extend data-field queries' scope with a proximity factor expressed as a numeral following a tilde (~). The numeral sets the maximum number of words allowed between the specified words in the resources found.	name:("top events"~1) (top attack events) name:("top events"~2) (top serious attack events)
Fuzzy	Broaden query results with a relative letter-substitution factor expressed as a decimal fraction following a tilde (~). The values 0.0 to 0.9 apply, with the higher values increasing the substitutions made in the string.	name:mssp~0.2

## Result Columns

Click any column heading to toggle between descending and ascending order.

Column	Description
Score	Ranking of resources a query returns, based how frequently the search term appears in each resource.
Type	Top-level categorization of the resource as shown on the Navigator panel, for example, Active Channel, Asset, Rule, and so on.
Name	The full name of the individual resource.
URI	Full uniform resource identifier for the individual resource.

## Locating Specific Resources

The resource trees in the Navigator panel are handy for finding and using the security assets available in your organization and provided by ArcSight. However, when you are working with a particular resource in an editor or grid view, locating that item's position in a heavily populated resource tree can be inconvenient.

You can use two right-click commands to instantly spot resource entries in the Navigator panel, from applicable grid view resource listings or resource editors.

- 1 In an entry in a resources grid view, or in the top tab of a resource editor, right-click and choose **Find <asset type> in Navigator**.
- 2 Look for the highlighted item in the Navigator panel's resource tree.

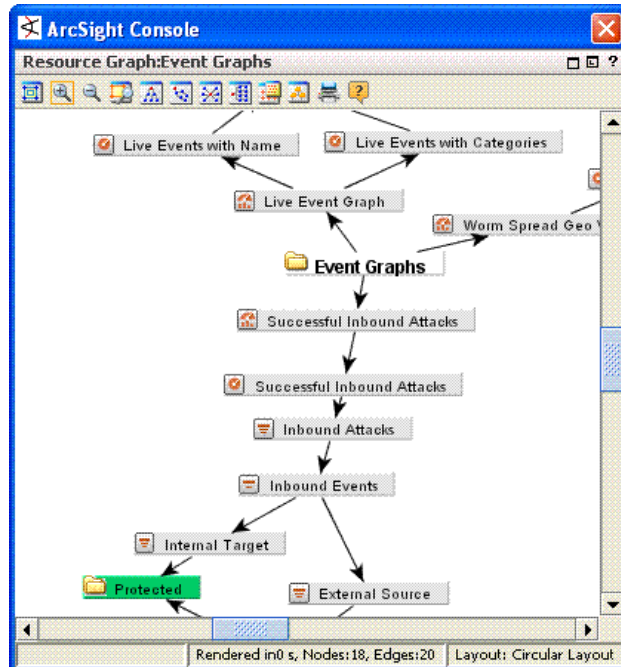
## Visualizing Resources

The resources presented in the Navigator panel or graphically in the Viewer panel are organized into hierarchical groups for easy browsing. Among similar types of resources, there can be logical relationships. Graphs can make these relationships readily visible.

## Graphing Resources

- 1 Choose any resource tree in the Navigator, with the exception of Notifications.
- 2 Select and right-click one or more individual resources or resource groups.
- 3 Choose **Graph View** in the context menu.






The Viewer panel graphs the resources in a new channel.










## Using Graphs

Once generated, you can manipulate graphs further. There is a set of command buttons at the top of the view and a parallel set of commands available by right-clicking the graph itself.

**Table 21-2 Resource Graph Command Buttons**

Command	Button	Description
Inspect		Opens a new event-monitoring channel, using the visualization's current timeframe, event and node filters.
Refresh		Updates the graph.
Fit Content		Sizes the graphic to the available display space.
Zoom In / Zoom Out		Increases or decreases the size of the displayed graphic.
Zoom Selected		Zooms in on a selected portion of a graphic.
Hierarchic Layout		Presents nodes in a vertically descending cascade, similar to a family tree. Hierarchic layouts are appropriate when viewing event relationships that have a common root.
Organic Layout		Displays nodes in an arrangement based on minimum edge length, which tends to cluster nodes that relate to a common node. Likewise, node clusters with nodes in common also tend to group together.

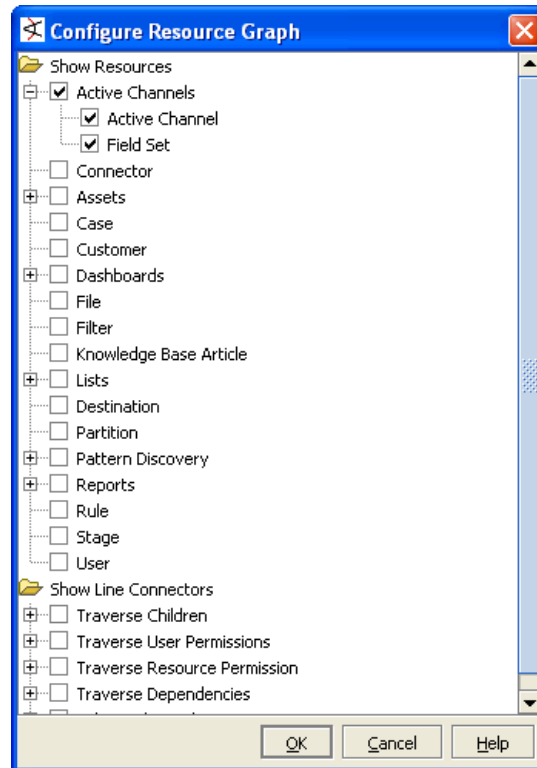
**Table 21-2 Resource Graph Command Buttons (Continued)**

Command	Button	Description
Circular Layout		Positions nodes in hub-and-spoke arrangements with each node radiating edges to, or receiving edges from, the nodes with which it interacts. Circular layouts are most useful when multiple roots are present or there are a number of source-target relationships to clarify. If an organic layout is difficult to read because the edges are too dense, try a circular layout instead.
Orthogonal Layout		Arranges nodes on the basis of logical connections, using electrical schematic-style right-angle layouts. These layouts are very useful for clearly tracing connections and identifying node clusters.
Overview		Opens a reduced rendering of the entire graph. You can drag the highlighted section in the reduction to move the displayed area in the main view.
Hierarchy Tree		Opens a complete list of the nodes plotted in graphic layouts. Click a node in the list to scroll to that node in the main view.
Print		Prints the displayed graphic.
Export to JPEG		Create and save a JPEG-format copy of the current image.
Add Graph View to Case		Adds the current graph view to a case you select. Choosing this option opens the Case Selector dialog, where you can browse cases. Select a case to which to add the current graph view and click <b>OK</b> on the Case Selector dialog. The graph view is added to the selected case as an attachment, accessible on the Attachments tab in the case editor for that case.
Help		Display the relevant ArcSight Console online Help topic.
Snapshot		Creates a new copy of the visualization itself. This graphic is not associated with a dashboard, even when starting from a dashboard viewer.
Snapshot Selection		Opens a new visualization that contains only the selected nodes and their connecting edges.

## Configuring Resource Graphs

- 1 Choose any resource tree in the Navigator, with the exception of Notifications.
- 2 Select and right-click one or more individual resources or resource groups.
- 3 Choose **Graph View** in the context menu.
- 4 Hover cursor or click anywhere in the Viewer panel, and right-click **Configure Resource Graph** option on the context menu.

This brings up the Configure Resource Graph dialog where you can specify which resources to display in graph views.



- 5 Select resources to show or hide. (Click checkboxes to toggle show/hide options on resources. Resources with check marks are configured to show for the selected graph view.)
- 6 Click **OK** to save your changes.

For more information, see [“Selecting Resources”](#) on page 628.

## Viewing Resources in Grids

While the grids you see in the Viewer panel are most often views of events, these grids can also display organized sets of information about resources in the Navigator panel.

In the Navigator panel, certain resource groups include **Grid View** in their right-click context menus. This command causes the items in the group to display in a grid view, where you can review them using the sorting and column customization features that grid views offer. You can also right-click resource items in grid views and use the same context commands that those resources have in the Navigator panel.

## Validating Resources

Resources can break or become invalid because they are improperly built or cannot find other resources they depend on. The following topics describe how to identify valid and

invalid resources, show how to troubleshoot and fix broken resources, list requirements for valid resources, and provide tips for manual and automatic resource validation.





It is possible that dependent resources are pointing to the wrong resource. This usually happens if you rename a resource, then re-use the old name on a new resource of the same type. The dependent resources will be linked to the old name. To avoid this problem, don't re-use an old name on resources of the same type. An example of a dependent relationship is that of a query depending on a trend.

## Valid and Invalid Resources

Valid resources show up in the Navigator with their associated icons as described in ["Navigating" on page 41](#).

A resource can "break" or become "invalid" either because it is constructed improperly (for example, when an active list schema does not match the underlying table) or because another resource it depends on is missing from the database (for example, when a rule references an unavailable filter). The latter can happen when a resource used in other resources is deleted from the Manager, or not retained during an upgrade, import, or export.

Invalid resources show up in the Navigator as broken or torn. For example, the Navigator displays a valid filter like this: , and an invalid filter like this: . An invalid resource also includes an "Invalid Reason" field under on the Attributes tab of its editor, as described in [Common Resource Attribute Fields](#) under ["Invalid Reason" on page 643](#).



A valid resource is fully available to other resources that reference it, and can participate in the event flow, trends, reports, data monitors, channels, filters, rules, and so forth.

An invalid resource cannot participate in the event flow or other resources in real time. For example, an invalid asset cannot participate in event asset resolution. Correlated events in which the source or target address points to the invalid asset are not generated. Similarly, an invalid rule does not trigger and generate correlation events.

## Fixing and Validating Resources

When a resource become becomes invalid, its Editor includes a **Validate** button that you can use to test and validate the resource after you fix it. Clicking the **Validate** button on a resource that was previously broken results in a check of the resource logic and dependencies. If the system determines the resource is now valid, the resource icon in the Navigator is updated to reflect a working resource. If the system determines the resource is still broken, it displays an error message describing the problem.

The general flow of steps to fix and validate a resource are:

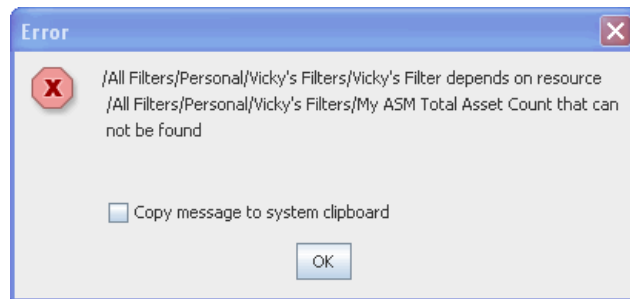
- 1 Identify an invalid resource. Sometimes problems with filters or rules (which are used in many other resources) are a result of broken resources. (A valid resource looks like this: , and an invalid resource looks like this: 

For example, if "My Top Threats" filter depends on "My Hotlist" filter, removing "My Hotlist" filter breaks "MY Top Threats" filter.

A scheduled job (like a scheduled rule group or archived report) can also break if one of the resources it depends on is missing. The broken icon for a scheduled job shows up on the Current Jobs list.



- 2 If you do not already know why a resource is broken, open its editor (double-click the resource in the Navigator panel) and click **Validate** in the resource editor. **Validate** gives you an error message that describes the problem. The error dialog includes a Copy button for copying longer messages to an external editor.



- 3 Fix the problems with the resource. This may involve adding back in missing resources or rebuilding the resource to fit various other requirements as described in Troubleshooting Invalid Resources below.

To continue with our example, adding back in the filter "My Hotlist" would fix the problem we mentioned in [Step 1](#).

- 4 In the resource editor, click **Apply** to save changes to the resources you modified.



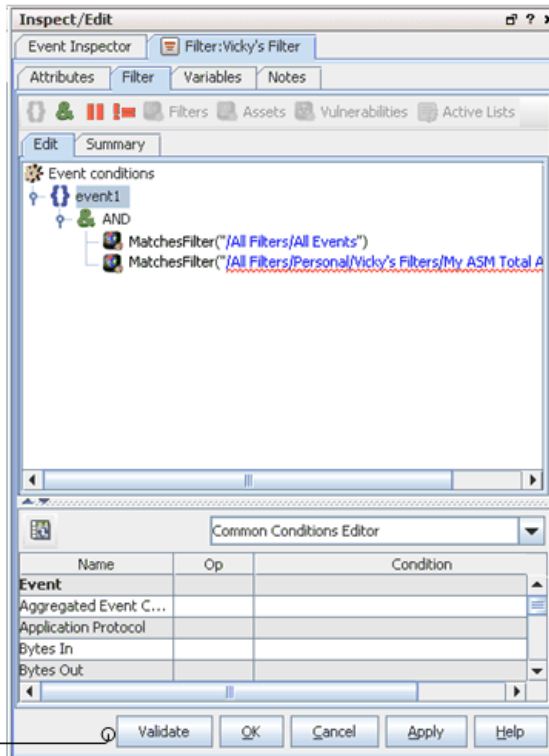
For problems that can be validated on the local client, you can click **Validate** before clicking **Apply** and if the resource is fixed its "working" icon is immediately reflected in the Navigator. However, for other types of problems; you need to **Apply** the changes to the resource before you **Validate** the resource. This is because some types changes must be processed on the Manager to determine dependencies and relationships to other data not available on the local client.

If you think you have fixed a resource but it is still not showing as fixed in the Navigator, make sure you **Apply** all the changes you made to it and then click **Validate** again.

- 5 In the resource editor for the resource that was broken, click **Validate**. If the resource passes validation, its icon in the Navigator updates to reflect a working resource.

In the resource Editor for the resource that was broken, click the **Validate** button. If the resource passes validation, its icon in the Navigator updates to reflect a working resource. Otherwise, the broken icon remains and an error message describes the problems.

Some problems require saving fixes to the Manager, so be sure to click **Apply** and save changes to resources you fix before you click **Validate**.



To validate a scheduled job, click the **Open scheduled jobs list** tool button (🕒) to display scheduled jobs in the Viewer, right-click the job you want to validate, and choose **Validate** from the context menu. If the job passes validation, its icon in the Current Jobs list updates to reflect a valid task.

## Troubleshooting (Requirements for Valid Resources)

The most common cause of an invalid resource is a dependency issue; another resource that the broken resource depends on is missing from the database. Some resources have additional requirements or limits that can also affect validity. Following is a summary of requirements for creating valid resources.

If any of these requirements are not met, the resource breaks. To fix the resource, edit its definition to be in line with these requirements.

- **All Resources** - If the definition for a resource references another resource, the referenced resource must be available in the Manager database. This requirement is true for all types of resources.
- **Devices and Assets** - Each asset address must be unique within a zone, an asset can belong to one zone only, and the asset IP address must fall within the address range of its network zone.
- **Device and Asset Ranges** - Start addresses must be less than end addresses, asset ranges must be within the address range of the associated network zone, and asset ranges should not overlap another asset range in the same zone.

- Zones - Start addresses must be less than end addresses and network zones should not overlap other zones in the same network.
- Reports - Report templates cannot contain more than 20 charts or more than 15 tables.
- Active Lists - Active List schema must match the underlying table and must not include programming errors.

Resources become invalid when they violate one or more of their constraints. The following table lists the resources that can become invalid:

**Table 21-3 Reasons for Invalidated Resources**

This resource becomes invalid...	when it violates one or more of the following constraints...	which results in...
Device/Asset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Asset address must be unique within a zone.</li> <li>• An asset only belongs to one zone.</li> <li>• Asset IP address must fall in the address range of its network zone.</li> </ul>	The invalid device/asset cannot participate in the event asset resolution. Therefore, if an event source/target address points to the invalid device it cannot be resolved.
Device/Asset Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start address must be less than end address.</li> <li>• Asset range must be within the address range of its network zone.</li> <li>• Asset range should not overlap another asset range in the same zone.</li> </ul>	The invalid device/asset range cannot participate in the event asset resolution. Therefore, if an event has its source/target address fall in an invalid device range its asset resolution cannot be resolved.
Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start address must be less than end address.</li> <li>• Network zone should not overlap other zones in the same network.</li> </ul>	The assets falling within this invalid zone get invalidated and cannot participate in the event asset resolution.
Filter	Dependency constraint. For example, a filter may depend on other resources, like asset, active list, vulnerability etc.	The invalid filter causes the resources that depend on it to get invalidated.
Rule	Dependency constraint. For example, a rule may depend on other resources, like filter, asset, vulnerability, active list, session list etc.	The invalid rule cannot be triggered, so the corresponding correlation events are missed.
Data Monitor	Dependency constraint. For example, a data monitor may depend on other resources such as a filter.	The invalid data monitor stops fetching live data to feed the dashboard.
Active Channel	Dependency constraint. For example, an active channel may depend on other resources such as a filter, or asset vulnerability.	You cannot attach or open an invalid active channel
Report	Dependency constraint. For example, a report may depend on other resources, such as filter or asset, vulnerability and active list.	You cannot run the invalid report manually from console or as a scheduled task.

**Table 21-3** Reasons for Invalidated Resources (Continued)

This resource becomes invalid...	when it violates one or more of the following constraints...	which results in...
Trend	Dependency constraint. For example, a trend that depends on a query is invalid as soon as a query is changed.	The invalid trend stops generating any trend data.
Scheduled Task	Dependency constraint. For example, a scheduled task may depend on other resources, such as filter.	The invalid scheduled task cannot run.
Report Template	The report template cannot contain more than 20 charts or more than 15 tables.	The invalid template causes the reports that depend on it to be invalid.
Profile	Dependency constraint. The Profile depends on resources such as the filter it uses to determine which events to run discovery on. It also depends on the group where snapshots and patterns are saved. All these resource must exist and the creator should have appropriate permissions for them.	This resource is invalidated and the scheduled runs may be skipped.
Active List	If the Active List schema does not match the underlying table etc, or due to some programming error.	The resources (Rules, reports etc.) that are dependent on the Active List get invalidated
Focused Report	Dependency constraint. For example, a focused report may depend on other resources, such as a report, filter or asset.	The invalid focused report cannot be run either manually from the Console or as a scheduled task.
Query	Dependency constraint. For example, a query may depend on other resources, such as a filter, asset, or active list.	The invalid query causes the resources that depend on it, such as report and trend, to become invalid.

## Automatic and Manual Validation

You can validate individual resource manually through the Console with the **Validate** button as described above.

Resource validation takes place automatically during an upgrade, package import or export, or when you insert or update a resource. (Administrators can use a stand-alone, command-line utility on the Manager machine for validating resources and generating validation reports on an off-line Manager. This is often useful after an upgrade.)

You can validate resources manually either through the Console (as described in [“Fixing and Validating Resources” on page 636](#)) or by running the following command from the <ARCSIGHT\_HOME>/bin directory on the machine where your ArcSight Manager is installed:

```
arcsight resvalidate -persist [true|false] -excludeTypes <list of
comma-delimited resource types>
```



The `resvalidate` is a standalone utility and runs as a batch process. We recommend that you run it only if need be (when there are many database updates that happen offline) after doing a product upgrade only. This utility should not be run while the Manager is running.

After you run this utility, you can find the `validationReport.html` report in the `<ARCSIGHT_HOME>` directory, which lists all the invalid resources.

## Resource Validation During Upgrade

If the Manager detects a conflict during an upgrade or import process, it invalidates the conflicting resource, and continues with the upgrade or import process. The dependent resources for the conflicting resource is automatically re-validated and disabled after the resource validation process completes.

After an upgrade process, a report called `validationReport.html` is generated in the `<ARCSIGHT_HOME>/upgrade/out/<time-stamp>` directory. After an import process, you can check the Console to make sure that you do not have any invalid resources. You are expected to fix the invalid resources manually. After you resolve the conflict, the dependent resources for the conflicting resource is automatically re-validated.

An invalid resource cannot participate in the event flow, trends, reports, data monitors, or channels in real time. For example, if an asset is marked invalid, it cannot participate in the event asset resolution. As a result, correlated events in which the source or target address points to the invalid asset are not generated. Similarly, when a rule is marked invalid, it does not trigger, therefore, the corresponding correlation events are not generated.

## Extending Audit Event Logging

Updates to existing resources are logged as audit events, as described in “Resources (Configuration Events Common to Most Resources)” under [“Audit Events” on page 775](#).

If you want to get additional details within the “update resource” audit events (beyond what is provided by default), you can enable a resource audit property on the Manager to specify which resources should show extended audit event information.

To configure resources for more detailed update auditing, add a URI to the `resource.audit.update.uris` property in the `server.properties` file (refer to the topic, *Managing and Changing Properties File Settings*, in the ESM Administrator’s Guide for details). For example:

```
resource.audit.update.uris=/All Users/
```

turns on extended audit logging for all resources under the `/All Users/` subtree.

Leaving this property blank would turn this feature off (and show only default audit information).

To show detailed audit information for multiple resource types, list resource URIs separated by commas (no spaces). For example, to show extended update audit logging for users and system assets, set the property like this:

```
resource.audit.update.uris=/All Users/,/All Assets/ArcSight System
Administration/
```

Extended information on the resource update is logged in two places.

- In the internal audit event generated for the resource update, Device Custom String5 is set with the update information. The audit event information is shown in the Device Custom String5 field in this format:

```
<UUID generated for this change>:[<name of attribute>:<old
value>:<new value>]+
```

- The update information is also written to a log file, <ARCSIGHT\_HOME>/logs/default/resource\_update\_audit.log file. The audit event information is shown in the log in this format:

```
<UUID generated for this change>:<URI of resource>:<ID of
resource>:[<name of attribute>:<old value>:<new value>]+
```



- The "+" in the message format examples above is regular expression notation used to indicate that there can be one or more of <name of attribute>:<old value>:<new value> triplets shown in the audit event.
- Any ":" character in any attribute name or value is escaped with a backslash to "\:".
- Any "\" character in any attribute name or value is escaped with a backslash to "\\".

## Saving Copies of Read-Only Resources

Although you may be limited to read-only access to certain resources in the Navigator panel, you do have the option to save a copy of such a resource to your own group where you do have write access.

Click the **Save As** button to make a copy of the resource and save it in a specified group.

In the resource group selector dialog, displayed when you click **Save As** in the editor for a read-only resource:

- 1 Select the group in which you want to save a copy of the resource.
- 2 Specify the name you want to assign to your copy of the resource.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The resource copy appears in the resource tree. You have write permission with this copy of the resource.


The Connectors, Users, and Notification editors do not support **Save As** functionality. In these editors, you see the **OK/Cancel/Apply** buttons, but the fields for those resources are read-only.

## Common Resource Attribute Fields

The following fields are common to several types of resources. You can find these fields in the resource editor Attributes tabs for the resources in Common, Assign, Parent Groups, Creation Information, and Last Update Information sections. (See also, ["Resource Attributes" on page 947](#).)

## Common

Entering data in the **Common** section is optional, depending your environment setup.

Common Fields	Description
Resource ID	Read-only field that shows the ID that the system assigned to this resource when it was created.
External ID	An identification string suitable for, and which can be referenced by, systems outside ESM. Common applications of External IDs include appropriate naming for Case and Asset resources that are tracked in common with defect reporting or vulnerability-management systems. If your system interfaces with a third-party incident tracking system, such as Remedy, enter an ID that corresponds to that system. Your administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.
Alias (Display Name)	<p>An optional alternate identification string used for referencing resources. If given, this alias appears in place of the resource's name everywhere it may be seen. Your administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.</p> <p>If you use an alternate event naming scheme in your environment, enter an alias for this resource here.</p>
Invalid Reason	<p>If a resource is broken or invalid, an "Invalid Reason" field is included in its Attributes table. An abbreviated explanation is shown in this field. (See also, <a href="#">"Validating Resources" on page 635.</a>)</p> <p>Click the browse button  at the end of this field to get a popup dialog that shows the full text of the explanation.</p>
Description	<p>Description of the resource.</p> <p>You can use this field to communicate the purpose of this resource to other users. For example, if this is a resource that leverages or depends on another resource (for example, a query viewer or trend that uses an SQL query), this is a good place to make note of that relationship.</p>
Version ID	The globally unique version ID for this resource. Version IDs are assigned when you export a resource as part of a package, if the resource has changed.
Deprecated	Toggle to indicate whether the resource is current or deprecated (obsolete).

## Assign

Assign Fields	Description
Owner	A user selected from the Users resource tree who should be notified about this resource.
Notification Groups	The user groups selected from the Users resource tree who should be notified about this resource.

## Parent Groups

Parent Group Field	Description
Parent Group	Read-only field that shows the name and path to parent group of this resource.

## Creation Information

Creation Field	Description
Created By	Read-only field that shows the user who created this resource.
Creation Time	Read-only field that shows the date/time when this resource was created or imported and installed.
Time Since Creation	Read-only field that shows the time elapsed since this resource was created. This value is calculated from Creation Time.

## Last Update Information

Last Update Field	Description
Last Updated By	Read-only field that shows the user who last updated the resource.
Last Update Time	Read-only field that shows the date/time when this resource was last updated.
Time Since Last Update	Read-only field that shows time elapsed since last update. This value is calculated from Last Update Time.

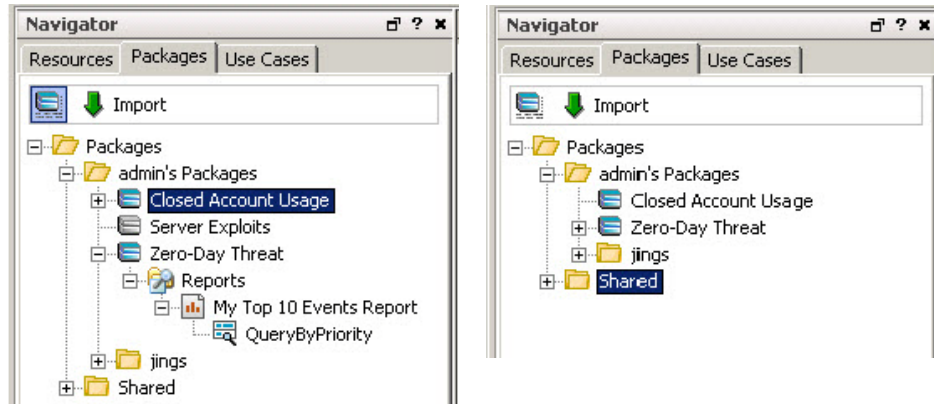
## Managing Packages

Packages are collections of resources that can be installed into the system resource tree.





If you have ESM peers, you can use the Content Management feature of the ArcSight Command Center to synchronize packages by pushing them from an ESM publisher to ESM peers activated as subscribers. Refer to the ArcSight Command Center User's Guide's topics on *Content Management* and *Peers*.





To access available packages, click the **Packages** tab of the Navigator panel. The package tree appears, and you can click to expand installed packages to see the resources within.

When the package button in the upper left is highlighted with a dark background (  ) it displays uninstalled packages: this is the Advanced view. In the Advanced view, it also shows all the resources on which explicitly included resources depend. For example, a report might be explicitly included in a package, but any queries and templates are also implicitly included, unless they are explicitly, directly or indirectly (think groups), excluded.

The icon for uninstalled packages is grayed out (  ). When you click this button, the Normal view does not show uninstalled packages. The Normal view of the package contents only shows resources explicitly included in the package. When you toggle between views, each view remembers which packages were expanded, and restores the tree to that state.

In the Advanced view, you can right-click an uninstalled package and select **Show Package Archive Contents** to show the resources in the package.

In either view you can right-click an installed package and select **Show Current Package Archive Contents** to show the resources in the package.

These options list all resources in the package, including details such as resource name, type, and full path to location in the tree.

## Creating Packages

When you add a group to a package, all the group's contents are automatically included. For top level groups (*<Resources>/All <Resources>*), the package therefore includes all folders that come with ArcSight, which may present a problem if the package is imported in another ArcSight system. If you defined resources directly under the All *<Resources>* node and you want to add these resources to a package, create a group and add the resources there.

It is also important to note that when you delete a package containing a group, you delete members of the group that were added after the package was created. If it is a top-level group (*<Resources>/All <Resources>*), you would be deleting all of those resources.

Packaging sub groups gives you more flexibility and less risk. Also see [“Backing Up and Restoring with Packages” on page 650](#).



### Organizing your package contents

Users typically create packages according to resources such as a package for lists, another package for queries, and so on.

You can also consider creating packages according to use cases. For example, if you have created rules that act on specific lists, you may want to add those resources in the same package.

### To create a package:

- 1 Right-click the **Package** Group in the Packages tree in which you want to put the new Package. Choose **New Package**.
- 2 In the Package Editor that opens in the Inspect/Edit panel, the following attributes appear, as appropriate. That is, some of these attributes may not appear if they do not apply. The only required field is the **Name** field and many field values are supplied by the system:

Package Editor Attribute	Description
Name	Enter a name for the new package.
Required Packages	Specify the packages that must be installed for this package to function.
Optional Packages	Specify packages that are related to this package, but which are not required for it to function.
Required Features	Enter any features that must be available for this package to function. The pick list of features includes Pattern Discovery, for example.
Installed	This is a read-only status indicator. If it is checked, it indicates that the package is installed, which new packages are by default. You can uninstall a package by right-clicking it in the tree after you have created it, and selecting Uninstall Package. The icon for uninstalled packages is grayed out.
Update Available	This is a read-only status indicator. If checked, it indicates that a different version of the package was imported, but has not been installed. The icon for packages in this state has a small white up arrow in the lower left corner (⬆).
Author Name	Enter the name of the author or source for the new package.
Package Version	The package version can be any string, but the recommended format is <i>n.n.n.n</i> , with numbers in decreasing importance (major, minor, release, build).
ArcSight Version	This is a read-only ESM version that is the minimum product version needed to support this package.

Package Editor Attribute	Description
Format	<p>Specifies the format to use for archiving. This affects the resources that are included in the package, the resource attributes that are retained in the package, and how conflicts are handled during package installation.</p> <p><b>Contentsync</b> - Use this if you intend to push the package to Manager subscribers (content management feature). For details on content management and the establishment of peer relationships, refer to the the ArcSight Command Center User's Guide.</p> <p><b>Default</b> - Use this for backing up resources on a Manager. This format includes additional, such as data in active lists, including information specific to a Manager, whereas other options do not.</p> <p><b>Export</b> - Use this for packaging resources for transport between systems. Manager-specific information is excluded from the exported package for resources with attributes that would otherwise retain such information upon a "Default" export.</p> <p>For example, a trend packaged in "Export" format does not include Start End Time trend attributes nor original table IDs. Instead, the imported trend uses Start and End times corresponding to when the package is installed on a new system. Also at install, a new trend table is created. (See descriptions of Imported Trend Start Time and Imported Trend End Time fields under <a href="#">"Trend Attributes" on page 321.</a>)</p> <p>Similarly, active lists and session lists packaged in "export" format do not include Locked By attributes, table IDs, or session/active list entries. New tables are created when the lists are imported, and the other attributes are tracked when these resources launch on the new system.</p> <p>This format packages other resources similarly as a means of optimizing portability for content distribution.</p> <p>Standard system content is packaged using the "Export" format. Also, Managed Security Service Providers (MSSPs) who provide content to installations at various customer sites might package resources in this format.</p> <p><b>Exportuser</b> - Use this format only for exporting user accounts with no permissions, personal group information, or relationships to other resources. If you want to export user accounts that include permissions and groups, use the default format instead.</p> <p><b>Upgrade</b> - For use by HP Professional Services only. This format might be used for resource upgrades of older systems in some circumstances. (Usually, standard upgrade utilities and processes are used instead.)</p>
Obfuscated	Check this box to encrypt the contents of the ARB file, making it impossible to view without importing it.
Exclude Reference IDs	Check this box to remove reference IDs from the package when it is exported. Generally, you would exclude reference IDs only when you plan to import the package into a different system. Leave the box unchecked to include reference IDs, which improve performance for packages that are imported to the same Manager from which they were exported.

Package Editor Attribute	Description
Creation Timestamp	The date and time when this package was last exported (archived).
Required package For	Shows any other packages for which this package has been set as a required package. These other packages are thus "Dependent Packages."
Optional Package For	Shows any other packages for which this package has been set as an optional package.
Archive ID	This system-assigned ID that is refreshed whenever you export the resource.
Available Archive Translations	If the archive defining the package has been rendered into different languages, they are listed here.

Also refer to the common attribute fields described in ["Common Resource Attribute Fields" on page 642](#).

- 3 Click the **Resources** tab in the Package Editor. Click the **Add** drop-down menu to select the resources that this package should contain. You can select groups or individual resources.

Check the **Children Only** box to include resources below the specified resource in the tree. For example, selecting the group /All Session Lists/ArcSight Administration/User and checking **Children Only** would include only the session list resources in that group, not the group itself.

Check the **Only If Referenced** box to conditionally include resources if they are referenced by other resources without the **Only If Referenced** box checked. This is best when used in conjunction with the **Children Only** attribute and the resource being added is a group.

- 4 To exclude resources from the new package by resource type or by specifying actual resources to be removed, use the Removed Resources panel in the lower half of the Resources tab. To exclude resources by type, click the **Excluded Resource Types** tab and select from the list of available types. To exclude specific resources, click the **Removed Resources** tab, click the **Add** drop-down menu, then choose the resources you wish to exclude using the resource picker. (This tab also includes a **Children Only** option, but an **If Not Included** option instead of an **Only if Referenced** option.



The only way to exclude Asset Category resources from a package is to specify the Asset Categories explicitly using the Removed Resources tab.

Caution

## Exporting Packages

Exporting enables you to save a package as a file with the `.arb` extension in the folder of your choice. You can use `.arb` files for backup or to transport them to other systems.

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel and select one or more packages to export.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Export Package to Bundle**. You can export after editing a package by clicking the **Export** button at the bottom of the edit panel.

- 3 Enter a file name and folder for the file. Leave the default extension as `.arb`.


The act of exporting modifies the package version ID, which is not changed merely by modifying the package contents.

The exported package has reference IDs if the **Exclude Reference IDs** box was not checked in the Package Editor.

- Reference IDs are not the same as Resource IDs, which are always exported with the package and remain unchanged during import.
- Reference IDs speed things up when importing a package to the same ESM from which it was exported, but are harmless when importing into a different ESM.

Check the Obfuscated box in the package editor before export if you want the contents of the `.arb` file to be encrypted.

## Importing Packages

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Click the  icon to import a package.
- 3 Choose an `.arb` file to import and click **Open**.

Importing the package copies it into the system where its package resource information is compared to any existing package with the same resource ID.

- ◆ If the version IDs match, the import is aborted because the system assumes the import package is no different than the one in the system. (If you changed the one in the system, you should export it to give it a new version ID.)
  - ◆ If the version IDs do not match, it continues to the next step.
- 4 By unchecking the **Install** box to the right of each package, you can choose to import a package without installing it. The default during import is to install. If you choose not to install an imported package, its resources do not appear. You can always install it later. See [“Installing Packages” on page 651](#) for details.
  - 5 Review the Import dialog for any conflicts. Each conflict displays one or more resolution options. To resolve a conflict, choose the preferred resolution option and click the **OK** button next to the options window. For more about resolving conflicts, see [“Resolving Package Conflicts” on page 654](#).
  - 6 Click **OK** to continue. When the import is done, a Summary Report is displayed describing the packages that were imported.



### Importing packages created by other users

Packages, like other resources, are always displayed under the user folder in which they were created. Upon import, the Summary Report shows the URI or full path into which the package was imported (for example, `Packages Imported: /All Packages/Personal/SomeUser's Packages/VPN Logins Reporting`). The import location is not configurable.

- If you log in with a different user name and import a package, you may or may not have write access to the package (depending on permissions).
- If you import the package with a different user name on a Manager that does not include an account for the package originator, you cannot see the imported package.
- If you recreate an account on the Manager with the same user name as the package originator, the imported package reappears.



### Importing packages from Oracle into CORR-Engine

If you import a package from a system that uses the Oracle database into a system that uses the CORR-Engine, and the package contains trends with daily partitions, they are converted to weekly partitions.

## Backing Up and Restoring with Packages


Although the package resource is the mechanism used to distribute the Foundation Content and Solution CIPs, packages are also designed for transporting resources to other systems, such as development to production systems, and you can also use them as a backup mechanism for resources on running systems.

Resources can be part of more than one package. Therefore there are some behaviors associated with packages that may seem counter-intuitive and bear consideration.

### ID Checking During Import

When a package is imported, there are some automatic ID checks:

- 1 The system looks for any other existing packages in the system with the same resource ID. This is the ID the system gave to the package when you created it. If there are none, it imports the package and the process ends, unless there is a package in the same group with the same name. If there is another package with the same resource ID, it goes to step 2.
- 2 It compares the package version IDs for the importing and existing packages that share the same resource ID. The version ID is the ID the system gave to the package when you exported it. If the package version ID being imported matches the package version ID currently installed on the system, the package import process stops, because the system assumes that this package is already imported. If the version IDs do not match, it goes to step 3.
- 3 It checks each resource within the package to see if its version ID matches an installed resource with the same resource ID or URI (path and resource name). If they match, the matching resource is not imported and the system checks the next resource. If the version IDs do not match, the existing resource is over-written with the one in the package being imported, unless you choose to import it without installing it.

If you import it without installing it, the new resource information is saved in the system as an update and the icon changes to a small white up arrow in the lower left corner (.

### Package Modifications

A package archive is a system data structure that contains the information defining a package and its resources. As you change a package and its resources, this file is not updated until you export the package. This enables the package to support the **Compare Archive with Current Package Contents** feature (from the package's right-click menu). This command allows you to see the packaged contents, for both the package last exported (the archive), and the current contents. The "Change Since Archive" column shows whether a given resource has been deleted, removed or modified.

When you export a package, the package's version ID is regenerated, regardless of whether the package attributes or any of its resources actually changed. This is not the case with the included resources; their individual version IDs only change upon export if the resource itself changed.

When you create a package, there is no version ID until you export it. Whenever you see a package with no version ID, that means there is no exported backup.

## List Data

Active lists and session lists have two different uses as part of a package, and these affect how you would export the lists for backup purposes:

- The other resources in the package use the list to store data. The data is generated and used at run time. If, when you export the package, you do not need to save the data that accumulated in the list from the last run, use the **Export** package format.
- The list contains data that other resources in the package, such as rules, need specifically. If, when you export the package you must save the content of these lists, use the **Default** package format.

If you have a package containing some lists used only as containers and others with specific necessary data, use the Default format. The container lists would import again with data you do not need, but it is better than losing data you *do* need. Alternately, you could put the lists with required data into a second package using the Default format, and make this new package required for the first package, which uses the Export format.

## Backup and Restore Summary


The version ID changes affect the results when importing a package in an effort to restore an existing package to a previous state.

- The system does not import a package backup if the version IDs of the package resource match.
- To make the existing system have a different version ID than the backup, you must export it again (being sure not to overwrite the backup you want to restore).
- If the existing package is bad and you have a good backup, you can always delete the existing package and then import the backup package.
- If you create a package that includes a top-level resource group (All Actors, for example), so you can back up the entire group, export the package often enough that all the recent changes are captured. If you ever delete such a package, it deletes the top-level group and every resource that has been added to the group, regardless of whether those new resources were added to the package. Be careful. Consider using the Children Only option.
- Generated version IDs do not identify which version ID is newer. For packages with the same resource ID, the system can only tell whether their version IDs are the same or different.
- To revert back to the last version imported, you must either delete the existing package or export it to some other location. Doing so sets a new version ID and places the export so as not to overwrite your backup. The backup package can now overwrite the existing package when you import it.
- Changing the name of an .arb file does not change the name, resource ID, or version ID of the package.
- If you currently have a package with version 1.1, and you want to import the backup package with version 1.0, there may be conflicts or other issues. See [“Resolving Package Conflicts” on page 654](#).


## Installing Packages

If you leave the Installed checkbox unchecked when you create a package, it is uninstalled. Uninstalled packages are not shown in the Normal view of the package tree. If you choose

not to install a package when it is imported, and there was no other package with the same resource ID, the uninstalled package is essentially the same as a new uninstalled package.


However, if you imported a package for which there was already one in the system with the same resource ID, but a different version ID, and you chose not to install it, the system has two different data sets for it. The existing package could be installed or uninstalled, but its Update Available attribute is now checked, which is indicated by an icon with a small white up arrow in the lower left corner ().

#### To install packages:

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel. The icon for uninstalled packages is grayed out: .
- 2 Right-click the uninstalled package (shown with a gray icon) that you would like to install and choose **Install Package**.
- 3 Review the dialog for any conflicts. Each conflict displays one or more resolution options. To resolve a conflict, choose the preferred resolution option and click the **OK** button next to the options window.

For more information, see [“Resolving Package Conflicts” on page 654](#).

## Uninstalling Packages

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click the package to be uninstalled. The icon for installed packages is: . Select **Uninstall Package**. (This command is disabled if the package is already uninstalled or if it is locked.)

Uninstalling a package changes its icon to grayed out, but the package remains in the system and can easily be installed again.

The resources that were in the package are removed from the system, even if they are also in another package. However, the details of these deleted resources are retained within the uninstalled package. When you reinstall the package, these resources are restored. Furthermore, they are also restored to whatever other packages they were in when you uninstalled this package.


You cannot add resources to an uninstalled package.



## Deleting Packages



### Caution

- Deleting a package that contains resources that maintain state—active lists with values, session lists, or trends—deletes the state information as well.
- When resources within the package are deleted, they are deleted even if they are contained in another package. Furthermore, if you delete a package that is required in another package (its icon has a red mark in the upper-right corner: ) The dependent package is useless without it, and is also deleted, along with all the resources in that dependent package.
- Before deleting a package, make sure the package excludes system resources, otherwise, these resources are deleted unless they are locked or they belong to a locked group. This can cause some serious problems especially when the system resources are Zones. If any system resources were deleted because the package in which they were included was deleted, re-import the package, edit the package so that system resources are excluded, then delete the package again.

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click the package to be deleted and choose **Delete Package**.
- 3 Confirm that you want to delete the specified package.
- 4 If the package is still installed, you have the option to **Remove Resources in Package** or **Leave Resources**. If you Leave Resources, only the package itself is deleted. The resources that it contained remain in the system resource tree. If you Remove Resources, all resources that the package contained are deleted from the system resource tree.

If the package is uninstalled, its resources have already been removed from the system, but deleting the package means these resources can no longer be restored.

If there is even the slightest chance that you might need a deleted package or any of its resources at some point in the future, export it before deleting it.

If you want to delete a package but not necessarily all the resources within it, remove the resources you want to save before you delete the package.

See [“Backing Up and Restoring with Packages” on page 650](#).

## Editing Packages

When editing packages, you should consider whether you need to export it before you change it so you have a backup, and possibly export it when you are done, to update or create a new backup.

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click the package to be edited and choose **Edit Package**. The Package Editor opens in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 3 Change the package name or other properties on the Attributes tab. For more information on package fields, see [“Creating Packages” on page 645](#).
- 4 Click the **Resources** tab to add or remove resources from the package.

## Adding Resources to Packages

You can add to a resource to an existing package by using the right-click menu on a selected resource in the Navigator tree.

- 1 Click the **Resources** tab in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Choose the resource type you want to add (for example, Reports).
- 3 Navigate to and right-click the particular resource you want to add (for example, My Report), and choose **Add to Package**. The system displays the Package Selector dialog.
- 4 Select a package to which to add the selected resource and click **OK**.

## Removing Resources from Packages

- 1 Click the **Packages** tab in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click the package to be edited and choose **Edit Package**. The Package Editor opens in the Inspect/Edit panel.
- 3 Click the **Resources** tab in the Package Editor.
- 4 In the upper half of the Resources tab, select the resource you want to remove. (A gray highlight on the entire row indicates the resource is selected.)
- 5 Click **Remove**.

## Resolving Package Conflicts

Package conflicts can occur during install, uninstall, delete, or import of packages. Most package conflicts are resolved internally by the ArcSight Manager without the need for user intervention. However, some package conflicts prompt the administrator for an appropriate action from a list of options. This section describes two of these scenarios as examples.

If the ArcSight Manager detects package conflicts for a pending package **uninstall**, the Console provides choices for resolving the conflict and proceeding, or aborting the uninstall operation. The options provided depend on the type of conflict detected.

For example, if you attempt to uninstall a package that changed since it was installed, the conflict is indicated and you are asked to choose from the following Uninstall Resolution Options.

Option	Description
Create a new archive for package	Creates a new archive for the modified package (and retains the original).
Create new archive for remaining changed packages	Creates new archives for all changed packages before uninstall (retains all originals).
Continue without saving changes	Uninstalls this package without saving changes.
Uninstalls this and remaining packages without saving changes	Uninstalls all selected packages without saving changes.
Abort	Abandons the uninstall process and keeps the packages as is.

If the ArcSight Manager detects package conflicts for a pending package import or install, the Console provides choices for resolving the conflict and proceeding, or aborting the import operation. The options provided depend on the type of conflict detected.

For example, if you attempt to import a package with content that is older than the currently imported package, the conflict is indicated and you are asked to choose from the following Import Resolution Options:

Option	Description
Leave newer packages	Leaves the newer packages installed.
Never override newer packages	Completes the import but imports only packages that are newer than those currently installed.
Update packages	Imports the selected packages, and prompts for package conflict resolutions on a per-package basis.
Always update packages	Imports the selected packages, and overwrites newer packages if they exist.
Abort	Abandons the uninstall process and keeps the packages as is.

See the Administrator's Guide for more information on working with the archive command and other utilities.



# Managing SmartConnectors

---

You can configure ArcSight SmartConnectors to optimize their performance and increase their functionality. You can configure SmartConnectors to enable aggregation, batching, and time filter correction functionality. You can also send control commands from the ArcSight Console or the ArcSight Command Center to SmartConnectors to manage the flow of events.

[“Selecting and Setting SmartConnector Parameters” on page 657](#)

[“Managing SmartConnector Filter Conditions” on page 675](#)

[“Setting Special Severity Levels” on page 676](#)

[“Sending Model Mappings to SmartConnectors” on page 678](#)

[“Sending Control Commands to SmartConnectors” on page 678](#)

[“Managing SmartConnector Groups” on page 685](#)

[“Managing SmartConnector Resources” on page 686](#)

[“Importing and Exporting SmartConnector Configurations” on page 687](#)

[“Using Additional Data Fields” on page 689](#)

[“Upgrading SmartConnectors” on page 689](#)

## Selecting and Setting SmartConnector Parameters

From the ArcSight Console, use the Connector Editor to control SmartConnectors.

### Configuring the SmartConnector

A SmartConnector can have a default and a number of alternate configurations.

An alternate configuration is a set of runtime parameters that is used instead of the default configuration during a specified portion of every day. For example, you might want to specify different batching schemes (by severity or size) for different times of a day. You can define more than one alternate configuration per destination and apply them to the destination for different time ranges during the day. For example, you can define a configuration for 8 am to 5 p.m. time range and another configuration for the 5 pm to 8 am time range.

#### To define default configurations:

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector you want to manage and choose **Configure**.

This opens the **Inspect/Edit** panel for the **Connector Editor**. On the Connector tab, the Name field is automatically populated with the name assigned during SmartConnector Installation.

- 3 On the **Connector** tab, type the **Connector Location** and the **Device Location**. All events are tagged with these fields by the SmartConnector. Creation date and other information are automatically populated.
- 4 On the **Default** tab, change any additional Batching, Time Correction or other parameters as desired, using the configuration fields explanations provided in [“Default Content Tab Configuration Fields” on page 660](#).
- 5 Click **Apply** to add your changes and to keep the Connector Editor open.

The description entry associated with the setting provides tool tip information. These parameters are not localized since they come directly from the connector and the connector may contain new resources (since it may be a newer version).

The framework for connector commands operates in a similar way. Configuration of the connector command menu is achieved by sending the list of commands that are supported on the connector at registration time.

#### To create alternate configurations:

- 1 Open the Inspect/Edit panel of the SmartConnector.
- 2 On the **Default** tab, click **Add Alternate**.  
  
A new tab, Alternate #1, is added to the edit panel. The alternate tab provides fields for entering a time interval.
- 3 Under **Time Interval**, enter times for **From** and **To**. Make additional changes as required, then click **Apply**.
- 4 Repeat the process if you want additional alternates using different time intervals and different parameters. For example, create alternates if you want varying batching schemes based on severity or size on certain times of the day.

If the time ranges of the combined alternate configurations do not span 24 hours, the default parameters will be used to cover the time intervals not already defined in the alternates.

## Connector Editor Option Tabs

There are several controls you can adjust in the Connector Editor. The variety of options are best summarized by briefly describing what's available at each of the editor's tabs or subtabs.

The Connector Editor Option Tabs are listed in the following table:

Tabs on the Connector Editor	Description
Connector Tab Configuration Fields	Basic identification, ownership, and date/time parameters.
Networks	The ArcSight networks to which the connector is or can be assigned to.
Default Content Tab Configuration Fields	Includes options for report batching, aggregation, and time corrections.

Tabs on the Connector Editor	Description
Default: Filters	A filter condition editor for constraining what the connector reports. (See <a href="#">“Managing SmartConnector Filter Conditions”</a> on page 675 and <a href="#">“Common Conditions Editor (CCE)”</a> on page 818 for details on how to define filters for connectors.)
Alternate: Content	A set of options identical to those under Default, which you can use to create alternate configurations. Appears only after you add an Alternate tab.
Alternate: Filters	A filter condition editor for constraining what the connector reports, in an alternate configuration.
Notes: Table	A text editor for, and tabular list of, configuration notes.
Notes: List	A text editor for, and text presentation of, configuration notes.

## Connector Tab Configuration Fields

You do basic configuration through the Connector and Default: Content tabs. Many of these fields correspond to resource editor fields. See also [“Common Resource Attribute Fields”](#) on page 642.

Fields on the Connector Tab	
Field Name	Description
Name	The Name text field is automatically populated with the name assigned during SmartConnector installation.
ID	The identification string assigned during SmartConnector installation.
Status	The SmartConnector's current mode of operation.
Connector Location	A description of the (usually) physical location of the SmartConnector. This appears in all the events issued from the connector.
Device Location	A description of the (usually) physical location of the device the SmartConnector is monitoring. This appears in all the events issued from the connector.
Version	The connector's software version number.

**Fields on the Connector Tab (Continued)**

Field Name	Description
External ID	An identification string suitable for, and which can be referenced by, systems outside ESM. Common applications of External IDs include appropriate naming for Case and Asset resources that are tracked in common with defect reporting or vulnerability-management systems. If your system interfaces with a third-party incident tracking system, such as Remedy, enter an ID that corresponds to that system. Your administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.
Alias	An optional alternate identification string used for referencing resources. If given, this alias appears in place of the resource's name everywhere it may be seen. Your administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.
Description	A text description of the configuration or other related information.
Owner	A user selected from the Users resource tree who should be notified about this connector.
Notification Groups	The user groups selected from the Users resource tree who should be notified about this connector.
Created By	A user identity provided at SmartConnector installation.
Creation Time	The time of SmartConnector installation.
Time Since Creation	A value calculated from Creation Time.
Last Updated By	The user who made the last configuration change.
Last Update Time	The time of the last configuration change.
Time Since Last Update	A value calculated from Last Update Time.

**Default Content Tab Configuration Fields**

SmartConnector configuration options available may vary depending on which version of SmartConnectors you are using. SmartConnector configuration options come directly from the connector, and newer versions of connectors might contain new or different resources than previous versions.

The following table shows the Default Content Tab Configuration Fields.



---

**Fields on the Default Tab**

Name Field	Value Field
<b>Batching</b>	SmartConnectors can batch events to increase performance and optimize network bandwidth. When activated, SmartConnectors create blocks of events and send them when they either (1) reach a certain size or (2) the time window expires. You can also prioritize batches by severity, forcing the SmartConnector to send the highest-severity event batches first and the lowest-severity event batches later.
Enable Batching (per event)	Create batches of events of this specified size (5, 10, 20, 50, 100 events).
Enable Batching (in seconds)	The SmartConnector sends the events if this time window expires (1, 5, 10, 15, 30, 60).
Batch By	This is <b>Time Based</b> if the SmartConnector should send batches as they arrive (the default) or <b>Severity Based</b> if the SmartConnector should send batches based on severity (batches of Highest Severity events sent first).
<b>Time Correction</b>	The values you set for these fields establish forward and backward time limits, that if exceeded, cause the SmartConnector to automatically correct the time reported by the device.
Use Connector Time as Device Time	<b>(No   Yes)</b> Override the time the device reports and instead use the time at which the connector received the event. This option assumes that the connector is more likely to report the correct time. The default is <b>No</b> .
Enable Device Time Correction (in seconds)	The SmartConnector can adjust the time reported by the device <code>Detect Time</code> , using this setting. This is useful when a remote device's clock isn't synchronized with the ArcSight Manager. This should be a temporary setting. The recommended way to synchronize clocks between Manager and devices is the NTP protocol.
Enable Connector Time Correction (in seconds)	The SmartConnector can also adjust the time reported by the Connector Time SmartConnector itself, using this setting. This is for informational purposes only and allows you to modify the local time on the SmartConnector. This should be a temporary setting. The recommended way to synchronize clocks between Manager and SmartConnectors is the NTP protocol.

---

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Set Device Time Zone To	( <b>Disabled</b>   <TimeZone>)(Default is <b>Disabled</b> ) Ordinarily, it is presumed that the original device is reporting its time zone along with its time. And if not, it is then presumed that the SmartConnector is doing so. If this is not true, or the device isn't reporting correctly, you can switch this option from Disabled to GMT or to a particular world time zone. That zone is then applied to the time reported.
<b>Device Time Auto-correction</b>	
Future Threshold	The connector sends the internal alert if the detect time is greater than the connector time by <code>Past Threshold</code> seconds.
Past Threshold	The connector sends the internal alert if the detect time is earlier than the connector time by <code>Past Threshold</code> seconds.
Device List	A comma-separated list of the devices to which the thresholds apply. The default, (ALL) means all devices.
<b>Time Checking</b>	These are the time span and frequency factors for doing device-time auto-correction.
Future Threshold	The number of seconds by which to extend the connector's forward threshold for time checking.
Past Threshold	The number of seconds by which to extend the connector's rear threshold for time checking. Default is 1 hour (3,600 seconds).
Frequency	The SmartConnector checks its future and past thresholds at intervals specified by this number of seconds. Default is 1 minute (60 seconds).
<b>Cache</b>	Changing these settings does not affect the events cached, it only affects new events sent to the cache.
Cache Size	SmartConnectors use a compressed disk cache to hold large volumes of events when the ArcSight Manager is down or when the SmartConnector receives bursts of events. This parameter specifies the disk space to use. The default is <b>1 GB</b> which, depending on the connector, can hold about 15 million events, but it also can go down to <b>5 MB</b> . When this disk space is full, the SmartConnector drops the oldest events to free up disk cache space. (5 MB, 50 MB, 100 MB, 200 MB, 250 MB, 500 MB, 1 GB, 2.5 GB, 5 GB, 10 GB, 50 GB.)
Notification Threshold	The size of the cache's contents at which to trigger a notification. Default is 10,000.
Notification Frequency	How often to send notifications once the Notification Threshold is reached. (1 min, 5 min, 10 min, 30 min, 60 min.)

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Payload Cache	If the represented SmartConnector supports it, setting this to <b>True</b> causes the connector to automatically create and populate a cache for device payload data. The payload data is retrieved from the original device or retained from the received event data, depending on how it operates. The default setting is <b>False</b> . Consult a SmartConnector's Configuration Guide to find out whether it supports this capability. Changes to this setting take effect after you restart the SmartConnector.
Payload Cache Size	If <b>Payload Cache</b> is <b>True</b> , these choices determine the maximum size of the cache. The cache operates on a last-in-first-out (LIFO) basis.
<b>Network</b>	
Heartbeat Frequency	This setting controls how often the connector sends a heartbeat message to the ArcSight Manager. The default is <b>10 seconds</b> , but it can go from <b>5 seconds</b> to <b>10 minutes</b> . Note that the heartbeat is also used to communicate with the SmartConnector; therefore, if its frequency is set to <b>10 minutes</b> , then it could take as much as 10 minutes to send any configuration information or commands back to the SmartConnector.
Enable Name Resolution	<b>(Enabled   Disabled)</b> The SmartConnector tries to resolve IP addresses to host names, and host names to IP addresses, if the event rate allows it and if required. This setting controls this functionality. The Source, Target and Device IP addresses and Hostnames may also be affected by this setting. (The default is <b>Enabled</b> .)
Name Resolution TTL (secs)	This is the amount of time (Time to Live) the name resolution is to be in effect. The name resolution entries are cached for this time (default is <b>3600</b> ).
Wait For Name Resolution	<b>(Yes   No)</b> If set to Yes, the SmartConnector waits for name resolution to be completed (default is <b>No</b> ).
Name Resolution Host Name Only	<b>(Yes   No)</b> If set to Yes, for reverse resolution (IP Address to Host name), only the host name field is set. If set to No, the host name is split up and put into both the DNS domain and the host name fields. This affects the source, destination, device and SmartConnector name fields (default is <b>Yes</b> ).
Name Resolution Domain from Email	<b>(Yes   No)</b> If set to Yes, the host name and DNS domain fields are empty, and the corresponding user name field appears as an e-mail address, then the domain from the e-mail address is put in the DNS domain field. This only affects the source and destination fields (default is <b>Yes</b> ).

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Clear Host Names Same as IP Address	( <b>Yes</b>   No) If set to Yes and the host name field is set to an IP Address that matches the corresponding IP Address field, then the host name field is cleared. This affects the source, destination, and device fields (default is <b>Yes</b> ).
Set Host Names to IP Addresses When Unknown	(Yes   <b>No</b> ) If set to Yes, host names that remain unresolved are set to IP addresses (default is <b>No</b> ).
Don't Resolve Host Names Matching	<p>By default, host names are resolved to their IP addresses. You have the option to specify a regular expression for all or part of a host name <i>for which you do not want the system to attempt host name resolution to an IP address</i>.</p> <p>When this option is configured, the system cannot resolve host names matching this expression.</p>
Don't Reverse-Resolve IP Ranges	<p>By default, IP addresses are resolved to their domain names. You have the option to specify IP address ranges <i>for which you do not want the system to attempt reverse-resolution to domain names</i>.</p> <p>Click in the field to the enter IP address range. To enter a single IP address, enter the address under the From column and leave the To column blank, then click <b>Apply</b>. For an address range, enter the starting IP address under From and the ending address under To, then click <b>Apply</b>. This field allows you to enter a list of ranges.</p> <p>When this option is configured, the system cannot reverse-resolve IP addresses that fall within any of the specified ranges.</p>
Remove Unresolvable Names/IPs from Cache	(Yes   <b>No</b> ) If set to Yes, unresolvable host names or IP addresses continue to be in the cache (default is <b>No</b> ).
Limit Bandwidth To	A list of bandwidth options you can use to constrain the connector's output over the network. ( <b>Disabled</b> , 1 kbit/sec to 10 Mbits/sec.)
Transport Mode	<p>You can configure the SmartConnector to cache to disk all the processed events it receives. This is equivalent to pausing the SmartConnector. However, you can use this setting to delay event-sending during particular time periods. For example, you could use this setting to cache events during the day and send them at night. You can also set the connector to cache all events, except for those marked with a very-high severity, during business hours, and send the rest at night. (<b>Normal</b>   Cache   Cache but send Very High severity events).</p>

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Cache Mode	<b>(Normal   Drop if Dest Down)</b> This option is meant to be used on a primary destination to control the caching behavior of the primary destination when it is down, and the connector starts sending events to the failover destination. In the Normal mode, events are cached and sent to the primary destination when it comes back up. In the Drop if Dest Down mode, the events are not cached and dropped and therefore not sent to the primary destination when it becomes available again (default is <b>Normal</b> ).
Zone Population Mode	<b>(Normal   Rezone (override)   No Zoning (clear))</b> Setting to Normal means zones are computed and assigned, if not already set. Rezone (override) re-computes and re-assigns already populated zones. No Zoning (clear) clears the zones, if already populated. (default is <b>Normal</b> ).
Customer URI	Applies the given customer URI to events emanating from the connector. Provided the customer resource exists, all customer fields are populated on the ArcSight Manager. If this particular connector is reporting data that might apply to more than one customer, you can use Velocity templates in this field to conditionally identify those customers.
Source Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the SmartConnector's source address. How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.
Source Translated Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the SmartConnector's translated source address. The translation is presumed to be NAT (network address translation). How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.
Destination Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the SmartConnector's destination address. How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.

---

**Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)**

<b>Name Field</b>	<b>Value Field</b>
Destination Translated Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the SmartConnector's translated destination address. The translation is presumed to be NAT (network address translation). How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.
Connector Translated Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the SmartConnector's translated address. The translation is presumed to be NAT (network address translation). How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.
Device Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the device's address. How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.
Device Translated Zone URI	When populated, this field shows the URI of the zone associated with the device's translated address. The translation is presumed to be NAT (network address translation). How this field gets populated is discussed in the Zones section of the SmartConnectors topic. This field is present for ESM v3.0 compatibility. It is not relevant in post ESM 3.0 releases because of integral zone mapping.

---

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Field Based Aggregation	<p>This feature is an extension of basic connector aggregation. Basic aggregation aggregates two events if, and only if, the fields of the two events are the same per the fields listed in the description of <a href="#">"Enable Aggregation (in secs)"</a> on page 670. However, field-based aggregation implements a more flexible aggregation mechanism; two events are aggregated if only the <i>selected</i> fields are the same for both events. (<b>Note:</b> Field-based aggregation creates a new alert that contains only the fields that were specified, so the rest of the fields are ignored, unless "Preserve Common Fields" is set to "Yes".)</p> <p>Field-based aggregation offers several advantages over basic aggregation, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Control over what fields to aggregate on</li> <li>• Start and end time set to the earliest start time and latest end time, respectively (instead of taking the values from the first event in the group, like basic aggregation)</li> <li>• Option to preserve common fields</li> <li>• Option to sum one or more numeric fields</li> </ul> <p>SmartConnector aggregation significantly reduces the amount of data received, and should be applied only when you use less than the total amount of information the event offers. For example, you could enable field-based aggregation to aggregate "accepts" and "rejects" in a firewall, but you should use it only if you are interested in the count of these events, instead of all the information provided by the firewall.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The legacy, basic aggregation feature is described in the field description for <a href="#">Enable Aggregation (in secs)</a>.</p>
Time Interval	<p>Choose a time interval, if applicable, to use as a basis for aggregating the events the connector collects. Aggregation time interval and threshold settings need to both be set in order for the aggregation to be enabled.</p> <p>(<b>Disabled</b>, 1 sec, 5 sec, and so on, up to 1 hour.)</p>
Event Threshold	<p>Choose a number of events, if applicable, to use as a basis for aggregating the events the connector collects. This is the maximum count of events that can be aggregated; for example, if 150 events were found to be the same within the time interval selected (i.e., contained the same selected fields) and you select an event threshold of 100, you then receive two events, one of count 100 and another of count 50. This option is exclusive of Time Interval. (<b>Disabled</b>, 10 events, 50 events, and so on, up to 10,000 events.)</p>

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Field Names	Choose one or more fields, if applicable, to use as the basis for aggregating the events the connector collects. Use <b>Ctrl+click</b> to select multiple fields. The result is a comma-separated list of fields to monitor. For example, "eventName,deviceHostName" would aggregate events if they have the same event- and device-host names. You can use any of the event fields displayed in the event inspector; the name can contain no spaces and the first letter should not be capitalized.
Fields to Sum	Choose one or more fields, if applicable, to use as the basis for aggregating the events the connector collects.  If specified, this set of numeric fields is summed rather than aggregated, preserved, or discarded. The most common fields to sum are <code>bytesIn</code> and <code>bytesOut</code> . Note that if any of the fields listed here are also in the list of field names to aggregate, they are aggregated and not summed.
Preserve Common Fields	(Yes   <b>No</b> ) Choosing Yes adds fields to the aggregated event if they have the same values for each event. Choosing <b>No</b> , the default, ignores non-aggregated fields in aggregated events.
Filter Aggregation	Filter Aggregation is a way of capturing aggregated event data from events that would otherwise be discarded due to an agent filter. Only events that would be filtered out are considered for filter aggregation (unlike Field-based aggregation, which looks at all events).  SmartConnector aggregation significantly reduces the amount of data received, and should be applied only when you use less than the total amount of information the event offers.
Time Interval	Choose a time interval, if applicable, to use as a basis for aggregating the events the connector collects. It is exclusive of Event Threshold. ( <b>Disabled</b> , 1 sec, 5 sec, and so on, up to 1 hour.)
Event Threshold	Choose a number of events, if applicable, to use as a basis for aggregating the events the connector collects. This is the maximum count of events that can be aggregated; for example, if 150 events were found to be the same within the time interval selected (i.e., contained the same selected fields) and you select an event threshold of 100, you then receive two events, one of count 100 and another of count 50. This option is exclusive of Time Interval. ( <b>Disabled</b> , 10 events, 50 events, and so on, up to 10,000 events.)
Fields to Sum	(Optional) Choose one or more fields, if applicable, to use as the basis for aggregating the events the connector collects.



## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
<b>Processing</b>	
Preserve Raw Event	<p>(Yes   <b>No</b>) Some devices contain a raw event that can be captured as part of the generated alert. If that is not the case, most connectors can also produce a serialized version of the data stream that was parsed/processed to generate the ArcSight event. This feature allows the connector to preserve this serialized "raw event" as a field in the event inspector. This feature is disabled, by default, since using raw data increases the event size and therefore requires more database storage space.</p> <p>You can enable this by changing the <b>Preserve Raw Event</b> setting. If you choose <b>Yes</b>, the serialized representation of the "Raw Event" is sent to the ArcSight Manager and preserved in the Raw Event field.</p>
Turbo Mode	<p>If your configuration, reporting, and analytic usage permits, you can greatly accelerate the transfer of a sensor's event information through SmartConnectors by choosing one of two "turbo" (narrower data bandwidth) modes.</p> <p><b>Complete</b> is the default transfer mode, which passes all the data arriving from the device, including any additional data (custom, or vendor-specific). This corresponds to <code>turbo.enabled=false</code> on the Manager. Since this value is not the default, be sure to add this property to the Manager's <code>server.properties</code> file.</p> <p>The first level of Turbo acceleration is called <b>Faster</b> and drops just additional data, while retaining all other information. The <b>Fastest</b> mode eliminates all but a core set of event attributes, in order to achieve the best throughput. Consider the possible effects such a restricted data set might have from a given device (for example, on reports, rules, threat resolution) before selecting it.</p> <p>The specific event attributes that apply to these modes in your enterprise are defined in the self-documented <code>\$ARCSIGHT_HOME/config/connector/agent.properties</code> file for the ArcSight Manager. Because these properties may have been adjusted for your needs, you should refer to this file for definitive lists.</p> <p>Only scanner SmartConnectors must run in <b>Complete</b> mode, to capture the additional data.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> SmartConnector Turbo Modes are superseded by the Turbo Mode in use by the ArcSight Managers processing their events. For example, a Manager set to <b>Faster</b> cannot pass all the data possible for a SmartConnector that is set for the default of <b>Complete</b>.</p>

---

**Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)**

Name Field	Value Field
Enable Aggregation (in secs)	<p><b>Note:</b> If you have already used this feature for setting up previous SmartConnectors, you can continue to do so. However, ArcSight recommends that you use the new <a href="#">Field Based Aggregation</a> feature as a more flexible option. (See “<a href="#">Field Based Aggregation</a>” on page 667.)</p> <p>Here is the description of the legacy “Enable Aggregation” feature, for those of you who are still using it:</p> <p>When enabled, <b>Enable Aggregation (in seconds)</b> aggregates two or more events on the basis of the selected time value. (<b>Disabled</b>, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 30, 60)</p> <p>The aggregation is performed on one or more matches for a fixed subset of fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Agent ID</li><li>• Name</li><li>• Device event category</li><li>• Agent severity</li><li>• Destination address</li><li>• Destination user ID</li><li>• Destination port</li><li>• Request URL</li><li>• Source address</li><li>• Source user ID</li><li>• Source port</li><li>• Destination process name</li><li>• Transport protocol</li><li>• Application protocol</li><li>• Device inbound interface</li><li>• Device outbound interface</li><li>• Additional data (if any)</li><li>• Base event IDs (if any)</li></ul> <p>The aggregated event shows the event count (how many events were aggregated into the displayed event) and event type. The rest of the fields in the aggregated event take the values of the first event in the set of aggregated events.</p>

---

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Limit Event Processing Rate	<p>You can moderate the SmartConnector's burden on the CPU by reducing its processing rate. This can also be a means of dealing with the effects of event bursts.</p> <p>The choices range from <b>Disabled</b> (no limitation on CPU demand) to <b>1 eps</b> (pass just one event per second, making the smallest demand on the CPU). Be sure to note that this option's effect varies with the category of SmartConnector in use, as described in the SmartConnector Processing Categories table below.</p>
Fields to Obfuscate	<p>Using MD5 hashing, this option allows you to specify a list of fields for obfuscation in a security event.</p>
Store Original Time In	<p>This parameter allows you to move the original device receipt time to a specified field if altered by the time correction.</p>
Enable Port-Service Mapping	<p><b>(Disabled   Enabled)</b></p> <p>If <b>Enabled</b> and one of the two fields destination port and application protocol is set, and the other is not, the one that is set is used to set the other. For example, if the destination port is 22 and application protocol is not set, then the application protocol is set to ssh.</p> <p>Default is <b>Disabled</b>.</p>
Uppercase User Names	<p><b>(Disabled   Enabled)</b></p> <p>Default is <b>Disabled</b>. If set to any of the <i>enabled</i> settings, the two user name fields are automatically changed to uppercase.</p> <p>The original values are saved as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled (orig to ID)</b> saves the original values to the sourceUserID and destinationUserID fields, respectively, overwriting any values that may have been there previously.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled (orig to ID or Flex)</b> saves the original values in the same fields if they do not already contain values, or to the flexString1 (source) and flexString2 (destination) fields if the ID fields do contain values.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled (orig to Add. Data)</b> saves the original values to additional data fields called OrigSrcUserName and OrigDstUserName, respectively.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The uppercase operation is typically done using the default Locale for the chosen platform. You can set this to a particular Locale by setting the connector.uppercase.user.name.locale property in agent.properties to the desired Locale (using "en_US" for U.S. English, for example).</p>

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Enable User Name Splitting	<p>(Yes   <b>No</b>) If this is set to yes and the destination user name contains commas in the event, this parameter duplicates that event. Each user name in the list is placed in one of the events.</p> <p>For example, if the destination user name in an event is "User 123, User 456", then that event is sent twice, with the destination user name set to "User 123" in the first and "User 456" in the second.</p> <p>Default is <b>No</b></p>
Split File Name into Path and Name	<p>(Yes   <b>No</b>) If this is set to yes and an event's file name field is set but its file path field is not, this parameter splits the file name into a path and a name, placing each part into appropriate fields.</p> <p>For example, if the file name field is set to C:\dir\file.ext and the file path is not set, then the file path is set to C:\dir and the file name to file.ext. The separator character can be either \ or / as the system looks to the SmartConnector to determine its platform.</p> <p>Default is <b>No</b></p>
Event Integrity Algorithm	<p>(<b>Disabled</b>   SHA-256   SHA-1   MD5   SHA-512)</p> <p>If this is set to one of the algorithms (such as SHA-256), and the <b>Preserve Raw Event</b> parameter is <b>Enabled</b>, then additional event integrity internal events are generated, normally at a rate of about 1 per 50 normal events.</p> <p>The crypto signature field is <i>also</i> set in each event in the format: "#seq(alg):digest", where <i>seq</i> is a persistent event sequence number, <i>alg</i> is the message digest algorithm, and <i>digest</i> is the hexadecimal message digest.</p> <p>These extra events and the crypto signature field values can be used to verify that no events were tampered with after generation.</p> <p>Supported algorithms are: SHA-256, SHA-1, MD5, and SHA-512.</p> <p>Default is <b>Disabled</b> (i.e., no algorithm is applied)</p>
Generate Unparsed Events	<p>(Yes   <b>No</b>) If set to yes and some incoming event data cannot be parsed (perhaps because a device has been upgraded since the SmartConnector parser was written), then a special event named "Unparsed Event" is generated. The raw event appears in the event message field.</p> <p>If set to <b>No</b>, the SmartConnector log files indicate the unparsed events.</p> <p>Default is <b>No</b></p>

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
Preserve System Health Events	<p>(Yes   <b>No</b>) If set to yes, internal system health events are preserved.</p> <p>SmartConnectors generate system health events that provide information about the systems on which they are installed (for example, disk usage, network memory, JVM memory, percentage of processing of CPU memory usage, and so forth). By default, these events are not retained or passed on to ArcSight destinations and, therefore, not available for viewing. Setting this option to yes makes them available in the Console.</p>
Enable Device Status Monitoring (in millisec)	<p>(&lt;NumberOfMilliseconds&gt;   <b>-1</b> (disabled))</p> <p>If set to a &lt;NumberOfMilliseconds&gt;, the selected SmartConnector generates internal events periodically 1 minute (60000 milliseconds) or greater with the status of the devices for which the connector is receiving normal events. These events have the name "Connector Device Status."</p> <p>Enabling periodic device status monitoring events helps monitor both the SmartConnector and device uptime.</p> <p>Device status monitoring events include this information, if available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Event name (Connector Device Status)</li> <li>• Vendor and Product information</li> <li>• Source Address and Host Name</li> <li>• Zone</li> <li>• Last event received</li> <li>• Total number of events for the device since the connector started</li> <li>• Event count since last call</li> </ul> <p>Device status monitoring events can be set to generate every 1 minute (60000 milliseconds), or less frequently (i.e., a greater number of milliseconds than the minimum).</p> <p>If you specify less than 60000, you get a warning in the log that the minimum is 60000 milliseconds (1 minute) and the system uses the minimum.</p> <p>If you enter a non-number in the field, it generates an error in the log that the value could not be parsed. In this case, the feature is disabled (and logged as such).</p> <p>In such cases, there is no indication on the Console that anything went wrong because there is no way for the Connector to convey that error.</p>

## Fields on the Default Tab (Continued)

Name Field	Value Field
<b>Payload Sampling (when available)</b>	Some SmartConnectors use Payload sampling to send a portion of packet payload (as opposed to the complete payload) along with the original event. This portion is retrieved using the on-demand payload retrieval in the event inspector.
Maximum Length	<p>You can configure the maximum length of the payload sample using the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discard</li> <li>• 128 bytes</li> <li>• 256 bytes</li> <li>• 512 bytes</li> <li>• 1 Kbyte</li> </ul> <p>When the Discard option is chosen, no payload sample is sent inside the original event.</p>
Mask Non-printable Characters	This feature allows you to mask the non-printable characters in the payload sample.

## SmartConnector Processing Categories

The following table shows the SmartConnector Processing Categories

**Table 22-1 SmartConnector Processing Categories**

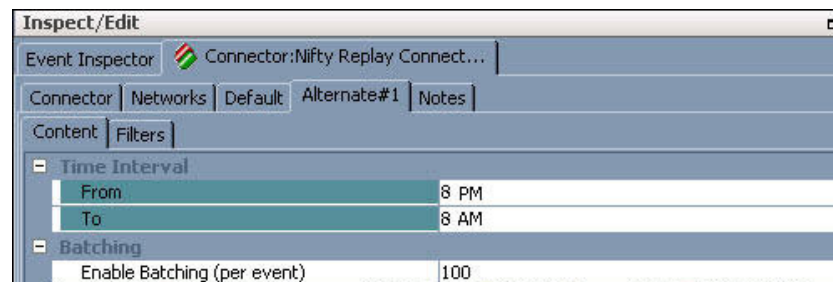
SmartConnector Type	Effects of Limited Usage
Syslog connectors	Due to the nature of UDP (the transport protocol used by Syslog), these connectors can potentially lose events if the configurable event rate is exceeded. This is because the connector delays processing to match the event rate configured, and while in this state, the UDP cache may fill and the operating system drop UDP messages. Note that ArcSight <b>does not recommend</b> using the <b>Limit CPU Usage</b> option with these connectors because of this possibility of event loss.
SNMP connectors	Similar to Syslog connectors, when the event rate is limited on SNMP connectors, they potentially lose events. SNMP is also UDP-based and has the same issues as Syslog.
Database connectors	Since connectors "follow" the database tables, limiting the event rate for database connectors can slow the operation of other connectors. The result can be an event backlog sufficient to delay the reporting of alerts by as much as minutes or hours. On the other hand, note that no events are lost, unless the database tables are truncated. After the event burst is over, the connector may eventually catch up with the database if the event rate does not exceed the configured limit.

**Table 22-1 SmartConnector Processing Categories (Continued)**

SmartConnector Type	Effects of Limited Usage
File connectors	Similar to database connectors, file-based connectors "follow" files, so limiting their event rates also causes an event backlog. This can eventually force the connector to fall behind by as much as minutes or hours, depending on the actual event rate. Similarly, the connectors may catch up if the event rate does not exceed the configured rate.
Proprietary API connectors	These connectors' behavior depends on the particular API, (for example, OPSEC behaves differently than PostOffice and RDEP). But in most cases, there is no event loss unless the internal buffers and queues of the API implementation fill up. Therefore, these connectors work much like database or file connectors.

## SmartConnector Time Interval Options

This time interval applies to the Alternate Settings and it specifies when the alternate settings must be used by the SmartConnector. For example, if you want to cache the events during the day and send everything at night, you can configure the Transport Mode to cache in the default configuration and configure the Transport Mode to normal in the Alternate Settings, then you would set the time interval from 8PM to 8AM (next day).



- **"From:"** Specifies the starting time to apply the Alternate settings.
- **"To:"** Specifies the ending time for the Alternate settings, when it reverts to the default settings). If this is less than the From setting, the value is interpreted as the next day. For example, a setting from 8PM to 8AM is interpreted as starting at 8PM and ending at 8AM the following day.

To save configuration changes to the SmartConnector, click **OK**.

## Managing SmartConnector Filter Conditions

SmartConnectors can function as a filtering tool between devices and the ArcSight Manager, using filtering conditions. Filtering conditions are set with a combination of AND or OR statements and data field values. Extraneous events are filtered out to minimize the number of events sent to the ArcSight Manager and analyzed in the ArcSight Console.

### Creating SmartConnector Filters

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a SmartConnector and choose **Configure**.

- 3 In the Default | Filter tab, right-click and choose **Add new condition**.
- 4 In the Filter Condition dialog box, select a data field from the drop-down menu. (See ["Using Field Sets" on page 828](#) under ["Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)" on page 818](#), especially ["Condition Tree Command Buttons" on page 820](#) and ["Condition Tree Context Menu Commands" on page 822](#).)
- 5 Choose logic operators from the drop-down menu.
- 6 Type a value in the last text field.
- 7 Click **OK**.

## Adding SmartConnector Filter Conditions

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a SmartConnector and choose **Configure**.
- 3 In the **Default: Filters** tab, right-click the **if** folder and choose **Add OR** condition to create an OR condition, or right-click the existing filter condition and choose **Add AND condition** to create an AND condition.
- 4 In the Filter Condition dialog box, choose a data field on the drop-down menu.
- 5 Choose logic operators on the drop-down menu.
- 6 Type a value in the last text field.
- 7 Click **OK**.

## Deleting SmartConnector Filter Conditions

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector and choose **Configure**.
- 3 In the Filtering section on the Advanced tab, right-click a condition and choose **Delete condition**.

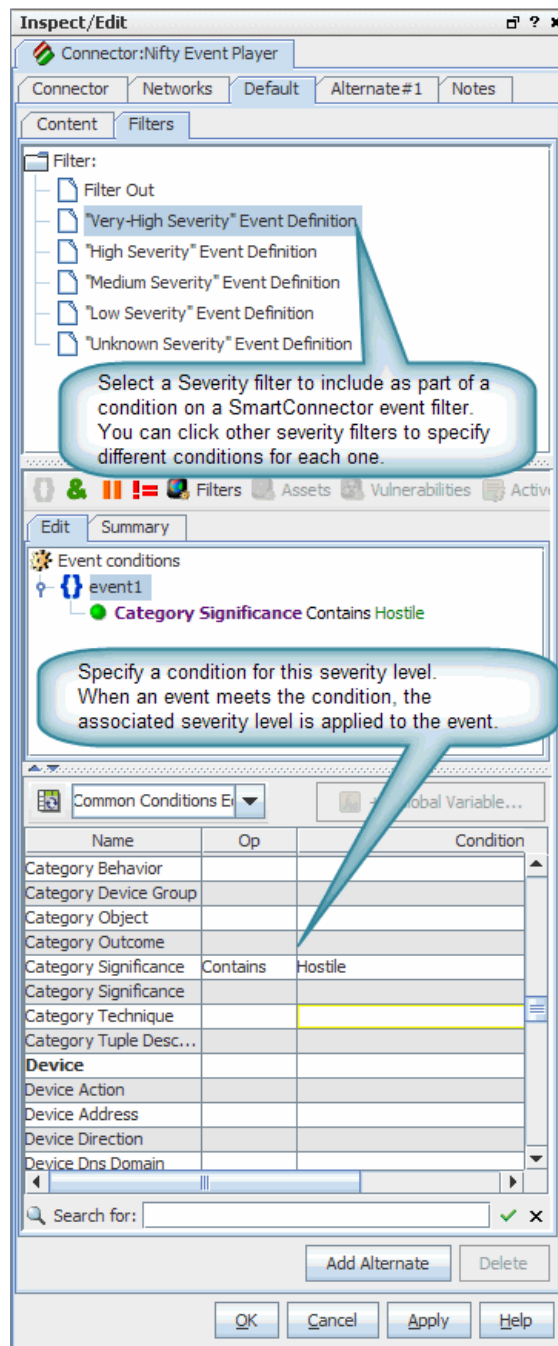
## Setting Special Severity Levels

You can customize or conditionalize the event-severity levels reported by SmartConnectors. Customizing means pre-setting a given SmartConnector's filter to one specific severity level; conditionalizing is essentially the same, but with the addition of a filter condition to determine when the pre-set severity level is reported.

## Configuring a Conditional or Custom Severity Level

- 1 Choose the **Connectors** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the appropriate SmartConnector and choose **Configure**.
- 3 In the Connector Configuration Editor, select the **Connector: Default: Filters** tab.
- 4 In the Filters tab, select a severity level.
- 5 In the Filter Condition dialog box choose a field, a logical operator, and enter a value for the condition.





- Click **OK** in the Filter Condition dialog box and **Apply** or **OK** in the Connector Configuration Editor.

In the example pictured here, we selected the "Very-High Severity" filter and defined a condition in which Category Significance contains "Hostile". When this condition is met, the severity of the event becomes "Very-High."

For more information, see ["Managing SmartConnector Filter Conditions"](#) on page 675.

## Sending Model Mappings to SmartConnectors

Updates to network model mappings are sent automatically from the ArcSight Manager to SmartConnectors within heartbeat messages. The heartbeat messages themselves are sent on an interval which can be anywhere from every 5 seconds to every 10 minutes, but network model mappings are included in the messages only when there are updates to the model.



The interval on which information is exchanged between the Manager and SmartConnectors is determined by the Heartbeat Frequency setting on each Connector. (See information on [“Heartbeat Frequency” on page 663](#) in default content tab configuration fields under [“Selecting and Setting SmartConnector Parameters” on page 657](#).)

If you have made several configuration updates to the network model on the Manager and would like these changes to take effect immediately on the SmartConnectors without waiting for the next automatic refresh, you can use the following command to send the update information to a selected Connector.

### Sending Model Mappings to a Connector

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector you want to update and choose **Send Model mappings now**.

This sends information about the current network model mappings from the Manager to the selected Connector. It forces a comprehensive refresh of the zone mappings and network model information on the Connector.

## Sending Control Commands to SmartConnectors

From the Console you can issue basic event-flow-control commands to SmartConnectors, get the operational status of a SmartConnector, or issue control commands to network devices through their SmartConnectors. This topic discusses the first two points. To author rule-driven device-command responses to events, please see [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#).

### Getting Status Reports

You can see a SmartConnector's current operational state at any time.

- 1 Choose the **Connectors** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector, choose **Send Command>Status>Get Status**.
- 3 In the Connector Status window you can see a readout of all the connector's current parameters.

### Sending Flow-Control Commands

- 1 Choose the **Connectors** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector, choose **Send Command**, and one of the following menu options described below.

- 3 The Console's status bar shows a confirmation message when the flow control option takes effect.



- Commands available on this menu vary depending on which SmartConnectors you are using. The standard set of commands is described here.
- Because there is no local cache, events that occur while a connector is stopped or paused are not retained.
- If a SmartConnector runs out of disk space, it can lose its ability to track events.
- The **Terminate** command should only be used in very special circumstances as it **kills all** SmartConnector processes.
- See [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#) for a description of the rule-based automated alternative for giving SmartConnector commands.

**Table 22-2 SmartConnector Status**

Command	Description
<b>Status Category</b>	
Get Status	Provides a full report on the selected SmartConnector's current operational state.
Get Device Status	Provides the status of the device that reports to the SmartConnector. (Currently only available for the CiscoIDS/IPS SmartConnector.)
<b>Connector Process Category</b>	
Restart	Restarts a running SmartConnector.  <b>Caution:</b> Once a connector is terminated, Console commands cannot access it. Therefore, a "restart" works only on a connector that is currently running. Sending a restart command to a running connector terminates and restarts the connector.
Terminate	Shuts down the SmartConnector and all processes the SmartConnector started.  <b>Caution:</b> Once a connector is terminated, Console commands (including Connector Process > Restart) cannot access it. The connector must be restarted manually from the machine on which it is installed.
<b>Event Flow Category</b>	
Pause	Stops the SmartConnector from sending events to the ArcSight Manager.  <b>Note:</b> Events received from the target device are saved in the connector cache (even though the connector is in <b>Pause</b> state).
Stop	Stops the SmartConnector from sending events to the ArcSight Manager.  <b>Caution:</b> A <b>Stop</b> command causes the SmartConnector to stop sending all events, which means it is not sending events to the connector cache, either.

**Table 22-2 SmartConnector Status (Continued)**

Command	Description
Start	Prompts the SmartConnector (previously in <b>Stop</b> or <b>Pause</b> state) to start sending events to the ArcSight Manager.
<b>Network Category</b>	
Flush Name Resolver Cache	Clears cache for Network name resolver.
<b>Upgrade Category</b>	
Upgrade	<p>Launches a Command Parameters dialog for remote upgrade to newer versions of ArcSight SmartConnectors for managed assets.</p> <p>Provide the version number of the connector to which you want to upgrade and a wait time to verify that the upgrade completed successfully. (If the upgrade is not successful, the system performs an automatic rollback to the previous version of the connector.)</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to start the upgrade.</p> <p>See <a href="#">"Upgrading SmartConnectors" on page 689</a> for prerequisites for the upgrade process and detailed information on how to upgrade Connectors.</p>
Rollback Upgrade	<p>Launches a Command Parameters dialog for remote rollback of connector version to a specified previous version. See <a href="#">"Upgrading SmartConnectors" on page 689</a> for complete information.</p>
<b>Adjust Category</b>	
Rename Mismatched Override Files	<p>Enables you to remotely rename an connector parser override file whose version stamp no longer matches the parser that it was intended to override. Renaming it appends ".1" (or 2, or 3, if earlier numbers are in use), which stops the file from being used.</p> <p>The first parameter is a regular expression you can specify to match specific override files (or blank, the default, for all). The second parameter is a boolean where true, the default, means restart the connector if any files are renamed.</p>



Tech Support commands are provided for use primarily by HP Customer Support. Brief descriptions of these Tech Support commands are provided for informational purposes, but these commands are not intended for use by HP ArcSight customers except as instructed by HP Customer Support.

**Table 22-3 Technical Support Commands**

Command	Description
<b>Tech Support Category</b>	
Get Support Info	Gets logs and other feedback on connectors.
Get 'agent.properties'	Shows the list of properties for the selected connector.
Get Upgrade Logs	Get upgrade logs on connectors.

**Table 22-3 Technical Support Commands (Continued)**

Command	Description
Get 'agent.wrapper.conf'	Shows the wrapper configuration for the selected connector.
Get Configuration XML File	Shows the XML configuration file for the selected connector.
Get Thread Dump	Gets one thread dump for the selected connector.
Get Two Thread Dumps...	Gets two thread dumps for the selected connector spaced by the time interval specified. By comparing both thread dumps, HP Customer Support can troubleshoot connectors with threads that are hanging for unknown reasons.
Get Heap Dump	This generates a heap dump, if possible, which can be useful to ArcSight in some situations to analyze problems. The destination ID is used as part of the file name, the file is placed in the same directory as the connector's logs, and normally only 10 such files are kept.
Get last N lines of 'agent.log'...	Shows an excerpt from the connector log file based on the number of lines you specify. The default is 500 lines.
Get System Properties	Shows system properties for the selected connector, including details on variables such as Java runtime name, Java virtual machine (VM) version, operating system name, paths for various Java components, paths for ArcSight Home, user directories, user home, and so forth.
Enable Event Flow Tracing...	Allows you to specify a component and fields to log for initiating an event flow trace. Component and field names must be provided per appropriate syntax. The component should be chosen from the components listed in the Get Status results.
Disable Event Flow Tracing...	Disables event flow tracing on the selected component.
Get Event Flow Tracing Log	When tracing is enabled on the selected connector, the connector logs data about events it receives.
DNS Test	This command takes one parameter, which is either a host name to resolve or an IP address to reverse resolve. This is useful to see what results would normally be expected for the name resolver component of the connector, since it uses the same mechanism to do the lookup as the name resolver uses.
Enable Map File Logging	Directs the AgentNATProcessor component, which processes map files for each event, to log what it is doing for each event. By default the last 100 events are logged.
Disable Map File Logging	Directs the AgentNATProcessor to stop logging.
Get Collected Map File Logging	Gets the collected log messages for the most recent events (100, by default), which may help debug problems with why a map file is not operating as expected.



The following commands provide access to SmartConnector component mapping and event categorization for advanced users.

Table 22-4 Mapping Commands

Command	Description
<b>Mapping Category</b>	
Get Additional Data Names	<p>Returns a list of additional data names seen for each device vendor/product combination since the connector started running. For example:</p> <p>Additional Data Names Seen:</p> <p>Generic (no vendor/product):</p> <pre>test1 [3 times] test11 test13 [2 times]</pre> <p>Vendor/product [vend/prod]:</p> <pre>test1 test10 [6 times]</pre> <p>By default, the command limits the list to show only the most recent 100 device vendor/product combinations and the most recent 100 names for each.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> You can change this limit by editing the SmartConnector property <code>agent.additionaldata.mapper.track.max.names</code> in the file <code>\$ARCSIGHT_HOME/ArcSightSmartAgents/current/user/agent/agent.properties</code> on the machine where the connector is installed. In most cases we recommend keeping the defaults. If you change a property setting such as this, restart the connector.</p> <p>If a data name is not a string, its data type is displayed in the list. If the connector saw an additional data name more than once, the command output indicates the number of times the name was seen.</p>
Map Additional Data Name...	<p>Brings up a dialog where you can map an additional data name for the selected connector. If you are using additional data, add the <code>turbo.enabled=false</code> property to the Manger's <code>server.properties</code> file.</p>

Name	Value
Device vendor	
Device product	
Additional data name	
ArcSight field	

Table 22-4 Mapping Commands (Continued)

Command	Description								
	<p>For a generic mapping, you can leave the <b>Device vendor</b> and <b>Device product</b> fields blank. For a specific mapping, fill in these fields with the appropriate vendor and product names.</p> <p>Typically, the <b>Additional data name</b> is one of the names shown in the Get Additional Data Names output (but can be another name not on that list).</p> <p>The ArcSight field must be a valid ArcSight event field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to create the mapping.</p> <p>Here is an example of the command output for a successful generic mapping:</p> <pre>Successfully mapped additional data name [test11] to event field [message] for vendor/product []</pre> <p>A successful device vendor/product-specific mapping returns output similar to this:</p> <pre>Successfully mapped additional data name [test10] to event field [message] for vendor/product [vend/prod]</pre> <p>If the additional data name has not been seen, the name is still mapped, but with a warning like this:</p> <pre>Successfully mapped additional data name [foo] to event field [deviceCustomString1] for vendor/product [vend/prod] (note that additional data name [foo] has not been seen for vendor/product [vend/prod])</pre> <p>If the ArcSight field is not valid, the error returned is similar to this:</p> <pre>Failed to map additional data name [bar] to event field [messages] for vendor/product [vend/prod] (event field [messages] is unknown)</pre>								
Unmap Additional Data Name...	<p>Brings up a dialog where you can unmap an additional data name for the selected connector.</p> <div><table><thead><tr><th>Name</th><th>Value</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Device vendor</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Device product</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Additional data name</td><td></td></tr></tbody></table><div>OKCancel</div></div>	Name	Value	Device vendor		Device product		Additional data name	
Name	Value								
Device vendor									
Device product									
Additional data name									

**Table 22-4 Mapping Commands (Continued)**

Command	Description
	<p>To remove a generic mapping, you can leave the <b>Device vendor</b> and <b>Device product</b> fields blank. To remove a specific mapping, fill in these fields with the appropriate vendor and product names. The additional data name should be one that was previously mapped for the specified device vendor and product combination.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to unmap the data name.</p> <p>Here is an example of the command output for a successful generic unmapping:</p> <pre>Successfully unmapped additional data name [test11] for vendor/product []</pre> <p>A successful device vendor/product-specific unmapping returns output similar to this:</p> <pre>Successfully unmapped additional data name [foo] for vendor/product [vend/prod]</pre> <p>If the specified additional data name was not previously mapped, the output looks like this:</p> <pre>Failed to unmap additional data name [foo] for vendor/product [vend/prod] (not previously mapped)</pre> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One additional data name can be mapped to more than one ArcSight field for the same device vendor/product combination, and in this case unmapping it unmaps it from all ArcSight fields for that device vendor/product. This is an unlikely scenario, however.</li> <li>• The converse case, where multiple additional data names are mapped to the same ArcSight field for the same device vendor/product combination, results in the last mapping taking precedence over any previous mappings to that ArcSight field for that device vendor/product. No warning is generated in this case.</li> </ul>
<b>Categorizer mapper Category</b>	
Reload custom categorizations	<p>There are several ways to set event category information for events. The least common of these is to store custom categorization files (organized by vendor and product) on the connector machine in the <code>user/agent/aup/acp/categorizer/current</code> directory (or the <code>user/agent/acp/categorizer/current</code> directory).</p> <p>If such categorization files exist and have been changed, this command reloads them without restarting the connector.</p>



**Table 22-4 Mapping Commands (Continued)**

Command	Description
Reload custom map files	<p>Rescans and reloads map files in the <code>user/agent/map</code> directory on the machine where the connector is installed.</p> <p>The map files are named in the form <code>map.n.properties</code>, where <code>n</code> is a number starting with 0. Use this command to immediately apply the latest changes. Not all connector setups include custom map files.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> Map files are created on some connector machines to fulfill specific needs. If you are not familiar with the categorizer/mapping setup of an environment, we recommend that you do not use these commands.</p>
Reload external map files	<p>Re-scans and reloads external map files in the <code>user/agent/extmap</code> directory on the machine where the connector is installed.</p> <p>The map files are named in the form <code>extmap.n.properties</code>, where <code>n</code> is a number starting with 0. Use this command to immediately apply the latest changes. Not all connector setups include custom external map files.</p> <p><b>Caution:</b> External map files are created on some connector machines to fulfill specific needs. If you are not familiar with them, we recommend that you do not use Reload commands.</p>

## Managing SmartConnector Groups

You can best manage ArcSight SmartConnectors when you organize them into groups. You'll find all uncategorized SmartConnectors in the Unassigned group.

You can move or copy groups and SmartConnectors into other groups in the Connectors resource tree by using drag-and-drop. If a group is deleted, the SmartConnectors within that group are also deleted.

You should not delete a Connector resource at the ArcSight Console, unless the corresponding SmartConnector is first stopped. If the SmartConnector on the device is running and its Connector resource is deleted, the SmartConnector cannot send events to the ArcSight Manager, causing the SmartConnector to start caching events and eventually dropping these events.

## Creating SmartConnector Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.  
A "name" text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 In the "name" text field, type in a name.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

## Renaming SmartConnector Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 3 In the "name" text field, rename the group.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

## Editing SmartConnector Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 3 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text field.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying SmartConnector Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 3 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting SmartConnector Groups

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 3 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

The SmartConnector's resource is deleted from the database and the ArcSight Manager no longer recognizes this resource.

## Managing SmartConnector Resources

This topic describes how to do basic resource management for SmartConnectors.

### Moving or Copying a SmartConnector Group

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 3 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

## Deleting a SmartConnector Group

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 3 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

The SmartConnector's resource is deleted from the database and the ArcSight Manager no longer recognizes this resource.

## Importing and Exporting SmartConnector Configurations

As a part of managing SmartConnectors, you may want to share configurations among several instances of the same or a similar connector.

You can import and export SmartConnector configurations as a means of sharing custom configurations among several connectors on the same or multiple Managers. Rather than redefining a complex configuration on each connector, you can export the configuration as an XML file and then import it into connectors that share some or all of its configuration settings. An override feature allows you to make changes to any of the parameter values upon import.

### Importing a SmartConnector Configuration

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector into which you want to import a new configuration and choose **Import Connector Configuration...**

This brings up a file browser where you can select the file to import.

- 3 In the file browser, navigate to and select the .xml file that contains the connector configuration, and click **Open**.



Save and import SmartConnector configurations as XML files.

This brings up a dialog showing original and proposed new configuration settings for the selected connector, with an option to override any of the proposed new values. (Click **Show** to show the details of the import or **Hide** to hide them.)

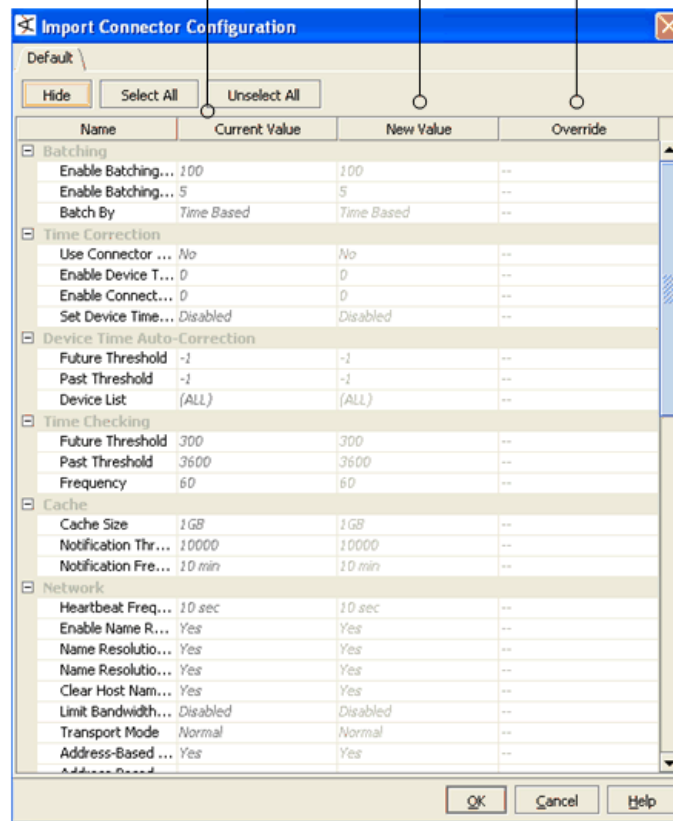
- On the Import Connector Configuration dialog, review the import information and override any values that you do not want to import.

This dialog shows original values for the selected connector configuration and new values applied upon import. You can override any of the settings you do not want to import by either keeping the parameter value in the original configuration or defining a new value.

For example, you even can limit the import to only filters by keeping all values in the original configuration and choosing to override only the filter values with the imported values as is detailed in SmartConnector Filters. (Scroll down to the Filters section at the end of the Import dialog to see the filters.)

Before import, the Import Connector Configuration dialog shows current value, new value, and override option for each aspect of SmartConnector configuration.

You can accept all new values or override the import by keeping some of the original values.



- When you are satisfied with the settings to import and overrides (if any), click **OK** to import the configuration.

## Exporting a SmartConnector Configuration

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose the **Connectors** resource tree.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, right-click the SmartConnector you want to export, and choose **Export Connector Configuration As...**

This brings up a file browser where you can navigate to the location where you want to save the configuration as an XML file.

- 3 In the file browser, navigate to and select the location where you want to save the configuration, provide a name for the file, and click **Save**.



**Tip**

SmartConnector configurations must be saved as XML files.

## SmartConnector Filters

You can import and export only the filters associated with SmartConnectors as a part of an import or export on a SmartConnector.

- To export a SmartConnector filter, export the connector that uses the filter (as described in the previous topic on exporting a SmartConnector configuration).
- To import a SmartConnector filter into another connector, start by selecting in the Navigator the SmartConnector to which you want to add a new filter. Follow the steps to import the connector that includes the filter you want to import (as described in the topic on importing a SmartConnector configuration). On the Import Connector Configuration dialog, limit the import to only the filters you want by keeping all values in the original configuration and choosing to override only the filter values with the import. (Scroll down to the Filters section at the end of the Import dialog to see the SmartConnector Filters.) When you have the new, imported filter values selected to override those in the original connector, complete the import by clicking **OK** on the Import Connector Configuration dialog. This adds the imported filters to the original SmartConnector.

## Using Additional Data Fields

Some devices include event data with data fields that are not included in the standard event data schema. You can configure your SmartConnector to send these fields as additional data. Refer to the FlexConnector Developer's Guide, which is available at <https://protect724.arcsight.com> for information on configuring SmartConnectors to send additional data.

You can view additional data fields in the Active channel ("[Monitoring Active Channels](#)" on [page 77](#)) and the Event Inspector ("[Event Inspector](#)" on [page 913](#)).

## Upgrading SmartConnectors

You can centrally manage and configure SmartConnectors and update them remotely. Use the Upgrade command on the ArcSight Console to upgrade to newer versions of SmartConnector software for managed devices. Use the Rollback command to revert to a previous version on an upgraded connector.

The Upgrade command lets you launch, manage, and review the status of upgrades for all SmartConnectors. A fail-over mechanism launches SmartConnectors with previous versions if upgrades fail. All communication and upgrade processes between components (Console, Manager, connectors) take place over secure connections.

The ArcSight Console reflects current version information for all of your SmartConnectors.



**Note**

For this release, SmartConnector remote upgrade is supported for connectors installed on Linux, Solaris, and Windows platforms only.

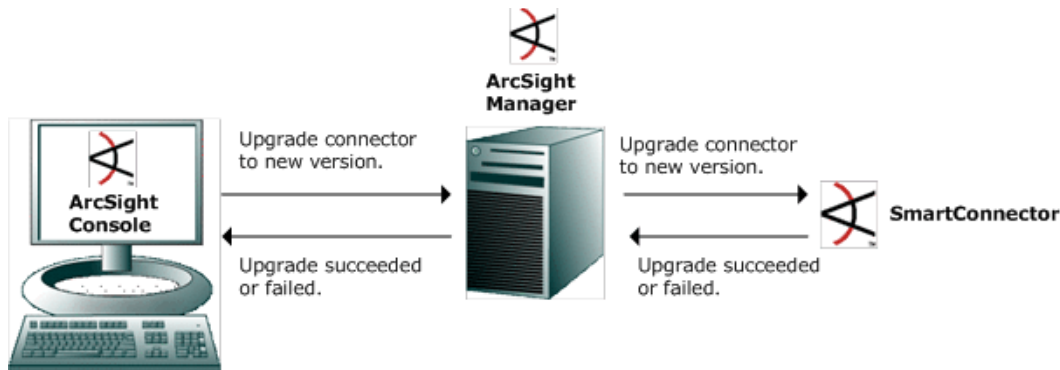
## Overview of the Upgrade Process

- 1 As an ArcSight customer, you receive e-mail notifications about new connector releases from Customer Support.
- 2 ArcSight administrators download the latest releases to the ArcSight Manager where they are available for SmartConnector upgrades.



SmartConnector "upgrade" version files are delivered as ArcSight Update packs (.aup) files. (ArcSight update packs are compressed file sets, similar to .zips.) The administrator copies the .aup file to `ARCSIGHT_HOME/updates/` onto a running ArcSight Manager. The Manager automatically unzips the .aup file and copies its contents to `ARCSIGHT_HOME/repository/`.

- 3 From the ArcSight Console, administrators select connectors to be upgraded (one at a time) and launch the upgrade command for each of them.
- 4 Upon receipt of the upgrade command, the selected connectors upgrade themselves, restart, and send upgrade results (success or failure) back to the ArcSight Console through the ArcSight Manager.
  - ◆ If the upgrade is successful, the new connector starts and reports on successful upgrade status. (The upgraded connector runs in the same home directory as the old connector.)
  - ◆ If the upgraded connector fails to start, the original connector restarts automatically as a fail-over measure. (This is essentially an automatic rollback, and re-start.)



### Tips on Monitoring SmartConnector Upgrade Status

SmartConnectors automatically determine their upgrade status when they start.

- When a connector starts up, it determines whether it is upgraded.
- If so, it waits for a configurable time interval for events from the monitored device to be processed.
- If, after that time interval, events have been processed, the SmartConnector is deemed up and running. The ArcSight Console indicates that the upgrade for that connector is a success and the newer connector version is reflected.



### Notes on SmartConnector Upgrade Procedure

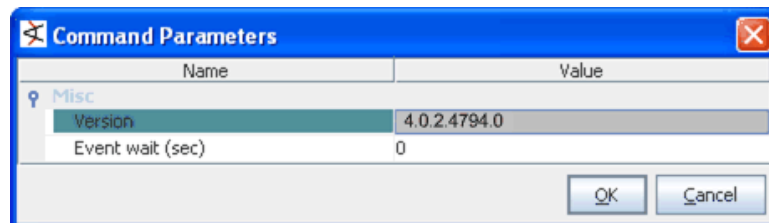
- When upgrading SmartConnectors, be sure to download current versions of the connector Configuration Guides from the HP Software Support Online Web site (<http://softwaresupport.hp.com>). New or revised information is provided in these guides as appropriate per each release of SmartConnectors. (To check version numbers on your current connectors, see “Getting Status and Versions on Installed SmartConnectors” on page 692.)
- You need administrative permissions to upgrade connectors.
- Newer versions of the connectors you want must be available on the Manager to which you are connected.
- The option for remote upgrade is available only on SmartConnectors of version 4.0.2.xxxx.0 or newer. Earlier versions of Connectors (or Agents) must be upgraded manually by installing a newer version of the connector.
- As a prerequisite to upgrading connectors, both the ArcSight Manager and the connector must be running.

The `Upgrade SmartConnectors` command is available as one of several SmartConnector control commands.

## Upgrading SmartConnectors

- 1 Choose the **Connectors** resource in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, select the connector you want to upgrade, right-click to bring up the context menu, and choose **Send Command > Upgrade > Upgrade**.

This launches a Command Parameters dialog.



- 3 Provide the following information in the dialog.
  - **Version** - The Version field provides a drop-down menu showing the connector versions available on this Manager. Choose the Version number of the connector to which you want to upgrade.
  - **Event wait (sec)** - Number of seconds the upgrade process waits for the first event from the device after the new, upgraded connector is started. If no events are received from the device within the specified time frame, the upgrade is considered "failed" and the old connector is launched.

This optional check is an additional safeguard against upgrade failures. For example, the connector binaries may have been upgraded successfully, but the new version may have problems communicating with the device. In that case, this check assumes that the upgrade failed and bring back the old connector.

If the **Event wait (sec)** value is **0** (the default), then the upgrade does not perform this check.

- 4 Click **OK** to close the dialog and start the upgrade.

As the upgrade proceeds, the connector shows as "down" and then "running" again in the resource tree. Status messages on the ArcSight Console indicate whether the upgrade succeeds or fails. You can check the logs for the connector to determine if the upgrade succeeded. (**Send Command > Tech Support > Get 'agent.properties' and Get Upgrade Logs.**)

## Rolling back to a Previous Version



### Notes on SmartConnector Rollback Procedure

- You need administrative permissions to roll back Connectors.
- The option for SmartConnector rollback is available only on SmartConnectors of version 4.0.2.xxxx.0 or newer that have been previously upgraded.
- Rollback automatically reinstates the most recent version prior to the currently installed version. You cannot do a remote rollback on a connector to other than the previously installed version. (For example, if you start with a connector of version 4.0.2.4793, upgrade to 4.0.2.4794, then upgrade again to 4.0.2.4795, a remote rollback at this point re-installs/starts connector version 4.0.2.4794. If you want to roll back to an earlier version, do it manually.)

You can roll back an upgraded connector to the previous version with the Rollback command.

- 1 Choose the **Connectors** resource in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, select the connector you want to upgrade, right-click to bring up the context menu, and choose **Send Command > Upgrade > Rollback**.

As the rollback proceeds, the connector shows as "down" and then "running" again in the resource tree. You can check the logs for the connector to determine if the rollback succeeded. (**Send Command > Tech Support > Get 'agent.properties' and Get Upgrade Logs.**)

## Troubleshooting

If an upgrade or rollback fails, you can review the related logs. Choose **Send Command > Tech Support > Get Upgrade Logs** from the ArcSight Console menus.

You can also use the Send Logs wizard to collect and compress logs, which you can then attach to an email, if desired.

## Getting Status and Versions on Installed SmartConnectors

Before or after you upgrade a SmartConnectors, you may want to check version numbers of currently installed connectors or get other status information. There are several ways to get information on currently installed connectors (including various control commands, channels, dashboards). Two of these are highlighted here as easy ways to get connector version information.



## Getting Status on a SmartConnector

- 1 Choose the **Connectors** resource in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Connectors resource tree, select the connector you want to upgrade, right-click to bring up the context menu, and choose **Send Command > Status > Get Status**.

The Status information on a connector includes "Agent Version" near the top of the message window. Here is an example snip-it of the Get Status command results for a Test Alert connector, Version 4.0.2.4793.0:

```
Status Generated: Wed Mar 07 13:20:09 PST 2007
Memory Usage: 65Mb out of 253Mb
```

```
Agent Content Version.....2007-03-01-09-02-05_4793
Agent Type.....testalertng
Agent Version.....4.0.2.4793.0
CommandResponses Processed.....1097
Current Max Rate.....22
Event rate LTC.....Wed Mar 07 13:18:42 PST 2007
Events Processed.....24003
```

## SmartConnector Dashboards

Choose **Dashboards** from the Navigator panel, and expand the folders to find various dashboards. To view a dashboard, right-click it and choose **Show Dashboard**.

You can find some these SmartConnector dashboards in /Dashboards/Shared/All Dashboards/ArcSight Administration/Connector/:

- Connector and Device - Heads Up Display
- Connector Status



# Modeling the Network

---

The following topics explain how to model your network and configure various aspects of the network model (assets, locations, zones, and so on), and how to manage customer accounts (if applicable).

[“About the Network Model” on page 695](#)

[“Populating the Network Model with Assets” on page 703](#)

[“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707](#)

[“Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories” on page 717](#)

[“Managing Assets” on page 717](#)

[“Managing Vulnerabilities” on page 722](#)

[“Managing Zones” on page 727](#)

[“Managing Networks” on page 728](#)

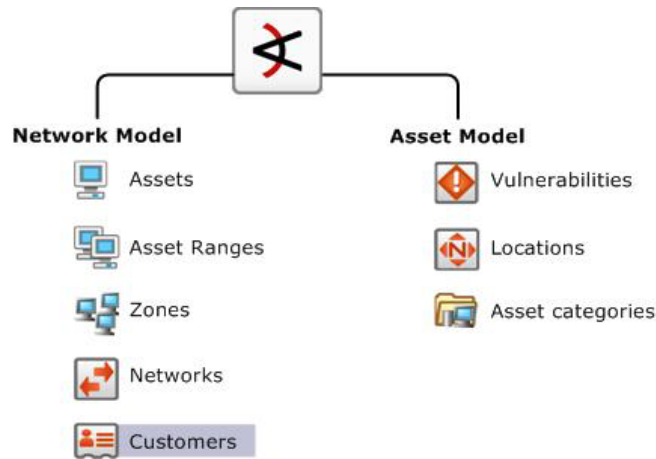
[“Managing Asset Categories” on page 728](#)

[“Managing Locations” on page 729](#)

[“Managing Customers” on page 730](#)

## About the Network Model

ArcSight operates on a data model that enables you to build a business-oriented view of data derived from physical information systems. These distinctions help to clearly identify the events in your network, and provide more layers of detail to correlation. Modeling your network and its assets is part of setup and ongoing maintenance.



The network model consists of the asset model and the network model, which, combined, facilitate building detailed correlation criteria. All of the Network Modeling resources, except Customers, are available as part of the Assets resource.

- The [“Network Model” on page 696](#) is a representation of the nodes on your network and certain characteristics of the network itself.
- The [“Asset Model” on page 702](#) describes attributes of the assets themselves for different purposes.

The following topics provide a conceptual overview of network modeling, and describe how to configure, update, and maintain a network model.



**Tip**

- For a description of techniques for dealing with hundreds of thousands of assets, see [“Asset Scalability” on page 721](#).
- For an overview and information about configuring types of assets and modeling your network, refer to the “Network Model” chapter of ESM 101.

## Network Model

The network model is a representation of the nodes on your network and certain characteristics of the network itself.

Before you can make an informed decision about what to do about a particular event, it helps to know something about the event's source and destination. Is the source a previous attacker, does it come from a hostile region of the world, or is it a trusted server that has become the source of an attack? Does the destination host critical applications, or is it a known server of forbidden services?

This kind of information is captured by modeling the assets on your network and particular pertinent attributes of the network. The network model represents information for individual assets and whole zones. For critical assets on the protected network, network modeling captures important facts that help inform your decisions, such as:

- All open ports
- The operating system running on that host
- Known vulnerabilities that might be exposed
- Applications present
- The missions these applications support and their criticality to your operation

For less critical assets, such as a block of addresses on the Internet, it may be sufficient to know general information about them, such as the country in which those assets reside.

The Network Model consists of the following resources. All of these resources, except Customers, are part of the Assets resource.

- **"Assets" on page 697** represent individual nodes on the network, such as servers, routers, and laptops.
- **"Asset Ranges" on page 700** represent a set of network nodes addressable as a contiguous block of IP addresses.
- **"Zones" on page 700** represent portions of the network itself that are characterized by a contiguous block of addresses.
- **"Networks" on page 701** provide an additional distinction to differentiate between two private address spaces with overlapping IP address ranges.
- **Customers** describe the internal or external cost centers or separate business units associated with networks, if applicable to your business environment. Customer tagging is a feature developed mainly to support Managed Security Service Provider (MSSP) environments, although it can also be used by private organizations to denote cost centers, internal groups, or subdivisions. The Customer designation keeps event traffic from multiple cost centers or business units separately identified. A customer can be thought of as the "owner" of an event, rather than the source or target of an event. For more about Customers, see **"Managing Customers" on page 730**.

## Assets

An asset is any network endpoint with an IP address, MAC address, host name, or external ID. For network modeling purposes, an asset is any endpoint you consider significant enough to characterize with details that make correlation and reporting more meaningful.

### Automatically-Created Assets

The system automatically creates assets to model the network nodes that host ArcSight components (Managers, Consoles, and SmartConnectors). It also automatically creates assets for events received from device endpoints on your network that do not already have assets modeled in ArcSight, and, if applicable, for assets arriving from scan reports sent by vulnerability scanners brought in by scanner SmartConnectors. This auto-asset creation feature could require configuration, depending on the assets reporting to the Manager.




Depending on which method you use, assets are placed in the following locations:

- Assets that are created through scanners are placed in the Resource tree under `Assets/All Assets/<Zone Group>/<Zone>`.
- Assets that are auto-created by any other type of SmartConnectors are placed under `Assets/All Assets/ArcSight System Administration/Devices`.

As a configuration option, you can also configure it to create assets for devices reporting through SmartConnectors.

### Auto-Created Assets for Components

The system automatically creates assets to model the network nodes that host components. These assets do not contain vulnerability information, and are used for system administration.

Component		
ArcSight Manager		An asset for the Manager is added (if needed) every time the Manager service starts.
ArcSight Consoles		An asset is added for each ArcSight Console the first time it connects with the Manager.
SmartConnectors		<p>An asset is created for SmartConnectors only when the SmartConnector begins reporting base events from the device it represents. A Connector can be successfully added to the Manager, but until it starts reporting events from the device it represents, an asset cannot be created for it in the Asset Model.</p> <p>It creates assets differently for SmartConnectors in static zones and those in dynamic zones. For more about static and dynamic zones, see <a href="#">"Dynamic and Static Zones" on page 701</a>.</p> <p>For details about creating assets for SmartConnectors, see <a href="#">"Creating Assets for SmartConnectors" on page 767</a>.</p>

### Devices Discovered by a Vulnerability Scanner

The system also imports asset and vulnerability information from vulnerability scanner reports generated by products such as Nessus, FoundStone, and ISS Internet Scanner. Asset information is passed to the Manager via the scanner SmartConnector appropriate for your vulnerability scanner product based on IP address, MAC address, and host name.

Updated vulnerability information is added to existing assets with matching identifiers. If a matching asset does not already exist, the system creates one.

The system creates assets from vulnerability scan reports differently for dynamic and static zones. For more about dynamic and static zones, see ["Dynamic and Static Zones" on page 701](#).

For details about how the system creates assets from vulnerability scans, see ["Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report" on page 765](#).



**Tip**

Scanner reports list only information received through the scanner, whereas Asset Editors include the full list of both scanner data and vulnerability mappings stored in the system. Therefore, the Editors might show more or different information than the information from scanner reports.

### Devices Reporting Through SmartConnectors

The administrator can configure asset creation for each device that reports to that SmartConnector based on IP address, MAC address, and host name when the Manager receives events from SmartConnectors.

This feature makes it possible to add assets to the network model that may not be part of a regular asset scanning report without having to create them individually. Assets created using this method do not contain vulnerability information, although once they are added to the network model, they can be supplemented with matching data that arrives from a scanner report or that you add individually using the ArcSight Console.

Administrators can enable the option to create assets for network devices in the Manager Configuration Wizard. For more about running the Manager Configuration Wizard, see the topic “Reconfiguring ArcSight Manager” in the Administrator’s Guide.

The system creates assets differently for devices in static zones and those in dynamic zones. For more about static and dynamic zones, see “Dynamic and Static Zones” on page 701.

For details about how the system creates assets for devices reporting through SmartConnectors, see “Creating Assets for Network Devices” on page 769.

For more about how to tune asset auto creation from the ArcSight Console, refer to the Standard Content Guide — ArcSight System and ArcSight Administration. For information about an optional ArcSight Foundation, refer to the Standard Content Guide for that Foundation. ESM documentation is available on Protect 724 at (<https://protect724.arcsight.com>).

It is also possible to customize how the asset auto-creation function works by modifying settings in the `server.properties` file. For additional details, see “Asset Auto-Creation Advanced Configuration Options” on page 772. For more about working with properties files, see the topic “Managing and Changing Properties File Settings” in the Administrator’s Guide.

For an overview of the ways by which the network model can be populated with assets, see “Populating the Network Model with Assets” on page 703.

## Asset Aging and Model Confidence



**Note**

Only the assets belonging to the following categories are considered for aging:

- /Site Asset Categories/Scanned/Open Ports
- /Site Asset Categories/Scanned Vulnerabilities

The asset aging function keeps track of the last time an asset was scanned, and incrementally diminishes an asset’s model confidence in the priority formula over time to zero if it hasn’t been scanned in more than 120 days. (You can configure the time range.)

An asset’s age is tracked by default. You can opt to automatically disable an asset that exceeds the configured age limit. This process is described in “Asset Aging” in the Administrator’s Guide.



**Note**

### Resolving zone information on disabled assets

To ensure that events get sorted properly, the system continues to resolve an asset’s zone information and add it to the event, even when the asset is inactive (disabled).

**To see why an asset was disabled:**

- 1 In the Navigator panel, go to the Assets tab in the Assets tree. The disabled asset appears with a grey icon.
- 2 Right-click the disabled asset and select **Show Disabled Reason**. The message displayed indicates how many days it has been since the asset's last scan.

**To re-enable a disabled asset:**

If an asset has been automatically disabled, you can manually re-enable it. In the Navigator panel in the Assets tab of the Assets tree, right-click the disabled icon and select **Enable**.

For more about the priority formula, see [“Priority Calculations and Ratings” on page 932](#).

## Asset Ranges

An asset range is a group of network assets that use a contiguous block of IP addresses. An asset range is useful if you have many network nodes that would be impractical to track individually, or that may come and go from the network, such as desktop PCs and laptops.

When a SmartConnector processes an event, the Manager, or the correlation engine, its endpoints are identified either as a single asset or as an asset belonging to an asset range. A reference to the asset or asset range identifier is populated in the event schema.

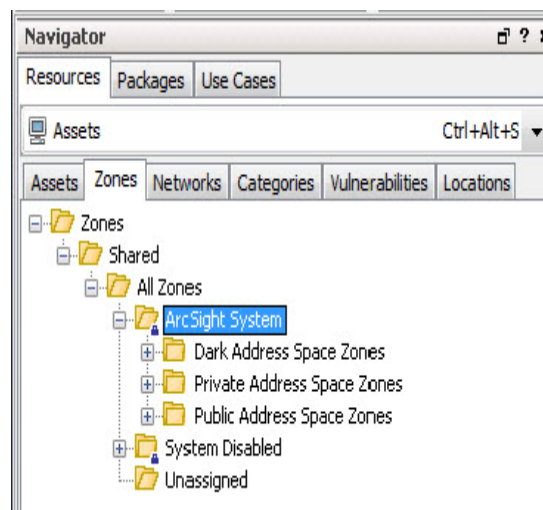
## Zones

Zones are ArcSight resources that represent a functional part of the network with contiguous IP addresses, such as DMZ, VPN, wireless LAN, or DHCP.

Every asset or address range is associated with a zone. ArcSight is configured with the standard global IP address ranges represented as zones, so if your network uses only these public IP addresses, ArcSight can resolve them without setting up additional zones.

Zone groups are folders in which one or more zone resource is stored. Although the assets contained in a zone do not inherit the properties of a zone, the zone groups are hierarchical, which means that properties assigned to a zone group apply to all the zones contained within that group.

The following zones are standard:





Create your own zones if you have overlapping private networks. Private networks usually model a functional group within your network or a subnet, such as a wireless LAN, the engineering network, the VPN, or the DMZ.

For details about using the zone editor, see [“Managing Zones” on page 727](#) in [“Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories” on page 717](#).

## Dynamic and Static Zones

The asset auto-creation feature (see [“Automatically-Created Assets” on page 697](#)) relies on zones that are already in place before device discovery occurs, either customer-created zones, or the default zones. When you add a SmartConnector, you assign one or more existing Networks to that Connector. All assets reported by that Connector are then associated with that Network and the zones the Network represents.

The system differentiates dynamic and static zones to classify the represented asset types.

### Static Zones

Devices in a static zone use static (constant) IP addresses. These are devices that stay on the network and use the same IP address for all traffic. In order to identify assets in static zones, the assets must have either a unique IP address, a unique host name, or both.

### Dynamic Zones

Devices in a dynamic zone use dynamic addressing (such as DHCP). Dynamic zones represent assets that come and go from the network, such as laptops. By default, the system requires either a MAC address or a host name to identify assets in dynamic zones. The system first looks for a MAC address; if one is not present, it uses the host name.



**Caution**

#### Classifying Zones as Static and Dynamic

It is important that zones are classified properly as dynamic or static.

If a zone is classified as static, but hosts assets that come and go from the network, the system may not be able to update the network model properly. For example:

- The updated network might have duplicate and disabled assets
- Other information, such as vulnerability information and open ports, may not get updated properly

### Static Assets in Dynamic Zones

If an asset is classified as static, but belongs to a dynamic zone, the system treats the asset as if it was in a static zone. See the description and links above for how the asset auto-creation feature works for static zones.

## Networks

Networks are ArcSight resources that are used to differentiate between zones whose IP ranges overlap, such as when branch locations assign the same private address spaces to resources used in other corporate locations.

The system comes configured with two standard networks: Local and Global. The Local network is where you add your custom zones. Zone mappings in the Local network override the default zone mappings provided by the Global network.

The Global network provides default zone mapping if no local networks are defined, and automatically provides the correct addressing information to ArcSight SmartConnectors when they are installed.

Custom Networks are also used to compartmentalize Customer designations in MSSP situations.

When you associate a customer or a location with a network in the Network Editor, zones automatically access this information. (See [“Managing Networks” on page 728](#) in [“Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories” on page 717.](#))

## Asset Model

The resources that make up the asset model are part of the overall network modeling process. The asset model resources describe attributes of the assets themselves for different purposes. *Locations* and *Vulnerabilities* are part of the Assets resource.

### Locations

The system provides a location database that maps an IP address to the owning body for the block of IP addresses to which it belongs. Your organization may have finer-grained detail, such as the physical location of all of your networks or networks outside your control, or corrections to the database that the system supplies. The Location resource is the way you can override the default location mappings with location information relevant to your network.

Location is an attribute you can set if the asset you are modeling resides in a geographic location that differs from the location set by the mapping database that associates IP addresses with location information.

### Vulnerabilities

The asset vulnerabilities on your network are normally discovered and updated by scanners. The most common manual change to a vulnerability resource is to associate it with a Knowledge Base article. You can associate assets with vulnerabilities from either the Vulnerabilities or Assets editors. (See [“Vulnerability Editor” on page 723](#) in [“Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories” on page 717.](#))

### Asset Categories

Asset categories are ArcSight resources that describe the properties of an asset in terms of how it is used. Asset categories are one of the key ways to add differentiation, relevance, and context to the millions of events passing through your network.

Asset categories establish identity, ownership, and criticality of the assets on your network. The root of a particular category (for example, **Criticality** in the group /All Asset Categories/System Asset Categories/Criticality) defines the property itself, whereas the members of the category (for example, the criticality levels Very High, High, and so on) define the possible values for that property.

You can create new asset categories as a right-click option in the navigation panel, and associate categories with assets using the Asset Editor. Most methods for populating the network model described in [“Populating the Network Model with Assets” on page 703](#) include adding asset categories to your assets, asset ranges, asset groups, and zones.

## Asset Categories Assigned to Assets, Asset Ranges, and Asset Groups

Categories assigned to individual assets and asset ranges apply only to those individual assets. This is the most granular level to which you can apply asset categories. If an asset falls into an asset range, it inherits the asset categories assigned to the asset range.

Asset Groups are a folder containing one or more Asset resources. Asset Groups are hierarchical, so properties assigned to an Asset Group apply to all the assets in that group.

Categories assigned to asset groups apply to all assets and asset ranges in that group. Individual assets and asset categories within a group inherit the categories assigned to the group, if any, in addition to the asset categories assigned to them individually.

## Asset Categories Assigned to Zones

Categories assigned to zones describe the network itself, not assets within it. Use this to categorize traffic on a network where the assets are not constant, such as a wireless or VPN network. For example, categories might describe whether the network is wireless, encrypted, or a VPN. You may be characterizing the network or the traffic on the network (wireless describes the network; encrypted describes the traffic) rather than the assets. Asset categories assigned to zones are not passed on to assets contained within that zone.

For more about asset modeling, see the topic “Asset Model” in ESM 101.

For instructions about how to set asset categories, see the following topics:

- [“Populating the Network Model with Assets” on page 703](#)
- [“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707](#)
- [“Managing Asset Categories” on page 728](#) in [“Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories” on page 717](#).



Always exercise caution when deleting or changing existing asset categories. Changing an asset category can break existing conditions that use that category. As a best practice, create new categories in new groups.

## Populating the Network Model with Assets

There are several ways to populate the network model with the assets that represent your monitored network. Most enterprises use a combination of these methods:

### ArcSight Console-Based Methods:

- [“Individually Using Network Modeling Resources” on page 704](#)
- [“In a Batch Using the Network Modeling Wizard” on page 705](#)

### SmartConnector-Based Methods:

- [“Using the Asset Model Import FlexConnector” on page 705](#)
- [“Automatically From a Vulnerability Scanner Report” on page 705](#)

### ArcSight-Assisted Method:

- [“As an Archive File From an Existing Configuration Database” on page 706](#)

**Note**

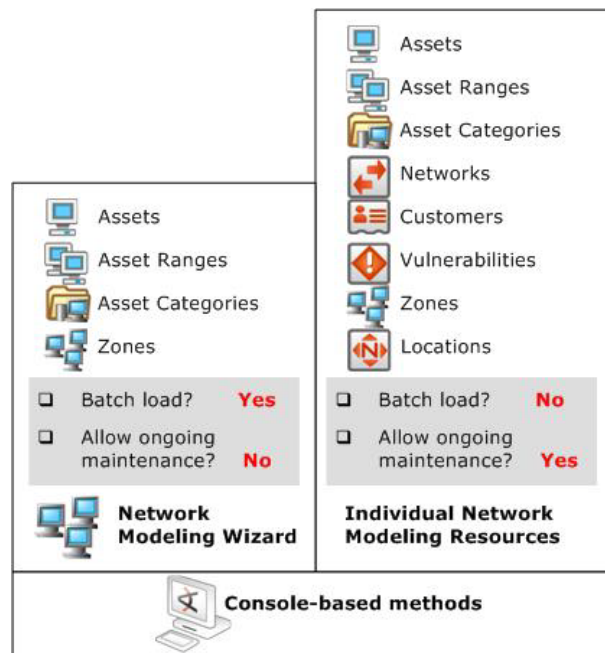
Do not import assets with an ampersand (&) in the name. The ArcSight resource framework does not support that character in asset and zone names.

When importing assets using a scanner import connector, the automatically-created asset group name is based on the new asset's zone name. If that name already exists in the same folder, then instead of importing the asset there, as you expect, it imports the asset into either a standard System Asset Group or a higher level custom Asset Group, so as to avoid a folder name-clash.

To avoid this, ensure that when you manually create asset range names, they do not match the Zone names of assets that you intend to import using a asset scanner connector.

## ArcSight Console-Based Methods

The ArcSight Console provides two ways to populate the network model: individual network modeling resources, and a Network Modeling wizard.



All the tools for modeling the network are in the ArcSight Console. The Network Modeling Wizard provides a quick way to add basic assets to your Network Model at setup time.

## Individually Using Network Modeling Resources

Set parameters for every asset using the network modeling resources (Assets, Asset Ranges, Zones, Networks, and Customers) and asset modeling resources (Asset Categories, Vulnerabilities, and Locations).

Use these tools in conjunction with the other batch-loading methods that only offer limited distinctions. As long as primary identifiers, such as IP address, host name, and MAC address, remain the same, the automatic update methods only update fields with new information, so the Network Model remains stable.

For more about network and asset modeling tools, see the topic "ArcSight Network Model" in ESM 101.

## In a Batch Using the Network Modeling Wizard










The ArcSight Console provides a Network Modeling wizard as a set-up and configuration tool (menu option **Tools > Network Model**). The Network Modeling wizard enables you to load Assets, Asset Ranges, and Zones along with Asset Category information. If you also add a vulnerability scanner as described in [“SmartConnector-Based Methods” on page 705](#), the existing assets in the model are updated with the vulnerability scan report data.

The Network Modeling Wizard is flexible. It can take output from any device type in CSV format. The CSV file can include as many new or pre-existing asset categories as are relevant to the devices without having to add asset category information one by one later using the Asset Category resource in the ArcSight Console. This tool is appropriate for initial set-up and configuration, not as a method for maintaining the network model.

For more about the Network Modeling Wizard, see [“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707](#).

## SmartConnector-Based Methods

These methods enable batch loading and automatic ongoing maintenance. Both methods offer limited distinctions. These methods are described in more detail below.

 Assets  Vulnerabilities  Asset Categories (OS and open port only)	 Assets  Asset Categories  Locations
<input type="checkbox"/> Batch load? <b>Yes</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Allow ongoing maintenance? <b>Yes</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Batch load? <b>Yes</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Allow ongoing maintenance? <b>Yes</b>
 <b>Scanner SmartConnector</b>	 <b>Asset Model Import FlexConnector</b>
 <b>Connector-based methods</b>	

## Using the Asset Model Import FlexConnector

The system offers an Asset Model Import FlexConnector that reads Asset, Location, and Asset Category information from a CSV file, which it then sends to the Manager. New assets are added and existing assets in the model are updated.

This method does not create asset ranges, and assumes that Zones, Networks, customers and locations are already created.

For more about the Asset Import FlexConnector, see the Developer's Guide for Asset Model Import FlexConnector.

## Automatically From a Vulnerability Scanner Report

Set up a scanner SmartConnector (such as FoundStone, ISS Internet Scanner, or Nessus) to use the output of a vulnerability scan to convert device information into Assets along with Vulnerability information, and basic Asset Categories, such as operating system and open ports. The scanner connector that corresponds with your vulnerability scanning

product sets up a directory that to regularly scan for updated reports. It then converts the scanner report output into internal scanner meta-events, which the Manager converts into Assets, open port and OS Asset Categories, and Vulnerabilities. For more about the architecture of how this works, see the topic “How Vulnerability Scans Populate and Update the Network Model” in ESM 101.

You can also set the scanner SmartConnector to save network model data as a CSV file, which you can then upload into the Manager using the Files resource during your initial network model setup.

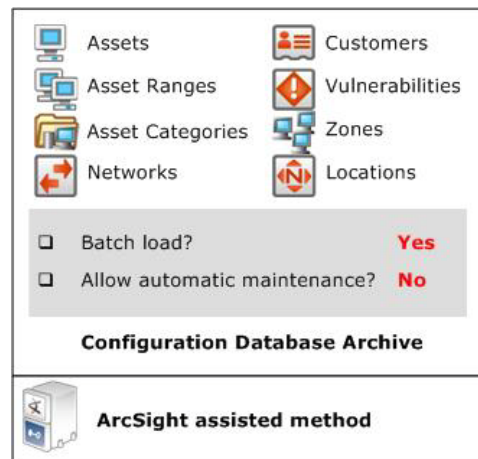
Data derived from vulnerability scanner reports does not create asset ranges, and assumes that Zones and Networks are already created. Once scanner data is imported, you can add Customer and Location distinctions to the assets individually. For details about how the system adds updated vulnerability information arriving from a new scanner report, see [“Reporting on Output from Vulnerability Scanners” on page 726](#).

This method is appropriate for updating and maintaining your network model. Subsequent scans update the basic Asset, Asset Category, and Vulnerability information without overwriting the other network modeling settings you add individually.

For more information about the scanner SmartConnector for your vulnerability scanning product, see the SmartConnector Configuration Guide that corresponds with your vulnerability scanning equipment.

## ArcSight-Assisted Methods

HP ArcSight Professional Services can help you populate the Network Model from an existing configuration database.



### As an Archive File From an Existing Configuration Database

Many enterprise networks have third-party systems that already model the properties of the assets on your network. With the help of HP ArcSight Professional Services, you can export these network models, translate the format into the schema using an ArcSight resource-generating utility, and import it to the Manager as a resource archive with the help of ArcSight Professional Services.

The tools HP ArcSight Professional Services use can generate any type of resource, so using this method, you can have a fully populated network model without having to do any individual configuration.

## Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard

The Network Model wizard (menu option **Tools > Network Model**) makes it possible to quickly populate the network model by batch loading asset and zone information from Comma Separated Values (CSV) files.



**Note**

- The Network Model Wizard is available to users with Administrator privileges.
- Do not import assets with an ampersand (&) in the name. The ArcSight resource framework does not support that character in asset and zone names.

The following data can be imported into the Manager from CSV files:

- **Zones** define functional parts of a network, such as a wireless LAN, an engineering network, a VPN or a DMZ. For the column types of the zones CSV file, see [“Zones CSV File Format” on page 710](#).
- **Assets** are individual nodes on the network, such as servers and routers. For the column types of the assets CSV file, see [“Assets CSV File Format” on page 711](#).
- **Asset ranges** are sets of network nodes addressable as a contiguous block of IP addresses. They are useful when you have many network nodes that are impractical to track individually, or that may come and go from the network, such as laptops. Asset ranges should be a subset of the IP address ranges defined for zones. For the column types of the asset ranges CSV file, see [“Asset Ranges CSV File Format” on page 713](#).

You can import combinations of input CSV files at one time using the Network Model wizard but only one file of each type can be imported during a single import. For example, if you only have assets to import, you can import only an assets CSV file. If you have a zones CSV file, an assets CSV file, and an asset ranges CSV file to import, you can import all three at once using the Network Model wizard.

## Specifying CSV Column Types

Each CSV file type defines a set of required columns and optional columns. The CSV file can contain columns that are not used by the Network Model wizard. Columns can be in any order but the Network Model wizard requires that you specify their types so the wizard knows how to interpret them. Specify the column type using one of the following methods:

- Specify the column type in the header of the CSV file itself, prior to launching the Network Model wizard. For instructions, see [“Specify the Column Type Using a Header” on page 708](#).
- While running the Network Model wizard, assign the appropriate column type for each column in the Select Column Headers panel. For instructions, see [“Assign the Column Type in the Wizard” on page 709](#).

Columns not used by the Network Model wizard must be assigned the column type `Ignore`. Only columns of type `Ignore` and `Category URI` can be repeated in the CSV file. For all other column types, only one instance of the column type can be assigned in the file. For example in a zones CSV file, only one column should be assigned the `Name` column type. If duplicate columns of a non-repeatable column type exist in the CSV file, one of the columns should be assigned the `Ignore` column type. For example if two name columns appear in the CSV file, one should be assigned the `Name` column type and the other should be assigned the `Ignore` column type.



## Specify the Column Type Using a Header

In this method, you specify the column type in the first row (header) of the CSV file itself before importing the CSV file using the wizard. The column name in the header must match the column type specified in:

- [“Zones CSV File Format” on page 710](#)
- [“Assets CSV File Format” on page 711](#)
- [“Asset Ranges CSV File Format” on page 713](#)

As shown in following sample zones CSV file, the column names in the first row match the column types specified in [“Zones CSV File Format” on page 710](#). The wizard determines how to interpret each column using the column type specified in the header.

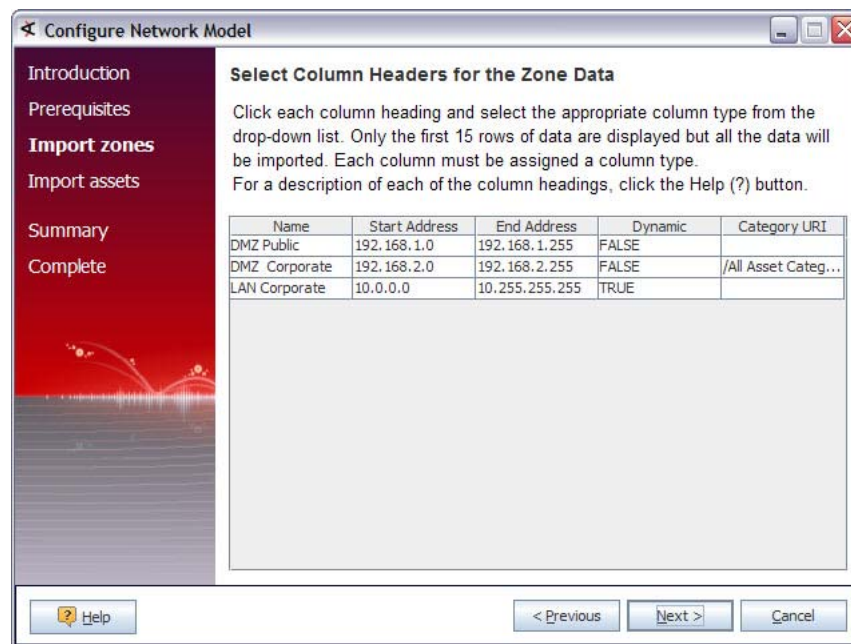
**Name,Start Address,End Address,Dynamic,Category URI**

DMZ Public,192.168.1.0,192.168.1.255,FALSE,

DMZ Corporate,192.168.2.0,192.168.2.255,FALSE,/All Asset Categories/Site  
Asset Categories/Business Impact Analysis/Network Domains/Email/

LAN Corporate,10.0.0.0,10.255.255.255,TRUE,

When this zone's CSV file is imported into the wizard, the wizard correctly matches the column types because you specified them in the header, as shown:



## Specifying Multiple Categories in one Category Column

When manually creating a CSV file for importing Zones, assets or Asset Ranges, you can specify more than one category to appear in the same category column:

Column Type - Importing Zones CSV File using Header Row:

**Name,Start Address,End Address,Dynamic,Category URI,Category URI**



```
HRZone,10.0.1.1,10.0.1.255,FALSE,/All Asset Categories/ArcSight System
Administration/Databases,/All Asset Categories/ArcSight System
Administration/Window Servers
```

```
ITZone,10.0.2.1,10.0.2.255,FALSE,/All Asset Categories/ArcSight System
Administration/Databases,/All Asset Categories/ArcSight System
Administration/Window Servers
```

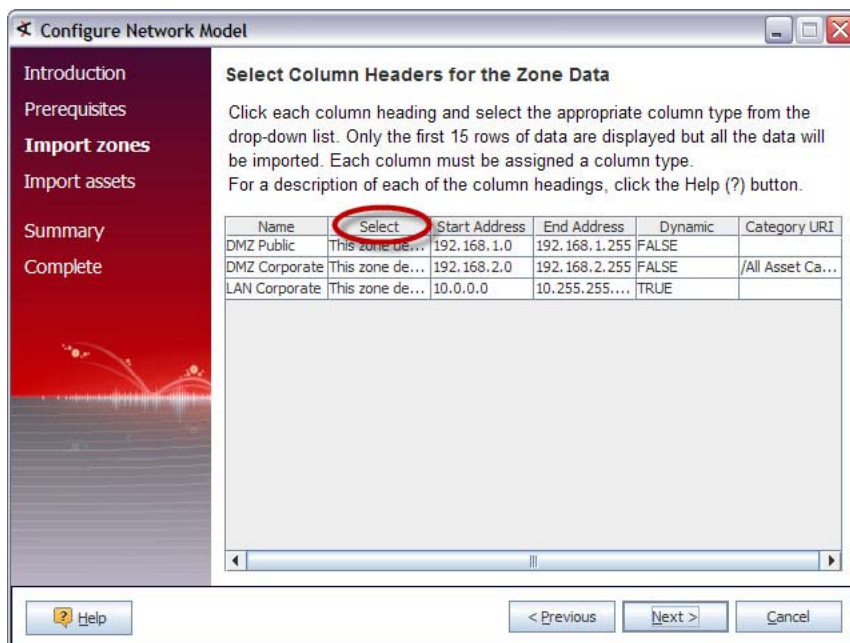
Importing Zones CSV file without Header row is the same, except without the first line.

The above is an Example of Importing Zones, but using Multiple Categories works the same way for importing Assets and Asset Ranges.

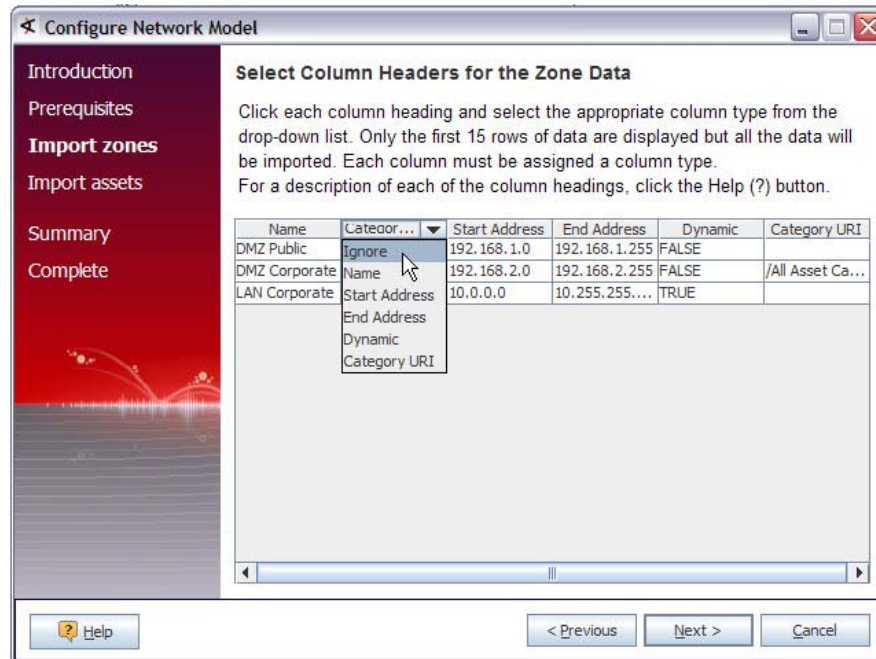
## Assign the Column Type in the Wizard

In this method, you assign the column type in the Select Column Headers panels while running the wizard. When the following sample zones CSV file (which does not contain a header row) is imported, the wizard does not know how to interpret all the columns as shown below.

```
DMZ Public,192.168.1.0,192.168.1.255,FALSE,
DMZ Corporate,192.168.2.0,192.168.2.255,FALSE,/All Asset Categories/Site
Asset Categories/Business Impact Analysis/Network Domains/Email/
LAN Corporate,10.0.0.0,10.255.255.255,TRUE,
```



By default, when this sample data is imported into the wizard, the second column is automatically assigned to the **Select** column type but it is a description of the zone and should be assigned the **Ignore** column type. To change the column type, click the title of the column, and from the drop-down menu select the appropriate column type as shown:



## Zones CSV File Format

Zones define functional parts of a network, such as a wireless LAN, private networks, or subnets. For example, the following network areas could be identified as a zone: the VPN, the DMZ, or an engineering network. Zones are identified with a contiguous block of addresses.



**Caution**

Each zone should specify a unique range of IP addresses. The IP addresses specified by zones should not overlap. If you import a zone that overlaps with a zone already specified on the ArcSight Manager and the new zone has a different name than the existing zone, the following occurs:

- The new zone is created.
- The existing zone is invalid and is displayed with the broken zone icon in the ArcSight Console.

You can define a set of zones in ESM by batch loading zone definitions from a zones CSV file. Zone CSV files contain the columns listed in the table below. When a zones CSV file is selected for import, by default only the first fifteen rows of data are displayed in Select Column Headers for the Zone Data panel. However, when the data is imported into the ArcSight Manager, all the rows are imported. For more information, see ["Increasing the Number of Rows Displayed" on page 715](#).

For the wizard to determine how to process the imported data, the type of each column must be specified. For more information, see ["Specifying CSV Column Types" on page 707](#).

When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Data to Import panel, the zone data is imported into the ArcSight Manager. The new zones are created in the /All Zones/Site Zones group. For example, if a zone called DMZPublic was specified in the imported

zones CSV file, a new zone is created at the following URI: /All Zones/Site Zones/DMZ Public. The new zones are assigned to the default network called Local.

Column Type	Description	Required Column?	Repeatable Column?	Example Value
<b>Name</b>	A descriptive name for the zone such as the purpose or geographical location.	Yes	No	DMZ Public
<b>Start Address</b>	The start of the range of IP addresses that defines the zone.	Yes	No	192.168.1.0
<b>End Address</b>	The end of the range of IP addresses that defines the zone.	Yes	No	192.168.1.255
<b>Dynamic</b>	Determines whether the devices defined in the zone use dynamic addressing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>true</b>—devices in the zone use dynamic addressing (DHCP)</li> <li><b>false</b>—devices in the zone use static IP addressing</li> </ul>	No Default is false	No	false
<b>Category URI</b>	The asset category to assign to zone. <b>NOTE:</b> The wizard does not create new categories. For the category to be assigned, it must already exist.	No	Yes This column can be repeated because a zone can be categorized into more than one asset category.	/All Asset Categories/Site Asset Categories/Business Impact Analysis/Business Role/Service/Web /
<b>Ignore</b>	The column contains data that is not used by the Network Model wizard when creating zones. For example, this column could contain a description of the zone.	No	Yes	This zone defines the public subnetwork of the DMZ.

## An Example of a Zones CSV File

Here is an example of the Zones CSV file:

```
HRZoneA,<Starting-IP-address>,<Ending-IP-address>,FALSE,/All Asset Categories/ArcSight System Administration/Databases/
```

```
IT Zone,<Starting-IP-address>,<Ending-IP-address>,TRUE,/All Asset Categories/ArcSight System Administration/Databases/
```

## Assets CSV File Format

Assets represent individual nodes on the network, such as servers and routers. For more information, see [“Network Model” on page 696](#).

You can define a set of assets in ESM by batch loading asset definitions from an Assets CSV file. Asset CSV files contain the columns listed in the table, below.

When an assets CSV file is selected for import, by default only the first fifteen rows of data are displayed in Select Column Headers for the Asset Data panel. However, when the data is imported into the ArcSight Manager, all the rows are imported. For more information, see [“Increasing the Number of Rows Displayed” on page 715](#).

For the wizard to determine how to process the imported data, the type of each column must be specified. For more information, see [“Specifying CSV Column Types” on page 707](#).

When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Data to Import panel, the asset data is imported into the ArcSight Manager. The new assets are created in the /All Assets/Site Assets group. For example, if an asset called DMZCorpEmailServer was specified in the imported assets CSV file, a new asset is created at the following URI: /All Assets/Site Assets/DMZCorpEmailServer. When imported, the new assets are auto-zoned. For more information, see [“Auto-Zoning of Imported Assets” on page 716](#).

**Table 23-1 Assets CSV File Columns**

Column Type	Description	Required Column?	Repeatable Column?	Example Value
<b>Name</b>	A descriptive name for the asset. This name must be unique. It is recommended to specify a name. However, if a name is not specified, a unique name is generated using the other fields.	No	No	DMZ Corp Email Server 1
<b>Host Name</b>	The host name of the network device represented by the asset.	No	No	dmz_corp_eml1
<b>IP Address</b>	The IP address of the network device represented by the asset.  <b>NOTE:</b> If no value is specified for this column (, ,) the asset is created with an IP address of 0.0.0.0.	Yes	No	192.168.2.1
<b>MAC Address</b>	The MAC address of the network device represented by the asset. The MAC address is made up of six groups of two hexadecimal digits can be separated by colons (:) or hyphens (-).	No	No	21-4D-5B-2A-3B-FF
<b>Static Addressing</b>	Defines if the network device is statically addressed even though the IP address of the asset is in a dynamic zone: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>true</b>—asset uses static IP addressing</li><li><b>false</b>—device uses dynamic addressing (DHCP)</li></ul> For more information, see <a href="#">“Static Addressing in a Dynamic Zone” on page 713</a> .	No Default is false	No	false

**Table 23-1** Assets CSV File Columns (Continued)

Column Type	Description	Required Column?	Repeatable Column?	Example Value
Category URI	<p>The asset category to assign to network device.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The wizard does not create new categories. For the category to be assigned, it must already exist.</p>	No	<p>Yes</p> <p>This column can be repeated because a network device can be categorized into more than one asset category.</p>	<p>/All Asset Categories/Site Asset</p> <p>Categories/Business Impact Analysis/Network Domains/Email/</p>
Ignore	The column contains data that is not used by the Network Model wizard when creating assets. For example, this column could contain a description of the asset.	No	Yes	This asset defines the Corporate Email Server in the DMZ.

## An Example of an Assets CSV File

Here is an example of the Assets CSV file:

```
Lab Test machine,lab-111,<IP-address>,<Mac-address>,true,/All Asset
Categories/ArcSight System Administration/Consoles/,/All Asset
Categories/ArcSight System Administration/Databases/
```

## Static Addressing in a Dynamic Zone

Set the **Static Addressing** column to `true` if the network device is statically addressed even though the IP address of the asset is in a dynamic zone. For example, set this column to `true`, for the following conditions:

- A dynamic zone is defined with the following IP range, such as: 192.0.2.0 - 192.0.2.12.
- A network device with an IP address of 192.0.2.5 is statically addressed even though it is defined in the dynamic zone.

For more about static and dynamic zones, see [“Dynamic and Static Zones” on page 701](#).

## Asset Ranges CSV File Format

**Asset ranges** represent sets of network nodes addressable as a contiguous block of IP addresses. Asset ranges are useful when you have a number of network nodes that would be impractical to track individually, or that may come and go from the network, such as

laptops. An asset range can define a group of assets that are not addressed individually. Asset ranges should be a subset of the IP address ranges defined for zones.



Each asset range should specify a unique range of IP addresses. The IP addresses specified by asset ranges should not overlap. If you import an asset range that overlaps with an asset range already specified on the ArcSight Manager and the new asset range has a different name than the existing asset range, the following occurs:

- the new asset range is created
- the existing asset range is invalid and displays with the broken asset range icon in the ArcSight Console

You can define a set of asset ranges in ESM by batch loading asset range definitions from an asset range CSV file. Asset range CSV files contain the columns listed in the table, below. When an assets CSV file is selected for import, by default only the first fifteen rows of data are displayed in Select Column Headers for the Asset Ranges Data panel. However, when the data is imported into the ArcSight Manager, all the rows are imported. For more information, see [“Increasing the Number of Rows Displayed” on page 715](#).

For the wizard to determine how to process the imported data, the type of each column must be specified. For more information, see [“Specifying CSV Column Types” on page 707](#).

When the Next button is clicked in the Summary of Data to Import panel, the asset range data is imported into the ArcSight Manager. The new asset ranges are created in the `/All Assets/Site Assets` group. For example, if an asset range called `DMZCorpHR` was specified in the imported asset range CSV file, a new asset range is created at the following URI: `/All Assets/Site Assets/DMZCorpHR`.

**Table 23-2 Asset Range CSV File Columns**

Column Type	Description	Required Column?	Repeatable Column?	Example Value
<b>Name</b>	A descriptive name for the asset range. This name must be unique.	Yes	No	DMZ Corp HR
<b>Start Address</b>	The start of the range of IP addresses that defines the asset range.	Yes	No	192.0.2.11
<b>End Address</b>	The end of the range of IP addresses that defines the asset range.	Yes	No	192.0.2.20
<b>Category URI</b>	The asset category to assign to asset range. <b>NOTE:</b> The wizard does not create new categories. For the category to be assigned, it must already exist.	No	Yes This column can be repeated because an asset range can be categorized into more than one asset category.	<code>/All Asset Categories/Site Asset Categories/Business Impact Analysis/Data Role/HR Data/</code>

**Table 23-2** Asset Range CSV File Columns (Continued)

Column Type	Description	Required Column?	Repeatable Column?	Example Value
Ignore	The column contains data that is <b>not</b> used by the Network Model wizard when creating asset ranges. For example, this column could contain a description of the asset range.	No	Yes	This asset range defines the all the corporate human resources assets.

## An Example of an Asset Ranges CSV File

Here is an example of the Asset Ranges CSV file:

```
HRRangeA,<Starting-IP-address>,<Ending-IP-address>,/All Asset
Categories/ArcSight System Administration/Databases/
```

```
IT Range X,<Starting-IP-address>,<Ending-IP-address>,/All Asset
Categories/ArcSight System Administration/Databases/
```

## Increasing the Number of Rows Displayed

By default, only the first fifteen rows of data are displayed in Select Column Headers for the <Resource Type> Data panels. However, when the data is imported into the ArcSight Manager, all the rows are imported.

To increase the number of rows displayed, add the property `usecase.networkmodeling.maxrowfortable` to the `<ARCSIGHT_HOME>/config/console.properties` file and set the value of the property to a number greater than fifteen. Restart the ArcSight Console.

## Summary of Data to Import

In the Summary of Data to Import panel, a summary of the network modeling data ready to import into the ArcSight Manager is displayed. If you click **Cancel** in this panel or any of the preceding panels, no data is imported into the Manager.

- 1 Click **Next** to start the import process.

A temporary Archive Resource Bundle (ARB) file with the import data is created and the Install Packages dialog displays.

- 2 To install the data from the temporary ARB file, in the Update Packages dialog, click **OK**.

The network modeling data is imported into the ArcSight Manager and the Data Imported pane displays. In addition, the Installing Packages and the Importing Packages dialogs display.

- 3 Close the open dialogs:

**a** In the Installing Packages dialog, click **OK**.

**b** In the Importing Packages dialog, click **OK**.

## Network Data Imported into ArcSight Manager

When network modeling data is imported from the network modeling data CSV files, new resources are created in the following groups on the ArcSight Manager:

- New **zones** are created in the `/All Zones/Site Zones` group. For example, if a zone called `DMZPublic` was specified in the imported zones CSV file, a new zone is created at the following URI: `/All Zones/Site Zones/DMZ Public`.  
The new zones are assigned to the default network called `Local`.
- New **assets** are created in the `/All Assets/Site Assets` group. For example, if an asset called `DMZCorpEmailServer` was specified in the imported assets CSV file, a new asset is created at the following URI: `/All Assets/Site Assets/DMZCorpEmailServer`. When imported, the new assets are auto-zoned. For more information, see [“Auto-Zoning of Imported Assets” on page 716](#).
- New **asset ranges** are created in the `/All Assets/Site Assets` group. For example, if an asset range called `DMZCorpHR` was specified in the imported asset range CSV file, a new asset range is created at the following URI: `/All Assets/Site Assets/DMZCorpHR`.

In the Data Imported dialog, click **Finish** to close the wizard.

### Auto-Zoning of Imported Assets

When new assets are imported into the ArcSight Manager using the Network Model wizard, an attempt is made to assign the assets to the appropriate zone from the default network called `Local`. This process is called auto-zoning.

When the asset is imported, if a zone is found with an address range that includes the imported asset and that zone is located in the `Local` network, the matching zone is assigned to the asset. For the asset to find the matching zone, the matching zone must either:

- Already exist on the ArcSight Manager prior to the import.
- Be imported with the asset as part of the same import process—part of the same transaction. Zones are created before assets in the import process.

If no matching zone is found in the network, no zone is assigned.

The following example illustrates the auto-zone process. A zone called `DMZCorporate` is defined in the `Local` network on the Manager with a starting address of `192.0.2.0` and an ending address of `192.0.2.22`. If an asset called `DMZCorpDatabase` with an IP address of `192.168.2.11` is imported by the wizard, the `DMZCorporate` zone is assigned to `DMZCorpDatabase` asset because the IP address of the `DMZCorpDatabase` asset is in the range of addresses specified in the `DMZCorporate` zone and the `DMZCorporate` zone is located in the `Local` network.



**Note**

Only one asset with a given host name is allowed in a given zone on a network. When two assets with the same host name are imported, and if the Manager assigns them to the same zone in the same network, both assets are imported but one of the assets is disabled and displays with the broken-asset icon in the ArcSight Console.



## Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories

The Assets resource provides tools for managing assets and asset ranges (see [“Assets” on page 697](#) and [“Asset Ranges” on page 700](#)), and tools for managing the other network and asset modeling features associated with assets:

- Networks
- Zones
- Locations
- Vulnerabilities
- Asset Categories

*Networks* and *Zones* describe characteristics of how the asset is represented in the network itself; *Locations*, *Vulnerabilities*, and *Asset Categories* describe attributes of the assets that can be used for prioritization and correlation.

You can organize any of these distinctions into groups upon which you can set up user access controls.

You can also create a channel based on any of these distinctions to get additional monitoring views into the events happening on your network.

This section describes how to manage these resources, and the context actions you can take from right-click menus.

## Managing Assets

This topic explains how to create, edit, move, add to, and delete assets, and how to select them in the Common Conditions Editor. For an overview of what assets are, the resources that comprise them, how they fit into the network model, and the ways to populate the network model, see [“Network Model” on page 696](#).

## Creating an Asset

This topic describes how to create an asset manually through the ArcSight Console.



You can create assets manually using the ArcSight Console (as described in this topic), using the Network Model wizard, or dynamically from scanner data. See also, [“Network Model” on page 696](#) and [“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707](#).

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Assets**.
- 2 Right-click a group and choose **New Asset**.
- 3 Select the **Attributes** tab and enter values in the fields described below.
- 4 Click **OK**.

Asset Attributes	Description
Name	The asset's friendly name. This field can default to the asset's host name or IP address.

Asset Attributes	Description
IP Address	The asset's IP address, in dotted-decimal notation.
MAC Address	The unique hardware ID for the network device.
Host Name	The asset's DNS name.
Location	As described in Assets and Changing Assets.
Zone	As described in Assets and Changing Assets.

After you fill in the attribute fields, use the other tabs in the Asset Editor as necessary to add resources.

Asset View	Contents
Categories	Use the <b>Add</b> button on this tab to select network categories with which to associate the asset.
Alternate Interfaces	Use the <b>Add</b> button on this tab to select a second asset ID if this asset has an additional ID on another network. Alternate interfaces usually apply only to network boundary devices, such as bridges, that have two MACs.
Vulnerabilities	Use the <b>Add</b> button on this tab to select certain vulnerabilities with which to associate the asset.
Notes	Use the text box and <b>Save</b> button on this tab to write and file additional information concerning the asset.

## Editing an Asset

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click an asset and choose **Edit Asset**.
- 2 On the **Attributes** tab, edit the text fields as described above.
- 3 On the other tabs, add or delete information as necessary.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying an Asset

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, navigate to an asset and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the asset, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the asset, or **Link** to create a copy of the asset that is linked to the original asset.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the asset that is not affected when the original asset is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the asset that is linked to the original asset. Therefore, if you edit a linked asset, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked assets, you can either delete the selected asset or all linked asset copies.

## Deleting an Asset



Take care when deleting assets. Asset groups required for correct operation are locked, however, depending on your permissions, it is possible to delete the individual assets in those groups, such as the assets automatically created to track ArcSight components.

Do not delete ArcSight System Administration assets without consulting an ArcSight administrator.

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click an asset and choose **Delete Asset**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Showing Assets in a Channel

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click an asset or group of assets and choose **Show Assets**.

The assets are displayed in an active channel grid view.

- 2 If applicable, you can also show assets recursively. To do so, right-click an asset group, and choose **Show Assets Recursively**. This shows assets not only in the selected group but also all children in an active channel.

## Auto Zoning an Asset

You can auto zone up to 1,000 assets at a time using the Navigator.



You cannot use Auto Zone to move locked assets.

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click an asset or group of assets and choose **Auto Zone**.  
The Network Selector dialog displays.
- 2 Browse for the network that contains the zone with an IP address range that includes the asset.
- 3 Select the network and click **OK**.

If a matching zone with an address range that includes the selected asset can be found in the network, the zone is assigned to the asset.

For example, a zone called DMZCorporate is defined in the Local network on the ArcSight Manager with a starting address of 192.0.2.0 and an ending address of 192.0.2.22. If an asset called DMZCorpDatabase with an IP address of 192.0.2.11 is selected for auto zoning in the Local network, the DMZCorporate zone is assigned to DMZCorpDatabase asset because the IP address of the DMZCorpDatabase asset is in the range of addresses specified in the DMZCorporate zone.

If no matching zone is found in the network, no zone is assigned.

An asset can be selected for auto zoning manually by right-clicking and choosing the **Auto Zone** option as described above. In addition, auto zoning can automatically occur when

assets are imported using the Network Model wizard. For more information, see [“Auto-Zoning of Imported Assets” on page 716](#).

## Managing Asset Groups

Asset groups are created to store similar groups or assets in a single location. Groups can be created within groups to meet enterprise needs. When a group is created within a group, the new group inherits the existing group's permissions. If a group is deleted, the assets within that group are also deleted. ArcSight provides these groups:

- **Shared:** this group lists assets to which the user has permission.
- **Unassigned:** this group lists assets not assigned to a group.

If you have Administrator access you also see another group named "All Assets" that contains all asset groups and assets.

### Creating an Asset Group

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Assets**.
- 2 In the Assets resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**. A "name" text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 In the name text field, type in a name.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

### Renaming an Asset Group

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the "name" text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

### Editing an Asset Group

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the **Group Editor**, edit the Name and Description text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

### Moving or Copying an Asset Group

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

### Deleting an Asset Group

- 1 In the Assets resource tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Asset Scalability

ESM stores information about hosts and network devices in resources called Assets. These resources can be automatically created by vulnerability scanner SmartConnectors. Asset Scalability refers to ESM's ability to manage hundreds of thousands of assets or more without adversely affecting security event throughput.

## Viewing Assets in Active Channels

The ArcSight Console shows assets, vulnerabilities, asset categories, scanner reports, and cases in active channels (rather than static grid views, as in previous releases). Now you can leverage the power of channels for asset management, including use of filters, field sets, better sorting capabilities, and dynamic display of an unlimited number of items (continually updated).

To start working with assets in active channels, choose **Assets** in the Navigator, and see ["About the Network Model" on page 695](#).

Note also that you can create an "asset channel". For more information on active channels, see ["Monitoring Active Channels" on page 77](#).

## Finding Assets

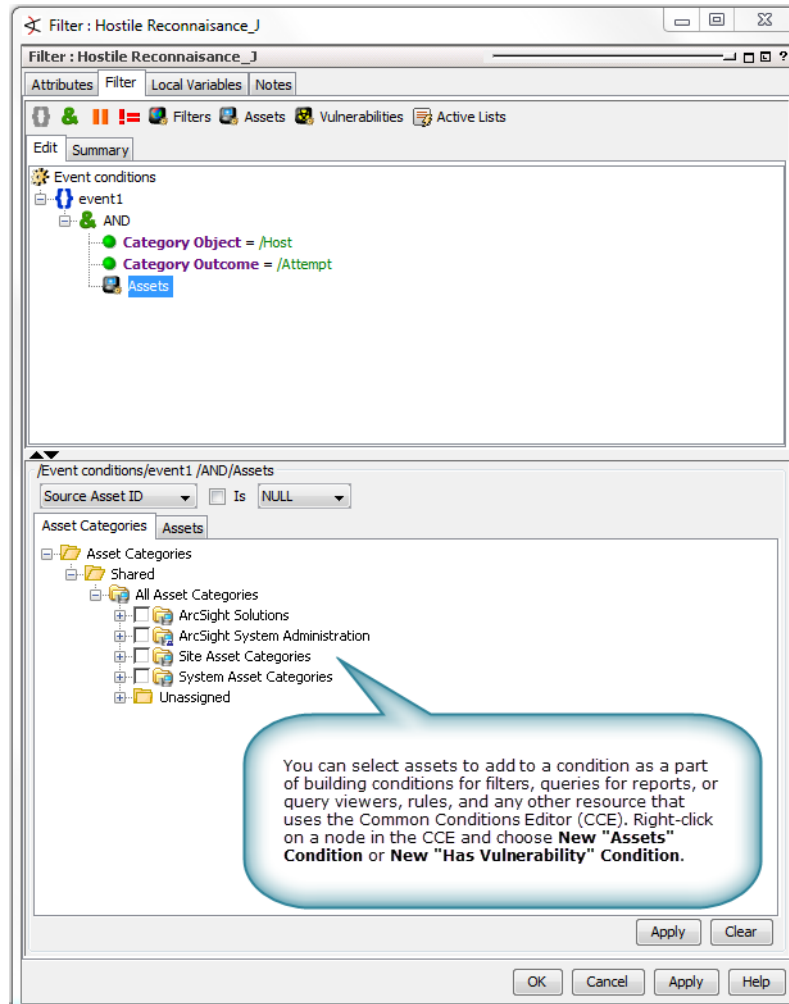
Resource search helps you find one asset in a potentially large set, avoiding the resource tree in the Navigator.

## Selecting Assets in the Common Conditions Editor

Once assets are added to your network model, you can select them in order to write conditions that help you analyze their role in the event traffic they process.

The Asset Selector appears in the Query Editor (in Reports), Rules Editor, Filters Editor, and in the Filter Settings panel, when creating an asset condition. In the Asset Selector, select the assets to add as a new condition.

Right-click a node in the Common Conditions Editor (CCE) and choose **New "Assets" Condition**. (For more about using the CCE, see ["Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)" on page 818](#).)



## Managing Vulnerabilities

This topic describes how to perform the authoring and management tasks for vulnerabilities. See also ["About the Network Model" on page 695](#).

Note also that you can create a "vulnerability channel". For more information on active channels, see ["Monitoring Active Channels" on page 77](#).

## Vulnerability Editor

Vulnerability Attribute	Description
Name	A descriptive name for the vulnerable asset (required)
Knowledge Base Article	Optionally, provide a link to a relevant knowledge base article.
External ID	Provide an alternate identifier for the vulnerability.

In addition to vulnerability **Attributes** (described above), the Vulnerability Editor includes a subtab for selecting and adding assets as **vulnerabilities**.

## Creating a Vulnerability

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Assets**, then click the **Vulnerabilities** tab.
- 2 Right-click a group and choose **New Vulnerability**.
- 3 On the Vulnerabilities Attributes tab, type in the following text fields:

Vulnerability Attribute	Description
Name	The vulnerability's name. It can be generated by the ArcSight Manager in response to vulnerability scanners. If so, this field is identical to the <b>External ID</b> field except that the pipe ( ) is replaced with a dash (-), such as CVE - CVE-1999-200.
Knowledge Base Article	A Knowledge Base article that further describes the vulnerability.
External ID	An ID of the format <standards body> <id>, such as CVE   CVE-1999-200.
Owners	ArcSight users who are interested in the vulnerability.
Notification Groups	ArcSight users who are notified of events involving the vulnerability.

- 4 On the Vulnerable Assets tab, click the **Add New** button, if you've defined assets that include this vulnerability.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Editing a Vulnerability


- 1 In the Vulnerabilities tree, right-click a vulnerability and choose **Edit Vulnerability**.
- 2 On the Attributes tab, type in the text fields as described above.
- 3 On the Vulnerable Assets tab, click the **Add New** button, if you've defined assets that include this vulnerability.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Moving or Copying a Vulnerability


- 1 In the Vulnerabilities tree, navigate to a vulnerability and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the vulnerability, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the vulnerability, or **Link** to create a copy of the vulnerability that is linked to the original vulnerability.

If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the vulnerability that is not affected when the original vulnerability is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the vulnerability that is linked to the original vulnerability. Therefore, if you edit a linked vulnerability, whether it be the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked vulnerabilities, you can either delete the selected vulnerability or all linked vulnerability copies.


## Retrieving Vulnerable Assets

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities resource tree, right-click a vulnerability and choose **Edit Vulnerability**.
- 2 Select the **Vulnerable Assets** tab.  
  
If you used a vulnerability scanner, all vulnerable asset discovered by the scanner are listed on this tab.
- 3 To refresh the vulnerabilities list, click the **Refresh** button (.

## Adding an Asset to a Vulnerability

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities resource tree, right-click a vulnerability and choose **Edit Vulnerability**.
- 2 In the Vulnerability Editor, select the **Vulnerable Assets** tab.
- 3 Click the **Add** button (.
- 4 Select an asset in the Assets Selector and click **OK**.
- 5 In the Vulnerability Editor, click **OK**.

## Deleting an Asset From a Vulnerability

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities tree, right-click an asset and choose **Edit Vulnerability**.
- 2 In the Vulnerability Editor, select the **Vulnerable Assets** tab.
- 3 Select an asset and click the **Delete** button (.
- 4 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.
- 5 In the Vulnerability Editor, click **OK**.

## Deleting a Vulnerability

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities tree, right-click a vulnerability and choose **Delete Vulnerability**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.



## Managing Vulnerability Groups

This topic describes the tasks involved in managing vulnerability groups.

### Creating a Vulnerability Group

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Assets**, then the **Vulnerabilities** tab.
- 2 In the Vulnerabilities resource tree, right-click a group and choose **New Group**.  
A "name" text field appears under the group you selected.
- 3 In the "name" text field, type in a name.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

### Renaming a Vulnerability Group

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities resource tree, under Assets, right-click a group and choose **Rename**.
- 2 In the "name" text field, rename the group.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

### Editing a Vulnerability Group

- 1 In the Asset resource tree's Vulnerabilities tab, right-click a group and choose **Edit Group**.
- 2 In the Group Editor, edit the **Name** and **Description** text fields.
- 3 Click **OK**.

### Moving or Copying a Vulnerability Group

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities tree, navigate to a group and drag and drop it into another group.
- 2 Choose **Move** to move the group, **Copy** to make a separate copy of the group, or **Link** to create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group.  
  
If you choose **Copy**, you create a separate copy of the group that is not affected when the original group is edited. If you choose **Link**, you create a copy of the group that is linked to the original group. Therefore, if you edit a linked group, whether the original or the copy, all links are edited as well. When deleting linked groups, you can either delete the selected group or all linked groups.

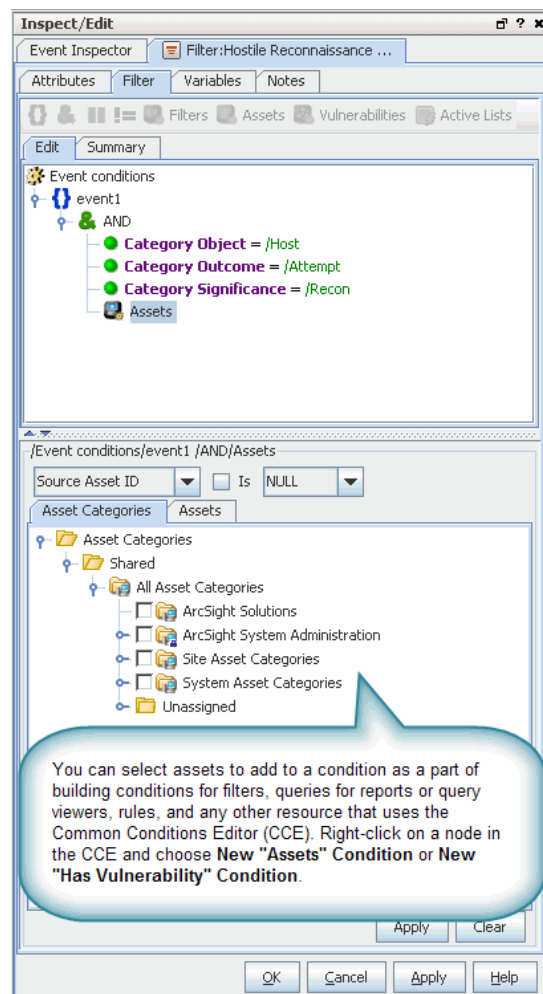
### Deleting a Vulnerability Group

- 1 In the Vulnerabilities tree, right-click a group and choose **Delete Group**.
- 2 In the dialog box, click **Yes**.

## Selecting Vulnerabilities in the Common Conditions Editor

You can open the Vulnerability Selector from the Reports Query Editor, Rules Editor, Filters Editor, and in the Filter Settings panel. In the Vulnerability Selector, you select vulnerabilities to add to reports, rules, or filters as a new condition.

Right-click a node in the Common Conditions Editor (CCE) and choose **New "Has Vulnerability" Condition**. (For more about using the CCE, see ["Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)"](#) on page 818.)



You use the Vulnerability Selector when performing these tasks:

- Adding a vulnerability condition to a report query (see ["Query Conditions"](#) on page 312)
- Specifying rule conditions (see ["Adding Vulnerability Conditions"](#) on page 405)
- Using filters (see [Chapter 7, Filtering Events](#), on page 175)

## Reporting on Output from Vulnerability Scanners

You can review the output of asset-vulnerability scanners in active channels and in the Vulnerabilities tab of the Asset Editor.

- 1 Choose the Assets resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 In the Assets tab of the Assets tree, right-click an individual asset and choose **Scanner Reports**. If scanner asset-vulnerability reports are available for the selected asset, they appear in a Viewer panel grid view as an active channel.

- 3 You can use the standard controls described in [Using Grids and Active Channels](#) to review the reports collectively.
- 4 Also in the channel view, you can double-click vulnerability scanner events to open them in the Asset Editor, where the Vulnerabilities tab lists the vulnerability details.

For information on creating and editing assets, see [“About the Network Model” on page 695](#).

You can create an active channel for selected scanner reports. For information on using active channels, see [“Monitoring Active Channels” on page 77](#).

## Reporting on Asset Vulnerabilities

You can create reports to show which assets are vulnerable to particular vulnerabilities or threats. ArcSight also provides Asset Reports that can be run from the Reports resource tree in the Navigator panel. For more information, see [“Using Report Templates” on page 279](#).

- 1 In the Navigator panel's drop-down menu, choose **Assets**, then click the **Vulnerabilities** tab.
- 2 In the Vulnerabilities tree, right-click a vulnerability and choose **Vulnerable Assets Report**.
- 3 In the Report Parameters dialog box, accept the vulnerability listed in the **Vulnerability URL** text field or click the **Vulnerability** button to run the report on another vulnerability.
- 4 Choose a Report File Format from the drop-down menu and click **OK**.

Reports can be archived in PDF, HTML, Excel, Comma Separated Value (csv), or Rich Text Format (rtf). The default PDF format should be used when archiving reports. Compared to PDF reports, other reports may lose formatting information and look different. In addition, Excel format is more memory intensive than PDF.

## Managing Zones

For an overview of zones and how they fit into the network model, see [“Zones” on page 700](#).



### Shrinking or Splitting Zones

The Zone Editor cannot be used to shrink a zone if there are assets that fall outside the range of the new zone. For example, if you have a zone with an address range of 192.0.2.1 to 192.0.2.27 and an asset in that zone with an IP address of 192.0.2.15, you cannot change the upper end of the zone range to 192.0.2.10 but you can change it to 192.0.2.20.

For shrinking or splitting zones that might encounter such issues, we suggest using a package export and import operation. You can export the asset resources and then import them back in. Package import and install automatically assigns assets to appropriate zones similar to the *auto-zoning* used by the Network Model Wizard. See [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#), [“Populating the Network Model Using the Wizard” on page 707](#), and [“Auto-Zoning of Imported Assets” on page 716](#).

Zone Attribute	Description
Name	A descriptive name for the IP address range the network zone represents (required)
Start Address	Provide an IP address that identifies the start of the network scope.
End Address	Provide an IP address that identifies the end of the network scope.
Dynamic Addressing	Click this option on or off to indicate whether this network uses dynamic addressing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checkmark (toggle <b>on</b>) this option to indicate that the network you are describing <b>uses dynamic addressing</b> (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol or DHCP server)</li> <li>• Leave this option unchecked (toggle <b>off</b>), if the network you are describing does not use dynamic addressing (but, rather, <b>uses static IP addresses</b>)</li> </ul>
Location	Select a location for this zone.
Network	Select the network in which this zone resides.

In addition to zone **Attributes** (described above), the Zone Editor includes subtabs for adding **Assets** and **Categories** into the **zone** you are configuring.

## Managing Networks

For an overview of networks and how they fit into the network model, see [“Networks” on page 701](#).

Network Attribute	Description
Name	A descriptive name for the network (required)
Customer	The Customer name is typically used if configuring assets for a customer on behalf of a managed security service provider (MSSP).
Location	This is an optional field for a descriptive name of the geographical location of the network.

In addition to network **Attributes** (described above), the Network Editor includes subtabs for adding **Connectors** and **Zones** into the selected **network** you are configuring.

## Managing Asset Categories

The Asset Categories subtab in the Navigator provides options to organize assets into groups based on *categories*. From the Navigator right-click menu on Asset Categories, you have several views and tools to help manage assets. From this menu, you can:

- Create channels to show asset categories and assets
- Move assets into and out of category groups
- Create new category groups

- Configure access control lists (ACLs) to limit or allow user access to groups of assets (see [“Managing Permissions and Resources” on page 603](#))

One asset can be categorized in more than one asset category. You can also assign asset categories to groups of resources. This transfers the asset category onto all the members of the group and its sub-groups. To assign an asset category:

- 1 In the Navigator drop-down menu, go to **Assets**. Select the **Assets** tab. Go to ArcSight System Administration/Agents, to find the SmartConnectors installed for your environment.
- 2 Right-click the asset or asset group you wish to categorize and select **Edit Asset** (or **Edit Group**).
- 3 In the Inspect/Edit panel, click the **Categories** tab. Click the add icon (+) at the top of the screen.
- 4 In the Asset Categories Selector pop-up window, select the asset categories that apply to this asset and click **OK**. For example:
  - a The usage category that applies to the asset (for example, /All Asset Categories/Site Asset Categories/Business Impact Analysis/Business Role/Revenue Generation)
  - b The criticality level that applies to the asset (for example, /All Asset Categories/System Asset Categories/Criticality/Very High)
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 for every asset or group of assets you wish to classify in one of the asset categories.

For an overview of asset categories and how they fit into the network model, see [“Asset Categories” on page 702](#).

## Managing Locations

For an overview of locations and how they fit into the network model, see [“Locations” on page 702](#).

Location Attribute	Description
Name	A descriptive name for the geographical location (required)
Latitude	Latitude for the location.  The format for this measurement is a preference setting for the ArcSight Console (menu option <b>Edit &gt; Preferences</b> , click Latitude and Longitude). For more information, see <a href="#">“Latitude and Longitude Options” on page 739</a> in <a href="#">“Changing User Preferences” on page 732</a> .
Longitude	Longitude for the location  The format for this measurement is a preference setting for the ArcSight Console (menu option <b>Edit &gt; Preferences</b> , click Latitude and Longitude). For more information, see <a href="#">“Latitude and Longitude Options” on page 739</a> in <a href="#">“Changing User Preferences” on page 732</a> .
Address	Provide details for <b>City</b> , <b>Region Code</b> , <b>Postal Code</b> , and <b>Country</b>

## Managing Customers

Customer tagging is a feature developed mainly to support Managed Security Services Provider (MSSP) environments, although it can also be used by private organizations to denote cost centers, internal groups, or subdivisions. The Customer designation keeps event traffic from multiple cost centers and/or business units clearly identified and separate. For more general information about this feature, see ESM 101.

The Customers resource tree, when populated, maps out the various external or internal customer accounts your enterprise tracks for cost, security analysis, or administrative reasons. These accounts, if present, are usually set up as part of the ArcSight deployment process. If the Customers resource tree is abbreviated or empty, your organization is probably not using this feature.

When the Customers resource tree is populated, you primarily use its branches as references in analysis filters that exclude or include certain customers.

Apart from analysis, the activities necessary to maintain the Customers resource tree include creating new customer references, editing existing references, and occasionally deleting references.

## Creating Customers

When you create a customer, remember that the branch you add to the resource tree has to **match** the Customer URI attribute configured for that branch in the relevant SmartConnectors. In other words, you create customer-tracking resources only for those customers that have parallel URI values set in the SmartConnectors that monitor their devices.

- 1 Choose the **Customers** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a customer group and choose **New Customer**.
- 3 In the Customer Editor, enter values for the properties that identify the customer. Note that the **Name** value has to complete the correct Customer URI for this account as found in its related SmartConnectors.
- 4 Click **Apply** to update the customer and leave the editor open, or OK to complete editing and close the editor.

## Editing Customers

- 1 Choose the **Customers** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a customer and choose **Edit Customer**.
- 3 Change the values, as appropriate.
- 4 Click **Apply** to update the customer and leave the editor open, or **OK** to complete editing and close the editor.

## Deleting Customers

- 1 Choose the **Customers** resource tree in the Navigator panel.
- 2 Right-click a customer and choose **Delete Customer**.
- 3 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

# Personalizing the ArcSight Console

---

The ArcSight Console has displays and settings that you use to monitor an enterprise using various windows, panels, views, controls, and tool bars. You can change these displays and settings based on your monitoring needs.

[“Changing the Console Display” on page 731](#)

[“Changing User Preferences” on page 732](#)

[“Saving and Sending Settings” on page 748](#)

## Changing the Console Display

You can change the look and feel of the Console to better display information, focus on particular panels, or hide information not of interest. You can resize the Console, float or dock Console panels, apply translucency to a floating panel, and show or hide the menu bars, tool bars, and various displays.

### Resizing the Console


To expand the Console to the whole screen, click the **Maximize** icon at the top-right corner of the window. To collapse the Console, click the **Minimize** button or drag the corners of the Console to resize it.

You can also drag and drop any dividers between panels to resize them.


### Showing or Hiding Menu Bars and Tools

You can show or hide the Console menu bar, and all the other individual components of the Console interface (apart from the main panels). Right-click the **Menu bar** area of the Console and use the context menu to enable (check) or disable (clear) each component.


### Showing or Hiding the Status Bar

Click the **Status Bar** button () on the toolbar, or on the Window menu, choose **Status Bar**.


### Showing or Hiding the Navigator Panel

Click the **Navigator** button () on the toolbar, or on the Window menu, choose **Navigator Panel**.


## Showing or Hiding the Viewer Panel

Click the **Viewer** button () on the toolbar, or on the Window menu, choose **Viewer Panel**.

## Showing or Hiding the Inspect/Edit Panel

Click the **Inspector** button () on the toolbar, or on the Window menu, choose **Inspect/Edit Panel**.

## Floating a Console Panel

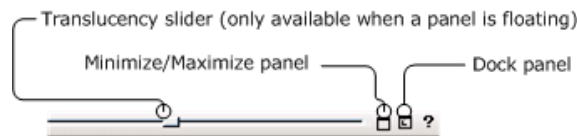
Click the **Float/Dock** button () on the panel header, or right-click the panel header and choose **Float Panel**.

## Applying Translucency to a Console Panel


Move the **Translucency** slider on the panel header.




A panel must be floating before you can apply translucency to it. You cannot apply translucency to docked panels.



## Docking a Console Panel

Click the **Float/Dock** button () on the panel header, or right-click the panel header and choose **Dock Panel**.

## Closing a Console Panel

Click the **Close** button () on the panel header, or right-click the panel header and choose **Close Panel**.

## Changing User Preferences

You can change several Console characteristics to suit your security needs, working style, or personal preferences. You reach the Preferences dialog box through the **Edit>Preferences** menu command.

The display on the Preferences dialog changes depending on which Preference button you select.



## Changing Your Password

A temporary password is created for you during your first ArcSight session. When you first log in, you should change to a permanent or more personal password. After changing it, be sure to keep it confidential.



You can change your password only if your ArcSight installation is configured to use built-in password authentication. Contact your system administrator for instructions on how to change passwords on ArcSight systems that use RADIUS SecurID or SSL authentication.

- 1 On the Edit menu, choose **Preferences**.
- 2 In the Preferences dialog, click **Password**.
- 3 Enter your old password, new password, and confirm the new password.
- 4 Click **OK**.

By default, passwords require a minimum of 6 characters, can contain a maximum of 20 characters, and can contain numbers and/or letters. Ask your system administrator about any special requirements for your site. For information on password restrictions see the Administrator's Guide, chapter 2. "Configuration," "Managing Password Configuration," "password Character Sets."

## Changing Other Users' Passwords

Administrators may also reset user passwords; for example, if a user's original password has been compromised or you want to make users update their passwords. For information on how to do this, see [Resetting User Passwords](#) in [Chapter 20, Managing Users and Permissions](#), on page 597.

## Setting Program Preferences

You can set the default editors and viewers to use for text, HTML, and packet payloads. For example, you'll use the HTML editor when editing the Knowledge Base and the Web browser for reports.

**Table 24-1 Program Preferences**

Program Preference	Value
Preferred Text/HTML Editor	Type the complete path to your preferred text or HTML editor or click the <b>Browse</b> button to locate one.
Preferred Web Browser	<p>You can choose to use your preferred external web browser for all HTML display functions (such as reports, documentation indexes). The external web browser always needs to be specified. Type the complete path or click <b>Browse</b> to locate one. The newest versions of IE and Firefox browsers are preferable.</p> <p>For more information on HTML displays in external Web browsers from the Console, see <a href="#">"Web Browsers" on page 1009</a>.</p>
Preferred Payload Viewer	Type the complete path to your preferred packet-payload viewer or click the <b>Browse</b> button to locate one.

**Table 24-1 Program Preferences (Continued)**

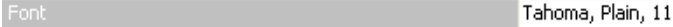
Program Preference	Value
Text to PCAP Converter	Type the complete path to your preferred packet-payload PCAP converter or click the <b>Browse</b> button to locate one.

## Changing Global Options Like Panel and Editor Characteristics


You can make the Inspect/Edit panel open as a docked window inside, or as a floating window outside, the Console. You can do the same with all child windows as a class. You can also choose how informational and error messages are displayed from the Console.

- 1 On the Edit menu, choose **Preferences**.
- 2 On the Preferences dialog's left pane, click **Global Options**.
- 3 Select the checkboxes next to options you want to enable.
- 4 Click **OK**.

**Table 24-2 Global Options for ArcSight Console**

Global Option	Description
Font	<p>Set global preference for font face, size, and style used throughout the Console, except on windows or views where you can set fonts specific to those Console elements. (For example, you can set fonts specific to Grid views as detailed in the next topic.)</p> <p>Click into the Font field to get the drop-down menu arrow.</p>  <p>Click the arrow to bring up the Fonts dialog. Set the Font, Size and Style.</p>
Launch editors in a floating window	Open all editors in a floating window. If deselected, all editors appear in the Inspect/Edit panel. If you select this option, you can still float or dock the windows.
Allow multiple editors of the same type	Permit more than one resource editor to be opened simultaneously for a given resource type (e.g., opening three instances of the Filter Editor at once). Enabling this option is very useful for analysts and persons implementing security solutions, but may inappropriate for operators or other persons who should have less-extensive editing access.
Allow multiple event inspectors	<p>Display details of multiple events in their respective Event Inspector tabs on the Inspect/Edit panel. If de-selected (the default), you can only view event details one event at a time.</p> <p>For more information about the Event Inspector, see <a href="#">“Inspecting and Editing” on page 50</a> and <a href="#">“Event Inspector” on page 913</a>.</p>
Allow Bulk Delete	Delete multiple resources without any dependency warnings. If de-selected, you can still delete multiple resources but you see a warning if there are any resource dependencies.
Show error messages in a pop-up dialog	Display all errors in a pop-up dialog.

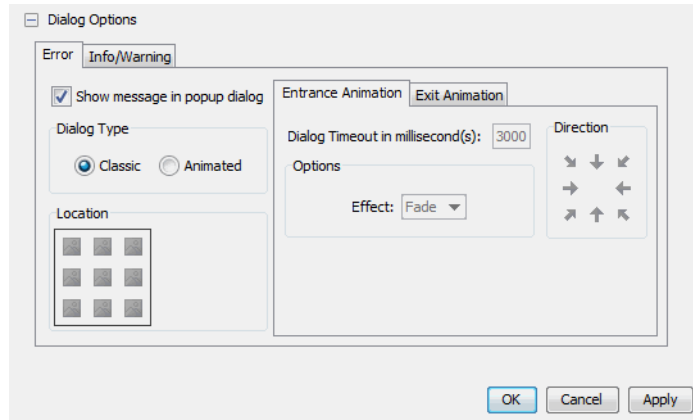
**Table 24-2** Global Options for ArcSight Console (Continued)

Global Option	Description
Show informational messages in a pop-up dialog	Display all information messages in a pop-up dialog.
Create independent floating windows	Independently float new windows that are children of another window such as the Viewer panel. This is the default. When enabled, you can choose a window's name from the list at the Window>Floating command, or toolbar button (  ), to bring it forward.
Auto Rlogin	Automatically log in again after logging out of the Console.
Use system defaults for dashboard background	When this option is selected, your system defaults are used for all Dashboard backgrounds.
Show print preview dialog	<p>Display a preview of the printable page when you choose to print a resource definition, for example, a rule definition. This preference is selected by default.</p> <p>Print preview options include Print, view each printable page (as applicable), and zoom in or out of the previewed page. For more information about printing, see <a href="#">"Printing from the Console" on page 69</a>.</p>
Set Help dialog size (Width,Height)	<p>The Help display window defaults to width of 910 x length of 650 pixels.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> Set Help dialog size (Width,Height) 910,650 </div> <p>You can specify a different default Help window display size here. To do this, enter a new window size (for example: 750,900) and hit keyboard Enter or Return.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You need to hit keyboard Enter or Return after entering the new display size, and then <i>also</i> click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b> to save all preference settings. If you do not press Enter or Return, the new window size setting cannot be saved even if you click Apply or OK.</p>

## Setting Dialog Options

Part of Global Options, Dialog Options is where you define the behavior of dialog boxes for system messages. System messages are classified into error and informational/warning messages.

- 1 On the Edit menu, choose **Preferences**.
- 2 On the Preferences dialog's left pane, click **Global Options**. Locate the Dialog Options section at the bottom of the dialog. If necessary, expand the dialog to expose the available subtabs, as shown.



Resize the window each time you choose Preferences > Global Options > Dialog Options so that both subtabs are fully displayed.

- 3 Refer to the following table for available settings. The information in the table applies to both error and informational/warning messages.

**Table 24-3** Dialog Options for ArcSight Console

Dialog Option	Description
Show message in popup dialog	Display message in a popup with an option to save the message to the clipboard. Selected by default. Clear the checkbox if you don't want system messages in a popup.  <b>Note:</b> ESM maintains system logs containing some audit information and details of any issues that occur. Refer to the ArcSight Command Center User Guide's Configuration chapter and read the topic, "Log Retrieval."
Dialog Type:	
• Classic	Display the dialog in the front center of the ArcSight Console. The dialog remains on this position until you click <b>OK</b> to dismiss it.
• Animated	Animation defines the display duration, the dialog's movement when it appears, and the movement after the dialog times out.  • <b>Location:</b> Position the dialog on one of the nine available locations on the screen and keep it displayed for the duration specified in Dialog Timeout.

**Table 24-3** Dialog Options for ArcSight Console (Continued)

Dialog Option	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <b>Entrance Animation</b>: <p><b>Dialog Timeout:</b> Display the message in the number of milliseconds. The default is 3,000.</p> <p><b>Effect:</b> For <b>Fly</b>, move the dialog from Direction and stops at Location. For <b>Zoom</b>, start the dialog at a small size and resize to its optimal size when it reaches Location. For <b>Fade</b>, make the dialog gradually appear at Location (ignore Direction).</p> <p><b>Direction:</b> Move the dialog from one of eight origination points on the edge of the screen to Location. Direction works only with Fly and Zoom effects. Direction for Entrance Animation can be different from Exit Animation's.</p> </li> <li>For <b>Exit Animation</b>: <p><b>Effect:</b> For <b>Fly</b>, move the dialog from Location to Direction. For <b>Zoom</b>, shrink the dialog as it reaches the destination. For <b>Fade</b>, make the dialog gradually disappear at Location when Dialog Timeout is reached (Direction is ignored).</p> <p><b>Direction:</b> When Dialog Timeout is reached, move the dialog from Location to one of eight origination points on the edge of the screen. Direction works only with Fly and Zoom effects. Direction for Exit Animation can be different from Entrance Animation's.</p> </li> </ul>

## Setting Grid View Options

You can change several characteristics of the Viewer panel's grid views.

- 1 On the Edit menu, choose **Preferences**.
- 2 In the Preferences dialog, click **Grid View Options**.
- 3 Select the checkboxes of the options you want to enable.
- 4 Click **Apply** to put your changes into effect and leave the Preferences dialog box open, or **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog box.

**Table 24-4** Grid View Options for ArcSight Console

Grid View Option	Description
Font	<p>Set global preference for font face, size, and style used in Grid views.</p> <p>Click into the Font field to get the drop-down menu arrow.</p> <div> <div>Font</div> <div>Tahoma, Plain, 11</div> </div> <p>Click the arrow to bring up the Fonts dialog. Set the Font, Size and Style.</p>

**Table 24-4** Grid View Options for ArcSight Console (Continued)

Grid View Option	Description
Color text by priority in grid	Apply distinguishing colors to the event rows in Viewer panel grid displays, based on their threat-priority levels. Note that this option can be overridden by the <b>Color text by filter in grid</b> option if conflicts occur. When these options are not selected, the text in grid rows defaults to black.
Color text by filter in grid	Apply distinguishing colors to the event rows in Viewer panel grid displays, based on the filters that selected them. You set these colors through the <b>Configure</b> button, described below. Note that this option, when selected, overrides the <b>Color text by priority in grid</b> option if conflicts occur. When these options are not selected, the text in grid rows defaults to black.
Pause the current channel on event selection	By default, selecting an event pauses the event flow to avoid scrolling. Clear this checkbox to allow the flow to continue regardless of a selection.
Do not prompt on verifying rule channel's timestamp change	Toggles on or off the option to have the system generate a prompt when the timestamp changes on an active channel populated by correlation events.
Do not prompt on channel restart	Toggles on or off the option to have the system generate a prompt when an active channel is restarted.
Filter Coloring Preferences	Click <b>Configure</b> to assign identifying colors to as many as five filters in the Configure Filter Colors dialog box.
Print Column Flip Limit	Determines the print format for Grid Views (channels, lists, and so forth). Grid views with the same or fewer columns than the Column Flip Limit print as a table, the same as is shown in the UI on the Console grid view. Grid views with the more columns than the Column Flip Limit print details per row rather in a normal table like that shown on the Console grid view.  The default setting for Column Flip Limit is "10" columns. (Tables with more than 10 columns print details per row.)  See also <a href="#">"Printing from the Console" on page 69</a> .

## Setting Date and Time Formats

Use the Date/Time option to choose a formatting style for the date and time strings displayed throughout the Console. You can also customize the details of any style you pick.

- 1 On the Edit menu, choose **Preferences**.
- 2 In the Preferences dialog, click **Date & Time**.
- 3 Click the **Formats** buttons and choose a date/time style from the lists for **Date & Time** Format and **Short Date & Time** Format options. Select **Express all times as GMT** to universally show time values in GMT rather than local times.
- 4 Click **Apply** to put your changes into effect and leave the Preferences dialog box open, or **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog box.

If you wish, you can customize the selected format. Edit the **Format** string using the Java-style date options described in the **Format Help** window, and the information in Timestamp Variables.

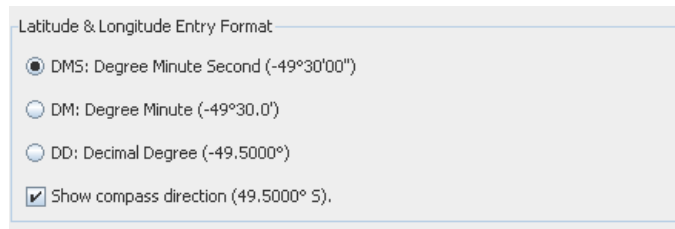
## Configuring Event Graphs

You can modify the way graphs plot events, choosing to keep the source-event-target visual relationships compact, or to emphasize unique sources, targets, or both in order to more easily clarify the nature of attacks or situations.

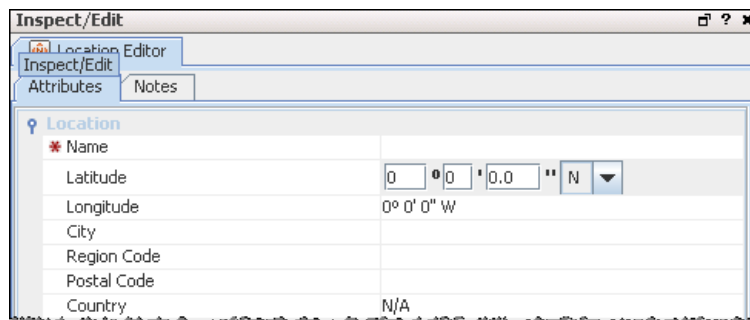
- 1 On the Edit menu, choose **Preferences**.
- 2 In the Preferences dialog, click **Event Graph**.
- 3 Click the **Value** fields of the graph attributes to choose appropriate options, as described below.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Latitude and Longitude Options

Set the Latitude and Longitude preferences here ...



... to control which measurement entry format is used for **Asset Locations** descriptions in the Assets Location Editor. (Choose **Assets** in the Navigator, click **Locations**, and edit or create new location to bring up the **Location Editor**.)



(See [“Managing Locations” on page 729](#). This is a part of [Working with Assets, Locations, Zones, Networks, Vulnerabilities, and Categories](#) in [About the Network Model](#).)

The options for latitude and longitude format vary from more exact to less so. Latitude and longitude can be shown in degrees, minutes, and seconds; degrees and minutes; or decimal degrees only. Additionally, an indicator of compass direction for the specified location can be shown or hidden in the editor.

## Event Graph Options

- **Show Event Nodes:** Choose a basis for visually expanding or aggregating event nodes, relative to their source and target node instances.

Choice	Description
Once per common event	Graph only one instance of a given event node, regardless of the number of unique sources and targets that have it in common. For example, if sources 1 and 2 are directing the same event at targets 1, 2, and 3, there may be visual instances for each source and target, but only one of the event node.
Once per unique source	Graph one instance of a given event node per unique source, regardless of the commonality of associated targets. For example, if sources 1 and 2 are directing the same event at targets 1, 2, and 3, there are two visual instances of the event in support of the two distinct sources.
Once per unique target	Graph one instance of a given event node per unique target, regardless of the commonality of associated sources. For example, if sources 1 and 2 are directing the same event at targets 1, 2, and 3, there are three visual instances of the event in support of the three distinct targets.
Once per unique source-target pair	Graph one instance of a given event node per unique source-target pair, regardless of the commonality of the events involved. For example, if sources 1 and 2 are directing a given event at targets 1, 2, and 3; and as a chain, targets 1, 2, and 3 are sourcing the same events on to targets 4, 5, and 6; then there are six visual instances of the event in support of six distinct targets.

- **Show Source/Target IP Addresses as:** In cases where one source-event-target chains to another, you can choose to graph a source/target IP address as a single node, or to graph both the source and target instances of such an IP address.

Choice	Description
Distinct nodes	Visually plot both the source and target instances of a chained IP address.
Simple nodes	Visually plot a single node for an IP address that represents both source and target.

- **Source Node Identifier:** Choose a different event attribute to use as the identifier for source nodes. The default attribute is Source Address. Note that while all attributes are available, not all are appropriate choices for this purpose.
- **Event Node Identifier:** Choose a different event attribute to use as the identifier for event nodes. The default attribute is **ArcSight Category**. Note that while all attributes are available, not all are appropriate choices for this purpose.
- **Target Node Identifier:** Choose a different event attribute to use as the identifier for target nodes. The default attribute is **Target Address**. Note that while all attributes are available, not all are appropriate choices for this purpose.



## Setting Notification Popups

You can manage received notifications from within the Console. In the Preferences dialog box, you can set a severity threshold for notification popups and optionally play a sound when notifications arrive.

For **Severity threshold for notification popup**, raise or lower the integer value to a priority value that is appropriate for the level at which you want to be alerted.

Select **Play a sound when a notification message is received** to also emit a sound when the alert threshold is met.

## Managing Hot Keys

The Console provides schemas for configuring keyboard shortcuts to common actions. These schemas come with the Console:

- \$default
- Schemas for users (such as **admin** and other users)



- Schemas for users other than admin are listed only for users who have set up custom shortcuts on this Console under their login.
- Custom shortcuts are available locally only. (See [“Sharing Custom Shortcut Schemas”](#) on page 747 for more information.)



If this Console does not use UTF-8 encoding, refer to the “Installing ArcSight Console” chapter of the ESM Installation and Configuration Guide, and read the topic “Character Set Encoding” under “Installing the Console.”

Schemas for users are all based on the \$default schema. That is, user schemas inherit all \$default schema shortcuts. The \$default schema.

On the Edit > Preferences > Manage Hot Keys dialog, under “Available shortcut schemas”, the schema currently in use shows as “**(active)**” next to its name.

You can define a keyboard shortcut for each command listed. Each command can have a different (or the same) keyboard shortcut depending on which schema is selected.

Keyboard shortcuts are pre-defined for common commands. For example, the pre-defined keyboard shortcut for the Select All command (`edit.selectAll`) is Ctrl+A.

Commands shown in red on Preferences dialog are not editable (e.g., `edit.delete`, `edit.redo`, `edit.cut`, `edit.copy`, `edit.paste`, and so forth). The flyover tooltips on these commands also indicates they are not editable.

There are many commands listed for which no shortcut is provided (e.g., `file.new.Report`, `file.new.Rule`, `navigator.reports`, `navigator.queryViewers`, etc.)

## Adding Shortcuts for Frequently Used Resources

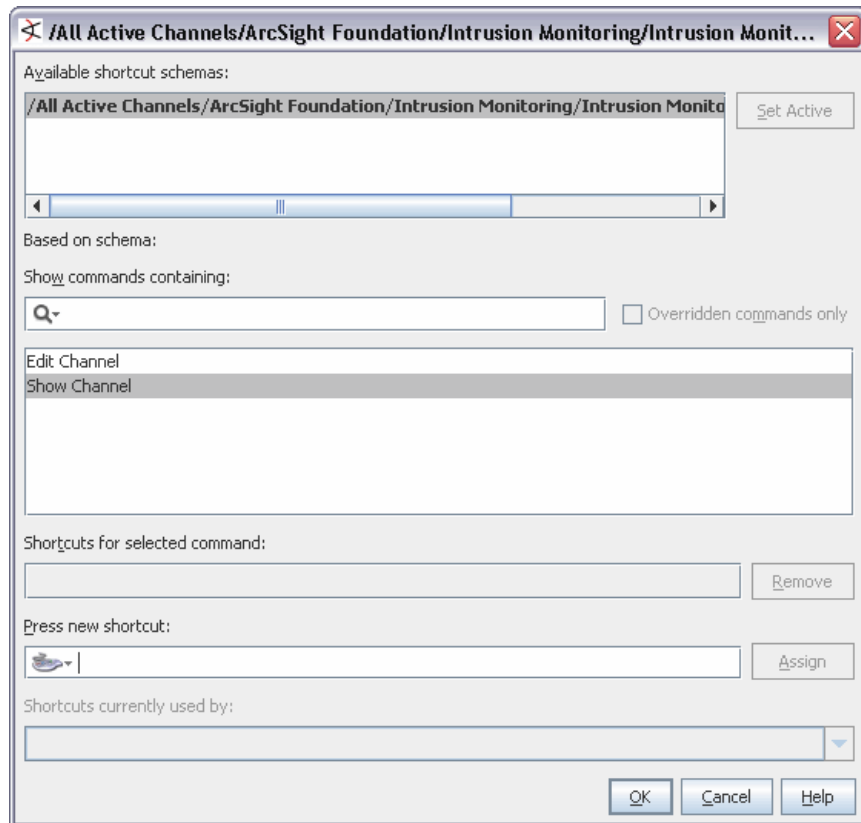
This first task is not initiated on the **Edit > Preferences** dialog, but rather from various resource contexts in the Console. But the results of setting up shortcut keys on selected resources are shown on the Edit > Preferences > Managing Hot Keys dialog, as described below.

**To add a shortcut to a resource:**

- 1 Navigate to and select the resource for which you want to add a shortcut.


(For example, choose **Active Channels** in the Navigator, and select an active channel such as /All Active Channels/ArcSight Foundation/Intrusion Monitoring/Intrusion Monitoring - Significant Events.)

- 2 With the appropriate resource selected, right-click and choose **Manage Hot Keys** from the context menu to bring up the shortcut setup dialog for this resource.



- 3 Select the action you want to take with regard to the resource (e.g., Edit or Show).

- 4 In the **Press new shortcut** field:

- ◆ Optionally, press the button (  ) to get a drop-down menu where you can set the type of shortcut to add (mouse, tab, etc.) and limits on keystrokes. (For example, if you want to set the shortcut on this channel to Ctrl+C+H, this requires first changing the keystroke limit from the default of 1, to 2 keystrokes.)
- ◆ Type the keyboard sequence you want to associate with the command.

If there the keyboard sequence you typed is not in use, a light gray “no conflicts” message is shown in the “Shortcuts currently used by” field. (For example, if you select `navigator.rules`, place the cursor in the “Press new shortcut field”, and type `Ctrl+Alt+X`, you get the “no conflicts” message.)

If you type a sequence that is already used by another shortcut, you get a message in the “Shortcuts currently used by” field telling you which resource is currently using the shortcut. (For example, the default shortcut for `navigator.rules` is `Ctrl+Alt+L`. If you type `Ctrl+Alt+R` in the “Press new

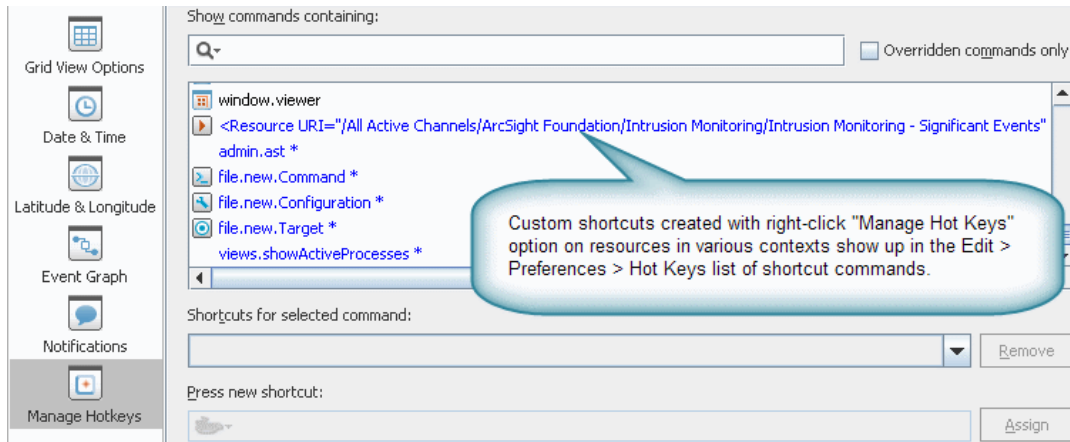
shortcut" field, you get a message noting that this sequence is already in use for `navigator.reports`.)

If you continue with the assignment, you get a prompt asking whether you want to remove the shortcut from the other resource and add it to this new one.

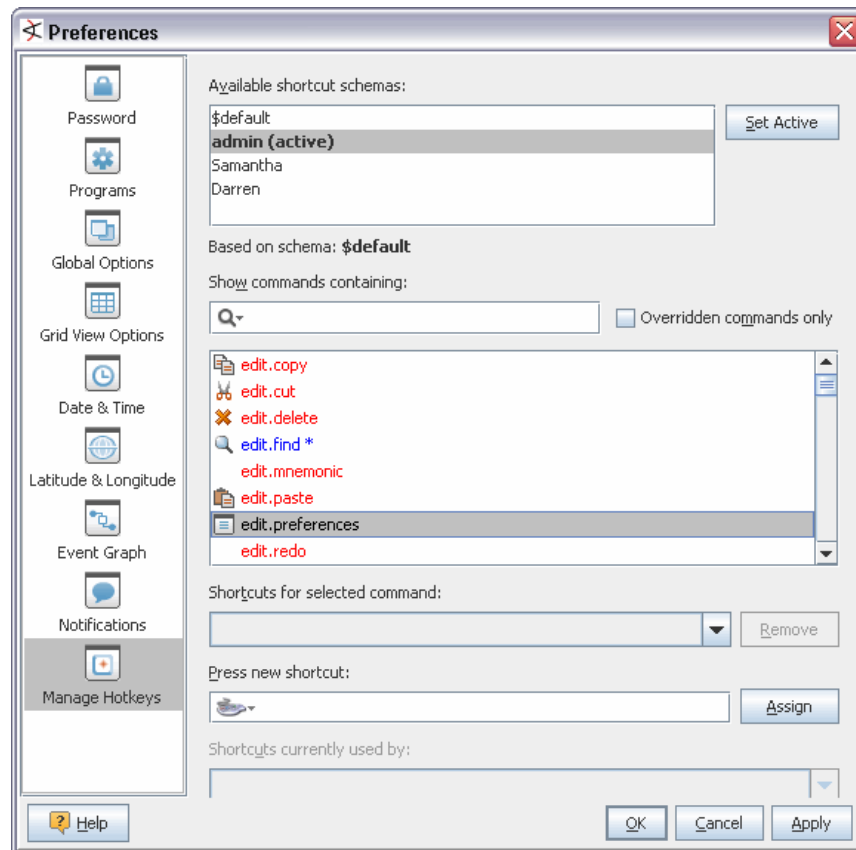
5 Click **Assign** to associate the shortcut with the resource.

6 Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

Custom shortcuts added to resources are listed on the **Edit > Preferences > Managing Hot Keys** dialog:



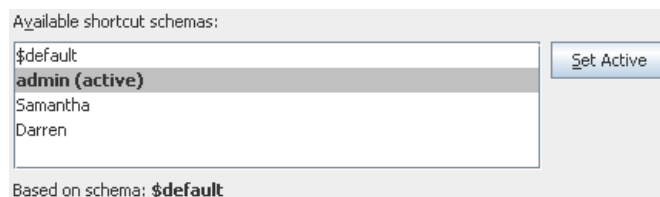
## Modifying a Custom Shortcut



### To modify a custom shortcut:

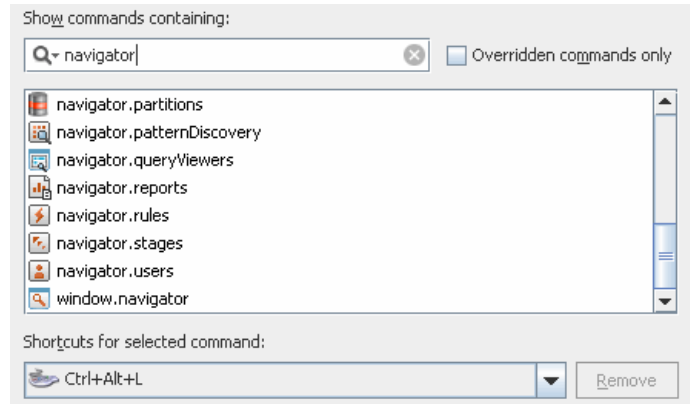
- 1 Select the schema in which you want to modify shortcuts for commands.

In this example, the **admin** schema is selected. Note, however, that the schema selected for modifying a hot key need not be the “active” schema; as it happens to be in this example.



- 2 Select the command for which you want to modify the hot key.

You can filter for commands containing a given string (e.g., “navigator” to find all navigator commands).



**3** In the **Press new shortcut** field:

- ◆ Optionally, press the button ( ) to get a drop-down menu where you can set the type of shortcut to add (mouse, tab, etc.) and limits on keystrokes. (The default keystroke limit is one. If you set it to 2 or 3, you have more combinations of keystrokes available to use for custom settings.)

- ◆ Type the keyboard sequence you want to associate with the command.

If there the keyboard sequence you typed is not in use, a light gray “no conflicts” message is shown in the “Shortcuts currently used by” field. (For example, if you select `navigator.rules`, place the cursor in the “Press new shortcut field”, and type `Ctrl+Alt+X`, you get the “no conflicts” message.)

If you type a sequence that is already used by another shortcut, you get a message in the “Shortcuts currently used by” field telling you which resource is currently using the shortcut. (For example, the default shortcut for `navigator.rules` is `Ctrl+Alt+L`. If you type `Ctrl+Alt+R` in the “Press new shortcut” field, you get a message noting that this sequence is already in use for `navigator.reports`.)

If you continue with the assignment, you get a prompt asking whether you want to remove the shortcut from the other resource and add it to this new one.

**4** Click **Assign** to apply the new shortcut to the command.



**Tip**

An asterisk is displayed next to commands for which the pre-defined shortcuts have been modified or overwritten. These customized commands are also displayed in blue text, rather than the usual black.

`navigator.queryViewers`  
`navigator.reports`  
`navigator.rules *`  
`navigator.stages`

**5** Click **Apply** to save/apply the new shortcut, or click **OK** to save/apply the new shortcut and close the Preferences dialog.

## Modifying Custom Shortcuts for Resources

You can modify a custom shortcut for a resource in either of these ways:

- Directly from the right-click Manage Hot Keys dialog on that resource
- From the Edit > Preferences > Manage Hot Keys dialog as described above in [“Modifying a Custom Shortcut” on page 744](#).

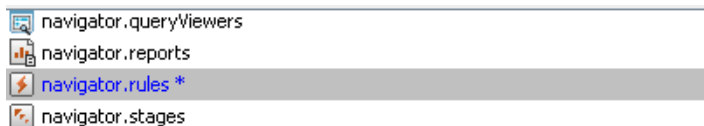
To remove a custom shortcut directly from the resource:

- 1 Navigate to and select the resource from which you want to remove the shortcut.
- 2 With the appropriate resource selected, right-click and choose **Manage Hot Keys** from the context menu to bring up the shortcut setup dialog for this resource.
- 3 Select the action (e.g., Show or Edit) associated with the shortcut.  
The shortcut is shown in the “Press new shortcut” field.
- 4 Modify it as needed. (See [“Modifying a Custom Shortcut” on page 744.](#))
- 5 Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

## Removing a Custom Shortcut

**To remove a custom shortcut (key sequence) for any command:**

- 1 Select the schema in which you want to modify the command.
- 2 Select the command for which you want to modify the hot key.
- 3 Select one of the customized commands (blue, with an asterisk).



The current key sequence associated with this command is shown in the **Shortcuts for selected command** field.

- 4 Click the **Remove** button next to the “Shortcuts for selected command field”.

The custom shortcut (key sequence) is removed, and replaced by the default key sequence (if there was one).



As soon as you remove the shortcut by clicking **Remove**, the changes are saved. Even if you click Cancel to close the Preferences dialog at this point, *the shortcut is not saved* for when you return.

For example, if `navigator.rules` was modified to be associated with `Ctrl+Alt+X`, then when you remove this shortcut `navigator.rules` would again be associated with its default shortcut of `Ctrl+Alt+L`.



Only custom shortcuts can be removed. Default shortcuts cannot be deleted.

## Removing Custom Shortcuts for Resources

You can remove a custom shortcut for a resource in either of these ways:

- Directly from the right-click Manage Hot Keys dialog on that resource
- From the Edit > Preferences > Manage Hot Keys dialog as described above in [“Removing a Custom Shortcut” on page 746.](#)

**To remove a custom shortcut directly from the resource:**

- 1 Navigate to and select the resource from which you want to remove the shortcut.
- 2 With the appropriate resource selected, right-click and choose **Manage Hot Keys** from the context menu to bring up the shortcut setup dialog for this resource.
- 3 Select the action (e.g., Show or Edit) associated with the shortcut.  
The shortcut, if any, is shown in the “Press new shortcut” field.
- 4 Click **Remove**.
- 5 Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the dialog.



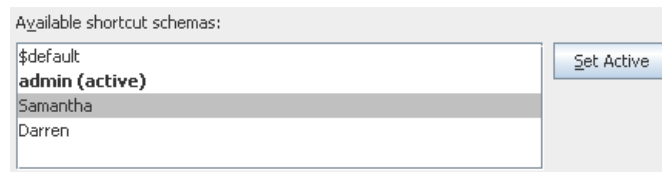
As soon as you remove the shortcut by clicking **Remove**, the changes are saved. Even if you click Cancel to close the dialog at this point, *the shortcut is not saved* for when you return.

## Activating a New Shortcut Schema

For more information on schemas, see the introduction to the shortcut key management at [“Managing Hot Keys” on page 741](#).

**To activate a new schema:**

- 1 Select the schema you want to activate.

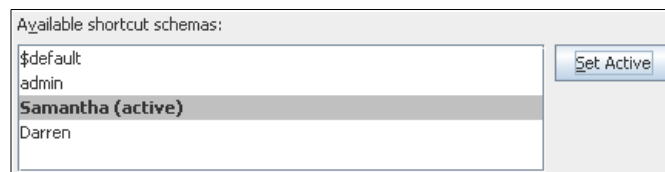


- 2 Click **Set Active**.



To get an enabled Set Active button, select a schema that is not currently applied. If you select a schema that is already active, the Set Active button is disabled.

- 3 Click **Apply** to apply the new schema, or click **OK** to apply the new schema and close the Preferences dialog.



## Sharing Custom Shortcut Schemas

Shortcut schemas are made available local to the Console only. That is, if schemas for several different users are configured on an Console running on a particular machine, those shortcut setups (schemas) are not available from the same user logins on other machines.

For example, suppose you customize shortcuts for **admin** user, and two other users (e.g., Samantha and Darren) on laptop A. All three of those users can log in and use their

shortcuts on the Console running on laptop A. But if the same users log in on another machine (laptop B) and log in as admin, Samantha, or Darren, none of the custom shortcuts are available on laptop B (unless the same shortcuts were set up manually here also).

## Saving and Sending Settings

The **File Save** and **Save As** options allow you to save Console settings (.ast files) locally. You can also save and load your own personal settings from the ArcSight Manager by using the **File Save to Manager** and **File Load from Manager** options. That way, for example, you can quickly restore Console settings when you move to an Console running on a different computer.

### Saving a File

- 1 On the File menu, choose **Save** or **Save As**.
- 2 In the Save dialog box, navigate to a directory and enter a file name.
- 3 Click **Save**.

The Console saves your settings in the file you specified, on the local computer. Later, you can restore those settings to return the Console to that configuration, using the **File>Open** command.

### Saving a File to the ArcSight Manager

On the File menu, choose **Save to Manager**.

Your Console settings (based on your login user name) are saved to a file and maintained by the ArcSight Manager. To restore your Console to those settings, choose **File>Load from Manager**.

### Loading a File From the ArcSight Manager

On the **File** menu, choose **Load from Manager**. The Console loads the saved settings (.ast) file and asks whether you want to apply them to your current session. If you say **Yes**, the Console restarts and refreshes the display.

### Sending a File by E-mail

- 1 Choose **File>Send To**.
- 2 In the Send To dialog box, enter the **E-mail Address** and click **OK**.



## Chapter 25

# Reference Guide

---

The topics that follow provide information on resources, components, and terms used throughout the guide. Topics are organized alphabetically, and introduced and defined in a style meant to help you get more drill-down information about a term quickly and easily. Unlike a standard “glossary,” however, many of these topics present quite a bit of in-depth information including conceptual and reference material. These topics are cross-referenced (linked) extensively with the rest of the Help topics and vice versa.

## Access Control Lists

ESM uses Access Control Lists (ACLs) to manage user group permissions. ACLs define which user groups have permissions to which resources, and to which components such as rules, reports, and filters. (See also [“Editing Access Control Lists \(ACLs\)” on page 603.](#))

User groups can have inspect (read) permissions, edit (write) permissions, or both. If a user group has inspect permissions, they can read the resource. For example, the users in the group can see the resource and related information through the ArcSight Console. If the group has edit permissions, they can write to or change the resource, such as writing or editing a rule or report resource.

Resources, too, can have inspect (read) permissions, or edit (write) permissions. Resources, like user groups, are managed as groups and not as individual resources. Therefore, a resource can only be accessed if a user group has access to the resource’s group. Permission to inspect or edit resources is granted when the user logs in, and the resource only appears in the ArcSight Console if the logged in user has inspect permissions.



### Best practices:

- Log out and log back in again for permission changes to take effect.
- Whenever an Admin changes another user’s permissions, the other user should log out and log back in again. This ensures that the new permissions are registered with the Manager, and the user can see the changes.

## Resource ACLs

Resources have ACLs to help you manage user permissions based on the resource. You can use the resource ACL to determine which user group can access it. You can control which user group has access to inspect or to edit any resource, such as rules, cases, and reports. (See also [“Editing Access Control Lists \(ACLs\)” on page 603.](#))

Events are also available to user groups based on resource ACLs. For example, you can control which user group has access to a filter by adding the group to the filter’s ACL and

giving them inspect or edit permissions. If you no longer want the group to have permissions to that filter, you can edit the group's permissions or remove the group from the filter ACL. In this example, the user group listed on the filter ACL with inspect permissions can see events from that filter in the ArcSight Console. Those without permissions cannot see any events from that filter.



By default, a custom user group inherits the ACL settings from the parent user group. If a user group has no access to any filters, it is as if the group's specified filter in the ACL editor were *Filters\Shared\All Filters\ArcSight System\Core\No Events*. Therefore, users from this group do not see any events in the following resources:

- Active channels using event filters
- Queries on events, and therefore query viewers and reports based on those queries

If users need to see event data, make sure their user group has access to the applicable filters. See ["Editing Access Control Lists \(ACLs\)" on page 603](#) for details.

Events are also extracted from the database based on ACLs. For example, when users generate reports, events extracted from the database are based on ACLs. Therefore, only data that users have access to is retrieved and all data may not be included in the report. Report ACLs can only provide events if the user generating the event has the permissions to view those events. For example, if user group A has permissions to view events from filter A and user group B does not, user group B cannot be able to extract event values from filter A when running a report; the report comes back empty. However, since user group A does have permissions to filter A, user group A's report comes back with the values from filter A.



The Resource ACL display shows relationships between users and groups, and how permissions are acquired for each of the user groups. Child groups inherit permissions from parent groups.

For example, consider the following set of ACLs for assets.

Resource	↑1	R	W
/All Users/Administrators		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
/All Users/Default User Groups		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
/All Users/Default User Groups/Analyzer Administrators		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

In this scenario, the following permissions apply:

- A user logged in as Administrator (belonging to the group `/All Users/Administrators`) has read and write permissions by virtue of being in the Administrators group.
- All users have read permissions because they belong to the group `/All Users/Default User Groups` by default.
- A user logged in as an Analyzer Administrator has both read and write permissions because these are inherited read permissions from the parent group (`/All Users/Default User Groups`) and get write permissions per the Analyzer Administrators child group

## Actions

Actions are automatic procedures that occur when all rule conditions and threshold settings have been met. You can choose to be notified of a triggered rule at the ArcSight Console or through the Notifier, have information about the events that triggered the rule sent to a case or an active list, or automatically execute a command line function. You can also assign more than one rule action to any rule. See also [“Rule Actions” on page 949](#).

## Active Channels

Almost all event-related views are **active channels**. Also, several types of resources related to assets and cases are shown as active channels.

Rather than simply flowing events through as received, or capturing a fixed set of events for replay, a channel is in effect a live, on-going event query. Because it is continually re-evaluated, the set of events collected in a channel can continue to change (due to reporting latency), even when defined with a fixed time-bracket.

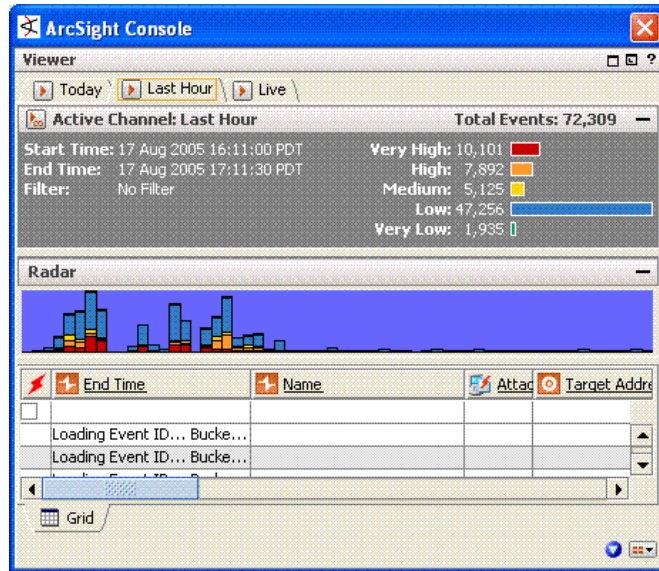
In other words, active channels are definitions for collections of events; definitions that are always freshly re-evaluated so the resulting sets are as valid as the data received up to that moment. Because the active channel continuously refreshes with live events, you should not use an active channel to track event counts because these counts vary across different timeframes. On the other hand, a replay channel's event count is based on that specific replay session (with the specific sessionID). Instead of active channels, consider using query viewers or reports to track event counts.

The queries that define active channels are composed, at a minimum, of time parameters; other filter conditions of the usual sorts can also apply. You find and use these queries in the Navigator panel's Active Channels resource tree. You create these definitions through the **File>New>Active Channel** command and can refine them using inline filters and the Active Channel Editor. Once defined and displayed, you can manipulate the order, format, and content of these views with all the familiar features of the Console.

Query viewers are provided as a quick alternative to active channels, better suited to some scenarios. See [“Query Viewers” on page 227](#) for more information.

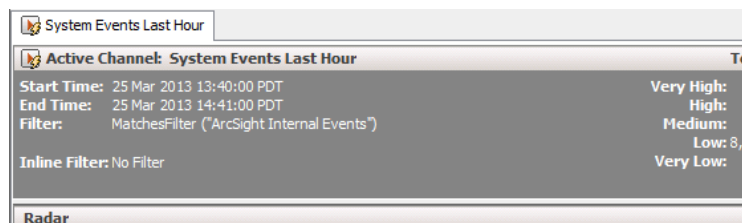
## Active Channel Views

Each individual view is one **rendering** of an active channel, whether it is a grid view or chart view. Individual views are represented by the tabs you see at the bottom edge of the Viewer panel. Channels are represented by the tabs at the top of the Viewer panel, that group together individual views.



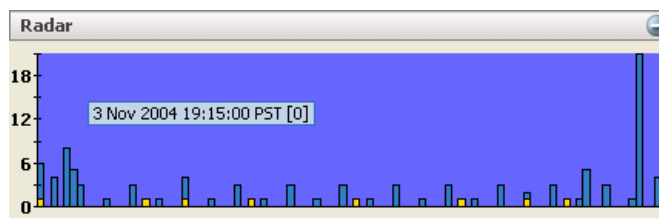
## Active Channel Headers

The channel name and statistics line appears at the top of active channel views. These statistics are event-severity indicators for the view. The indicators show the current number of events in the view for each of the priority categories. You can click these indicators to instantly filter the channel to show only the selected priority.



The **Filter** status line describes the filter conditions the channel is currently using.

The Radar display in active channel headers indicates the activity taking place in the channel, in graphics that represent units of time horizontally, and numbers of events in vertical bars segmented by Priority attribute-value counts. The time and quantity scales in the graphic automatically adjust to accommodate the scope of the channel. The broader the scope, the smaller the graphical units become.



You can open and close the Radar display with the **Plus (+)** and **Minus (-)** button at the right end of the Filter line.

With simple gestures, you can control the contents of a grid view using its Radar display. **Click**, **Shift+click**, **Ctrl+click**, or drag to select one or more contiguous or non-contiguous bars in the display. You can also drag selection borders left or right to adjust a span further. The grid then shows just the events the selection represents.

## Comparisons

You may want to note that the Manager handles active channel traffic through its database. This means that the content is persisted, but may involve processing delays that cause an active channel to show information later than a more direct method such as the data monitors in dashboards. Conversely, data monitor traffic resides only in memory and is subject to loss or abbreviation by server restarts.

See the topic [“Viewing and Using Channels” on page 78](#) to learn more about active channel tasks. You may also want to compare active channels to active lists as analysis tools.

## Active Channel Views for Assets and Cases

The ArcSight Console shows assets, vulnerabilities, asset categories, scanner reports, and cases in **active channels** (rather than static grid views, as in previous releases). Now you can leverage the power of channels for asset management, including use of filters, field sets, better sorting capabilities, and dynamic display of an unlimited number of items (continually updated).

## Active Lists

You can use **active lists** to create a configurable data store that can hold information derived from events, or other sources.

Active lists can monitor activity based on any rule-driven combination of event attributes or set of custom fields. For example, active lists are very useful for tracking suspicious or hostile IP addresses as well as targets of attacks that may be compromised.

You can populate active lists manually when necessary (adding entries from grid views or the Active List Editor), or use active lists in conjunction with rules specifically tailored to work with them. Rules can dynamically add and remove entries on active lists, thereby making them a flexible information-gathering tool.

You can now open and edit active lists in grid views.

Active lists function differently than active channels. Active lists are not continuously re-evaluated and are not time-window constrained. Active lists draw from the event stream on the basis of their event or field/rule definitions and any rules designed to affect them.

You can use active lists as filters in other resources that are not based on active channels, such as reports.

In addition to their integral definitions, you can apply temporary (not saved) filters to active list grid views. Click the status description in the **Filter** line in the view header to use the Common Condition Editor.

Use the default items in the Active Lists resource tree for templates or for operational monitoring with minor modifications. For example, use the Trusted List to watch activity from known-to-be-safe IP sources and the Untrusted List to do the same for known unsafe sources.

If you have Administrator access you can have another group named All Active Lists that contains all active list groups and lists.

## Uses of Active Lists

The main uses of active lists are to:

- Maintain information, such as in the system content provided "Hostile List" or "Trusted List" which maintain information on hostile and trusted IP addresses (and corresponding zones)
- Check for the existence of particular information in lists using the InActiveList condition (see ["Condition Tree Command Buttons" on page 820](#)).



The InActiveList operator does not parse multi-value attributes. The InActiveList operator only evaluates single-value attributes, and treats multi-value attributes, such as Actor Account ID and Role, as single-value attributes.

For example, when a system is compromised (such as in a security breach), it can be added to the compromise list using rule actions. The information in the active list can then be used to collect all the events that occur on the asset while it is compromised. This can be used for tracking and further investigation on other systems that have come into contact with the compromised system

## Active Lists for Long-Term State Retention

Active lists can store data over a longer period of time than rules or data monitors are capable of retaining. For example, rules can hold a state that describes the very recent past, normally few minutes. Data monitors may contain up to a day's worth of data, but data monitors usually contain aggregated data.

For example, Active Lists can answer the following question, which cannot be addressed directly by rules or data monitors: "Has the source IP of the current event attacked one of my systems in the last 30 days?"

## Optimize Data with Hash-Based Active Lists

A **hash-based active list** uses a hash function to map a set of data to a single number (a hash value).

To create a hash-based active list, enable the **Optimize Data** option on the Active Lists **Attributes** tab. Make sure the list is set to **Case-Sensitive**. (See ["Managing Active Lists" on page 511](#).)

The main advantage of using the hash-based active list by enabling the list's Optimize Data option is to reduce memory usage. Instead of storing the complete active list entry in memory, only the hash code (a number), count, and last modified time are stored. The complete entry is available in the database. Therefore, the size of each entry in memory is constant, regardless of the number of fields and corresponding data types in the active list schema.

In terms of performance, there is little or no difference between hash-based and regular active lists.

The Optimize Data option is useful for active lists that contains a large number of entries (for example, more than 100,000 entries) or a large amount of information per entry.



Note

There is a possibility of getting an inaccurate result from an active list that uses the Optimize Data option due to hash collisions. When two active list entries map to the same hash code, the result of the InActiveList condition can be inaccurate in some cases. However, the chances of two entries evaluating to same hash code are quite rare. In the current scheme, for an active list with 1 million entries, the chances of hash code contention are about 1 in 4,000,000.

Active Lists can be switched between optimized (hashing) and non-optimized (non-hashing) after they are created.

## Active List Audit Events

Audit events are sent on the following Active List Activity.

- Adding an entry (DEC: /ActiveList/Add)
- Removing an entry (DEC: /ActiveList/Delete)
- Updating an entry (DEC: /ActiveList/Update)
- Expiration of an entry (DEC: /ActiveList/Expire)
- Eviction of an entry (DEC: /ActiveList/Evict)



Tip

DEC stands for *device event category*, an event field. For example, when an active list entry is added, an audit event is generated with a DEC string of /ActiveList/Add.

You can use audit events in rules, filters, and other analytical or administrative resources. For more information, see [“Audit Events” on page 775](#).

## Active List Monitor Events

The following monitor events include Active List Usage statistics. (See [“Status Monitor Events” on page 965](#) for more information.)

- Open Active Lists count (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/ListCount)
- Active List entry count (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/EntryCount)
- Active List entry capacity (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/EntryCapacity)
- Active List entry usage (% of capacity used) (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/EntryPercentUsed)
- Active List entry look-ups per second (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/QueriesPerSecond)
- Active List entry updates per second (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/ChangesPerSecond)
- Temporary Active Lists count (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryListCount)
- Temporary List entry count (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryEntryCount)
- Temporary Active List entry capacity (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryCapacity)
- Temporary Active List entry usage (% of capacity used) (DEC: /Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryPercentUsed)

## Active Lists with Values

An active list with values divides the set of fields into key fields and value fields. Active lists with values provide the following functionality:

- Use an `InActiveList` condition to check the existence of an entry (using only keys, or keys along with values). See [“Condition Tree Command Buttons” on page 820](#) for more about applying an `InActiveList` condition.



The `InActiveList` operator does not parse multi-value attributes. The `InActiveList` operator only evaluates single-value attributes, and treats multi-value attributes, such as Actor Account ID and Role, as single-value attributes.

- Look up value fields for given key field values. Keys and values can consist of one or more columns.

A single key can map to a single value; for example, user name (key) to badge ID (value).

Also, a single key can map to multiple values (in a *multi-map* active list); for example, user name (key) to badge ID, first name, last name (three values). The actors resource is a typical use case for multi-map active lists. For example, you might map a single actor (key) to multiple roles (values).

Variables are used to retrieve the value portion of the active list entry.

To create an active list with values, select the **Fields-based** data option on the Active List editor Attributes tab, check **Key Fields** to enable a per-field Key option, and then select one or more data fields that must be unique. (For the complete procedure, see the topic on [“Creating an Active List” on page 511](#).)

## Using Variables to Retrieve Data from Active Lists with Values

To add a list field in a condition, use the following variable functions, which can yield list values:

- `ConvertListToString`
- `GetSessionData` (on overlapping session lists)
- `GetActiveListValue` (on multi-map active lists)
- `GetGroupsOfAsset`
- `GetGroupsofNetworkZone`
- `AliasField`

When defining a variable to retrieve value information from active lists with values, be sure to specify these attributes for the variable:

- Name of the variable
- The active list to be used to retrieve values for the key
- Field mappings (mapping of the event fields to key fields in the active list)

For more about working with variables, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).



## Example: Active List with Values to Store Directory Information

As an example, suppose we want to create an active list with values to store directory information.

### Create an Active List

We follow the basic procedure to create a new active list shown in [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#). For the example, we create the active list with these options.

- Specify **Fields-based** data using **Key** fields
- The **Key** is the **Username**.
- The values contain various information corresponding to the given user name. For simplicity, you can store only user role information. (The user role usually determines the type of actions a user can take, and on what type of resources.) If desired, you can store additional information such as the user's First Name, Last Name, Phone Number, Email Address, and so on.

The screenshot shows the 'ArcSight Console' window with the 'Active List: User Roles' configuration. The 'Active List' section includes a table with the following data:

Name	User Roles
Optimize Data	<input type="checkbox"/>
Capacity (x1000)	1
TTL Days	1
TTL Hours	0
TTL Minutes	0

The 'Common' section shows the 'Data' type set to 'Fields-based' with 'Key Fields' checked. Below this is a table with the following data:

Name	Type	Sub-type	Key-field
Username	String		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
User Roles	String		<input type="checkbox"/>

### Populate the Active List

We can populate the list in any of various ways:

- Manual data entry
- Export required information from Active Directory into a CSV file, and then import entries to the active list from the CSV file
- Use Active Directory User Group Puller tool
- Use event-based integration or other tools

## Correlate Information Stored in UserRoles List

Once the Active Directory information is populated to an active list with values, we can access and correlate the user information using reports, rules, active channels, data monitors, and so on. The details of the correlation logic are as follows.

### Create a Rule

For this example, we choose a rule that does the following:

- Looks for events that update some critical database information
- Checks if the target user had privilege to perform the operation using the Active Directory User Role information, maintained in the active list

(For more information on creating rules, see [“Creating Rules” on page 399](#) and [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#).)

### Use Variable to Get Role Information

For the database update events, we can get the corresponding Active Directory role information using the **GetActiveListValue** variable.

**Edit Variable**

Name:

Function:

Retrieve ActiveList value

Arguments

List:

Field Mapping

For each key field, select a matching event field.

Name	Field	Key
Username	Target User Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Preview

Set a value for each key field.

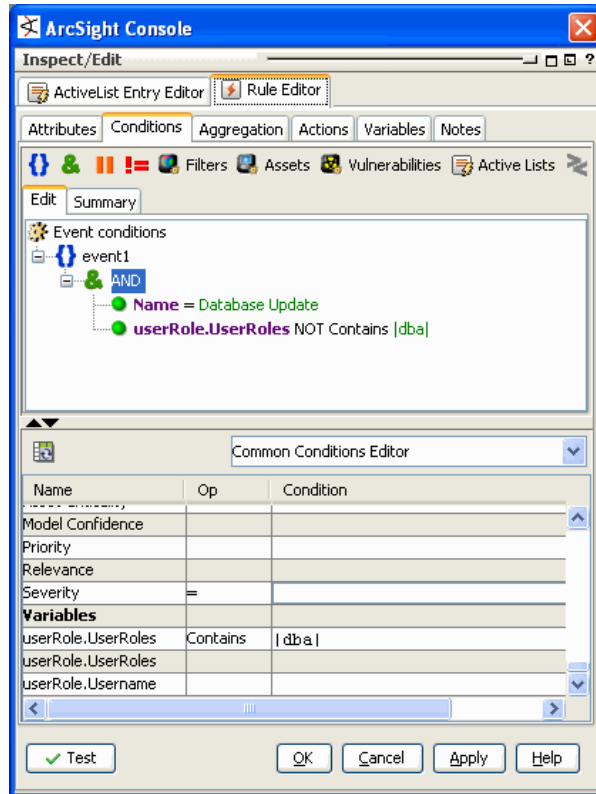
Name	Value
Key Fields	
Username	

Calculate

OK Cancel Help

### Set Conditions to Check Role Permissions

Once the role information is retrieved, we can check if the user has the role required to perform this operation. If the user does not have the required role, then the rule is triggered to alert the administrator to the unauthorized access.



### Take Action Based on Results of Permissions Check

If the user does not have required role, then rule can trigger and alarm the administrator regarding this unauthorized access. (This is configured on the Actions tab.)

## Working with Active Lists

For procedural information about working with active lists (including how to create, edit, delete, import, and export them), see [“Managing Active Lists” on page 511](#).

## Administrator

An administrator is a person who has the rights to administer ArcSight and manage users, groups, and their permissions.

See also [“Users” on page 981](#), [“User Types” on page 982](#), [Chapter 20, Managing Users and Permissions, on page 597](#).

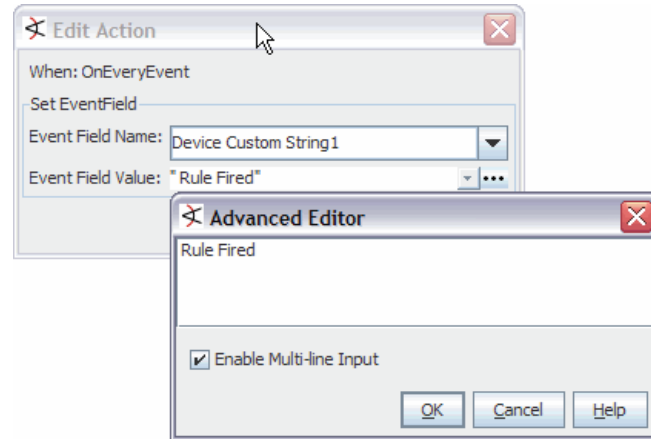
## Advanced Editor

An Advanced Editor is available to accommodate special requirements based on context for providing input to various fields, conditions, or other values. The Advanced Editor provides different features, depending on the context in which it is called or used in the ArcSight Console.

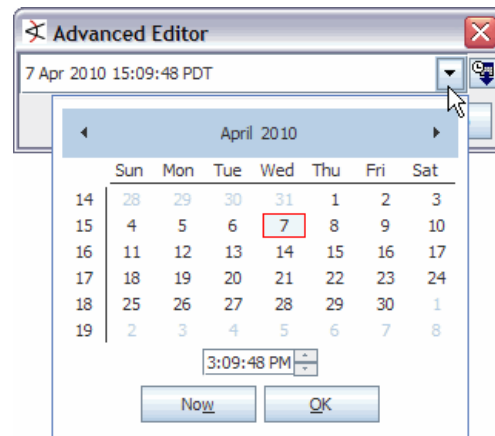
Typically, the Advanced Editor shows up during edit operations in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#), [Rules Editor](#) (for example, editing rule actions), and [Variables](#) editors, but it might show up in other contexts also.

Here are just a few examples of some of the contexts and features the Advanced Editor provides.

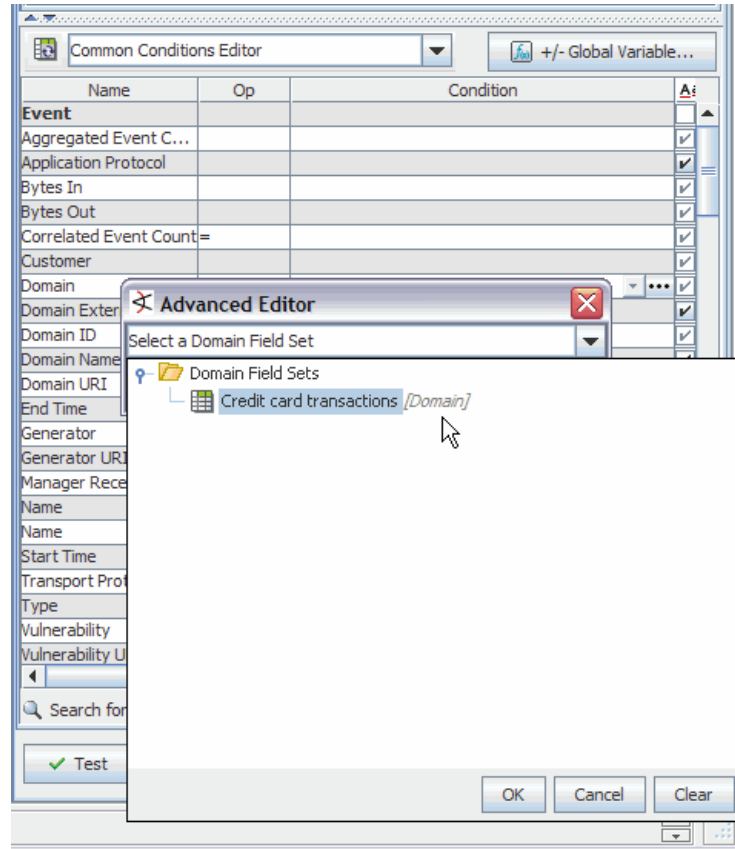
- Enable multi-line input. Advanced editors provide an option to enter multi-line input for rule action triggers, event field values in the common conditions editor (CCE), and so forth.



- Provide calendars and times.



- Choose a field set from a list.



## Aggregation

Aggregation is a composition technique for building a new event from one or more existing events that support some or all of the new event's conditions.

You use aggregation to group occurrences of matching conditions based on incoming event field data values, and optionally count only distinct occurrences of those events. To support that, the ArcSight Console provides Group By aggregation, in which you can group (aggregate) correlated events by field values. You can also optionally include distinct-value event processing combined with either join conditions and/or event grouping, to provide further constraints on when rules should fire.

*Rules* always run subject to their associated aggregation parameters, even if only the defaults. For more information, see [“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414](#).

The *aggregated event count* is a derived event field available in the [Event Inspector](#), the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#), and shows up in various data monitors (for example, [Moving Average Data Monitor](#)). The aggregated event count is described with the Event Group data fields under [“Data Fields” on page 837](#).

## ArcSight Console

The ArcSight Console is a graphical user interface that provides centralized intelligent real-time monitoring to secure your enterprise.

Console settings consist of your color selections, preferences, temporary filters, window sizes, etc., and are saved in a .ast file. The current setting file you are using is displayed in the Console title bar (by default, machine:username.ast). You can perform operations to save or load .ast files stored locally, on the same machine where the Console is installed, on save or load .ast files stored and maintained by the Manager. After settings are saved in a file, the .ast file is listed in the File menu. The File menu lists the last four .ast files that have been accessed.

Concerning Console-Manager connections, you may want to note that while each Manager connects to many Consoles, each Console connects to only one Manager. Also, when a Console is connected to a Manager, it affects only that Manager, regardless of how that Manager may be linked within a larger Manager hierarchy.

For information on viewing various articles, information, reports, or command results in a Web browser, see [“Web Browsers” on page 1009](#).

See related topics [Chapter 2, Working in the ArcSight Console, on page 41](#) and [Chapter 24, Personalizing the ArcSight Console, on page 731](#).

## ArcSight Web

ArcSight Web provides access to the ArcSight Manager from a Web-based client. ArcSight Web offers a subset of the features found in the ArcSight Console, including full event monitoring and drill-down capabilities.

ArcSight Web features include monitoring [Events](#), managing [Cases](#), acknowledging and resolving [Notifications](#), running [Reports](#), and reading [Knowledge Base](#) articles.

To learn more about ArcSight Web, use its online Help system.

ArcSight Web uses the Adobe Flash player. While most browsers for most operating systems include Flash, some do not. If necessary, download Adobe Flash from <http://www.adobe.com>.

## Assets

Assets are network devices, installed throughout your enterprise, that you monitor for vulnerability or attack. Once asset information is stored, ESM tracks your assets and notifies you if they are exposed to a threat or vulnerability, or if they are attacked.

Within the Navigator panel's Assets resource tree there are a number of views of associated information. The Assets, Networks, Zones, Locations, Categories, and Vulnerabilities tabs each show different aspects of the devices in question.

When, how, and why you might need to modify the resources in the Assets tabs is described in Managing Assets and Associated Resources, and particularly in Changing Assets. Help for managing hundreds of thousands of assets is described in [“Asset Scalability” on page 721](#). What the Assets tabs contain is described below.

## Assets Tab

This view shows the population of your network as discreet entities with specific IP addresses and unique MAC and host names. You often use this view to pinpoint a particular asset, then double-click it to change its characteristics and associations in the Asset Editor. The presentation is hierarchical and shows only the assets to which you have access through the Asset Editor. Note that you can also identify mobile assets by MAC address.

Because the usage (Zones) and descriptive (Categories) views are separate, the Assets view is free to accurately describe the access restrictions that apply to a given user.

The Internet Address Range asset category has its own Asset Range Editor. The address range groups are standard spans of IP addresses provided as a convenience for your use in rules. You can also collectively reference these ranges using the named networks on the Zones tab. For example, a rule could reference the Dark Address Space item under System Zones to identify a category of source IP addresses from which traffic should not legitimately originate.

The Asset, Zone, and Asset Range Editors all include Categories and Zones tabs for editing these attributes.

The Asset Editor has an Alternate Interfaces tab. When a single device has multiple network interfaces, you can define each interface as an independent asset. Common examples of multiple interface devices are network connection points such as routers and bridges. To use this editor from an appropriate asset in the tree, right-click it and choose **View Asset Alternate Interfaces**.

An asset or asset range (or its group) can belong to only one zone or location.

## Zones Tab

The **Zones** tab shows the hierarchy of network-related logical (usage) groups into which assets are collected, and on which you can act through the Zone Editor.

You can also think of zones as aliases for portions of your network that are dedicated to certain organizational groups or functions. The Zones view can help disambiguate multiple private networks that might have overlapping address spaces.

When the zones in your enterprise are referencing multiple global or local zones, ArcSight networks can help disambiguate erroneous address space overlaps or gaps, especially for SmartConnectors. A zone or zone group can belong to only one network or location, and expresses a single contiguous address range.

## Networks Tab

Here you can view the hierarchical collection of network entities recognized within your system. In this context, a network is an enterprise-level registry of ArcSight zones. Networks are used to reconcile overlapping or missing asset ranges among zones (if they should erroneously occur). When networks are present, SmartConnectors use them to find their correct zone assignments. Note that networks apply only in enterprises that have networks broad enough to require multiple local or global maps. If your enterprise maps only its own address space (meaning that overlaps and gaps aren't likely) the Networks tab won't be populated.

Each Network resource can relate to only one Customer resource, but to multiple Zones, provided address ranges do not overlap.

## Categories Tab

The hierarchy of asset categories provides a way to reference assets by means of their application or context. A given asset can be associated with multiple categories.

Asset categories are a cross-referencing capability that supports numerous business objectives. By making it possible to track network activity with certain assets on the basis of their business significance, data collection becomes possible; but just as importantly, other ArcSight analytical tools can also be brought to bear to derive many kinds of information. Finally, reporting capabilities can further analyze and permanently record the results.

The categories for a given enterprise are often quite specialized, but certain categories are usually present, even if customized.

Typical high-level asset categories often include:

- **ArcSight System Administration:** These assets include its Console, Databases, SmartConnectors, and Managers. The system automatically detects its own administrative assets and creates these entries in their respective groups.
- **Site Asset Categories:** These can be general monitoring categories such as Address Spaces, Applications, or Open Ports, but may include asset-tracking categories that are specific to issues such as business impacts and regulatory compliance. Business impacts might analyze the activity of a server that supports a particular product line. Regulatory compliance could monitor groups of workstations for HIPAA conformity.
- **System Asset Categories:** These can be any of a number of categorizations of assets such as Criticality (low, medium, high, very high), which would monitor by a classification of how crucial assets are to the enterprise.



SmartConnector configuration also affects the ability to automatically create the assets that represent network devices. Each SmartConnector needs to report an IP address or hostname for its sensor so its events can be identified on the network. See the configuration guides for your SmartConnectors to ensure they are reporting this information.

## Vulnerabilities Tab

The **Vulnerabilities** tab presents known vulnerabilities associated with the devices identified through the Assets tab.

Device vulnerabilities are presented as closely as possible with device descriptions to facilitate useful comparisons and easy reference

## Locations Tab

The **Locations** tab shows the hierarchy of names your enterprise uses for its physical or geographical domains.

Similar to zones, you can think of locations as another type of alias. You use this alias for portions of your network that are referenced by where they are rather than by organizational group or function. A given asset or asset range can be associated with only one location, but a given location can be associated with any number of appropriate assets, zones, or their groups.



## Asset Auto-Creation

As described in [“Automatically-Created Assets” on page 697](#), ESM automatically creates assets for components and, if applicable, for assets arriving from scan reports sent by vulnerability scanners via scanner SmartConnectors.

As a configuration option, you can also configure the creation of assets for devices reporting through SmartConnectors.

This section describes in detail how assets are automatically created from vulnerability scan reports and, if so configured, for devices reporting through SmartConnectors. All of the default behaviors described in this section can be customized by changing settings the `server.properties` file. For details, see [“Asset Auto-Creation Advanced Configuration Options” on page 772](#).

## Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report

Assets are created from vulnerability scan reports differently for dynamic and static zones (for more about dynamic and static zones, see [“Dynamic and Static Zones” on page 701](#)).



Scanner reports list only information received through the scanner, whereas Asset Editors include the full list of both scanner data and vulnerability mappings stored in the system. So, the Editors might show more or different information than that shown in scanner reports.

## Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report for Static Zones

For assets in static zones, you need at least an IP address or a host name to create an asset. Asset identifiers are looked up in the following order in a static zone:

- **MAC address > IP address > host name**

The table below describes the action taken based on available IP and host name information.

**Table 25-1** Vulnerability Assets in Static Zones

Example	Action taken if no conflicts	Action taken if previous asset with similar information
IP=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost	Asset created	Previous asset updated
IP=1.1.1.1 hostname=null	Asset created	Previous asset updated
IP=null hostname=myhost	Asset created	Previous asset updated
IP=null hostname=null	Asset not created. Either IP or host name is required.	No action taken. Either IP or host name is required.

## Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report for Dynamic Zones

For assets in dynamic zones, assets are identified by IP address and host name and/or MAC address. Asset identifiers are looked up in the following order in a dynamic zone is:

**MAC address > host name > IP address**

By default, assets are not created in a dynamic zone if there is no host name present. The property set by default is:

```
scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.nonidentifiable.create=false
```

Also by default, previous assets with similar information are discarded. This ensures that the network model is kept up to date with devices that are actively reporting events. The default property is set like this:

```
scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.ipconflict.preserve=false
```

Below are the actions taken by default.

### Vulnerability Assets in Dynamic Zones

Example	Action taken if no conflicts	Action taken if previous asset with similar information
IP=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=0123456789AB	Asset created	Previous asset deleted
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created	Previous asset deleted
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created	Previous asset deleted
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=null	Asset not created. Either host name or MAC address is required.	Asset not created. Either host name or MAC address required. Previous asset deleted.
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created	Previous asset deleted
ip=null hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created	Previous asset deleted
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=0123456789AB	Asset created	Previous asset deleted

You can configure the system to create an asset if the asset has either an IP address or a host name, or to preserve previous assets with similar information by customizing settings in `server.properties`. For details, see [“Asset Auto-Creation Advanced Configuration Options” on page 772](#).

## Creating Assets for SmartConnectors

ESM auto-creates assets for the ArcSight SmartConnectors connected to it. Creating assets for SmartConnectors is affected by the following conditions:

- ESM does not create an asset if there is no Network defined for the SmartConnector. This could happen if a SmartConnector is added incorrectly, or if an unforeseen condition occurs, such as a database corruption. If you do not specify a Network for the Connector during setup, ESM uses the default RFC1918 system zones.
- ESM does not create an asset unless the event is a base event: that is, an event generated by the device whose events the SmartConnector represents. For example, ESM creates an asset for the SmartConnector if the event is a firewall event, but it does not create an asset for the SmartConnector if the event is an ArcSight internal event, such as heartbeat events with the Manager.
- ESM does not create an asset for the SmartConnector if the Connector Asset Auto Creation Controller filter (at `/All Filters/ArcSight System/Asset Auto Creation/Connector Asset Auto Creation Controller`) is specially configured to exclude traffic from assets in this zone.

If the Connector Asset Auto Creation Controller filter is configured to exclude Connectors in a certain zone, such as a zone designated for VPN traffic that comes and goes from the network, then ESM does not create an asset for that Connector every time VPN traffic comes in from that Connector. This ensures that assets are not created unnecessarily.

For more about the Asset Auto Creation Auto Controller filter and how to configure it, refer to the Standard Content Guide — ArcSight System and ArcSight Administration. For information about an optional ArcSight Foundation, refer to the Standard Content Guide for that Foundation. ESM documentation is available on Protect 724 at <https://protect724.arcsight.com>.

## Creating Assets for SmartConnectors in Static Zones

By default, the SmartConnector auto-create function is enabled. For static zones, ESM needs both the IP address and host name to positively identify the SmartConnector asset.

The table below shows the action taken when base events come in from devices involving that SmartConnector.

#### SmartConnector Assets in Static Zones

Example	Action taken if no previous SmartConnector	If a SINGLE enabled SmartConnector with the same IP address exists in the same zone	If multiple previous SmartConnectors with the same name exist in the zone
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost	Asset created	Existing asset is relocated to the zone assigned to the Connector. If there's an asset with the same name in the group, the new asset is renamed by adding '_#', for example, <a href="#">asset_1</a> .	No asset created.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Existing asset is relocated to the zone assigned to the Connector. If there's an asset with the same name in the group, it gets renamed.	No asset created.
ip=null hostname=myhost	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	No asset created.
ip=null hostname=null	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	No asset created.

## Creating Assets for SmartConnectors in Dynamic Zones

By default, the SmartConnector auto-create function is enabled. For dynamic zones, it first looks for a MAC address, then a host name to positively identify the SmartConnector asset. The table below shows the action taken when base events come in involving that

SmartConnector. (If multiple previous assets with the same name exist in the zone, no asset is created.)

#### SmartConnector Assets in Dynamic Zones

Example	Action taken if no previous SmartConnector	If a SINGLE enabled asset with the same IP address exists in the same zone
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=0123456789 AB	Asset created.	Existing asset is relocated to the zone assigned to the Connector. If there's an asset with the same name in the group, the new asset is renamed by adding '_#', for example, <code>asset_1</code> .
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created.	Existing asset is relocated to the zone assigned to the Connector. If there's an asset with the same name in the group, it gets renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=0123456789 AB	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=null	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.
ip=null hostname=null mac=0123456789 AB	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both the IP address and host name are required.

## Creating Assets for Network Devices

By default, the Manager also auto-creates assets for the network devices that originate the events. This feature can be configured during Manager setup using the Manager Setup Wizard.

Creating assets for devices is affected by the following conditions:

- The Manager does not create an asset if there is no Network defined for the SmartConnector. This could happen if a SmartConnector is added incorrectly, or if an unforeseen condition occurs, such as a database corruption. If you do not specify a Network for the Connector during setup, ESM uses the default RFC1918 system zones.
- The Manager does not create an asset unless the event is a base event: that is, an event generated by the device whose events the SmartConnector represents. For example, the Manager creates an asset for the device if the event is a firewall event, but it cannot create an asset for the device if the event is an ArcSight internal event, such as heartbeat events with the Manager.
- The Manager does not create an asset for the device if the Connector Asset Auto Creation Controller filter (at `/All Filters/ArcSight System/Asset Auto`

Creation/Device Asset Auto Creation Controller) is specially configured to exclude traffic from assets in this zone.

If the Connector Asset Auto Creation Controller filter is configured to exclude events from Connectors in a certain zone, such as a zone designated for VPN traffic that comes and goes from the network, then the Manager does not create an asset for the device the Connector represents every time VPN traffic comes in from that Connector. This ensures that The Manager does not create unnecessary assets.

For more about the Connector Asset Auto Creation Auto Controller filter and how to configure it, refer to the Standard Content Guide — ArcSight System and ArcSight Administration. For information about an optional ArcSight Foundation, refer to the Standard Content Guide for that Foundation. ESM documentation is available on Protect 724 at (<https://protect724.arcsight.com>).

## Creating Assets for Network Devices in Static Zones

If you configured Manager setup to auto-creates assets for the network devices generating assets, it takes the following actions based on IP address and host name in static zones.

### Network Device Assets in Static Zones

Example	Action taken if no previous device	Asset with same information exists on any zone related to SmartConnector
IP=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost	Asset created.	Move asset to a new group. If there is already an asset with the same name, the previous one is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null	Asset not created. Both IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both IP address and host name are required.
ip=null hostname=myhost	Asset not created. Both IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both IP address and host name are required.
ip=null hostname=null	Asset not created. Both IP address and host name are required.	Asset not created. Both IP address and host name are required.

## Creating Assets for Network Devices in Dynamic Zones

If you configured Manager setup to auto-create assets for the network devices generating assets, it takes the following actions based on IP address, host name, and MAC address in dynamic zones.

### Network Device Assets in Dynamic Zones

Example	Action taken if no previous device	Asset with same information exists on any zone related to SmartConnector
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=0123456789AB	Asset created.	Move asset to a new group. If there is already an asset with the same name, the previous one is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created.	Move asset to a new group. If there is already an asset with the same name, the previous one is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created.	Move asset to a new group. If there is already an asset with the same name, the previous one is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=null	Asset not created. Host name or MAC address is required.	Asset not created. Host name or MAC address is required.
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created.	Move asset to a new group. If there is already an asset with the same name, the previous one is renamed.
ip=null hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created.	Move asset to a new group. If there is already an asset with the same name, the previous one is renamed.

## Asset Names

The Manager names the auto-created assets using the following templates. The creation rules work differently depending on how the events are arrive, by Connector or by scanner, and whether they belong to a dynamic or static zone.

## Naming Assets from Scanner Events

By default, assets that come from scanners use the naming scheme outlined below, depending on whether the assets came from a static or dynamic zone. This scheme controls how asset names appear in channels and labels in the user interface.

**Asset Names from Scanner Events**

	Static Zone	Dynamic Zone
<b>Property:</b>	scanner-event.auto-create.asset.name.template	scanner-event.auto-create.dynamiczone.asset.name.template
<b>Value:</b>	\$destinationAddress - \$!destinationHostName	\$destinationHostName
<b>Example:</b>	1.1.1.1 - myhost	myhost

You can reconfigure this default naming scheme the `server.properties` file, for example, if you want to show the host name first, or use an underscore to separate the elements. For details, see [“Changing the Default Naming Scheme” on page 775](#).

## Naming SmartConnector and Device Assets

SmartConnector and device assets are given the host name of the system that hosts them:

```
name = hostname
```

## Asset Auto-Creation Advanced Configuration Options

If the profile of events in your network causes the asset auto creation feature to create assets in your network model inefficiently, you can modify the asset auto creation default settings in the user configuration file, `server.properties`.

The `server.properties` file is located at  
`$ARCSIGHT_HOME/config/server.properties`.

For more about working with properties files, see the topic “Managing and Changing Properties File Settings” in the Administrator’s Guide.

## Asset Auto-Creation from Scanners in Dynamic Zones

The following properties relate to how the Manager creates assets from a vulnerability scan report for dynamic zones.

### Create Asset if either IP Address or Host Name

By default, the Manager does not create an asset in a dynamic zone if there is no host name present, as described in [“Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report for Dynamic Zones” on page 766](#). The property set by default is:

```
scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.nonidentifiable.create=false
```

You can configure the Manager to create the asset as long as it has either an IP address or a host name. In `server.properties`, change `scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.nonidentifiable.create` from **false** to **true**. The



Manager discards conflicts between an IP address and host name (similar IP address, but different host name and/or MAC address).



#### Caution

#### Creating an asset if no host name is present can result in an inaccurate asset model.

Setting `scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.nonidentifiable.create` to `true` means that assets are created if the asset has either an IP address or a host name.

This could lead to disabled assets or duplicated assets being created. Change this configuration only if you are using a dynamic zone to host ostensibly static assets, such as long-lived DHCP addresses.

When this property is set to `true`, the Manager takes the following actions.

#### Asset Creation with IP Address Only or Hostname Only

Example	Action taken if no conflicts	Action taken if previous asset with similar information
IP=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=0123456789AB	Asset created	Asset created, previous asset is deleted.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created	Asset created, previous asset is deleted.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created	Asset created, previous asset is deleted.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=null	Asset created	Asset created, previous asset is deleted.
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created	Asset created, previous asset is deleted.
ip=null hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset not created. Either host name or IP address is required.	Asset not created. Either host name or IP address is required.
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=0123456789AB	Asset not created. Either host name or IP address is required.	Asset not created. Either host name or IP address is required.

#### Preserve Previous Assets

This setting applies when the Manager creates assets from a vulnerability scan report for dynamic zones. By default, if a previous asset with similar information already exists in the asset model, the Manager creates a new asset and delete the old one, as described in [“Creating Assets from a Vulnerability Scan Report for Dynamic Zones” on page 766](#).

If you want to preserve the previous asset rather than delete it when a scan finds a new asset with similar information, you can configure the Manager to rename the previous asset. In `server.properties`, change `scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.ipconflict.preserve` from **false** to **true**.



#### Caution

#### Preserving previous assets results in a larger asset model.

Setting `event.dynamiczone.asset.ipconflict.preserve` to **true** means that assets are continually added to the asset model and not removed. Use this option only if you know you must preserve all assets added to the asset model.

When you configure the Manager with `scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.nonidentifiable.create=false` and `scanner-event.dynamiczone.asset.ipconflict.preserve=true`, it takes the following actions:

#### ESM Actions for Preserved Previous Assets

Example	Action taken if previous asset with similar information and <code>preserve = true</code>
IP=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=0123456789AB	Asset created, previous asset is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created, previous asset is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created, previous asset is renamed.
ip=1.1.1.1 hostname=null mac=null	No action taken. Either host name or MAC address is required.
ip=null hostname=myhost mac=null	Asset created, previous asset is renamed.
ip=null hostname=null mac=0123456789AB	Asset created, previous asset is renamed.
ip=null hostname='myhost' mac=0123456789AB	Asset created, previous asset is renamed.

## Changing the Default Naming Scheme

By default, the Manager names assets that come from scanners using the naming scheme outlined in [“Asset Names” on page 771](#).

### Asset Default Names

	Static Zone	Dynamic Zone
<b>Property:</b>	scanner-event.auto-create.asset.name.template	scanner-event.auto-create.dynamiczone.asset.name.template
<b>Value:</b>	\$destinationAddress - \$!destinationHostName	\$destinationHostName
<b>Example:</b>	192.0.2.1 - myhost	myhost

You can reconfigure this default naming scheme, for example, if you want to show the host name first, or use an underscore to separate the elements.

For example, you want the asset name for an asset in a static zone to appear this way in the user interface:

```
myhost_192.0.2.1
```

In this case, change the default

```
$destinationAddress - $!destinationHostName
```

to

```
$!destinationHostName_$destinationAddress
```

## Attack

An exploited threat or an attempt to bypass security controls on a computer. The attack may alter, release, or deny data. Whether an attack succeeds depends on the vulnerability of the computer system and the effectiveness of existing countermeasures.

## Audit Events

Audit events are events generated within the Manager to mark a wide variety of routine actions that can occur manually or automatically, such as adding an event to a case or when a Moving Average data monitor detects a rapidly rising moving average. Audit events have many applications, which can include notifications, task validation, compliance tracking, automated housekeeping, and system administration.

This topic lists the ArcSight audit events you can use in rules, filters, and other analytical or administrative resources. Observe the way these events are used in the standard system-related content for examples of how to apply them.

In the table below, use the **Audit Event Category** to locate events. Use the Device Event Class (DEC) ID string in rules and filters. The **Audit Event Description** reflects the resource name you see in active channel grids. Additional details, when necessary, appear in the **Notes** column.

Compare audit events, which report on **system activity**, with Status Monitor events, which provide information about a wide variety of **system states**.

All resources (except actors, groups, and users) use the general audit events described in “Resources (Configuration Events Common to Most Resources),” in when a resource is added, deleted, updated, locked, or unlocked. Actors, groups, and users each use their own unique set of audit events. Other resources present unique audit events that are listed in this section in alphabetical order by resource.



To get *additional* details within the “update resource” audit events (beyond what is provided by default), you can enable a resource audit property called `resource.audit.update.uris` in the `file server.defaults.properties` on the Manager to specify which resources should show extended audit event information.

For information on Logger audit events, see the Logger User’s Guide appendix, “Logger Audit Events.”

## Resources (Configuration Events Common to Most Resources)

These audit events are generated in response to creation events and configuration updates to most resources, except users, actors, and groups, which use different audit events. When a resource is added, deleted, updated, locked, or unlocked, the Manager generates one audit event with the following attributes:

- Device Event Class ID = `resource:100` (deleted) or `resource:101` (updated) or `resource:102`, and so on.
- Event Name = `<resource type> deleted/updated/added`.
- File Name = `<Resource Name>` (for example, John’s Filter)
- File Path = `<Resource URI>` (for example, /All Filters/admin’s Filter/John’s Filter)
- File Type = `<Resource Type>` (for example, Filter)

### Audit Events on Resources

Audit Event Category	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
Resource (Delete)	<code>resource:100</code>	Resource deleted.  The Event Name describes the action and resource type ( <code>&lt;ResourceName&gt; deleted</code> ); for example, deleting a filter results in an event named <code>Filter deleted</code> .
Resource (Update)	<code>resource:101</code>	Resource updated.  This audit event is generated when an existing resource is modified or added. See Resource (Add).  The Event Name describes the action (update) and resource type ( <code>&lt;ResourceName&gt; updated</code> ); for example, modifying a report, results in an event name of <code>Report updated</code> .

**Audit Events on Resources (Continued)**

<b>Audit Event Category</b>	<b>Device Event Class ID</b>	<b>Audit Event Description</b>
Resource (Add)	resource:102	Resource added (inserted). The Event Name describes the action (insert) and resource type (<ResourceName> inserted); for example, adding a case, results in an event name of Case inserted. Adding a Case group results in an event name of Group [Case] inserted.
Resource (Lock)	resource:103	Resource locked <ResourceName> locked.
Resource (Unlock)	resource:104	Resource unlocked <ResourceName> unlocked.
Resource	resourcereference:100	Could not locate a resource through the supplied universal resource identifier (URI).

## Active Channel

### Audit Events on Active Channel Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Message
channel:001	An active channel [Channel Name] was opened/started.
channel:002	The channel [Channel Name] is empty; that is, there are no matching events for the built-in channel filter.
channel:003	The channel [Channel Name] query completed.
channel:004	The channel [Channel Name] query is slow.

## Active List

### Audit Events on Active List Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Message
activelist:101	An entry was added to an active list.
activelist:102	An entry was removed from an active list.
activelist:103	An entry was changed in an active list.
activelist:104	An entry has expired in an active list.
activelist:105	An entry has been evicted from an active list. The active list is full and an entry is dropped.

## Actor

### Audit Events on Actor Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Message
actor:100	An actor was deleted.
actor:102	An actor was created.
actor:110	One or more actor attributes were updated.
actor:111	A multi-valued actor attribute was added to an actor.
actor:112	A multi-valued actor attribute was removed from an actor.

## Authentication

### Audit Events on Authentication Categories

Audit Event Category	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Message
Authentication	authentication:100	A client authenticated with the Manager.
Authentication	authentication:101	A client authentication login failed.
Authentication	authentication:102	An authenticated client logged out of the Manager.
Authentication	authentication:103	Authentication logout time.
Authentication	authentication:104	A client made several unsuccessful attempts to log in to the Manager, resulting in an excessive number of failed logins.
Authentication	authentication:105	<p>A non-FIPS client authenticated with the Manager via login.</p> <p>(A valid login by a non-FIPS ArcSight Console authenticating itself to the Manager triggers this audit event.)</p> <p>For information on how to configure a non-FIPS client (such as ArcSight Console) to log in to a FIPS-enabled Manager, see the Administrator's Guide.</p>
Connector Login	authentication:200	Successful connector authentication.
Connector Login	authentication:201	Connector authentication failed.
Authentication	authentication:202	<p>A non-FIPS connector authenticated with the Manager via login.</p> <p>(A valid login by a non-FIPS SmartConnector authenticating itself to the Manager triggers this audit event.)</p> <p>For information on how to configure a non-FIPS SmartConnector to connect to a FIPS-enabled Manager, see the document, Installing FIPS-Compliant SmartConnectors.</p>

## Archive

### Audit Events on Manage Archives Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
archive:100	Archive created
archive:101	Archive deleted
archive:102	Event archive settings updated
archive:110	Archive activated
archive:111	Archive activation cancelled
archive:112	Archive activation failed

**Audit Events on Manage Archives Category (Continued)**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
archive:120	Archive operation succeeded
archive:121	Archive operation cancelled
archive:122	Archive operation failed
archive:130	Archive deactivated
archive:131	Archive deactivation cancelled
archive:132	Archive deactivation failed
archive:140	Archive scheduled
archive:141	Archive schedule cancelled
archive:142	Archive schedule failed
archive:143	Supplemental archive operation succeeded
archive:144	Supplemental Archive — No data
archive:145	Supplemental archive, failure

## Authorization

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
authorization:100	Manager refused to authorize client.

## Connectors

Audit events related to SmartConnectors are described in the following tables.

### Connector Connection

**Audit Events on Connector Connections Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
agent:009	Manager rejected a connection attempt from a connector for reasons other than authentication failure.
agent:030	Connector started.
agent:031	Connector shutting down.
agent:041	Event flow on connector has been started, stopped, or paused.
agent:043	This occurs at the specified interval, if Device Status Monitoring is enabled. It Reports the last time an event was received and the number of events since the connector started and since the previous report.



**Audit Events on Connector Connections Category (Continued)**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
agent:101	Connector has just connected to Manager.
agent:102	Connector is sending events but no heartbeats.
agent:103	Connector is sending neither events nor heartbeats.
agent:104	An unknown connector attempted to connect to the Manager.
agent:105	A connector presented an incorrect shared secret when authenticating.

**Connector Exceptions****Audit Events on Connector Exceptions Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
agent:012	Connector detected source events from a sensor device containing incorrect time stamps.
agent:013	Connector noted that a new sensor device is sending events.
agent:014	Connector could not find a base event referenced in a syslog aggregate event.
agent:015	connector connection device failure.
agent:016	connector connection device success.
agent:017	Connector successfully executed a command.
agent:018	Connector could not execute a command.
agent:019	Connector is caching events because they could not be immediately transmitted to the Manager.
agent:020	Connector has emptied its cache of events.
agent:021	Connector could not communicate with an NT collector sensor.
agent:023	Connector could not communicate with a CheckPoint sensor.
agent:024	Connector is having difficulty communicating with CheckPoint.
agent:028	Connector experienced an unexpected problem.
agent:029	Connector was forced to drop its cached data.
agent:035	Connector sent an event with a bad timestamp; it is beyond the retention period.

## Connector Login

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
authentication:200	Successful connector authentication.
authentication:201	Connector authentication failed.

## Connector Registration and Configuration

### Audit Events on Connector Registration and Configuration Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
agent:007	Connector successfully registered with Manager.
agent:008	Connector did not successfully register with Manager.
agent:010	Connector upgrade succeeded. This is currently in the context of an installer upgrade.
agent:011	Connector upgrade failed. This event is not currently being generated.
agent:022	Connector could not process a reconfiguration request.
agent:025	Connector content was successfully updated.
agent:026	Connector content update failed.
agent:032	Connector configuration was successfully changed.

## Content Management

### Audit Events on Content Management

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
contentmanagement:100	ESM Manager is now a content publisher.
contentmanagement:102	ESM Manager is now a subscriber.
contentmanagement:103	ESM Manager is no longer a subscriber.
contentmanagement:120	A package has been manually delivered to subscribers.
contentmanagement:121	A package has been received from the content publishing system.
contentmanagement:122	A package delivery has started.
contentmanagement:123	A package delivery has completed.
contentmanagement:124	A package delivery attempt has failed.
contentmanagement:125	A package has been successfully installed by a subscriber.
contentmanagement:126	A package has failed to install for a subscriber.
contentmanagement:130	A package has been added to a schedule.

**Audit Events on Content Management (Continued)**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
contentmanagement:131	A package has been removed from a schedule.
contentmanagement:140	A content synchronization schedule has been enabled.
contentmanagement:141	A content synchronization schedule has been updated.
contentmanagement:142	A content synchronization schedule has been disabled.
contentmanagement:143	An attempt to enable or update the content synchronization schedule has failed.

## Dashboard

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
dashboard:001	A data monitor on a dashboard was newly accessed after not having been accessed for some time (for example, the dashboard had been closed). This audit event is generated on a per-user, per-Console-session basis.
dashboard:100	Dashboard has opened.

## Data Monitors

Audit events related to data monitors are described in the following tables, categorized by data monitor type. (See also the Dashboard audit events topic.)

## Last State Data Monitors

### Audit Events for Last State Data Monitors

#### Audit Event Category: Statistical Data Monitor

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
datamonitor:400	A Last State data monitor entry has exceeded its time-out period and was automatically removed.
datamonitor:401	A Last State data monitor entry value was manually changed by the user.
datamonitor:402	A Last State data monitor entry was manually removed by the user.

## Moving Average Data Monitor

### Audit Events for Moving Average Data Monitor Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
datamonitor:101	Moving average threshold.
datamonitor:102	Moving Average data monitor detected a rapidly falling moving average
datamonitor:103	Moving Average data monitor detected a rapidly rising moving average.
datamonitor:104	Moving Average data monitor reporting the current moving average.
datamonitor:105	A value was added to a Moving Average data monitor, which is now monitoring a new Group-By set of values.
datamonitor:106	A value was removed from a Moving Average data monitor. The data monitor is no longer monitoring a particular Group-By set of values.

## Reconciliation Data Monitor

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
datamonitor:300	Correlation data monitor reporting a correlated or non-correlated event.

## Statistical Data Monitor

### Audit Events for Statistical Data Monitor Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
datamonitor:200	Statistical Data Monitor reported a change in status.

**Audit Events for Statistical Data Monitor Category (Continued)**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
datamonitor:201	A value was added to a Statistical Data Monitor, which is now monitoring a new Group-By set of values.
datamonitor:202	A value was removed from a Statistical Data Monitor. The data monitor is no longer monitoring a particular Group-By set of values.

## Top Value Counts Data Monitor

**Audit Events for Top Value Counts****Audit Event Category: Moving Average Data Monitor**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
datamonitor:500	For a Top Value Counts Data Monitor, the top $N$ counts ( $N$ events).
datamonitor:501	Counts that were most recently added to the data monitor (from 0 ... $N$ events).
datamonitor:502	Counts that were most recently removed from the data monitor (from 0 ... $N$ events).

## Global Variables

The following events also apply to resources in general. See "Resources (Configuration Events Common to Most Resources)."

**Audit Events for Global Variables Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
resource:100	Global variable deleted.
resource:101	Global variable updated.
resource:102	Global variable inserted.
resource:103	Global variable locked.
resource:104	Global variable unlocked.

## Group Management

The following audit events are generated for any group add, update, or delete, including user groups. The details of the which type of resource was configured or modified are provided in the event name. (For more information on user management audit events, see the User Management category.)

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
group:100	A group was deleted.

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
group:101	A group was updated. This audit event is generated when an existing group is modified or added.
group:102	A group was added (group inserted). When a new group is added, two audit events are generated: this event (group:102), and a Group Update audit event (group:101).

## License Audit

Each of these events is reported every 24 hours, beginning 24 hours after you start the Manager.

### Audit Events for License Audit Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
license:100	The number of assets you have at this time.
license:101	The number of devices you have at this time.
license:102	The number of actors you have at this time.
license:103	The number of Console users you have at this time.
license:104	The number of web users you have at this time.
license:105	The average number of incoming events per second (EPS) over the last 24 hours and whether it exceeds your license.
license:106	The number of times that event-105 threshold breaches have occurred since the Manager started, and the license limit.
license:107	The number of times that EPS violations have breached the threshold over the number of days specified in your license. This is a serious license violation. For more information look at the <code>License:105</code> and <code>License:106</code> events.

## Logger Application

The available audit events vary by product version; some events in this section may not apply to your version.

Logger application audit events are stored in the Default Storage Group. As a result, these events can be searched using the ArcSight Command Center search. For example, you can search for this event: `"/Logger/Resource/Archive/Configuration/Add"/`.

A Logger audit event contains information about the following prefix fields:

- Device Event Class ID
- Device Severity
- Message

- Device Event Category—(keyName for this CEF extension is “cat”)

For example:

```
Sep 19 08:26:10 zurich
CEF:0|ArcSight|Logger|3.5.0.13412.0|logger:500|Filter added|2|
cat=/Logger/Resource/Filter/Configuration/Add
msg=Filter [Unified Query Test] has been added
```

Additional fields (if applicable) are listed in the following table. The table lists the information contained in audit events related to various Logger functions and configuration changes. The Severity for all Logger application events is 2. The following table lists the information contained in audit events generated by the Logger application.

Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
<b>Alerts</b>			
logger:610	/Logger/Component/Alert/Configuration/Add	Alert [name] has been added	fname=AlertName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=forwarderType dvc=syslogOrSnmplpAddr dvchost=syslogOrSnmplpHost HostName cn1Label=Syslogor SNMP Destination Port cn1=syslogOrSnmplpPort cs1Label=Filter cs1=filter cs2Label=Email Destination(s) cs2=emailAddresses
logger:611	/Logger/Component/Alert/Configuration/Delete	Alert [name] has been deleted	fname=AlertName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=forwarderType dvc=syslogOrSnmplpAddr dvchost=syslogOrSnmplpHost HostName cn1Label=Syslogor SNMP Destination Port cn1=syslogOrSnmplpPort cs1Label=Filter cs1=filter cs2Label=Email Destination(s) cs2=emailAddresses

Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
logger:612	/Logger/Component/Alert/Configuration/Update	Alert [name] has been updated	fname=AlertName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=forwarderType dvc=syslogOrSnmplpAddr dvchost=syslogOrSnmplpHostName cn1Label=Syslogor SNMP Destination Port cn1=syslogOrSnmplpPort cs1Label=Filter cs1=filter cs2Label=Email Destination(s) cs2=emailAddresses
logger:613	/Logger/Component/Alert/Configuration/Enable	Alert [name] has been enabled	fname=AlertName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=forwarderType dvc=syslogOrSnmplpAddr dvchost=syslogOrSnmplp HostName cn1Label=Syslogor SNMP Destination Port cn1=syslogOrSnmplpPort cs1Label=Filter cs1=filter cs2Label=Email Destination(s) cs2=emailAddresses
logger:614	/Logger/Component/Alert/Configuration/Disable	Alert [name] has been disabled	fname=AlertName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=forwarderType dvc=syslogOrSnmplpAddr dvchost=syslogOrSnmplp HostName cn1Label=Syslogor SNMP Destination Port cn1=syslogOrSnmplpPort cs1Label=Filter cs1=filter cs2Label=Email Destination(s) cs2=emailAddresses



Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
logger:615	/Logger/Alert/Configuration/Sent	Alert [name] has been sent	fname=AlertName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=forwarderType dvc=syslogOrSnmplpAddr dvchost=syslogOrSnmplpOrEsmHostName cn1Label=SyslogOrSnmplpOrEsmDestination Port cn1=syslogOrSnmplpOrEsmPort cs1Label=Filter cs1=filter cs2Label=Email Destination(s) cs2=emailAddresses
<b>Certificates</b>			
logger:643	/Logger/Component/Certificate/Configuration/Add	Certificate [name] has been added	fname=alias duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionId cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Certificate
logger:650	/Logger/Component/Certificate/Configuration/Delete	Certificate [name] has been deleted	fname=alias duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionId cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Certificate
logger:651	/Logger/Component/Certificate/Configuration/Update	Certificate [name] has been updated	fname=alias duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionId cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Certificate
<b>Archives</b>			
logger:520	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Configuration/Add	Archive [archiveName] has been added	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
logger:521	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Configuration/Delete	Archive [archiveName] has been deleted	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId

Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
logger:523	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Configuration/Load	Archive [archiveName] has been loaded	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
logger:524	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Configuration/Unload	Archive [archiveName] has been unloaded	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
logger:525	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Configuration/Archive	Archive [archiveName] has been archived	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
logger:526	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Add	Event archive settings added	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
logger:527	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Update	Daily archive task settings updated	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
logger:528	/Logger/Resource/Archive/Failed	Event archive failed	fname=archiveName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=EventArchive fileId=archiveId
<b>Filters</b>			
logger:500	/Logger/Resource/Filter/Configuration/Add	Filter [filterName] has been added	fname=filterName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Filter fileId=filterId

Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
logger:501	/Logger/Resource/Filter/Configuration/Delete	Filter [filterName] has been deleted	fname=filterName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Filter fileId=filterId
logger:502	/Logger/Resource/Filter/Configuration/Update	Filter [filterName] has been updated	fname=filterName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Filter fileId=filterId
<b>Peers</b>			
logger:550	/Logger/Resource/PeerLogger/Configuration/Add	Peer Logger [name] has been added	fname=Name duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Peer Logger fileId=LoggerId
logger:551	/Logger/Resource/PeerLogger/Configuration/Delete	Peer Logger [name] has been deleted	fname=Name duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Peer Logger fileId=LoggerId
logger:570	/Logger/Resource/PeerLogger/Authorizations/Configuration/Add	Peer Logger authorization [name] has been added	fname=Name duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Peer Logger Authorization
logger:571	/Logger/Resource/PeerLogger/Authorizations/Configuration/Delete	Peer Logger authorization [name] has been deleted	fname=Name duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Peer Logger Authorization fileId=LoggerId
<b>Saved Searches</b>			
logger:540	/Logger/Resource/SavedSearch/Configuration/Add	Saved search [name] has been added	fname=savedSearchName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Saved Search fileId=savedSearchId

Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
logger:541	/Logger/Resource/ SavedSearch/Config uration/Delete	Saved search [name] has been deleted	fname=savedSearchName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Saved Search fileId=savedSearchId
logger:542	/Logger/Resource/ SavedSearch/Config uration/Update	Saved search [name] has been updated	fname=savedSearchName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Saved Search fileId=savedSearchId
<b>Storage Groups</b>			
logger:530	/Logger/Resource/ StorageGroup/Config uration/Add	Storage group [storageGroupName] has been added	fname=storageGroupName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Storage Group fileId=storageGroupId
logger:532	/Logger/Resource/ StorageGroup/Config uration/Update	Storage group [storageGroupName] has been updated	fname=storageGroupName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Storage Group fileId=storageGroupId
<b>Storage Rules (Storage Mapping)</b>			
logger:533	/Logger/Resource/ StorageRule/Configu ration/Add	Storage rule [name] has been added	fname=storageRuleName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Storage Rule
logger:535	/Logger/Resource/ StorageRule/Configu ration/Update	Storage rule [name] has been updated	fname=storageRuleName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Storage Rule
<b>Storage Volume</b>			
logger:536	/Logger/Resource/ StorageVolume/ Configuration/Add	Storage volume [name] has been added	fname=storageVolumeName duser=UserName duid=userId cs4=sessionIdfile cs4Label=Session ID fileType=Storage Volume fileId=storageVolumeId

Device Event Class ID	Device Event Category (cat)	Message	Additional Fields
<b>Search</b>			
logger: 680	/Logger/Search/Index/Update	Search indices have been added OR Search index has been added	cs4=sessionId fileType=Search Index Configuration duser=UserName msg=Search index has been added cn1=1 duid=1 cs4Label=Session ID rt=receiptTime cn1Label=No. of fields added
logger: 690	/Logger/Search/Options/Update	Search options have been updated	cs6=false cs7=true cs4=sessionId cs5=false cs2=false cs3=false cs1=true cs8=false cs1Label=Field Search Case Sensitivity duid=1 cs7Label=Field Summary cs8Label=Field Summary Field Discovery cs6Label=Display options rawEvent cs3Label=Regex Search Unicode Case Sensitivity fileType=Search Options duser=UserName cs5Label=Regex Search Canonical Equality Check cs4Label=Session ID rt=receiptTime cs2Label=Regex Search Case Sensitivity
logger: 710	/Logger/Search/Cancelled	Search session [sessionId] has been cancelled by [user]	cs1Label=Session ID duid=1 cs1=sessionIdfile duser=UserName rt=receiptTime

#### Manager Activation

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
manager:100	Manager has started.
manager:101	A clean Manager shutdown has been requested.

## Manager External Event Flow Interruption

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
manager:200	Manager has stopped the event flow.
manager:201	Manager has allowed the event flow to resume.

## Notifications

Audit events related to notifications are described in the following tables.

### Notification

Audit Events for Notification Category	
Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
notification:100	Notification has been disabled.
notification:101	Notification has been disabled because the queue of notifications to be sent is too large.
notification:102	Notification has been enabled.
notification:103	Notification has been enabled because the queue of notifications is back under control.
notification:104	A particular notification destination has been disabled.
notification:105	A particular notification destination has been disabled because too much traffic was directed at it.
notification:106	A particular notification destination has been enabled.
notification:107	A notification expired without being acknowledged.
notification:108	A functioning destination could not be located for this notification.
notification:109	An old notification has been purged.

### Notification Acknowledgement, Escalation, and Resolution

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
notification:110	Notification has been escalated.
notification:111	Notification sent requires acknowledgement.
notification:112	An informational notification was sent.
notification:300	This notification has been acknowledged.
notification:301	This notification has been resolved.

## Notification Testing

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
notification:200	Sent a test notification to this destination group.

## Pattern Discovery

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
pattern:001	New pattern discovered.
pattern:002	Pattern rediscovered.
profile:001	Pattern discovery run started.
profile:002	Pattern discovery run finished.

## Query Viewers

Audit Events for Query Viewer Category	
Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
queryviewer:100	Base query used by the query viewer succeeded.
queryviewer:101	Base query used by the query viewer failed.
queryviewer:102	Base query used by the query viewer has started.

## Reports

Audit Events for Report Category	
Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
report:100	Generated a new archived-report configuration resource.
report:101	Failed to generate a new archived-report configuration resource.
report:102	Generated a new delta archived-report configuration resource.
report:103	Report cancelled.
report:104	Generate report started.
report:105	Report generate process halted because the report was empty.

## Resource Quota

**Audit Events for Resource Quota Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
quota:100	Resource usage has fallen below the fixed-quota level.
quota:101	Resource usage has exceeded the fixed-quota level.
quota:102	Asset autocreation has exceeded a fixed quota.
quota:103	Asset autocreation is proceeding too rapidly.

## Rules

Audit events for rules are described in the following tables.

### Rule Actions

**Audit Events for Rule Actions Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
rule:300	For rule actions that do not have specific DEC IDs assigned.
rule:302	Set Event Attribute action.
rule:303	Send to Notifier action.
rule:304	Execute Command action.
rule:305	Export... action.
rule:306	Create New Case action.
rule:307	Add to Case action.
rule:308	Create New Case action failed.
rule:309	Add to Case action failed.
rule:310	Add to Active List action.
rule:312	Remove from Active List action.
rule:313	Run SmartConnector (agent) command.
rule:314	Send command or data to OpenView.
rule:315	AddAssetCategory.
rule:316	RemoveAssetCategory.



## Rule Activations

### Audit Events for Rule Activations Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
rule:700	Rule has been deactivated.
rule:701	Rule has been deactivated because it is unsafe. There was excessive recursion or event matching.
rule:702	Rule has been activated.
rule:703	Unsafe rule activation.

## Rules Scheduled

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
rule:801	Scheduled rule started.
rule:802	Scheduled rule finished.

## Rule Firings

### Audit Events for Rule Firings Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
rule:101	Rule fired OnEveryEvent.
rule:102	Rule fired OnFirstEvent.
rule:103	Rule fired OnSubsequentEvents.
rule:104	Rule fired OnEveryThreshold.
rule:105	Rule fired OnFirstThreshold.
rule:106	Rule fired OnSubsequentThresholds.
rule:107	Rule fired OnTimeWindowExpiration.
rule:108	Rule fired OnTimeUnit.

## Rule Warnings

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
rule:501	Rule is firing on events generated by itself (infinite loop).

## Scheduler

Audit events related to the job scheduler are described in the following tables.

## Scheduler Execution

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
scheduler:200	A task has been executed.
scheduler:201	A task failed to execute.

## Scheduler Scheduling Tasks

### Audit Events for Scheduler Scheduling Tasks Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
scheduler:300	A new task has been scheduled.
scheduler:301	A new task could not be scheduled.
scheduler:302	Enabled a task.
scheduler:303	Could not enable a task.
scheduler:304	Deleted a task.
scheduler:305	Failed to delete a task.
scheduler:306	Disable a task.
scheduler:307	Could not disable a task.

## Scheduler Skip

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
scheduler:100	The task scheduler skipped a scheduled task execution because the scheduler was not allowed to run.
scheduler:101	The task scheduler skipped a scheduled task invocation because the last invocation of the task is still executing.

## Session Lists

### Audit Events for Session List Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
sessionlist:101	An entry was added to a session list.
sessionlist:102	An entry was removed from a session list.
sessionlist:103	A session list entry was updated.

**Audit Events for Session List Category (Continued)**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
sessionlist:104	An entry in a session list was auto-terminated as the session expired.
sessionlist:201	A session list partition was added.
sessionlist:202	A session list partition was dropped.
sessionlist:203	A session list Partition add failed.
sessionlist:204	A session list Partition drop failed.
sessionlist:301	<p>During lookup on a session list value, the value was not available in Manager memory, and the lookup was not performed on the database.</p> <p>This can occur if too many session list lookups are performed against the database. Typically, the Manager generates one audit event for any number of dropped lookups in a time period, instead of one per dropped lookup.</p>

## Stress

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
test:100	<p>A stress test event.</p> <p>This event is generated only by ArcSight Quality Assurance.</p>

## Trends

Audit events for trends are described in the following tables.

### Trends

**Audit Events for Trend Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
trend:100	Trend run started.
trend:101	Trend run success.
trend:102	Trend run failure.
trend:201	Trend scavenge success.
trend:202	Trend scavenge failure.
trend:401	Trend enabled.
trend:402	Trend disabled.
trend:501	Trend task started.

**Audit Events for Trend Category (Continued)**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
trend:502	Trend task ended.
trend:601	Trend was automatically deactivated because of too many failures.
trend:701	Trend successfully updated an active list. You can add an action to a trend to send columns (fields) in trend results to a <i>fields-based</i> active list.

**Trend Partitions****Audit Events for Trend Partitions Category**

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
trend:301	Trend partition added.
trend:302	Trend partition dropped.
trend:303	Trend partition add failed.
trend:304	Trend partition drop failed.

## User Login

### Audit Events for User Logins

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
authentication:100	Successful client login.
authentication:101	Failed client login.
authentication:102	Client logout.
authentication:103	Client timed out due to inactivity.
authentication:104	Too many client login failures occurred within a time period. <b>Note:</b> After the third login failure, future logins are prevented. The next time this user logs in, the generated event is authentication:101, Failed client login with the reason, User disabled.

## User Management

### Audit Events for User Management Category

Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description
user:100	A user account was deleted.
user:101	A user account was updated. This audit event is generated when an existing user account is modified or a new user is inserted.
user:102	A user account was added. When a new user account is inserted, two audit events are generated: this User Inserted event, and a User Update event (user:101).

Also see the section “Group Management,” earlier in the Audit Events section, which reflects adds, deletes, and updates of groups, including user groups.

## Batching

Batching is a mode in which ArcSight SmartConnectors receive or send collections of events at one time rather than immediately after each occurrence.

## Case Editor Tab Fields

This topic is a directory to reference information about the fields on the Case Editor tabs. The Case Editor displays case information organized in five major tabs:

### Fields on Case Editor Tabs

Case Editor Tab	Description
Initial	<p>Basic case information: case ticket attributes, description and security classification.</p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Initial - Attributes Tab</a></p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Initial - Description Tab</a></p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Initial - Security Classification Tab</a></p>
Follow-Up	<p>Description of actions taken, planned, or recommended.</p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Follow-Up Tab</a></p>
Final	<p>Ticket resolution and reporting including attack mechanism, attack agent, incident information, and vulnerability information.</p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Final - Attack Mechanism Tab</a></p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Final - Attack Agent Tab</a></p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Final - Incident Information Tab</a></p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Final - Vulnerability Tab</a></p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Final - Other Tab</a></p>
Events	<p>List of events included in case.</p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Events Tab</a></p>
Attachments	<p>List of attachments in the case. Provides option to attach or detach items to the case.</p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Attachments Tab</a></p>
Notes	<p>Miscellaneous case information.</p> <p><a href="#">Case Editor Notes Tab</a></p>

This organization lets you separate information based on the workflow and handling or resolution of individual cases.



**Note**

- To edit a saved case, you first need to select the **Lock Case** checkbox, so other users can't modify it while you're editing.
- Basically, only the Name field is required. However, the Case Editor UI may have been customized by making additional fields as required. Customization of such fields are performed by HP Professional Services who are tasked to work on ArcSight products.

## Case Editor Initial - Attributes Tab

The fields on this tab provide basic case information.

### Case Editor Attributes Tab

Field	Description
Case:	
Name	Required field specifying name of case.
Display ID	An identification provided by an external tracking system.
Ticket:	
Ticket Type	Drop-down list includes Internal, Client, and Incident types.
Stage	Indicate workflow stage of ticket; default selections include Queued, Initial, Follow-Up, Final, and Closed.
Frequency	Indicates how often reported issue occurs. Values assigned are 0 (never or once), 1 (less than 10 times), 2 (10 to 15 times), 3 (15 times), 4 (more than 15)
Operational Impact	Impact of reported issue. Values assigned are 0 (no impact), 1 (no immediate impact), 2 (low priority impact), 3 (high priority impact), 4 (immediate impact)
Security Classification	Values assigned are 1 (Unclassified), 2 (Confidential), 3 (Secret), 4 (Top Secret)
Consequence Severity	Values assigned are 0 (None), 1 (Insignificant), 2 (Marginal), 3 (Critical), 4 (Catastrophic)
Reporting level	Number calculated based on <b>Ticket</b> info values entered.
Incident Information:	
Detection Time	Automatically assigned based on the first event that is added to a case. Time is based on the Manager's system time. Once assigned, the value does not change even if you add events or remove existing events.
Estimated Start Time	Automatically assigned based on the Manager Receipt Time (MRT) of the oldest event attached to the case, even if more recent events have been added to the case prior to this oldest event. If you remove this oldest event from the case, Estimated Start Time takes the MRT of the next oldest event in the case, and so on. If you remove all events from the case, the field will be blank.
Estimated Restore Time	This is a user-entry field to denote the date when the case is resolved. Select a timestamp from the calendar popup.



**Note**

You can also use entries in all Case Ticket fields to generate reports so you can categorize cases based on specific case information.

## Case Editor Initial - Description Tab

The fields on this tab further describe a case.

**Case Editor Description Tab**

Field	Description
Affected Services	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Affected Elements	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Estimated Impact	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Affected Sites	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.

## Case Editor Initial - Security Classification Tab

The fields on this tab describe the security classification for a case.

**Case Editor Security Classification Tab**

Field	Description
Security Classification:	
Attach Mechanism	Selections include: <b>P</b> (Physical), <b>O</b> (Operational), <b>I</b> (Informational), and <b>U</b> (Unknown)
Attack Agent	Selections include: <b>I</b> (Insider), <b>C</b> (Collaborative), <b>O</b> (Outsider), and <b>U</b> (Unknown)
Incident Source 1	Editable text.
Incident Source 2	Editable text.
Vulnerability	Selections include: <b>D</b> (Design), <b>O</b> (Operational), <b>E</b> (Operational Environment), and <b>U</b> (Unknown)
Sensitivity	Selections include: <b>U</b> (Unclassified), <b>C</b> (Confidential), <b>S</b> (Secret), and <b>T</b> (Top Secret)
Associated Impact	Selections include: <b>A</b> (Availability), <b>C</b> (Confidentiality), <b>I</b> (Integrity), and <b>U</b> (Unknown)
Action	Selections include: <b>B</b> (Block/Shutdown), <b>M</b> (Monitoring), and <b>O</b> (Other)
Security Classification Code:	
Code	Value automatically calculated from other Security Classification field entries.



## Case Editor Follow-Up Tab

The fields on this tab describe follow-up entries for a case.

**Case Editor Follow-Up Tab**

Field	Description
Actions Taken	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Planned Actions	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Recommended Actions	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Followup Contact	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.

## Case Editor Final - Attack Mechanism Tab

The fields on this tab provide final ticket resolution and reporting information for the attack mechanism associated with a case.

**Case Editor Attack Mechanism Tab**

Field	Description
Attack Mechanism	Auto-populated from Security Classification tab. Possible values are <b>P</b> (Physical), <b>O</b> (Operational), <b>I</b> (Informational), and <b>U</b> (Unknown).
Attack Protocol	Text field allowing entry of up to 64 characters.
Attack OS	Text field allowing entry of up to 64 characters.
Attack Program	Text field allowing entry of up to 255 characters.
Attack Time	Date field.
Actions Target	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Attack Service	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Attack Impact	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Final Report Action	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.

## Case Editor Final - Attack Agent Tab

Fields on this tab provide ticket resolution and reporting information related to the attack agent associated with a case.

**Case Editor Attack Agent Tab**

Field	Description
Attack Agent	Auto-populated from Security Classification tab. Possible values are <b>I</b> (Insider), <b>C</b> (Collaborative), <b>O</b> (Outsider), and <b>U</b> (Unknown).
Attack Location Id	Text field allowing entry of up to 255 characters.
Attack Node	Text field allowing entry of up to 255 characters.

**Case Editor Attack Agent Tab (Continued)**

Field	Description
Attack Address	Text field allowing entry of up to 255 characters.

**Case Editor Final - Incident Information Tab**

The fields on this tab provide final incident information associated with a case.

**Case Editor Incident Information Tab**

Field	Description
Incident Source 1	Auto-populated from Security Classification tab.
Incident Source 2	Auto-populated from Security Classification tab.
Incident Source Address	Text field allowing entry of up to 200 characters.

**Case Editor Final - Vulnerability Tab**

The fields on this tab provide final ticket resolution and reporting information related to the vulnerabilities associated with a case.

**Case Editor Vulnerability Tab**

Field	Description
Vulnerability	Auto-populated from Security Classification tab. Possible values are <b>D</b> (Design), <b>O</b> (Operational), <b>E</b> (Operational Environment), and <b>U</b> (Unknown).
Vulnerability Type 1	Selections include: Accidental or Intentional
Vulnerability Type 2	Selections include: EMI/RFI, Insertion of Data, Theft of Service, Unauthorized, Probes, Root Compromise, DoS Attack, User Account
Vulnerability Evidence	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Vulnerability Source	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Vulnerability Data	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.

**Case Editor Final - Other Tab**

The fields on this tab provide miscellaneous ticket resolution and final reporting information.

**Case Editor Other Tab**

Field	Description
History	Selections include: Known Occurrence and Unknown
No Occurrences	Numeric value

**Case Editor Other Tab (Continued)**

Field	Description
Last Occurrence Time	Enterable time or selector.
Resistance	Selections include: High, Low, Unknown
Consequence Severity	Auto-populated from Initial Attributes tab
Sensitivity	Auto-populated from Initial Attributes tab
Recorded Data	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Inspection Results	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.
Conclusions	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters.

## Case Editor Events Tab

The fields on this tab provide a list of the events included in a case.

**Case Editor Events Tab**

Field	Description
Description	Events auto-populated from events included in a case.
Event Info and Payload fields	For selected events, displays event field values and payload fields, if available. If a rule created or updated the case, the tab displays the rule correlation event that triggered updates on the case. Additionally, if also configured in the rule, the correlated base events are included.

## Case Editor Attachments Tab

This tab lists attachments (if any) for the case, and provides options to attach new items via a file browser or detach items.

## Case Editor Notes Tab

The fields on this tab provide a place to enter miscellaneous case information and notes.

**Case Editor Notes Tab**

Field	Description
Notes	Text field allowing entry of up to 4000 characters that you can save per note.
Table and List Tabs	<b>Table</b> lists saved notes that you can select to display contents; <b>List</b> provides a combined listing of the all saved notes, in chronological order.

## Cases

Cases are entries in an event-tracking system used to track, investigate, and resolve suspicious events in a workflow-type environment. When suspicious events occur, cases

are created and assigned to users, who then investigate and resolve them based on enterprise policies and practices.

ArcSight has two ways to create and handle cases. First, it has its own complete case-management system. You can use this system to create new cases and assign them to specific groups and users who are notified and receive the cases and relevant data and information associated with the case. Those users can then act on the assigned cases, specifying resolution or other actions taken on the case, which gets reported back and recorded in the ongoing or final resolution of a case.

In addition to using the built-in case management system that ArcSight provides, you can also integrate it with other external case management systems such as Remedy. In that situation, adding new cases exports event information and bring up forms of the external case management system for you to create and assign new cases. The integration with external case management system can also be customized so that case resolution is reported back and recorded.

Case attachments enable you to attach files to any case you are able to edit, for example log files. You are also able to delete cases and attachments; if you delete a case, it deletes the attachment. You can add a file to a case, making it public or private. Private means that the attachment is never shared with other cases; Public means that everyone has access to the latest edited version of that file. Sharing attachments makes it possible to share files that are common among many cases, for example as with a non-disclosure agreement.

For complete information on working with cases, see [“Case Management and Queries” on page 531](#).

## Case Groups

Cases are organized into these groups:

### Case Groups

Case Group	Description
<User Name>'s Cases	Those assigned to the user ID.
Shared Cases	Cases that the logged-in user has permission to access.
Public Cases	Cases to which all users have read permission.
Unassigned	Cases that are not assigned to any user.

If you have Administrator access you also have a group named All Cases that contains all user case groups and their cases.

## Categories

### Event Categories

Events received from ArcSight-supported devices are automatically **categorized** (appended with classification information) by ArcSight SmartConnectors based on the ArcSight event categorization taxonomy. Event Categories are used to classify events based on criteria such as object type, behavior, outcome, technique, device group, and significance. This additional information about an event (together with normalization and

other filtering) helps to identify the significance events from different devices and vendors based on a consistent model.

For information about categorization of events by SmartConnectors go to the HP Protect 724 Web site and download the document entitled *ArcSight Categorization White Paper* (<https://protect724.hp.com/docs/DOC-10782>).

For information on creating custom event categories, see “Event Categorization” on page 915.

## Asset Categories

Asset categories are system resources that describe properties of an asset, such as the operating system running on it, key applications it hosts, its role within the enterprise, and any other properties you want to consider when evaluating threats or behaviors associated with this asset.

There is more information about asset categories in ESM 101. See “Asset Categories” in Chapter 11, “The Network Model.”

The Asset Categories subtab in the Navigator provides options to organize assets into groups based on categories. See “Managing Asset Categories” on page 728.

**Table 25-2 Asset Categories**

Category	Description
<a href="#">Object Category</a>	Events are always about a certain object. An object can, for example, be an application, the operating system, a database, a file or the memory of a server. It is important to realize that we are referring to the targeted object. It is not about who is doing something, but what is the object being accessed, altered, etc. (See “Object Category” on page 810.)
<a href="#">Behavior Category</a>	Events not only refer to certain objects, but there is generally an action or a behavior associated with an event. What is being done to an object? Behaviors include access, execution, or modification, and so on. (See “Behavior Category” on page 812.)
<a href="#">Outcome Category</a>	With the first two dimensions, we know what object is being referred to and what action targeted the object. However, we do not know whether the behavior was successful or not. Therefore, the outcome is a success, a failure or an attempt. An attempt really indicates that something was neither a success nor a failure and the outcome is not clear or there is no statement that could be made about the outcome. (See “Outcome Category” on page 813.)
<a href="#">Device Group Category</a>	Many security devices serve a multitude of purposes in one product. Intrusion Prevention Systems for example, generate events associated with their fire wall capabilities, as well as their intrusion detection capabilities. To be able to distinguish between these types of events, we introduced a dimension called <b>deviceGroup</b> . This dimension allows us to query, for example, for all of the firewall-type events as opposed to all of the events generated by a firewall. The distinction being that the former query also returns all the firewall messages, for example, in the operating system logs (for example, ip tables). (See “Device Group Category” on page 814.)

**Table 25-2 Asset Categories (Continued)**

Category	Description
<a href="#">Significance Category</a>	We need to know the significance of an event. We need the capability, for example, to separate normal events from hostile events. We also need to know whether certain activity reported by the device impacts the availability, confidentiality, or integrity of our systems. All this information is captured in significance. (See <a href="#">"Significance Category" on page 817.</a> )
<a href="#">Technique Category</a>	Frequently in a security context, we would like to obtain information about the type of events with respect to a security domain. Is an event talking about a denial of service, a brute force attack, IDS evasions, exploits of vulnerabilities, etc. (See <a href="#">"Technique Category" on page 814.</a> )

## Object Category

### Object Category Details

Host	Any end-system on the network, such as a PDA, a Windows computer, or a Linux computer.
Operating System	The system software that controls execution of computer programs and access to resources on a host.
Application	A software program that is not an integral part of the operating system.
Service	An application that normally executes at operating system startup. A service often accepts network connections.
Database	A database application.
Backdoor	An application, visible on a host, that listens for network connections and can give a non-authorized user control over that host.
DoS Client	A host that is displaying an application that can participate in a (possibly distributed) denial-of-service attack.
Peer to Peer	An application that listens for, and establishes network connections to, other installations of the same application (for example, Kazaa, Morpheus, Napster).
Virus	A host that is displaying a replicating infection of a file that also executes other behaviors on the infected host.
Worm	A host that is displaying a self-replicating program that spreads itself automatically over the network from one computer to the next.

**Object Category Details (Continued)**

	Resource	An operating system resource that is characteristically limited in its supply.
	File	A long-term storage mechanism (for example, files, directories, hard disks, etc.).
	Process	A single executable module that runs concurrently with other executable modules.
	Interface	An interface to the network.
	Interface Tunnel	Packaging a lower network protocol layer within a higher layer (for example, IPSec Tunnel, HTTP tunneling).
	Registry	The central configuration repository for the operating system and the applications. Application-specific information is not stored here.
	CPU	Events directed at this object relate to consumption or use of the overall processing power of the host.
	Memory	Events directed at this object relate to consumption or use of the overall memory of the host.
Network		Events that cannot be clearly associated with a host's subitem. Events that involve transport, or many hosts on the same subnet.
	Routing	Routing related events such as BGP.
	Switching	Switching related events such as VLANs.
Actor	User	A single human identity.
	Group	A named collection of users, such as an employee division or social group.
Vector		The replication path for a section of malicious code.
	Virus	A replicating infection of a file that also executes other behaviors on the infected host.
	Worm	A self-replicating program that automatically spreads itself across the network, from one computer to the next.
	Backdoor	An application that listens for network connections and can give a non-authorized user control over that host.
	DoS Client	An application that participates in a (possibly distributed) denial-of-service attack.

## Behavior Category

### Behavior Category Details

Access		Refers to accessing objects, as in reading.
	Start	The start of an ongoing access, such as login.
	Stop	The end of an ongoing access, such as logging out.
Authentication		Actions that support authentication.
	Add	Adding new authentication credentials.
	Delete	Deleting authentication credentials.
	Modify	Modifying authentication credentials.
	Verify	Credential verification, such as when logins occur.
Authorization		Authorization-related actions.
	Add	Adding a privilege for the associated object (for example, a user).
	Delete	Removing a privilege for the associated object (for example, a user).
	Modify	Modifying the existing privileges for the associated user or entity.
	Verify	An authorization check, such as a privilege check.
Communicate		Transactions that occur over the wire.
	Query	Communicating a request to a service.
	Response	Communicating a response to a request, from a service.
Create		Seeks to create resources, install applications or services, or otherwise cause a new instance of an object.
Delete		The reverse of creation events. Includes uninstalling applications, services, or similar activity.
Execute		Involves loading or executing code, booting or shutting systems down, and similar activity.
	Start	The beginning of execution of an application or service. This event is clearly distinguished from a lone "Execute" attribute.
	Stop	The termination of execution of an application or service. This event is clearly distinguished from a lone "Execute" attribute.
	Query	A query sent to a specific entity - but not over the network (for example, as when generating a report).



**Behavior Category Details (Continued)**

	Response	The answer returned by an Execute/Query. For example, a report delivered back from an application, or status messages from applications.
Modify		Involves changing some aspect of an object.
	Content	Changing the object's content, such as writing to or deleting from a file or database.
	Attribute	Changing some attribute of an object, such as a file name, modification date, or create date.
	Configuration	Changing an object's configuration. For example, application, operating system, or registry changes.
Substitute		Replacing files, upgrading software, or service or host failovers.
Found		Noticing an object or its state.
	Vulnerable	An exploitable state that is characteristic of a particular hardware or software release.
	Misconfigured	An exploitable state caused by a weak configuration or similar mishandling.
	Insecure	An exploitable state that arises from poor management or implementation. For example, weak authentication, weak passwords, passwords passed in the clear, default passwords, or simplistically named accounts.
	Exhausted	The targeted object was found to be exhausted (for example, not enough file descriptors available).

**Outcome Category**

These attributes indicate the probable success or failure of the specified event, within an overall context. For example, the outcome of an event such as an operation failed error message can be reported as a `/Success` given that the operation can be presumed to have actually caused a failure. Another example would be an event that identifies a Code Red infection: on a host running Linux the outcome would be `/Failure` (Code Red is Windows-only) while the same event directed at a host with an unknown OS would be reported as an `/Attempt`.

**Outcome Category Details**

Attempt	The event occurred but its success or failure cannot be determined.
Failure	The event can be reasonable presumed to have failed.
Success	The event can be reasonable presumed to have succeeded.

## Device Group Category

### Device Group Category Details

Application			An application program
Assessment Tool			A network- or host-based scanner that monitors issues such as vulnerability, configurations, and ports
Security Information Manager			A security-event processing correlation engine (the Manager). This "device" deals only in correlated events.
Firewall			A firewall
IDS			An intrusion-detection system
	Network		A network-based intrusion-detection system
	Host		A host-based intrusion-detection system.
		Antivirus	An anti-virus scanner
		File Integrity	A file-integrity scanner
Identity Management			Identity management
Operating System			An operating system
Network Equipment			Network equipment
	Router		A network device with routing (layer 3) capabilities
	Switches		A network device with switching (layer 2) capabilities
VPN			A virtual private network

## Technique Category

### Technique Category Details

Traffic			An anomaly in the network traffic, such as non-RFC compliance.
	Network Layer		Anomalies related to IP, ICMP, and other network-layer protocols.
		IP Fragments	Fragmented IP packets.
		Man in the Middle	A man-in-the-middle attack.
		Spoof	Spoofing a source or destination IP address.

## Technique Category Details (Continued)

Exploit	Transport Layer	Flow	A problem in network-layer communication logic, such as an out-of-order IP fragment.
			Anomalies related to TCP, UDP, SSL, and other transport-layer protocols.
		Hijack	Hijacking a connection.
		Spoof	Spoofing a transport layer property (for example, a TCP port number, or an SSL entity).
	Application Layer	Flow	A problem in TCP connections or flows, such as a SYNACK without SYN, a sequence number mismatch, or time exceeded.
			Application-layer anomalies.
		Flow	A peer does not follow the order of commands.
		Syntax Error	A syntax error in an application-layer command.
		Unsupported Command	A command which does not exist or is not supported.
		Man in the Middle	A man-in-the-middle attack on the application layer.
	Vulnerability		Exploiting a vulnerability (for example, a buffer overflow, code injection, or format string).
	Weak Configuration		Exploitation of a weak configuration. This is something that could be remedied easily by changing the configuration of the service (for example, weak passwords, default passwords, insecure software versions, or open SMTP relays).
	Privilege Escalation		A user identity has received an increase in its user privileges.
	Directory Transversal		A user identity is attempting to browse or methodically review directories for which it may not have appropriate privileges.
Brute Force			Brute-force attacks.
	Login		Continued trials for logins.
	URL Guessing		Continued trials for URLs to access information or scripts.
Redirection			Redirecting an entity.
	ICMP		ICMP redirects.
	DNS		Unauthorized DNS changes.

## Technique Category Details (Continued)

Code Execution	Routing Protocols	Attacks aimed at routing protocols (for example, BGP, RIP, OSPF).
	IP	Redirection using the IP protocol (for example, source routing).
	Application	Redirection attacks on the application layer (for example, cross-site scripting, mail routing, or JavaScript spoofing).
	Trojan	The code in question is concealed within other code that serves as a Trojan Horse. In other words, it appears to be one thing (that is safe) but is really another (which is unsafe).
	Application Command	The code in question is intended to invoke an application command.
	Shell Command	The code in question is intended to be executed in a shell.
	Worm	Code associated with a worm.
Scan	Virus	Code associated with a virus.
	Port	Any type of scanning. A network, host, application, or operating system scan can be identified through the specified object.
	Service	Multiple ports are scanned.
	Host	A service is scanned (for example, DDoS client discovery, backdoors, RPC services, or scans for a specific application such as NMB).
	IP Protocol	Scanning for hosts on a network.
	Vulnerability	A search for responding protocols. Note that TCP and UDP are not the only transport protocols available.
		A scan for vulnerabilities.
DoS		A DoS attack is in progress.
Information Leak		Information leaking out of its intended environment (for example, mail messages leaking out, system file access, FTP data access, or web document access).
	Covert Channel	Leakage was detected from a covert channel, such as Loki.
Policy		Policy-related violations such as pornographic web site access.
	Breach	A policy-related security breach occurred.

**Technique Category Details (Continued)**

Compliant	A policy-compliant event occurred.
-----------	------------------------------------

## Significance Category

**Significance Category Details**

Hostile	A malicious event has happened or is happening.
Informational	Events considered worthy of inspection; for example, those produced by polling.
Error	An execution problem.
Warning	A possible problem.
Alert	A situational problem that requires immediate attention.
Normal	Ordinary or expected activity that is significant only for historical analysis purposes.
Recon	Relates to scans and other reconnaissance activity.
Suspicious	A potentially malicious event occurred.

## Collaboration

The Console collaboration capability is a collection of features that make it possible for analyst teams to select certain security events for further on-going investigation. Investigation involves a workflow-style process of information collection that leads through a series of analysis stages to a final disposition.

In the Console, you locate events for analysis through the active channels in the Viewer panel. You use the Annotate Events dialog box or the Event Inspector to annotate an event, or collection of events, and set it up for follow-on analysis. Once you have placed the event or collection in the collaboration "pipeline" by assigning it a disposition stage (such as **Initial**), you or other analysts manage it through to resolution using the assigned stages as filter arguments.

ArcSight provides a set of default collaboration stages, but your enterprise may well use others created specifically for your workflow needs. Owners, disposition stages, comments, and other factors change as an event's handling progresses. The collaboration cycle usually ends when someone marks the event's **Stage** field as **Closed** (or the equivalent).

Compare collaborative annotation to cases, which are a more formal way to track sets of events that are under investigation.

**Default Collaboration Stages**

Stage	Meaning
Queued	The event has not yet been inspected.
Initial	The event has been inspected.

**Default Collaboration Stages (Continued)**

Stage	Meaning
Follow-up	The event is under investigation.
Final	The investigation has concluded.
Closed	The investigation is closed.
Monitoring	The event is being watched, especially in regard to a reoccurrence in support of a pattern.
Rule Created	The event has been used to create a rule that assists in monitoring for a reoccurrence, especially in regard to patterns, and potentially to respond in some way such as with a notification.
Flagged as Similar	The event is similar to one already under investigation.

See [“Collaborating on Events” on page 168](#) for descriptions of the tasks involved.

## Common Conditions Editor (CCE)

The [ArcSight Console](#) has a Boolean logic editor, which is also referred to as the Common Conditions Editor (CCE). If the criteria are met, the evaluation returns a Boolean true or false. All conditions constructed by the CCE are expressions that consist of a value or variable on the left, an operator (not, and, or), and a value on the right, for defining the conditions you use to help analyze resources such as filters, rules, and reports. This topic is your reference for using the CCE, wherever it appears.

See [“Logical Operators” on page 920](#) for related information in creating conditions.

See also [Chapter 7, Filtering Events, on page 175](#), especially subtopics on [“Creating Filters” on page 175](#) and [“Debugging Filters to Match Events” on page 179](#).

## Editor Features

The CCE has two tabs; **Edit** and **Summary**. In the **Edit** tab, logical operators are represented in a tree form.

In the **Summary** tab, conditions are presented in an easily readable, summary view. Resource references in the **Summary** tab are hyperlinked. (From the Summary tab, click a resource link to open its definition in a resource editor in the Inspect/Edit panel.)

Conditions are editable only on the **Edit** tab. Wherever the CCE appears, you use these features to build or change conditional expressions.

- The condition tree shows the complete set of expressions you are building or changing.
- The root of the tree indicates whether the expression concerns [Filters \(Filter By\)](#), [Correlation \(Correlate\)](#), or [Reports \(Report On\)](#), as you see in the Filters Editor, Rules Editor, or Report Editor, respectively.
- From the root, there are branches for one or more [Events](#). For each event branch, there are sub-branches for one or more condition statements.
- To add an event for a rule, select the root and click the **New Event Definition** button (see below) or right-click the root and choose the same command. Note that only rules

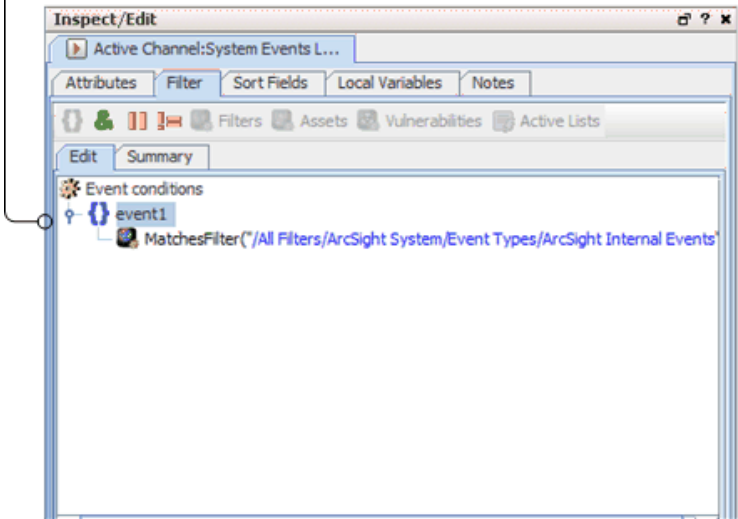
can add events because filters and reports do not need additional events for correlation.

- To act on a specific event or [Conditional Statements](#), select it in the tree. Once selected, you can use several features to modify it, as described here and below.
- Use the new event, [Logical Operators](#), and resource selector buttons above the tree to add events, operators, or resource-based constraints to condition statements, if applicable.
- Use the right-click menus that are available for any selected branch of the condition tree to choose commands that are applicable to that statement in that context.
- When you use the right-click **Edit** command to edit a selected statement directly in the tree (rather than through the event fields table), you can use the Enter key to update the condition without having to click **Apply** or **OK**.
- Do use single- or multiple-selection copying and pasting of statements for efficiency. You can use the right-click menu commands or **Ctrl+C** for copy, **Ctrl+X** for cut, and **Ctrl+V** for paste.
- Use the [Field Sets](#) selector to choose an appropriate group of event fields when an event-related statement is selected in the condition tree.
- To **undo/redo** an action, right-click in the Edit panel and choose either **Undo** or **Redo**, depending upon the action you want to use. For example, if you decide to delete a node, a message asks you to confirm. If you want to undo this delete, right-click in the Edit panel and choose **Undo Delete**. (You can also use the standard keyboard commands **Ctrl+Z** for undo and **Ctrl+Y** for redo.)
- To **Search** for a resource, simply click in the field column (on the left side of the list) and start typing. A Search popup is displayed when you start typing, and shows the term as you type it. The search is "predictive" in that it navigates to and select matching fields as you type. Click **Enter** to select this resource. For details see ["Searching for Fields in Event Inspector, Resource Editors, or CCE"](#) on page 52.

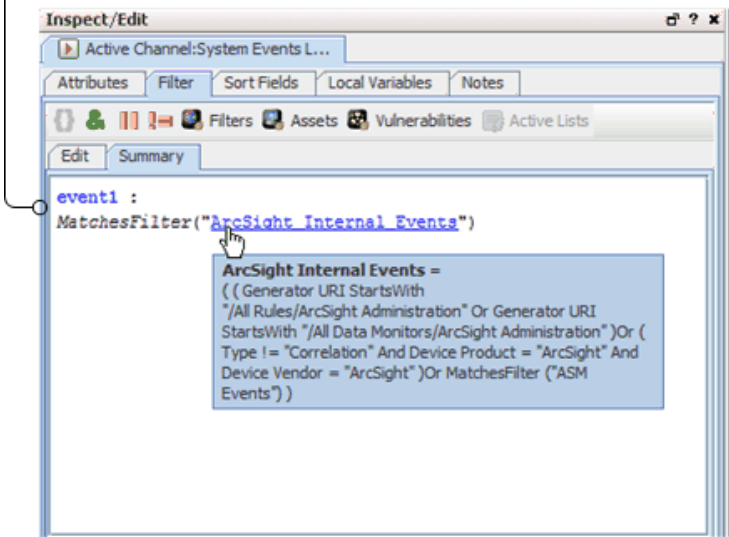


Both tabs provide syntax and error highlighting. As an example of error highlighting, if a condition uses resources that are later removed, references to the missing resources are highlighted as errors in the condition statements in the CCE.

In the **Conditions "Edit"** tab, logical operators are represented in a tree form. Use this tab to define and edit conditional statements.




In the **Conditions "Summary"** tab, conditions are shown in an easily readable, summary view. In this view, resource references are hyperlinked. Click on the links to go to a resource definition. Use this tab to review condition statements. You cannot edit the Condition on this tab.



## Condition Tree Command Buttons









All of the following options are available from buttons at the top of the Conditions Editor and also from right-click menu options. The exception is the "In Case" Condition which is only available from a right-click menu option.

### Condition Tree Command Buttons

Button	Name	Use
	New Event Definition	Insert a new condition tree in the editor.



## Condition Tree Command Buttons (Continued)

Button	Name	Use
	AND	Insert an AND condition.
	OR	Insert an OR condition.
	NOT	Insert a NOT condition.
	Filters	<b>Matches Filter</b> condition. This resource-based command browses the Filters tree of the Navigator panel. Note that this operator applies only to rules.
	Assets	<b>Assets</b> condition. This resource-based command browses the Assets tree of the Navigator panel. Note that this operator applies only to rules.
	Vulnerabilities	<b>Has Vulnerability</b> condition. This resource-based command browses the Vulnerabilities tree in the Navigator panel.
	Active List	<p><b>InActiveList</b> condition. This command browses the Navigator panel's Active Lists tree, and operates on items in the event and actor schemas. It is used to map a field or a global variable in the event schema to a corresponding field in an active list. It does not evaluate items in other non-event schemas (such as cases or assets).</p> <p>The InActiveList operator option evaluates single-value attributes and multi-value attributes. The field you map could return multiple values. In the case of multi-value attributes, if any one value matches, the condition evaluates to true.</p> <p>Consider this scenario for multi-value attributes: An active list keeps track of actor roles where role values can be one of Normal, Restricted, or Privileged. You can test if an actor has one of these roles. If your list has a field called RoleName, you map the actor's RoleName attribute to this field. Keep in mind that an actor's RoleName attribute is multi-valued because an actor can have multiple roles. Through the InActiveList condition, you can have a query that checks if one of the actor's roles is Privileged.</p> <p>A condition that tests for whether all or any values in a list match is only available to specify on queries and on in-memory operations such as rules, filters, data monitors.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The InActiveList condition in lightweight rules does not support lists with multi-mapped values.</p>
	Joins	<p>Inserts a JOIN condition.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules. (See <a href="#">“Creating Matching or Join Conditions” on page 407.</a>)</p>

## Condition Tree Context Menu Commands

### Condition Tree Context Menu Commands

Command	Description	Applies To
New Condition	Add a new condition statement below the selected element. Type the statement directly in the tree or choose a field from the pop-up menu.	operator, event field
New Logical Operator	Add a new logical operator to the selected element. (See <a href="#">"Logical Operators" on page 920.</a> )	Event alias, operator, event field
New "Matches Filter" Condition	Use the Filter selector to identify a particular filter as a matching argument for a condition. See also <a href="#">Creating Matching or Join Conditions</a> in <a href="#">"Specifying Rule Conditions" on page 403.</a>	operator, event field
New "Assets" Condition	Use the Assets selector to identify an asset or group as the argument for a condition. See also <a href="#">Adding Asset Conditions</a> in <a href="#">"Specifying Rule Conditions" on page 403.</a>	operator, event field
New "Has Vulnerability" Condition	Use the Vulnerability selector to identify a vulnerability as the argument for a condition. See also <a href="#">Adding Vulnerability Conditions</a> in <a href="#">"Specifying Rule Conditions" on page 403.</a>	operator, event field

## Condition Tree Context Menu Commands (Continued)

Command	Description	Applies To
New "InActiveList" Condition	<p>Use the Active List selector to identify a particular active list that contains the argument for a condition. It is used to map a field or a global variable in the event schema to a corresponding field in an active list. It does not evaluate items in other non-event schemas (such as cases or assets).</p> <p>When the InActiveList condition is used to compare values in two lists, an additional option is shown where you can specify whether <b>All values in list field must match</b>. If this option is checked, the Active List condition evaluates to true only if all values in both lists match. If it is not selected, the condition evaluates to true if any field is in both lists.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The InActiveList operator option evaluates single-value attributes and multi-value attributes. The field you map could return multiple values. In the case of multi-value attributes, if any one value matches, the condition evaluates to true.</p> <p>Consider this scenario for multi-value attributes: An active list keeps track of actor roles where role values can be one of Normal, Restricted, or Privileged. You can test if an actor has one of these roles. If your list has a field called RoleName, you map the actor's RoleName attribute to this field. Keep in mind that an actor's RoleName attribute is multi-valued because an actor can have multiple roles. Through the InActiveList condition, you can have a query that checks if one of the actor's roles is Privileged.</p> <p>A condition that tests for whether all or any values in a list match is only available to specify on queries and on in-memory operations such as rules, filters, and data monitors.</p> <p>See also <a href="#">Adding Active List (InActiveList) Conditions</a> in "Specifying Rule Conditions" on page 403.</p>	operator, event field
New Event Definition	<p>Create and name a new event alias to add to the root.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules.</p>	root
Change Operator	Change the rule operator to <b>And</b> , <b>Or</b> , or <b>Not</b> .	operator
Set Global Expiration Time	<p>For rules, set the amount of time that qualifying events for all aliases are retained in memory for evaluation, based on Manager receipt-time. Setting an alias expiration overrides a global expiration, if present. See <a href="#">"Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation"</a> on page 414 for more information.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules.</p>	root
Align Nodes	<p>When selected, shows the hierarchical structure of event conditions.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules.</p>	root

## Condition Tree Context Menu Commands (Continued)

Command	Description	Applies To
Edit	Open a text box in which to change the selected element.	operator, event field
Undo	Undo an action.	all actions
Redo	Redo an action.	all actions
Cut	Cut the selected elements of the condition tree to the Clipboard.	root, event alias, operator, asset, event field
Copy	Copy the selected elements of the condition tree to the Clipboard.	root, event alias, operator, asset, event field
Paste	Paste the conditional element currently on the Clipboard to the end of the selected element in the tree.	root, event alias, operator, asset, event field
Delete	Delete the selected elements of the condition tree.	event alias, operator, asset, event field
Set Alias Expiration Time	<p>For rules, set the amount of time that a qualifying event for this alias (only) is retained in memory for evaluation, based on Manager receipt-time. See <a href="#">“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414</a> for more information.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules.</p>	event alias
Consume After Match	<p>Use the event only once to fire a rule. Thereafter, additional joins with other event conditions are not performed within the rule’s time window. This setting is used to reduce the number of correlation alerts.</p> <p>By default, this setting is off.</p> <p>If disabled, an event matching a rule’s event condition alias stays in working memory and continues to combine with events that match other aliases, until the event itself expires within the time window.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules.</p>	joins
Negated	<p>For rules, a way to monitor the non-occurrence of an event. See <a href="#">“Negating Event Conditions” on page 410</a> for details on how to trigger rule actions based on negated events. Setting an event condition to Negated requires you to enter a timeout value. If the negated event is not sent from the device within this period, the rule is triggered.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option becomes available if the rule has two or more event conditions.</p>	event condition alias
Set Matching Time	<p>Sets the maximum time difference between the partially-matched aliases.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option applies only to Rules.</p>	matching event operator

### Condition Tree Context Menu Commands (Continued)

Command	Description	Applies To
Print Conditions and Tree Summary	Prints the condition definition as shown on the Edit tab and the Summary statement. Selecting this menu option brings up a Print Preview dialog where you can view what will print, and set printer options.	event alias, operator, asset
Help	Open the online Help system for information about the type of resource being edited.	root, event alias, operator, asset, event field

## Adding Conditions

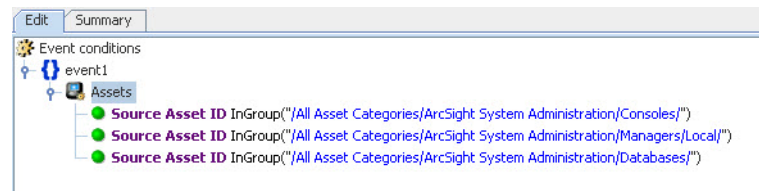
When adding conditions, you have to decide how the new condition ties to existing conditions. If **And** is used, the new condition has to occur in addition to existing conditions. If **Or** is used, the new condition or any existing conditions have to occur. If **Not** is used, all but the new condition has to occur.

You use the **AND**, **OR**, and **NOT** operators to define relationships between condition statements. When you use **AND**, the new condition must occur in addition to the selected condition. Using **OR** means either the selected or new condition must occur. Using **NOT** means all but the new condition must occur.

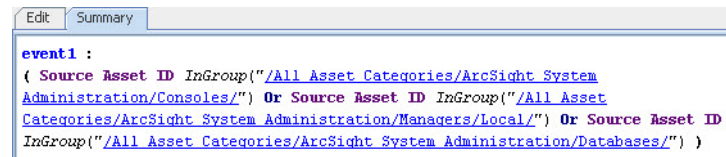


Multiple assets and asset categories added to a single asset condition are always **OR**'ed together (not **AND**'ed).

For example, create a new rule, click the **Conditions** tab in the Rule Editor, select **Assets**, and add some asset categories to the condition. (To do this, select them on the Asset Categories tab at the bottom of the Editor and click **Apply**.)



Click the **Summary** tab to view the detail of the Boolean logic. This shows that the assets are **OR**'ed together.



If you want to **AND** an asset condition to other conditions, go back to the **Edit** tab, select the event definition again, and add other conditions based on the fields shown in the lower half of the editor.

To add more condition statements, right-click an existing statement and choose **New Logical Operator**, then **And**, **Or**, or **Not**, or click a logical operator or resource-selection button. Then, create the new condition statement.

Event-definition and Join conditions are allowed (only) with rules to include separate "events" or aliases, or correlation of these separate "events" respectively.

In the data field table, scroll to a data field in the Name column to create a condition statement.

Data fields provide event details from all devices deployed throughout your enterprise. Event details from these devices are normalized into common data fields and stored in the ArcSight Database to allow investigative and analytical comparison of all incoming events. See ["Data Fields" on page 837](#) and ["Timestamp Variables" on page 979](#) for more information.

The data field table displays a **Name**, **Operator**, and **Condition** column. These three columns are combined to create <data field> <logic operator> <data field value> condition statements. For example, if monitoring a Cisco Router, you could define a condition statement to specify Device Product = Cisco Router: Device Product as the data field, equals (=) as the logic operator, and Cisco Router as the data field value.

## Search Box to Find Fields in the List



### Search Shortcuts

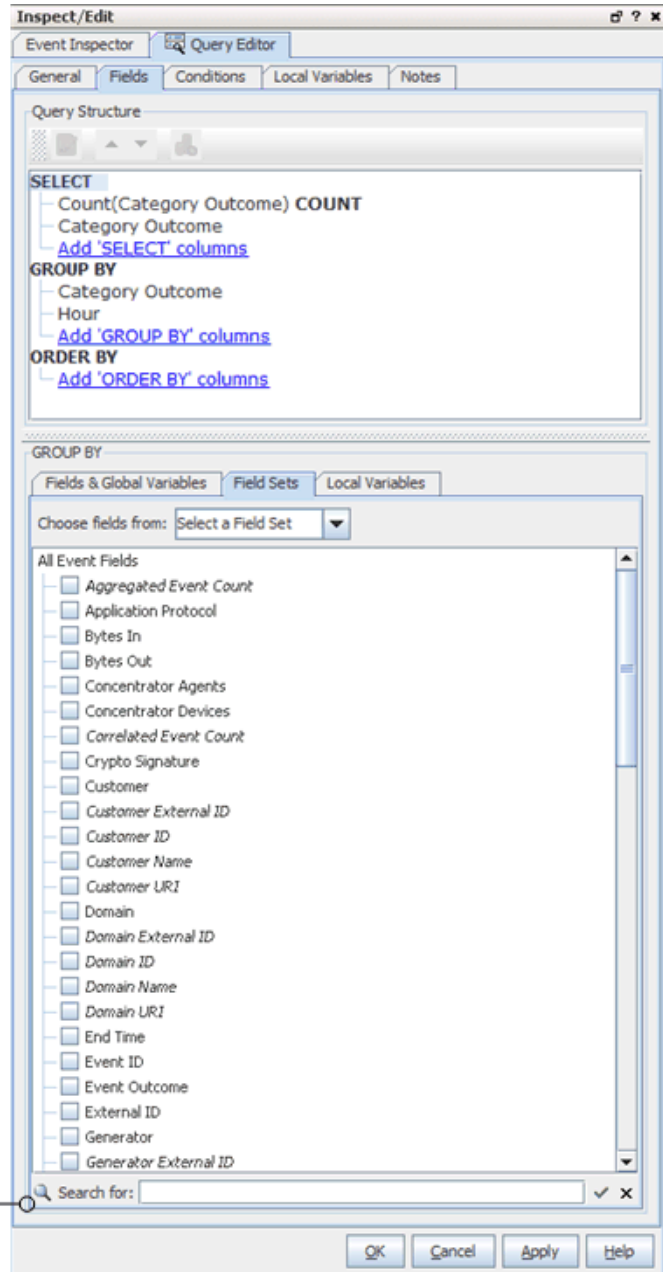
- Type part of the field name you want to find (for example, Name) in the Search box.
- Use the up/down arrow keys to jump to each instance of **Name** in the available fields.
- When you find the field name you want, press Return to add it to the condition statement
- Ctrl+F re-displays the Search box back if it's hidden.

**Search Shortcuts:**  
Type part of the field name you want to find (e.g., Name) in the Search box.

Use the up/down arrow keys to jump to each instance of "Name" in the available fields.

When you find the field name you want, hit Return to add it to the selected query structure sections (SELECT, GROUP BY, or ORDER BY)

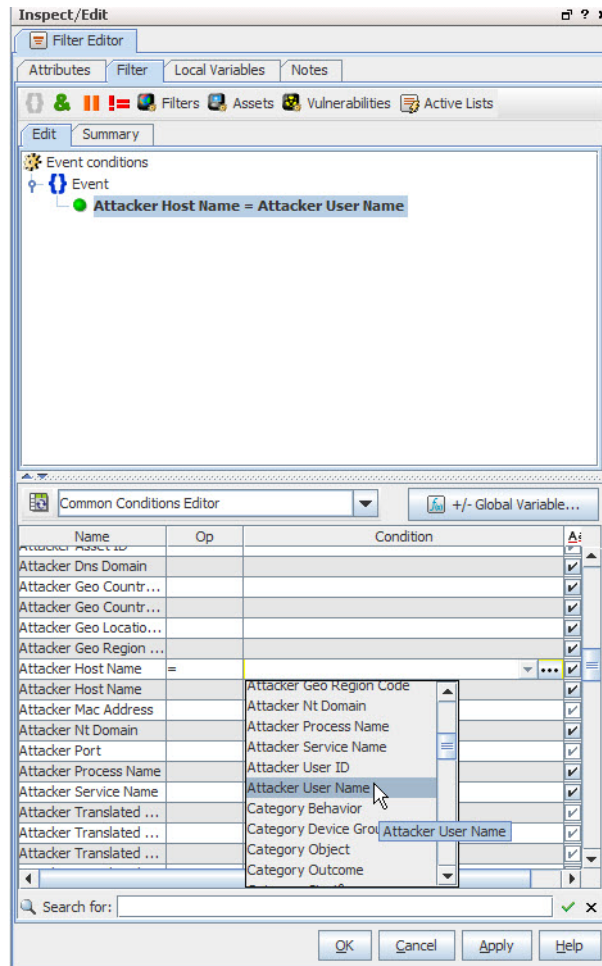
Ctrl+F gets the Search box back in display if it's hidden



**Figure 25-1** Search Box Example

## Field Comparisons with Variable or Static Values

For any field comparison, a drop-down menu of variables is provided for the *right* side of the statement. Or you can type a value here.




The CCE provides a field comparison ability that allows you to compare one field to another field (for example, `AttackerHostName = AttackerUserName`). This functionality is available on the Console wherever the CCE is available (in [Rules](#), [Reports](#), [Filters](#), and so on). If the fields you are comparing are numeric, the fields can be of different numeric types, for example, a long type compared to a floating point type.

Left-side event attributes can be compared to right-side conditions (represented as variables or static values) using operators like equals (`=`), is not equal to (`!=`), is less than or equal to (`<=`), is greater than or equal to (`>=`), is less than (`<`), is greater than (`>`), and so forth.

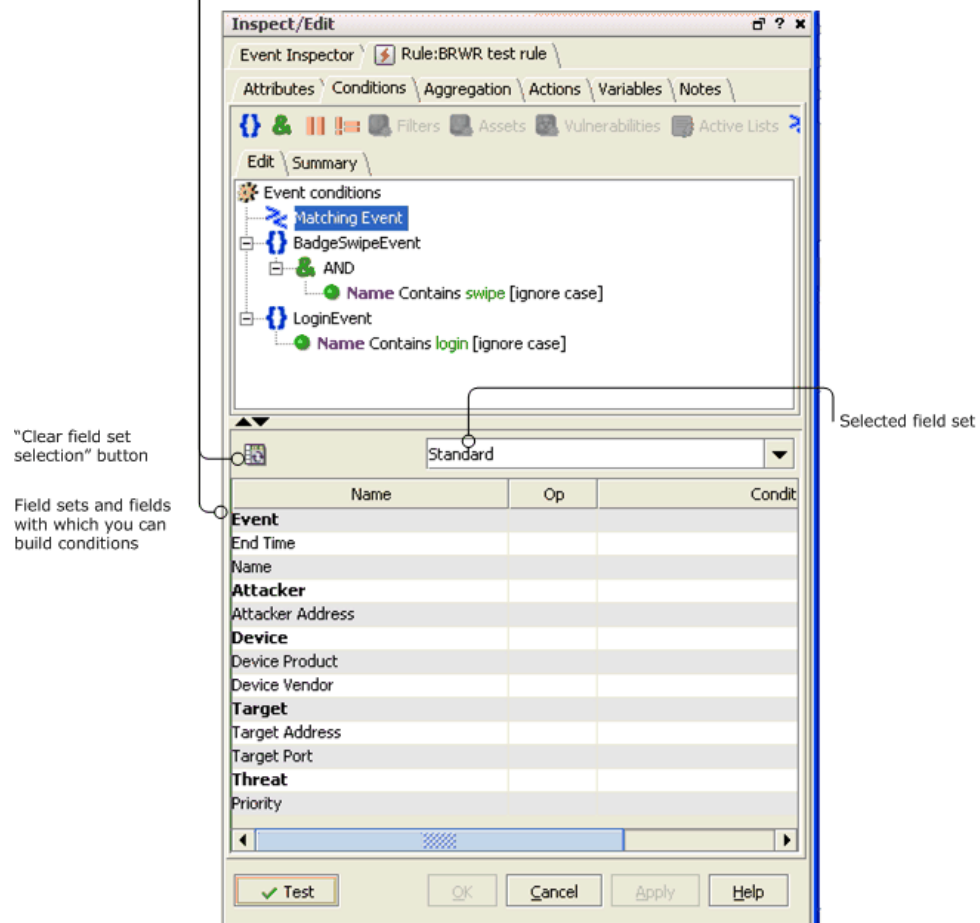
## Using Field Sets

The Common Conditions Editor provides access to all available [Field Sets](#), including domain field sets you created. You can specify fields with particular values as part of conditions statements. See also [“Creating and Using Field Sets” on page 155](#).

You can select a particular field set, which limits the fields shown to a subset of all available field sets. If you cannot find a field, click the “Clear field set” button  to clear the field set selection and show the complete list of field sets. This clears the field set selection and shows the complete list of field sets. A common problem is having the common conditions editor (CCE) field display limited to a field set that does not include some fields you want to use in the condition.



In the Conditions editor, you can specify fields with particular values on which to set conditions. If a particular Field set is specified, only a subset of available fields will be displayed on the lower part of the panel. To display all fields, click the "Clear field set selection" button. When all field sets are showing, this button is disabled.



For example, suppose you define a condition to look for two matching events; one in which Event Name contains "swipe" and another in which Event Name contains "login". You can set this condition with the "Standard" field set shown above because it includes the Event Name field in the list of available fields from which to choose. But if you wanted to add conditions based on an Event field for "Correlated Event Count" or Threat field for "Model Confidence", you would need to clear the Field Set and view all fields to get access to these fields.



Fields shown in italics are *derived* from data in other fields. Derived fields show up in various places on the Console UI including on the Field Set editor, and the Common Conditions Editor (CCE) aggregation tabs (for example, Rules, Filters, and so forth).

## Adding or Removing Global Variables Using the CCE

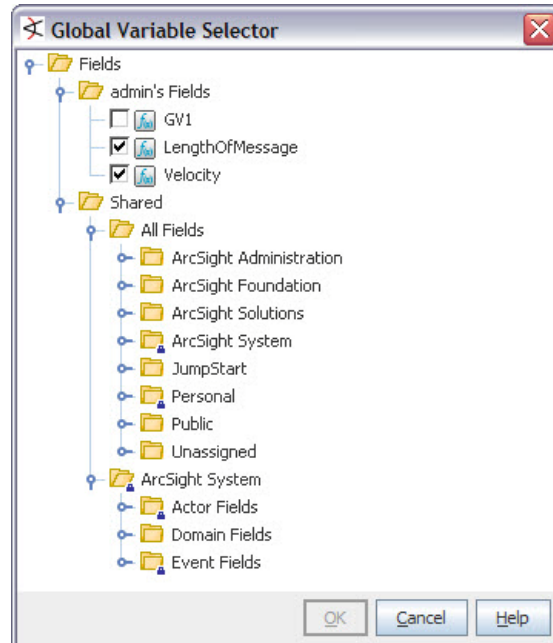
The Common Conditions Editor enables you to define a local variable to apply to the condition statement for that resource, and it also enables you to place [Global Variables](#) in the condition by using the **+/- Global Variables** button (next to the Field Set selector) on the CCE.

To add **global variables** and make them available for conditional statements in a resource:

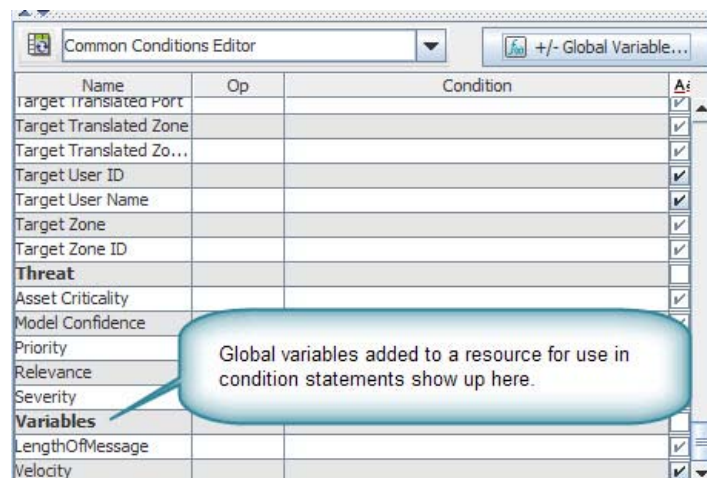
- 1 In the CCE for a given resource, click the **+/-Global Variable** button



- 2 On the Global Variable Selector dialog, select one or more variables you want to add and click **OK**.



- 3 The added variables show up as available fields under the group selected for it in the Global Variables editor (such as the Variables group). You can use these variables in condition statements for this resource.



**To remove one or more global variables from the available fields list in the CCE for a resource:**

- 1 In the CCE for a given resource, click the **+/-Global Variable** button



- 2 On the Global Variable Selector dialog, click to de-select one or more variables you want to remove and click **OK**.
- 3 The variables are removed from the list of available fields in the CCE.

For more information about global variables, see [Chapter 13, Global Variables, on page 445](#).

For information about variables in general, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

For information about using variables with velocity expressions, see [“Velocity Templates” on page 999](#).

## Testing for Zone Relevance

Events include several [Data Fields](#) that are related to zones (see [“Assets” on page 762](#)). In the Common Conditions Editor you can compare these fields with asset groups or categories, to test whether the field's event does or does not correlate with those asset properties. This comparison is performed by the **InGroup** operator.

For example, if an event's Attacker Zone field value and a Source Asset ID's System Asset Categories' Criticality value correlate, then the InGroup operator would test True. You can apply this outcome in your reports, rules, or filters.



**Note**

The InGroup operator is inserted automatically when you create zone-asset correlation statements in the Common Condition Editor. There is no button or command to manually insert it.

The InGroup operator tests True for specified asset resources and their parents but not for their own peers or their parent's peers.

- 1 In the Conditions tab of any appropriate editor, set a logical operator for a zone-related field (for example, Destination Zone).
- 2 In the same field, click the ellipses button (...). In the Select a Zone dialog, enter a prompt for the condition, select the **Parameter** checkbox, then choose a zone from the resource tree.
- 3 Right-click the new statement in the editor and choose **AND**, then right-click the AND statement and choose **New Assets Condition**.
- 4 In the Asset resources panel below, choose the Source, Target, or other type of relevant asset ID.
- 5 For that asset ID type, click the **Assets** or **Asset Categories** tab and select an asset group or category to test with the InGroup operator.
- 6 Click **Apply** in the Assets resources panel to add the asset group or category to the condition statement, with the embedded Ingroup operator.

## How to Create a Matching or Join Rule

The Common Conditions Editor provides a convenient way for you to create a matching or join conditions for your standard rule. Refer to [“How to Create a Matching or Join Rule” on page 832](#) for details.

## Conditional Statements

This table offers sample conditional expressions you can create using various operators, event fields, and data types.

**Conditional Statements**

ArcSight Data Types	Description
Number or Integer, including MAC Address	<p>Using numeric (integer) fields, you can specify operators including =, !=, &lt;, &lt;=, &gt;=, &gt;, and In to specify a numeric comparison expression, for example: CustomNumber1 = 50.</p> <p>To use In, you can specify any number of comma-separated values to match (or equal).</p> <p>Use the above operators for MAC addresses, for example:</p> <p>Attacker Mac Address != &lt;Mac address&gt;</p>
String	<p>Using string fields, you can specify operators including =, !=, and In, Contains, Matches, Starts With, Ends With, and Like to define a string comparison expression. For example: ArcSightCategory StartsWith /Attack or ArcSightCategory = /AttackSuccess</p>
DateTime	<p>Using DateTime fields, you can specify operators including =, !=, Between, In, and On to specify a datetime comparison expression. For example: DetectTime Between 4/1/03 11:30:01AM, 4/1/03 4:30:01PM.</p> <p>You can enter DateTime values directly or click the ellipsis (...) button to select a date from a pop-up calendar or a special date keyword list. Special date keywords you can use are: Now, 1 or 2 hours ago, 1 or 2 days ago, 1 or 2 weeks ago, or a replay start and end time. You can also use special system variables such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>\$CurrentDateTime: for the date and time the report is run; the system variable is replaced by the current date and time value."</li> <li>\$CurrentDate: for the date the report is run; the system variable is replaced with the date value, truncating the time of the day to 0, when the report is scheduled or run.</li> </ul> <p>You can specify certain date operations with these system variables to add or subtract a number of specified days or hours. For example, you could type: \$CurrentDate - 7d for seven days before the date the report is run, the condition evaluates to a date which is the current date minus seven days, or \$CurrentDateTime - 12h, which evaluates to the current date time minus 12 hours.</p>
IP Address	<p>Using IP address fields, you can specify operators including =, !=, In, InSubnet, and Between to specify an IP comparison expression. For example: TargetAddress = 192.0.2.0. With the In operator, you can also specify a comma-separated list of IP addresses to match and, with InSubnet, can also specify IP address ranges in CIDR format, or use InSubnet to specify an range of addresses in a specific subnet.</p>

These same rules apply to the conditions editor used in defining rules, creating conditional reports, and filters.

## Variables

You can use all of the dynamic time parameters you see in the Active Channel Editor and elsewhere, such as `$Now` and `$CurrentDateTime`. The same is true for time elements, including `s` (second), `m` (minute), `d` (date), `M` (month), `w` (week), and `y` (year). To use any event data field as a variable, express its displayed name as a one-word "camel cap" string prefixed with a dollar sign; for example, "Source Address" would be `$sourceAddress`. See the complete discussion in the topic "[Variables](#)" on page 982.

## Conditions

Conditions are logical expressions (see [Logical Operators](#)) used to qualify [Events](#) or other grouping of elements. Conditions can be specified in a number of places using a common condition editor; for example, to define rules or filters.

## Parameterized Conditions

Some conditions can be parameterized, for example in reports, where the exact value specified for a condition match is provided at the time of running the report, through a parameter pop-up box. This lets report authors give default parameter values, which can be overridden by the user running the report.

Name	Value
<b>Report Parameters</b>	
* Start	8/17/05 4:32:37 PM
* End	8/17/05 5:32:37 PM
<b>Common</b>	
Report File Format	PDF
Report Page Size	Letter [8.5x11 in]
Run Report as	Select a User
Filter results by	Select a Filter
Email To	
Email Format	Send URL

☐ Save Report Output           

This is a convenience for people running the report as it does not require write permissions while running the report, but effectively provides the same flexibility as being able to modify the report. Note that when defining parameters for detect time, you should always include a BETWEEN condition so that the report is limited to a certain time range, and does not scan the entire event table. Otherwise, it can severely impact the Manager information-retrieval performance.

- 1 You can select the ellipsis (...) button and then select the **Parameter** checkbox to create a parameter prompt for selected data fields of a report. When users run the report, they are first prompted to enter values for these parameters. When specifying a report parameter, you can define the prompt that is displayed to users, as well as specify a default value that is displayed in the prompt field.

- 2 In the case-sensitive column (**Aa**), select the checkbox if the data field needs to be case-sensitive.
- 3 In the negate condition column (the "No" symbol), select the checkbox to change conditions to **all but this** statements.

For example, if the condition statement is Device Product = Cisco Router and the negate condition checkbox is selected, all events but those from the Cisco Router generate a correlation event.



Some conditions can be parameterized such that the exact value is provided at the time of running the report through a parameter pop-up box. This lets report authors give default parameter values, which can be overridden by the user running the report. This is a very useful convenience for people running the report as it does not require write permissions while running the report but effectively provides the same flexibility as being able to modify the report. Note that when defining parameters for detect time, you should always include a BETWEEN condition so that the report is limited to a certain time range, and does not scan the entire event table. Otherwise it can severely impact the performance of Manager, retrieving information from the database.

- 4 Click outside the data field row.  
  
The condition statement (<data field> <logic operator> <data field value>) appears as a branch under the logical operator.
- 5 On the Conditions tab, click **OK**.

These same rules apply to the conditions editor used in creating other resources such as rules and reports.

## Content

ArcSight provides preconfigured [Resources](#), also known as *content*, in the form of [Packages](#). Content packages are automatically installed to provide out-of-box resource suites that you can start using immediately to monitor and protect your network. Also, you can develop your own custom content with the editors and tools provided.

## Content Packages

ArcSight ships with system content already developed that addresses common security and regulatory use cases. These use cases combine many resources to address multi-faceted issues. You can use system content as is, or modify it with data specific to your network environment. System content is delivered as packages. (See [“Packages” on page 925](#).) System content packages are automatically installed as a part of ArcSight to provide out-of-box resource suites that you can start using immediately to monitor and protect your network. (See also [“Resources” on page 943](#).)

The content packages provided with a standard installation are:

- ArcSight Administration
- Configuration Monitoring
- Intrusion Monitoring
- Network Monitoring
- Workflow

## Custom Content

The term "custom content" refers to resources and solutions created by customers using ArcSight software. Examples of custom content are user-configured [Rules](#), [Filters](#), [Active Channels](#), [Queries](#), [Trends](#), and [Reports](#) designed to address customer-specific scenarios.

## SmartConnector Content

ArcSight continuously develops new SmartConnector event categorization mappings, which are often called "content." All existing content is included with major product releases, but it is also possible to get regular content updates to stay completely current.

ArcSight makes available to subscribing customers downloadable packages of new SmartConnector content. These releases occur frequently, generally on a bi-weekly basis. The download files are offered through a special subdirectory on an HP software server. This directory is visible only to subscribers, who receive a notification e-mail from HP Customer Support when the files are posted.

The content is packaged in .aup (update) files which may be wrapped in .ZIP files for transmission convenience. You place these .aup files in the Manager's /updates directory, where the Manager automatically finds the content and pushes it to the SmartConnectors. The affected SmartConnectors each register an internal event when the update occurs and can notify you by e-mail through the Manager.

Contact your HP Customer Support representative to arrange for a content subscription.

## CORR-Engine

The CORR-Engine is the central repository for all events. Once an event occurs, its Data Fields such as severity, create time, rules triggered, and so forth are stored in event archives in the CORR-Engine. The CORR-Engine stores all enterprise events in a normalized schema. You can then investigate and analyze the event information. The Manager is the only component that communicates with the CORR-Engine. Also see ["Schema" on page 956](#).

## Correlation

Logically linking events based on multiple conditions.

See [Chapter 15, Identity Correlation, on page 487](#) for more information on using session correlation, and see [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#).

## Correlation Rule

A programmed procedure that expresses conditions and actions, and evaluates normal or correlation events. A rule has two parts: a condition and an action.

A condition determines whether a state exists and satisfies related expressions. If so, an action expression defines the response to the condition.

A rule can have one or more conditions. If there is one condition, the rule acts as a filtering tool. If there is more than one condition, the rule acts as a correlation tool. A rule can be created for any incoming event from one or more event generators, with various conditions, logic statements, and thresholds.

See [Chapter 15, Identity Correlation, on page 487](#) for details on using session correlation.

## Customers

To support managed security service providers (MSSPs), and larger enterprises that need to track activity related to cost centers or divisions, ArcSight can identify particular customers as the source of specific events.

"Customers" can be any client, tenant, or internal identity scheme you designate.

To use the Customers resource, you first model your existing customer or client base into the Customers resource tree in the Navigator panel, as described in ["Managing Customers" on page 730](#). Then, using the Customer URI values established in the resource tree, you configure the appropriate SmartConnectors to report these values through their Customer URI attributes.

Once you have implemented your Customer resource tree in the ArcSight Console, and configured the relevant SmartConnectors to report these Customer URIs, you can apply the Customer resources as filter condition arguments.

For example, your Customers resource tree might include a branch that translates into a Customer URI of: /All Customers/Brokerages/Central States/Kansas City/Jones&Co.

In the SmartConnectors resource tree, for those connectors that apply to this customer, you would apply this same string as the value for those connectors' Customer URI attribute, found under the Network section of the **Connector: Default: Content** tab. Thereafter, events reported by those connectors can be filtered in or out by referencing that branch of the Customers resource tree.

## Dashboards

Dashboards are a graphical display of data gathered from one or more [Data Monitors](#). Dashboards can display data in a number of graphical formats, including pie and bar charts, tables, and custom layouts.

Data monitors are views within the dashboard that can be configured to report on events, filters, rules, and other data or information that is of particular interest to you. Data monitors can be arranged within dashboards in numerous viewing layouts.

When you right-click in a dashboard, you can choose from these options.

### Dashboard Context Menu Commands

Dashboard Context Menu Commands	
Option	Description
Save Dashboard	Save any changes you have made to the dashboard and its data monitors.
Save As	Save the configured data monitors and dashboard under a different name.



**Dashboard Context Menu Commands (Continued)**

Option	Description
Close Dashboard	Close the dashboard and remove it from the Viewer panel.
Dashboard>Zoom In / Zoom Out / Fit in	Visually enlarge or reduce the data monitors presented in the Viewer panel. Size the data monitors to allow them to all appear simultaneously in the current Viewer panel.
Data Monitor>Edit	Edit the current data monitor in the Inspect/Edit panel.
Data Monitor>Disable	Turn off the current data monitor.
Data Monitor>Float / Minimize / Close	Float, minimize, or close the current data monitor.
Show>DataMonitorName	Restore minimized data monitors.
Show Details / Show Detailed Channels	Show the event details for the currently selected element in a data monitor graphic, such as a pie chart, or display each of the monitor's elements in detail in separate active channel grids. This is also called "drilling down."
Investigate	Create an active channel or filter condition based on the highlighted event. The <b>Investigate</b> command uses the event's attribute type (its column heading), and the particular event's field value (for example, an exact IP address), to formulate filtered channels based on these two factors. The operators can include <b>Create Channel [X = Y]</b> and <b>Add Condition [X = Y] to Editor</b> .
Tools	Choose one of the network tools to explore the origin of the selected event item.
Show Scroll Bar	Toggles a scroll bar on and off in the selected data monitor. Use the scroll bar to show additional rows of tabular data if present.
Export > Data Monitor/Dashboard as ...	Save the selected data monitor or the dashboard in the JPEG (graphic), CSV (comma-separated value or text-based), or HTML file format.

## Data Fields

Processed events are composed of several attributes, each of which is a data field with its own characteristics. These event schema data fields fall into the groups shown in the following sections.

Each attribute has both a **Label** that you see in the ArcSight Console and a unique **Script Alias** you use to refer to the attribute in filters, rules, or Velocity templates. The **Data Type** lets you know how to handle the attribute, and the **Default Turbo Level** indicates whether an attribute is, by default, classified as **1** (essential, or "fastest") or **2** (optional, or "faster"). Turbo Level 3 ("complete") isn't designated because it applies to additional data not represented here.

The easiest way to view all event fields is on the Event Inspector (Event tab) or Common Conditions Editor (CCE) on the Console. (To bring up the Event Inspector select an event in a grid view like an active channel. Right-click and choose **Show event details**. The event's details appear in the Event Inspector.) To view *all* event fields, make sure that no

field set is selected to limit the set of fields shown. (Select **Clear** from the drop-down menu above the list of event fields. With no field set selected, the drop-down shows "Select a Field Set".)



For a list of ArcSight's Common Event Format (CEF) abbreviations, ask your ArcSight Support representative for the tech note entitled Implementing ArcSight CEF.

## Connector Group

This group category falls into the device-to-Manager information chain. The chain begins at **Device**, which is the actual network hardware that senses an event. In cases where data is concentrated or otherwise pre-processed, it may be passed to a trusted reporting Final Device before reaching an **Original Connector**. Although the **Original Connector** is usually the only connector, if the data passes up through a Manager hierarchy, the chain includes handling by **Connector** stages that are the ArcSight Forwarding Connectors that facilitate Manager-to-Manager connections.



Since connectors are not registered to the local Manager, the Original Agent is not known and all the Original Agent fields are therefore blank and do not need to be displayed.

### Connector Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Connector Group Field Description
Address	connectorAddress	IP address	1	The IP address of the device hosting the SmartConnector.
Asset ID	connectorAssetId	Resource	1	The asset that represents the device hosting the SmartConnector.
Asset Name	connectorAssetName	String	1	The connector's asset name.
Asset Resource	connectorAssetResource	Resource	1	The connector resource.
Descriptor ID	connectorDescriptorId	ID	1	The connector descriptor.
DNS Domain	connectorDnsDomain	String	1	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the device hosting the SmartConnector.
Host Name	connectorHostName	String	1	The name of the device hosting the SmartConnector.
ID	connectorId	String	1	The identifier associated with the SmartConnector configuration resource. The format is connectorID(1)   connectorID(2)   ...

**Connector Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Connector Group Field Description</b>
MAC Address	connectorMacAddress	MacAddress	1	The MAC address associated with the SmartConnector (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device.)
Name	connectorName	String	1	The user-supplied name of the associated SmartConnector configuration resource.
NT Domain	connectorNtDomain	String	1	The Windows NT domain associated with the device hosting the SmartConnector.
Receipt Time	connectorReceiptTime	DateTime	2	The time the event arrived at the SmartConnector.
Severity	connectorSeverity	Connector Severity Enumeration	1	The normalized ArcSight form of the event severity value provided by the SmartConnector.
Time Zone	connectorTimeZone	String	1	The time zone reported by the device hosting the SmartConnector (as TLA).
Time Zone Offset	connectorTimeZoneOffset	Integer	1	The time zone reported by the device hosting the SmartConnector (shown as a UTC offset). Note that device times may be less accurate than other sources.
Translated Address	connectorTranslatedAddress	IP address	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the device hosting the SmartConnector.
Translated Zone	connectorTranslatedZone	Zone	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the Network Zone associated with the translated IP address of the device hosting the SmartConnector.
Translated Zone External ID	connectorTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	connectorTranslatedZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.

**Connector Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Connector Group Field Description</b>
Translated Zone Name	connectorTranslatedZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI. It assumes that the name is always the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference ID	connectorTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference is stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	connectorTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	connectorTranslatedZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
Type	connectorType	String	1	A description of the type of SmartConnector that reported the event.
Version	connectorVersion	String	1	The software revision number of the SmartConnector that reported the event
Zone	connectorZone	Zone	1	The network zone in which the device hosting this SmartConnector resides.
Zone External ID	connectorZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	connectorZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Zone Name	connectorZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	connectorZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	connectorZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	connectorZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.

## Attacker Group

### Attacker Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Attacker Group Field Description
Address	attackerAddress	IP address	1	The IP address of the device hosting the attacker.
Asset ID	attackerAssetId	Resource	2	The asset that represents the device hosting the attacker.
Asset Name	attackerAssetName	String	2	The name of the asset that represents the device hosting the attacker.
Asset Resource	attackerAssetResource	Resource	2	The Resource of the asset that represents the device hosting the attacker.
DNS Domain	attackerDnsDomain	String	2	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the device hosting the attacker.
FQDN	attackerFqdn	String	2	The fully qualified domain name associated with the device hosting the attacker.
Geo	attackerGeo	GeoDescriptor	1	The geographical information.
Geo Country Code	attackerGeoCountryCode	String	1	The identifier for the national-political state in which a device resides.
Geo Country Flag URL	attackerGeoCountryFlagUrl	String	1	The URL of an image of the flag of the national-political state in which the device resides.
Geo Country Name	attackerGeoCountryName	String	1	The name of the national-political state where a device resides.
Geo Descriptor ID	attackerGeoDescriptorId	ID	1	The internal ID of the geographical reference.
Geo Latitude	attackerGeoLatitude	Double	1	The latitude of a device.
Geo Location Info	attackerGeoLocationInfo	String	2	Other, free-form text information about the device's location.
Geo Longitude	attackerGeoLongitude	Double	1	The Longitude of a device.

**Attacker Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Attacker Group Field Description</b>
Geo Postal Code	attackerGeoPostalCode	String	1	The postal code of the device's location, as assigned by the national-political state where it resides.
Geo Region Code	attackerGeoRegionCode	String	1	The identifier of the sub-region of the national-political state where a device resides. The style of the identifier varies with the host country.
Host Name	attackerHostName	String	2	The name of the device hosting the attacker.
MAC Address	attackerMacAddress	MAC address	2	The MAC address associated with the source of the attack (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device).
NT Domain	attackerNtDomain	String	2	The Windows NT domain associated with the device hosting the attacker.
Port	attackerPort	Integer	1	The network port associated with the source of the attack.
Process ID	attackerProcessId	Integer	2	The ID of the process associated with the source of the attack.
Process Name	attackerProcessName	String	2	The name of process associated with the source of the attack.
Service Name	attackerServiceName	String	2	The name of service associated with the source of the attack.
Translated Address	attackerTranslatedAddress	IP address	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the device hosting the attacker.
Translated Port	attackerTranslatedPort	Integer	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated source port associated with the attack. This can happen in a NAT environment.

**Attacker Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Attacker Group Field Description</b>
Translated Zone	attackerTranslatedZone	Zone	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the network zone associated with the translated IP address of the device hosting the attacker.
Translated Zone External ID	attackerTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	attackerTranslatedZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	attackerTranslatedZoneName	String	1	See the common set of resource attributes. It is assumed that the name is always the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference ID	attackerTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	attackerTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	attackerTranslatedZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
User ID	attackerUserId	String	2	The identifier associated with the OS or application of the attacker, at the source of the attack.
User Name	attackerUserName	String	2	The name associated with the attacker, at the source of the attack.
User Privileges	attackerUserPrivileges	String	2	The user-privilege associated with the attacker, at the source of the attack.
Zone	attackerZone	Zone	1	The network zone in which the attacker's device resides.
Zone External ID	attackerZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	attackerZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.

**Attacker Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Attacker Group Field Description
Zone Name	attackerZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	attackerZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	attackerZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	attackerZoneURI	String	1	See the common set of resource attributes.

## Category Group

**Category Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Category Group Field Description
Behavior	categoryBehavior	String	1	Describes the action taken with or by the object.
Custom Format Field	categoryCustomFormatField	String	1	Describes the content of a custom formatted field, if present.
Descriptor ID	categoryDescriptorId	ID	1	The unique ID for the sensor that reported the event
Device Group	categoryDeviceGroup	String	1	The type of event. For example, logging into a firewall is an Operating System type of event.
Device Type	categoryDeviceType	String	2	The type of device. For example, logging into a firewall, would show the Device Type as Firewall.
Object	categoryObject	String	1	Describes the physical or virtual object that was the focus of the event
Outcome	categoryOutcome	String	1	Indicates whether the action was successfully applied to the object.



**Category Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Category Group Field Description
Significance	categorySignificance	String	1	Characterizes the event from a network-intrusion-detection perspective.
Technique	categoryTechnique	String	1	Describes the method used to apply the action to the object.
Tuple Description	categoryTupleDescription	String	1	The prose description of the event category, assembled from the category components.

## Destination Group

**Destination Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Destination Group Field Description
Address	destinationAddress	IP address	1	The IP address of the destination device.
Asset ID	destinationAssetId	Resource	2	The asset that represents the device that was the network traffic's destination.
Asset Name	destinationAssetName	String	2	The name of the device.
Asset Resource	destinationAssetResource	Resource	2	See the common set of resource attributes.
DNS Domain	destinationDnsDomain	String	2	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the user at the destination device.
FQDN	destinationFqdn	String	2	The fully qualified domain name associated with the destination device.
Geo	destinationGeo	GeoDescriptor	1	See the common set of geographical attributes.
Geo Country Code	destinationGeoCountryCode	String	1	The identifier for the national-political state in which a device resides.
Geo Country Flag URL	destinationGeoCountryFlagUrl	String	1	The URL of an image of the flag of the national-political state in which the device resides.

## Destination Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Destination Group Field Description
Geo Country Name	destinationGeoCountryName	String	1	The name of the national-political state where a device resides.
Geo Descriptor ID	destinationGeoDescriptorId	ID	1	The internal ID of the geographical reference.
Geo Latitude	destinationGeoLatitude	Double	1	The destination latitude of the device.
Geo Location Info	destinationGeoLocationInfo	String	1	Other, free-form text information about the device's location.
Geo Longitude	destinationGeoLongitude	Double	1	The destination longitude.
Geo Postal Code	destinationGeoPostalCode	String	1	The postal code of the device's location, as assigned by the national-political state where it resides.
Geo Region Code	destinationGeoRegionCode	String	1	The identifier of the sub-region of the national-political state where a device resides. The style of the identifier varies with the host country.
Host Name	destinationHostName	String	2	The name of the destination device.
MAC Address	destinationMacAddress	MAC address	2	The MAC address associated with the network traffic's destination (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device).
NT Domain	destinationNtDomain	String	2	The Windows NT domain associated with the destination device.
Port	destinationPort	Integer	1	The network port associated with the network traffic's destination.
Process ID	destinationProcessId	Integer	2	The ID of the process associated with the network traffic's destination.
Process Name	destinationProcessName	String	2	The name of the process associated with the network traffic's destination.
Service Name	destinationServiceName	String	2	The name of service associated with the network traffic's destination.

## Destination Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Destination Group Field Description
Translated Address	destinationTranslatedAddresses	IP address	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the device that was the network traffic's destination.
Translated Port	destinationTranslatedPort	Integer	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated source port associated with the attack.
Translated Zone	destinationTranslatedZone	Zone	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the network zone associated with the translated IP address of the device at the network's traffic's destination.
Translated Zone External ID	destinationTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	destinationTranslatedZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	destinationTranslatedZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference	destinationTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	1	See the common set of resource attributes.
Translated Zone Resource	destinationTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	destinationTranslatedZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
User ID	destinationUserId	String	2	The OS- or application-based identifier associated with the user at the network traffic's destination.
User Name	destinationUserName	String	2	The name associated with the user at the network traffic's destination.
User Privileges	destinationUserPrivileges	String	2	The privileges accorded the user at the network traffic destination.
Zone	destinationZone	Zone	1	The network zone in which the destination device resides.

## Destination Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Destination Group Field Description
Zone External ID	destinationZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	destinationZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Zone Name	destinationZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	destinationZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	destinationZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	destinationZoneURI	String	1	See the common set of resource attributes.

## Device Group

This category falls into the device-to-Manager information chain. The chain begins at **Device**, which is the actual network hardware that senses an event. In cases where data is concentrated or otherwise pre-processed, it may be passed to a trusted reporting **Final Device** before reaching an **Original Connector**. Although the **Original Connector** is usually the only connector, if the data passes up through a Manager hierarchy the chain includes handling by **Connector** stages that are the Manager SmartConnectors that facilitate Manager-to-Manager connections.

## Device Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Device Group Field Description
Action	deviceAction	String	2	The device-specific description of some activity associated with the event
Address	deviceAddress	IP address	1	The IPv4 address of the device hosting the sensor. <b>Note:</b> For IPv6 address data type, see <a href="#">“Device Custom Group” on page 852</a> .
Asset ID	deviceAssetId	Resource	1	The asset that represents the device hosting the sensor.

## Device Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Device Group Field Description
Asset Name	deviceAssetName	String	1	The name of the device.
Asset Resource	deviceAssetResource	Resource	1	The resource the asset represents.
Descriptor ID	deviceDescriptorId	ID	1	The asset's descriptor ID.
Direction	deviceDirection	Device Direction Enumeration	2	Whether the traffic was inbound or outbound.
DNS Domain	deviceDnsDomain	String	1	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the device hosting the sensor.
Domain	deviceDomain	String	2	The specific domain containing the sensor device associated with the event
Event Category	deviceEventCategory	String	2	The category description included with the event as reported by the device.
Event Class ID	deviceEventClassId	String	2	<p>The device-specific identifier associated with this type of event</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A generic UNIX syslog parser displays the ID in this format:  <b>arcsight:x:x</b></p>
External ID	deviceExternalId	String	1	The external identifier associated with this sensor device, if provided by the vendor.
Facility	deviceFacility	String	1	The sensor submodule that reported the event
Host Name	deviceHostName	String	1	The name of the device hosting the sensor.
Inbound Interface	deviceInboundInterface	String	1	The NIC card on the sensor device that received the network traffic associated with the event.
MAC Address	deviceMacAddress	MAC address	1	The MAC address associated with the source of the attack (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device).
NT Domain	deviceNtDomain	String	1	The Windows NT domain associated with the device hosting the sensor.

## Device Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Device Group Field Description
Outbound Interface	deviceOutboundInterface	String	1	The NIC card on the sensor device that transmitted the network traffic associated with the event.
Payload ID	devicePayloadId	String	2	The internal identifier associated with a payload object associated with this event.
Process ID	deviceProcessId	Integer	2	The ID of the sensor device process that reported the event.
Process Name	deviceProcessName	String	1	The name of the sensor device process that reported the event.
Product	deviceProduct	String	1	The product name of the sensor device.
Receipt Time	deviceReceiptTime	DateTime	2	The time when the sensor device observed the event.
Severity	deviceSeverity	String	2	The device-specific assessment of event severity. This assessment varies with the device involved.
Time Zone	deviceTimeZone	String	1	The time zone reported by the device hosting the sensor device (shown as TLA).
Time Zone Offset	deviceTimeZoneOffset	Integer	1	The time zone reported by the device hosting this sensor device (shown as an offset from UTC).
Translated Address	deviceTranslatedAddress	IP address	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the device hosting the sensor.
Translated Zone	deviceTranslatedZone	Zone	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the network zone associated with the translated IP address of the device hosting the sensor.
Translated Zone External ID	deviceTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.

## Device Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Device Group Field Description
Translated Zone ID	deviceTranslatedZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	deviceTranslatedZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference ID	deviceTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	deviceTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	deviceTranslatedZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
Vendor	deviceVendor	String	1	The vendor who manufactured or sold the sensor device.
Version	deviceVersion	String	1	The software revision number of the sensor device.
Zone	deviceZone	Zone	1	The network zone in which the sensor's device resides.
Zone External ID	deviceZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	deviceZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Zone Name	deviceZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	deviceZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been persisted and given a unique database identifier.
Zone Resource	deviceZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	deviceZoneURI	String	1	See the common set of resource attributes.

## Device Custom Group

Device Custom Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Device Custom Group Field Description
Date1	deviceCustomDate1	Date Time	2	First customDate
Date1 Label	deviceCustomDate1Label	String	2	First customDate label
Date2	deviceCustomDate2	Date Time	2	Second customDate
Date2 Label	deviceCustomDate2Label	String	2	Second customDate label
Number1	deviceCustomNumber1	Long	2	First customNumber
Number1 Label	deviceCustomNumber1Label	String	2	First customNumber label
Number2	deviceCustomNumber2	Long	2	Second customNumber
Number2 Label	deviceCustomNumber2Label	String	2	Second customNumber label
Number3	deviceCustomNumber3	Long	2	Third customNumber
Number3 Label	deviceCustomNumber3Label	String	2	Third customNumber label
String1	deviceCustomString1	String	2	First customString
String1 Label	deviceCustomString1Label	String	2	First customString label
String2	deviceCustomString2	String	2	Second customString
String2 Label	deviceCustomString2Label	String	2	Second customString label
String3	deviceCustomString3	String	2	Third customString
String3 Label	deviceCustomString3Label	String	2	Third customString label
String4	deviceCustomString4	String	2	Fourth customString
String4 Label	deviceCustomString4Label	String	2	Fourth customString label
String5	deviceCustomString5	String	2	Fifth customString
String5 Label	deviceCustomString5Label	String	2	Fifth customString label
String6	deviceCustomString6	String	2	Sixth customString
String6 Label	deviceCustomString6Label	String	2	Sixth customString label



## Device Custom Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Device Custom Group Field Description
Floating Point1	deviceCustomFloatingPoint1	String	2	First custom floating point
Floating Point1 Label	deviceCustomFloatingPoint1Label	Double	2	First custom floating point label
Floating Point2	deviceCustomFloatingPoint2	String	2	Second custom floating point
Floating Point2 Label	deviceCustomFloatingPoint2Label	Double	2	Second custom floating point label
Floating Point3	deviceCustomFloatingPoint3	String	2	Third custom floating point
Floating Point3 Label	deviceCustomFloatingPoint3Label	Double	2	Third custom floating point label
Floating Point4	deviceCustomFloatingPoint4	String	2	Fourth custom floating point
Floating Point4 Label	deviceCustomFloatingPoint4Label	Double	2	Fourth custom floating point label
<b>Note:</b> The following device custom fields support the IPv6 address. The IPv6 address is stored in the database in its full form, but ESM displays it in a simplified format. That is, the zeroes are dropped.				
IPv6 Address1	deviceCustomIPv6Address1	IPv6 address	2	First custom IPv6 address
IPv6 Address1 Label	deviceCustomIPv6Address1Label	String	2	First custom IPv6 address label
IPv6 Address2	deviceCustomIPv6Address2	IPv6 address	2	Second custom IPv6 address
IPv6 Address2 Label	deviceCustomIPv6Address2Label	String	2	Second custom IPv6 address label
IPv6 Address3	deviceCustomIPv6Address3	IPv6 address	2	Third custom IPv6 address
IPv6 Address3 Label	deviceCustomIPv6Address3Label	String	2	Third custom IPv6 address label
IPv6 Address4	deviceCustomIPv6Address4	IPv6 address	2	Fourth custom IPv6 address
IPv6 Address4 Label	deviceCustomIPv6Address4Label	String	2	Fourth custom IPv6 address label

## Event Group

**Event Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Group Field Description
Additional Data	additionalData	AdditionalData	3	Reference to additional data.
Aggregated Event Count	(not applicable)	(not applicable)	N/A	A derived field that reports the number of actual events collectively represented by the event in question.
Application Protocol	applicationProtocol	String	2	A description of the application layer protocol. May be set, but defaults to Target Port lookup (FTP).
Base Event IDs	baseEventIds	ID	2	The array of event IDs that contributed to generating this correlation event. This is populated only in correlated events.
Bytes In	bytesIn	Integer	2	Number of bytes transferred into the device during this transaction (this would typically be associated with entries in HTTP logs).
Bytes Out	bytesOut	Integer	2	Number of bytes transferred out of the device during this transaction (this would typically be associated with entries in HTTP logs).
Concentrator Connectors	concentratorConnectors	ConnectorDescriptor	2	The chain of concentrators that forwarded the event. This is not yet exposed in the user interface.
Concentrator Devices	concentratorDevices	DeviceDescriptor	2	The list of devices that concentrate events, if applicable. This is not exposed in the user interface.
Correlated Event Count	(not applicable)	(not applicable)	N/A	A derived field that reports the number of actual events that had to occur to cause a correlation event to occur.
Crypto Signature	cryptoSignature	String	2	The signature of the event object (meaning in this alert, as opposed to the occurrence represented by the event). Not yet supported.

## Event Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Group Field Description
Customer	customer	Customer	1	The "customer" resource reference. This is used in MSSP environments to describe the client or divisional entity to whom the event applies.
Customer External ID	customerExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Customer ID	customerID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Customer Name	customerName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Customer Reference ID	customerReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Customer Resource	customerResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Customer URI	customerURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
End Time	endTime	DateTime	1	Event ends (defaults to deviceReceiptTime).
Event ID	eventId	ID	1	Long value identifying an event.
Event Outcome	eventOutcome	String	2	The outcome of the event as reported by the device (when applicable). For example, Windows reports an event as audit_success or audit_failure.
External ID	externalId	String	2	A reference to the ID used by an external device. This is useful for tracking devices that create events that contain references to these IDs (for example, ManHunt).
Generator	generator	null	1	The "generator" resource reference (the resource that generated the event. This is the subcomponent in the connector that generates the event.

## Event Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Group Field Description
Generator External ID	generatorExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Generator ID	generatorID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Generator Name	generatorName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Generator Reference ID	generatorReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Generator Resource	generatorResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Generator URI	generatorURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
Locality	locality	LocalityEnumeration	2	<p>The locality associated with the event. Possible values:</p> <p>Local = 0: Events were sent to a Manager from SmartConnectors</p> <p>Forwarded = 1: Events were sent to a Manager from a Forwarding Connector.</p> <p>Remote = 2: Events were fetched from a remote Manager (to display a rule chain, for example)</p> <p>ESMPassThrough = 3: Event is processed by ESM.</p> <p>DirectPassToLogger = 4: Event is not processed by ESM and is passed to Logger or any other product.</p>
Message	message	String	2	A brief comment associated with this event.
Name	name	String	1	An arbitrary string that describes this type of event. Event details included in other parts of an event shouldn't be used in the event name.

## Event Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Group Field Description
Originator	originator	OriginatorEnumeration	1	Holds the value of Source Destination. This determines whether source and destination should be translated to attacker and target or they should be reversed.
Persistence	persistence	PersistenceEnumeration	2	There are two states: Persisted or Transient. Events default to being Transient and are marked as Persisted as soon as they reach the Batch Alert Persister or when they are loaded by the Alert Broker.
Raw Event	rawEvent	String	1	The original log entry reported by the sensor (synthesized when the sensor does not log to a file or text stream).
Reason	reason	String	2	The cause of the event when applicable. For example, Invalid Password
Rule Thread ID	ruleThreadId	String	2	A single rule can issue many events, based on several triggers, starting with On First Event and ending with On Threshold Timeout. All such events for a single Rule and a single Group By tuple is marked with the same identifier using this attribute.
Session ID	sessionId	Long	2	Tags for events created by a correlation simulation, as part of a particular simulation.
Start Time	startTime	DateTime	1	Event begins (defaults to deviceReceiptTime).
Transport Protocol	transportProtocol	String	1	The format of the transmitted data associated with the event from a network transport perspective (for example, TCP, UDP).
Type	type	TypeEnumeration	1	One of the event types: Base, Correlation, Aggregated, or Action.

**Event Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Group Field Description
Vulnerability	vulnerability	Vulnerability	2	The vulnerability resource that represents the vulnerability or exposure that may be exploited by this event and is present on the targeted device according to our network model.
Vulnerability External ID	vulnerabilityExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Vulnerability ID	vulnerabilityID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Vulnerability Name	vulnerabilityName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Vulnerability Reference ID	vulnerabilityReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Vulnerability Resource	vulnerabilityResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Vulnerability URI	vulnerabilityURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.

**Event Annotation Group****Event Annotation Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Annotation Group Field Description
Audit Trail	eventAnnotationAuditTrail	String	2	The text log of annotation changes. Changes are recorded as sets of comma-separated-value entries.
Comment	eventAnnotationComment	String	2	A text description of the event or associated information.
End Time	eventAnnotationEndTime	DateTime	2	The timestamp for an event annotation.

## Event Annotation Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Annotation Group Field Description
Event ID	eventAnnotationEventId	ID	2	The event ID for the annotation event.
Flags	eventAnnotationFlags	FlagsValueSet	2	<p>The state of the collaboration flags.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following event fields: isReviewed, Closed, Hidden, Correlated, inCase, hasAction, and Forwarded, are derived from eventAnnotationFlags. You cannot add those individual event fields into a field set, but you can add the eventAnnotationFlags fields instead, then use a local or global variable to specify the desired field. See <a href="#">“Field Set Editor: Local Variables Tab” on page 158</a> and <a href="#">“Global Variables” on page 445</a>.</p>
Manager Receipt Time	eventAnnotationManagerReceiptTime	DateTime	2	The time the Manager received the event annotation.
Modification Time	eventAnnotationModificationTime	DateTime	2	The time the annotation was modified.
Modified By	eventAnnotationModifiedBy	User	2	The user ID of the person who last edited this annotation.
Modified By External ID	eventAnnotationModifiedByExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Modified By ID	eventAnnotationModifiedByID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Modified By Name	eventAnnotationModifiedByName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI (the last field of the URI).
Modified By Reference ID	eventAnnotationModifiedByReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Modified By Resource	eventAnnotationModifiedByResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Modified By URI	eventAnnotationModifiedByURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.

## Event Annotation Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Annotation Group Field Description
Stage	eventAnnotationStage	Stage	2	The current disposition of the event. This enables annotation workflow.
Stage Event ID	eventAnnotationStageEventId	ID	2	The reference to an internal identifier for another event. It is used by 'Mark Similar'.
Stage External ID	eventAnnotationStageExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Stage ID	eventAnnotationStageID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Stage Name	eventAnnotationStageName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Stage Reference ID	eventAnnotationStageReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference is stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Stage Resource	eventAnnotationStageResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Stage Update Time	eventAnnotationStageUpdateTime	ID	2	The time of the last stage change (in UTC).
Stage URI	eventAnnotationStageURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.
Stage User	eventAnnotationStageUser	User	2	The user associated with the current stage. This implements assignment within workflow.
Stage User External ID	eventAnnotationStageUserExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Stage User ID	eventAnnotationStageUserID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Stage User Name	eventAnnotationStageUserName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.



**Event Annotation Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Event Annotation Group Field Description
Stage User Reference ID	eventAnnotationStageUserReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference is stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Stage User Resource	eventAnnotationStageUserResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Stage User URI	eventAnnotationStageUserURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.
Version	eventAnnotationVersion	Integer	2	The editing version number which increments with each change. This enables optimistic locking.

## File Group

**File Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	File Group Field Description
Create Time	fileCreateTime	DateTime	2	The time the file was created (in UTC).
Hash	fileHash	String	2	The hash code associated with the file's contents (for example, MD5).
ID	fileId	String	2	The external identifier associated with the file.
Modification Time	fileModificationTime	DateTime	2	The time the file was last changed (in UTC).
Name	fileName	String	2	The name of the file.
Path	filePath	String	2	The directory path to the file in the file system.
Permission	filePermission	String	2	The user permissions associated with the file (sensor specific).
Size	fileSize	Long	2	The size of the file's contents (typically in bytes; sensor specific).
Type	fileType	String	2	The type of file contents (sensor specific).

## Final Device Group

This category falls into the device-to-Manager information chain. The chain begins at **Device**, which is the actual network hardware that senses an event. In cases where data is concentrated or otherwise pre-processed, it may be passed to a trusted reporting **Final Device** before reaching an **Original Connector**. Although the **Original Connector** is usually the only connector, if the data passes up through a Manager hierarchy the chain includes handling by **Connector** stages that are the Manager SmartConnectors that facilitate Manager-to-Manager connections.

### Final Device Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Final Device Group Field Description
Address	finalDeviceAddress	IP address	2	The IP address of the trusted reporting device.
Asset ID	finalDeviceAssetId	Resource	2	The asset that represents the trusted reporting device.
Asset Name	finalDeviceAssetName	String	2	The name of the trusted reporting device.
Asset Resource	finalDeviceAssetResource	Resource	2	The resource represented by the trusted reporting device.
Descriptor ID	finalDeviceDescriptorId	ID	2	The descriptor ID of the trusted reporting device.
DNS Domain	finalDeviceDnsDomain	String	2	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the trusted reporting device.
External ID	finalDeviceExternalId	String	2	The external ID for the trusted reporting device, if provided by the vendor.
Facility	finalDeviceFacility	String	2	A facility or capability of a device. This accommodates concentrators (for example, like syslog, which has a concept of device logging for "parts" of a device).
Host Name	finalDeviceHostName	String	2	The host name of the trusted reporting device.
Inbound Interface	finalDeviceInboundInterface	String	2	The NIC card on the sensor device that received the network traffic associated with the event.
MAC address	finalDeviceMacAddress	MAC address	2	The MAC address associated with the trusted reporting device.
NT Domain	finalDeviceNtDomain	String	2	The Windows NT domain associated with the trusted reporting device.

**Final Device Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Final Device Group Field Description</b>
Outbound Interface	finalDeviceOutboundInterface	String	2	The NIC card on the trusted reporting device.
Process Name	finalDeviceProcessName	String	2	The process name of the trusted reporting device.
Product	finalDeviceProduct	String	2	The product name of the trusted reporting device.
Time Zone	finalDeviceTimeZone	String	2	The time zone reported by the trusted reporting device.
Time Zone Offset	finalDeviceTimeZoneOffset	Integer	2	Returns the raw time-zone offset for the trusted reporting device. Note that connector and device times are not always reliably accurate.
Translated Address	finalDeviceTranslatedAddress	IP address	2	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the trusted reporting device.
Translated Zone	finalDeviceTranslatedZone	Zone	2	If network address translation is an issue, this is the network zone associated with the translated IP address of the trusted reporting device.
Translated Zone External ID	finalDeviceTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	finalDeviceTranslatedZoneID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	finalDeviceTranslatedZoneName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference ID	finalDeviceTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	finalDeviceTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	finalDeviceTranslatedZoneURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.

**Final Device Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Final Device Group Field Description
Vendor	finalDeviceVendor	String	2	Device vendor.
Version	finalDeviceVersion	String	2	The software revision number of the trusted reporting device.
Zone	finalDeviceZone	Zone	2	The network zone in which the trusted reporting device resides.
Zone External ID	finalDeviceZoneExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	finalDeviceZoneID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Zone Name	finalDeviceZoneName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	finalDeviceZoneReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	finalDeviceZoneResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	finalDeviceZoneURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.

## Flex Group

**Flex Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Flex Group Field Description
Date1	flexDate1	DateTime	2	First flex Date.
Date1 Label	flexDate1Label	String	2	Label of first flex Date.
Number1	flexNumber1	Long	2	First flex Number.
Number1 Label	flexNumber1Label	String	2	Label of the first Flex Number.
Number2	flexNumber2	Long	2	Second flex Number.

**Flex Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Flex Group Field Description
Number2 Label	flexNumber2Label	String	2	Label of the second Flex Number.
String1	flexString1	String	2	First flex String
String1 Label	flexString1Label	String	2	Label of the first Flex String.
String2	flexString2	String	2	Second flex String.
String2 Label	flexString2Label	String	2	Label of the second Flex String.

## Manager Group

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Manager Group Field Description
Receipt Time	managerReceiptTime	DateTime	1	The time at which the current Manager first received the event.

## Old File Group

**Old File Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Old File Group Field Description
Create Time	oldFileCreateTime	DateTime	2	The time the file was created (in UTC).
Hash	oldFileHash	String	2	The hashcode associated with the file's contents (for example, MD5).
ID	oldFileId	String	2	The external identifier associated with the file.
Modification Time	oldFileModificationTime	DateTime	2	The time the file was last changed (in UTC).
Name	oldFileName	String	2	The file's name.
Path	oldFilePath	String	2	The directory path to the file in the file system.
Permission	oldFilePermission	String	2	The user permissions associated with the file (sensor specific).

## Old File Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Old File Group Field Description
Size	oldFileSize	Long	2	The size of the file's contents (typically in bytes; sensor specific).
Type	oldFileType	String	2	The type of the file's contents (sensor specific).

## Original Connector Group

This category falls into the device-to-Manager information chain. The chain begins at **Device**, which is the actual network hardware that senses an event. Where data is concentrated or otherwise pre-processed, it may be passed to a trusted reporting **Final Device** before reaching an **Original Connector**. Although the **Original Connector** is usually the only connector, if the data passes up through a Manager hierarchy, the chain includes handling by **Connector** stages that are the Manager SmartConnectors that facilitate Manager-to-Manager connections.

## Original Connector Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Original Connector Group Field Description
Address	originalConnectorAddress	IP address	2	The IP address of the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Asset ID	originalConnectorAssetID	Resource	2	The asset that represents the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Asset Name	originalConnectorAsset Name	String	2	The first reporting connector's asset name.
Asset Resource	originalConnectorAsset Resource	Resource	2	The first reporting connector's resource.
Descriptor ID	originalConnectorDescriptor Id	ID	2	The first reporting connector's descriptor.
DNS Domain	originalConnectorDns Domain	String	2	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Host Name	originalConnectorHostName	String	2	The name of the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
ID	originalConnectorId	String	2	The ID of the connector. The format is connectorId(1) connectorId(2) ...

**Original Connector Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Original Connector Group Field Description</b>
MAC address	originalconnectorMacAddress	MAC address	2	The MAC address associated with the first reporting SmartConnector (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device.)
Name	originalconnectorName	String	2	User-supplied name of the first reporting connector.
NT Domain	originalconnectorNtDomain	String	2	The Windows NT domain associated with the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Time Zone	originalconnectorTimeZone	String	2	The time zone reported by the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Time Zone Offset	originalconnectorTimeZoneOffset	Integer	2	Returns the raw time-zone offset for the first reporting connector's time zone. Note that device and connector times may not be reliably accurate.
Translated Address	originalconnectorTranslatedAddress	IP address	2	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Translated Zone	originalconnectorTranslatedZone	Zone	2	If network address translation is an issue, this is the Network Zone associated with the translated IP address of the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector.
Translated Zone External ID	originalconnectorTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	originalconnectorTranslatedZoneID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	originalconnectorTranslatedZoneName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.

## Original Connector Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Original Connector Group Field Description
Translated Zone Reference ID	originalconnectorTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	originalconnectorTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	originalconnectorTranslatedZoneURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.
Type	originalconnectorType	String	2	A string that describes the type of the first reporting connector. This is not the same as the device type.
Version	originalconnectorVersion	String	2	The software revision number of the SmartConnector that first reported the event.
Zone	originalconnectorZone	Zone	2	The network zone in which the device hosting the first reporting SmartConnector resides.
Zone External ID	originalconnectorZoneExternalID	String	2	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	originalconnectorZoneID	String	2	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Zone Name	originalconnectorZoneName	String	2	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	originalconnectorZoneReferenceID	ID	2	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and is uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	originalconnectorZoneResource	Resource	2	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	originalconnectorZoneURI	String	2	Returns the URI for this reference.



## Request Group

### Request Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Request Group Field Description
Client Application	requestClientApplication	String	2	The client application (such as a web browser) used to issue the request.
Client Application	requestClientApplication	String	2	A description of the client application used to initiate this request, for example, the HTTP User connector.
Context	requestContext	String	2	A description of the content from which the request originated, for example, the HTTP Referrer.
Cookies	requestCookies	String	2	Cookie data offered by the client application as part of the request.
Method	requestMethod	String	2	The style of the request, i.e., for an HTTP request this could be PUT or GET.
Protocol	requestProtocol	String	2	The communication protocol used when issuing the request.
URL	requestUrl	String	2	A universal resource locator associated with the event.
URL Authority	requestUrlAuthority	String	2	The URL component used for authentication and authorization.
URL File Name	requestUrlFileName	String	2	The URL component that refers to the file containing the resource.
URL Host	requestUrlHost	String	2	The URL component that specifies the host device where the resource resides.
URL Port	requestUrlPort	Integer	2	The URL component that specifies the port to contact on the host device where the resource resides.
URL Query	requestUrlQuery	String	2	The URL component that specifies the query to use to request the resource.

## Source Group

### Source Group Data Fields

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Source Group Field Description
Address	sourceAddress	IP address	1	The IP address of the source device.
Asset ID	sourceAssetId	Resource	2	The asset that represents the device that was the network traffic's source.
Asset Name	sourceAssetName	String	2	The name of the device.
Asset Resource	sourceAssetResource	Resource	2	See the common set of resource attributes.
DNS Domain	sourceDnsDomain	String	2	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the user at the source device.
FQDN	sourceFqdn	String	2	The fully qualified domain name associated with the source device. This has no value if either the host name or DNS domain are without a value.
Geo	sourceGeo	GeoDescriptor	1	The geographical information.
Geo Country Code	sourceGeoCountryCode	String	1	The identifier for the national-political state in which a device resides.
Geo Country Flag URL	sourceGeoCountryFlagUrl	String	1	The URL of an image of the flag of the national-political state in which the device resides.
Geo Country Name	sourceGeoCountryName	String	1	The name of the national-political state where a device resides.
Geo Descriptor ID	sourceGeoDescriptorId	ID	1	The internal ID of the geographical reference.
Geo Latitude	sourceGeoLatitude	Double	1	The latitude of a device.
Geo Location Info	sourceGeoLocationInfo	String	1	Other, free-form text information about the device's location.
Geo Longitude	sourceGeoLongitude	Double	1	The Longitude of a device.

**Source Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Source Group Field Description</b>
Geo Postal Code	sourceGeoPostalCode	String	1	The postal code of the device's location, as assigned by the national-political state where it resides.
Geo Region Code	sourceGeoRegionCode	String	1	The identifier of the sub-region of the national-political state where a device resides. The style of the identifier varies with the host country.
Host Name	sourceHostName	String	2	The name of the source device.
MAC Address	sourceMacAddress	MAC address	2	The MAC address associated with the network traffic's source (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device).
NT Domain	sourceNtDomain	String	2	The Windows NT domain associated with the source device.
Port	sourcePort	Integer	1	The network port associated with the network traffic's source.
Process ID	sourceProcessId	Integer	2	The ID of the process associated with the source of the network traffic.
Process Name	sourceProcessName	String	2	The name of the process associated with the source of the network traffic.
Service Name	sourceServiceName	String	2	The name of the service associated with the network traffic's source.
Translated Address	sourceTranslatedAddress	IP address	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the device that was the network traffic's source.
Translated Port	sourceTranslatedPort	Integer	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated source port associated with the attack.

## Source Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Source Group Field Description
Translated Zone	sourceTranslatedZone	Zone	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the network zone associated with the translated IP address of the device that was the network traffic's source.
Translated Zone External ID	sourceTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	sourceTranslatedZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	sourceTranslatedZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference ID	sourceTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	sourceTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	sourceTranslatedZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
User ID	sourceUserId	String	2	The OS- or application-based identifier associated with the user at the network traffic's source.
User Name	sourceUserName	String	2	The OS- or application-based name associated with the user at the network traffic's source.
User Privileges	sourceUserPrivileges	String	2	The privileges afforded the user at the network traffic's source.
Zone	sourceZone	Zone	1	The network zone where the source device resides.
Zone External ID	sourceZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	sourceZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.

**Source Group Data Fields (Continued)**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Source Group Field Description
Zone Name	sourceZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	sourceZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	sourceZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	sourceZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.

## Target Group

**Target Group Data Fields**

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Target Group Field Description
Address	targetAddress	IP address	1	The IP address of the device hosting the attacker.
Asset ID	targetAssetId	Resource	2	The asset that represents the attacked device's host.
Asset Name	targetAssetName	String	2	The name of the device.
Asset Resource	targetAssetResource	Resource	2	See the common set of resource attributes.
DNS Domain	targetDnsDomain	String	2	The Domain Name Service domain name associated with the attacked device.
FQDN	targetFqdn	String	2	The fully qualified domain name associated with the attacked device.
Geo	targetGeo	GeoDescriptor	1	The geographical information
Geo Country Code	targetGeoCountryCode	String	1	The identifier for the national-political state in which a device resides.

## Target Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Target Group Field Description
Geo Country Flag URL	targetGeoCountryFlagUrl	String	1	The URL of an image of the flag of the national-political state in which the device resides.
Geo Country Name	targetGeoCountryName	String	1	The name of the national-political state where a device resides.
Geo Descriptor ID	targetGeoDescriptorId	ID	1	The internal ID of the geographical reference.
Geo Latitude	targetGeoLatitude	Double	1	The latitude of a device.
Geo Location Info	targetGeoLocationInfo	String	1	Other, free-form text information about the device's location.
Geo Longitude	targetGeoLongitude	Double	1	The Longitude of a device.
Geo Postal Code	targetGeoPostalCode	String	1	The postal code of the device's location, as assigned by the national-political state where it resides.
Geo Region Code	targetGeoRegionCode	String	1	The identifier of the sub-region of the national-political state where a device resides. The style of the identifier varies with the host country.
Host Name	targetHostName	String	2	The name of the attacked device
MAC Address	targetMacAddress	MAC address	2	The MAC address associated with the target of the attack (which may or may not be the MAC address of the host device).
NT Domain	targetNtDomain	String	2	The Windows NT domain associated with the attacked device.
Port	targetPort	Integer	1	The network port associated with the target of the attack.
Process ID	targetProcessId	Integer	2	The ID of the process associated with the attack's target.
Process Name	targetProcessName	String	2	The name of the process associated with the attack's target.

**Target Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Target Group Field Description</b>
Service Name	targetServiceName	String	2	The name of service associated with the attack's target.
Translated Address	targetTranslatedAddress	IP address	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated IP address of the attacked device.
Translated Port	targetTranslatedPort	Integer	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the translated port associated with the attack.
Translated Zone	targetTranslatedZone	Zone	1	If network address translation is an issue, this is the network zone associated with the translated IP address of the targeted device.
Translated Zone External ID	targetTranslatedZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Translated Zone ID	targetTranslatedZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Translated Zone Name	targetTranslatedZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Translated Zone Reference ID	targetTranslatedZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Translated Zone Resource	targetTranslatedZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Translated Zone URI	targetTranslatedZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.
User ID	targetUserId	String	2	The OS- or application-based identifier associated with the attacker, at the target of the attack.
User Name	targetUserName	String	2	The OS- or application-based name associated with the attacker, at the target of the attack.

**Target Group Data Fields (Continued)**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Target Group Field Description</b>
User Privileges	targetUserPrivileges	String	2	The privileges afforded the attacker, at the target of the attack.
Zone	targetZone	Zone	1	The network zone in which the attacked device resides.
Zone External ID	targetZoneExternalID	String	1	Returns the external ID for this reference.
Zone ID	targetZoneID	String	1	Returns the ID for the resource in this resource reference.
Zone Name	targetZoneName	String	1	Returns the name from the URI, which is always assumed to be the last field of the URI.
Zone Reference ID	targetZoneReferenceID	ID	1	Returns the unique descriptor ID for this reference. This is populated only if this reference has been stored and uniquely identified in the database.
Zone Resource	targetZoneResource	Resource	1	Locates the resource described by this reference.
Zone URI	targetZoneURI	String	1	Returns the URI for this reference.

## Threat Group

**Threat Group Data Fields**

<b>Label</b>	<b>Script Alias</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Default Turbo Level</b>	<b>Threat Group Field Description</b>
Asset Criticality	assetCriticality	Integer	2	The relative measure of the importance of the targeted device, on a scale of 0 to 10.
Model Confidence	modelConfidence	Integer	2	The relative measure of ArcSight's confidence in its model of the attacked device, on a scale of 0 to 10.



## Threat Group Data Fields (Continued)

Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Default Turbo Level	Threat Group Field Description
Priority	priority	Integer	1	The relative measure of importance of investigating this event on a scale of 0 to 10. This field incorporates Model Confidence.
Relevance	relevance	Integer	2	The relative measure of likelihood that this event succeeded, on a scale of 0 to 10.
Severity	severity	Integer	2	The relative measure of possible damage to network security represented by the event on a scale of 0 to 10. It may be noted that <b>event severity</b> is supplied by the device; <b>connector severity</b> is supplied by the SmartConnector; and <b>attack severity</b> is supplied by the threat evaluation process.

## Resource Attributes

## Resource Attributes Data Fields

Attribute Suffix	Description
External ID	The user-defined identifier associated with a configuration resource.
ID	The internal identifier associated with a resource (a UUID).
Reference ID	The internal identifier associated with the resource reference (an integer).
Type Name	The type of configuration resource.
URI	The URI associated with the resource (for example, /All Users/Administrators/Mlow).

## Geographical Attributes

**Geographical Attributes Data Fields**

Attribute Suffix	Description
Descriptor ID	The internal ID of the geographical reference.
Country Code	The identifier for the national-political state in which a device resides.
Country Flag URL	The URL of an image of the flag of the national-political state in which the device resides.
Country Name	The name of the national-political state where a device resides.
Latitude	The latitude of a device.
Location Info	Other, free-form text information about the device's location.
Longitude	The longitude of a device.
Postal Code	The postal code of the device's location, as assigned by the national-political state where it resides.
Region Code	The identifier of the sub-region of the national-political state where a device resides. The style of the identifier varies with the host country.

## Data Monitors

Data monitors are views within [Dashboards](#) that can be configured to report on [Events](#), filters (see [Filters](#)), [Rules](#), and other areas that are of particular interest to you. Data monitors can be arranged on dashboards in numerous viewing layouts. Data monitors collect summary information on top events, most recent event activity, partial rule occurrences, hourly event counts, or event averages.

### Data Monitors on Dashboards

Once data monitors are created, they can be used to display information on dashboards. You can add one or more data monitors to the same dashboard to create a collection of different "instrument panel" monitors appearing in the Dashboard display in the Viewer panel. Both the data monitors themselves and dashboards on which they are published can be shared among multiple Console users.

### Permissions on Data Monitors

Data monitors display only those events for which you have permission. In addition, if you do not have access to a data monitor, the data monitor does not function. Administrators can limit visibility of or control access to dashboards and data monitors by changing access control lists (ACLs) as needed. For more about this, see ["Managing Permissions and Resources"](#) on page 603 and ["Controlling Who Has Permissions to Deploy Data Monitors"](#) on page 612.

## Data Monitor Types

The ArcSight Console offers several predefined types to choose from when creating a new data monitor. The following topics describe the parameter entries and other options you can specify for each supported data monitor type.

***You specify the Data Monitor type when you create a data monitor.*** For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#). (Also, the data monitors provided with ArcSight are examples of these various types of data monitors.)

## Asset Category Count Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

This data monitor enumerates the number of real-time hits (events) that occur per asset category, by priority, within a time interval.

### Asset Category Count Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	A unique name for the monitor.
Enable Data Monitor	Turn on the monitor and collect data from the Manager. If cleared, the monitor does not display data.  Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> ( <i>deploy</i> ) or disable ( <i>un-deploy</i> ) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a> .
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource with which to restrict the events that can affect the asset categories.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.  When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.  The field set specified here determines the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)
Root Asset Category Group	Choose an asset-category resource group to monitor.
Levels	Set the number of resource hierarchy levels <b>below</b> the chosen Root Asset Group to monitor.  A value of <b>1</b> monitors only the next level down.  A value of <b>-1</b> monitors all levels.
Aggregation	Turn on ( <b>True</b> ) or off ( <b>False</b> ) the ability to aggregate all hits to the asset group URI, including those above the leaf level, to reveal disparities or unanticipated counts that may merit drilling down.

**Asset Category Count Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Show Root URI	Choose whether to display ( <b>True</b> ) or not display ( <b>False</b> ) the complete URI for affected asset categories.
Show Root Series	Specify whether to include ( <b>True</b> ) or not include ( <b>False</b> ) the root series.  This is used to select how many levels down in the hierarchy to include in the data monitor display. Using a combination of this, Show Root URI, Aggregation, and Levels, you can slice out single levels in the display.

## Event Correlation Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

This data monitor provides flow-volume level correlation between two different event streams. The data monitor specifies two filters to identify two sub-streams of events within the overall stream of events coming into Manager. It then reports how closely the volume of events in the two streams correlate, that is, when the volume of events in Stream 1 decreases, does the volume in Stream 2 increase, decrease, or just change with no relation to the changes in Stream 1? For example, if a network intrusion detection system (NIDS) were deployed in front of several web servers in a cluster, one might expect that the flow of reported events from each NIDS would be roughly equivalent. If the event flow from one of the NIDS suddenly rose or fell out of sync with the other NIDS, then it might indicate a possible problem.

**Event Correlation Data Monitor**

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	A unique name for the monitor.
Enable Data Monitor	Enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If cleared, the associated viewer configuration does not display any data.  Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> ( <i>deploy</i> ) or disable ( <i>un-deploy</i> ) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a> .
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource with which to restrict the events that can affect the asset categories.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.  When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.  The field set specified here determines the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)

**Event Correlation Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Filter 1	Select a filter for the first event flow.
Filter 2	Select a filter for the second event flow.
Restrict by Filter	Choose to restrict the data monitor to a particular filter. When restricting by filter, you focus on a filter that is of particular interest to you and also reduce the number of events the data monitor retrieves.
Sampling Interval	Enter the interval (in seconds) for performing correlation calculations.
Number of Samples	Number of samples to keep in memory to perform calculations.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Alarm Condition	Condition on which to fire an alarm, for example: <code>c &gt; 90 &amp;&amp; x &gt; 0 &amp;&amp; y &gt; 0</code> . In this example, <code>c</code> represents the correlation count from -100 to +100, <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> represent the actual count of events.  See <a href="#">“Data Monitor Expressions” on page 912</a> for more information about the operators and functions supported in this and similar data monitor parameters that accept conditional expressions.
Maximum Alarm Frequency	Minimum time (in seconds) to wait before sending alarms for the same group.

The formula for calculating the correlation values displayed in data monitors is:

$$cor = \frac{1}{N} \sum ((x_j - \bar{x}) \cdot (y_j - \bar{y})) / (\sigma_x \cdot \sigma_y)$$

where  $\bar{x}$  is the mean of  $x_j$  and  $\sigma_x$  is the variance of  $x$ .

The data monitor sampler takes all samples in memory and continually calculates correlation values using this formula. As an example, you could define an event correlation data monitor that displays a correlation between the number of times a network is being reconnoitered, and if that is related to the number of attacks that the network is receiving.

## Event Graph Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

This data monitor draws real-time diagrams of selected event activity. In effect, it does automatically and in real-time what you can do manually, as described in [“Graphing Attacks” on page 128](#).

#### Event Graph Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	A unique name for the monitor.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select this check box to “switch on” the monitor and collect data from the Manager. If cleared, the monitor is “off” and displays no data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource with which to restrict the events that the graphic includes.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here determines the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Show Event Nodes	Choose a basis for visually expanding or aggregating event nodes, relative to their source and target node instances. See <a href="#">“Changing User Preferences” on page 732</a> for the option details.
Max Event Count	Set the greatest number of most-recent events the graphic can show.
Show Source/Target Nodes as	When one source-event target chains to another, you can choose to graph a source/target IP address as a single (simple) node, or to graph both the source and target instances of such an IP address (distinct).
Source Node Identifier	Choose an event attribute to use as the identifier for source nodes. The default attribute is Source Address. Note that while all attributes are available, not all are appropriate choices for this purpose.
Event Node Identifier	The fields that are available to use to uniquely identify the event type in a transaction.
Target Node Identifier	Choose an event attribute to use as the identifier for target nodes. The default attribute is Target Address. Note that while all attributes are available, not all are appropriate choices for this purpose.

## Event Reconciliation Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The Event Reconciliation data monitor correlates events arriving from one sensor with events arriving from another sensor. When qualifying events occur on either or both sensors, the Event Reconciliation data monitor issues a new event to signal it.

You typically use this data monitor to determine the effectiveness of a firewall or IDS deployed in your environment.

One application is to place identically configured NIDS on either side of a firewall to determine which attacks are blocked by the firewall and which are not. Identical NIDS may also be wired in series to guarantee that none of the NIDS have been tampered with. Different NIDS may be wired in series to compare what each detects, either for evaluation purposes or to predict what attacks they may be missing as a group.

For example, you could define an event reconciliation data monitor that displays information about the number of events originating within the outside IDS (IDS1), and the inside IDS (IDS2), and the events that are filtered through the firewall. This presumes that events have the same custom string 1 source address, and that the target address field values are similar.

The Event Reconciliation and [Session Reconciliation Data Monitors](#) are similar in many respects. Their main difference is in the way each handles the scope of reconciliation sessions. Event Reconciliation focuses on accomplishing a certain number of event matches; Session Reconciliation permits an indeterminate number of matches while appropriate events continue to occur.

#### Event Reconciliation Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration does not display any data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Specifies whether to restrict the data monitor to a particular filter. Filtering reduces the number of events the data monitor has to process. From the drop-down menu, double-click a filter or accept the default to receive all events.
Availability Interval	Sets the number of seconds to use as the interval between data monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here determines the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Matching Fields	The set of fields to consider when establishing whether two events match.

**Event Reconciliation Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Filter 1 Fields	Fields passed by <b>Filter 1</b> that can be included in resulting correlation events. These correlation events contain a union of the Filter 1 and Filter 2 Fields.
Filter 1 Population Fields	Select a filter for the first device's event flow.
Filter 2 Fields	Fields passed by <b>Filter 2</b> that can be included in resulting correlation events. These correlation events contain a union of the Filter 2 and Filter 1 Fields.
Filter 2 Population Fields	Select a filter for the second device's event flow.
Matching Time Window	The period of time (in seconds) within which two appropriate events need to be received to qualify as a match.
Event Expiration Time	This is the amount of time (in seconds) that an event is kept in memory while seeking a matching event from the other device's event flow.
Correlate On	Choose an event-receipt circumstance for generating a reconciliation event. The options are as follows. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Matching Events</li> <li>• Filter 1 Events Only</li> <li>• Filter 2 Events Only</li> </ul>
Correlation Thresholds	This specifies the thresholds at which correlation events are created for the events specified in the <b>Correlate On</b> parameter. This field takes one number or a comma-separated list of three numbers. If you specify one number, it is used as the threshold for all the conditions. If you specify three numbers, they are applied respectively to the <b>Correlate On</b> values.
Correlation Interval	The interval (in seconds) to require between correlation events.

The data monitor displays a table view of qualifying events. You can sort on individual fields to display the most interesting cases on top. The following fields generate correlation events.

## Correlation-Event-Generating Fields

The Event Reconciliation Data Monitor displays a table view of qualifying events. You can sort on individual fields to display the most interesting cases on top. The following fields generate correlation events.

### Fields that Generate Correlation Events

Correlation Event	Description
<b>Moving Average Event Fields</b> (and the group-by fields are set)	
Event Name	Name of the data monitor



**Fields that Generate Correlation Events (Continued)**

Correlation Event	Description
ArcSight Category	/metaevent
Custom Number 1	$\text{abs}(\text{count} - \text{moving\_avg}) / \text{moving\_avg} * 100$
Custom Number 2	$\text{count} - \text{moving\_avg}$
Custom Number 3	statistics
Base Event Count	count
eventCategory, CustomString 1	if ( count - statistics = 0 ): eventCategory = /datamonitor/movingaverage/threshold Custom String 1 = datamonitor:002 if ( < 0 ) eventCategory = /datamonitor/movingaverage/threshold/fallingCustom String 1 = datamonitor:003otherwise:eventCategory = /datamonitor/movingaverage/threshold/risingCustom String 1 = datamonitor:004

**Statistics Events** (and the group-by fields are set)

Event Name	Name of the data monitor
ArcSight Category	metaevent
Event Category	/datamonitor/statistics/<Statistics Name>
Custom String 1	datamonitor:006
Custom Number 1	count
Custom Number 2	statistics

**Correlation Data Monitor**

Event Name	Name of the data monitor
ArcSight Category	/metaevent
Event Category	/datamonitor/correlation
Custom String 1	datamonitor:007
Custom Number 1	Filter 1 count
Custom Number 2	Filter 2 Count
Custom Number 3	Correlation Value

**Event Reconciliation** (the rule chain and matching fields are set)

Event Name	Name of the data monitor
ArcSight Category	/metaevent
Event Category	Event Reconciliation
Custom String 1	Filter 1 Events/Filter 2 Events/Matching Events
Event Type	Correlated

## Geographic Event Graph Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

This data monitor draws a real-time geographic map of selected events. In effect, it does automatically and in real-time what you can do manually, as described in [“Graphing Attacks” on page 128](#).

### Geographic Event Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	A unique name for the monitor.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select this check box to "switch on" the monitor and collect data from the Manager. If cleared, the monitor is "off" and displays no data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource with which to restrict the events that can affect the graphic. Filtering reduces the number of events the data monitor has to process. From the drop-down menu, double-click a filter or accept the default to receive all events.
Availability Interval	Sets the number of seconds to use as the interval between data monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here determines the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Max Event Count	Set the greatest number of most-recent events the map can show.

## Hierarchy Map Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. (For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).) This data monitor draws an image made up of proportionally sized panels where each panel represents a group of events selected by group fields selected in the source node identifier. A source-node criteria could be a combination of fields.

### Feature Enhancements

The Hierarchy Map data monitor includes the following enhancements.

- The data monitor now shows the complete hierarchy, with the hierarchy path built not just by using the delimiter within a field value but also across different field values. (Previous versions of the data monitor did not show the complete hierarchy.)

- *Group By* fields now provide options to specify a list of delimiters for use by each selected Group by field. By default, no delimiters are used, if no delimiters are specified then the whole field is taken as a single level for hierarchy. (Previous versions built the hierarchy path within a field value based on only one type of separator, a forward slash, which did not support fields that use other separators like a backward slash, "\", or a dot, ".")  
*Group By* fields also provide an option to set the maximum depth level of hierarchy within a field. The default depth level is equal to the number of delimiters in the field. Entering 0 for this option signifies no depth level for the selected field, effectively defining the field as a single-level hierarchy.
- A list of *Group Attributes* can be specified as a drill-down display to show when a user drills down into a group. For each attribute, the user can select a field and a function (max, min, count, average, count unique) on that field value.
- Enhanced visualization tools for *label*, *size by*, and *color by* provide fine-grained control of hierarchy map display with regard to Group By and Group Attributes fields and values.

## Use Cases

Following is a list of example use cases for which the Hierarchy Map data monitor is a useful monitoring tool.

- Display the number of matches for all the rules within a given time frame, with the hierarchy groups based on the File path field of the rule audit events. The value is the count of the events for each group. The goal would be to show which rules fired the most in a given time frame.
- Show table space usage of correlation resources, particularly session lists and active lists.
- Show memory usage for correlation resources, particularly session lists and active lists.
- Show assets hierarchy by networks, zones and subnets. Within subnets, the assets can be sub-divided into asset ranges.
- Show assets hierarchy divided by the location of assets, where the value on the map is the count of the events targeting those assets.
- Show assets hierarchy divided by the location of assets, where the value on the map is the count of the assets within those locations.
- Monitor resource distribution; that is, how many rules, reports, data monitors and so on are being used in the system, where the count is system storage space.
- Display events by device to show how many events are generated from each device in a given time frame (for example, the past two days).
- Show assets by the number of attacks each receives, to determine which assets are the most vulnerable.

The following topics show how to create a hierarchy map data monitor. Woven into these topics is a simple example that shows how to map high priority, significant events and targeted systems.

## Defining a Hierarchy Map Data Monitor

First, create a new data monitor and select **Hierarchy Map** as the Data Monitor Type in the Data Monitor editor. (For information on how to create a data monitor and define the topic, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).)

To define the details of the Hierarchy Map Data Monitor, specify these attributes in the editor.

### Hierarchy Map Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	A unique name for the monitor.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select this check box to "switch on" the monitor and collect data from the Manager. If cleared, the monitor is "off" and displays no data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource with which to restrict the events that can affect the graphic.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here determines the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">"Inspecting Events in Dashboards" on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Source Node Identifier	<p>This is a <i>group by</i> identifier. Blocks in the hierarchy map represents events or objects that have matching values for all fields chosen here. Also, identifiers specified here are available as Label By, Size By, and Color By choices on the displayed data monitor.</p> <p>Choose one or more event attributes by which to group events. The default attribute is Category Behavior, but you can include multiple attributes.</p> <p>For example, if you select only Category Behavior for this field, events are grouped by category behavior (for example, all events with a category behavior value of /Access are shown in one block, all events with a category behavior of /Authentication/Verify in another block, and so on).</p> <p>If you select more than one source node identifier, each block in the hierarchy map represents events or objects that have the same values for all identifiers.</p> <p>For example, if you select Category Behavior and Event Name as source node identifiers, then each block in the map represents events of the same behavior and event name.</p> <p>See <a href="#">"Specifying the Source Node Identifiers" on page 889</a> for more information.</p>

### Hierarchy Map Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Group Attributes	<p>You can specify one or more <i>group attributes</i> for fields with numerical values (for example, calculate the maximum priority of all events in a field group). The attributes you specify here are shown as drill-down tooltips when you mouse over a field on a hierarchy map display. You can add these attributes by specifying a label, a field, and a function to apply to the field. The functions can be applied on numeric fields only. See <a href="#">“Specifying Group Attributes” on page 891</a> for more details.</p> <p>Also, group attributes specified here are available as Label By, Size By, and Color By choices on the displayed data monitor.</p>



If data monitor attributes are changed (edited) while a user is viewing the data monitor in a dashboard, the current data is flushed and the map defaults to red until new data arrives and the map display is redrawn.



## Adding Variables

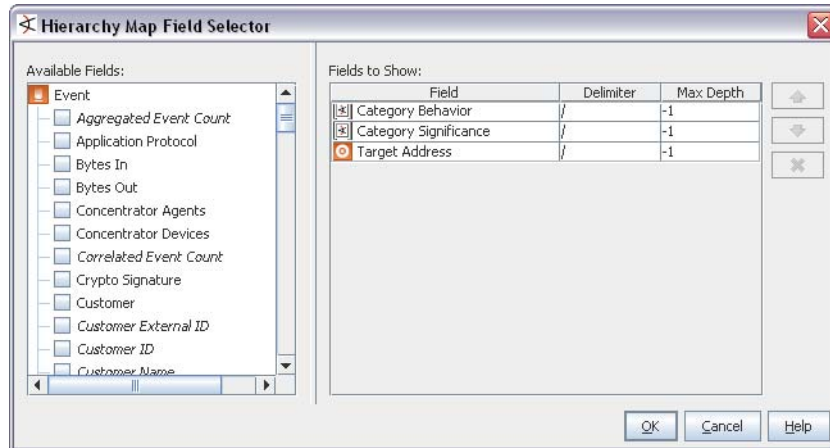
To add a variable, click the Variables tab. For more on using variables in resources, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

## Specifying the Source Node Identifiers

Source node identifiers are “group by” attributes. For example, if you select only Category Behavior for this field, events are grouped by category behavior. Each block in the hierarchy map represents a different type of category behavior (for example, /Authentication, /Authentication/Verify, /Execute Response/Informational, etc). If you select both Category Behavior and Target Address here, each block in the hierarchy map represents events with the same category behavior on the same target system (IP address or host name).

To specify one or more Source Node Identifier (Group By) fields, click in the **Source Node**

**Identifier** field, then click the button  to open the Field Selector dialog. Specify the fields by which you want to group events or objects by clicking Available Fields checkboxes, which adds them to “Fields to Show”. (To remove a field, select it under Fields to Show and click the delete button . Click up/down arrows to re-order fields.)



For example, we can group by Category Behavior, Category Significance, and Target Address, which provide meaningful groups (events with the same category behavior, significance, and target address), and give us some interesting label, size, and color display options for mapping significant events and targeted systems on the data monitor.

## Hierarchy Levels and Group Delimiters


You can specify how many levels of hierarchy you want to display for a field group by specifying one or more (a group of) delimiters and the maximum depth of hierarchy to display. For example, if you have a field value, `http://www.foo.com`, for which you have specified the depth level (Max Depth) as 2 with delimiters set to a group (consisting of `://.`), you see:

- First level: `http://`
- Second level: `http://www.foo.com`

For the same example, if you set the Max Depth to 3, you get:

- First level: `http://`
- Second level: `http://www`
- Third level: `http://www.foo.com`

To select a field to display and set its hierarchy depth level:

- 1 Open the Hierarchy Map Field Selector dialog by clicking the browse button  that is displayed when you click in the Source Node Identifier field.
- 2 To add a field, check (click) the check box next to the field in the **Available Fields** scroll box. As you select a field, it is displayed in the Fields column in the “Fields to Show” table on the right side of the dialog.
- 3 Double-click the **Delimiter** column for the field you just selected and enter one or more delimiters based on which you want to show the hierarchy depth.

By default, a forward slash (/) is set as the delimiter. To set a single level of hierarchy, delete the “/” and do not specify any delimiters. Also, set the **Max Depth** (as explained in the next step) to zero for that field. If you set a comma (,) as a delimiter, the hierarchy in the panel displays a backslash (\).

- 4 To specify the depth of the field hierarchy within a field, double-click the **Max Depth** cell for the field.



**Note**

Negative integers are not allowed. If you enter a negative integer, it defaults to -1 which represents a depth level equal to the number of delimiters in the field.

If you leave this field blank, it defaults to a depth level equal to the number of delimiters in the field and -1 is displayed in the Max Depth column.



To display the whole field as a single level of hierarchy, set the **Max Depth** value to 0.

## Specifying Group Attributes

Optionally, you can specify group attributes, which are functions on numerical fields. These attributes are shown as mouse-over tooltips on groups (blocks) on a displayed hierarchy map. They are also available as label, size, and color options.

For each attribute you want to add, provide a label, a function, and a field to which to apply the function. This can be done on numeric fields only. For example, if you add an Event Count label, select the Sum function, and apply this to the aggregatedEventCount field, the function finds the sum of event count value.

To add group attributes:

- 1 Click the **Group Attributes** cell. A browse button  is displayed.
- 2 Click the browse button . The Group Attributes dialog opens.

Label	Function	Field
Event Count	Sum	aggregatedEventCount
Priority	Max	priority
< Enter Label >	< Select Function >	< Select Field >

OK Cancel Help

- 3 Click the **Label** column and enter a name for the attribute you want to create. You can add multiple labels.
- 4 Click the **Function** column for a label and select a function to be applied to a field that you select in the next step. You can set a function for a numeric field only.
- 5 Click the **Field** column against a label and select a field to which to apply the function.

For example, we'll create two labels, Event Count and Priority, and map them as follows.

Label	Function	Field
Event Count	Sum	aggregatedEventCount
Priority	Max	priority

On the displayed map, the mouse-over tooltip on each block (group) shows both the event count and the highest priority events included in that block. Also, specified group attributes (Event Count and Priority, in this case) are available as Label By, Size By, and Color By options on the data monitor.

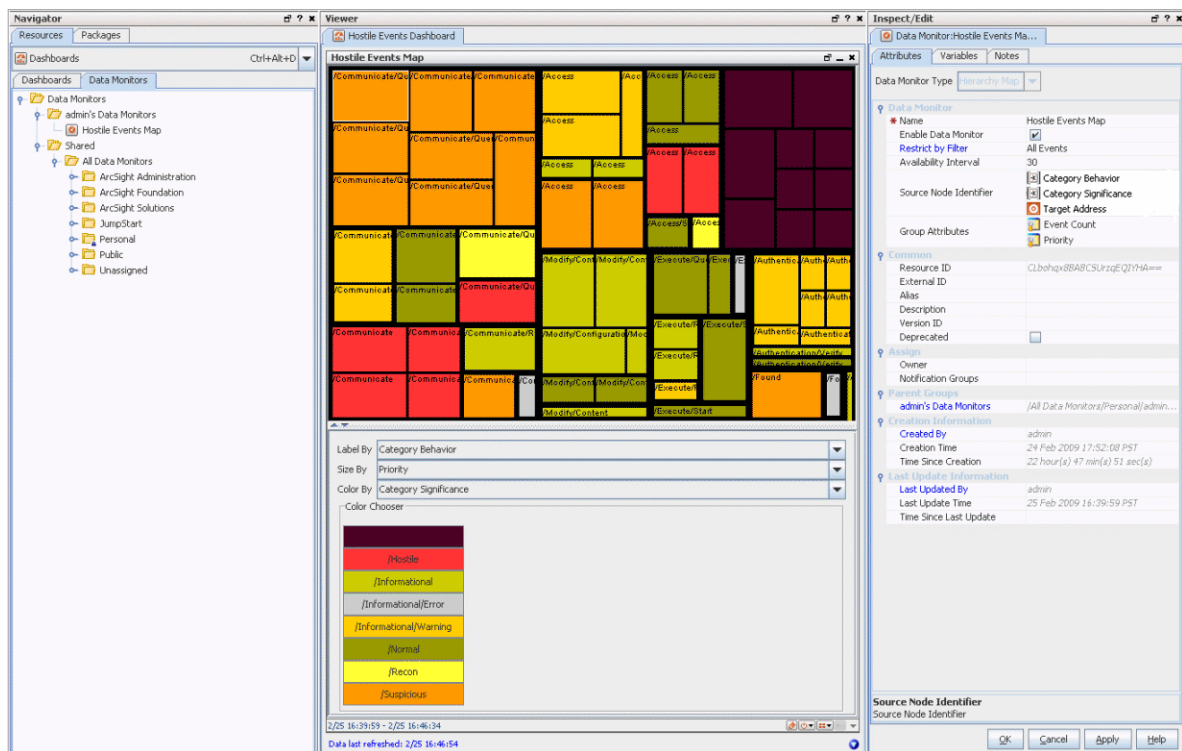
## Hierarchy Map Display and Visualization Controls

Once you create a Hierarchy Map Data Monitor, you need to add it to a dashboard to display it and make further adjustments to the display.

### Map Display and An Example

If no dashboards are displayed in the Viewer, simply right-click the Data Monitor you created, and select **Add to Dashboard As > Area Map**. This creates a new, untitled dashboard and add the data monitor to it. (You can also add it to an existing dashboard.)

The hierarchy map shown below is an example of the data monitor displayed on a dashboard.



You can choose “Hierarchy Map” as the Data Monitor type when you create a new Data Monitor. To display the data monitor, add it to a Dashboard.



- Before you can edit the visualization controls on the Hierarchy Map data monitor, you need to first add the data monitor to a dashboard and display the dashboard, as described just before figure above.
- If data monitor attributes are changed (edited) while a user is viewing the data monitor in a dashboard, the current data is flushed and the map defaults to red until new data arrives and the map display is redrawn.



The **example** data monitor above shows events grouped by category behavior, significance and target address. The labels show category behavior, and the blocks are sized by priority and colored by significance. Mouse-over tooltips show event count and priority for each group. Note that we can change the display on-the-fly by choosing a different label, size, and color options. For example, instead of coloring the blocks by Category Significance, we could color by Target Address. Or, instead of labeling by Category Behavior, we could label by Target Address. In this way, we can get quick, real-time, graphical overviews of network activity and adjust options to emphasize different details.

## Labels, Size, and Color Controls

The visualization controls for Hierarchy Map Data Monitors are **Label By**, **Size By**, and **Color By** controls. (You might need to float the Viewer panel and expand the floating Viewer to see these controls. See [“Floating a Console Panel” on page 732.](#))

- **Label By** - Select a label. The value of the label you select is displayed on each block.



- The **default** for “Label By” is all the fields specified for the source node identifier and the event count for that grouping. This shows as “Default” in the field. (The values available for use in the Label By field come from the attributes defined for Source Node Identifier and Group Attributes fields on the data monitor Editor. See [“Source Node Identifier” on page 888](#) and [“Group Attributes” on page 889](#) for more information.)
- If “Label by” is set to something other than the default, the last (bottom-most) field value in the hierarchy does not show on the map because the custom Label by setting overwrites it. However, data for all fields, including the last field, is always taken into account on the map.

Use the default “Label By” option to show/visualize the complete hierarchy, including the last field value.

- **Size By** - Select an identifier or attribute by which you want to size the blocks. Once you select the Size By attribute, the blocks are resized proportionate to the value selected. Only attributes that have numeric values are available, because you cannot size a block based on a non-numeric value.



The values available for use in the Size By field come from the attributes defined for the Group Attributes field on the data monitor Editor. See [“Group Attributes” on page 889](#) for more information.

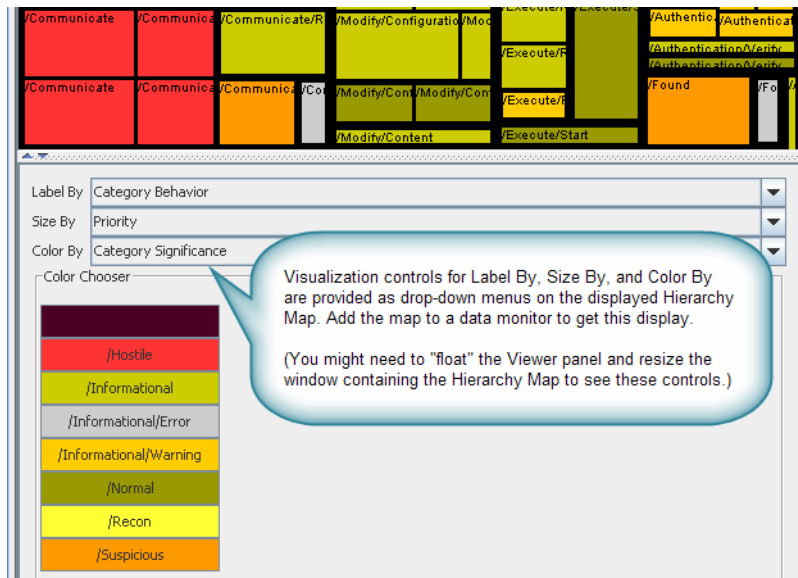
- **Color By** - Select identifier or attribute by which you want to color the blocks.



The values available for use in the Color By field come from the attributes defined for Source Node Identifier and Group Attributes fields on the data monitor Editor. See [“Source Node Identifier” on page 888](#) and [“Group Attributes” on page 889](#) for more information.

If you select a non-numeric field, you can change the color for any discrete value. If you select a numeric field, you get the option to select either a color for a discrete value or a color for a range of values. (For more on this option, see [“Selecting Colors for the Blocks” on page 894.](#))

After you select label, size, and color values, be sure to save the dashboard. The next time you open the dashboard, the attributes you saved are applied to the next set of data.



Format controls for the Hierarchy Map are available as drop-down menus on the map display in a data monitor.



**Note**

After an edit of tree map attributes, there might be a time lag before there is a visual indication of the updates. You can force a redraw of the tree map by dragging the slider to resize the panel that contains the map.

## Selecting Colors for the Blocks

You can color the blocks by selecting any of the Source Node Identifiers or Group Attributes that are displayed in the **Color By** drop down menu. For example, if you select Priority in the **Color By** menu, then all blocks that have the same priority are displayed in the same color, such as all blocks with priority 1 may be displayed in red and all blocks with priority 2 may be displayed in blue, and so on.

If the Color By attribute you select is discrete but non-numeric, you can define the colors for each value of the attribute. For attributes that have numeric values, you can individually assign a color per attribute value or specify a range and assign a color for that range. However, if the Color By attribute is Priority, you cannot specify a range. This is because there are already predefined colors for each level of priority. You can change a predefined color to a color of your choice for each priority level.

Below the Label By, Size By and Color By fields, is the Color Chooser box. This box displays all the values for the **Color By** group/field that you select. To individually assign a color for an attribute:

- 1 Click the **Discrete** radio button (This button is visible only if you selected a numeric Color By attribute).
- 2 Double-click a value button to open the **Color Chooser** dialog.
- 3 Select a color that you want to display for all the boxes for which that value is applicable.
- 4 Click **OK**.

All the boxes that have that value is displayed in the new color.

You can set a threshold for the maximum number of discrete values for which you can set a color. Set the `console.ui.hmDataMonitor.discrete.threshold` property in the `console.defaults.properties` file. If the number of discrete values exceeds this threshold, for all values that cross the threshold, the color is set to white.

To assign a color for a range of values (for numeric fields only):

- 1 Click the **Range** radio button.
- 2 Click **Add** button to set a range and a color for that range. The Add a color mapping dialog opens.
- 3 Select a value from the **Min Attribute Value** and **Max Attribute Value** menus to set the range.

For example, if you want to set a range for Priority that falls in 3-to-6 range, select 3 from the Min Attribute Value menu and 6 from the Max Attribute Value menu.

- 4 Click the Color Chooser button to open the color chooser.
- 5 Select a color by clicking it and click **OK**. The color you choose is used to display all values falling in that range. In our range example in step 3, all blocks that display priority of 3, 4, and 5 have the color you just chose for the 3-6 range.



If new data comes in after you change the color mapping but before you save the new mapping, you get a dialog asking you whether you want to save the changed mapping. If you select **Yes**, the Data Monitor is not refreshed with new data until you save the new mapping. When you save it, the new mapping is applied to the existing blocks and all future data displayed on the dashboard.

If you select **No**, the new color mapping is applied to the existing data on the dashboard, but is not saved in the database. So, as soon as new data arrives, the new color mapping is overwritten by the original color mapping that exists in the database.

## Hourly Counts Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The Hourly Counts Data Monitor displays the total count of events on an hourly basis along with their Priority. The hourly count for the first hour segment starts when you open the dashboard. For example, if you open the dashboard at 2:25 PM, though the first time segment displays **14:00 - 15:00**, the count begins at **2:25 PM**.

### Hourly Counts Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Enter a data monitor name. Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> ( <i>deploy</i> ) or disable ( <i>un-deploy</i> ) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a> .
Enable Data Monitor	Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.

**Hourly Counts Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource to restrict the data monitor's contents.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.  When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.  The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">"Inspecting Events in Dashboards" on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)

As an example, you could design an Hourly Counts data monitor that displays hourly counts of data being collected, for example, the number of events that Manager receives.

## Last N Events Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see ["Creating a Data Monitor" on page 110](#).

The Last *N* Events data monitor orders events based on its configuration. In the Table Viewer, the monitor displays the most recent events by Priority, Event Name, Protocol, and Category. With the BarChartTable configuration, the order is by Priority and Event Name. The PieChart configuration is ordered by Priority.

**Last N Events Data Monitor**

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.  Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> ( <i>deploy</i> ) or disable ( <i>un-deploy</i> ) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112</a> .
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource to use as an additional restriction on the events displayed.

**Last N Events Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Select Field Set	Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.  When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.  The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)
# of Events	Specify how many events the data monitor displays.
Field Names	Choose field names to include in the data monitor display. By default, the data monitor includes EventName, EventCategory, ArcSight Severity, and Protocol fields. You can select additional fields or remove currently selected fields by Shift or Ctrl-clicking field names in the drop-down list.

As an example, you could design a Last N Events data monitor that displays the latest N events that meet the condition specified in the dashboard definition.

## Last State Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

This monitor is somewhat different than others in that it provides an extra level of abstraction that you can use to simplify the information presented to operators. Sometimes called "indicator lights" or "heads-up displays," these monitors show graphics that translate more complex values into simple, rapidly observable results such as green/amber/red "signal lights" or checkmark/asterisk/exclamation point symbols. "Last State" data monitors could also be called "most recently known state" monitors.

Last State data monitors are built on the information collected by [Active Lists](#). The qualifying events in active lists are identified on the basis of selected key fields such as Source Zone and Source Address (see [Data Fields](#)).

Having focused on the events that apply, you then select a field to use as the basis of the values the indicators will simplify. For example, the Priority field has a range of values you could divide into sub-ranges that you choose to translate into good/okay/bad groups.

With a value-range and status-scheme decided, you can map the field values to the status names, and the status names to the visual indicators operators will see.

**Last State Data Monitor**

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	A unique name for the monitor.


## Last State Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select this check box to "switch on" the monitor and collect data from the Manager. If cleared, the monitor is "off" and displays no data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Choose a filter resource to use as an additional restriction on the events summarized through the indicators, if necessary.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">"Inspecting Events in Dashboards" on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Restrict by Active List	Choose an active list from the resource tree to use as the primary guide for event selection.
Key Fields	Choose the fields to use as identifiers for the indicators, and the order in which to display them.
Value Fields	Select the fields that provide the range of values to be mapped into indicators, and the order in which they are to be evaluated.
Max Number of Indicators	Set the greatest number of qualifying indicators the data monitor will show. If more indicators are generated, the displayed set will be the those with the most recent event traffic.
Mapping	<p>Use the Define Status Map dialog box in two steps: first, on the <b>Statuses</b> tab, to associate status <b>Titles</b> with <b>Image</b> graphics, then, on the <b>Mapping</b> tab, to associate <b>Value</b> items contained by the Value Fields with the <b>Statuses</b> titles just defined. Be sure to define and select one "catch all" status to react to values that may fall outside the range you set.</p> <p>In the <b>Value</b> field, associate only one value at a time with the <b>Status</b> values you've defined. For example, if the values 0, 1, and 2 should all be associated with a <b>Status</b> of "Okay," enter each digit separately and click <b>Add</b>.</p>
Use as Timestamp	Choose whether to use the device's reported end-time or the Manager's receipt time as the definitive timestamp.
History Function	Use this option to add a Min or Max column to grid views that shows the minimum or maximum value for the indicator, over the most-recent time period specified by History Time Range.
History Time Range	Used with the History Function. The (most recent) period of time, in minutes, for which to retain minimum or maximum value information for an indicator. For example, a value of 60 could cause an indicator's Max column in a table to show its highest registered value over the previous hour.

### Last State Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Timeout	Used with the History Function. Sets the time limit, in seconds, after which the Min and Max column values are purged if not already updated.

## Options for Table and Tile Views

In dashboards, you can see Last State data monitors as **Table** or **Tile** views. Click the **View as icon** () button at the lower-right corner to choose Table or Tile view.


The Table view will show more items than a *modified* Tile view. If the Tile view is customized to show results with particular values for key fields, it will show only a subset of the data monitor results.

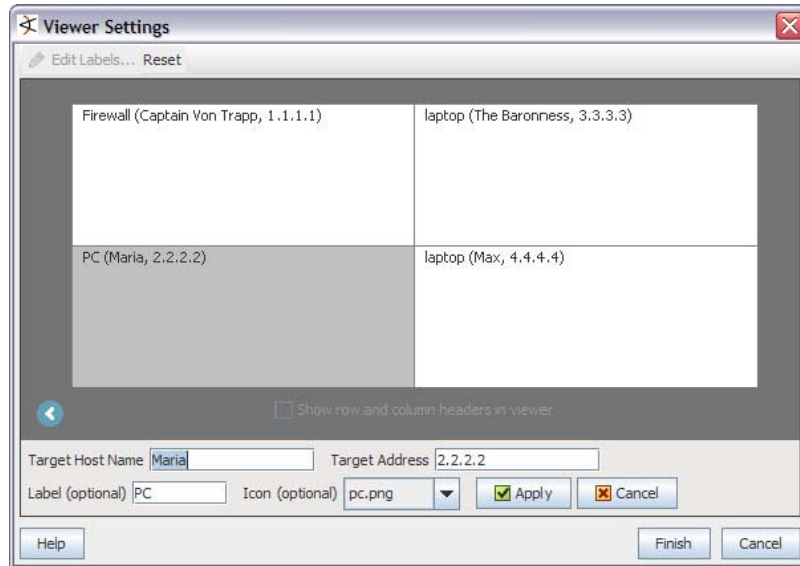
A color chooser is available to apply to the **Table** view.

### Table View (Color Chooser and Remove Entry)

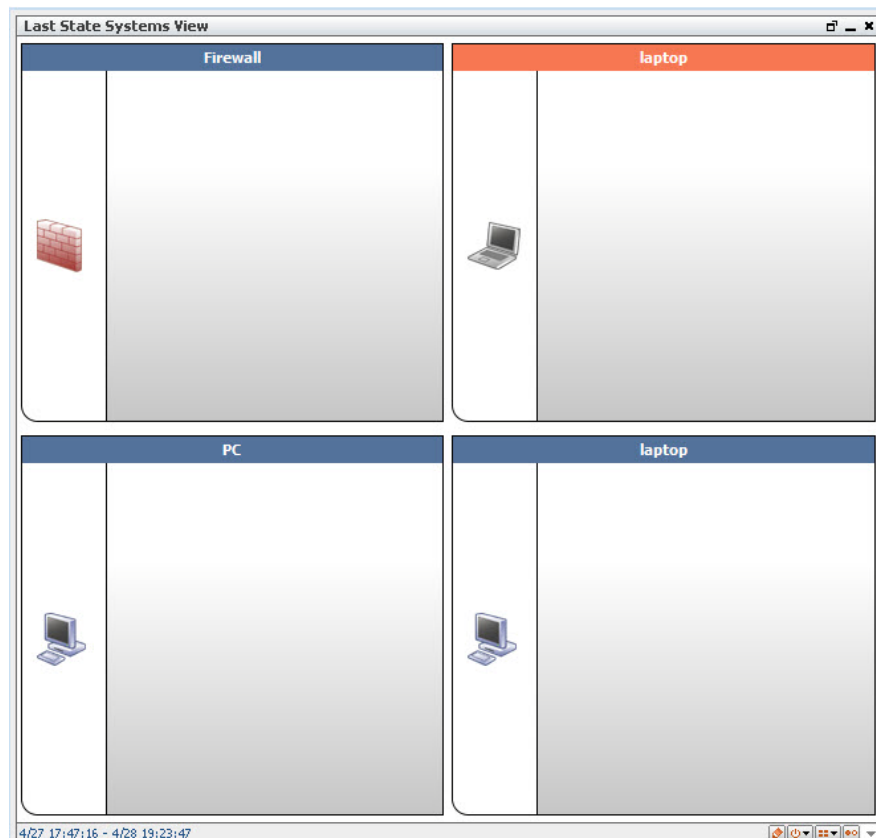
Also in Table view, you can right-click an entry in a Last State data monitor and choose **Remove Entry**. However, keep in mind the data monitor's [Availability Interval](#) setting. Removal does not visibly take place until the next refresh, during which time a new instance of the entry could occur. Depending on the entry and the interval, a removed entry may appear to have remained.

### Tile View (Customize View)

When in **Tile** view, you can use the **Customize** button () to change the way data is ordered in the tabular (tiled) presentation, and limit the view to a subset of data monitor results. The customization choices are **by row-and-column** and **by cell**. Row-and-column is quicker to set up than cell because there are fewer adjustments, but cell does give you the option to set the contents of each tile in the data monitor. The custom settings here, in effect, filter your view based on values you specify for key fields. For example, if you are interested in monitoring state changes on only four systems identified by target host name and target address; you can customize the view on a dashboard to show only those four systems.



These tiled views are "fixed" meaning that the tiles in the array will hold their positions, relative to each other and to the dashboard.



The customize view option on the Last State Data Monitor tile view gives Console users a way to design their own views and then get quick visuals on a few key assets or attackers:

- Set up a custom, focused view of a few items that you are interested in (assets like servers that might be targets of attacks, suspicious nodes that might be attackers, and




so forth). You do this by submitting values for the items you want to monitor (for example, host names and addresses, if those are your key fields).

- In a single glance, get information on state changes in different priority events (low, medium, high) in these few items. Since the positions of the items in your custom tile view does not change, and because you have limited the view to a few key items, you can get last state status with a quick glance.
- ArcSight Console users can customize dashboard views that use the same underlying Last State Data Monitor, but focus in on different items or assets (depending on how the data monitor custom view is set up on each dashboard). Fred could have a dashboard set up to monitor a few key servers based on host name and address, while Ethel could have a dashboard set up to monitor some firewalls, and both could be using the same underlying data monitor.



#### Notes on the Customize view option for Last State Data Monitor

- This is a dashboard-level customization that essentially filters the view based on values you provide for key fields. The key fields that show up in the Viewer Settings come from the key fields set in the data monitor.
- A priority mapping needs to be configured in the data monitor in order for the quick-glance tile view to provide useful last state information
- Customizations made to the Last State Data Monitor are saved to the dashboard that holds the data monitor, not to the data monitor itself. This allows the same data monitor to be used as a basis for different, customized views (dashboards) for quick-glance, priority state changes related to incoming events.
- The Customize view option applies only to the **Tile** view (not Table view). When you switch to the **Table** (  ), you can see results for other items in addition to the ones you “filtered” for on the customized Tile view.

## Moving Average Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The Moving Average data monitor displays the moving average of events by a selected data field. The display provides a running count of events within a specified time frame and generates an event when the moving average changes significantly.

If a Moving Average data monitor is configured to display multiple graphs simultaneously, you can open it using the Statistics Chart or Tile format options described in [“Managing Dashboards” on page 106](#).

This data monitor calculates its statistics based on the number of requested samples. Until a full set of samples accumulate, the statistics approach their nominal value. This is indicated by appending /Partial to the event category if the values represent an incomplete sample. The purpose is to prevent false positives. This is most applicable to /DataMonitor/MovingAverage/Threshold/ events.

When either the Moving Average or Statistics data monitors gain or lose a value grouping during processing (for example, Priority), they issue an internal event. The data monitor's event categorization shows a Value/Add or Value/Remove suffix. This makes it possible to detect anomalous drops to zero, which can otherwise be missed if the monitor is removed because the discard threshold and a Threshold/Falling event could not be sent (due to exceeding the Maximum Alarm Frequency setting).

Both the Moving Average and Statistics data monitors have a **Stats Value Field**. When used, this attribute focuses the monitor's statistical analysis on the numeric value of a specified field rather than on the quantitative flow of events. Analyzing numeric fields within events enables a broad number of possibilities for status monitoring, especially with custom strings and ArcSight [Audit Events](#).

The **Value Calculation** field offers additional time-sensitive options for monitoring in second or minute increments. Monitoring per-second can catch abrupt spikes or drops; monitoring per-minute allows the same capability but may be more appropriate for larger integer values.

#### Moving Average Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	<p>Specifies whether to restrict the data monitor to a particular filter. When restricting by filter, you focus on a filter that is of particular interest to you and also reduce the number of events the data monitor retrieves. From the drop-down menu, double-click a filter or accept the default to receive all events.</p>
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">"Inspecting Events in Dashboards" on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Stats Value Field	<p>Specify a particular numeric field within events to use for statistical evaluation, rather than the overall flow of events. For example, specifying the Priority field would focus the data monitor on changes to the value of the Priority field in events, instead of on changes to the number of events encountered.</p> <p>The default is <b>Aggregated Event Count</b>, which is the sum of all aggregated events.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> Events can be <i>aggregated</i> at the Connector on specified fields. This pares down the number of events of the same type that the Manager must process.</p>

**Moving Average Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Value Calculation	<p>Controls the way the time-based accumulation of values is evaluated against the number of events involved.</p> <p>The default is <b>Sum of values</b>, which is the sum of all Stats Value Field event values.</p> <p><b>Average value per event</b> divides the value by the number of events in the unit.</p> <p><b>Average value per second</b> divides the value by the number of seconds in the unit.</p> <p><b>Average value per minute</b> divides the value by the number of minutes in the unit.</p> <p>For finer time-sensitive value calculations, also consider using the <b>Number of Samples</b> and <b>Sampling Interval</b> so results are neither too shallow or too acute to be meaningful.</p>
Group By	Group by the specified field (for example, Priority)
Sorted By	Sort by the values found in fields or by the percentage of change in those values.
Alarm Change Threshold (%)	Specifies the moving average threshold, the percent change from the moving average, that will send a threshold exceeded event to the ArcSight Console. The threshold exceeded event is sent to the Console and can be used to create a rule. For more information on rules, see <a href="#">"Creating Rule Actions" on page 417</a> . Type in a percentage. The default is 50.
Number of Samples	Type the number of Sampling Intervals to use to calculate the moving average, in seconds. The most recently stored Sampling Intervals are used to calculate the moving average. For example, if five Number of Samples are used, the last five Sampling Intervals are used to calculate the moving average.
Number of Visible Groups	Set the number of rows of results to display in the data monitor for each combination of ordering fields specified in the Group By parameter.
Sampling Interval	Type the time interval used to calculate the moving average, in seconds. For example, if the Sampling Interval is 5 minutes, the moving average is calculated every 5 minutes. The default is 300.
Group Discard Threshold	Specifies the minimum event counts needed to generate a threshold exceeded event. For example, event count could change from 1 to 2, a 100% change that results in a threshold exceeded event. To prevent these types of changes from generating a threshold exceeded event, specify the minimum event counts needed. If you want all events generated regardless of the event count, type 0.
Maximum Alarm Frequency	Minimum time (in seconds) to wait before sending alarms for the same group.

For example, you could design a Moving Average data monitor that displays the moving average of events on a per-source-address basis.

In ArcSight Reports/Custom Reports/Moving Average Report, you can specify the name of the dashboard as a parameter (same as the moving average event name), and specify the detect time range to report on.



You can also have a rule trigger based on the moving average of events coming in, independent of defining reports based on moving average events.

## Rules Partial Match Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

Displays rules that have partial matches and the total number of partial match events within a specified time frame. For more information on partial matches, see [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#).

### Rules Partial Match Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a>.</p>
Window Size	Specifies the time interval used to report partial match counts, in seconds. For example, if using 1 hour as the Window Size, each window displays partial match counts in hour intervals. The default is 3600.
Number of Windows To Display	Type the number of Window Sizes to display. The default is 5.
Fixed or Sliding	<p>Specifies when to begin the <b>Window Size</b> time interval. Choose <b>Fixed</b> to begin at time units, such as every hour, 1:00, 2:00, and so forth, or <b>Sliding</b> to begin at the current time and move backwards in <b>Window Size</b> time intervals. For example, if the window size is 10 minutes, and the current time is 1:15 PM and <b>Fixed</b> was selected, the window time frames would be 1:00 to 1:09 and 1:10 to 1:15. If <b>Sliding</b> was selected, window time frames would be 1:00 to 1:04 and 1:05 to 1:15.</p>

For example, you could design a Rules Partial Match data monitor that displays all events that have partially matched and enabled real-time rule conditions, and are currently stored in memory.

## Session Reconciliation Data Monitor

You choose this data monitor type when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The Session Reconciliation data monitor correlates events on the basis of their occurrence within a relevant time period, as established by a "session" event. When an event is qualified as session-initiating by the Session Filter, a session begins. The session persists until it times out or a new primary event occurs. Point events (occurring within the session time period) cause a correlation event that contains selected information from both events.



Note

We strongly recommend that you use the Session List feature to maintain session information instead of the Session Reconciliation data monitor. The Session List feature provides a more scalable, flexible, and powerful way to collect session data.

You typically use this data monitor to watch network devices that involve longer-term concerns, such as DHCP leases.

The [Event Reconciliation Data Monitor](#) and Session Reconciliation Data Monitor are similar in some respects. Their main difference is in the way each handles the scope of reconciliation sessions. Event Reconciliation focuses on accomplishing a certain number of event matches; Session Reconciliation permits an indeterminate number of matches while appropriate events continue to occur.

The Session Reconciliation data monitor automatically compensates for session-initiating events that arrive out of order.

### Session Reconciliation Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Specifies whether to restrict the data monitor to a particular filter. This filter precedes the <b>Session Filter</b> and <b>Point Filter</b> . From the drop-down menu, double-click a filter resource.
Availability Interval	Sets the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>

**Session Reconciliation Data Monitor (Continued)**

Parameter	Description
Session Filter	The filter for those events that will initiate data-monitoring sessions. Compare to Point Event Filter.
Matching Fields	The set of fields to consider when establishing whether two events match.
Session Inclusion Fields	The fields to add to the generated event, from the session-initiating event, when correlation occurs.
Point Event Filter	The filter for the events that may match the events that initiate data-monitoring sessions. Compare to Session Filter.
Point Inclusion Fields	The fields to add to the generated event, from the point event, when correlation occurs.
Expired Session Timeout	The amount of time (in minutes) to retain a record of expired or replaced active sessions so that late or out-of-order point events can be properly processed.
Active Session Timeout	The time (in minutes) to allow before timing out a session if no new session events or point events occur.
Point Event Holding Period	The amount of time (in seconds) to retain point events to allow late or out-of-order session events to arrive and initiate sessions.
Events to Generate	Choose which types of correlation events are eligible to generate when session and point events match. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Point Event Matched Sessions - A session/point event-match occurred. A correlation event was generated containing the events' selected information.</li> <li>No Session Matched Point Event - A point event occurred without a live matching session. No information is included in the correlation event.</li> <li>Session Expired Event - Session expiration or replacement generates an event. Note that expiration or replacement is not complete deletion.</li> <li>Session Pruned Event - Complete deletion of the session generates an event.</li> </ul>
Aggregation Threshold	The number of matches to use as the threshold for generating a correlation event.
Reporting Interval	The interval (in seconds) to require between correlation events.

## Statistics Data Monitor



The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The Statistics Data Monitor provides a broader generalization of Moving Average data monitor functionality, except that it allows selection of other statistical methods in addition to Moving Average. Statistical methods include Average, Moving Average, Standard Deviation, Skew, and Kurtosis. These added capabilities could be used to detect anomalous behavior that could not be detected using moving average alone.

For example, monitoring the standard deviation of event data allows alarms to be triggered when there are sudden shifts in the rate of change of an event flow. This would allow alarms to be triggered when the protected network has been infected with a worm, but not when the network traffic rises due to normal use.

Both the Statistics and Moving Average data monitors have a **Stats Value Field**. When used, this attribute focuses the monitor's statistical analysis on the numeric value of a specified field rather than on the quantitative flow of events. Analyzing numeric fields within events enables a broad number of possibilities for status monitoring, especially with custom strings and ArcSight [Audit Events](#).

In dashboards, you can see Statistics data monitors as **Statistics Chart** or **Tile** views.

Click the **View as icon** button (  ) at the lower-right corner to choose. When in Tile view, you can use the **Customize** button (  ) to change the way data is ordered in the tabular (tiled) presentation. The customization choices are **by row-and-column** and **by cell**. Row-and-column is quicker to set up than cell because there are fewer adjustments, but cell does give you the option to set the contents of each tile in the data monitor.

When either the Moving Average or Statistics data monitors gain or lose a value grouping during processing (for example, Priority), they issue an internal event. The data monitor's event categorization shows a Value/Add or Value/Remove suffix. This makes it possible to detect anomalous drops to zero, which can otherwise be missed if the monitor is removed because the discard threshold and a Threshold/Falling event could not be sent (due to exceeding the Maximum Alarm Frequency setting).

These tiled views are "fixed," meaning that the tiles in the array will keep their positions, relative to each other and to the dashboard.

#### Statistics Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Enter a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Choose to restrict the data monitor to a particular filter. When restricting by filter, you focus on a filter that is of particular interest to you and also reduce the number of events the data monitor retrieves.
Availability Interval	Set the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.

## Statistics Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">“Inspecting Events in Dashboards” on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Statistics Type	Choose the type of statistical calculation the data monitor will perform. The available types are Average, Identity, Kurtosis, Skew, Standard Deviation, and Variance.
Stats Value Field	Specify a particular numeric field within events to use for statistical evaluation, rather than the overall flow of events. For example, specifying the Priority field would focus the data monitor on changes to the value of the Priority field in events, instead of on changes to the number of events encountered.
Group By	Group by the specified field (for example, Name)
Sorted By	Choose to sort results by value, sample count, statistics, or triggering criteria.
Alarm Trigger Condition	<p>Enter a conditional expression on which to trigger alarms.</p> <p>You can use any mathematical expression that employs these three variables, using <i>n</i> as the <a href="#">Number of Samples</a>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>c</b> = The new sample</li> <li><b>ps</b> = Statistics from previous <i>n</i> samples <i>excluding</i> c</li> <li><b>s</b> = Statistics from the last <i>n</i> samples <i>including</i> c</li> </ul> <p>For example, the following expression would trigger when the current sample goes beyond 500:</p> $c \geq 500$ <p>An expression that triggers when the statistics reach 500 would be:</p> $s \geq 500$ <p>As a matter of interest, the Moving Average data monitor is in effect a special case of the Statistics data monitor, based on this expression: <math>s \neq 0 \ \&amp;\&amp; \ (abs((c - s)/s) * 100) &gt; 50</math> where 50 is the percent of change you specify in the Moving Average data monitor.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Data Monitor Expressions” on page 912</a> for more information about the operators and functions supported in this and similar data monitor parameters that accept conditional expressions.</p>
Number of Samples	Specify the number of most-recent Sampling Intervals to retain in memory and use to calculate event statistics. For example, if you set it to retain 5 sampling intervals, the last five periods (as specified in the Sampling Intervals attribute) are used to calculate the moving average.
# of Groups to Display	Set the number of rows of results to display in the data monitor for each combination of ordering fields specified in the Group By parameter.



### Statistics Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Sampling Interval	Enter the time interval for recalculating event statistics, in seconds. For example, if the Sampling Interval is 5 minutes, the moving average is calculated every 5 minutes.
Group Discard Condition	Enter a condition (a filtering expression) by which to remove certain result rows from consideration in statistical calculations, based on the result ordering set in the Group By attribute.  See <a href="#">“Data Monitor Expressions” on page 912</a> for more information about the operators and functions supported in this and similar data monitor parameters that accept conditional expressions.
Maximum Alarm Frequency	Minimum time (in seconds) to wait before sending alarms for the same group.

## System Monitor Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The System Data Monitor provides measurements based on Manager internal monitoring system Java classes and attributes. A number of system monitors that may be particularly useful to administrators are provided as predefined System Data Monitors that you can include in your dashboard displays to monitor system performance.

### System Monitor Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name
Enable Data Monitor	Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.  Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> ( <i>deploy</i> ) or disable ( <i>un-deploy</i> ) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a> .
Monitor Types	From the drop-down menu, select the name of ArcSight Java class for which you want to display attribute measurements, for example, Throughput meter or Status

## System Monitor Attribute Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The System Monitor Attributes Data Monitor is similar to System Monitor, except that, rather than providing measurements for all attributes of a specified Java class, focuses on a single specific attribute of a given ArcSight Java class. (Used primarily for measurements on attributes that provide complex data structures.) A number of predefined system

monitors are provided that you may want to include in your dashboard displays to monitor system performance.

#### System Monitor Attribute Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Type a data monitor name.
Enable Data Monitor	Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.  Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> ( <i>deploy</i> ) or disable ( <i>un-deploy</i> ) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">“Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor” on page 112</a> .
Monitor Types	From the drop-down menu, select the name of ArcSight Java class for which you want to display attribute measurements, for example, Throughput meter or Status.
Attribute Name	Specify the individual attribute of the specified ArcSight Java class for which you want to display information. You can obtain the names of specific attributes in a class by viewing the results of a System Monitor defined for that class.

## Top Value Counts Data Monitor

The data monitor type is chosen when you create a new data monitor. For information on how to create a data monitor, see [“Creating a Data Monitor” on page 110](#).

The Top Value Counts data monitor displays top events by selected data field, the total number of events, and the event Severity within the total number of events with the Table and BarChartTable viewer configurations.

Top Value Counts uses an aggregation mechanism that precisely and predictably controls the time dimension of the data being evaluated. "Bucketized" means that the monitor evaluates a specific number of time-based event data units of a certain size (buckets). As time increments forward, the evaluation refreshes, using the most recent set of qualifying buckets. Data monitor buckets process live data. You should expect some delay ranging from milliseconds to seconds between the Manager's receipt of the event and when the event is processed by the data monitor. The latest bucket may therefore not have counted all the events up to the current millisecond. Eventually the count discrepancy is resolved and the bucket counts will be correct.

#### Top Value Counts Data Monitor

Parameter	Description
Data Monitor Name	Enter a data monitor name.

### Top Value Counts Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Enable Data Monitor	<p>Select the check box to enable the data monitor and collect data from the Manager. If not selected, the associated viewer configuration will not display any data.</p> <p>Depending on the permissions associated with the user group to which you belong, you may or may not have an option to <b>Enable</b> (<i>deploy</i>) or disable (<i>un-deploy</i>) the data monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling or Disabling a Data Monitor" on page 112</a>.</p>
Restrict by Filter	Specify a filter to focus on events that are of particular interest and to reduce the number of events the data monitor processes. Use a filter when the number of possible <b>Aggregate Field</b> values can exceed the maximum for <b># of Distinct Events</b> .
Availability Interval	Sets the number of seconds to use as the interval between monitor updates.
Select Field Set	<p>Specify a field set for use in data monitor drill-downs.</p> <p>When this data monitor is displayed, the user can double-click on a chart area or table row that represents an event to bring up a drill-down channel for that event.</p> <p>The field set specified here will determine the columns (fields) shown in the drill-down channel. (See <a href="#">"Inspecting Events in Dashboards" on page 103</a> for information on data monitor drill-downs.)</p>
Bucket Size in Seconds	The time dimension for individual event data units. A number of these units make up the value used in <b>Number of Buckets</b> . For example, you might use a value of <b>300</b> to create five-minute buckets. Bucket size and frequency (increasing freshness and resolution) does have a performance cost so it is wise to set buckets to run only as small and fast as actually necessary.
Number of Buckets	The overall time dimension to evaluate, expressed as the appropriate number of <b>Bucket Size</b> units. For example, to evaluate the most recent hour using five-minute buckets, you would enter <b>12</b> . Bucket size and frequency (increasing freshness and resolution) does have a performance cost so it is wise to set buckets to run only as small and fast as actually necessary.
Time Field	Choose the specific event timestamp to use to apply events to time buckets.
# Top Entries	The number of entries to show as "top" values.
# of Distinct Events	<p>This value must equal or exceed the maximum number of values that the <b>Aggregate Field</b> can possibly have. The default is 1,000. The maximum is 10,000. This value controls the upper limit on the number of aggregate field values. If it is smaller than necessary, then when it encounters one more Aggregate Field value than allowed, the Data Monitor resets all the counters, clears the data, and starts over at zero.</p> <p>If you specify more than one Aggregate Field, the maximum number of possibilities is the product of the possible values of all fields. For example, if you are aggregating by users and zones in an environment with 200 users and 15 zones, the number of possibilities is <math>200 \times 15 = 3,000</math>. If the number of possibilities is larger than the maximum of 10,000, use a filter to reduce them.</p>

### Top Value Counts Data Monitor (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Aggregate Field	Specify one or more data fields to monitor. For more information, see <a href="#">"Data Fields" on page 837</a> . To monitor the top 10 source IP addresses, for example, select the Source Address data field from the drop-down menu. If you specify more than one field, the total number of possible combinations is the product of the number of possible values for each field you specify. Make sure that the <b># of Distinct Events</b> field is large enough to accommodate this number.
Value Field	<p>Specify what the data monitor will use when determining the top value counts: the number of matching events, or the sum of a particular data field value in all matching events.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To count events, leave this field empty. (This is equivalent to selecting the Aggregated Event Count field. When the Value Field is not specified, the data monitor uses the data field specified in the Aggregate Field to count events.)</li> <li>To sum the values from a particular data field, use the data field selector for the "Value Field" attribute to select the desired field.</li> </ul> <p>In either case, counts from aggregated events will be properly adjusted.</p>
Send Audit Events	Specify generation of audit events for this data monitor. By default, audit events are not generated. Refer to <a href="#">"Audit Events" on page 775</a> and look for the audit events under "Top Value Counts Data Monitor."

## Data Monitor Expressions

Certain data monitor parameters can specify their own conditional expressions with which to flexibly define triggers or results. For example, you use these expressions in the Statistics data monitor's Alarm Trigger Condition and Group Discard Condition parameters to evaluate when to send an alarm or to remove result rows from statistical calculations.

The type of expression supported is a conventional infix mathematical expression with each basic expression separated by parentheses.

All common arithmetic operators are supported. Boolean operators are also fully supported and Boolean expressions evaluate as either 1 or 0 (true or false).

## Supported Data Monitor Expression Operators

All common arithmetic operators are supported. Boolean operators are also fully supported and Boolean expressions evaluate as either **1** or **0** (true or false).

### Data Monitor Expression Operators

Operator	Symbol	Operator	Symbol
Power	^	Less Than or Equal	< =
Boolean Not	!	More Than or Equal	> =
Unary Plus	+ x	Less Than	<

**Data Monitor Expression Operators (Continued)**

Operator	Symbol	Operator	Symbol
Unary Minus	-x	Greater Than	>
Modulus	%	Not Equal	!=
Division	/	Equal	==
Multiplication	*	Boolean And	&&
Addition	+	Boolean Or	
Subtraction	-		

## Supported Data Monitor Expression Functions

**Data Monitor Expression Functions**

Name	Function	Name	Function
Sine	sin()	Inverse Hyperbolic Cosine	acosh()
Cosine	cos()	Inverse Hyperbolic Tangent	atanh()
Tangent	tan()	Natural Logarithm	ln()
Arc Sine	asin()	Logarithm Base 10	log()
Arc Cosine	acos()	Angle	angle()
Arc Tangent	atan()	Absolute Value / Magnitude	abs()
Hyperbolic Sine	sinh()	Random Number (between 0 and 1)	rand()
Hyperbolic Cosine	cosh()	Modulus	mod()
Hyperbolic Tangent	tanh()	Square Root	sqrt()
Inverse Hyperbolic Sine	asinh()	Sum	sum()

## Device

See [“Assets” on page 762](#) for a discussion of network devices.

## Event Inspector

The Event Inspector is a tool for examining [Events](#) details. It is located in the [ArcSight Console's](#) Inspect/Edit panel. To open the Event Inspector, double-click an event line in a grid view (see [“Views” on page 1007](#)).

There are two panels in the Event Inspector. The top panel displays selected events with associated rules. The events listed here have a set of right-click menu commands similar to

those described in [“Using Active Channels” on page 93](#). The bottom panel displays event details for one or more events that have been selected from the top panel. If you select more than one event from the top panel, only their common values are displayed in the bottom panel.


The Event Inspector can display the chain of events that trigger a rule (see [“Rules” on page 951](#)) and generate a correlation event. From the Event Inspector you can view each event and rule in the chain for details.

Depending on the information available for an event, you may also be able to review its business significance in the Impact Analysis tab or its actual content in the Payload tab.



#### Viewing global variables in the Event Inspector

When you view events in an active channel and open an event that contains a global variable field in the Event Inspector, you may need to refresh the Event Inspector view to see the global variable fields, because the Manager processes global variable data differently from regular event data.

- If your Hide Empty Rows icon  is toggled on (so that empty rows are not displayed), you may not see global variable field in the event inspector.
- To refresh the view, de-select, then re-select the Hide Empty Rows icon.

See also: [“Inspecting and Editing” on page 50](#).

## Field Sets

The overall set of event-attribute fields is defined in [Data Fields](#), but you can make or use custom subsets with the Field Set Editor (see [“Field Sets” on page 916](#)). Choose a set name to see only that predefined set of fields.

## Events

### Base Events

Events begin at network [Devices](#) that can sense and record instances of security-sensitive activity. Examples include a database record change, a syslog entry, a firewall transit, a router access, or scanning a door access card.

Such initial events are typically recorded in logs, and are sometimes called **base** or **raw** events.

When numerous source devices are reporting large volumes of relatively similar events, it is desirable to funnel these events through central event **concentrators** that forward a much-reduced set of representative or summary events.

When these events reach ArcSight [SmartConnectors](#), several things can happen.

- All received events are **normalized** (restructured) to make their information consistent and ready for analysis.
- All received events are **categorized** (appended with classification information) using ArcSight's event categorization taxonomy.
- If appropriate and the SmartConnector is configured to do so, events are **aggregated** to issue fewer and more meaningful events and to reduce network traffic.

- If appropriate and the SmartConnector is configured to do so, selected events are **filtered** out, to eliminate them as a further traffic or processing burden.
- For certain devices, the option may be available for the SmartConnector to apply analysis rules to incoming events and to issue **correlation** events concerning them.

At SmartConnectors, filtering **removes** events from the system. Aggregation **replaces** events with fewer new ones bearing summary information.

When the events from SmartConnectors pass to Managers they can again be considered **base** events in the sense that they are in a state prior to processing. More specifically, any event that is subject to further processing, even if the result of previous processing, can be considered a base event.

All base events entering the Manager are subject to:

- **Correlation** to derive more intelligence from the events. Correlation **adds** new events containing the results of correlation activity. You apply correlation through the rules and data monitors in their respective resource trees of the Navigator panel. Correlation events have flash icons in grid views.
- **Filtering** to selectively see and report on events. Filtering within the Manager does not actually discard events. You apply filtering with the resources in the Filters tree in the Navigator panel.

Note that all aggregation actually occurs at SmartConnectors, not within the Manager. You apply aggregation through the resources in the [Rules](#) tree of the Navigator panel.

There are only **base**, **aggregation**, and **correlation** [Events](#). It is important to note that any such event in the system can (if the right rules and data monitors are present) become the input to produce new correlation events. You should also note that the Manager's rules engine is designed to prevent infinite loops.

Apart from the events that originate on the network, and the correlation events the Manager issues in response to them, the Manager generates many other events of its own for a variety of purposes.

These **internal events** can be divided into [Audit Events](#) and [Status Monitor Events](#). You can use audit events to track, or react to, system **activity** at all levels of operation from data monitors to the database. Status monitor events are valuable for getting system **state** information. Review these topics on Audit Events and Status Monitor Events to become familiar with the characteristics of all the available events.


You can apply all analytic tools to any events present, whether base or correlation, originating externally or internally.

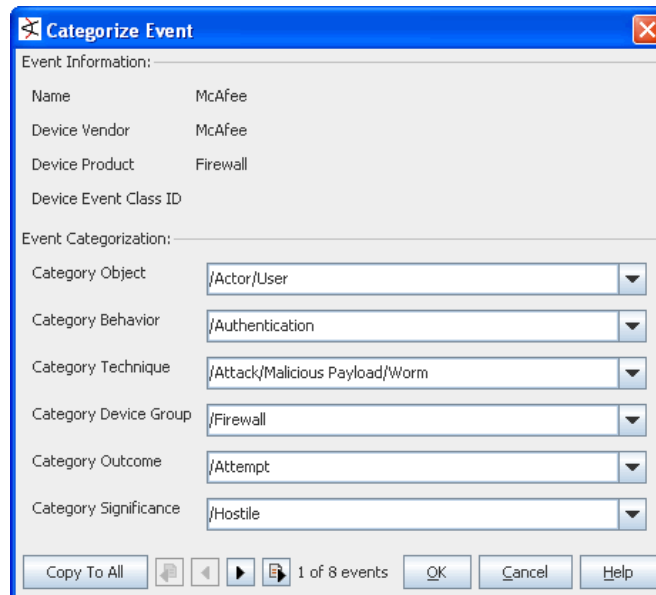
## Event Categorization

Events from unsupported or custom devices can generate events that the provided connectors do not know how to categorize. For example, if your organization has developed and deployed ArcSight FlexConnectors to collect and process events specific to customized network nodes, these custom events are not categorized per the usual method.

From the ArcSight Console, you can manually apply categorization to one or more custom events from a FlexConnector (or other custom or unsupported device). Once you apply categorization to events from a particular device (and its associated connector), the categorization is automatically applied to other events of the same type.

To apply event categorization to one or more events:

- 1 Select one or more of the same type of events that you want to categorize.
- 2 Choose Select one or more events and choose the **Categorize Event** command from the System menu (or click the  toolbar button).



- 3 Select values from the given categories from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **OK** to apply the categorization information to events of this type.

This generates a SmartConnector update file (.aup) containing the new categorization files on the Manager. The Manager polls for new SmartConnector update files every 5 minutes, and updates the SmartConnectors when it finds new .aup files. So, within 5 to 20 minutes after you apply event categorization, new events of the same type are categorized in the same way.

Note that if a certain type of event is already categorized, this custom categorization has no effect. If not, the custom categorizations take effect on all events of the same type going forward.

## Field Sets

Field sets are named subsets chosen from the available [Data Fields](#). Field sets can help you quickly focus a grid view, Event Inspector, or other field array on a particular context such as customer accounts or vulnerability.

Field sets are a shareable resource that you can manage and apply through the Field Sets resource tree in the Active Channels section of the Navigator panel. (In the Navigator, choose **Active Channels**, and click the **Field Sets** tab.) These field sets also support the [Variables](#) data fields. Field sets supercede and include the previous concept of column sets.

There is a default list of field sets for out-of-the-box use, and to serve as examples.

See [“Creating and Using Field Sets” on page 155](#) (in [Chapter 3, Monitoring Events, on page 77](#)) for information on how to create custom field sets, modify existing ones, and share them with other Manager administrators or operators.



See [“Sortable Field Sets” on page 964](#) for information on creating and using sortable field sets.

See [“Using Field Sets” on page 828](#) (in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) reference topic) for information on how to access field sets to build conditions.

## Filters

Use filters to specify criteria that narrows the scope of monitored data and reduces the number, or constrains the nature, of the [Events](#) displayed through the [ArcSight Console](#). Filtering criteria are based on the ArcSight Console's event [Data Fields](#), used in various combinations and with various conditions placed on their content. As you apply more restrictive filter parameters, the number of events reaching the Console may decrease, but the likelihood increases that the events are significant.

For example, you can create a filter that contains every firewall for the western region of the United States, and create another filter that contains every Intrusion Detection System (IDS) for the same region. You can also be more specific, by creating a filter wherein you only want to view firewalls and IDSs with certain IP addresses because they are labeled as **suspicious** IP's or IP's that may pose a possible threat to an enterprise. On the other hand, you can create filters that only contain networks that are labeled as **friendly** and seem to pose no threat at all, but you still want to monitor them. For display purposes, you can select a unique color for any filter. If an event matching the filter's conditions is generated, the event appears in the grid view in the specified color.

Applying filters to get optimum results is a core skill for network security analysis. While it isn't possible to anticipate specific solutions here, you should know the most efficient way to use the ArcSight Console's filtering tools.


## Filtering Options

In the ArcSight Console, filtering is available in multiple ways, and how you choose to use these options can have a significant effect on your ability to precisely, flexibly, and rapidly author new analyses over the long term.

The primary event-filtering options are:

- **Filters resources:** The Navigator panel's Filters resource tree is (or should be) your master repository for filtering solutions. Using the Filters tree is the best way to work out an organized filter library. You can and should use the filters you develop here, through the Filters Editor, in other resources such as active channel views, reports, or rules. You can even use filter resources in other filter resources. By basing your solutions on hierarchical, resource-based filters, you gain the type of leverage granted by style sheets.
- **Active Channels resources:** The active channel resources in the Navigator panel can each store an individual filtering solution that is unique to a given channel or based on a Filters resource. When you use an existing active channel to create another, you carry forward and perhaps modify its filter.
- **Active Channel Editor:** You use the Active Channel Editor to create or modify the filters in individual active channels. Changes you make to active channels through this editor are limited to those channels and channels created from them. Such changes shouldn't be considered long-term or enterprise-wide.
- **Inline view filters:** In any active channel grid view you can use the fields of the grid's top line to select filtering event-attribute values for certain columns, which will be used with implied AND operators to impose ad hoc filters. These filters are not

retained with the prior active channel, but you can give the revised channel a name and save it through the Active Channel Editor.

- **Event-based filters:** Another quickly applied and contextual category of event filtering is offered by the event-attribute **Investigate** command. When you right-click an event attribute in a grid view you can choose Investigate and one of several filtering options that vary based on the data involved. Like inline filters, **Investigate** filters apply only to the current view and are temporary unless saved in a different named view.
- **Inline Filters:** You can add an inline filter to a channel view by clicking the Edit Inline Filter (  ) button at the top right of the grid view to display the inline filtering fields. (For more information see, [“Filtering Active Channels with Inline Filters” on page 98.](#))

You should always remember that your most primary filter is the one imposed by your system administrator. Each user operates under the constraints of the access control lists (ACLs) configured for their user identity. These ACLs automatically filter out some portion of the total available event flow before it reaches you. Any filter you use or create adds to this fundamental constraint.

For more about putting filters to work, see [Chapter 7, Filtering Events, on page 175.](#)

## Global Variables

You can create variables that derive unique values from existing data fields, which you can apply locally in the resource you're working on to make monitoring and correlation more specific to particular scenarios.

In addition to these local variables, there is a global variable resource, which makes it possible to define a variable once, then re-use it in multiple places wherever conditions can be expressed (active channels, rules, filters, data monitors, and queries), and wherever fields can be selected (CCE, field sets).

Global variables are centralized and reusable, which make them an essential building block for user correlation in the Actors feature, and other advanced correlation scenarios.

Once created, global variables appear in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) as additional fields on the Filters or Conditions tabs, as `Group By` arguments for data monitors and queries, and in rule conditions and actions. You can add variables to field sets in the Field Set Editor to extend the event and resource schema with values derived from other data fields.

The global variables feature also makes it possible to easily promote local variables defined for a particular resource into a global variable, where it can be re-used in other condition statements.

For details about the Global Variables feature, see [“Global Variables” on page 445.](#)

## Grid View

A grid view is a type of view in the ArcSight Console, or in an ArcSight Web client, that shows [Events](#) summary information organized in rows and columns, or other types of information such as for certain [Resources](#). As new events occur, they are inserted at the top of the grid as new rows. Rows contain events while columns contain data fields. You can learn about working with grids in [“Using Active Channels” on page 93.](#)

## iDefense

If your ArcSight system is integrated with a VeriSign iDefense database, you can view iDefense incident reports for events that have vulnerabilities associated with them.

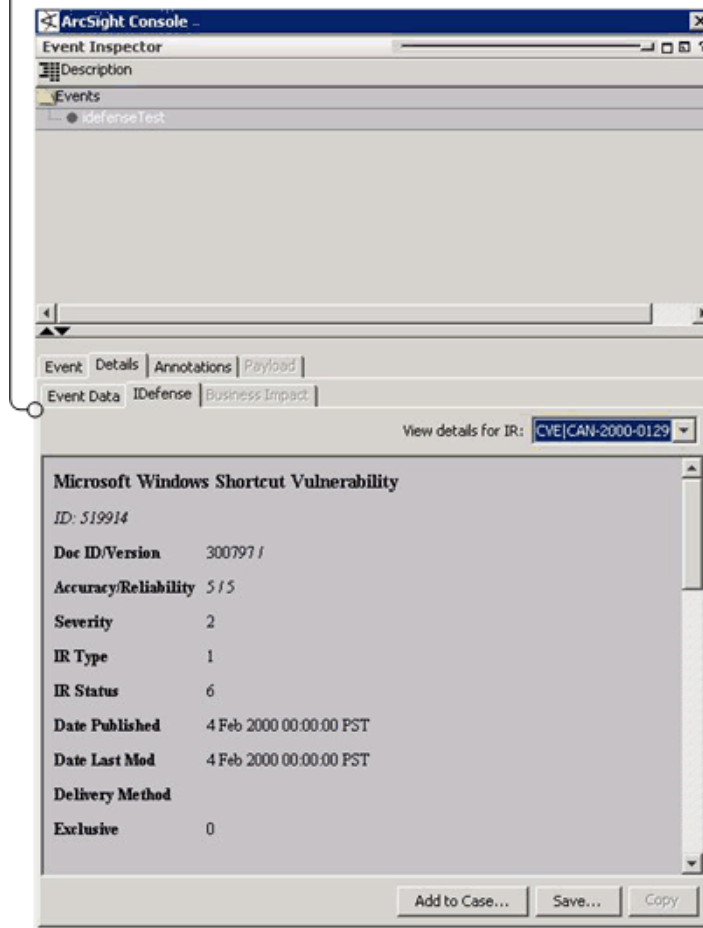
### To view iDefense information for an event:

Select an event in a channel, right-click, and choose Show Event Details.

If there is iDefense information available for the selected event, the iDefense tab will be enabled. Click the **iDefense** tab, then choose an incident report from the **View details for IR** menu at the top right of the iDefense sub-tab. The reports are displayed on the iDefense tab.

This option is available only if you have the third party iDefense software installed and configured to interact with the Arcsight ESM, and if the selected event has a vulnerability ID associated with it. In that case, an iDefense tab is available as a sub-tab under the Details tab for the selected event. The iDefense reports provide more details on the vulnerability.

Typically, multiple incident reports are available for a selected event. To view a report, choose a report name from the **View details for IR** drop-down menu.



## Inspect/Edit Panel

Located on the right side of the [ArcSight Console](#), the Inspect/Edit panel contains all the various [Resources](#) editors you use to create and modify analytic tools, as well as the Event Inspector you use to examine the contents of [Events](#). Using the Event Inspector and the resource editors is explained in the topics that relate to events and those resources.

## Job Scheduler

See [“Scheduling Jobs” on page 954](#).

## Knowledge Base

The Knowledge Base is a problem-solving database that can contain information on event data, associated if-then-else rules, cases, and so forth. All information is derived from community expertise within your enterprise or based on your internal practices and policies.

Compare Knowledge Base articles to [Reference Pages](#), which provide built-in reference information about certain resources.

When you create a Knowledge Base article, you provide a URL or directory path to a specific vulnerability or exposure. You can add notes to Knowledge Base articles to relay information about the article. Using a note, you can write reminders, messages to the next shift, or any related information. Articles are displayed in the ArcSight Console or in an ArcSight Web client, with associated links and article information. Knowledge Base articles are stored in these default groups:

- **Shared:** lists Knowledge Base groups and articles to which the logged-in user has access:
  - ◆ **All Knowledge Base:** lists all user Knowledge Base groups and articles.
  - ◆ **Personal Knowledge Base:** lists each user's own Knowledge Base groups and articles.
  - ◆ **Public Knowledge Base:** lists Knowledge Base groups and articles accessible to all users.
  - ◆ **Unassigned:** lists Knowledge Base articles that do not belong to a group.

## Logical Operators

This table describes the logical operators you can use in condition statements. Certain operators don't appear in circumstances where they are not applicable.

**Logical Operators for Conditional Statements**

Logical Operator	Description
=	<p>Equals</p> <p>Use this operator when the entire string is known, such as for an event Name or User name.</p>

### Logical Operators for Conditional Statements (Continued)

Logical Operator	Description
<code>!=</code>	<p>Not equals</p> <p>Use this operator to exclude one or more known values, such as events involving a specific network domain or user.</p>
<code>&lt;</code>	Less than
<code>&lt;=</code>	Less than or equal to
<code>&gt;=</code>	Greater than or equal to
<code>&gt;</code>	Greater than
Between	Event occurs within the specified date-time bracket
In	Standard SQL operator for membership test
Contains	<p>Contains the specified substring</p> <p>Use this operator to exclude a large set of events, such as all events whose name contains "virus."</p> <p>Use this operator with caution as it is relatively slow and prone to matching more events than you intended.</p>
ContainsBits	<p>Returns true or false</p> <p>The ContainsBits operator applies to event fields that are bit vector data types, that is, fields that combine a set of independent Boolean flags. The right side value is a list of applicable named flags. The operator evaluates to True if the value of the selected flag is set for the event. For example,</p> <p>Event Annotation Flags ContainsBits "correlated;inCase" returns true if both of the annotation flags Correlated and inCase are set for the event being investigated.</p>
ContainsValue	<p>Returns true or false</p> <p>Use this operator where the left-hand-side operand is a list of some data type, and the right-hand side operand is a single value (field or literal) of the same data type.</p> <p>For example, a variable <code>IPList</code> is a list of IP Addresses obtained from a multi-mapped active list, with values {192.0.2.0, 192.0.2.1, 192.0.2.2}. You then use <code>ContainsValue</code> in the following conditional statements:</p> <pre>IPList ContainsValue TargetAddress</pre> <p>This condition returns true or false depending on whether <code>TargetAddress</code> value is contained in <code>IPList</code>.</p> <pre>IPList ContainsValue 192.0.2.0</pre> <p>This condition returns true because the right-hand side value is contained in <code>IPList</code>.</p> <pre>IPList ContainsValue 192.0.2.24</pre> <p>This condition returns false because the right-hand side value is not contained in <code>IPList</code>.</p> <p>You can use <code>ContainsValue</code> in both queries and in-memory resources.</p>

### Logical Operators for Conditional Statements (Continued)

Logical Operator	Description
StartsWith	Starts with specified substring Use this operator for testing URIs such as event categories or resource locations (for example, Customer or Connector locations in their respective Navigator trees), or to test the root of a hostname (for example, if your web servers are named WebServer1, WebServer2, etc., you could use "hostname startsWith WebServer").
EndsWith	Ends with specified substring Use this operator for domain names. For example, you might want to match events involving the .mil domain.
Like	Standard SQL operator for simple pattern matching for string type: "_" wildcard for single character; "%" wildcard for multiple characters
Matches	For extended regular expression pattern-matching for string types using Perl 5 syntax Supports regular expressions (regex). Note that Matches is used in rules only.
InSubnet	For IP addresses in the specified subnet
InActiveList	Event appears in the specified active list. InActiveList operates on items in the event and actor schemas. It does not evaluate items in other non-event schemas (such as cases or assets). For example, (a, b, c) InActiveList (a, b, c, d). <b>Note:</b> The InActiveList operator only evaluates single-value attributes, and treats multi-value attributes, such as Actor Account ID and Role, as single-value attributes.
On	Event occurs on this date
Is	Tests "true" for the selected state, null or not-null Use this operator to test whether or not a value has been supplied. You would use this in rules to tell the difference between a string that does not match versus a string that was not supplied. For example, you could use this to find all events that were missing their event names.
BitAnd	Equals, for bitmap fields
EqualsList	Compares one list to another (for example, active list, session list). If the two lists have the same entries, the statement evaluates to "true". For example, (a, b, c) EqualsList (a, b, c).
InList	Determines whether a given item is in a list and, if so, evaluates to "true".
ContainsList	Compares one list to another to see if the second list is a subset of the first. For example, (a, b, c) ContainsList (a, b).
IntersectsList	Compares one list to another. If the two lists have one or more entry in common, the statement evaluates to "true". For example, (a, b, c) IntersectsList (b).

## Managed Security Service Providers (MSSPs)

Managed Security Service Providers (MSSP) can use slicing and dicing query-trend approaches to create focused reports for multiple customers built from what are initially broad range queries.

## Manager

The Manager is the component that manages, cross-correlates, filters, and processes all security-event occurrences in your enterprise. The Manager includes a Cross-Correlation Engine, Connector Data Manager, tracking and resolution functions, and analytics and reporting capabilities. The Manager also accesses the CORR-Engine.

## Navigator Panel

Located on the left side of the [ArcSight Console](#), the Navigator panel contains all the trees you use to organize analytic and operational [Resources](#), tools, and targets. These resources come in many types, such as active lists, connectors, rules, and users, all of which are summarized in the topic ["Navigating" on page 41](#).

## Notifications

"Notifications" usually refers to the event-related messages sent to e-mail addresses, pagers, or cell phones.


Sending notifications is one among several rule actions that can be performed when a rule is triggered (See ["Rules" on page 951](#)). When you create a rule and add a Send To Notifier action, you will be able to select the notification group that will receive the message. For more information on rule actions, see ["Creating Rule Actions" on page 417](#).

The key entities in the notification structure are Notification Groups, Escalation Levels, and Destinations.

## Notification Operation

When a rule that has a notification action triggers, the notification engine notifies all **active** destinations in the first escalation level within that group. The notification engine then waits for a certain time period to receive an acknowledgment to that notification.

You can acknowledge notifications by any one of these methods:

- Reply to the e-mail or page (requires a two-way pager), depending on the type of destination.
- Click the **Notifications** button (  ) in the Console's toolbar to use the Notifications Manager in the Viewer panel. (See ["Managing Received Notifications" on page 615](#).)
- Use ArcSight Web's Notifications feature to read and respond.

The length of time that the notification engine waits for acknowledgement depends on the event severity, and can be configured through the context (right-click) menu's Wait Time setting.

If no acknowledgment is received within the specified time interval, the same notification is escalated to the next level within the group.

This process repeats until there are no more escalation levels or the notification is acknowledged by any of the recipients. The one exception to this procedure is the escalation procedure carried out for **informative** notifications (the Informative option was set while defining the notification action in the rules editor). In this case, notifications are only sent to the first escalation level in the group and do not require acknowledgment.

SMTP is used to send e-mail. An SMTP server must be configured either at install time or through Context (right-click) menu e-mail settings. For notifications, the relevant fields are "from address", which designates the e-mail address of notification e-mail sent from the system, and the "outgoing e-mail server," which is the SMTP server used to send e-mail. It is important to ensure that the "from address" specified is one that will not be rejected by the SMTP server, since some SMTP servers will reject unknown e-mail addresses.

POP3 and IMAP can be used to check for e-mail acknowledgments. You can specify these options at install time, or through Context (right-click) menu e-mail option settings. For acknowledgements, the relevant fields are "incoming mail server," which is the POP/IMAP server to specify to check e-mail, "incoming mail protocol," which is either POP3 or IMAP, "account" and "password," which are the login name and password to access the mailbox from the incoming mail server. Note that replying to mails from the notification "from address" should reach the mailbox accessible to the "account" login.

SNPP is used to send pages. Sending notification pages requires that you configure the appropriate pager providers with host and port information using the Context (right-click) menu Pager Settings option.

Notification Groups are the point of interface between the rules engine that specifies the notification action and the notification engine that sends out the notification. Within each notification group, there can be any number of escalation levels. Each escalation level can contain multiple destinations.

The following groups can help you manage and organize groups and destinations.

**Table 25-1 Notification Groups and Destinations**

Destination Group	Purpose
Shared	Notification groups and destinations to which logged-in users have permission.
All Destinations	All groups and notification destinations (only Administrators have permissions to this group). Administrators who have inspect and edit permission on the All Destinations group also have permission to change notification settings.

## Testing Notification Escalations

Escalation procedures are tested by generating an internal Low Severity event. This event triggers the escalation within the group tested as though a real Low Severity event occurred. Notifications are immediately sent to all destinations within the 1st level (1). If 1st level destinations do not respond to the notifications within the set wait time for Low Severity events (default is 2 hours), the test notification escalates to the 2nd level (2), and so on.



## Notification Destinations

Notifications are sent to destinations. Notification destinations may optionally be associated with a user, and when that is done, destination information, such as e-mail address, phone, and pager number, is automatically populated from the user's profile. You can also change the user's destination information without changing the user's profile.

Each destination can be an e-mail, pager, or cell phone contact and have an associated start and end time, which is the time period during the day when the destination is expected to be active. Each destination can also be optionally associated with a user. Associating a destination with a user has these effects:

- When the destination receives a notification and the user is logged into an ArcSight Console, the user is notified through the notification status button on their display.
- Notifications sent to this destination can also be seen and acknowledged by the user in an ArcSight Web client.

Notification destinations can be managed with drag and drop functionality. You can move or copy notification destinations into escalation levels within the same or other notification groups from the Administration window. If a group is deleted, the destinations within that group are also deleted.



To copy multiple resources at once, use Copy and Paste. You can drag and drop only one resource at a time.

Note

## Notification Acknowledgements

Once you receive a notification, it is important that you acknowledge it within the allotted time window, to prevent automatic escalation to the next-level notification destination. Immediately acknowledging and resolving significant events is crucial to securing any enterprise. Use the Console's Notifications Manager, or an ArcSight Web client, to check status and help resolve issues. (See also [“Managing Received Notifications” on page 615](#).)

## Packages

A **Package** is an resource that contains a set of related resources. A package of resources can be installed or unloaded as a unit. ArcSight Solutions are delivered as packages, but you can create your own packages, as well.

A **Bundle** is a file (with extension .arb) that contains one or more packages. You can import and export bundles and install and uninstall the packages that the bundles contain. When you import a bundle, the source file is saved as a file resource (see [“Managing File Resources” on page 623](#)). You can view the original package contents (the package archive) or the current package contents at any time.

An **uninstalled package** is a package that has been imported or created, but not yet installed in the system resource tree (see [“Resources” on page 943](#)). Packages that have been installed can also be manually uninstalled. The default behavior is to install the package when it is imported.

When a package is deleted, the resources it contains can be left in the system resource tree or they can be deleted along with their package.

Packages can have dependencies on other packages or on features such as Pattern Discovery. Two ArcSight Solution packages may share a third package in common, for example.

See also [“Managing Packages” on page 644](#).

## Pattern Discovery

ArcSight's Pattern Discovery can detect subtle, specialized, or long-term patterns that might otherwise go undiscovered in the flow of events. This topic discusses pattern concepts. See [“Pattern Discovery” on page 131](#).

A pattern is a distinct, repeating network transaction (event) that is uniquely identified by its source and target IP addresses. Patterns are further qualified by the involvement of selected attributes such as event names or categories. There are, of course, many such patterns and most are normal or benign. The point is to establish and mask out normal traffic in order to let new or atypical traffic stand out. Separating “signal from noise” in this way makes possible very early (day zero) detection and very subtle (low and slow) detection. Once detected, such traffic can be analyzed or responded to.

Pattern Discovery uses a **profile** to specify potentially qualifying events on the basis of attributes and time spans. When you apply a profile, manually or on a schedule, it captures a **snapshot** of the events that did qualify, on the basis of raw associations. The contents of snapshots are then reviewed by an analyst to identify event **patterns** to explore in pattern views or the Pattern Inspector.

You define profiles in the Profile Editor in the Inspect/Edit panel. You manage your profiles, snapshots, and discovered patterns through the Profiles, Snapshots, and Patterns tabs of the Navigator panel's Patterns resource tree.

You use the Viewer panel to observe the graphical results of executed snapshots and the patterns those snapshots discover.

## Pattern Concepts

A pattern can be any recurring relationship between one or more pairs of source and target IP addresses, that you deem to be significant in relation to certain event attributes. You can regard the patterns you discover as benign or hostile, depending on your policies and postures.

Event-pattern profiles are also constrained by Start and End time limits, filters, and by minimum numbers of associated events (pattern length) and times discovered (occurrences, or pattern support).

Once captured in snapshots, you can examine the event data as raw association information in graphical snapshots, or as graphical patterns in the Patterns tab of the Patterns resource tree.

Each box in a pattern view represents one pattern. The line items in the box are the individual events that were discovered to have associations. Each event component of a pattern (box) relates to the chain of links from which the pattern was derived, in the visual snapshot.

A snapshot view is a graphic hierarchy of related event nodes. The “support” value for each node is the number of times that event occurred in conjunction with its related events. This

overall hierarchy is a raw presentation of the events, useful for analysts but not meaningful to operators.

The discovered events all share the attributes specified in the profile. The pattern-discovery process first tests for equality in the values found for the specified attributes. Secondly, it tests for a selected transaction scheme. When the specified minimum number of event relationships reoccur, a pattern exists.

## Discovering Patterns

Patterns are identified by first dividing the event stream into multiple transactions. For example, all of the events with a given source and target IP address may constitute a transaction - they represent all the traffic flowing from that source to that target. It may also be helpful to cluster transactions into super-transactions to identify patterns that involve cascading exploits toward multiple devices (that is, device A attacks device B which, in turn, attacks device C).

The events occurring in each transaction are then characterized using a subset of the event fields (for example, the event name or the event category).

Finally, events that frequently occur together in multiple transactions are identified and grouped together. These events are further sub-grouped by support level. For instance, events A and B may occur together 2,000 times while events C and D occur in the same transactions but only 10 times. Pattern Discovery would create two patterns in this case: one for A and B and a second one for C and D. To give another example, events F, G, and H may occur together in the same transactions 100 times while F and G occur without H in 5 additional transactions. All of these occurrences would be rolled together into the same pattern. F and G would have a support of 105 while H would have a support of 100.

## Pattern Analysis

Pattern analysis, overall, falls into two basic phases: initial collection, identification, and sorting, and on-going routine processing.

### Initial Phase

To accomplish phase one, you generally use broader profiles and more frequent snapshots in an attempt to capture examples of **all** the patterns that appear in your networks.

Once collected, there is a period of initial analysis in which you identify the patterns that are normal or benign. Making these evaluations requires in-depth knowledge and familiarity with the traffic in your enterprise, as well as using the analysis tools. There is no set procedure for this basic collecting and sorting process.

However, the best method for moving officially "uninteresting" patterns **out** of the analysis workflow is to use annotation. While it is possible to use filters for this purpose, it is more reliable to move patterns by annotation to a stage such as **Closed** because this assures that the pattern has actually been inspected and classified.

### Routine Pattern Processing

In an environment where the routine event patterns are mostly known and appropriately classified, you focus on the new and as-yet unclassified.

The basic approach to routine pattern analysis consists of two phases: managerial (or triage or workflow initiation), and analysis.

### Workflow Management

As Pattern Discovery turns up new or unclassified patterns, a designated user needs to review them and start them through the workflow.

Newly discovered patterns are handled by using the Annotations feature to assign them to a stage such as **Follow-up**, or simply **Closed**, and optionally to a particular user.

Specific procedures and decisions, of course, depend on the internal processes of your enterprise and the patterns encountered.

## Pattern Analysis

As an analyst dealing with day-to-day pattern discoveries, your basic process can be as follows.

Using the appropriate filters, view the patterns that are new and assigned to you in the Pattern Inspector.

Review these patterns in the Pattern Inspector and compare their transactions historically to those found in other snapshots, using the Snapshot menu.

Use the Show Related Events feature to gain more intelligence about the sources and targets that appear in the patterns.

Remember that events in a grid view are subject to all the ordering, graphing, filtering, reporting, and inspection tools available in the Viewer panel.

Visualize the source and target relationships using Show Event Graph.

## Pattern Disposition

Acting on reviewed patterns can include:

- Assigning a new stage or user

The pattern may need further analysis or some other handling, by another user, or can simply be closed. Use the **Annotate Pattern** command to make this disposition.

- Creating a rule

If a pattern represents activity that needs to be reported, monitored, evaluated, or otherwise acted upon automatically, use the Create Rule command to build a rule based on the pattern's items.



Remember to express an appropriate Time Frame value in the Aggregation tab of the Rules Editor. The scope of a rule's time frame is critical to its effectiveness.

---

- Deploying a rule

Once created, if a rule is of value to the enterprise, you should copy or move it to the Rules/Shared/All Rules/Real-time Rules group in the Navigator panel's Rules resource tree.

## Pattern Expertise

On a work-a-day basis, the following points will help you make the best use of Pattern Discovery.

### Workflow

Pattern Discovery analysis may also be scheduled. For example, once per hour the prior hour may be analyzed using three different profiles. The patterns discovered by each profile will be stored in a designated group in the Patterns resource tree.

Each pattern also has certain annotation features associated with it that will be familiar to users of trouble-ticket systems. Each pattern can be flagged as being at a given stage (for example, Queued, Acknowledged, Under Investigation, Under Observation, Normal Activity, etc.). Patterns may also be assigned to an user for further investigation.

Initially, many new patterns will be observed and will need to be characterized. Does the pattern represent a threat or is it a result of normal activity on the network? Should a rule be generated? Or is more observation of the pattern required in order to understand it?

Over time, only a few new patterns will be observed each day. These will be delivered in the Queued stage. In the simplest workflow, the operator must resolve these patterns or assign these patterns to others for resolution each day.

When patterns are observed again, you can set it up to either quietly mark the pattern as observed again or to bring the pattern to the attention of the operator.

## Visualization

Event graphs have a clustering ability that makes them very useful when illustrating the interactions represented by a pattern resource.

Suppose events F, G, and H occur together in the same transactions 100 times while F and G occur in 5 additional transactions. All these occurrences would be rolled together into the same pattern. The event graph would cluster the 100 sources where F, G, and H occur together. It would also cluster the sources where only F and G occurred.


To use a somewhat more concrete example, one cluster might represent a Nimda Worm's attempts to infect IIS installations. The second cluster might represent successful infections.

## Applications

Pattern Discovery can be used to characterize the traffic on newly protected networks (for example, new customers for MSSPs, new divisions for large corporations, etc.). It can also characterize traffic from new sensors.

Pattern Discovery is also a key element in the ongoing operation of an installation. Using periodic, scheduled analysis, operators can always be kept up to date as new event patterns appear. Frequently, these patterns will indicate new worm or exploit behavior.

## Payload

"Payload" refers to the **information carried in the body of an event** network packet, as distinct from the packet's "header" data. (See ["Events" on page 914](#).) While security event detection and analysis usually centers on header data, packet payload (  ) may also be significant for historical analysis purposes.

Typically, devices discard payloads after a certain period of time. As described in ["Showing Event Payloads" on page 173](#), you can retrieve, preserve, view, or discard payloads using the [ArcSight Console](#). Since event payloads are relatively large, they are not stored by default. Instead, you can request payloads from devices, for selected events, through the ArcSight Console. If the payload is still held on the device, the SmartConnector retrieves it and sends it to the Console. (See ["SmartConnectors" on page 961](#).)

Payloads are downloaded and stored only on demand. Whether an event has a payload to store is visible in event grids. Unless you specifically request to do so, only the event's

"payload ID" (information required to retrieve the payload from the event source) is stored. Payload retention periods are controlled by the configuration of each source device.

A payload that has already been downloaded and stored in the ArcSight Database can either be manually selected and deleted, or removed based upon the event-retention policy.

If the payload's format is not recognized by the ArcSight Database, its data will not be lost; instead it appears "unparsed" in the event. The event name attribute generally contains the complete data in this case.

## Prioritization Fields

[Events](#) include fields whose values help you evaluate each event's overall priority and importance, and determine which events you should investigate first. The prioritization field values take into account a number of factors including:

- Vulnerability of the Target Asset
- Active List Contents
- Open Ports on the Target Asset
- Asset Criticality

### Event Prioritization Fields

Data Field	Description
Model Confidence	Is the target asset modeled and if so, to what degree? This factor depicts the confidence we have in our model. This value depends heavily on whether target assets of interest are modeled in the system.  If the only data point for an asset is its ID, then it is likely that this is either an asset range, or an asset that was modeled manually. The fact that the target asset is in the system at all provides some degree of model confidence. Model confidence is higher, though, if the target asset has been scanned for open ports and vulnerabilities.
Asset Criticality	How important is the Asset? This factor encompasses the criticality of the attacked asset.
Relevance	Does it appear probable that the attack succeeded? This factor performs an open port correlation (check to see if the target port is open) and vulnerability correlation (check to see if one of the exploited vulnerabilities is exposed).
Severity	How serious is this attack? This factor encompasses the severity of the event (ArcSight Severity), the severity of the exploited vulnerability (how much it is exposed), any user-supplied filter weighting, and the presence of the Source IP Address in various compromised and hostile active lists.
Priority	Should this event be investigated right away or not? This value is calculated by a formula that considers the values of the previous four fields, as described in the next topic.

## Priority Calculations and Ratings

The priority formula, formerly referred to as the Threat Level Formula, is a series of five criteria that each event is evaluated against to determine its relative importance, or urgency, to your network. This topic describes the calculations used to determine an event's *priority rating* (["Priority Rating" on page 936](#)).

Priority evaluation is applied to all the events that the Manager receives from SmartConnectors. The event's priority lets security operations personnel know whether this is an event that warrants further notice. The priority value assigned to an event is essentially the severity the event was assigned by the original reporting SmartConnector, as modified by the weighting schemes model confidence, relevance, severity, and asset criticality. Each of these four criteria described in the table below contributes a numeric value to the priority formula.

Each of the four factors evaluates to a value in the range of 0 to 10, where 0 is low and 10 is high. The values have a specific positive or negative influence (weight) on the original SmartConnector severity value. See ["Prioritization Fields" on page 931](#) for definitions of these factors.

The priority formula consists of 4 factors that combine to generate an overall priority rating. Each of the criteria described in [Factors Contributing to Priority Evaluations](#) contributes a numeric value to the priority formula, which calculates the overall importance, or urgency, of an individual event.

All values fall in the range between 0 and 10. A high priority factor generally indicates an event with a higher risk factor. Not every high priority event is necessarily a threat, however. For example, if a critical e-mail server fails, the priority of the events reporting it may be very high, although it does not necessarily represent a threat to your network.

The following table describes the factors considered in the ESM priority evaluation. If you require help in changing the values, enter a case in the [HP Software Support Online](#) site. The maximum score for each factor is 10; if the value of qualifying conditions for that factor totals more than 10, the amount over 10 is not considered.



You can view an event's priority information by right-clicking the event on the grid and selecting **Debug Event Priority**. The window displays information on how the priority score was determined for the selected event. The values described in the following table come from actual values stored for the events. The debugging information, however, is real time without history.

If you set the severity through a rule action, the debug event priority shows this value; however, the debug information does not cover this particular rule action. This is because the values described in the information are based on actual values stored for the event. Event conditions defined in the rule are based on live evaluation of the current state of the system.

### Factors Contributing to Priority Evaluations

Priority factor	Description
Model Confidence	Model confidence refers to whether or not the target asset has been modeled in ESM and what information the modeling revealed. Maximum score = 10.



## Factors Contributing to Priority Evaluations (Continued)

Priority factor	Description
+4	Target asset is modeled in ESM and its asset ID is present. If these are the only data points present for the asset, this is likely an asset range or a system that was modeled manually.
+4	Target asset has been scanned for open ports.
+4	Target asset has been scanned for vulnerabilities.
Relevance	<p>Relevance of the event to the asset is based on whether the event contains ports or known vulnerabilities and whether they are exposed. If an asset does not expose the vulnerabilities or ports in the event, the event is not relevant to the asset. Maximum score = 10.</p> <p>+5</p> <p><b>Ports</b></p> <pre> graph TD     A{Event contains port?} -- No --&gt; B((+5))     A -- Yes --&gt; C{Asset scanned for open ports?}     C -- No --&gt; D((+5))     C -- Yes --&gt; E{Port open on asset?}     E -- No --&gt; F((0))     E -- Yes --&gt; G((+5))   </pre> <p>+5</p> <p><b>Vulnerabilities</b></p> <pre> graph TD     H{Is there a known vulnerability mapping on file at the Manager?} -- No --&gt; I((+5))     H -- Yes --&gt; J{Asset scanned for vulnerabilities?}     J -- No --&gt; K((+5))     J -- Yes --&gt; L{Vulnerability exposed by asset?}     L -- No --&gt; M((0))     L -- Yes --&gt; N((+5))   </pre>
Severity	<p>Severity is a history function: Has the system been attacked or compromised before, or has the attacker scanned or attacked the network in the past? Different scores are assigned based on the attacker and target's presence in one of ESM's threat tracking active lists (/All Active Lists/ArcSight System/Threat Tracking), whose contents are updated automatically by ESM rules. Maximum score = 10.</p> <p>+6</p> <p>The asset appears as an attacker in the active list /ArcSight System/Threat Tracking/Infiltrators List.</p> <p>+5</p> <p>The asset appears as an attacker in the active list /ArcSight System/Threat Tracking/Hostile List.</p>

**Factors Contributing to Priority Evaluations (Continued)**

Priority factor	Description
+3	The asset appears as a target in the active list /ArcSight System/Threat Tracking/Compromised List.
+3	The asset appears as an attacker in the active list /ArcSight System/Threat Tracking/Suspicious List.
+1	Asset appears as an attacker in the active list /ArcSight System/Threat Tracking/Reconnaissance List.
Asset Criticality	Asset criticality measures how important the target asset is, as set by you in the network modeling process by using the standard asset categories /System Asset Categories/Criticality/Very High, High, Medium, Low, and Very Low. For example, customer-facing systems or devices with access to confidential information would be classified with a High criticality level, whereas a staging or test system might be Low. Maximum score = 10.
+10	The asset is found by the filter /System Asset Categories/Criticality/Very High
+8	The asset is found by the filter /System Asset Categories/Criticality/High
+6	The asset is found by the filter /System Asset Categories/Criticality/Medium
+4	The asset is found by the filter /System Asset Categories/Criticality/Low
+2	The asset is found by the filter /System Asset Categories/Criticality/Very Low
+0	The asset is not categorized with any of the above categories.

You can use asset aging to reduce asset confidence level as the time since the last scan increases. For information on configuring that, refer to the ESM Administrator's Guide, Chapter 2, "Configuration," "Asset Aging."

The priority calculation formulas are made up of basic elements organized by operators called "Sum" and "Difference." These elements are based on simple condition expressions.

- ["Priority Elements" on page 934](#)
- ["Priority Operators" on page 935](#)

## Priority Elements

The basic formula elements each return a positive numeric value or zero. Individual element values can be configured by changing the Value attribute associated with the XML element for each condition.

Some of the elements are predicates that test a specific condition. If the condition for a specific element is satisfied, these elements return a positive value; otherwise, the element returns zero.

Predicate elements can also be negated using the **Negated** attribute. In that case, they return a specified value if the condition is not satisfied, and zero if the condition is satisfied.

#### Priority Elements

Prioritization Element	Description
HasOpenPort	Takes a non-zero value if the target asset has a particular port open.
HasVulnerability	Takes a non-zero value if the target asset is vulnerable to the attack captured by the alert under consideration.
HasVulnerabilityMapping	Takes a non-zero value if the signature of the context event has not been mapped to a vulnerability.
HasValue	Takes a non-zero value if the specified event attribute has a value.
InActiveList	Takes a non-zero value if the target address belongs to one of the active lists whose URI is provided in the formula.
Constant	Evaluates to a constant non-zero value. It does not rely on event-specific conditions or any other variable; it remains constant, as the name implies.

## Priority Operators

There are two aggregation operators used in the priority calculation formula, **Sum** and **Difference**. The **Sum** operator adds the values of all of the elements that it contains. The **Difference** operator subtracts the sum of all of the values of the subsequent elements from the value of the first element it contains.

Both operators have two attributes, **maxValue** and **weight**.

### MaxValue Attribute

MaxValue is used to clip the result after the operator aggregation is carried out. After aggregating, the result is also normalized, which is achieved by dividing the result with MaxValue. For example, if we have an element like

```
<SUM maxValue = 100>
```

and it has two child elements, each of which evaluate to 80, the pre-normalization value will still be 100 and not 160. After normalization, the final result for this example will be 1. Similarly, there is an implied lower limit or minimum value of zero on these elements.

### Weight Attribute

The Weight attribute is used to scale the result after operator aggregation and normalization are carried out. So, as in the example previously described, if the aggregating element was:

```
<SUM maxValue = 100 weight = 7>
```

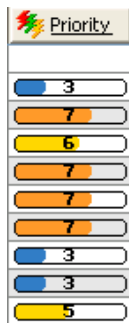
the result after normalization is 1, and after scaling, it becomes 7.

Each of the formulas have an implied maxValue of 10 since each of the four fields in the alert take values in the range 0-10 (inclusive).

## Priority Rating

The priority of an event is a calculated overall rating based on **agentSeverity** adjusted by Model Confidence, Relevance, Severity, and Criticality using a detailed formula. (See [“Priority Calculations and Ratings” on page 932](#).) All four factors are fields in the event schema, and can thus be used in correlation.





The priority rating is color coded and displayed in [Active Channels](#). You can sort events in the grid view according to priority. Priority is a good basis for deciding what to look at first in your event monitoring workflow, and priority is one of many useful criteria on which to build filters, rules, reports, and data monitors.




Priority Ratings in Active Channels: The Priority column in the default live channel view shows the overall priority rating for each event based on calculations from the other five priority criteria.

The score and color scale used in the priority display are as follows:

### Priority Rating Color Indicators

Priority	Color	Description
0-2	Green 	<b>Very low.</b> This event is likely a routine function, such as routine file access or a successful authentication by an authorized user. An event that may have started out with a higher priority can become very low priority when it is proved to have failed.
3-4	Blue 	<b>Low.</b> This event is likely a common function, such as a setting change or a scheduled system scan.
5-6	Yellow 	<b>Medium.</b> This event is a potential concern, such as pre-attack scan activity, policy violations, and identified vulnerabilities. Medium priority events are often hostile attempts whose success or failure is not confirmed.
7-8	Orange 	<b>High.</b> This event is a concern, such as attack formations, potential breaches, or misuse, including traffic to a dark address space, incorrect registry values, or a SYNflood.

### Priority Rating Color Indicators (Continued)

Priority	Color	Description
9-10	Red 	<b>Very high.</b> This event is a grave concern, such as verified breaches or a DHCP packet that does not contain enough data. Items with a very high priority should be investigated immediately.

## Queries

A query is a resource that defines the parameters of the data you want to report on derived from a data source. Queries are used in [Reports](#) either directly or as the basis for [Trends](#) reporting.

Queries can use as a data source the ArcSight Database of events, cases, notifications, modeled network objects (assets), trend data, active list, or session list. Reports then bind data results from queries and/or trends into a display format based on a report template.

See [“Building Reports” on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools, including how to build queries or trends and how to use a provided or custom [Templates](#).

## Queries and Trends

You can use the result of a query as the basis for one or more reports or trends. For a detailed description of how queries and trends can be used together, see [“Query-Trend Relationships in Reporting” on page 318](#).

## Building and Running Queries

You can access queries and associated editors in the Reports resource in the ArcSight Console.

See [“Building a Query” on page 300](#) for information on how to navigate to and use the Query Editor to define query settings (as described in [“Defining Query Settings” on page 301](#)).

## Query Viewers

*Query Viewers* are a type of resource for defining and running SQL queries on other resources, including trends, assets, cases, connectors, events, and so forth. Each query viewer contains an SQL query along with other logic for establishing and comparing baseline results, analyzing historical data to find patterns in network activity, and performing drill-down investigation on a particular aspect of the results.

You can use query viewers to run the same queries used for reports, and get results quickly. Then, if desired, you can generate a simple report directly from the query viewer results. Full-featured reporting (with queries, trends, and templates) is still offered for more robust reporting requirements (see [“Building Reports” on page 275](#)), but query viewers provide a shortcut to running those same SQL queries apart from reporting.

Query viewers provide high-level summaries to monitor system health, reveal trends, and allow for drill-down investigation of all types of resources. Query viewers can work with trend tables rather than event tables, and so can return results much faster than [Active Channels](#).

See [“Query Viewers” on page 227](#) for information about using and building query viewers.

## Reference Pages

Certain [Resources](#) among those you find in the trees of the [Navigator Panel](#), or events you see in the Viewer Panel ([“Views” on page 1007](#)), have pointers to additional reference information. To check for this information, you right-click an individual event, resource, or resource group and choose **Reference Pages**.

If there are pointers available, you see the Reference Pages dialog box. Select one or more items and click **View** to open them in Viewer tabs. If no content is available, click **OK** in the “none found” dialog box.

Some reference page pointers are pre-populated. You can edit these, or add new references, through the **Group Editor** (as described in [“Editing Resource Groups” on page 45](#)). In the Group Editor, use the Group Page text field to specify URLs to reference pages for the group as a whole. Use the **Group Children's Page** field to specify URLs to reference pages for the individual items within the group. Member URLs can be in the form of templates that use the names of [Data Fields](#) to query for particular files.

Note also that all the content formerly available through the feature called “Vendor Pages” continues to be available from Reference Pages.

## Regex (Regular Expressions)

The use of regex is supported for adding filter conditions in the Console. ESM uses the regular expression library (`Pattern` class) of Java 6. The `Pattern` engine in Java performs traditional NFA-based matching with ordered alternation as in Perl 5. This topic is provided to users who are familiar with regex in Java and Perl, and explains the differences and similarities in constructs between them. The information contained in this topic is taken from the Java documentation in

<http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/api/java/util/regex/Pattern.html>

Refer to the above URL for the complete information about the `Pattern` class.

## Perl Constructs not Supported in Java

The `Pattern` class does not support the following Perl constructs:

- The conditional constructs `(?{X})` and `(?(condition)X|Y)`
- The embedded code constructs `(?{code})` and `(??{code})`
- The embedded comment syntax `(?#comment)`
- The preprocessing operations `\l`, `\u`, `\L`, and `\U`

## Java Constructs not Supported in Perl

The `Pattern` class supports the following constructs which Perl does not:

- Possessive quantifiers, which greedily match as much as they can and do not back off, and even when doing so, would allow the overall match to succeed
- Character-class union and intersection as described in [Character Matches](#)

## Notable Differences from Perl

If you are used to using regex in Perl, you should pay attention to the difference in the way Java's `Pattern` class handles certain expressions.

- In Perl, `\1` through `\9` are always interpreted as back references. A backslash-escaped number greater than 9 is treated as a back reference if at least that many subexpressions exist; otherwise it is interpreted, if possible, as an octal escape. In the `Pattern` class, octal escapes must always begin with a zero. In this class, `\1` through `\9` are always interpreted as back references, and a larger number is accepted as a back reference if at least that many subexpressions exist at that point in the regular expression; otherwise the parser will drop digits until the number is smaller or equal to the existing number of groups, or it is one digit.
- Perl uses the `g` flag to request a match that resumes where the last match left off. This functionality is provided implicitly by Java's `Matcher` class: repeated invocations of the `find` method will resume where the last match left off, unless the matcher is reset.
- In Perl, embedded flags at the top level of an expression affect the whole expression. In the `Pattern` class, embedded flags always take effect at the point at which they appear, whether they are at the top level or within a group; in the latter case, flags are restored at the end of the group just as in Perl.
- Perl is forgiving about malformed matching constructs, as in the expression `*a`, as well as dangling brackets, as in the expression `abc]`, and treats them as literals. The `Pattern` class also accepts dangling brackets but is strict about dangling metacharacters like `+`, `?`, and `*`, and will throw a `PatternSyntaxException` if these metacharacters are encountered.

## Character Matches

This topic applies to regex in Java. The following table lists regular-expression constructs and the matches for character classes.

**Table 25-1 Summary of Regular-Expression Constructs for Character Classes**

Construct	Matches
<code>[abc]</code>	a, b, or c (simple class)
<code>[^abc]</code>	Any character except a, b, or c (negation)
<code>[a-zA-Z]</code>	a through z or A through Z, inclusive (range)
<code>[a-d[m-p]]</code>	a through d, or m through p: <code>[a-dm-p]</code> (union)
<code>[a-z&amp;&amp;[def]]</code>	d, e, or f (intersection)
<code>[a-z&amp;&amp;[^bc]]</code>	a through z, except for b and c: <code>[ad-z]</code> (subtraction)
<code>[a-z&amp;&amp;[^m-p]]</code>	a through z, and not m through p: <code>[a-lq-z]</code> (subtraction)

Character classes may appear within other character classes, and may be composed by the union operator (implicit) and the intersection operator (`&&`). The union operator denotes a class that contains every character that is in at least one of its operand classes. The intersection operator denotes a class that contains every character that is in both of its operand classes.

The precedence of character-class operators is as follows, from highest to lowest:

- 1 Literal escape `\x`

- 2 Grouping [...]
  - 3 Range a-z
  - 4 Union [a-e] [i-u]
  - 5 Intersection [a-z&&[aeiou]]

Note that a different set of metacharacters are, in effect, inside a character class than outside a character class. For instance, the regular expression . (a dot) loses its special meaning inside a character class, while the expression - (a dash) becomes a range-forming metacharacter.

## Reports

Reports are a resource that provide captured views or analyses of information that can be viewed in the [ArcSight Console](#) in PDF, HTML, Excel, Comma Separated Value (csv), or Rich Text Format (rtf). You can also view previously generated and archived reports in an [ArcSight Web](#) client.

You can create reports on all events, cases, notifications, and assets that are in storage.

Reports gather data based on [Queries](#) and [Trends](#), and use report [Templates](#) to determine display and file formats.

For an overview of reporting, including information on queries, trends, and templates, see [Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275](#).

## Working with Report Templates, Queries, and Trends

Reports show results of pre-defined queries and trends using custom-designed or provided templates. Once you have source data defined in queries and/or trends, you can design reports to present the data in charts and tables.

The Reports resource includes the following tabs and editors for the following elements that make up reporting:

- Templates ([“Using Report Templates” on page 279](#))
- Queries ([“Defining Query Settings” on page 301](#))
- Reports ([“Defining Report Settings” on page 336](#))
- Archives ([“Archiving and Scheduling Reports” on page 388](#))
- Trends ([“Defining Trend Settings” on page 320](#))

A Report Wizard is provided for creating reports quickly. (See [“End-to-End Reporting Examples” on page 364](#) for an example of using the report wizard.) From within the wizard you can choose a data source (one from among available [Queries](#), [Trends](#), [Active Lists](#), or [Session Lists](#)) and one of the available [Templates](#) to use for the report.

## Viewing and Managing Reports

You have the flexibility to broaden or narrow the data extracted from the ArcSight Database using report parameters and conditional logic statements. You can also create delta reports to show the difference between two sets of parameters. With this flexibility, you can create custom reports that are tailored to meet your reporting needs. Also, there are display groupings of "Report Definitions," where you define what report you want to generate, and "Report Output," where the actual reports are generated and stored.



## Archived Reports

Once a report is created, it can be saved (archived). Archived reports are retrieved for immediate viewing, without requiring you to regenerate the report. In addition, you can schedule a report for automatic archiving, on a yearly, monthly, weekly, daily, or hourly basis. All reports are displayed at the ArcSight Console in the Report Viewer. You can also run, archive, and delete reports through ArcSight Web clients.

## Report Groups

Reports can be created and edited in the <user ID>'s Reports group or the Public Reports group on the Report Definitions tab. Reports can be deleted based on your permissions. Reports created in the <user ID>'s Reports group is available only to that user and those to whom the user gives inspect or edit permission. Reports created in the Public Reports group are available for all users to create, edit, or delete. Reports can then be run from the Reports resource tree and the Viewer panel. For more information, see ["Running Reports" on page 379](#).

You can manage reports in the Reports window of the ArcSight Console. The Reports resource tree has two tabs: Report Definitions where reports are managed and Report Output where archived reports are stored for viewing. The Report Definitions tab lists and organizes all reports in one of the following groups.

Report Groups	Description
<user_ID>'s Reports	Reports the user has created.
Shared Reports	Reports that other users have already shared with the logged-in user.
ArcSight Reports	Reports provided as defaults, which you can use as-is or to create custom reports.
Public Reports	Reports to which all users have read permission.

If you have Administrator access you will have another group named All Reports that contains all user report groups and their reports.

The Reports Output tab lists all archived reports. Archived reports are listed as a file on the Report Output tab for quick access and retrieval. When you archive a report from the Report Definitions tab, that report is sent to the Report Output tab. If other users archive a report and share it, the report is listed in the Shared group on the Report Output tab.

## Delta Reports

A delta report is one that shows the difference between two sets of parameters used in a single report. The report also shows the data for each of the parameters.

When you run or archive a delta report, an internal event is sent to the Manager. This event contains the following data fields and values.

Delta Report Field	Description
Event Name	Delta Report Generated (Report: <ReportName>), where <ReportName> is the name of the report.

Rules can be created using the delta report data fields.

## Report Parameters

For date parameters, type in the text fields, click the drop-down arrows or click the time buttons to select a time range.

For date and time data fields, you can also type an actual date value, such as 10/12/2011 8:54:00 AM, or you can use special system variables such as:

- `$CurrentDateTime`: for the date and time the report is run, the system variable is replaced by the current date and time value when the report is run.
- `$CurrentDate`: for the date the report is run, the system variable is replaced with the date value, truncating the time of the day to 0, when the report is scheduled or run.

You can also specify certain date operations with these system variables to add or subtract a number of specified days or hours. For example, you could type: `$CurrentDate - 7d` for seven days before the date the report is run, the condition evaluates to a date which is the current date minus seven days, or `$CurrentDateTime - 12h`, which evaluates to the current date time minus 12 hours.

Select a **Report File Format** from the drop-down menu.

Reports can be archived in PDF, HTML, Excel, Comma Separated Value (csv), or Rich Text Format (rtf). The default PDF format should be used when archiving reports. Compared to PDF reports, other reports may lose formatting information and will appear differently. In addition, Excel format is more memory intensive than PDF.

## Running Reports

For information on how to run a new or archived report, see ["Running Reports" on page 379](#).

## ArcSight-Provided Reports

There are more than 200 reports listed in the ArcSight Reports group which you can use to immediately generate reports or use as templates to create or customize your own reports.

The ArcSight Reports group contains all reports further subcategorized in one of these report subgroups.

### ArcSight Reports

Report Group	Description
By Attribute	Provides various reports providing details based on connector type, severity, device, event name, source, target, and target port.
By Event Direction	Provides reports based on inbound or outbound attack and alert direction.
By Event Volume	Provides reports based on most frequent and least frequently occurring events.
By Sensor	Provides report by type of sensor or connector, for example, firewall, router, intrusion detection, etc.
By System Object	Provides reports by type of object, for example, active lists, assets, cases, and notification.

**ArcSight Reports (Continued)**

Report Group	Description
Custom Reports	Provides varied example reports demonstrating moving averages and vulnerability.
Example Canned Reports	Provides reports showing various types of asset reports and different report layout designs.
Internal Reports	Provides various reports providing information on system usage, performance, rule operation, and resources.

You can run each of the reports to see the type of detail and information each provides. In addition, you can view the notes, settings, and conditions set on each tab to see how each report is constructed. To use a report as a template for creating or customizing your own reports, copy an existing report to a new report group (using drag and drop to copy an existing report to the new report group). You can then rename the new report and start making changes to the new report.

## Report Templates

Report templates are a component of Reporting resource tools.

To provide more flexibility in reporting, the report template tools include a rich offering of ready-made templates and a template design wizard for more customized [Reports](#). Template definitions determine how data from [Queries](#) and [Trends](#) is displayed in a report. You can create and adjust templates to specify which data is displayed, what visual elements are used (variations on tables, charts, graphs, and so on), the layout of those elements, the report output file format, and much more. A template consists of report design elements, such as headers, footers, title bars, charts, and tables, arranged on a page according to a layout specification.

Templates can accommodate input from multiple queries and show multiple visual elements, such as three charts and a table each pulling from a different data source, in a single report.

For more information on templates, see [“Using Report Templates” on page 279](#).

See [“Building Reports” on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools.

## Resources

The Manager handles the logic used to process events as objects called **resources**. Active channels, data monitors, filters, cases, assets, queries, trends reports, rules, and packages are all examples of resources.

A resource defines the properties, values, and relationships used to configure the functions the Manager performs. Resources can also be the output of such a configuration (such as archived reports, or Pattern Discovery snapshots and patterns).

The Manager has over 30 different types of resources and comes with hundreds of these resources already configured to give you functionality as soon as the product is installed. These resources are presented in the Navigator panel of the ArcSight Console and ArcSight Web interfaces.

This topic provides an overview on working with resources in the Console. Resources in general are discussed in more detail in the topic “Resources” in ESM 101.

## Valid and Invalid Resources

Valid resources show up in the Navigator with their associated icons as described in [“Navigating” on page 41](#). A resource can “break” or become “invalid” either because it is constructed improperly (for example, when an active list schema does not match the underlying table) or because another resource it depends on is missing from the database (for example, when a rule references an unavailable filter). The latter can happen when a resource used in other resources is deleted from the Manager, or not retained during an upgrade, import, or export.

Invalid resources show up in the Navigator as broken or torn.

For example, the Navigator displays a valid filter like this: , and an invalid filter like this:





A valid resource is fully available to other resources that reference it, and can participate in the [Events](#) flow, [Trends](#), [Reports](#), [Data Monitors](#), [Active Channels](#), [Filters](#), [Rules](#), and so forth.

An invalid resource cannot participate in the event flow or other resources in real time. For example, invalid [Assets](#) cannot participate in event asset resolution. Correlated events in which the source or target address points to the invalid asset are not generated. Similarly, an invalid rule does not trigger and generate correlation events.

## Fixing and Validating Resources

When a resource become becomes invalid, its Editor includes a **Validate** button that you can use to test and validate the resource after you fix it. Clicking the **Validate** button on a resource that was previously broken results in a check of the resource logic and dependencies. If the system determines the resource is now valid, the resource icon in the Navigator is updated to reflect a working resource. If the system determines the resource is still broken, it displays an error message describing the problem.

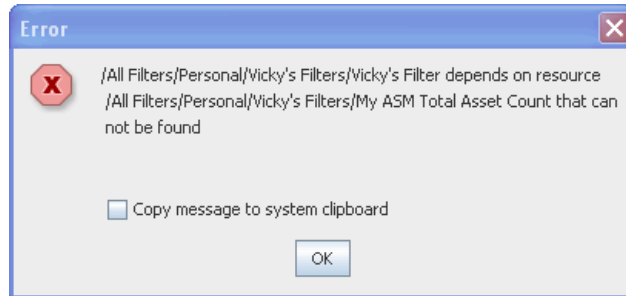
The general flow of steps to fix and validate a resource are:

- 1 Identify an invalid resource. Sometimes problems with filters (see [Filters](#)) or [Rules](#) (which are used in many other resources) are a result of broken resources. (A valid resource looks like this: , and an invalid resource looks like this: )

For example, if “My Top Threats” filter depends on “My Hotlist” filter, removing “My Hotlist” filter breaks “MY Top Threats” filter.

A scheduled job (like a scheduled rule group or archived report) can also break if one of the resources it depends on is missing. The broken icon for a scheduled job shows up on the Current Jobs list. (See [“Scheduling Jobs” on page 954](#).)

- 2 If you do not already know why a resource is broken, open its editor (double-click the resource in the Navigator panel) and click the **Validate** button in the resource editor. This will give you an error message that describes the problem. The error dialog includes a Copy button for copying longer messages to an external editor.



- 3 Fix the problems with the resource. This may involve adding back in missing resources or rebuilding the resource to fit various other requirements as described in ["Troubleshooting \(Requirements for Valid Resources\)" on page 946](#) below.

To continue with our example, adding back in the filter "My Hotlist" would fix the problem we mentioned in [Step 1](#).

- 4 In the resource editor, click **Apply** to save changes to the resources you modified.



For problems that can be validated on the local client, you can click **Validate** before clicking **Apply**. If the resource is fixed, its "working" icon is immediately reflected in the Navigator. For other types of problems, however, you need to **Apply** the changes to the resource before you **Validate** the resource. This is because some types of changes must be processed on the Manager to determine dependencies and relationships to other data not available on the local client.

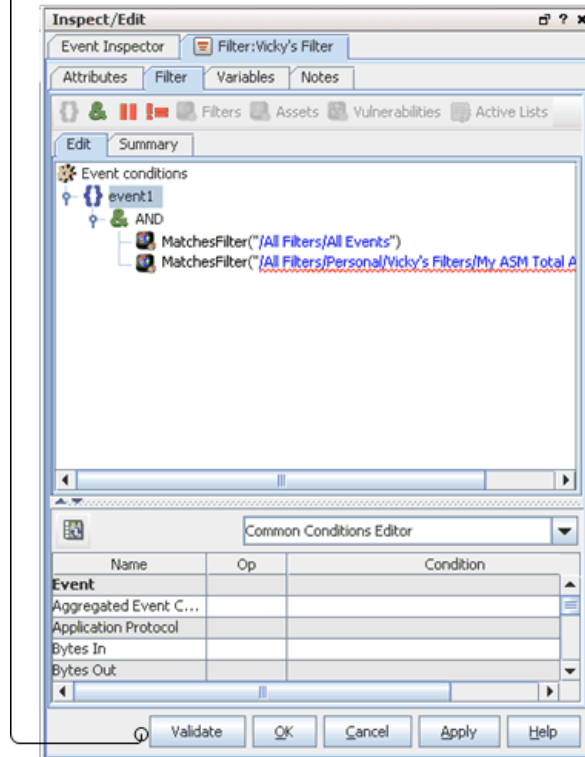
If you think you have fixed a resource but it is still not showing as fixed in the Navigator, make sure you **Apply** all the changes you made to it and then click **Validate** again.

---

- 5 In the resource editor for the resource that was broken, click **Validate**. If the resource passes validation, its icon in the Navigator updates to reflect a working resource.

In the resource Editor for the resource that was broken, click the **Validate** button. If the resource passes validation, its icon in the Navigator updates to reflect a working resource. Otherwise, the broken icon remains and an error message describes the problems.

Some problems require saving fixes to the Manager, so be sure to click **Apply** and save changes to resources you fix before you click **Validate**.



To validate a scheduled job, click the **Open scheduled jobs list** tool button (🕒) to display scheduled jobs in the Viewer, right-click the job you want to validate, and choose **Validate** from the context menu. If the job passes validation, its icon in the Current Jobs list updates to reflect a valid task.

## Troubleshooting (Requirements for Valid Resources)

The most common cause of an invalid resource is a dependency issue; another resource that the broken resource depends on is missing from the database. Some resources have additional requirements or limits that can also affect validity. Following is a summary of requirements for creating valid resources.

If any of these requirements are not met, the resource will break. To fix the resource, edit its definition to be in line with these requirements.

- **All Resources** - If the definition for a resource references another resource, the referenced resource must be available in the Manager database. This requirement is true for all types of resources.
- **Devices and Assets** - Each asset address must be unique within a zone, an asset can belong to one zone only, and the asset IP address must fall within the address range of its network zone.

- **Device and Asset Ranges** - Start addresses must be less than end addresses, asset ranges must be within the address range of the associated network zone, and asset ranges should not overlap another asset range in the same zone.
- **Zones** - Start addresses must be less than end addresses and network zones should not overlap other zones in the same network.
- **Reports** - Report templates cannot contain more than 20 charts or more than 15 tables.
- **Active Lists** - Active List schema must match the underlying table and must not include programming errors.

For more information, see the Administrator's Guide topic on "Resource Validation".

## Automatic and Manual Validation

You can validate individual resource manually through the Console with the **Validate** button as described above.

Resource validation takes place automatically during an upgrade, [Packages](#) import or export, or when you insert or update a resource. Administrators can use a stand-alone, command-line utility on the Manager machine for validating resources and generating validation reports on an off-line Manager. This is often useful after an upgrade.

For more information, see the Administrator's Guide topic on *Resource Validation*.

## Resource Attributes

The processed [Resources](#) are composed of several attributes, each of which is a data field with its own characteristics. The data fields common to all resources are described below.

Each attribute has both a **Label** that you see in the ArcSight Console and a unique **Script Alias** you use to refer to the attribute in filters, rules, or Velocity templates. The **Data Type** lets you know how to handle the attribute. (Also, see "[Resources](#)" on page 943 for information on locked and unlocked resources, and "[Common Resource Attribute Fields](#)" on page 642 for information on viewing and/or editing these fields in resource editors.)

### Resource Attributes

Group	Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Description
<i>Resource Type</i>	Name	name	String	Top-level categorization of the resource as shown on the Navigator panel, for example, Active Channel, Asset, Rule, and so on.
<b>Common</b>	Resource ID			Read-only field that shows the system resource ID.

## Resource Attributes (Continued)

Group	Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Description
	External ID	externalId	String	An identification string suitable for, and which can be referenced by external systems. Common applications of External IDs include appropriate naming for Case and Asset resources that are tracked in common with defect reporting or vulnerability-management systems. Your administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable. For Vulnerability resources, this field will be filled in with an ID of the format <standards body> <id>, such as CVE   CVE-1999-200.
	Alias	alias	String	An identification string suitable for referencing resources. A given alias will appear in place of the resource's name everywhere it may be seen. Your administrator can advise you on the correct values for this field, if applicable.
	Description	description	String	An editable text description of the resource or other related information. This text appears as a tooltip to any user who has ArcSight Console access to the resource.
	Version ID			A string showing a globally unique version ID for the resource.
	Deprecated			Indicates whether a resource is current or obsolete. If this field is blank, the resource is current. If this field is check marked, the resource is "deprecated" or obsolete. Click the box to toggle the checkmark on or off.
<b>Assign</b>	Owner	owner	String	One or more users who are interested in this resource.
	Notification Groups	notificationGroups	String	The ArcSight user groups selected from the Users resource tree who should be notified about this resource.
<b>Parent Group</b>	groupName Link		Resource Group	Each resource group containing this resource. A resource exists in more than one group when you choose Link instead of Copy or Move.



**Resource Attributes (Continued)**

Group	Label	Script Alias	Data Type	Description
<b>Creation Information</b>	Created By	userName	User	The identity of the user who created this resource.
	Creation Time	creationTime	DateTime	The time that the resource was created.
	Time Since Creation	timeSinceCreation	String	The elapsed time, in days, hours, minutes, and seconds since this resource was created.
<b>Last Update Information</b>	Last Updated By	lastUpdatedBy	User	The identity of the user who last updated this resource.
	Last Update Time	lastUpdateTime	DateTime	The time that the resource was last updated.
	Time Since Last Update	timeSinceLastUpdate	String	The elapsed time, in days, hours, minutes, and seconds since this resource was last updated.

## Rule Actions

Rule actions are automatic procedures that occur when all rule [Conditions](#) and threshold settings have been met. (See also [“Rules” on page 951](#).) You can choose to be notified of a triggered rule at the [ArcSight Console](#) or through the Notifier (see [“Notifications” on page 923](#)), have information about the [Events](#) that triggered the rule sent to a case or active list (see [“Cases” on page 807](#) or [“Active Lists” on page 753](#)), or automatically execute a command line function. You can also assign more than one rule action to any rule.

The task steps for these activities are available in [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#).

## Active List Rule Actions

The Active List rule action automatically organizes rule-associated IP addresses in active lists. Once a rule is triggered, the Active List rule action adds IP addresses from events that have triggered the rule to an active list. The Active List rule action can also move or remove IP addresses from active lists. Rules can also be created on active lists.

When the rule is triggered, the rule action takes all associated addresses (source or target) and adds those addresses to an active list. For example, if a rule is triggered with an action that has Source Address and Suspicious List selected, all source addresses are sent to the Suspicious List in the Active Lists resource tree.

## Execute Connector Command Rule Actions

Rule actions can automate the process of sending commands to SmartConnectors and through them to the devices they support. While all SmartConnectors can respond to the basic commands (for example, start, stop, pause, continue, and terminate) some that represent more complex devices can respond to more complex commands. For example, rule actions can tell the Check Point Firewall SmartConnector to tell its device to block a

particular IP address. See [“Creating Rule Actions” on page 417](#) for a description of the actual steps involved.

It may be helpful to note that this feature is in effect an automated solution for using the capabilities described in [“Sending Control Commands to SmartConnectors” on page 678](#).

The specific SmartConnectors that support this capability, and the additional commands they can process, are subject to change. Consult your administrator or representative for more information.

## Rule Conditions

A rule is a programmed procedure that can analyze network [Events](#) and generate additional correlation events, as determined by security policy. (See also [“Rules” on page 951](#).) When creating rules, you define the rule events and [Conditions](#), thresholds, and [Rule Actions](#). Conditions define which events trigger the rule, thresholds set when a correlation event is generated, and actions state which responses are taken when a correlation event is generated. To define rule events and conditions, thresholds, and actions, begin by determining the following:

- Which event occurrences do I want to be aware of? This determines the rule's **events** and **conditions**.
- How many times do I want the event or events to occur and within what time frame? This determines the rule's **threshold**.
- What actions should automatically occur when an event is generated? When should those actions occur? This determines the rule's **actions**.

A rule requires at least one event and one condition. When you create or edit a rule, the ArcSight Console provides a Conditions tab in which you can specify events and define the conditions for a rule. (The Conditions tab is described in the topic on the [“Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)” on page 818](#).)

Rules are first constructed by creating condition statements. Condition statements contain a data field, logic operator, and data field value; so you can create complex logical expressions by combining one or more individual conditions to match the events you want to trigger a rule.

When you first create a new rule, a default event named `event1` appears as a branch under the Event conditions tree for the new rule. (The event name is also commonly referred to as the event alias.) You can use this name or select a different event to use in the condition. Since rules can have numerous events, event names should be unique and descriptive within the same rule. For example, if monitoring Cisco Router denied events, `Cisco Router denied` could be the event name. The event name appears as a branch under the Event conditions tree.

When defining the condition for an event, the Conditions tab provides three columns, Name, Operator, and Condition. These three columns are combined to create `<data field> <logic operator> <data field value>` condition statements. For example, if monitoring a Cisco Router, the condition statement could be `Device Product = Cisco Router: Device Product` as the data field, `=` as the logic operator, and `Cisco Router` as the data field value.

When adding conditions, you need to decide how to tie the new condition to any existing conditions. To add more condition statements to an event, you can use logical operators

AND, OR, or NOT to specify how to evaluate the condition statement that contains more than one individual condition.

Besides specifying events in a condition, you can also add filters, assets, and vulnerabilities to rules as new conditions. A filter condition monitors if an event occurs in a particular filter. If an event does occur in that filter, a correlation event is generated (see [“Specifying Rule Conditions” on page 403](#)). Asset conditions state whether your enterprise assets are targets or sources of events. An asset condition states if an event occurs and the selected asset is the source or target, generate a correlation event. Finally, you can also use an existing enterprise vulnerability to create a rule condition. A vulnerability condition states if an event occurs with the vulnerability selected, generate a correlation event. For more information on vulnerabilities, see [“About the Network Model” on page 695](#).

In some cases, however, you may want to specify more complex rule processing to restrict the events that actually cause a rule to fire. There are two additional elements you can include to specify more complex rule conditions: rule thresholds and aggregation. (See [“Specifying Rule Thresholds and Aggregation” on page 414](#).)

## Rules

An ESM rule is a programmed procedure that attempts to correlate incoming network [Events](#) and generates new events that report on correlation when it occurs, as determined by security policy. Rules also apply [Conditions](#) and perform [Rule Actions](#).

Canned rules can be viewed, edited, and used as templates to create your own enterprise-specific or custom rules. To see what's available, browse the description provided with each rule in the ArcSight Console.

Different users can simultaneously create rules from their ArcSight Consoles. Once created, all rules are sent to the [Manager](#), which updates any other individual Consoles. Updates to [Resources](#), including rules, are automatically refreshed every few seconds so that clients get the latest changes from other clients.

Information on creating, deploying, and managing rules is provided in Rule Authoring.

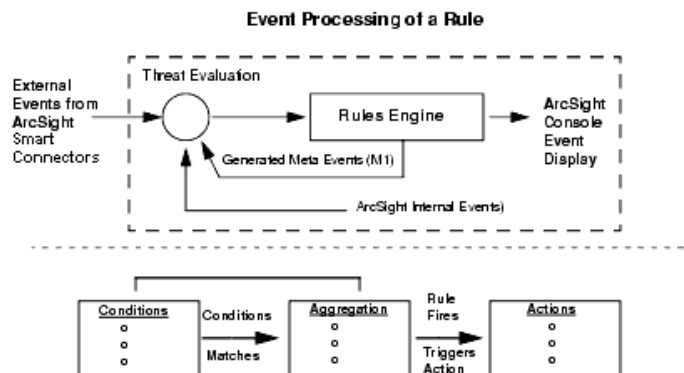
## Rules Processing and Correlation

A rule has three parts: a condition, threshold and time window aggregation, and an action. The condition states if `exists` and `satisfies` expressions and the action states `do` expressions. A rule states if [one or more conditions] exist and satisfy the rule, then `do` [action expressions]. A rule can have one or more rule conditions. If there is one condition, the rule acts as a filtering tool. If there is more than one condition, the rule acts as a correlation tool. A rule can be created for any incoming event from one or more event generators, with various conditions, logic statements, and threshold and time window qualification of events.



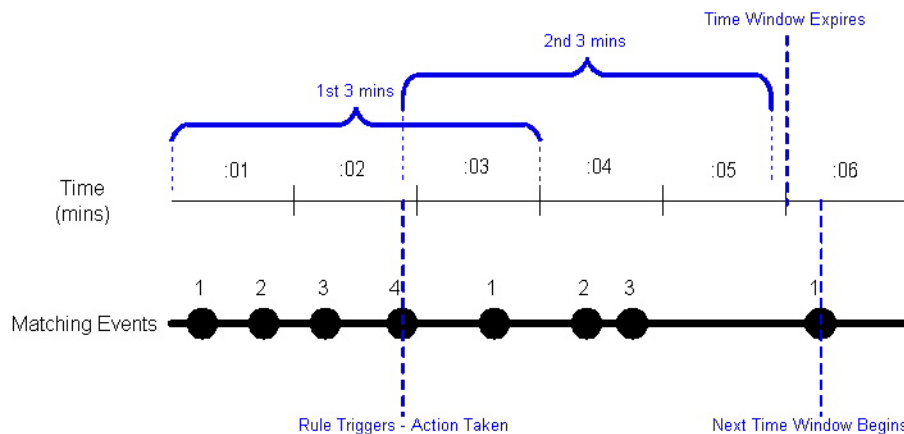
The Correlation Engine, a sub-component of the Manager that handles rules, is not the same as a database query engine. For example, the Correlation Engine can perform a complex join across several events in real-time and aggregate the response to these

events. In order for the Correlation Engine to do this in an efficient manner, it keeps a list of events that match each condition. These are referred to as **partial matches** because they satisfy part, but not all, of the rule's conditions. As new partial matches occur, the Correlation Engine attempts to pair them with previous partial matches in order to construct a full match. At that point the Correlation Engine may aggregate that match with others while it waits to pass some threshold (which can be either time or a target number of full matches). If the threshold is passed the Correlation Engine generates a derived event and performs the other actions associated with the rule.



It is important to note that all rules containing a specified threshold and a time window expiration follow a certain process in order to generate a derived event and perform an action. If a rule's threshold is passed, but the time window expiration has not been met, then the Correlation Engine compensates for this by generating a derived event, performing an action, and moving (or sliding) the time window until it expires. If this rule process was not in place, under certain conditions, rules would trigger on nearly every event in a short amount of time and which would cause a large amount of useless events to be displayed or actions taken.

For example, assume that you created a rule with an event threshold of 4 and a time expiration window of 3 minutes that sends a notification every time the threshold is met. This rule's process would look like the following:



In this example, the 4th incoming event occurred before the time window expired, so the rule triggered at the 4th event and the time window shifted adding another 3 minutes. Within the 2nd 3-minute interval, the rule restarted its incoming event count; however a

4th event did not occur so the rule did not fire. Note that the time window did not expire until the 5th minute had passed. If a 4th event had occurred before that time then the shifting process would have begun again. If you were to show the rule chain for this example, it would display the information for incoming events 1-4 that occurred within the first 3 minutes. Time windows expiration triggers fire at the minute boundary unless the next time window starts before the minute boundary.

The Rules resource tree in the Navigator panel offers a default collection of rules that you can use directly or as a template for creating your own custom rules.

For example, there are rules predefined to detect and perform actions based on system rules processing and SmartConnector status. Other rule groups detect and respond to attacks and suspicious activity, specific types of attacks on various sensor types, network components, or assets, and report attack results or successes.

## Rule Groups

Rules are organized into groups to store similar rules in one location. The Rules tree in the Navigator panel organizes rules into the following groups.

Rule Groups	Description
<userID>'s Rules	The user's home directory, where they have read/write permissions to author rules.
Shared Rules	Rules that establish the permissions for the current user.
Real-time Rules	Rules that are run against real-time events.
Public Rules	The rules that any user can read.
System Rules	The global rules provided by ArcSight.
Unassigned	Rules that do not belong to any directory. These can be rules that have not been inserted into any directory, or their parent directory has been deleted.

If you have Administrator access you will have another group named All Rules that contains all user rule groups and their rules.

## Scheduled Rules

You can deploy scheduled rules to run at a specified time interval (such as hourly, daily, or monthly). This is a useful alternative to real-time rules in situations where you want to deploy rules that take into account historical data along with live data, or when you simply want to control when the rules are run. The scheduled rules engine can process historical data, take real actions, and generate correlated events which are the same as those generated by the real-time rules engine.

Only rule groups can be scheduled. To schedule one or more rules, you add the rules to a rule group, and then edit the rule group to add a scheduled job. For more information, see ["Scheduling Rules" on page 431](#).

## Rule-triggering Timing

Rule-processing sessions are associated with "Group By" tuples (for example, a particular pairing of source and target address).

A match occurs when all the conditions of the rule are met.

The first match associated with a new tuple creates a new session. It also triggers `onFirstEvent` and an `onEveryEvent`. The system then sets the start time for the first time window.

Subsequent matches will trigger `onSubsequentEvents` and `onEveryEvent`.

If enough matches occur to pass the threshold count **before** the time window expires (which is defined as `start time + time window > current time`), then the Manager triggers `onEveryThreshold` and one of either `onFirstThreshold` or `onSubsequentThreshold` and it resets the start time for the next time window.

If a time window ends without meeting the threshold, then "final aggregation" occurs. The `onTimeWindowExpiration` option is triggered and the session is disassociated from the tuple.

The next match with the same tuple (or, in fact, any tuple, same or new) will cause the whole process to repeat.

## Rule Chains

When rules are designed to trigger in a series, in order to capture or act upon correlated events within a specified interval or at a particular threshold, they are referred to as rule chains.

## Variables

You can use all of the dynamic time parameters you see in the Active Channel Editor and elsewhere, such as `$Now` and `$CurrentDateTime`. The same is true for time elements, including `s` (second), `m` (minute), `d` (date), `M` (month), `w` (week), and `y` (year). To use any event data field as a variable, express its displayed name as a one-word "camel cap" string prefixed with a dollar sign; for example, "Source Address" would be `$sourceAddress`.

## Rules Editor

The Rules Editor is a panel in the ArcSight Console for creating and editing rules.

The rules you create or edit are stored in `.ARL` (ArcSight Rules Language) files.

For more information, see [Chapter 12, Rules Authoring, on page 397](#).

## Scheduling Jobs

You can schedule some tasks to occur automatically. Specifically, this feature is available for archiving and scheduling reports, Pattern Discovery snapshots, and rules. See these topics for information specific to scheduling jobs for particular resources:

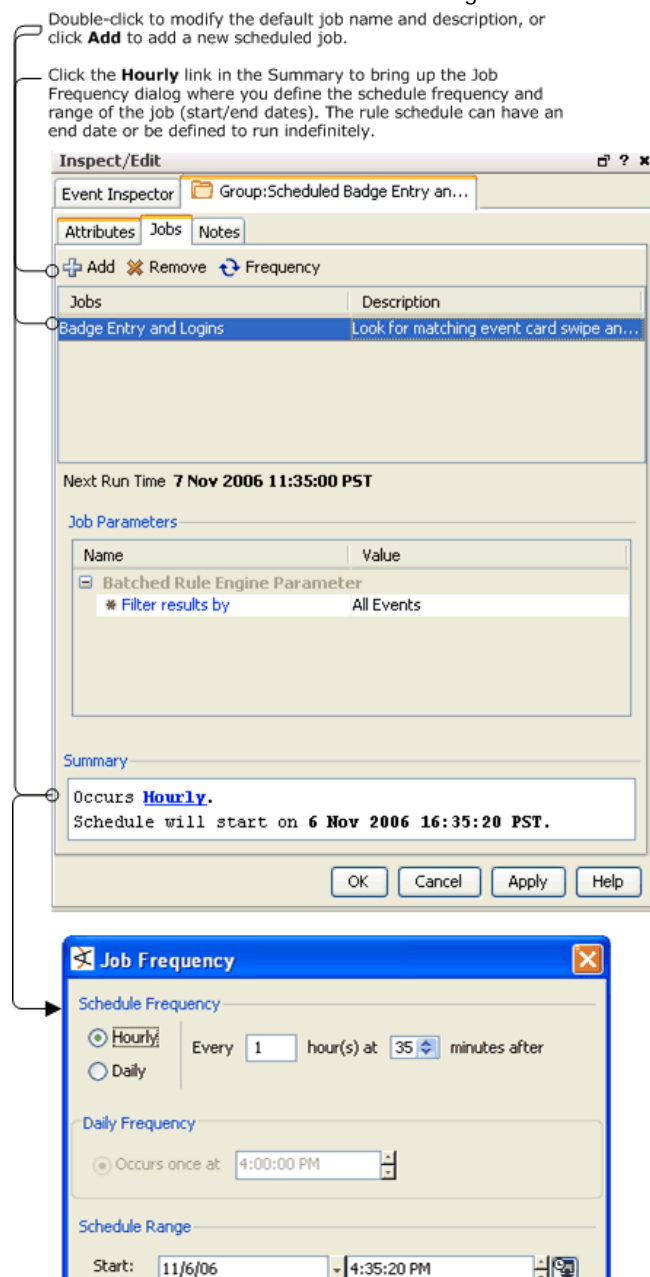
- ["Scheduling Report Tasks" on page 391](#) for information on how to schedule reports individually or by group

- [“Scheduling Rules” on page 431](#)
- [“Scheduling a Snapshot” on page 144](#)


This topic provides general information on how to schedule a job for any resource and view all scheduled jobs.

## To schedule a job

- 1 Click the **Jobs** tab in the Editor for a group.
- 2 Click **Add** on the Jobs tab. This brings up the Job Frequency dialog.
- 3 Define the schedule frequency and range of the job (start and end dates, or indefinite).
- 4 Click **OK** to save the task and close the dialog.



## To view all scheduled jobs

Click the **Open scheduled jobs list** tool button (  ). The scheduled tasks are listed in the Viewer panel under "Current Jobs".

Click a job in the list. The status of previous and pending runs for that job are shown in the "Scheduled Runs for <Task>" list on the bottom part of the Viewer panel.

## Troubleshooting Tips

If the Manager system clock time is changed after jobs are scheduled, some scheduled jobs might be kept in pending status temporarily, and/or synch back up on subsequent scheduled run times. It is best not to make dramatic adjustments to the system clock on a Manager on which critical jobs are already scheduled. If this problem occurs and does not correct itself soon enough, stop the Manager and re-set the system clock to the original date/time, or re-schedule the jobs.

## Schema

The schema is more than 400 data fields of the normalized data recorded by the device (sensor) that reports events to the SmartConnector. The schema is the culmination of the normalization process, and the backbone of the data structure that drives correlation.

The schema also includes fields that support resources that operate on other resources, for example, actors, assets, and cases.

The schema can now also be expanded with user-defined fields. Global variables enable you to define a variable that derives data from fields in the schema, which can be used in multiple places (see ["Global Variables" on page 445](#)).

## Avoiding Field Naming Collisions

With the addition of user-defined fields to the schema comes the possibility of name collisions. In most cases, field names, regardless of type, must be unique to be resolved. The following attributes are checked to verify that names are unique for all types of data fields:

### Fields Validated for Uniqueness

Field Type	Field Validated
Event	name, alias, field name, display field name
Actor	name, alias, field name, display field name
Asset	name, alias, field name, display field name
Case	name, alias, field name, display field name
Custom columns (public)	N/A
Custom columns (private)	N/A
Global variable	name, alias, field name
Local variable	name, alias, field name
Domain field	name, alias, field name



The Manager uses the following policy to manage potential naming collisions.

- The Manager grants names on a first-come-first-served basis. The domain field or global variable that comes later with the same name as another field will either be marked as 'disabled' if added in batch mode (such as from an archive file or package) or 'denied' when being created directly from the ArcSight Console.
- Name collision is allowed among resource and event-based system fields. For example, the name field of event can be the same as the name field of an actor.
- Global variable names must be unique across all types of schema fields. For example, a global variable cannot have the same name as a domain field or event.
- The name of a local variable must be unique across all types of fields: event fields, resource-based fields, global variables, and other local variables in the same containing resource.

When Requesting a Name for a ...	Can the name be the same when in use by		
	Global Variable	Local Variable	Event, Actor, Asset, Case
Custom Cell	Yes	Yes	Yes
Domain Field	No	Yes	No
Global Variable	No	Yes	No
Local Variable	No	No	No

The following exceptions apply to avoid naming collisions with existing customer-created fields and ArcSight-supplied global variables during upgrade to a future release:

- Existing custom columns added to active channels (see [“Customizing Columns” on page 100](#)) are excluded from name collision validation. Custom columns can have the same names as event fields, resource fields, global variables, and local variables, and vice versa.
- New global variables can have the same name as an existing local variable. A new local variable cannot have the same name as an existing global variable, but if a local variable already exists with a particular name, a global variable with that same name can be added without a name collision error.

## Event Fields

- Most information reported by sensor devices are in the main event fields.  
The information is accessible from Rules, Filters, and Reports. The events from a supported sensor might include three different fields - encryption failure, encryption success, and error - that all contain messages. These three are all mapped to the 'message' field.
- Usage clarification for many fields.  
This information to help you write rules or data monitors that use the variety of possible values.

## Precise Event Categorization

ESM categorizes events across six dimensions:

- the object acted on by the event
- the action represented by the event

- the technique used to achieve the action
- whether or not the action succeeded
- the security significance of the event
- the class of device that reported the event.

See [“Categories” on page 808](#). This scheme supports focused rule authoring and data monitor construction.

Events describe either an action or a state. Actions are attempted against a particular object and may succeed or fail. There may be many ways to attempt a particular action against an object (such as different ways to exploit an exposed vulnerability). States describe the status of a particular object, and these states may be known to be true -- or they may be hearsay. Events all have some significance to the security profile of the protected network. Finally, it is interesting to know what sort of device is reporting the event.

If we look at Snort SID 103, we discover that it is a report of a scan searching for pre-installed subseven 22 back doors. We would categorize these events as follows:

<b>Security Significance</b>	/Recon
<b>Behavior</b>	/Communicate/Query
<b>Technique</b>	/Scan/Service
<b>Device Type</b>	/IDS/Network
<b>Outcome</b>	/Attempt
<b>Object</b>	/Host/Application/Backdoor

In this case, a network intrusion detection system (IDS) would observe an attempt to communicate with a backdoor and infer that this was part of a service scan attempting to discover pre-installed instances of that backdoor. Naturally, this implies an external connector is performing reconnaissance on the protected network.

## Send Logs

Several system components provide various types of information to log files. For example, the Manager logs are located in: `ARCSIGHT_HOME/logs/default/server.log`. Various Manager utilities write logging information into different sets of log files. (The archive utility writes to the `archive.log`, the database init utility writes to the `dbwizard.log`, and so forth). Each of those sets can consist of multiple files. The number and size of the log files are configurable on the Manager under `ARCSIGHT_HOME/config/server.properties`. ArcSight Console, ArcSight Web, connectors, and also generate and store log files.

HP Software Support Online may request log files and other diagnostic information to troubleshoot problems. The **sendlogs** utility automatically locates log files and compresses them.

The Send Logs utility does not send any log files automatically; you will be instructed by the support representative on how to send the log files.

## Guidelines for Using the Send Logs Utility

- Although Send Logs is accessible to any user logged into a component, only administrators have permission to collect logs on remote systems. Non-administrative users can only collect local logs from the component where they are logged in.
- SmartConnectors must be running version 4037 or newer to support remote collection of logs with Send Logs (using an ArcSight Console or the Manager)
- You can only collect local logs on SmartConnectors or ArcSight Database. That is, if you run the Send Logs utility on ArcSight Database, only the database log files are gathered.
- You can run the sendlogs utility on a component even when the component service is down. If ArcSight Database is down, you can still collect its logs using this utility. If the Manager is down, you can only collect its local logs. However, if you need to collect the database logs as well, use the arcdt command on the Manager.
- All log files for a component are gathered and compressed. That is, you cannot select a subset of log files that the utility should process.
- The sendlogs utility generates a compressed file on your local system. The compressed log file is created in `ARCSIGHT_HOME/tmp/logs<Filename>.zip`.
- You can review the compressed file to ensure that it contains only the desired and appropriate amount of information.
- You can remove or sanitize information such as IP addresses, host names, and e-mail addresses from the log files before compressing them. The options are to (a) send logs as generated, (b) remove only IP address, or (c) remove IP address, host names, and e-mail addresses.

## Options for Running Diagnostics and Sending Logs

There are two ways to launch the **Send Logs** utility:

- As a wizard from the ArcSight Console Tools menu. (See [“Using the Network Tools” on page 54.](#))

For details on using the sendlogs utility from the command line, see the “ADministrative Commands” section of the Administrator’s Guide.

- From the command-line interface of each component, using the command **arcsight sendlogs** from `ARCSIGHT_HOME/bin` on the ArcSight Console, Manager, or ArcSight Web.

For details on using the sendlogs utility from the ArcSight Console, see the “Configuration” Chapter of the Administrator’s Guide. It is under “Configuring Manager Logging” then “Gathering logs and diagnostic information.”

You can also use the **arcdt** command to run specific diagnostic utilities from the Manager command line.

## Starting the Send Logs Wizard on the ArcSight Console

You can launch the Send Logs Wizard from the ArcSight Console by choosing **Tools > SendLogs** from the Console menu.

The first time you run the utility from the Console, you are prompted to select the components from which to gather logs and diagnostics. Some additional first-time settings are also required (such as notification details, time ranges, and options to gather diagnostics for session wait times, thread dumps, and database alert logs). The wizard

remembers most of these, so that on subsequent runs you can choose to use to retain the original configuration.

From now on when you start the Send Logs wizard, you will get this dialog. If you want to retain your original settings, select **"Use current settings to gather logs."** If you want to re-set the configuration, select the **"Change/Review settings before gathering logs."** option. From either of these initial dialogs, the wizard guides you through the process of collecting logs and diagnostic information.

For a full description of all options and settings on the Send Logs utility, see "Configuring Manager Logging" in the Administrator's Guide.

## Session Correlation

A session is information about the actors behind your network traffic that applies for a limited and specific period of time. Session information can be used to answer questions such as: "Who is in the New York office?" or "How many people are in meetings?" or "Are users accessing this resource according to company policy?"

Session correlation is a set of tools that capture session information to not only identify the assets involved in network traffic, but also the users, or actors, behind the traffic. (See ["Understanding Session Correlation" on page 487.](#))

Session correlation makes it possible to map users to assets at specific time periods. This is especially valuable for identifying who is doing what on your network from which assets and when, especially when the asset IDs themselves may be variable (such as DHCP or VPN logins).

## Why Session Correlation Matters

Monitoring traffic on your network generally means processing data about the assets involved in the network traffic. However, there are times when asset data alone is not sufficient to detect potential threats to your network.

For example, users who log into the network on VPN or DHCP connections are assigned different IP addresses every time they log in. When sensors report events to SmartConnectors, they are only identified by their assigned IP address, which means that you may be missing a whole spectrum of activity from mobile assets, such as laptops and PDAs and remote offices.

Whether accessing your network by using assets with fixed or variable IDs, it is often the user (the "actor") involved in the network activity whose actions you want to correlate with other event data. This enables you to track who is doing what on your network and when, and what they are doing in subsequent log-in sessions.

Capturing data about who is involved in network traffic as well as what assets are involved also adds crucial verification data to your correlation process. For example, three failed login attempts from a particular IP address can trigger a rule. But if that IP address is assigned to three different assets in the timeframe evaluated, session correlation makes it possible to clarify that the three failed login attempts were not executed by the same user.

## Session Lists

Session Lists are similar to [Active Lists](#), with the following major differences:

- Session Lists always have Start Time, End Time, and Creation Time fields.
- Session Lists partition data into weekly partitions because the lists can grow very large over a period of time.
- Session Lists do not have to fit entirely in memory.
- Session Lists are optimized for efficient time-based queries.

Session Lists can monitor activity based on any [Rules](#)-driven combination of [Events](#) attributes or set of custom fields. For example, session lists are very useful for tracking suspicious or hostile IP addresses as well as targets of attacks that may be compromised.

While you can populate session lists "manually" (adding entries from grid views or the Session List Editor), you should use session lists in conjunction with rules specifically tailored to work with them. Rules can dynamically add and remove entries on lists, thereby making them a flexible information-gathering tool.

You can open and edit session lists in [Grid Views](#).

Session lists function differently than [Active Channels](#). Session lists are not continuously re-evaluated and are not time-window constrained. Session lists draw from the event stream on the basis of their event or field/rule definitions and any rules designed to affect them.

You can use session lists as [Filters](#) in other [Resources](#) that are not based on active channels, such as [Reports](#).

In addition to their integral definitions, you can apply temporary (not saved) filters to session list grid views. Click the status description in the **Filter** line in the view header to use the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#).

Use the set of default items in the Session Lists resource tree for templates or for operational monitoring with minor modifications. For example, use the ArcSight User Sessions list to watch activity related to logins.

If you have Administrator access you will have another group named All Session Lists that contains all session list groups and lists.

See also: "[Session Correlation](#)" on page 960.

## SmartConnectors

SmartConnectors are collectors of security event information generated by multi-vendor security [Devices](#) throughout your enterprise. SmartConnectors normalize and correlate this data into [Events](#), expressed as ArcSight Messages, which are forwarded to the Connector Data Manager (a component of the [Manager](#)) for further processing. SmartConnectors can

reside on a device, on the Manager, or on a host machine. (For more information on SmartConnectors, see also [Chapter 22, Managing SmartConnectors, on page 657.](#))



Do not delete a Connector resource at the [ArcSight Console](#) unless the corresponding SmartConnector is first uninstalled from the device it is running on. If the SmartConnector running on the device has not been uninstalled, and its Connector resource is deleted, the SmartConnector will lose its connection to the Manager, causing the SmartConnector to start caching events and eventually dropping them.

## Operational Status

SmartConnectors display their operating status conditions next to their names in the Connectors resource tree in the Navigator panel.

### SmartConnector Status Conditions

Status Condition	Description
running	The SmartConnector is operating normally.
down	The SmartConnector is not connected to the ArcSight Console, therefore no events are being received.
stopped	The SmartConnector is responding to commands sent from the Console, but events aren't being received.
paused	The SmartConnector is responding to commands sent from the Console, but events aren't being transferred and are remaining in the SmartConnector's cache.

## Configuration

You can configure SmartConnectors to set a specific priority level for events that match specific criteria. One of the typical applications of this is to change the default priority mapping. By default, SmartConnectors will map the device priority (which may contain multiple levels) to the standard priority levels: **Very-High**, **High**, **Medium**, and **Low**. For example, if a device has eight priority levels (0-7) where 0 is the highest priority, then most likely 0 and 1 will be mapped to Very-High, 2 and 3 to High, 4 and 5 to Medium, and 6 and 7 to Low. You can use this feature to change this behavior and make the SmartConnector set the priority based on different parameters. For example, assume two firewalls, one of which is your production firewall and the other an internal firewall used for testing. You can configure the SmartConnectors to set the priority to Low for all the events coming from the internal firewall and leave the rest of the events with the default priority mapping.

SmartConnectors can be configured to optimize their performance and increase their functionality. SmartConnectors can be configured to enable aggregation, batching, and time zone correction functionality. You can also send control commands from the ArcSight Console to SmartConnectors to manage the flow of events.



SmartConnector configuration also affects the ability to automatically create the assets that represent network devices. Each SmartConnector needs to report an IP address or hostname for its sensor so its events can be identified on the network. See the configuration guides for your SmartConnectors to ensure they are reporting this information.

For information on how to import and export SmartConnectors configurations, see [“Importing and Exporting SmartConnector Configurations” on page 687](#).



SmartConnectors can send event information to the Manager in a compressed format using HTTP compression. Using compression lowers the overall network bandwidth used by SmartConnectors dramatically, without impacting their performance. By default, all SmartConnectors have compression enabled. You can disable compression on SmartConnectors by modifying the `ARCSIGHT_HOME/user/agent/agent.properties` file as described in “Disabling Event Compression” in “Configuring ArcSight SmartConnectors” in SmartConnector User’s Guide.

## Zones

Network zones are address-based network zone information as reported by or assigned to connectors and integrated as an asset property. You can access zone through the [Zones Tab](#) of the Assets resource trees, and the Zone Editor.

The system can gather and integrate zone information by any of the methods. Only one method can apply with a given connector.

- If an AUP file (ArcSight SmartConnector [Content](#) update) is installed with a connector, the zone information, if present, provides addressed-based recognition.
- If a `defaultzones.csv` file is installed in the connector's `ARCSIGHT_HOME/system/agent/acp` directory, it overrides an AUP file if present.
- If the various zone URI values are set in the Connector Editor, in the Network section of the Networks: Content tab, they override URIs from an AUP file, a `defaultzones.csv` file, or the defaults.

## Upgrading

You can centrally manage, configure, and update SmartConnectors remotely. You can use the Upgrade SmartConnector utility on the ArcSight Console to install newer versions of SmartConnector software for managed devices, and to review which versions are currently installed. (See [“Upgrading SmartConnectors” on page 689](#).)

The connector upgrade utility is one of control commands available on SmartConnectors. (See [“Sending Control Commands to SmartConnectors” on page 678](#).)

## Filtering

SmartConnectors can also act as a filtering tool between devices and the Manager, using filtering conditions. Filtering conditions are set with a combination of AND or OR statements and data field values. Extraneous events are filtered out to minimize the number of events sent to the Manager and analyzed in the ArcSight Console.



Events filtered out by SmartConnectors are not reported to the Manager, so they won't be stored in or available later from the ArcSight Database.

For information on how to import and export filters on SmartConnectors, see [“Importing and Exporting SmartConnector Configurations” on page 687](#) (especially the topic on [“SmartConnector Filters” on page 689](#)).

## SMTP

SMTP is used to send e-mail. An SMTP server must be configured either at install time or through context (right-click) menu e-mail settings. For [Notifications](#), the relevant fields are "from address", which designates the e-mail address of notification e-mail sent, and the "outgoing e-mail server," which is the SMTP server used to send e-mail. It is important to ensure that the "from address" specified is one that will not be rejected by the SMTP server, since some SMTP servers will reject unknown e-mail addresses. POP3 and IMAP can be used to check for e-mail acknowledgments.

You can specify these options at install time, or through context (right-click) menu e-mail option settings. For acknowledgements, the relevant fields are "incoming mail server," which is the POP/IMAP server to specify to check e-mail, "incoming mail protocol," which is either POP3 or IMAP, "account" and "password," which are the login name and password to access the mailbox from the incoming mail server. Note that replying to mails from the notification "from address" should reach the mailbox accessible to the "account" login.

SNPP is used to send pages. Sending notification pages requires that you configure the appropriate pager providers with host and port information using the Context (right-click) menu Pager Settings option.



Note

For notifications sent by pager, firewalls must be configured so that the pager can connect directly to the paging service provider. ESM currently supports any provider that supports SNPP. For notifications sent by cell phone, any cell phone must be e-mail enabled. For notifications sent by e-mail, you need to add an address to the e-mail Address field.

## Sortable Field Sets

In the CORR-Engine all fields are indexed, so all fields are sortable. Sortable field sets used to include fields that were indexed. Now they are simply a way to manage access, since sortable field sets are associated with user groups to control access, through the ACL Editor, which edits Access Control Lists. (See ["Editing Access Control Lists \(ACLs\)" on page 603.](#))




Caution

- Sortable fields belong to exclusive sets. This means that if you use a sortable field from one sortable field set to control an active channel, you cannot use sortable fields from other sets as secondary sort controls.
- Users should not edit the field sets in the `System Field Sets` folder. If edits do occur by mistake, the system will auto-restore those resources to their defaults in about an hour.

[Variables](#) are not subject to indexing and therefore are not candidates for sortable field sets.



## Sorting Columns in Grid Views

In grid views (including [Active Channels](#)), the names of fields in column headers are indicated with a double arrow icon  and the **Sort Column** right-click command is enabled. This applies to all fields.

To sort a list per a particular column, right-click over the column name and choose **Sort Column**.



If a field is already sorted, one of two additional icons is shown next to the column name indicating which direction the sort is applied.

- A down arrow  indicates a "top-down" sort is in effect on that field. (For example, when the event End Time field is sorted top-down, newer events are displayed at the top of the list and older events at the bottom. When the Priority field is sorted top-down, events are listed from higher to lower priority.)
- An up arrow  indicates the reverse ("low-to-high") sort in effect on that field. (For example, if the event End Time were sorted this way, older events show at the top of the list and newer events at the end. Similarly, a reverse sort on the Priority field would put low priority events at the top of the list.)

When **Sort Column** is chosen on a sortable field, a "low-to-high" sort is applied first (for example, show events from lowest to highest priority if the Priority field is sorted). If **Sort Column** is selected again, the sort order toggles to the reverse of the previous sort (high to low priority, per our example). The **Remove Sort** option disables the sort and returns the list to its unsorted state with regard to that particular column.

Multiple columns can be sorted simultaneously. The most recently applied sort will take precedence.

See also ["Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel" on page 80](#) and ["Sorting Events in an Active Channel" on page 79](#).

## Status Monitor Events

The status monitor events are internal ESM events that appear on the event stream. These events can reveal and isolate many different quantity and time-unit issues that bear directly on performance and capacity. There are many possible applications of this system-state data, but those applications must always be interpreted within the context of your particular hardware, software, and network environment, and the deployment choices you have made.

Compare status monitoring events, which provide information about a wide variety of **system states**, to Audit Events, which report on **system activity**.

The ESM does not provide standard content (such as filters, active channels, reports, query viewers, and so on) on the status monitors, but if you are interested in all `/Monitor` events, create an active channel and use the condition `Device Event Category StartsWith /Monitor`, or use a very specific condition, for example, `Device Event Category = /Monitor/Asset/TotalCount`. You can also use the condition in a query for a report or a query viewer.

## Active Channel Statistics

Active channel statistics, specifically any changes that occur in the counts they report, can indicate performance issues and the use of processing cycles. These events summarize:

- The number of currently open Active Channels
- The number of events inserted into Active Channels per second

- The number of events changed across all open Active Channels per second

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Active Channels	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/ActiveChannels/Open	monitor:100	Open active channel count	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveChannels/Events/Insertions	monitor:174	Active channel event insertions per second	Count per second, since last monitor event
/Monitor/ActiveChannels/Events/Changes	monitor:175	Active channel event changes per second	Count per second, since last monitor event

## Active List Statistics

Active list statistics monitor the resources being used by active lists. Active lists entries use some memory and database resources, and use CPU resources when they are referenced by other parts of the system (for example, rules, reports, and filters). While changes to these temporary lists are not persisted, they do represent some memory overhead. Note that when active lists are used by replay-with-rules, this also creates temporary lists.

### Active List Statistics

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Active Lists	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/ActiveLists/ListCount	monitor:114	Open active list count	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/EntryCount	monitor:115	Active list entry count	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/EntryCapacity	monitor:116	Active list entry capacity	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/EntryPercentUsed	monitor:117	Active list entry usage	Percent, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryListCount	monitor:118	Temporary Active list count	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryEntryCount	monitor:119	Temporary Active list entry count	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryCapacity	monitor:120	Temporary Active list capacity	Count, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/TemporaryPercentageUsed	monitor:121	Temporary Active list usage	Percent, current value
/Monitor/ActiveLists/QueriesPerSecond	monitor:122	Active list queries per second	Count per second, since startup

**Active List Statistics (Continued)**

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Active Lists	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/ActiveLists/ChangesPerSecond	monitor:123	Active list changes per second	Count per second, since startup

## Asset Statistics

Asset statistics offer insight into performance areas that affect assets in the system and can help resolve source, destination, agent, and device asset issues for incoming events. These events summarize:

- **Asset resolutions per second** is the average number of end-points in events, that are resolved to assets in a second.
- **Asset resolutions average time** is the average time in milliseconds taken to resolve an end-point in an event to an asset.
- **Asset scanner events per second** is the number of scanner events processed in a second.
- **Asset scanner events average time** is the average time in milliseconds taken to process a scanner event.

**Asset Statistics**

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Asset Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Asset/TotalCount	monitor:200	Asset total count	Count, current value
/Monitor/Asset/Scanner/EventsPerSecond	monitor:201	Scanner events processed per second	Count per second, since last monitor event
/Monitor/Asset/ResolutionsPerSecond	monitor:202	Asset resolutions per second	Count per second, since last monitor event
/Monitor/Asset/Scanner/AverageTime	monitor:203	Scanner event average processing time	Count per second, since startup
/Monitor/Asset/ResolutionsAverageTime	monitor:204	Asset resolution average time	Microseconds per count, since startup
/Monitor/Asset/ResolutionsAverageTime/Source	monitor:205	Asset source resolution average time	Microseconds per count, since startup
/Monitor/Asset/ResolutionsAverageTime/Destination	monitor:206	Asset destination resolution average time	Microseconds per count, since startup

**Asset Statistics (Continued)**

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Asset Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Asset/Size	monitor:240	Transitive closure size	Count, current value

**Data Monitor Statistics**

The data monitor statistics indicate how intensively the data monitors are working, which in turn can indicate situations such as filters needing adjustment or data monitors needing restructuring. These events summarize:

- **Active probes** is the number of currently enabled data monitors.
- **Evaluations per second** is the number of events times the number of enabled data monitors per second.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Data Monitor Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/DataMonitors/ActiveProbes	monitor:101	Active data monitor probe count	Count, current value
/Monitor/DataMonitors/EvaluationsPerSecond	monitor:124	Data monitor evaluations per second	Count per second, since last monitor event

**Event Broker Statistics**

These statistics monitor reading events from, and writing events to, the database. As such, they are database health indicators. These events summarize:

- **Event count** is the number of events inserted into the database since the last monitor event.
- **Insert time** is the average time taken to insert each event into the database, in microseconds.
- **Retrieval time** is the average time taken to retrieve each event from the database in microseconds.

**Event Broker Statistics**

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Event Broker Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/EventBroker/InsertTime	monitor:102	Events insertion time per event	Microseconds per count, since last monitor event
/Monitor/EventBroker/InsertedEventCount	monitor:103	Events processed count	Count, since last monitor event

**Event Broker Statistics (Continued)**

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Event Broker Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/EventBroker/RetrievalTime	monitor:140	Events retrieval time per event	Microseconds per count, since last monitor event

**Filter Engine Statistics**

The count of in-memory filter evaluations can serve as a broad indicator of filter performance.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Filter Engine Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Filters/EvaluationCount	monitor:161	Filter evaluation count	Count, since last monitor event

**Main Flow Statistics**

These events report statistically on the overall throughput of the Manager, for both incoming and internal events. This flow is the sequence of processing steps applied to each event and is a broad indicator or benchmark of system traffic. These events summarize:

- **Count** describes the number of events that have passed through the flow since the manager started.
- **Rate** describes the current event rate in events per second.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Main Flow Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/MainFlow/EPS	monitor:230	Main flow event rate	Count per second, since last monitor event
/Monitor/MainFlow/Events	monitor:231	Main flow event count	Count, since startup

**Notification Statistics**

This group reports on notification activity, which can be of diagnostic value in detecting unusually high notifications activity.

- **New count** describes the number of new notifications since the last monitor event.

- **Escalated count** describes the number of notifications that were escalated since the last monitor event.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Notification Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Notification/New	monitor:180	New notification count	Count, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Notification/Escalated	monitor:181	Escalated notification count	Count, since last monitor event.

## Pattern Discovery Statistics

These events provide statistics for recent or pending pattern discovery runs. Because pattern discovery is database-intensive, these statistics can indicate or help diagnose database performance issues.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Pattern Discovery Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Patterns/RunCount	monitor:190	Pattern discoveries run count	Count, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Patterns/RunsQueued	monitor:191	Pattern discoveries queued count	Count, current value.

## Report Statistics

These events provide statistics about the current number of reports querying the database or being rendered. Because reports are database-intensive, these statistics can indicate or help diagnose database performance issues.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Report Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Reports/Running	monitor:130	Reports running count	Count, current value.
/Monitor/Reports/RunningQueryingDB	monitor:131	Reports querying database count	Count, current value.
/Monitor/Reports/RunningRendering	monitor:132	Reports rendering count	Count, current value.

## Resource Framework Statistics

Resource-framework events report on the database activity connected with updates (reads, writes, and deletions) to system resources such as rules, assets, and filters, since the last

monitor event. This data can be valuable in tracking or diagnosing performance-related issues such as automatic asset maintenance, the threat-level formula, or rule-driven usage.

Status Monitor Event Category (Device Event Category) for Resource Framework Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Resource/Activity/Insert	monitor:171	Resources inserted per second	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Resource/Activity/Update	monitor:172	Resources updated per second	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Resource/Activity/Delete	monitor:173	Resources deleted per second	Count per second, since last monitor event.

## Rules Engine Statistics

The statistics related to the Manager's rules engine can help reveal performance issues in several areas. Remember that information about rules activity always needs to be considered in the full content of the Manager's operations. For example, a busy Moving Average data monitor, if used inefficiently, can affect several of these statistics; a poorly written rule can inadvertently drive up the rate of actions executed.

These statistics have the following performance implications

- Count of events inserted into the rule engine: CPU.
- Rate of event insertion into the rule engine: CPU.
- Count of correlated events generated by the rule engine: CPU.
- Rate of correlated event generation by the rule engine: CPU.
- Count of events that are still present in rule engine's working memory: memory.
- Count of groupBy cells that are being used by the rule engine: memory.
- Count of rules currently active in the rule engine: comparative value only.
- Rate of actions being executed by the rule engine: CPU.
- Count of events matching any rule: CPU, memory.
- Count of events matching a rule with single alias: CPU, memory.
- Count of events matching a rule with multiple aliases: CPU, memory.
- Count of events rule matches: CPU, memory.

### Rules Engine Statistics

Status Monitor Event Category for Rule Engine Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Rules/InsertedEventCount	monitor:151	Rules total event count	Count, since last monitor event.

**Rules Engine Statistics (Continued)**

Status Monitor Event Category for Rule Engine Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Rules/InsertedEventRate	monitor:152	Rules inserted events per second	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/GeneratedEventRate	monitor:153	Rules generated events per second	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/EventsInRuleEngineMemory	monitor:155	Rules in-memory event count	Count, current value.
/Monitor/Rules/GroupByCellsSize	monitor:156	Rules group by cells size	Count, current value.
/Monitor/Rules/ActiveRulesCount	monitor:157	Active rules count	Count, current value.
/Monitor/Rules/ActionsTakenRate	monitor:158	Rules actions rate	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/GeneratedEventCount	monitor:159	Rules generated event count	Count, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/EventsMatchingAnyRule	monitor:232	Events matching any rule	Count, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/EventsMatchingFilterRule	monitor:233	Events matching filter rule	Count, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/EventsMatchingJoinRule	monitor:234	Events matching join rule	Count, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Rules/MatchCount	monitor:235	Match Count	Count, since last monitor event.

**Session List Statistics**

Session list statistics monitor the resources being used by session lists. Session lists entries use some memory and database resources, and use CPU resources when they are referenced by other parts of the system (for example, rules, reports, and filters).

**Session List Statistics**

Status Monitor Event Category for Session List Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/SessionLists/ListCount	monitor:260	Open session list count	Count, current value.



**Session List Statistics (Continued)**

Status Monitor Event Category for Session List Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/SessionLists/EntryCount	monitor:261	Session list entry count	Count, current value.
/Monitor/SessionLists/EntryCapacity	monitor:262	Session list entry capacity	Count, current value.
/Monitor/SessionLists/EntryPercentUsed	monitor:263	Session list entry usage	Percent, current value.
/Monitor/SessionLists/QueriesPerSecond	monitor:264	Session list queries per second	Count per second, since startup.
/Monitor/SessionLists/ChangesPerSecond	monitor:265	Session list changes per second	Count per second, since startup.

**Session Management Statistics**

This statistic tracks the current number of active user sessions.

Status Monitor Event Category for Session Management Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Sessions/Active/Total	monitor:160	Active session count	Count, current value.

**SmartConnector Flow Statistics**

SmartAgent flow statistics record the event rates that occur at different stages of agent processing. "Sum of" statistics are sums of all values reported by all agents connected to the Manager. All values are statistics over the past 1-minute range. These events summarize:

- **Received event rate** is the rate at which agents receive events from devices.
- **Post filter event rate** is the rate of events that passed the filter (for example, were not filtered out).
- **Post aggregation event rate** is the rate of event aggregation.
- **Agent-to-manager event rate and count** describe how many events were actually sent to the Manager.
- **Cache size** describes the estimated size of the on-disk agent event cache.

**SmartConnector Flow Statistics**

Status Monitor Event Category for SmartConnector Flow Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Agents/Events/ToManager	monitor:104	Agent to-manager event count	Count, since startup.

**SmartConnector Flow Statistics (Continued)**

Status Monitor Event Category for SmartConnector Flow Statistics	Device Event Class ID	Audit Event Description	Notes
/Monitor/Agents/EPS/ToManager	monitor:109	Agent to-manager event rate	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/EPS/Received	monitor:110	Agent received event rate	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/EPS/PostFilter	monitor:111	Agent post-filter event rate	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/EPS/PostAggregation	monitor:112	Agent post-aggregation event rate	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/CacheSize	monitor:113	Estimated agent cache size	Count, current value.
/Monitor/Agents/Total/Events/ToManager	monitor:141	Sum of agent to-manager event counts	Count, since startup.
/Monitor/Agents/Total/EPS/ToManager	monitor:146	Sum of agent to-manager event rates	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/Total/EPS/Received	monitor:147	Sum of agent received event rates	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/Total/EPS/PostFilter	monitor:148	Sum of agent post-filter event rates	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/Total/EPS/PostAggregation	monitor:149	Sum of agent post-aggregation event rates	Count per second, since last monitor event.
/Monitor/Agents/Total/CacheSize	monitor:150	Sum of estimated agent cache sizes	Count, current value.

## Templates

See ["Report Templates"](#) on page 943.

## Threat

The means by which the potential of a threat connector to adversely affect an automated system, facility, or operation, can be manifest. A potential violation of security.

## Threat Evaluation

The Manager incorporates a system of security-threat evaluation that culminates in the Priority field you often see in views, reports, or event details. The Priority field uses a scale of 0-10 to rate incoming [Events](#), with 10 being the most-significant value. Naturally, you use Priority field [Threat](#)-evaluation values as a factor in many types of analyses and [Rules](#)-driven reaction or [Notifications](#) scenarios.

## Evaluation Process

Threat evaluation is "always on" and applies to all the events received by the Manager. The evaluation process consists of:

- 1 Identify the targeted asset.

The identification process uses (in this order) the Target Address, Target Host Name, Target MAC Address, or relevant asset address range to classify the targeted asset.

- 2 Identify the targeted vulnerabilities.

Using the targeted asset as a key, the Manager looks up applicable vulnerabilities.

- 3 Match the targeted vulnerabilities with the vulnerabilities of the targeted asset.

When matches occur, one is chosen and placed in the Event Vulnerability field.

- 4 Compute the event's threat-priority value.

It is at this point that ESM performs the computation involving model confidence, relevance, criticality and severity (in this specific order), as described further in the next section.

## Evaluation Definitions

The Priority field is a calculated value. It uses a formula that processes the contents of certain [Prioritization Fields](#) that help assess the potential security impact of an event. These fields use information about specific [Assets](#) and [Vulnerabilities](#) to establish models, and a confidence factor concerning the appropriateness of those models. Given confidence about a particular asset/vulnerability model, events directed at that asset can then be evaluated against a combination of factors that include relevance, criticality, and severity.

An event has **relevance** as a threat if it contains an [Attack](#) signature that is genuinely applicable to the targeted [Device](#), and the device is in a posture that would permit a successful attack. For example, is the event aimed at a valid port, and when the port was checked, was it open?

An asset's degree of **criticality** is based on the way it serves your enterprise, as seen from the perspective of the network's asset categories. For example, a server could be categorized among your "Very High Criticality Assets" because it handles customer financial transactions.

An event has **severity** if the targeted device is of a more sensitive type that is known to be subject to compromise, and the source of the event has been identified as a hostile or

suspicious entity. Specifically, this is the value found in the Device Severity field. For example, did the event originate from an arch competitor on your Hostile List and was it aimed at a router on your Compromised List?

These three factors, when enabled by a suitable model confidence value, are averaged to produce the value that appears in the Priority field. If a suitable model confidence value isn't present, then severity and criticality are averaged to produce a value for Priority. The exploited vulnerability is also recorded in the event's vulnerability field. (See [“Investigating Views” on page 88.](#))

The exact numeric weight applied to each possible relevance, severity, or criticality state (such as unknown, low, medium, high, very high) is set through a configuration file named `ThreatLevelFormula.xml`. This file is usually configured prior to deployment, using your enterprise policies to guide relative value choices.

## Maintaining Model Confidence

The asset/vulnerability model confidence for various network devices is based on correlations between the asset and vulnerability resources you can see in the resource trees of the ArcSight Console's Navigator panel. Fresh vulnerability information that correlates well with a particular asset's identification results in greater model confidence.

Stated more directly, the model is the sum of the resources that describe the protected and external networks: assets, asset ranges, asset categories, network zones, and certain active lists.

While asset and vulnerability information can be updated manually, it is more practical to refresh this information by automated means such as vulnerability scanners. (See [“Managing Vulnerabilities” on page 722.](#)) ESM can automatically import vulnerability information from certain scanner products. Information drawn successively from the same scanner product is overwritten when duplicative; information from different products is additive. Information about new assets or vulnerabilities generates new resource references, and the Manager automatically matches the new references to their opposites, whether new or old.

It should also be noted that asset resources can be updated in bulk using XML files.

## Using Threat Evaluation Information

While the Priority field has many obvious uses, starting with simply sorting the events in grid views, there are other ways to put this and its underlying information to work.

Rules, reports, filters, and any place you can apply logic can use the threat-evaluation operators described in [“Priority Calculations and Ratings” on page 932.](#) You can also use the values described in [“Prioritization Fields” on page 931](#) to perform many threat-related functions.

## Limitations and Workarounds

Because it is dependent upon a certain amount and type of event data, threat evaluation can be inhibited by these factors:

- A correlation event, produced by a rule or a data monitor, may not be populated with enough information. Only fields used to 'group by' will be populated in correlated events. Without enough information (such as targeted asset or severity) the threat evaluation will not be able to make a sound decision on the event's priority.

- Over-population of correlated events can also inhibit results. Some rules are only used to maintain active lists. These rules do not generate useful new information, but the "group by" they need to use in order to collect the information for an active list may give them the appearance of a seriously offensive event.
- Rules offer the option to set your own priority. If a rule populates the priority attribute, then a threat model component will not change that value.

To compensate, you can use these techniques:

- Use the Priority field's value to control when you do and don't notify.
- If a rule is inferring some new piece of information (such as the classic Brute Force Login Attempt), then make sure that you "group by" sufficient information to be able to characterize the threat later. In the BFLA case, that would mean using the source and target addresses from the base events and setting the severity attribute to, for example, "Low"; the BFL Success rule, on the other hand, would set severity to "Very High".
- If the rule is a bookkeeping rule, try to copy as little information forward as you can, set the severity to low, and set the category to "/informational".

## Thresholds

There are two types of thresholds: rule thresholds and event thresholds.

A rule threshold is the point at which a rule is triggered and a correlation event generated.

An event threshold is the number of times the event must occur before triggering the rule threshold.

A rule can have a threshold that states when the rule is triggered and also specify a threshold for each rule event. For example, thresholds can be created so that a rule is triggered only after all the events in the rule have occurred a set number of times.

See also, ["Rules" on page 951](#) and ["Events" on page 914](#).

## Time Error Correction

In the context of the [ArcSight Console](#), time error correction means the synchronization of time between a network [Device](#), its SmartConnector and the Manager.

See also, ["SmartConnectors" on page 961](#).

## Timestamps

See also ["Timestamp Variables" on page 979](#).

Because timestamps are a key element in network security analysis, it is important to clarify the location, source, and context of the timestamps.

## Security Events

Multiple timestamps are applied to events in the course of processing.

Timestamps for Events	Context
Device Receipt Time	The timestamp applied by the source sensor device upon receipt of the event.
Connector Receipt Time	The timestamp applied by the SmartConnector's JVM (Java Virtual Machine) when the event is received from the originating sensor device.
Manager Receipt Time	The timestamp applied by the Manager's JVM (Java Virtual Machine) when the event is received from the SmartConnector.
Start Time	The time at which the event actually began, as recorded by the source sensor device or, possibly, a secondary source monitored by that device.
End Time	The time at which the event actually ended, as recorded by the source sensor device or, possibly, a secondary source monitored by that device.

## Resources

Timestamps are also applied to the resources you see in the Navigator panel.

Timestamps for Resources	Context
Resource Created	This timestamp is applied by the Manager's JVM (Java Virtual Machine) when a resource is created.
Resource Modified	This timestamp is applied by the Manager's JVM (Java Virtual Machine) when a resource is changed.

## General Information

All timestamps are stored as Coordinated Universal Time (**UTC**) times.

The ArcSight Console presents timestamps in the local time zone of the host computer using the Java Locale facility.

Log timestamps are produced by the local JVM for that component and are written using the Java Locale facility.

Timestamps are kept in epoch time, an integer value representing the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, at 00:00:01 (UTC). Timestamps cannot be earlier than that date/time. The largest integer (number of seconds) that can be stored for this value limits the timestamp range to January 19, 2038 at 03:14:07 (UTC). No timestamps can be after that date/time.

## Timestamp Variables

See also [“Variables” on page 982](#), especially the subtopic on [“Timestamp Functions” on page 992](#).

For date and time data fields, such as Detect Time, you can type an actual date value, such as 10/12/2002 8:54:00 AM, or can use special system variables such as:

- `$CurrentDateTime`: for the date and time the report is run; the system variable is replaced by the current date and time value.
- `$CurrentDate`: for the date the report is run; the system variable is replaced with the date value, truncating the time of the day to 0, when the report is scheduled or run.

You can also specify certain date operations with these system variables to add or subtract a number of specified days or hours. For example, you could type: `$CurrentDate - 7d` for seven days before the date the report is run, the condition evaluates to a date which is the current date minus seven days, or `$CurrentDateTime - 12h`, which evaluates to the current date time minus 12 hours. Do not create an operation that will result in a time stamp that is out of range (the range is January 1, 1970, at 00:00:01 through January 19, 2038 at 03:14:07, UTC), or you will get an error.

The time and date editing window you access through the **Detect Time** and **Detect Time Offset** fields of the ArcSight Console's Report Editor can accept month (uppercase **M**), minute (lowercase **m**), and current week (uppercase **W**) parameters.

Use spaces to separate these special system variables or parameters from other operators when including them in a condition statement.

## Inclusive Timestamps

The Detect Time timestamps reported for **correlated** events include the timestamps of the **base** events that initiated them. The timestamp is that of the most recent base event in the series of base events that caused the correlated event.

For example, an event's Detect Time field in the Event Inspector might now show 22 Sep 2003 18:18:24 PDT instead of 22 Sep 2003 16:10:29 PDT, with the difference being that the earlier timestamp represents the last base event rather than a later correlated event.

This refinement helps you interpret correlated events more readily, without the need to trace back through detailed rule chains.



You can also inspect the Connector Time parameter to find out just when a rule triggered (the time that was recorded as the Detect Time in prior releases.)

---

## Time Zone Correction

The correction of a local time zone is the number of hours of offset to apply in order to adjust local time to another clock (often UTC or GMT) to synchronize device-time queries, correlation, and filters.

## Trends

A trend is a resource that defines how and over what time period data will be aggregated and evaluated for trends. A trend executes a specified query on a defined schedule and time duration.

Building trends is a component of Reporting resource tools. Be sure to see [Chapter 10, Building Reports, on page 275](#) for an overview of all reporting tasks and tools, and [“Understanding the Reporting Workflow” on page 275](#) to see how Trends fit in to the process of creating a report.

## Understanding Trends and Queries

A base trend is made up of one query. Trends can be used as the primary data source for a report. Or, a trend (based on one query) can be used as the data source to another query that further refines the initial query result. A collection of trend queries (queries that use trends as their data source) can provide focused views of a data set which can then be fed into a single report or multiple reports.

The system evaluates source data for trends based on event conditions (such as number of worm outbreaks, incident time-to-close, or number of cases closed) or common network elements (such as operating system, business role, or regulatory compliance relevance).

This provides a means of querying not just the current model of the network but to build reports on queries of historical data, scheduled queries, and snapshot trends. Using queries in trends allows you to evaluate, for example, trending statistics on vulnerabilities and incident metrics over time to determine whether your vulnerability posture or incident closing rate is getting better or worse.

The generic trend reporting and a set of specific reports show trends on current data. For example, you can evaluate trends by operating system, by role, by compliance requirement, time to close on cases, and number closed.

You can provide a trend on a selected period of time, and pull reports that generate aggregated data. Trends can include case metrics such as time to close, open and time open, number closed, which allows for trending reports on incidents.

For more information, see [“Query-Trend Relationships in Reporting” on page 318](#) in [“Building Trends” on page 317](#).

## Building Trends

You can access trends and associated editors in the Reports resource in the ArcSight Console.

See [“Building a Trend” on page 319](#) for information on how to navigate to and use the Trend Editor for [Defining Trend Settings](#).

## Upgrade SmartConnectors

See [“Upgrading SmartConnectors” on page 689](#).



## User Groups

User groups are named and organized collections of [Users](#). You can create groups based on departments, permission levels, work shifts, or whatever structure best supports your enterprise.

All users within a group inherit the group's permissions. If permissions are given to or taken from a group, all users within that group gain or lose those permissions. When users belong to more than one group, they receive permissions from all their groups. For example, if a user is in a group that has inspect permissions to all rules and is in another group with inspect permissions to all reports, the user will be able to inspect both rules and reports.

The following pre-defined groups help you manage your users:

- **Users:** Lists the current logged-in user and grants permission to inspect and edit their own information.
- **Shared:** Lists groups and users that the logged in user has permissions to.
- **All Users:** Lists all groups and users, only Administrators have permission to this group.

Groups created from the All Users group inherit permissions to only a few resources. You can either edit the group ACL to add or remove permissions or create groups beneath one of the pre-existing groups to inherit a pre-configured set of permissions.

- **Default User Groups:** Lists groups and users with default permissions to all resources. For more information on resources, see ["Editing Access Control Lists \(ACLs\)" on page 603](#).
- **Administrators:** Lists groups and users with full rights and access to manage all groups and users



Note

Do not delete the Administrators group. It grants administrative access. The Administrators group contains at least one user account. This user account is created during installation.

- **Live Rules Editors:** Lists groups and users with permissions to inspect and edit rules
- **Reports Editors:** Lists groups and user with permissions to inspect and edit reports
- **Unassigned:** Lists users who do not belong to a group

## Users

Users are individuals who are assigned login names, passwords, and privileges to access and perform operations using the [ArcSight Console](#) or [ArcSight Web](#) clients. For details on using the ArcSight Console for various tasks on dealing with users as an administrator, see [Chapter 21, Managing Resources, on page 623](#).

You manage users by storing user information, setting passwords, enabling or disabling login functionality, and organizing them into groups. When you create a new user account, a temporary password must be created for the user to login to the ArcSight Console. The user should change their password during their initial session. For more information on changing passwords, see ["Changing User Preferences" on page 732](#).

As an added security feature, user logins can be disabled. This feature may be used when the user is on an extended leave of absence, if the user ID and password have been compromised, or for any reason the user ID and password should not be used to access the ArcSight Console.

When users are deleted, they are removed from the Users resource tree but not the ArcSight Database. The deleted user ID is stored in the database for future offline processing and user activity auditing. If the user belongs to more than one group, the user account is deleted from all groups automatically.

## User Types

User accounts serve several purposes. To enable giving all users only the minimum set of privileges that are needed for them to fulfill their duties, user accounts have a "user type." The user type specifies, at a high level, which features a user may access. This mechanism is complementary but does not replace permissions specified by access control lists (ACLs), which allow administrators to control access to resources such as assets, rules, and filters. User types are used primarily to control access to Manager services such as archiving and other management tools. See [Chapter 20, Managing Users and Permissions, on page 597](#).

Most often, user types are used to limit the risk resulting from the fact that user name and password combinations are stored on disk for components that require unattended startup but have to authenticate to the Manager. For example, the ForwardingConnector needs to authenticate to the Manager in order to obtain events, but does not need access to any of the resource management functionality provided by archive and other management tools.

The currently supported user types are:

- **Normal User:** Has full privileges to use the ArcSight Console or ArcSight Web client, and all tools. Only apply this user type to accounts that actually need access to the ArcSight Manager.
- **Management Tool:** Has only the privileges needed to run certain management tools used in conjunction with network management products.
- **Forwarding Connector:** Has only the privileges needed by the Forwarding Connector.
- **Archive Utility:** Has only the privileges needed to run the archive utility. Access to specific resources is controlled through ACLs.
- **Connector Installer:** A specialized identity used only to add SmartConnectors to the system.
- **Web User:** Has privileges to use the ArcSight Web client and Command Center only (not the ArcSight Console or other tools).



Note

Only Normal User accounts can log in to the ArcSight Console or an ArcSight Web client.

Unassigned users are those that do not belong to a group.

## Variables

**Variables** are used to derive values from events, assets, and other resources (for example, a target IP address in an attack event, the MAC address or zone of a vulnerable asset, the timestamps on a user login session, entries in a hot list, and so forth).

You can use variables to create and tune [Active Channels](#), [Filters](#), [Reports](#), [Rules](#), [Field Sets](#), and [Data Monitors](#), or to expose more information, such as in report or grid view columns. The editors for these tools each include a **Variables** tab on which to add, edit, or remove variables.



Right-click a variable and choose **Copy**, then **Paste** it to another variable tab to avoid re-typing.

Once created, variables appear in the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) as additional fields on the **Filters** or **Conditions** tabs; in **Group By** arguments for data monitors and rules; and in **Select**, **Group By**, and **Order By** fields for queries. In the Field Set Editor, variables are an additional category that appears once variables are defined.

Variables are especially useful for situational-awareness applications such as reporting on attacks by division, or for compliance monitoring as in reporting the number of compromise events directed at Sarbanes-Oxley related devices.

Asset-category variables are based on the relevant resource ID of the modeled network asset (device). Timestamp variables are based on the start, end, or receipt times recorded by SmartConnectors, Managers, or devices.

## About Functions

Functions configured for variables let you perform various operations on the derived values. To access event fields for use in *variable functions*, you either use the pick lists provided in the local or global variable dialogs or, in some cases, employ *velocity expressions* (templates) in statements. (See [“Velocity Templates” on page 999](#) for an explanation of how to construct velocity expressions.)

When you click **Add** in a Variables tab, the Add Variable dialog box can present several fields, depending on the function to be used. All field values can be edited later except the choice of function. To change a Variable from one function to another, create a new Variable and delete the old Variable.

The Add Variable dialog includes the option to *preview* (or calculate) the results for some variable functions, given test values that you specify.



- The **Preview** (or Calculate) feature on the **Add Variable** dialog is supported for some but not all variable functions. For example, functions for list data types such as `GetSizeOfList` and `GetListElement` do not support the Preview feature.
- There is no way to specify a NULL value for **Preview** input to a Variable function. The Preview assumes that a blank field for an input is an empty String. Therefore, you cannot use Preview on the Variable dialog to test inputs for a parameter with NULL values.

For more information, see [“Variable Functions” on page 985](#).

## About Remote Variables

Variables using Group, List, and Category Model functions are evaluated on the Manager, not directly on the ArcSight Console, and are referred to as *remote variables*.

These remote variables are evaluated only once on the ArcSight Console for any given event or resource. Therefore, the value of the variable on the ArcSight Console will not change if the underlying data is modified that would result in a different value for the variable. New events (in events channels) and resources (in resource channels) will evaluate the variable again, and you will see the updated value.

Because not all variables can be calculated on the ArcSight Console, there may be a delay in returning values from variables calculated remotely on the Manager.



Note

Variables do increase processing overhead and can affect report-generation performance. Consider the performance sensitivity of a report before adding variables.

## Local and Global Variables

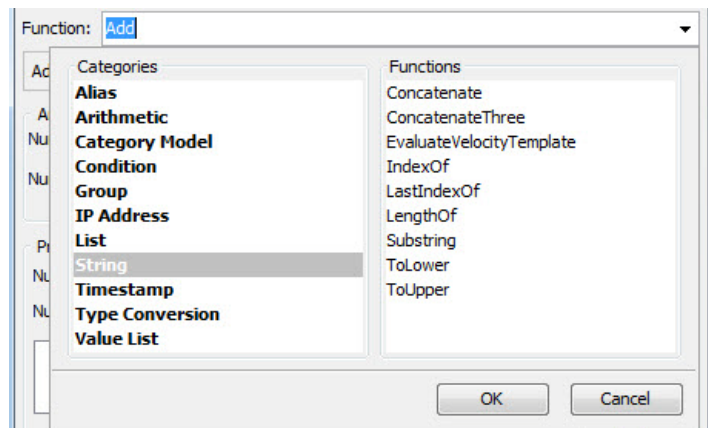
Variables you create in resources on the Local Variables tab of a resource editor are local to the resource for which you create them. For example, if you create a local variable in a query to get an active list value, that variable is available only to that query; not in other queries, rules, or filters. (Queries themselves are available for use in trends, reports, and query viewers, but the *local variables* used to build them are not.)

You can create *global variables* on field groups that are available across resources. The general information provided in this reference topic on variables, variable fields, and functions applies to both local and global variables. The main difference is that global variables are available across resources whereas local variables are not.

To create a **local variable**, click the Variables tab in a resource (for example, [Active Channels](#), [Filters](#), [Queries](#), [Rules](#)), name it, choose a function and provide arguments as needed.

To create a **global variable**, navigate to Field Sets, click the **Fields & Global Variables** tab, and use the Global Variables editor to select a function and parameters (as described in [“Global Variables” on page 445](#)).

Both local and global variables give you access to the same **functions**. All available functions are described in detail [“Variable Functions” on page 985](#).



For more information on local variables, refer to the topics on editing any particular resource ([Filters](#), [Rules](#), [Queries](#) for Reports or [Query Viewers](#), and so forth).

For more information on global variables and field sets, see [“Global Variables” on page 445](#) and [“Field Sets” on page 155](#).

## Variable Definition Fields

Variable Definition Fields	Description
Name	<p>A name for the variable that is unique to the associated resource.</p> <p>Variable names must start with a letter, and can contain letters, numbers, underscores, and spaces. Trailing spaces at the end of a variable name will be removed.</p> <p>Special characters, other than those mentioned above, are not allowed.</p>
Function	<p>Each variable implements a single function. Functions are grouped into the following types; details for each type follow in the next section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Alias Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Arithmetic Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Category Model Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Condition Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Group Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">IP Address Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">List Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">String Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Timestamp Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Type Conversion Functions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Value List Functions</a></li> </ul>
Arguments	<p>The contents of the Arguments section vary based on the Function selected.</p> <p>Functions require one, two, or three data fields as input arguments.</p> <p>The event data field list is filtered to show only fields of the required argument type. For example, the <code>GetMonth</code> function requires a single argument of type <code>timestamp</code>, so the list only shows timestamp-related fields: Agent Receipt Time, Device Custom Date 1, Device Custom Date 2, Device Receipt Time, End Time, Event Annotation Modification Time, and so on.</p>

## Variable Functions

Variable functions let you perform various operations on values derived from event fields. Pick lists are provided as an easy way to call the event fields you want to use as parameters or arguments to a function. For those functions without pick lists of fields ([Java Mathematical Expressions](#) and [EvaluateVelocityTemplate](#)) you can use velocity expressions get values from event fields. (See [“Velocity Templates” on page 999](#).)

The following topics describe the functions provided for use, grouped by type.

## Alias Functions

Alias Function	Description
AliasField	Creates an alias (alternate name) for the specified field. Provide the alias name you want to use, and select a field from the drop-down list under Arguments.

## Arithmetic Functions

The following table describes arithmetic functions. The binary arithmetic functions like Add, Subtract, and Multiply return a result type that is the higher resolution type of the two parameters. For example, `Add(Integer, Long)` will return Long. `Multiply(Integer, Double)` will return Double. The Divide function always returns Double.

Arithmetic Functions	Description
Absolute	Returns the absolute value (its numerical value without regard to its sign) of the numeric argument. The argument may be integer, long integer, or double.
Add	Returns the result of adding the two numeric arguments together. The arguments may be integer, long integer, or double types.
Ceil	Returns the smallest integer value that is not less than the numeric argument. The argument may be integer, long integer, or double.
Divide	Returns the result of dividing the first numeric argument by the second numeric argument. The arguments may be integer, long integer, or double types, but the second argument may not evaluate to 0.
Floor	Returns the largest integer value that is not greater than the numeric argument. The argument may be integer, long integer, or double.

Arithmetic Functions	Description																			
Java Mathematical Expressions	<p>Returns the result of the evaluation of the specified Java expression. Java Mathematical Expressions are for advanced users.</p> <p>ESM does not provide error checking and messaging for your JEP expressions. Refer to the Java Math Expressions Parser web pages at <a href="http://www.singularsys.com/jep/">http://www.singularsys.com/jep/</a> for more information on writing these expressions.</p> <p><b>Supported Expressions:</b> ESM supports a subset of Java mathematical expressions (JEP), which are written like standard mathematical expressions. A JEP expression has three components: operator, function, and value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Operator</b> - Examples of operators are + - / *</li></ul> <p>JEP operators are documented in the table on this Web site: <a href="http://www.singularsys.com/jep/doc/html/operators.html">http://www.singularsys.com/jep/doc/html/operators.html</a></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Function</b> - ESM supports the following functions, which are a <b>subset</b> of functions described in <a href="http://www.singularsys.com/jep/doc/html/functions.html">http://www.singularsys.com/jep/doc/html/functions.html</a>.</li></ul> <p><b>Supported Trigonometric Functions:</b></p> <table><tr><td>sin(x)</td><td>cos(x)</td><td>asin(x)</td></tr><tr><td>acos(x)</td><td>atan(x)</td><td>atan2(y, x)</td></tr><tr><td>sinh(x)</td><td>cosh(x)</td><td>tanh(x)</td></tr><tr><td>asinh(x)</td><td>acosh(x)</td><td>atanh(x)</td></tr></table> <p><b>Supported Logarithmic and Exponential Functions:</b></p> <table><tr><td>ln(x)</td><td>log(x)</td><td>exp(x)</td></tr></table> <p><b>Miscellaneous Supported Functions:</b></p> <table><tr><td>abs(x)</td><td>rand()</td></tr><tr><td>mod(x,y)= x % y</td><td>sqrt(x)</td></tr></table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Value</b> - The values are either constants of numeric type or fields, which are referenced by the camelCase notation, such as bytesIn.</li></ul> <p>For information on how to reference fields, refer to the "Script Alias" names in <a href="#">"Data Fields" on page 837</a>.</p> <p><b>Example</b></p> <p>The expression "(bytesIn^2)/1000" squares the byteIn value of an Event and divides the result by 1000.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>All functions return a Double.</li><li>Unlike velocity references, JEP expressions do not use "\$" in front of (ArcField) <a href="#">Data Fields</a>.</li><li>Do not include mathematical operators or JME function names <i>in a variable name</i>. If you do, the JME parser interprets them as operators and returns unexpected results. Variable names that match JME function names such as sqrt cause similar problems.</li><li>Some expressions may not be valid and do not produce results. Do not use them in queries or active channels, and filters that use them cannot be used in queries or active channels.</li><li>JME variables are held only in memory and so, can be used only in Rules, Filters, and Data Monitors. They cannot be used in resources like Reports, which rely on persisted data. (There is a set of velocity references specifically for use in Reports. See <a href="#">"Velocity References for Reports" on page 1003</a> for more information.)</li></ul>	sin(x)	cos(x)	asin(x)	acos(x)	atan(x)	atan2(y, x)	sinh(x)	cosh(x)	tanh(x)	asinh(x)	acosh(x)	atanh(x)	ln(x)	log(x)	exp(x)	abs(x)	rand()	mod(x,y)= x % y	sqrt(x)
sin(x)	cos(x)	asin(x)																		
acos(x)	atan(x)	atan2(y, x)																		
sinh(x)	cosh(x)	tanh(x)																		
asinh(x)	acosh(x)	atanh(x)																		
ln(x)	log(x)	exp(x)																		
abs(x)	rand()																			
mod(x,y)= x % y	sqrt(x)																			
Multiply	Returns the product of multiplying the two numeric arguments together. The arguments may be integer, long integer, or double types.																			

Arithmetic Functions	Description
Round	Returns the closest integer to the numeric argument. The argument must be a double.
Subtract	Returns the result of subtracting the second numeric argument from the first numeric argument. The arguments may be integer, long integer, or double types.

## Category Model Functions

This function applies to Actors, a separately-licensed feature.

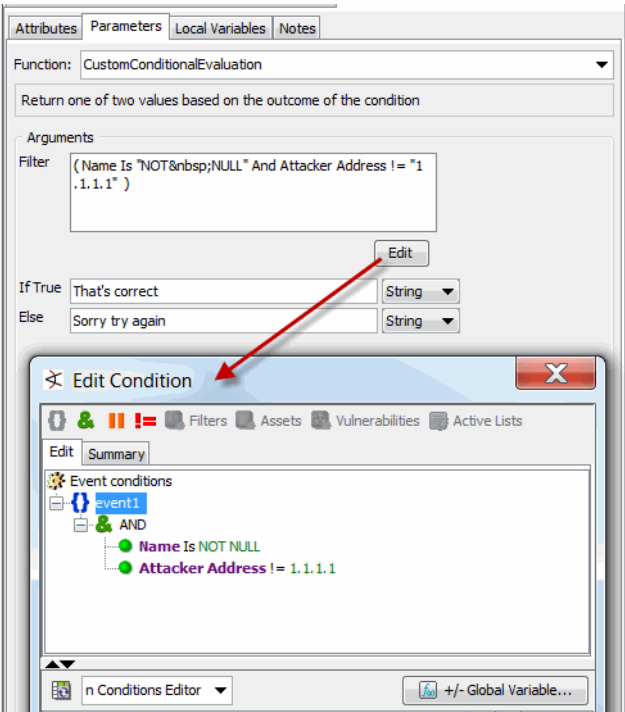
Category Model Functions	Description
HasRelationship	<p>Tests whether two actors, or an actor and a group, have the specified relationship based on a given Category Model.</p> <p><b>Category Model:</b> Select an existing category model</p> <p><b>Parent Field or Group:</b> Select a field or single-value variable you want to use as the parent. Use the Field/Group drop-down to indicate whether the parent is a field (single attribute) or a group.</p> <p><b>Child Field or Group:</b> Select the field or single-value variable you want to use as the child.</p> <p><b>Inherit All Related Actors:</b> Select <b>true</b> to include all the actors in the selected group and its children. Select <b>false</b> to include only the actors in the selected group.</p>

## Condition Functions

Condition Functions	Description
ConditionalEvaluation	The ConditionalEvaluation function takes three arguments: a filter which acts as a conditional expression, a value to return if the expression evaluates to True, and a value to return if the expression evaluates to False. The filter must be an existing Filters resource.



Condition Functions	Description
CustomConditionalEvaluation	<p>The CustomConditionalEvaluation function takes three arguments: a local filter (not defined in the Filters resource) which acts as a conditional expression, a value to return if the conditions evaluate to True, and a value to return if the conditions evaluate to False. You enter the filter statement in the text field.</p> <p>Conditions are created and edited through the Common Conditions Editor or Global Variables Selector.</p>



ReplaceNull	<p>The ReplaceNull function takes two arguments: a value to return from a test field, and if the value is Null, a replacement value to return from another field. Both test and replacement fields must be of the same type. You can also set the replacement to a constant value. For example, for a String field, the replacement value can be something like <b>Match found</b>.</p>
-------------	---

## Group Functions

There are two general types of Group functions: FormatGroups and GetGroups.

The FormatGroups functions: FormatGroupsOfAssets and FormatGroupsOfNetworkZone, return a human-readable list of asset-category URIs unexclusively, meaning that all matching and related categories are included. These variable functions mainly format and display asset category-groups. They are best used with the contents of fieldsets, reports, and data monitor fields. Avoid using the

FormatGroups functions in conditions because result order cannot be assured for multi-item groups; instead, use the GetGroups functions for ordering and consistency.

Group Functions	Description
FormatGroupsOfAsset	<p>Formats one or more matching asset category or asset group. The results are unordered.</p> <p><b>More Options</b> on the Global Variable Editor's Parameters tab:</p> <p>If <b>Anchor Point</b> is <i>start</i> or <i>base</i>, the <b>Offset</b> is the number of elements to move from the anchor point when formatting the matched category URI. If Anchor Point is <i>end</i>, the Offset is the number of elements to move to the left. For example, if Asset1 is classified as All Assets/Location/USA/CA/Cupertino, the corresponding offset formats would be:</p> <pre>USA = offset from Anchor Point by 0 CA = offset from Anchor Point by 1 Cupertino = offset from Anchor Point by 2</pre> <p>For <b>MaxCount</b>, specify the maximum number of categories to return. If the specified number is less than the number of matching categories, the returned categories are chosen at random. A Max Count of 0 means you want all categories returned.</p>
FormatGroupsOfNetworkZone	<p>Formats one or more matching network zone group or asset category group. The results are unordered.</p> <p>See FormatGroupsOfAssets description for <b>More Options</b>.</p>
GetGroupOfAsset	<p>Returns a single Asset Category or Asset Category Group, given a Base Field and Base Group. If there is more than one matching category or group, a single URI is chosen at random. Related categories are not included. Output is optimized for correlation operations.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The GetGroups (plural Groups) functions return lists of asset categories, therefore their results cannot be used in inGroup conditions. This GetGroup (singular Group) function makes it possible to select one result at random, provided the variable is defined to produce a single result.</p>
GetGroupOfNetworkZone	<p>Returns a single zone category. If multiple matches occur, a single URI is chosen at random. Related categories are not included.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The GetGroups (plural Groups) functions return lists of zones, therefore their results cannot be used in inGroup conditions. This GetGroup (singular Group) function makes it possible to select one result at random, provided the variable is defined to produce a single result.</p>
GetGroupsOfAsset	<p>Returns a list of Asset Categories or Asset Category Groups, given a Base Field and Base Group. In rule and data monitor aggregations this should produce multiple sets. In reports, this produces a comma-separated list of asset-category names. No related categories are excluded. Output is optimized for correlation operations. This function complements the FormatGroups functions. It simply shows XML representations of asset categories. Use this function in conditions and in Group By elements of rules or reports because its output is both well-ordered and consistent.</p>
GetGroupsOfNetworkZone	<p>Returns a list of Network Zone Groups or Asset Category Groups, given a Base Field and Base Group. This function complements the FormatGroups functions. It simply shows XML representations of group resources. Use this function in conditions and in Group By elements of rules or reports because its output is both well-ordered and consistent.</p>

## IP Address Functions

IP Address Function	Description
ParseIPAddress	Returns an integer from 0 to 255 to represent the value of one octet of the specified IPv4 address. For example, <code>ParseAddress(192.0.2.27, 1)</code> would return 192. <code>ParseAddress(192.0.2.27, 4)</code> would return 27.

## List Functions



Make sure you are getting values from case-sensitive lists only. Getting values from case-insensitive lists will negatively affect performance.

List Functions	Description
GetActiveListValue	Returns the value associated with a specific field of the specified Active List.
GetSessionData	Returns the value associated with a specific field of the specified Session List.  In previous releases, <code>GetSessionData</code> applied only to events. You can apply this function to any resource schema (actors, trends, cases, and so on). Now you can use this function for event and non-event schemas, and specify the time at which the session is evaluated using either a time field, a constant time, or a dynamic time. (In previous releases, non-event resources used end time by default.)

## String Functions

String Functions	Description
Concatenate	Returns the string result of joining the two string arguments. For example, <code>Concatenate("Arc", "Sight")</code> returns "ArcSight".
ConcatenateThree	Returns the string result of joining the three string arguments.
EvaluateVelocityTemplate	<b>Advanced:</b> Evaluates the <i>velocity template</i> argument and returns the result. This function is not available in a Query or Active Channel, and Filters which use this function cannot be used in a Query or Active Channel. For information on how to use Velocity Templates, See <a href="#">"Velocity Templates" on page 999</a> .
IndexOf	Returns the integer offset into the first string argument that is the location of the second string argument. For example, <code>IndexOf("Twas the night before Christmas", "night")</code> returns 9. If the second string argument is not found in the first string argument, <code>IndexOf</code> returns -1.

String Functions	Description
LastIndexOf	Returns the index (position) of the last (rightmost) occurrence of the second argument (the substring) within the first string argument (the source). If the substring is not found in the source, the function returns -1. The first position is index 0, as in the indexOf function. Examples: <code>lastIndexOf("abc/def/xyz", "/")</code> returns 7 <code>lastIndexOf("abc/def/xyz", "abc")</code> returns 0 <code>lastIndexOf("abc/def/xyz", "klm")</code> returns -1
LengthOf	Returns the number of characters in the string argument. For example, <code>LengthOf("Twas the night before Christmas")</code> returns 31. <code>LengthOf("")</code> is 0.
Substring	Returns a portion of the first string argument, starting with the position specified in the second, numeric, argument and including the ending position as the sum of the number of characters and the starting position, specified in the third, numeric, argument. For example, <code>Substring("Twas the night", 5, 8)</code> returns "the".
ToLower	Returns the string argument converted to all lowercase. For example, <code>ToLower("Inline Filter")</code> returns "inline filter". Numbers and other non-alphabetic characters are not affected.
ToUpper	Returns the string argument converted to all uppercase. For example, <code>ToUpper("Inline Filter")</code> returns "INLINE FILTER". Numbers and other non-alphabetic characters are not affected.

## Timestamp Functions

The choices for Time Zone are:

Time Zone	Description
Default Time Zone	The Manager time zone
Agent Time Zone	The time zone of the Connector which sent the event
Original Agent Time Zone	The time zone of the first Connector in a possible chain of connectors which sent the event
Device Time Zone	The time zone of the originally-reporting device
Final Device Time Zone	The time zone of the device which reported to the original Connector

## Discrepancies in Values Returned by TimesStamp Functions

With certain resources, you might observe some discrepancy in values returned by TimeStamp functions and End Time if ArcSight Manager and ArcSight Console are in different timezones. Following are the scenarios where the discrepancy occurs:

- For query viewers and data monitors, a Timestamp function (for example, `GetDayOfWeek`) gets the value from the Manager's timezone, and End Time gets the value from the Console's timezone.
- For reports, End Time values and values returned by TimeStamp functions are consistent with the Manager's timezone.

- For active channels, End Time values and values returned by TimeStamp functions are consistent with the Console's timezone.

TimeStamp Functions	Description
GetCurrentTime	<p>Returns the current time in the format DD Mo YYYY hh:mm:ss TIMEZONE, for example 25 Jun 2014 14:05:18 PDT</p> <p>The returned time is based on the client time.</p>
GetDayOfMonth	Returns an integer from 1 to 31 to represent the day of the month, based on the selected timestamp
GetDayOfWeek	<p>Returns an integer from 0 to 6 (0 is Sunday) to represent the day of the week, based on the selected timestamp. The associated day of the week (for example "Sunday") is displayed on the ArcSight Console.</p> <p>You can test the value returned by this function using numeric operations like &gt; , &lt; , &gt;= , &lt;= , = .</p> <p>For example, for a variable called "day" that contains the value returned by the GetDayOfWeek function, you can create an AND logical operator that checks for a weekday with these conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• day &gt;= Monday</li> <li>• day &lt;= Friday</li> </ul>
GetDayOfYear	Returns an integer from 1 to 366 to represent the day of the year, based on the selected timestamp.
GetHour	Returns an integer from 0 to 23 to represent the hour of the day, based on the selected timestamp.
GetMinute	Returns an integer from 0 to 59 to represent the minute of the hour, based on the selected timestamp.
GetMonth	Returns an integer from 1 to 12 to represent the month of the year, based on the selected timestamp.
GetYear	Returns an integer for the year based on the selected timestamp and displays it as a 4-digit integer.
TimeDifference	Returns the result of subtracting the second timestamp argument from the first timestamp argument, in a human-readable format.
TimeDifferenceInDays	Returns the result of subtracting the second timestamp argument from the first timestamp argument, in days.
TimeDifferenceInHours	Returns the result of subtracting the second timestamp argument from the first timestamp argument, in hours.
TimeDifferenceInMinutes	Returns the result of subtracting the second timestamp argument from the first timestamp argument, in minutes.
TimeDifferenceInSeconds	Returns the result of subtracting the second timestamp argument from the first timestamp argument, in seconds.

TimeStamp Functions	Description
TimestampGranularity	<p>Returns timestamp values at a granular level. This function is only available for in-memory operations like rules, data monitors, and channels; but not for reports, queries, and trends.</p> <p>Includes the following timestamp granularity options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>get_year_only</b> <p>Returns a timestamp value of the first day of the year, first month of the year, and year; and zeroes out the hours, minutes, and seconds. For example, for a given timestamp of 4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 <i>&lt;Manager timezone&gt;</i>, the calculated value is</p> <pre>1 Jan 2011 00:00:00 &lt;Manager timezone&gt;</pre> </li> <li> <b>get_year_month</b> <p>Returns a timestamp value of the first of the month, month, and year; and zeroes out the hours, minutes, and seconds. For example, for a given timestamp of 4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 <i>&lt;timezone&gt;</i>, the calculated value is</p> <pre>1 Oct 2011 00:00:00 &lt;Manager timezone&gt;</pre> </li> <li> <b>get_year_month_day</b> <p>Returns a timestamp value of the date, month, and year only; and zeroes out the hours, minutes, and seconds. For example, for a given timestamp of 4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 <i>&lt;timezone&gt;</i>, the calculated value is</p> <pre>4 Oct 2011 00:00:00 &lt;Manager timezone&gt;</pre> </li> <li> <b>get_year_month_day_hh</b> <p>Returns a timestamp value of the current date, month, year, and hours; and zeroes out the minutes and seconds. For example, for a given timestamp of 4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 <i>&lt;timezone&gt;</i>, the calculated value is</p> <pre>4 Oct 2011 15:00:00 &lt;Manager timezone&gt;</pre> </li> <li> <b>get_year_month_day_hhmm</b> <p>Returns a timestamp value of the current date, month, year, hours, and minutes; and zeroes out the seconds. For example, for a given timestamp of 4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 <i>&lt;timezone&gt;</i>, the calculated value is</p> <pre>4 Oct 2011 15:19:00 &lt;Manager timezone&gt;</pre> </li> <li> <b>get_year_month_day_hhmmss</b> <p>Returns a timestamp value of the date, month, year, hours, minutes, and seconds. For example, for a given timestamp of 4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 <i>&lt;timezone&gt;</i>, the calculated value is</p> <pre>4 Oct 2011 15:19:52 &lt;Manager timezone&gt;</pre> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You can test how each timestamp granularity option calculates the value before saving. The Manager's timezone is used in calculation.</p>

## Type Conversion Functions

Type Conversion Functions	Description
ConvertAddressToString	Converts a given IPv4 address to a string format, similar to how these are shown in an active channel (for example, 192.168.1.1).
ConvertListToString	<p>Takes as an argument the value of a multi-valued list entry and returns it as a comma-separated string (with each entry in the same format as displayed in a channel).</p> <p>For example, suppose you have a session list set up to show user names and IP addresses associated with login sessions. You could get user names from the session list via the <code>GetSessionData</code> variable. If there are three user names on the list (for example, darren, samantha, and endora), the <code>ConvertListToString</code> variable will return the three names (for example, [darren, samantha, endora]). You could do the same with IP addresses.</p> <p>To use this variable, first add a <a href="#">GetSessionData</a> variable. The nested fields that show up in the field selector (<code>&lt;VariableNameFromSessionList&gt;.&lt;FieldName&gt;</code>) can then be selected as arguments to this function.</p> <p>For more about session lists, see <a href="#">"Identity Correlation" on page 487</a> and <a href="#">"List Authoring" on page 511</a>.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See also <code>ConvertStringToList</code>.</li> <li>• This works for both multi-valued session lists and active lists with overlapping entries.</li> <li>• The <code>ConvertListToString</code> variable is held only in memory; therefore you can only use it in Rules, Filters, and Data Monitors. You cannot use the function in resources like Queries and Reports, which rely on persisted data. (There is a set of velocity references specifically for use in Reports. See <a href="#">"Velocity References for Reports" on page 1003</a> for more information.)</li> <li>• More list functions are shown in <a href="#">"List Functions" on page 991</a>.</li> </ul>
ConvertNumberToString	Takes as an argument any number (integer, double, and so on) and returns it as a string.
ConvertResourceToReference	Takes a resource, for example, an asset, and converts it to a reference. Use this on an asset field you want, for example, Target Asset. This allows you to use a rule action to aggregate on that function, then use it to add an asset to an active list through the list's asset reference subtype.
ConvertStringToDouble	Returns a double (floating point number) based on the selected string. For example, if a character string event field contained "3.19", <code>ConvertStringToDouble</code> would return a numeric value of 3.19.
ConvertStringToInteger	Returns an integer based on the selected string.
ConvertStringToIPAddress	<p>This in-memory function takes an IPv4 address string and returns the IP address value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This function is held only in memory; therefore you can only use it in Rules, Filters, and Data Monitors. You cannot use the function in resources like Queries and Reports, which rely on persisted data.</p>

Type Conversion Functions (Continued)	Description
ConvertStringToList	Takes as an argument a comma-separated string and returns it as a multi-valued list. (See also ConvertListToString.) You have the option to specify a separator string other than the default comma, such as a pipe ( ).  <b>Note:</b> ConvertStringToList is held only in memory; therefore you can only use it in Rules, Filters, and Data Monitors. You cannot use the function in resources like Queries and Reports, which rely on persisted data.
ConvertStringToLong	Returns a long (very large integer) based on the selected string.

Example

To use Type Conversion functions such as ConvertListToString and GetSizeOfList variables, first create a GetLoginsSessionData variable function, then select fields from that variable as arguments for these Type Conversion functions:

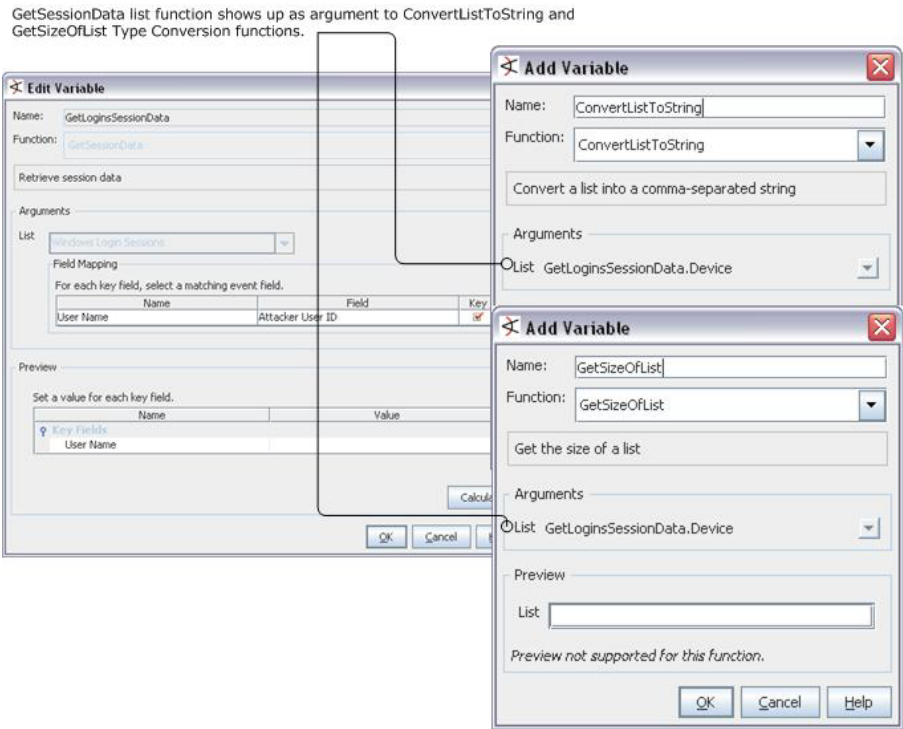


Figure 25-1 Using Results of GetSessionData for List-related Type Conversion Functions

Value List Functions

All functions in this category are for in-memory operations only. See [“Variable Functions for In-Memory Operations” on page 998](#) for detailed information.

Make sure you are getting values from case-sensitive lists only. Getting values from case-insensitive lists will negatively affect performance.



Value List Functions	Description
DistinctListValue	Takes a list and returns list elements, <i>excluding</i> null and duplicate values. The entries are enclosed in double quotes and separated by commas.
GetListElement	Takes two parameters, a list field and a list index (an integer), and returns the value from the specified <i>n</i> th index. The first list element is index 0. See <a href="#">“Example” on page 998</a> .
GetSizeOfList	<p>Takes as an argument the value of a multi-valued list entry and returns the size of the list.</p> <p>For example, suppose you have a session list set up to show user names and IP addresses associated with login sessions. You could get user names from the session list via the <code>GetSessionData</code> variable. If there are three user names on the list (for example, darren, samantha, and endora), the <code>GetSizeOfList</code> variable will return the number of names on the list (for example, [3]). You could do the same with the IP addresses.</p> <p>To use this variable, first add a <code>GetSessionData</code> variable. The nested fields that show up in the field selector (<code>&lt;VariableNameFromSessionList&gt;.&lt;FieldName&gt;</code>) can then be selected as arguments to this function.</p> <p>For more about session lists, see <a href="#">“Identity Correlation” on page 487</a> and <a href="#">“List Authoring” on page 511</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This works for both multi-valued session lists and active lists with overlapping entries.</li> <li>The <code>GetSizeOfList</code> variable is held only in memory and, therefore, can be used only in Rules, Filters, and Data Monitors. It cannot be used in resources like Reports, which rely on persisted data. (There is a set of velocity references specifically for use in Reports. See <a href="#">“Velocity References for Reports” on page 1003</a> for more information.)</li> <li>More list functions are shown in <a href="#">“List Functions” on page 991</a>.</li> </ul>
ListIntersection	<p>Takes two lists and returns a single list containing values that are <i>common</i> to both lists, including null and duplicate values. Entries are enclosed in double quotes and separated by commas. Null values are represented as empty strings (“”). If List1 and List2 each contain one null value and 1.0.0.1, this interested list is returned:</p> <pre>"", "", "1.0.0.1", "1.0.0.1"</pre>
ListUnion	Takes two lists and returns a single list containing combined entries of both lists, including duplicates and null values. The entries are enclosed in double quotes and separated by commas. Null values are represented as empty strings (“”).
NonNullListValues	Takes one list and returns a list of elements <i>except</i> null values. The entries are enclosed in double quotes and separated by commas.
SortListValues	Takes one list and returns a list of elements, <i>excluding</i> null values, sorted in ascending order. The entries are enclosed in double quotes and separated by commas.

### Example

The following example shows how to use [ConvertStringToList](#), [GetListElement](#), and [ConvertStringToIpAddress](#) functions. In this scenario, you would like to extract the IP address from an active list containing expired audit events. The scenario uses the value from DeviceCustomString4, where list elements are separated by a pipe (|):

```
desktop1.somecompany.com|mwhit|111.222.333.444|Antartica|ENG
```

In the above string, the IP address is list element index **2**. To extract the IP address, you would create a chain of three variables as follows:

- 1 parse\_expired\_entry = ConvertStringToList(DeviceCustomString4, "|")
- 2 get\_ip\_elem = GetListElement(parse\_expired\_entry, 2)
- 3 converted\_ipa = ConvertStringToIpAddress(get\_ip\_elem)

## Variable Availability and Contexts

Not all variables are available in all contexts.

These functions are only available for use with event schemas: [ConditionalEvaluation](#), [HasRelationship](#), and [AliasField](#). These functions are not available for use in SQL based operations: [ConvertListToString](#), [ConvertStringToList](#), [GetSizeOfList](#), [EvaluateVelocityTemplate](#), and [Java Mathematical Expressions](#).

Active Channels can evaluate [Group Functions](#), [Category Model Functions](#), and [List Functions](#) only by sending a request to the Manager. (These are not evaluated on the ArcSight Console side, unlike other variable functions.) If you create active channels that use these function types, keep in mind that there will be a slight delay in an ArcSight Console channel display of these values. This applies to all variables that use functions in any of these categories ([Group Functions](#), [Category Model Functions](#), and [List Functions](#)).

See ["Applying a Field Set to an Active Channel"](#) on page 80.

## Variable Functions for In-Memory Operations

Functions listed below are used for *in-memory* operations only. This means you only use them on rules, filters, and data monitors. Such functions will not work on queries, reports, and active channels, which rely on persisted data.

- [Java Mathematical Expressions](#)
- [EvaluateVelocityTemplate](#)
- [TimestampGranularity](#)
- [ConvertListToString](#)
- [ConvertResourceToReference](#)
- [ConvertStringToIpAddress](#)
- [ConvertStringToList](#)
- All functions in [Value List Functions](#)

## Velocity Templates

ESM supports the use of *velocity templates* or scripts as defined by The Apache Velocity Project (<http://velocity.apache.org/>). Velocity templates are a means of specifying dynamic or variable inputs to, or outputs from, underlying Java code.

There are a number of places where a person familiar with Velocity templates can specify inputs using Velocity, instead of a literal value, to greatly enhance the results.



**Caution**

### Velocity templates are an advanced user feature

- Because Velocity templates have such wide-ranging and intricate possibilities, mis-application or inappropriate application is entirely possible. HP cannot assume responsibility for adverse results caused by user-supplied Velocity templates.
- HP ArcSight does not provide error checking or error messaging for user-created velocity expressions. Refer to the Apache Velocity Project web page at <http://velocity.apache.org/> for more information on using velocity templates.
- Velocity template based variables are held only in memory and, therefore, can be used only in Rules, Filters, and Data Monitors. Velocity template based variables cannot be used in resources like Reports, which rely on persisted data. (There is a set of velocity references specifically for use in Reports. See “[Velocity References for Reports](#)” on page 1003 for more information.)
- **Referencing Variables, Fields, and Domains in Velocity Expressions.** Any variable that a velocity expression references must be local to the resource. You can refer to local variables, fields, and domain fields in a velocity expression.

If you have a global variable that you want to use in a velocity expression,

use the +/-Global Variable button  on the [Common Conditions Editor \(CCE\)](#) to make it available in the resource. For more information, see “[Adding or Removing Global Variables Using the CCE](#)” on page 829.

For more information on variables in general, see “[Variables](#)” on page 982 and “[Global Variables](#)” on page 445.

## Velocity Application Points

Velocity template support appears both in the user interfaces and in certain configuration files. The designated Velocity access points are described in the following table. Stated briefly, Velocity templates can be applied in most places where a literal string might be enhanced by a conditional or variable string. Common examples are formatting time expressions or condensing fine units into more meaningful groupings.

### Velocity Template Usages

Application Point	Description
Rules Action Parameters	You can use Velocity templates in Add Action dialog boxes to create or edit fired-rule behavior. You get to these from the Actions tab or the Rules Editor. The <b>Command</b> and <b>Parameters</b> fields for Execute Command actions are Velocity candidates, as is the message-subject text in the <b>Message</b> field of Send Notification actions.

---

**Velocity Template Usages (Continued)**


---

Application Point	Description
Custom Columns	Velocity templates are also applicable in the Cell Format and ToolTip Format panels of the Custom Columns Editor, which are described in <a href="#">"Customizing Columns" on page 100</a> .
SmartConnector Configuration	The URI strings in the Default Content tab of the Connector Editor can accept Velocity templates.
Case Audit Events	Audit events concerning cases can also be customized with Velocity templates, through properties files. In the case.default.properties or case.properties files (which overrides the former file), found at \$ARCSIGHT_HOME/config/audit, you can replace the expression in a key-value pair with a template variable or specify an additional field.
Notification Messages	In addition to using the <b>Message</b> field of Send Notification actions in the Add Action dialog box, you can also add Velocity templates to the destination-oriented notification configuration files located with the ArcSight Manager at \$ARCSIGHT_HOME/config/notification. This text controls message <b>content</b> (in contrast to the subject line).
Reports Text Fields	You can use a specific set of Velocity references for Report parameters when creating, editing, scheduling or running Reports and Focused Reports. Velocity references for Reports are covered in detail in <a href="#">"Velocity References for Reports" on page 1003</a> .

---

## Using Velocity Expressions to Retrieve Values from Event Fields or Variables

Velocity expressions can be used to construct rule actions or velocity variables that need to access values in event fields or other variables. **Rule actions** can use velocity expressions in commands and notification messages. In these contexts, you need to write the velocity expression (there are no drop-down lists of fields provided, unlike in *rule conditions*). (See ["Creating Rule Actions" on page 417](#) and ["Rule Actions Reference" on page 422](#).)

You can construct most **global variables** and **local variables** simply by using the provided pick lists of event fields in the **functions**. However, the Arithmetic function [Java Mathematical Expressions](#) and the String function [EvaluateVelocityTemplate](#) are velocity variables that require you to write a velocity expression. (See ["Local and Global Variables" on page 984](#).)

The syntax for constructing a velocity expression is the same, whether for rule actions or velocity variables.

### Retrieving Values from Event Fields

To retrieve the value of an event field, use the field name in camel notation without any spaces, preceded by a dollar sign (\$):

```
$<fieldNameInCamelNotation>
```

For example, to retrieve the value of the Attacker Address field, use: \$attackerAddress

For more about event fields, see ["Data Fields" on page 837](#).

## Using Variables in a Velocity Expression

To retrieve the value of a variable, use the variable name preceded by a dollar sign (\$). If the variable name contains a dot, remove the dot and use camel case. If the variable name contains a space, use an underscore. See the following formats:

```
$<VariableName>
$<variable_Name>
```

For example:

Variable display name	Velocity notation
Credit Card Number	\$Credit_Card_Number
dhcp.Hostname	\$dhcpHostname
Login User.Account Number	\$Login_UserAccount_Number

For more about variables, see [“Variables” on page 982](#).

## Using Velocity Expressions in Rule Actions

You can use velocity expressions in rule actions to retrieve the value of an event field or variable. These expressions can be used in commands or notification messages in rule actions.

For details syntax and guidance on constructing velocity expressions for use in rules, see [“Using Velocity Expressions to Retrieve Values from Event Fields or Variables” on page 1000](#)

### Example of Rule Action that Uses Velocity Expressions to Retrieve Values

Following is an example of using both types of velocity expressions in a rule action to retrieve values from an event field (`Attacker Address`) and a variable (`dhcp.Hostname`):

- 1 In the Navigator panel, choose **Rules** from the drop-down menu.
- 2 Create or edit a rule.
- 3 Click the **Actions** tab.
- 4 Right-click a rule action and choose the **Send Notification** rule action.

The notification subject can be constructed as follows:

```
"Brute force login attempt from IP Address: $attackerAddress
Hostname: $dhcpHostname"
```

- 5 Click **OK** or **Apply** to save the rule.

When the rule action is triggered, the notification message will replace the event field velocity expression "\$attackerAddress" with the value of the Attacker Address field, and the variable velocity expression "\$dhcpHostname" for the value of dhcp.Hostname.

## Examples

You might use a Velocity template in a Zone URI field in an Connector Configuration Editor to specify a conditional target, as in:

```
#if( $deviceHostName.equals("foobar"))/All Customers/SuperCustomer#end
```

If you are setting up zones based on customers and you want to populate those values dynamically, you could use the following statement to populate fields based on host names, etc. For example, if you have one connector that collects events from devices monitoring different customers networks, you may want to set the customer name based on the device hostname.

```
device hostname = companyx.arcsight.com
```

The following template sets the customer name to **arcsight.com**:

```
CustomerURI=/All  
Customers/$deviceHostName.substring($deviceHostName.indexOf("."))
```

You can set the customer field from the SmartConnector as well, so events from a particular SmartConnector or device can be tagged as **customer xyz** (provided that Customer URI does exist on the Manager) and you can make ACLs limiting the customers' event privileges so they see only events tagged as **customer xyz**. If you have one SmartConnector that monitors devices reporting from multiple customers, you can dynamically set the customer name to be based on the device hostname. For example, if you have a customer named **arcsight** and the device hostname is **device1.arcsight.com**, the following template returns **arcsight** as the customer name:

```
CustomerURI=/All  
Customers/$deviceHostName.substring($deviceHostName.indexOf("."),$  
deviceHostName.lastIndexOf(".")) .substring(1)
```

The result would be the URI: /All Customers/arcsight

For a case audit event in `case.default.properties`, a template could consist of:

```
deviceCustomString3=$history
```

## Usage Tips

- **Strings and numeric values only.** Velocity templates apply **only** to fields that contain string or numeric values.
- **Dynamic parameters and ArcSight variables.** You can use all of the dynamic time parameters you see in the Active Channel Editor and elsewhere, such as `$Now` and `$CurrentDateTime`. The same is true for time elements, including `s` (second), `m` (minute), `d` (date), `M` (month), `w` (week), and `y` (year). To use any event data field as a variable, express its displayed name as a one-word, camel case string prefixed with a dollar sign. For example, "Source Address" would be `$sourceAddress`. For details about using variables in a velocity expression, see ["Using Variables in a Velocity Expression" on page 1001](#).
- **Regular expressions not supported.** Use of regular expressions is not tested or supported.
- **Test using active channel custom field.** You can conveniently test Velocity templates by trying them first in a customField of an active channel.

## Velocity References for Reports

The following Velocity references are available for use in [Reports](#) anywhere where Text is used. These references pick up, contain, display, and print the given values. Generally, Velocity references in Reports are used for display and print purposes when creating, editing, scheduling or running Reports and Focused Reports. In some cases, they are used for more than that. For example in archived reports, `$Archive_Report_Folder` and `$Archive_Report_Name` determine the location where reports will be stored.



Note

The following table shows the complete set of applicable references for use with Reports. Other types of references (such as those discussed in the previous sections of this topic) do not apply to Reports. However, most of the [Usage Tips](#) detailed above also do apply to Velocity Templates for Reports.

### Velocity References for Reports

Category	Reference	Description
Report	<code>\$ReportName</code>	Prints the name of the report, as specified in the Name field on the Attributes tab of the Report Editor.
	<code>\$AccessDisclaimer</code>	Prints a disclaimer statement regarding the user permissions with which the report was run. The disclaimer statement is a read-only string which is generated when report data has been filtered due to limited access privileges of the user  Reports are generated only with data for which the current user has access privileges. Depending on user permissions for the user running a given report, access to some types of events or data may be curtailed. In such cases, the report is generated with all the information for which the user has access privileges. Events and data requiring higher-level access privileges are not included in the report. The access disclaimer statement is a standard explanation of the limitations of such a report.
	<code>\$CurrentPageNumber</code>	Prints the current page number of the report.
	<code>\$TotalPageNumber</code>	Prints the total number of pages in the report.
Time	<code>\$CurrentDateTime</code>	Prints the current date and time. (Same as <code>\$Now</code> )  Example output: 12-06-2011-15:32:19.  <b>Tip:</b> Formats for dates and times depend on your Console preference settings. To change the way dates and times are displayed throughout the Console, choose <b>Edit &gt; Preferences</b> , then click the <b>Date &amp; Time</b> button. For more information, see <a href="#">"Changing User Preferences" on page 732</a> .

**Velocity References for Reports (Continued)**

Category	Reference	Description
	\$CurrentDate	Prints the current date per your format preferences. Example output: 12-06-2011.
	\$CurrentMonth	Prints the current month. Example output: 12-2011.
	\$CurrentWeek	Prints the current week. Example output: 49-2011 (for December of 2011).
	\$Now	Prints the current date and time. (Same as \$CurrentDateTime) Example output: 12-06-2011-15:33:00.
	\$Today	Prints today's date. Example output: 12-06-2011-00:00:00.
	\$CurrentDateTime-<Number>d	Prints the current date and time minus the number of days you specify. For example, if you ran the report on 12-06-2011 at 15:33:00 and specified the current date and time minus 1 day (\$CurrentDateTime-1d), this reference would output 12-05-2011-15:33:00. If, on the same day, you specified the current date and time minus 3 days (\$CurrentDateTime-3d), this reference would output 12-03-2011-15:33:00



## Velocity References for Reports (Continued)

Category	Reference	Description
Parameters	\$Report_Format	<p>Prints the name of the report format that is configured as the default. Output formats are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>pdf</b> - Adobe PDF file.</li> <li>• <b>xls</b> - Microsoft Excel file for tables and charts. (See <a href="#">Table 10-5 on page 356</a> in the <a href="#">Creating Reports</a> topic for additional notes on the <b>Report Format</b> attribute, specifically on the XLS format.)</li> <li>• <b>rtf</b> - Rich-text format document</li> <li>• <b>csv</b> - Tabular data as a list of comma-separated values.</li> <li>• <b>html</b> - Web page displayed by the default web browser</li> </ul> <p>If the default output format for the report is set to html, then \$Report_Format reference simply will print the word <b>html</b>.</p> <p>See <a href="#">"Setting Report Parameters: Default and Custom" on page 355</a> in the <a href="#">Creating Reports</a> topic for information on how to set the default output formats for reports when creating reports.</p> <p>See also <a href="#">"Report Parameters" on page 381</a> in for information about setting parameters at report runtime.</p>
	\$Page_Size	<p>Prints the page size of the report.</p> <p>Example output: Letter [8.5x11 in]</p>
	\$Run_as_User	<p>Prints the user name specified, if any, for the <b>Run as User</b> parameter in the report.</p>
	\$Email_to	<p>Prints the e-mail address specified, if any, for the <b>Email to</b> parameter in the report.</p>
	\$Email_Format	<p>Prints the e-mail format specified, if any, for the <b>Email Format</b> parameter in the report. For example, <b>Send URL</b> or <b>Attach Report</b>.</p>
	\$Filter_by	<p>Prints the filters used by the referenced query for this report.</p>
	\$Archive_Report_Folder	<p>Prints the folder location where the archived report is stored.</p>
	\$Archive_Report_Name	<p>Prints the name of the archived report.</p>
	\$Archive_Report_Expiration_Time	<p>Prints the expiration time for an archived report.</p>

## Velocity References for Reports (Continued)

Category	Reference	Description
	<code>\$&lt;ComponentID&gt;.Row_Limit</code>	<p>Prints the row limit for the specified component.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> <code>&lt;ComponentID&gt;</code> refers to the data components or building blocks of a report. To view the components of a given report, right-click the report in the Navigator panel, choose Edit Report, and click the <b>Data</b> tab for the report.</p> <p>For example, if the report contains a component called Table, you can display related information by using the Velocity reference <code>\$Table.Row_Limit</code>, <code>\$Table.Time_Zone</code>, and so forth.</p> <p>Similarly, if the report contains components called Chart1, Chart2, and Chart3; you can display related information on each of the charts by using references such as <code>Chart1.Time_Zone</code>, <code>Chart2.Start_Time</code>, and so forth.</p>
	<code>\$&lt;ComponentID&gt;.Time_Zone</code>	<p>Prints the time zone for the specified component.</p> <p>For example, <code>Table.Time_Zone</code> would output the time zone used for the data in a component called Table in your report.</p> <p>Example output: <b>America/Los_Angeles</b></p>
	<code>\$&lt;ComponentID&gt;.Start_Time</code>	<p>Prints the start time for the specified component.</p> <p>For example, <code>Table.Start_Time</code> would output the start time used for the data in a component called Table in your report. (Start Time is a report parameter that can be configured on a per-component basis.)</p> <p>Example output: 12/05/2011 17:46:50.406-0800</p>
	<code>\$&lt;ComponentID&gt;.End_Time</code>	<p>Prints the end time for the specified component.</p> <p>For example, <code>Table.End_Time</code> would output the end time used for the data in a component called Table in your report. (End Time is a report parameter which can be configured on a per-component basis.)</p> <p>Example output: 12/05/2011 18:00:21.140-0800</p>
	<code>\$&lt;ComponentID&gt;.&lt;Parameter_name&gt;</code>	Prints the value of the specified component parameter.
	<code>\$Custom.&lt;Parameter_name&gt;</code>	Prints the value a custom component parameter.

## Views

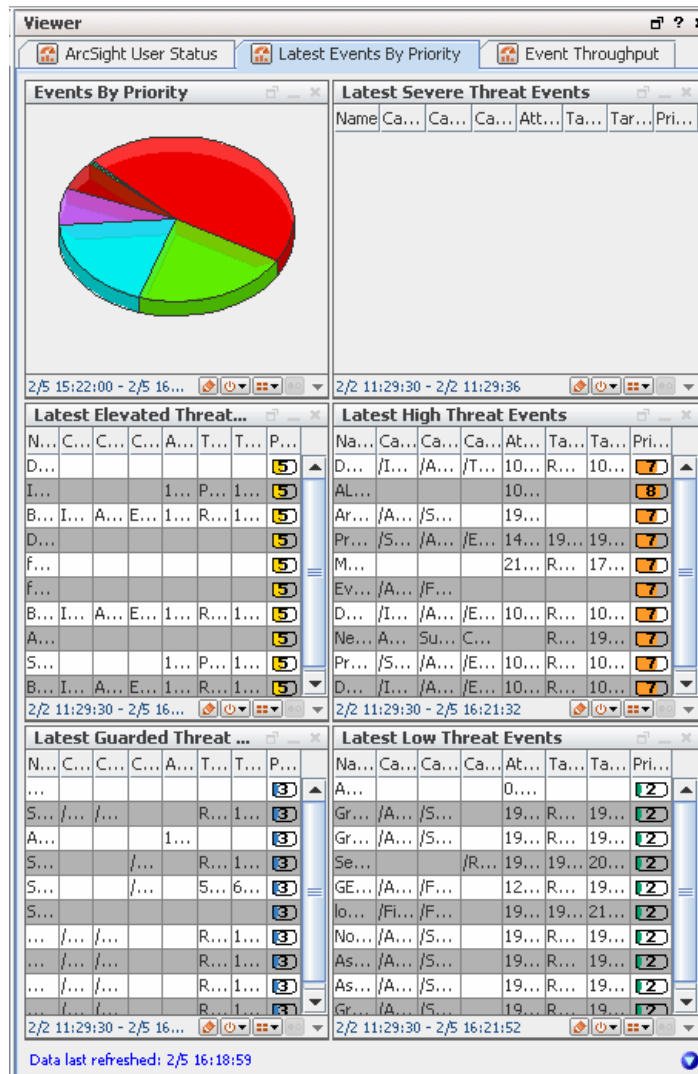
"Views" is a collective term for all the different options you have for seeing raw and processed [Events](#) information in the ArcSight Console's Viewer panel.

The Console's Viewer panel can display event information in several formats and is readily customizable. Views may be customized to best reflect an enterprise and can be organized in a hierarchical structure with drill-down functionality. There is a list of chart-format views in addition to grids, maps, and dashboards.

See also ["Viewing" on page 47](#) and ["Monitoring Active Channels" on page 77](#).

## View Types

Each view type represented by a tab at the **top** of the Viewer panel serves as a container for all individual instances of that type of view. For example, all data monitors opened in a dashboard remain part of it, and also inherit any visual choices you make for that view. Using the **View Layout** icon at the lower-right corner of the Viewer panel you can choose to tile or tab the individual views. When you tab the views, you select them using the tabs at the **bottom** of the panel.



With views you have the flexibility to monitor an enterprise from various perspectives. Views can be customized to best capture and reflect an enterprise's network infrastructure and can also be organized in a hierarchical structure with drill-down functionality. Views can vary in scope and scale, from broad to detailed, depending on how the enterprise is monitored and organized.

The ArcSight Console provides different views in which you can display event data in the Viewer panel. You can select which views to display by selecting options from the Views menu.

## Other Views

The Viewer panel automatically shows HTML information such as reports, reference pages, results for the Web Search tool, and notifications in its Viewer tabs (as described in [“Viewing” on page 47](#).) The Viewer panel is also where you use the Find Resource query editor and result details display. (See also, [“Finding Resources” on page 629](#).)

## Dashboards

Dashboards provide a more customized view of data, letting you create individual "instrument panels," each of which can display results based on different event data and filter conditions, and in different formats.

From the Viewer panel, you can change the view type or format of individual tabs from grid to line chart, bar chart, pie chart, or graphic. In addition, you can **float** the display of individual sub-view tabs, dashboards, and individual data monitors into separate windows to expand or resize individual displays.

While chart views display a summary of events, grid views display each event. Grid views display events organized in rows and columns. As new events occur, they are inserted at the top of the grid as a new row. Rows contain events while columns contain data fields.

## Vulnerabilities

A vulnerability is a hardware, firmware, or software state that leaves an automated information system (AIS) open for potential exploitation. It could be due to anything, including circumstance, configuration, design, or implementation. A vulnerability can also be described as a weakness in automated system security procedures, administrative controls, physical layout, internal controls, and so forth, that could be exploited by a threat to gain unauthorized access to information or disrupt critical processing.

Vulnerabilities are discovered using scanners and their associated SmartConnectors. The Manager imports the output from vulnerability scanners, recording them as items in the Vulnerabilities resource tree, in the Assets section of the Navigator panel. Vulnerabilities are mapped to their associated devices. Vulnerabilities describe asset threats and exposures and provide more information with a link to Knowledge Base articles or notes.

## Vulnerability Groups

Vulnerability groups are created to store similar groups of vulnerabilities in a single location. Groups can be created within groups to meet enterprise needs. When a group is created within a group, the new group inherits the existing group's permissions. If a group is deleted, the vulnerabilities within that group are also deleted. The following groups are provided:

- **Shared:** vulnerabilities to which logged-in users have permission.
- **Unassigned:** vulnerabilities that are not assigned to a group.

If you have Administrator access you will have another group named All Vulnerabilities that contains all vulnerability groups and vulnerabilities.

## Standardized Vulnerability Tracking

In the Vulnerabilities tab of the Assets resource tree, there is a branch for using the MITRE Corporation's CVE (Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures) standardized vulnerability naming and reference system.

CVE is a list (dictionary) of standardized names for vulnerabilities and other information security exposures. CVE seeks to standardize the names for all publicly known vulnerabilities and security exposures.

You can map CVE as one of its vulnerability reference authorities, within its Navigator panel resource tree. This information can serve, for example, to determine the significance of IDS events. The goal of CVE is to provide a common naming scheme, shared by vulnerability scanners and other security devices to link real-time events to asset vulnerabilities.

You can search its CVE-related Navigator panel resources by CVE name, and to include CVE names in its ArcSight Console or report output.

The requirements for CVE compatibility are fulfilled by the capacity to analyze event streams utilizing CVE names, generate reports for CVE-related vulnerabilities, map events to asset vulnerabilities, and the existence of documentation for CVE-related functionality.

## Web Browsers

You can launch HTML-based displays in an external Web browser from the ArcSight Console.

### Browser Preferences for HTML Displays

The ArcSight Console offers a general preference option for HTML display of various information in your preferred external Web browser

The way you set these browser preferences determines display of reports, knowledge base articles, graphs and charts, and so forth. (For information on the general setting for HTML viewing preferences, see the table on [Program Preferences](#) for information on preferred Web browsers.)

### Browser Preference Overrides for Specific Features

Additionally, you can set your viewer preference for HTML displays specifically for certain features, and override the general preference setting for these specific displays. Some examples are:

- Integration command configurations (including integrated Logger searches and NSP TRM commands). HTML display preferences for integrated command results are set as attributes on the command configuration. See ["Configurations Attributes" on page 566](#) in [Integration Commands](#) for more information.
- Online Help. You can set a preference specific to the Online Help for display in an external Web browser.

## Browser Display Requirements

ArcSight Console features such as custom view dashboards, NSP TRM maps and charts, and the ArcSight Console Online Help require a Web browser with Adobe Flash and Javascript enabled.

You must have the Flash Player to view the custom view dashboards. If you have a 64-bit operating system, use a 32-bit Web browser. The Flash Player does not run on most 64-bit browsers. By default, Windows uses the 32-bit version of Internet Explorer on Windows 64-bit systems.



# Index

---

## A

- access control list (ACL)
  - for editing user group permissions 607
  - for event permissions 609
  - for operations permissions 606
  - for resource permissions 604
  - for sortable field set permissions 611
  - glossary definition 749
- acknowledge notification 138
- ACL, *see access control list*
- action 751
  - permissions 606
  - specify 138
  - summary 140
- active channel 751
  - active list and 753
  - actor channel 199
  - applying resources as filters 182
  - charts 91
  - collaborating on events 168
  - event count 82
  - investigating actors in channel 205
  - modify with filters 186
  - optimize 86
  - performance, best practices 86
  - query viewer comparison 86
  - replay-with-rules 439
  - report from grid view 383
  - using field set 155
  - variables 982
  - view panel 47
  - viewing and using 78
- active list 753
  - audit events for 949
  - automating with rule actions 949
  - case-insensitive lookups 517
  - cumulative numeric types 516
  - exporting 522
  - fields-based, event-based 511
  - for identity correlation 502
  - importing 522
  - in trend actions 327
  - multi-mapped values 513
  - partially cached 513
  - pattern 139
  - rules for add, remove items to 427
  - time partitioned 513
  - using, monitoring 127
- actors
  - about 189
  - actor channel 199
  - investigating actors in channels 205
  - model import connector 193
  - monitoring 189
- additional data 689
- administrator 759
  - tasks
    - management 623
    - permissions and resources 603
    - send logs 958
- agent
  - see SmartConnector*
- aggregation
  - rules 152
- alerts
  - device event class id 787
- alias 137, 643
- annotations
  - pattern 138, 148
  - pattern annotation editor 152
- arb file package 649
- archives
  - device event class id 789
- ArcSight Console 762
  - glossary definition 762
  - menus 61
- ArcSight Web 762
- Asian fonts in reports 363
- asset 697, 762
  - asset auto-creation 697
  - asset range 700
  - asset tab 763
  - auto-creation 765
  - auto-zoning 719
  - categories 702
  - categories tab 764
  - create 717
  - CSV file 711
  - data monitor for asset category count 879
  - delete 719
  - edit 718
  - find 721
  - location tab 764
  - move or copy 718
  - networks tab 763
  - populating using wizard 711
  - rename groups 720
  - retrieve vulnerable 724
  - scalability 721
  - showing in a channel 719
  - vulnerabilities tab 764
  - zones tab 763



- asset group
  - creating 720
  - delete 720
  - edit 720
  - move or copy 720
- asset range 700
  - CSV file 713
  - populate using wizard 713
- attack 131, 775
- attacker address 146
- attributes, common 642
- audit event
  - overview 775
- auto-zone 719
- auto-zone, with network model wizard 716

## B

- base event
  - include in case, with rule action 429
- baseline
  - add to query viewers 245
  - pattern 153
- batching 801
- behavior category 809
- browser, internal and external 1009

## C

- case
  - attachment 536
  - create 532
  - creating channels from 540
  - delete 541
  - editing 533
  - editor tab fields 802
  - export 537
  - export to external systems 537
  - finding by id 534
  - glossary definition 807
  - properties 533
  - queries against 543
  - stages 171
- case names, dynamic 428
- categories
  - behavior 809
  - custom 915
  - device group 809
  - grouping assets in 717
  - managing as assets 762
  - object 809
  - outcome 809
  - overview 808
  - significance 810
  - tab 764
  - technique 810
- certificates
  - device event class id 789
- channel
  - create from pattern block 148
  - create in grid view 146
- charts, in channels and data monitors 91
- collaboration 817
- collisions, field names 956
- command string 139

- commands
  - connector 139
  - integration 549
- common conditions editor (CCE) 818
- component, pattern 132
- conditions
  - CCE 818
  - common conditions editor 818
  - editor 818
  - glossary definition 833
  - rule 151
  - statements 832
- configuration
  - integration commands 566
- connector command 139
- connectors
  - see *SmartConnectors* 961
- content 834
- context report, actors 205
- correlation
  - correlation event generating fields 884
  - glossary definition 835
  - rule 835
  - session 960
- custom view dashboard 120
- customers
  - creating 730
  - deleting 730
  - editing 730
  - managing as a resource 730
  - resource 836

## D

- daily pattern discovery profile 134
- dashboard
  - adding data monitors to 106
  - adding query viewers 242
  - audit events 783
  - creating 106
  - custom view 120
  - deleting 108
  - editing 108
  - glossary definition 836
- data fields 837
  - exporting to CSV file 165
  - importing/exporting to CSV file 165
- data monitors
  - adding to dashboards 106
  - Asset Category Count Data Monitor 879
  - charts 91
  - conditional expressions 912
  - controlling user permissions to deploy 612
  - creating 110
  - deleting 112
  - deploying, undeploying 112
  - editing 111
  - enabling, disabling 112
  - event correlation data monitor 880
  - event graph data Monitor 881
  - event reconciliation data monitor 882
  - glossary definition 878
  - hierarchy map data monitor 886
  - hourly counts data monitor 895
  - last *n* events data monitor 896

- last state data monitor 897
- moving average data monitor 901
- overriding last state 114
- permissions to deploy 612
- statistics data monitor 906
- system monitor attribute data monitor 909
- system monitor data monitor 909
- top value counts data monitor 910
- types 879
- day-zero attack 131
- demarcation points 143
- deprecated, resource attribute field 643
- designer, reports 282
- device 913
- device event class id 786
- device event class ids
  - alerts 787
  - archives 789
  - certificates 789
  - filters 790
  - saved searches 791
  - search 793
  - storage groups 792
  - storage rules 792
  - storage volume 792
- device group category 809
- discovery, how it works 133
- divisions, transaction 132
- drilldown
  - from data monitor 111
  - from query viewer 261

## E

- editor
  - common conditions 818
  - queries 301
  - reports 336
  - rules 399
  - trends 320
- empty triggers 140, 152
- end time, snapshot 135
- ESM
  - schema 956
- event
  - count, data monitor 910
  - count, in active channel 82
- events
  - aggregation 761
  - aliases in rule conditions 950
  - audit 775
  - categories 808
  - categorization, custom 915
  - collaborating on 168
  - context report 383
  - data fields 837
  - data monitor for event correlation 880
  - data monitor for event graph 881
  - data monitor for event reconciliation 882
  - data monitor for hierarchy map 886
  - data monitor for hourly counts 895
  - data monitor for last *n* events 896
  - data monitor for last state 897
  - data monitor for moving average 901
  - data monitor for statistics 906

- data monitors 878
- field-based division 132
- fields 136
- filtering 175
- glossary definition 914
- graph 147
- grid views 165
- grouping 133
- import/export to file from grid view 95
- inspector 913
- internal, audit 775
- internal, status monitor 965
- monitoring 77
- payloads 173
- prioritization fields 931
- status monitor 965
- system, see *internal events*
- using attributes to show filtered views 184
- viewing in inspect/edit panel 920
- visualizing 128
- export pattern 139
- external ID 137

## F

- field sets
  - creating 156
  - editing 161
  - glossary definition 916
  - see also *data fields* 837
  - sharing 162
  - sortable 964
- fields
  - avoiding naming collisions 956
  - prioritization 931
  - see also *data fields* 837
  - see also *field sets* 155
- files
  - adding to packages 626
  - as attachments to cases 535
  - creating as resources 624
  - deleting 626
  - downloading 625
  - editing resource attributes 626
  - finding 627
  - managing as resources 623
  - replacing 626
  - uploading 624
  - viewing 625
- filter
  - add to resources 181
  - adding an event attribute 186
  - change 176
  - creating for SmartConnectors 675
  - creating inline 177
  - creating new 175
  - debugging to match events 179
  - delete 179
  - exporting 182
  - filtering out internal events 185
  - for showing exploited vulnerabilities 186
  - for showing targeted assets 187
  - glossary definition 917
  - importing 182
  - modify a view 187

- modify an active channel 186
- move or copy 178
- on active channel 182
- patterns 149
- refine with an event attribute 185
- remove a filter condition 182
- remove a resource 182
- resource tree 136
- SmartConnectors 676
- filter groups
  - creating 183
  - deleting 183
  - editing 183
  - moving or copying 183
  - renaming 183
- filters
  - device event class id 790
- font
  - Asian in reports 363
  - Unicode in reports 289
- functions
  - see *variables* 982

## G

- global variables 445
- graphs
  - creating to visualize resources 632
  - using 633
- grid views
  - exporting events from 95
  - for resources 635
  - glossary definition 918
  - reports from 383
- group
  - asset 720
  - filter 182
  - notification 137, 616
  - pattern 137
  - report 387
  - rule 401
  - SmartConnector 685
  - snapshot 137
  - user 981
  - vulnerability 725

## H

- hotkeys 741
- HP OpenView Operations 423
- HTML
  - report format 356, 544
  - see also *Web*

## I

- ID
  - external 643
  - resource 643
  - version 643
- iDefense 919
- identity correlation, see *session correlation*
- image view dashboard 120
- importing and exporting
  - cases to external systems 537

- filters 182
- reports 386
- rules 431
- SmartConnector configurations 687
- inactivity 136
- inline filter
  - creating 177
  - modify view inline 187
  - undoing 187
- inspect/edit panel 920
- integration commands
  - ArcSight Logger 585
  - ArcSight NSP TRM 578
  - overview 549
- integration parameters 587
- internal events
  - audit 775
  - status monitor 965
- invalid resource
  - fixing 636
  - overview 635
  - troubleshooting 638
- italics
  - on derived fields 159

## J

- Japanese characters, in reports 289
- Java heap memory, adjusting 214
- job scheduler 954

## K

- keys, shortcut 741
- knowledge base 920
  - article groups 593
  - associating articles 595
  - creating articles for 591
  - getting articles 174
  - getting updates 594
  - managing articles 591

## L

- layout, snapshot 144
- length, minimum pattern 135
- lists
  - active 753
  - case sensitivity, active lists 514
  - case sensitivity, session lists 525
  - field types and subtypes 515, 526
  - session 961
- locations
  - describing as assets 717
  - editor 729
  - latitude, longitude format for 739
  - managing as assets 762
  - tab 764
- locks, on resources 627
- Logger
  - integration commands 585
- LoggerPort 587
- logs
  - sending to HP Tech Support 958
- low-and-slow attack 132

**M**

managed security service provider, see MSSP 923

Manager 923

- glossary definition 923
- performance related to custom rules 443
- reconnecting 47

master use cases 459

menus 61

- Console 61
- Edit 62
- File 61
- Help 65
- System 64
- Tools 64
- Views 62
- Window 63

model confidence

- in prioritization fields 931
- in priority calculations 932
- maintaining by threat evaluation 975

model mappings, sending to SmartConnectors 678

MSSP (managed security service provider) 923

- customer resources for 836
- glossary definition 923
- useful query-trend reporting features for 319

**N**

naming collisions, field names 956

navigating resource types 41

navigator panel 923

network model

- asset categories 702
- assets 697
- auto-created assets 697
- auto-zone 716
- batch,bulk loading 707
- networks 701
- wizard 707
- zones 700

network model wizard

- asset CSV file 711
- asset ranges CSV file 713
- auto-zone 716
- column types 708
- using 707
- zone CSV file 710

network tools

- as integration commands 589
- standard 54

networks 701

- describing as assets 717
- editor 728
- managing as assets 762
- sending model mappings to SmartConnectors 678
- tab 763

normal patterns 153

notes

- profile 141
- tabs in resources 58

notifications

- acknowledging, managing received 615
- audit events 794
- categories 615

destinations 617

e-mail settings 619

glossary definition 923

group 137

groups and levels 616

inbound 615

messages and velocity templates 1000

pager services 620

popup preferences 732

rule trigger 427

send 138

testing groups and destinations 621

using 58

wait time settings 620

nslookup 146

integration command 590

standard 56

NSP TRM

integration commands 578

**O**

object category 809

occurrences, pattern 135

One-Time Password (OTP) 587

OpenView Operations 423

operations 606

permissions on 606

permissions to deploy data monitors 612

setting permissions on 606

operators 920

logical 920

OTPUser 587

outcome category 809

owner 137

**P**

package version ID 137

package\_delete\_option 653

packages

adding files to 626

adding resources to 654

arb import bundles 649

creating 645

editor 645

exporting 648

glossary definition 925

importing 649

installing 651

managing 644

removing resources from 654

resolving conflicts 654

uninstalling 652

zones 727

panel, navigator 923

parent groups 644

partial caching, active lists 513

partition size, imported 650

passwords

changing for user 599, 733

changing yours 733

pattern

active list 139

baseline 153

- component 132
- definition 131
- delete 153
- export 139
- group 137
- how discovery works 133
- in snapshot view 146
- inspector 149
- length 135
- occurrences 135
- session list 140
- support 143
- transaction 132
- view filtered 149
- pattern discovery
  - audit events 795
  - glossary definition 926
- payload
  - defined 930
  - for events 173
- peers
  - device event class id 791
- performance
  - active channels best practices 86
  - reports and queries 383
- ping
  - integration command 590
  - standard 56
  - tool 146
- portinfo
  - integration command 590
  - standard 56
  - tool 146
- prioritization fields 931
- priority
  - calculations 932
  - color code 936
- profile
  - create 134
  - daily pattern discovery 134
  - modify 134
  - notes 141

## Q

- queries
  - active channels comparison 86
  - and trends in reports 318
  - attributes for 301
  - creating 300
  - editing 315
  - editor 301
  - for finding resources in Console 630
  - for reports, glossary definition 937
  - overview 299
  - performance for reports 383
  - see also *query viewers* 227
- query viewers
  - adding to dashboards 242
  - audit events 795
  - baselines in 245
  - custom 230
  - generating reports for 243
  - overview 227
  - pre-built 230

- see also *queries* in Reporting topics 299
- using 231

## R

- radar display
  - active channel headers 81
  - area in charts 92
  - example, operation in channel headers 752
- reference pages 938
- relevance
  - of events based on priority 931
  - of threats 975
- remote variables 983
- replay-with-rules channels 439
- Report Designer documentation 282
- reports
  - active channels comparison 86
  - advanced example 367
  - archiving 388
  - audit events 795
  - beginner example 364
  - complex and large, property setting for 383
  - copying 386
  - creating 334
  - CSV format 356, 544
  - editor 336
  - end-to-end examples 364
  - event context 383
  - exporting 386
  - glossary definition 940
  - groups 387
  - HTML format 356, 544
  - importing 386
  - managing dependencies 279
  - moving 386
  - on query viewers 243
  - on vulnerable assets 727
  - parameterized entries 390
  - PDF format 356, 544
  - performance 383
  - queries 299
  - RTF format 356, 544
  - running delta 382
  - running from grid view 383
  - running new or archived 379
  - scheduling 391
  - sorting 345
  - stopping 45
  - templates 279
  - trends 317
  - variables 982
  - velocity references for 1003
  - wizard 364
  - workflow 275
  - Z-axis 341, 345
- reports templates
  - creating new 282
  - designer 282
  - designer UI tour 283
  - designing custom 282
  - editing 282
  - glossary definition 943
  - navigating to 279
  - overview 279

- using pre-built 280
- reports, empty, prevent from sending 357
- resources 943
  - access control lists (ACLs) 749
  - add filters to 181
  - attributes, common 947
  - attributes, common, in editors 642
  - audit events 776
  - customers 730, 836
  - deprecated 643
  - finding 629
  - fixing 636
  - graphs 632
  - graphs, configuring 634
  - locking, unlocking 627
  - navigating 41
  - notes 58
  - printing and saving definitions 69
  - saving copies 642
  - selecting 628
  - sharing 612
  - system core content 627
  - troubleshooting invalid 638
  - validating 635
  - viewing in grids 635
  - visualizing 632
- Results 146
- rules
  - actions 417, 949
  - aggregate thresholds 414
  - aggregation 152
  - authoring 397
  - automatic disabling 444
  - chains 421, 954
  - conditions 151, 403, 950
  - consume events 408
  - correlation 835
  - create from pattern 148
  - create from snapshot 146
  - creating 402
  - custom rules and Manager performance 443
  - data monitor for partial match 904
  - deploying real-time 442
  - editor 151, 954
  - enabling, disabling 429
  - errors 437
  - glossary definition 951
  - groups 401
  - importing and exporting 431
  - lightweight 398
  - load and performance 443
  - managing 399
  - negated events 410
  - pre-persistence 399, 423
  - replaying events with 439
  - scheduling 431
  - testing 437
  - testing against events 439
  - thresholds and aggregation 414
  - time out, negated event alias 410
  - triggering with actions 427
  - variables 982
  - verify with events 439
  - verifying with events 439
- Rules Partial Match Data Monitor 904

## S

- Save to Target, Logger access option 587
- Save to User, Logger access option 587
- saved searches
  - device event class id 791
- saving, copies of resources 642
- schedules
  - audit events 797
  - jobs 954
  - reports 391
  - rules 431
  - snapshot 144
- schema 956
- search
  - device event class id 793
- searching
  - query options to find resources 630
- send logs 958
  - toolbar command 56
- sequence of events 136
- session correlation 960
- session list 140, 961
  - audit events 798
- severity
  - of threats 975
  - setting levels 676
- sharing
  - resources 612
- shortcut keys 741
- significance category 810
- SmartConnector command 139
- SmartConnector groups 685
  - creating 685
  - deleting 686, 687
  - editing 686
  - moving or copying 686
  - renaming 686
- SmartConnectors
  - add filter condition 676
  - commands 678
  - configuration fields 659
  - configuring 657
  - default Content tab configuration fields 660
  - deleting filter conditions 676
  - editor option tabs 658
  - event severity levels 676
  - exporting configurations 688
  - filters 689
  - filters, creating 675
  - flow-control commands 678
  - getting status 678
  - glossary definition 961
  - importing configurations 687
  - network model mappings 678
  - processing categories 674
  - rollback to previous version 692
  - time interval options 675
  - turbo mode 669
  - upgrading 689
- SmartFolders 45
- SMTP 964
- snapshot
  - controls 144
  - delete 145

- end time 135
- group 137
- layout 144
- patterns 146
- re-open 145
- retention 137
- schedule 144
- start time 135
- viewer 142
- sortable field sets 964
- sorting 345
- source fields 136
- stages
  - creating for cases 171
  - editing for cases 172
- standard content
  - actor context reports 208
- start time, snapshot 135
- status monitor events 965
- storage groups
  - device event class id 792
- storage rules
  - device event class id 792
- storage volume
  - device event class id 792
- sub-pattern 143
- support level 133
- support, pattern 143
- system events, see *audit events*, *status monitor events*, or *internal events*

## T

- target
  - integration commands 570
  - save to 587
- target fields 136
- technique category 810
- templates
  - reports, see report templates
  - velocity 999
- threat
  - evaluation 975
  - glossary definition 975
- thresholds 977
- time
  - error correction 977
  - spread 150
  - timestamp variables 979
  - timestamps 977
  - UTC times 978
  - zone correction 979
- time-based division 132
- timestamp expression 135
- timestamp range limit 978
- toolbars 52
- tools, network 54
- traceroute
  - integration command 590
  - standard 56
  - tool 146
- transaction, pattern 132
- transactions table 149
- trends 650
  - active channel comparison 86

- and queries in reports 318
- audit events 799
- creating 319
- editing or viewing definition 333
- editor 320
- glossary definition 980
- interval 318
- overview 317
- refreshing data 332
- snapshot 318
- testing 331
- using in queries 333
- using in reports 333
- viewing data 331
- trigger action 138
- TRM
  - integration commands 549
- TRM, integration commands 578
- turbo mode, on SmartConnectors 669

## U

- Unicode characters, in reports 289
- uploading files 624
- use cases 457
  - applying settings 469
  - categorizing assets/zones 471
  - installing 461
  - master 459
  - navigating to 459
  - opening 462
  - overview 457
  - scheduling daily report 477
  - scheduling monthly report 480
  - scheduling weekly report 479
  - scheduling yearly report 482
  - summary 469
  - wizard 464
- user groups 981
  - ACL edit permissions, deleting 607
  - ACL edit permissions, adding 607
  - creating 602
  - data monitor deploy permissions 612
  - deleting 603
  - editing 602
  - event permissions, adding 609
  - event permissions, deleting 609
  - moving or linking 602
  - operations permissions, adding 606
  - operations permissions, deleting 606
  - renaming 602
  - resource permissions, adding 604
  - resource permissions, deleting 604
  - setting startup views 603
  - sortable field set permissions, adding 611
  - sortable field set permissions, deleting 611
- users
  - access control lists (ACLs) 603
  - administrator 759
  - audit events 801
  - creating 597
  - deleting 601
  - editing 599
  - glossary definition 981
  - groups, see user groups 981

- moving or linking 600
- passwords 597
- save to 587
- types 982
- user-created content 627
- UTC times 978

## V

- validating resources
  - automatic or manual 640
  - overview 635
  - requirements 638
- variables 982
  - arithmetic functions 986
  - conditional functions 988
  - field sets and 155
  - global variables 445
  - group functions 989
  - IP address functions 991
  - list functions 991
  - previewing calculation of 983
  - remote variables 983
  - string functions 991
  - timestamp 979
  - timestamp functions 992
  - type conversion functions 995
  - value list functions 996
- velocity templates
  - overview 999
  - references for reports 1003
  - rules example 1001
  - usage tips 1002
- VeriSign iDefense 919
- version ID, package 137
- view
  - glossary definition 1007
  - graph 632
  - grid 918
  - investigating views 88
  - modify with filters 187
  - Web 47
- viewer, snapshot 142
- vulnerabilities
  - adding an asset to 724
  - creating 723
  - CVE and 1009
  - deleting 724

- deleting an asset from 724
- describing as assets 717
- editing 723
- editor 723
- glossary definition 1008
- managing as assets 762
- moving or copying 724
- tab 764
- vulnerability groups
  - creating 725
  - deleting 725
  - editing 725
  - moving or copying 725
  - renaming 725

## W

- Web
  - browsers, internal and external 1009
  - saving, printing resource definitions as HTML 72
  - see also ArcSight Web
  - setting preferred Web browser 733
  - viewer panel 47
  - WebSearch network tool 54
- WebSearch 146
  - integration command 590
  - standard 56
- whois
  - integration command 590
  - standard 56
  - tool 146
- wizards
  - network model 707
  - Use Case 464

## Z

- Z-axis 341, 345
- zones
  - CSV file 710
  - describing as assets 717
  - editor 727
  - managing as assets 762
  - network model 700
  - populating using wizard 710
  - shrinking or splitting 727
  - tab 763



